Class F155

Book .W45

Copyright No.

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.

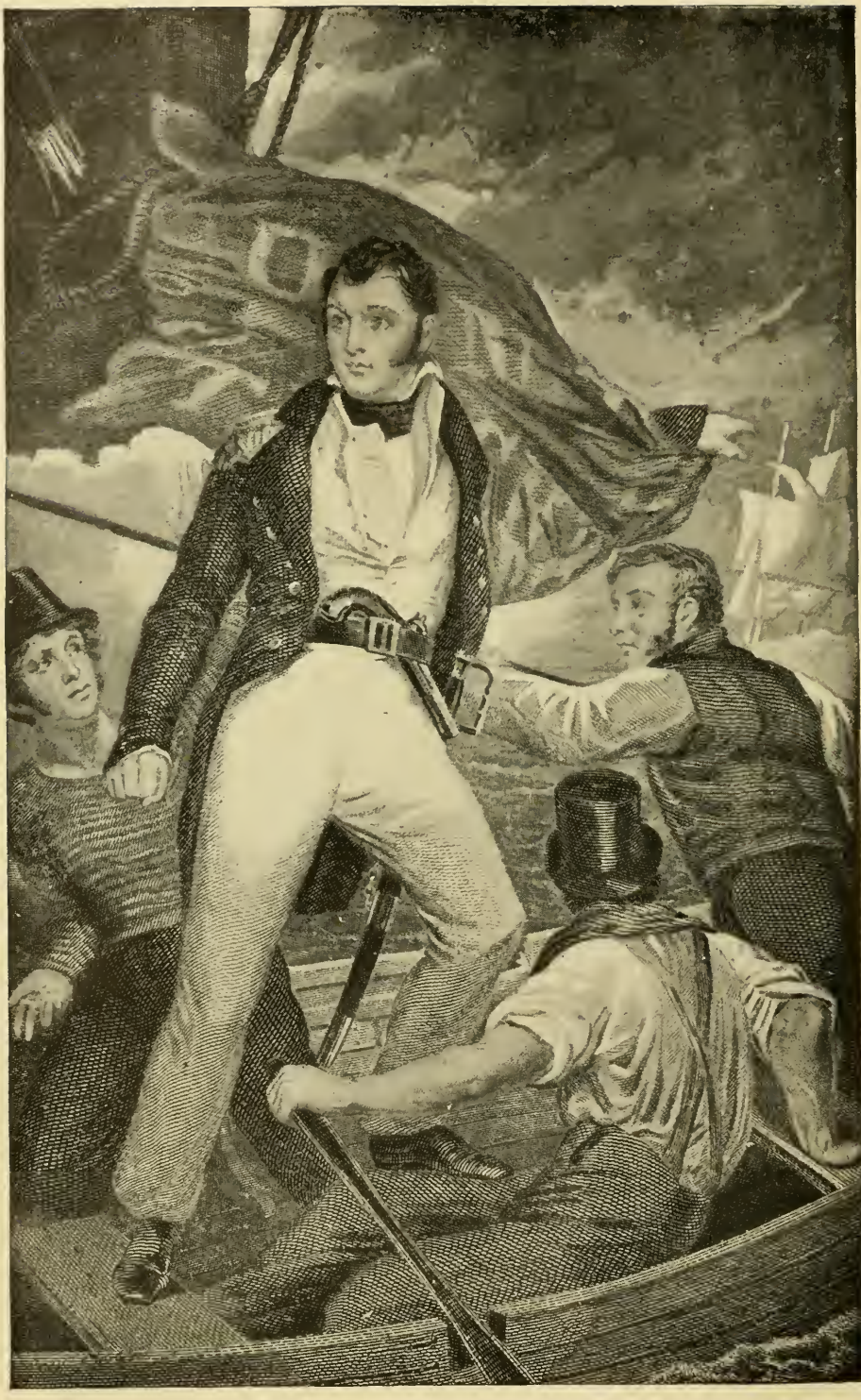
Item-51
5039-E

PRESENTED

TO:

BY:

19



COMMODORE PERRY AT THE BATTLE ON LAKE ERIE.

TWENTIETH CENTURY

HISTORY OF AMERICA

AND

OUR ISLAND POSSESSIONS

FROM THE

Discovery of the American Continent to the Present Time

CONTAINING

ACCOUNTS OF THE DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS OF THE NORSEMEN, SPANIARDS, ENGLISH AND FRENCH; THE MOUND BUILDERS; THE AMERICAN INDIANS; THE SETTLEMENT OF THE NEW WORLD; THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WARS; THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR

The Establishment of the American Republic;

THE SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND; THE MEXICAN WAR; LONG PERIOD OF PEACE THE HISTORY OF THE GREAT CIVIL WAR; THE CENTENNIAL OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE; WAR WITH SPAIN AND WITH THE FILIPINO INSURGENTS; AND ALL EVENTS TO THE PRESENT TIME.

Including a Full Description of our New Possessions

BY HENRY DAVENPORT NORTHROP
THE WELL-KNOWN HISTORIAN

EMBELLISHED WITH OVER 500 SUPERB ENGRAVINGS

NATIONAL PUBLISHING CO.
239, 241 AND 243 AMERICAN STREET
PHILADELPHIA, PA.

12386

Library of Congress
TWO COPIES RECEIVED
JUN 29 1900
Copyright entry
May 4, 1900
No A, 11223...
SECOND COPY.
Delivered to
ORDER DIVISION,
JUL 2 1900

64451

ENTERED ACCORDING TO ACT OF CONGRESS, IN THE YEAR 1900, BY
GEORGE W. BERTRON
IN THE OFFICE OF THE LIBRARIAN OF CONGRESS, AT WASHINGTON, D. C.

E 98
W 75

DEDICATION

TO the memory of that bold mariner, who, four hundred years ago, discovered the Western Continent; and the brave colonists who sacrificed the pleasures and comforts of the old world to undergo the privations, and face the dangers of an unknown wilderness;

To the memory of the Pilgrim Fathers who planted the seeds of freedom on American Soil; and the Revolutionary heroes who secured liberty for the most patriotic people, and laid the foundations of the greatest nation in all the annals of time;

To those brave defenders and noble citizens who have preserved and fostered the growth of our model institutions, made possible our wonderful progress and fortified the bulwarks of our strength in this

"Land of the Free and Home of the Brave,"

entitling our Great Country to sit upon the Throne among Nations as the **Queen of Republics,**

This Volume is Patriotically

DEDICATED

BY THE AUTHOR

PREFACE.

THERE is nothing more worthy of a man's study than the history of his country. In our own land, however, the means of pursuing such a study are limited. Our great cities contain large and valuable public libraries, and the collections of our historical societies are rich and very complete; but these are accessible only to the communities in which they are located, and are practically useless to the majority of the American people. The great works of Bancroft and Hildreth cover but a portion of our history, and are removed from the reach of the masses by reason of their costliness. Besides these, the larger number of the works treating of American history are compendiums, or outlines intended for the use of schools, and are therefore unsatisfactory to the adult reader.

The demand for a popular History of the United States which shall fill a place between these greater and smaller works has led the author to the preparation of this volume. He has endeavored to popularize the story of the nation, and at the same time to neglect nothing that could in the least contribute to a clear and comprehensive understanding of the subject. He has sought to trace the history of the Republic from the discovery of the American continent to the present day, and has endeavored especially to fix the attention of the reader upon the various influences which have aided in moulding our national character, and have produced our distinctive political and moral national traits. He has endeavored to write from a broad national standpoint, and to cultivate in the minds of his readers that feeling of national patriotism which must ever be the safeguard of our country.

It is a fitting time to consider the story of the past, to learn the lessons which it teaches, and to ponder the warnings which it conveys for the future. Four hundred years ago America was an unknown wilderness. Less than three centuries ago it passed into the hands of England, and was thus secured for the language and the free influences of the all-conquering Anglo-Saxon race. It was a precious heritage which was thus secured for liberty; a land stretching from the frozen regions of the north to the sunny skies of the tropics, from the stormy Atlantic to the calm Pacific; a land embracing every variety of climate, and a soil capable of producing almost every product of the earth, from the stunted herbage of the frozen regions to the luxuriant fruits of the tropics. The earth is rich in mineral deposits, from the homely, but invaluable, veins of coal, to beds of the most brilliant and precious minerals. It pours out in streams, oil for burning, gas that may be used fresh from the natural springs, salt that requires but the heat of the sun for its perfection, and beds of pure soda that cover the earth like the dust in the highways. In short, all that is needed for the preservation and comfort of animal and human life exists in this favored land in the greatest profusion.

Such is the land designed by God for the home of liberty. The people to whom He has intrusted it have not abused His goodness. In the short space of two centuries, the American people have grown from a small handful of hardy adventurers to a "mighty continental nation," increasing with a rapidity that is almost marvellous. They have built up their country on a scale of magnificence of which they are justly proud. They have covered it with powerful and free States, and splendid cities, connected by a network of railways, telegraphs, navigable rivers, and canals, which bind all the scattered parts into one solid whole. They have made a commerce and a system of manufactures before which the fabled wealth of Tyre sinks into insignificance. They have created a literature which commands the respect of the world; they have illustrated their history with deeds of arms not less splendid than their more peaceful achievements, and have given to the world names in every walk of life that will never die. They have shown that liberty and power can go hand in hand; they have made themselves a nation in which God is feared, and of which Christianity is the basis, in which ignorance and vice are despised, and in which the great lesson that liberty is possible only to an educated and virtuous people is being practically demonstrated.

This is a grand history—a record of the highest achievement of humanity—the noblest, most thrilling, and glorious story ever penned on earth. Yet the fact remains that the great mass of the American people are but imperfectly acquainted with it. There is a real need that we should know better than we do what we have done. It is only by a thoughtful study of our past that we can safely provide for the perils of the future. We have triumphed over adversity, and we are now called upon to bear the test of success. He can be no good citizen who is ignorant of his country's history.

In the preparation of this volume, no authority of importance has been overlooked; the author has carefully searched every source of information open to him; and has availed himself of every fact that could throw new light upon, or impart additional interest to, the subject under consideration.

In the narration of military events, he has preferred to give each campaign as a whole rather than to mingle several by presenting the events in chronological order. At the same time he has sought to preserve the inter-relation of events in one field of operations to those in the others.

The book is offered to the public in the sincere hope that it may induce its readers to take to heart the lessons which our history teaches, and to set a higher value upon the precious heritage of constitutional liberty which our fathers won for us with their blood, and handed down to us in trust for our children's children.

CONTENTS.

BOOK I.

Discovery of the Western Continent.

CHAPTER I.

STRANGE PEOPLE IN A STRANGE LAND.

PAGE

Earliest Inhabitants of the United States—The Mound Builders—Remarkable Works Constructed by Them—Evidences of a Primitive Civilization—Indications of the Antiquity of this Period—A Remarkable Cherokee—Who Were the Mound Builders—Ancient Phœnicians—False Assumption—The American Indians—Divisions of the Country Among the Tribes—Names and Location of the Various Tribes—Organization and Government of the Indians—Their Dress, Manners and Customs—Villages—Indian Inventions—The War Dance—Legends of the Norsemen Respecting the Discovery of America 17

CHAPTER II.

THE VOYAGES OF COLUMBUS.

Maritime Enterprise in the Fifteenth Century—Theories Respecting the Earth's Surface—Christopher Columbus—His Early Life—His Theory of a Western Passage to India—His Struggles to Obtain the Means of Making a Voyage—Is Aided by Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain—His First Voyage—Discovery of America—Reception in Spain—His Second Voyage—Settlement of Hayti—Third Voyage of Columbus—He Reaches the Mainland—Discovery of Gold in Hayti—Troubles in the Colony—Columbus Sent to Spain in Irons—Indignation of the Queen—Last Voyage of Columbus—His Shipwreck—Returns to Spain—Refusal of Ferdinand to Comply with His Promises—Death of Columbus—Amerigo Vespucci—Origin of the Name AMERICA 32

CHAPTER III.

ENGLISH AND FRENCH DISCOVERIES.

Discovery of the North American Continent by John Cabot—Voyages of Sebastian Cabot—The English Fail to Follow Up these Discoveries—Efforts of the French to Explore America—Voyage and Discoveries of Verrazzani—Cartier Explores the St. Lawrence—Reaches Montreal—Efforts to Found a Colony on the St. Lawrence—Failure—Roberval's Colony—Trading Voyages—Explorations of Champlain—Colonization of Nova Scotia—Founding of Quebec—Discovery of Lake Champlain—Arrival of the Jesuits in Canada—Death of Champlain . . . 43

CHAPTER IV.

THE SPANIARDS IN AMERICA.

Settlement of the West Indies—Discovery of the Pacific Ocean—Voyage of Magellan—Discovery of Florida—Ponce de Leon's Search for the Fountain of Youth—Vasquez de Ayllon Kidnaps a Cargo of Indians—Effort of Pamphilo de Narvaez to Conquer Florida—A Terrible March—The Voyage on the Gulf of Mexico—Fate of the Fleet—Escape of Cabeza de Vaca and His Comrades—Discovery of New Mexico—Ferdinand de Soto—Obtains Leave to Conquer Florida—Sails from Spain—Arrival in Cuba—Departure for Florida—Landing at Tampa Bay—Events of the First Year—De Soto Enters Georgia—Descends the Alabama—Battle of Mavilla—Destruction of Chickasaw—Sufferings of the Spaniards—Discovery of the Mississippi—The Spaniards Cross the Great River—De Soto in Arkansas—Reaches the Mississippi Again—Sickness and Death of De Soto—His Burial—Escape of His Followers to Mexico—The Huguenot Colony in Carolina—Its Failure—The French Settle in Florida—Wrath of Philip II.—Melendez Ordered to Exterminate the Huguenots—Foundation of St. Augustine—Massacre of the French at Fort Carolina—The Vengeance of De Gourges 50

CHAPTER V.

THE FIRST ENGLISH COLONY.

The English Claim to America—Voyages of Frobisher—Exploits of Sir Francis Drake—Sir Humphrey Gilbert—Intends to found a Colony in America—Is lost at Sea—Sir Walter Raleigh obtains a Patent of Colonization—Discoveries of Amidas and

PAGE

Barlow—Raleigh sends out a Colony to Virginia—Settlement on Roanoke Island—Its Failure—Arrival of Grenville—Second Effort of Raleigh to Colonize Virginia—Roanoke Island again Settled—The "City of Raleigh"—Virginia Dare—Fate of the Colony—Death of Raleigh—Other Voyages of the English 63

BOOK II.

Settlement of America.

CHAPTER VI.

Captain John Smith and Pocahontas.

Formation of the London Company—Conditions of its Charter—Departure of the first Colony—Quarrels during the Voyage—Arrival in the Chesapeake—Settlement of Jamestown—Formation of the Government—Character of Captain John Smith—Exploration of the James River—Newport and Smith visit Powhatan—Smith Admitted to the Government—Explores the Chickahominy—Is Captured and Sentenced to Death—Is Saved by Pocahontas—Gains the Friendship of Powhatan for the Colony—Returns to Jamestown—His Decisive Measures—Return of Newport—Smith Explores the Chesapeake Bay—The new Emigrants—Smith compels them to Labor—Smith is Wounded and compelled to return to England—Disasters to the Colony—Arrival of Sir Thomas Gates—Jamestown Abandoned—Arrival of Lord Delaware—The Return to Jamestown—A Change for the Better—New Settlements—Sir Thomas Gates arrives with Reinforcements—Capture of Pocahontas by Captain Argall—She is Baptized—Marries John Rolfe—Sir Thomas Dale's Administration—Yeardley Governor—The first Legislative Assembly—Representative Government established in America—The Colonists obtain Wives—Changes in the Government 73

CHAPTER VII.

Progress of the Virginia Colony.

Introduction of Negro Slavery into Virginia—Efforts of the Assembly to Restrict Slavery—The Indians Attempt the Destruction of the Colony—Terrible Sufferings of the Whites—Aid from England—The Indian War Begun—King James Revokes the Charter of the London Company—Charles I. Desires a Monopoly of the Tobacco Trade—Action of the Assembly—Sir William Berkeley's First Administration—Severe Measures against Dissenters—Close of the Indian War—Death of Opechancanough—Emigration of Royalists to Virginia—Virginia and the Commonwealth—Treaty with England—The Assembly Asserts its Independence of the Governor—The Restoration—Berkeley Chosen Governor by the Assembly—His Hypocrisy . . . . . 8[illegible]

CHAPTER VIII.

Virginia After the Restoration.

Characteristics of the Virginians—Causes of the Success of the Royalists—Growth of the Aristocratic Class—Berkeley decides against the People—The Aristocratic Assembly Claims the Right to sit Perpetually—Deprives the Common People of their Liberties—Revival of the Navigation Act by Charles II.—The King bestows Virginia as a Gift upon his Favorites—Protests of the Assembly—Growing Hostility of the Virginians to the Colonial Government—The Indian War—The Governor Refuses to allow the Colonists to Defend themselves—Nathaniel Bacon—He Marches against the Indians—Rebellion of the People against Berkeley and the Assembly—The Convention—Repeal of the Obnoxious Laws—Berkeley's Duplicity—The People take up Arms—Flight of Berkeley—Destruction of Jamestown—Death of Bacon—Causes of the Failure of the Rebellion—Berkeley's Triumph—Execution of the Patriot Leaders—Berkeley's Course Condemned by the King—Death of Berkeley—The Unjust Laws Re-enacted—Lord Culpepper Governor—His Extortions—James II. and Virginia—Effects upon Virginia of the Revolution of 1688—William and Mary College Founded . . . . . 9[illegible]

CHAPTER IX.

The Colonization of Maryland.

Extent of the Territory of Virginia—Clayborn's Trading-Posts established—Sir George Calvert, Lord Baltimore—Becomes interested in American colonization—Obtains a Grant of Maryland—Terms of the Charter—A Colony sent out—Arrival in the Chesapeake—St. Mary's Founded—Charter of the Colony—Friendly Relations established with the Indians—First Legislature of Maryland—Trouble with Clayborne—Rapid Growth of the Colony—Progress of Popular Liberty—Policy respecting the Treatment of the Indians—Clayborne's Rebellion—Law granting Religious toleration enacted—Condition of Maryland under the Commonwealth—The People declared Supreme—Lord Baltimore recovers his Proprietary Rights—Characteristics of the Colony—Rapid Increase in Population—Charles Calvert, Governor—Death of the second Lord

UNITED STATES.
Scale of Miles.
0 50 100 150 200 250 300
100 Longitude West 95 from Greenwich 90
DOMINION OF CANADA
BRITISH COLUMBIA
MANITOBA
QUEBEC
PACIFIC OCEAN
ATLANTIC OCEAN
GULF OF MEXICO
GULF OF CALIFORNIA
LOWER CALIFORNIA
MEXICO
JAMES BAY
Lake Winnipeg
Lake Superior
WASHINGTON
OREGON
CALIFORNIA
NEVADA
IDAHO
MONTANA
WYOMING
UTAH
COLORADO
ARIZONA
NEW MEXICO
NORTH DAKOTA
SOUTH DAKOTA
NEBRASKA
KANSAS
OKLAHOMA
IND. TER'Y
TEXAS
MINNESOTA
IOWA
MISSOURI
ARKANSAS
LOUISIANA
WISCONSIN
MICHIGAN
ILLINOIS
INDIANA
OHIO
KENTUCKY
TENNESSEE
MISSISSIPPI
ALABAMA
GEORGIA
FLORIDA
SOUTH CAROLINA
NORTH CAROLINA
VIRGINIA
WEST VIRGINIA
PENNSYLVANIA
NEW YORK
VERMONT
N. HAMPSHIRE
MAINE
MASS.
CONN.
ALASKA
BAHAMA ISLANDS
Havana
Straits of Florida

PAGE

Baltimore—Roman Catholics disfranchised—Maryland becomes a Royal Province—Triumph of the Protestants—Annapolis made the Seat of Government—Restoration of the Proprietary Government—Continued Prosperity of Maryland 111

CHAPTER X.

THE PILGRIM FATHERS.

Rise of the Puritans—Their Increase in England—They are Persecuted by the English Church and Government—Conduct of James I.—His Hatred of Puritanism—Puritans take Refuge in Holland—The Congregation of John Robinson—They Escape to Holland—The Pilgrims—their Sojourn at Leyden—They wish to Emigrate to Virginia—Failure of their Negotiations with the London Company—They form a Partnership in England—A Hard Bargain—Departure of the Pilgrims from Holland—Voyage of the "Mayflower"—Arrival in New England—The Agreement on board the "Mayflower"—Carver chosen Governor—Settlement of Plymouth—The first Winter in New England—Sufferings of the Pilgrims—Arrival of new Emigrants—Continued Suffering—Assignment of Lands—Friendly Intercourse with Indians—Samoset and Squanto—Visit of Massasoit—A Threat of War—Bradford's Defiance—Weston's Men—A Narrow Escape—The Colonists Purchase the Interests of their English Partners—Lands Assigned in Fee Simple—The Colony Benefited by the Change—Government of Plymouth—Steady Growth of the Colony 121

CHAPTER XI.

SETTLEMENT OF MASSACHUSETTS AND RHODE ISLAND.

Settlement of New Hampshire—The English Puritans determine to form a new Colony in America—The Plymouth Council—A Colony sent out to Salem under Endicott—Colonization of Massachusetts Bay begun—A Charter obtained—Concessions of the King—Progress of the Salem Colony—The Charter and Government of the Colony removed to New England—Arrival of Governor Winthrop—Settlement of Boston—Sufferings of the Colonists—Roger Williams—His Opinions give offence to the Authorities—The Success of the Bay Colony Established—Growth of Popular Liberty—The Ballot Box—Banishment of Roger Williams—He goes into the Wilderness—Founds Providence—Growth of Williams's Colony—Continued Growth of Massachusetts—Arrival of Sir Henry Vane—Is elected Governor—Mrs. Anne Hutchinson—The Antinomian Controversy—Mrs. Hutchinson banished—Settlement of Rhode Island—Murder of Mrs. Hutchinson 138

CHAPTER XII.

COLONIZATION OF CONNECTICUT.

PAGE

The Dutch claim the Connecticut Valley—They build a Fort at Hartford—Governor Winslow makes a Lodgment in Connecticut for the English—Withdrawal of the Dutch—The First Efforts of the English to Settle Connecticut—Emigration of Hooker and his Congregation—They Settle at Hartford—Winthrop builds a Fort at Saybrook—Hostility of the Indians—Visit of Roger Williams to Miantonomoh—A Brave Deed—The Pequod War—Capture of the Indian Fort—Destruction of the Pequod Tribe—Effect of this War upon the other Tribes—Connecticut Adopts a Constitution—Its Peculiar Features—Settlement of New Haven 150

CHAPTER XIII.

THE UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

Feeling of the Colonies towards England—Hostility of the English Government to New England—Efforts to Introduce Episcopacy—Massachusetts Threatens Resistance—The Revolution in England—Establishment of Free Schools in New England—Harvard College—The Printing Press—The Long Parliament Friendly to New England—The United Colonies of New England—Rhode Island obtains a Charter—Maine Annexed to Massachusetts—The Quakers are Persecuted—Efforts to Christianize the Indians—John Eliot, the Apostle to the Indians . . 157

CHAPTER XIV.

NEW ENGLAND AFTER THE RESTORATION.

Arrival of the News of the Restoration of Charles II.—The Regicides in New England—They are Protected—Revival of the Navigation Acts—Effect of this Measure upon the New England Colonies—Massachusetts delays the Proclamation of the King—Connecticut obtains a Charter—Union of New Haven with the Connecticut Colony—Rhode Island given a new Charter—Massachusetts settles her difficulties with the Crown—Changes in the Government—High-handed acts of the Royal Commissioners—Troubles with the Indians—Injustice of the Whites—King Philip's War—A Forest Hero—An Incident in the Attack upon Hadley—Sufferings of the Colonies—Destruction of the Narragansetts—Death of Philip—Close of the War—England asserts her right to Tax the Colonies—Massachusetts buys Gorges' claims to Maine—New Hampshire made a separate Province—James II. Revokes the Charter of Massachusetts—Dudley and Randolph in New England—Andros appointed Governor-General—

PAGE

His Tyranny—He demands the Charter of Connecticut—It is carried away and Hidden—The Charter Oak—Fall of James II.—The people of Massachusetts take up Arms—Andros arrested—Effects of the Revolution upon New England 166

CHAPTER XV.

Witchcraft in Massachusetts.

Results of the Failure of Massachusetts to Resume her Charter—The New Charter—Loss of the Liberties of the Colony—Union of Plymouth with Massachusetts Bay—Belief in Witchcraft—The History of Witchcraft in Massachusetts—The Case of the Goodwin Children—Cotton Mather espouses the Cause of the Witches—Samuel Parris—He Originates the Salem Delusion—A Strange History—A Special Court Appointed for the Trial of the Witches—The Victims—Execution of the Rev. George Burroughs—Cotton Mather's Part in the Tragedies—The General Court takes Action in behalf of the People—End of the Persecution—Failure of Cotton Mather's Attempt to Save his Credit 182

CHAPTER XVI.

The Settlement of New York.

Voyages of Henry Hudson—He is Employed by the Dutch—Discovery of the Hudson River—Early Dutch Voyages—Adrian Block—Fate of Hudson—The Dutch build a Fort on Manhattan Island—Settlement of New Amsterdam—The Province named New Netherlands—Fort Nassau—Peter Minuits Governor—The Dutch Settlement of Delaware—Wouter Van Twiller—Kieft Governor—His Unjust Treatment of the Indians—Massacre of the Indians at Hoboken—The Indian War—Stuyvesant Appointed Governor—Disputes with the English in Connecticut—The Swedes Settle Delaware—Stuyvesant Captures the Swedish Forts—Growth of New Amsterdam—Disputes between the People and Governor—Growing Spirit of Popular Liberty—The People Appeal to the States General—Capture of New Netherlands by the English—The Name of the Province changed to New York—Results of the English Conquest—Progress of New Jersey—Andros Governor of New York—He Fails to Establish his Authority over Connecticut—New York allowed an Assembly—Discontents of the People—Leisler's Rebellion—Execution of Leisler and Milbourne—Fletcher Governor—His Attempt to obtain Command of the Connecticut Militia—Episcopacy Established in New York—The Freedom of the Press Sustained—New Jersey a Royal Province 193

CHAPTER XVII.

Colonization of Pennsylvania.

PAGE

The Quakers—Their Origin and Doctrines—William Penn—Becomes a Quaker—Is Persecuted for his Religious Opinions—Becomes interested in American Colonization—Purchases West Jersey from the Proprietor—Conceives the Idea of Founding a Free State in America—Purchases Pennsylvania from Charles II.—Conditions of his Charter—Sends out a Colony—Arrival of Penn in America—Philadelphia Founded—Penn's Treaty with the Indians—Religious Toleration Guaranteed—Penn's Relations with his Colonists—Rapid Growth of Pennsylvania in Population and Prosperity—William Penn and James II.—Renewal of Penn's Troubles—William III. Declares Pennsylvania a Royal Province—Penn is Vindicated and Restored to his Proprietary Rights—His Return to Pennsylvania—Character of the Settlers of the Province—Penn Goes Back to England—Efforts to deprive him of his Possessions—His Death. 215

CHAPTER XVIII.

Settlement of the Carolinas.

Gradual Settlement of North Carolina from Virginia—Charles II. grants Carolina to Clarendon and others—The "Grand Model"—An Ideal Aristocracy Proposed for Carolina—The Authority of the Proprietaries Established in North Carolina—Continued Settlement of that Region—Characteristics of the Early Settlers of North Carolina—The People Reject the Grand Model—Hostility of England to the Colonial Commerce—Insurrection in North Carolina—Slothel Governor—Settlement of South Carolina—Charleston Founded—The Proprietary Constitutions Rejected by South Carolina—Rapid Growth of the Colony—Introduction of Slavery—Chracteristics of the Early Settlers of South Carolina—Efforts to Enforce the Navigation Acts—Resistance of the People—The Proprietaries Abandon their Constitutions—Archdale's Reforms—Religious Intolerance—Establishment of the Church of England in South Carolina—Action of the Crown—Continued Prosperity of South Carolina—Governor Moore Attacks St. Augustine—Failure of the Effort—The Spaniards are Repulsed in an Attempt to Capture Charleston—Indian War in North Carolina—The Tuscaroras Driven Northward—War with the Yemmassees—Destruction of their Power—Separation of the Carolinas 227

CHAPTER XIX.

SETTLEMENT OF GEORGIA.

PAGE

General James Edward Oglethorpe—His Efforts to Reform Prison Discipline of England—Proposes to Found a Colony in America for the Poor and for Prisoners for Debt—A Charter Obtained from the King—Colonization of Georgia—Savannah Settled—First Years of the Colony—Labors of Oglethorpe—Arrival of New Emigrants—Augusta Founded—The Moravian Settlements—The Wesleys in America—George Whitefield—War between England and Spain—Oglethorpe Invades Florida—Failure of the Attack upon St. Augustine—The Spaniards Invade Georgia—Oglethorpe's Stratagem—Its Success—Battle of "Bloody Marsh"—Close of the War—Charges against Oglethorpe—His Vindication—His Return to Europe—Changes in the Colonial Government—Introduction of Slavery into Georgia—Prosperity of the Colony 241

CHAPTER XX.

THE FRENCH IN THE VALLEY OF THE MISSISSIPPI.

Origin of the Hostility of the Iriquois to the French—Settlement of Canada—Plans of the French respecting the Indians—The Jesuits—Their Work in America—Success of their Missions—The Early Missionaries—Foundation of a College at Quebec—Efforts of the Jesuits to Convert the Iroquois—Father Jogues—Death of Ahasistari—Father Allouez—The Missions on the Upper Lakes—Father Marquette—His Exploration of the Upper Mississippi—Death of Marquette—La Salle—Efforts of France to Secure the Valley of the Mississippi—La Salle Descends the Mississippi to its Mouth—His Effort to Colonize the Lower Mississippi—The First Colony in Texas—Its Failure Death of La Salle—Lemoine d'Ibberville—Settlement of Louisiana—Colony of Biloxi—Settlement Mobile—Crozat's Monopoly—Founding of New Orleans—Detroit Founded—Slow Growth of the French Colonies—Occupation of the Ohio Valley by the French—Wars with the Indians—Extermination of the Natchez Tribe—War with the Chickasaws 251

CHAPTER XXI.

CONFLICTS BETWEEN THE ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

PAGE

Relations Between the English and the Five Nations—The Hostility of the Latter to the French—King William's War—Destruction of Dover—The Jesuit Missionaries Incite the Indians to Attack the English—Expedition against Quebec—Attack on Dustin's Farm—Peace of Ryswick—Hostility of the English to Roman Catholics—Queen Anne's War—Burning of Deerfield—Eunice Williams—Cruelties of the French—Effort of New England to Conquer Acadia—Capture of Port Royal—Failure of the Expedition against Quebec—King George's War—Expedition against Louisburg—Its Composition—Arrival of the Fleet at Cape Breton—Good Conduct of the Provincials—Capture of Louisburg—Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle—Unjust Treatment of the Colonies by England—Sentiment of the Americans towards England 262

BOOK III.

The French and Indian War.

CHAPTER XXII.

OUTBREAK OF HOSTILITIES.

England Claims the Valley of the Ohio—Organization of the Ohio Company—The French Extend their Posts into the Ohio Country—Washington's Mission to the French at Fort Duquesne—His Journey—Reception by the French—His Journey Home—A Perilous Undertaking—Organization of the Virginia Forces—Washington Made Second in Command—The French Drive the English from the Head of the Ohio—Fort Duquesne Built by Them—Washington Crosses the Mountains—The Fight at Great Meadows—Beginning of the French and Indian War—Surrender of Fort Necessity to the French—Unjust Treatment of the Colonial Officers—Congress of the Colonies at New York—Franklin's Plan of a Union of the Colonies—Its Failure—Reasons of the British Government for Rejecting It—England Assumes the Direction of the War—Arrival of General Braddock—Plan of Campaign—Obstinacy of Braddock—He Passes the Mountains—Defeat of Braddock—Heroism of Washington—Retreat of Dunbar beyond the Mountains—Vigorous Action of Pennsylvania—Armstrong Defeats the Indians and Burns the Town of Kittanning . . . 272

CHAPTER XXIII.

SANGUINIARY STRUGGLES ON THE FRONTIER.

Expedition against Acadia—Brutal Treatment of the Acadians—They Are Expelled from their Country—A Sad Story—Fate of the Acadians—Johnson at Lake George—March of Dieskau—Battle of Lake George—Failure of Shirley's Expedition—Arrival of the Earl of Loudon—Montcalm in Canada—

PAGE

Capture of Oswego by the French—Outrages of the Earl of Loudon upon New York and Philadelphia —Expedition against Louisburg—How the Earl of Loudon Beat the French—Capture of Fort William Henry by Montcalm—Massacre of the Prisoners by the Indians—Efforts of Montcalm to Save Them—The Royal Officers Attempt to Cover Their Failures by Outraging the Colonies 298

CHAPTER XXIV.

END OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

A Change for the Better—William Pitt Prime Minister —Vigorous Measures Adopted—Recall of the Earl of Loudon—Capture of Louisburg—Abercrombie on Lake George—Advances against Ticonderoga—Death of Lord Howe—Failure of the English Attack upon Ticonderoga—Disgraceful Conduct of Abercrombie—His Retreat—Capture of Fort Frontenac—Advance of General Forbes—Grant's Defeat —The Virginians Again Save the Regulars—Capture of Fort Duquesne—Washington Retires from the Army—Ticonderoga and Crown Point Occupied by the English—Capture of Fort Niagara—The Expedition against Quebec—Failure of the First Operations—Despondency of Wolfe—He Discovers a Landing-place—The Army Scales the Heights of Abraham—Montcalm's Surprise—Battle of the Plains of Abraham — Death of Wolfe — Defeat of the French—Death of Montcalm—Surrender of Quebec —Capture of Montreal—Treaty of Paris—Canada Ceded to England—France Loses all Her American Possessions—The Cherokee War—Hostility of the Indians to the English—Pontiac's War—Death of Pontiac—Bouquet Relieves Fort Duquesne—Results of the War 309

BOOK IV.

The American Revolution.

CHAPTER XXV.

CAUSES OF THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE.

Injustice of Great Britain towards Her Colonies—The Navigation Acts—Effects of these Laws upon the Colonies—Great Britain Seeks to Destroy the Manufactures of America—Writs of Assistance—They Are Opposed—Home Manufactures Encouraged by the Americans—Ignorance of Englishmen Concerning America—Great Britain Claims the Right to Tax America—Resistance of the Colonists—Samuel Adams—The Parsons' Cause—Patrick Henry—

PAGE

England Persists in Her Determination to Tax America—Passage of the Stamp Act—Resistance of the Colonists—Meeting of the First Colonial Congress —Its Action—William Pitt—Repeal of the Stamp Act—Franklin before the House of Commons—New Taxes Imposed upon America—Increased Resistance of the Colonies—Troops Quartered in Boston—The "Massacre"—The Non-Importation Association—Growth of Hostility to England—Burning of the "Gaspé"—The Tax on Tea Retained by the King—Destruction of Tea at Boston—Wrath of the British Government—Boston Harbor Closed —Troops Quartered in Boston—The Colonists Come to the Assistance of Boston—Action of the Virginia Assembly—General Gage in Boston—The Regulating Act—Its Failure—Gage Seizes the Massachusetts Powder—Uprising of the Colony—Meeting of the Continental Congress—Its Action—Addresses to the King and People of England—The Earl of Chatham's Indorsement of Congress—The King Remains Stubborn 327

CHAPTER XXVI.

PROGRESS OF THE WAR.

Gage fortifies Boston Neck—He Summons the General Court—Recalls his Proclamation—The Provincial Congress of Massachusetts—It takes Measures for Defence—The Militia Organized—The Minute Men—Friends of America in England—Gage resolves to seize the Stores at Concord—Midnight March of the British Troops—The Alarm given—Skirmishes at Lexington and Concord—Retreat of the British—A Terrible March—Uprising of New England—Boston Invested—Dunmore seizes the Virginia Powder—Is made to pay for it—Uprising of the Middle and Southern Colonies—The Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence—Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point—Meeting of the Second Cantinental Congress—Congress resolves to sustain Massachusetts—Renewed Efforts for Peace—Congress Assumes the General Government of the Colonies—A Federal Union Organized—Its Character—A Continental Army formed—George Washington Appointed Commander-in-chief—General Officers Appointed—Condition of the Army before Boston—Inaction of Gage—Battle of Breed's Hill —A Glorious Defence—The Battle Equivalent to a Victory in its Effects upon the Country—Arrival of Washington at Cambridge—He takes Command of the Army—He Reorganizes the Army—Difficulties of the Undertaking—The Invasion of Canada Resolved upon—March of Montgomery and Arnold—Rapid Successes of Montgomery—He Captures

PAGE

Montreal—March of Arnold through the Wilderness—Arrival before Quebec--Forms a Junction with Montgomery—The Siege of Quebec—The Ice Forts—Failure of the Attack--Death of Montgomery—Retreat of the Americans from Canada—Lord Dunmore's War in Virginia—Destruction of Norfolk—The Thirteen United Colonies—Burning of Falmouth—Naval Matters—Action of Great Britain —The War to be carried on—The Hessians . . . 354

CHAPTER XXVII.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

The Siege of Boston—Difficulties of the American Army—Activity of the Privateers—Clinton's Expetion—Colonel Knox arrives from Ticonderoga with Cannon—Seizure of Dorchester Heights by Washington—The British Evacuate Boston—Royalist Plots in New York—Paper Money Issued by Congress—Gates sent to the North—The British Attack Charleston—Battle of Fort Moultrie—The Howes in New York Bay—Change in the Character of the War —Growing Sentiment in Favor of Independence— —Virginia Proposes the Colonies Assert their Independence—Action of Congress—The Declaration of Independence—Articles of Confederation Adopted by Congress—Lord Howe's Efforts at Conciliation— Addresses a Letter to Washington—Battle of Long Island—Defeat of the Americans—Retreat from Long Island—Evacuation of New York by the Americans—Loss of Fort Washington—Washington Retreats through New Jersey—He Crosses the Delaware—Darkest Period of the War—Washington's Determination to Continue the War—Lord Howe's Proclamation—Its Effect—Congress at Baltimore—Carleton invades New York—Defeats Arnold on Lake Champlain—Carleton Retires into Canada—Battle of Trenton—Happy Effects of the Victory —Congress confers Dictatiorial Powers upon Washington—Commissioners sent to France 377

CHAPTER XXVIII.

THE YEAR 1777.

Howe Attempts to Crush Washington—Battle of Princeton—The British Confined to the Seaboard—Recovery of New Jersey—The American Army in Winter Quarters at Morristown—Effects of the American Successes—Difficulty of Procuring Troops —Washington Refuses to Exchange Prisoners—His Course Approved by Congress—Measures of Congress—Naval Affairs—Tryon Burns Danbury—Gallantry of Arnold—Troubles in the Northern Department—Congress Adopts a National Flag—"The Stars and Stripes"—Course of France towards the United States—France Decides to Assist the Americans—Lafayette—His Arrival in America—Capture of the British General Prescott—Howe Threatens Philadelphia — Washington Moves Southward—Battle of the Brandywine—Washington Retreats to the Schuylkill—Wayne's Defeat at Paoli—Philadelphia Exacuated by the Americans—It Is Occupied by the British—Battle of Germantown—The British Attack the Forts on the Delaware—They Are Abandoned by the Americans—Burgoyne's Army in Canada—Advance of Burgoyne into New York—Investment of Ticonderoga—It Is Abandoned by the Americans—The Retreat to Fort Edward—Burgoyne Reaches the Hudson—Murder of Miss McCrea—Siege of Fort Schuyler—Battle of Bennington—Critical Situation of Burgoyne—Gates in Command of the American Army—Battles of Behmus' Heights and Stillwater—Surrender ot Burgoyne's Army—Clinton in the Highlands 405

CHAPTER XXIX.

AID FROM ABROAD.

Sufferings of the Army at Valley Forge—Appeals of Washington to Congress—The British in Philadelphia—The Conway Cabal—Its Disgraceful Failure —Efforts to Improve the Army—Worthlessness of Continental Bills—General Lee Exchanged—Effect of Burgoyne's Surrender upon England—The King Is Forced to Agree to Measures of Conciliation— Action of France—Louis XVI. Recognizes the Independence of the United States—Alliance Between the United States and France—Failure of the British Measures of Conciliation—Clinton Evacuates Philadelphia—Battle of Monmouth—General Lee Dismissed from the Army—Attack upon Newport —Its Failure—Withdrawal of the French Fleet to the West Indies—Outrages of the British on Long Island Sound—Massacre of Wyoming—the Winter of 1779-80—The Army in Winter Quarters—Robert Morris—Condition of Congress—Georgia Subdued by the British—Prevost Attempts to Take Charleston—Siege of Savannah—Its Failure—Capture of Stony Point—Capture of Paulus Hook—The Indians Punished—Naval Affairs—Exploits of John Paul Jones—Evacuation of Newport—Settlement of Kentucky—Conquest of the Illinois Country by George Rogers Clarke—Settlement of Tennessee. 4[illegible]

CHAPTER XXX.

THE CLOSE OF THE WAR.

Severity of the Winter of 1779–80—Sufferings of the American Army—Clinton Sails for the Carolinas—Colonel Tarleton—Capture of Charleston—Conquest of South Carolina—Gates in Command of the Southern Army—Battle of Camden—Exploits

PAGE

of Marion and Sumter—Advance of Cornwallis—Battle of King's Mountain—Gates Succeeded by General Greene—Knyphausen's Expeditions into New Jersey—Arrival of the French Fleet and Army—Arnold's Treason—The Plot for the Betrayal of West Point—Arrest of Major André—Flight of Arnold—Execution of André—Mutiny of the Pennsylvania and New Jersey Troops—Measures of Congress—Arnold Captures Richmond, Virginia—Battle of the Cowpens—Masterly Retreat of General Greene—Cornwallis Baffled—Battle of Guilford Court House—Cornwallis at Wilmington—Battle of Hobkirk's Hill—Siege of Ninety-Six—Execution of Colonel Hayne—Battle of Eutaw Springs—Washington Decides to Attack New York—The French Army on the Hudson—Financial Affairs—Resumption of Specie Payments—Message from the Count De Grasse—Cornwallis at Yorktown—The American Army Moves Southward—Siege of Yorktown—Surrender of Cornwallis—Effect of the News in England—Indian Troubles—Efforts in England for Peace—Negotiations Opened—Treaty of Paris—End of the War—The Army Disbanded—Washington Resigns His Commission 450

BOOK V.

From the Close of the Revolution to the Civil War.

CHAPTER XXXI.

THE ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION—WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Unsettled Condition of the Country—Failure of the Articles of Confederation—Desire for Reform—Meeting of the Federal Convention at Philadelphia—The Constitution of the United States—Adoption of a Decimal Currency—The Northwest Territory—Washington Elected President—His Journey to New York—Establishment of the New Government—The First Cabinet—Financial Measures—Removal of the Capital Agreed Upon—The Government at Philadelphia—The First Census—The Indians of the Northwest Conquered—Re-election of Washington—Division of Parties—The French Revolution—The United States Neutral—Citizen Genet—Efforts to Commit the United States to the French Alliance—Genet's Recall Demanded—The "Whiskey Insurrection"—Jay's Treaty with England—Opposition to It—Negotiations with Algiers—Political Disputes—Hostility to Washington—His Farewell Address—Its Effect upon the Country—Election of John Adams to the Presidency—Admission of Vermont, Kentucky and Tennessee—Retirement of Washington—His Administration . . . 481

CHAPTER XXXII.

THE ADMINISTRATIONS OF JOHN ADAMS AND THOMAS JEFFERSON.

PAGE

Inauguration of John Adams—Aggressions of France upon the United States—The American Commissioners Insulted by the French Government—The Alien and Sedition Laws—The United States Prepare for War with France—France Signifies her Willingness to Treat—New Commissioners Appointed—Settlement of the Dispute—Hostilities at Sea—Capture of the "Insurgente" and "Vengeance"—Death of Washington—Removal of the Capital to Washington City—The Second Census—Inauguration of Thomas Jefferson—The President's Message—His First Measures—Admission of Ohio—Louisiana Purchased by the United States—War with the Barbary Powers—Burning of the "Philadelphia"—Re-election of Mr. Jefferson—Aaron Burr Kills Alexander Hamilton in a Duel—Burr's Subsequent Career—Fulton's Steamboat—Outrages of England and France upon American Commerce—American Vessels Searched and American Seamen Impressed by England—Efforts to Settle these Questions—Affair of the "Chesapeake" and "Leopard"—The Embargo—Results of this Measure—Losses of the Eastern States—Election of James Madison to the Presidency—Repeal of the Embargo. 496

CHAPTER XXXIII.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES MADISON—THE SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.

Inauguration of Mr. Madison—Negotiations with Mr. Erskine—Their Failure—Seizure of American Vessels in France—Sufferings of American Ship-owners—Great Britain Stations her Ships of War off American Ports—Affair of the "President" and "Little Belt"—Trouble with the Northwestern Indians—Tecumseh—Battle of Tippecanoe—Meeting of the Twelfth Congress—Measures for Defence—Admission of Louisiana into the Union—Death of George Clinton—The British Ultimatum—War Declared Against Great Britain—Opposition to the War—The British Offer of Settlement Rejected—The War for "Free Trade and the Sailors' Rights"—Mr. Madison Re-elected—Campaign of 1812—Preparations for the Invasion of Canada——General Hull Surrenders Detroit to the British—Loss of the Northwestern Frontier—Failure of the Attack on Queenstown—Exploits of the Navy—Capture of the "Guerrière" by the "Constitution"—The Privateers—Russia Offers to Mediate between the United States and England—Financial Affairs—Harrison's Campaign—Massacre at the River Basin—Defence of Forts Meigs and Stephenson—Perry's Victory on Lake

PAGE

Erie—Battle of the Thames—Death of Tecumseh—Recovery of the Northwest—Capture of York—British Attack on Sackett's Harbor Repulsed—Removal of General Dearborn—Failure of the Campaign on the Lower Lakes—The Creek War—Jackson's Victories—Naval Affairs—The British Outrages in Chesapeake Bay—Negotiations for Peace—Capture of Fort Erie—Battles of Chippewa and Lundy's Lane—Siege of Fort Erie—Successes of the Americans—Advance of Prevost—Battle of Plattsburgh—Macdonough's Victory on Lake Champlain—Battle of Bladensburg—Capture of Washington—Destruction of the Public Buildings by the British—Attack on Baltimore—Death of General Ross—"The Star-Spangled Bunner"—The British Attack on the New England Coast—Opposition of New England to the War—The Hartford Convention—The British in Florida—General Jackson Expels Them—Jackson at New Orleans—Arrival of the British Expedition off the Coast—Vigorous Measures of Jackson—Battle of New Orleans—Defeat of the British—Naval Affairs—The Treaty of Peace—The Barbary Powers Humbled—The Tariff—The Bank of the United States—Admission of Indiana—James Monroe Elected President . 512

CHAPTER XXXIV.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF JAMES MONROE AND JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

Inauguration of Mr. Monroe—His Tour through the Eastern States—Admission of Mississippi into the Union—Troubles with the Indians—General Jackson's Vigorous Measures against the Spaniards in Florida—Purchase of Florida by the United States—Illinois Becomes a State—The First Steamship—Maine Admitted into the Union—The Slavery Question—The Missouri Compromise—Admission of Missouri as a State—The Fourth Census—Re-election of Mr. Monroe—The Tariff—Protective Policy of the Government—Recognition of the Spanish Republics—The Monroe Doctrine—Visit of Lafayette to the United States—Retirement of Mr Monroe—John Quincy Adams Elected President—His Inauguration—Rapid Improvement of the Country—Increase of Wealth and Prosperity—Internal Improvements—The Creek Lands in Georgia Ceded to the United States—Death of Thomas Jefferson and John Adams—The Anti-Masons—The Tariff of 1828—Andrew Jackson Elected President . . . 548

CHAPTER XXXV.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF ANDREW JACKSON AND MARTIN VAN BUREN.

Character of Andrew Jackson—Indian Policy of this Administration—The President Vetoes the Bill to

PAGE

Renew the Charter of the United States Bank—Debate Between Hayne and Webster—Jackson's Quarrel with Calhourn—Death of ex-President Monroe—The Cholera—Black Hawk's War—Re-election of President Jackson—The Tariff—Action of South Carolina—The Nullification Ordinance—Firmness of the President—The Matter Settled by Compromise—Patriotism of Henry Clay—The Removal of the Deposits—The Seminole War Begun—Great Fire in New York—Settlement of the French Claims—Arkansas Admitted into the Union—The National Debt Paid—Death of ex-President Madison—Martin Van Buren Elected President—Michigan Admitted into the Union—The Panic of 1837—Causes of It—Suspension of Specie Payments—Great Distress throughout the Union—The Sub-Treasury—Repudiation of State Debts—The Canadian Rebellion—The President's Course—The Seminole War Ended—The Anti-Slavery Party—Resolutions of Congress Respecting Slavery—William Henry Harrison Elected President—The Sixth Census 561

CHAPTER XXXVI.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON AND JOHN TYLER.

An Extra Session of Congress Summoned—Death of President Harrison—John Tyler Becomes President of the United States—Meeting of Congress—The Bankrupt Law—President Tyler Vetoes the Bills to Revive the United States Bank—His Quarrel with his Party—The "Tyler Whigs"—The Tariff of 1842—The Treaty of Washington—The United States Will Not Tolerate the Exercise of the Right of Search—Dorr's Rebellion—The Mormons—Invention of the Electric Telegraph—Explosion on the "Princeton"—Efforts to Secure the Annexation of Texas—Early History of Texas—The Texan War of Independence—Battle of San Jacinto—Texan Independence Established—Texas Applies for Admission into the Union—Opposition to the Measure—Significance of the Vote at the Presidential Election—James K. Polk Elected President—Texas Admitted into the Union—Iowa and Florida Become States 579

CHAPTER XXXVII.

ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES K. POLK—THE WAR WITH MEXICO.

The Oregon Question—Position of President Polk Respecting It—The Question Settled—Treaty for Settlement of Claims against Mexico—Mexico Resents the Annexation of Texas—General Taylor Ordered to Texas—He Advances to the Rio Grande

PAGE

—Battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma—The War with Mexico Begun—Invasion of Mexico—Occupation of Matamoras—Action of the United States Government—Taylor Advances into the Interior—The Storming and Capture of Monterey—The Armistice—Return of Santa Anna to Mexico—President Polk Duped—Santa Anna Seizes the Mexican Government—General Wool Joins General Taylor—Troops Taken from Taylor's Army—Advance of the Mexicans—Battle of Buena Vista—Conquest of California by Fremont and Stockton—Occupation of Santa Fé—New Mexico Conquered—Doniphan's March—Occupation of Chihuahua—Sailing of Scott's Expedition—Reduction of Vera Cruz—Santa Anna Collects a New Army—Battle of of Cerro Gordo—Occupation of Puebla by Scott—Trouble with Mr. Trist—Vigorous Measures of Santa Anna—Scott Advances upon the City of Mexico—El Peñon Turned—Battles of Contreras and Churubusco—Capture of Molino del Rey—Storming of Chapultepec—Capture of the City of Mexico—Siege of Puebla Raised—Flight of Santa Anna—Treaty of Peace Negotiated—Close of the War—Acquisition of California and New Mexico—Discovery of Gold in California—Rapid Emigration to the Pacific—Death of John Quincy Adams—The Wilmot Proviso—Revival of the Slavery Question—General Taylor Elected President. 593

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF ZACHARY TAYLOR AND MILLARD FILLMORE.

Character of General Taylor—Department of the Interior—Death of ex-President Polk—The Slavery Agitation—Views of Clay and Webster—California asks admission into the Union—Message of President Taylor—The Omnibus Bill—Efforts of Henry Clay—A Memorable Debate—Webster's "Great Union Speech"—Death of John C. Calhoun—Death of President Taylor—Millard Fillmore becomes President—Passage of the Compromise Measures of 1850—Death of Henry Clay—Dissatisfaction with the Compromise—The Fugitive Slave Law Nullified, by the Northern States—The Nashville Convention—Organization of Utah Territory—The Seventh Census—The Expedition of Lopez against Cuba—The Search for Sir John Franklin—The Grinnell Expedition—Dr. Kane's Voyages—Inauguration of Cheap Postage—Laying the Cornerstone of the new Capitol—Death of Daniel Webster—Arrival of Kossuth—The President Rejects the Tripartite Treaty—Franklin Pierce elected President—Death of William R. King 626

CHAPTER XXXIX.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF FRANKLIN PIERCE.

PAGE

Dispute with Mexico—The Gadsden Purchase—Surveys for a Pacific Railway—The Japan Expedition—Treaty with Japan—The Koszta Affair—The "Black Warrior" seized by the Cuban Officials—The "Ostend Conference"—Dismissal of the British Minister—The Kansas-Nebraska Bill—History of the Bill—Its Passage by Congress—History of the Struggle in Kansas—Conflict between the Pro-Slavery and Free Soil Settlers—Lawrence Sacked—Civil War—The Presidential Campaign of 1856—James Buchanan elected President of the United States—Rapid Increase of the Republican Party . 63

CHAPTER XL.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES BUCHANAN.

Inauguration of Mr. Buchanan—The Mormon Rebellion—The Financial Crisis of 1857—Laying of the Atlantic Telegraphic Cable—Minnesota admitted into the Union—The San Juan Affair—Admission of Oregon into the Union—The Kansas Question—The Lecompton Constitution—Its Defeat—The Wyandotte Constitution—Admission of Kansas into the Union—The John Brown Raid—Prompt Action of the Government—Brown and his Companions Surrendered to the State of Virginia—Their Trial and Execution—Presidential Campaign of 1860—Rupture of the Democratic Party—Abraham Lincoln elected President of the United States—Secession of South Carolina—Reasons for this Act—Secession of the other Cotton States—Major Anderson Occupies Fort Sumter—Trying Position of the General Government—Course of Mr. Buchanan—The "Star of the West" fired upon by the South Carolina Batteries—Organization of the Confederate States of America—Jefferson Davis elected President of the Southern Republic—The Peace Congress—Its Failure 649

BOOK VI.

The Civil War.

CHAPTER XLI.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN

Inauguration of President Lincoln—His History—The Confederate Commissioners at Washington—Attack upon Fort Sumter by the Confederates—The President calls for Troops—Response of the North and West—Secession of the Border States—Opening Events of the War in Virginia—Withdrawal of West Virginia—Admitted into the Union as a Separate State—Meeting of Congress—The West Virginia

PAGE

Campaign- -Battle of Bull Run—The War in Missouri—Kentucky Occupied—The Blockade—Capture of Port Royal—The "Trent" Affair—Insurrection in East Tennessee—State of Affairs at the Opening of the Year 1862—Edwin M. Stanton made Secretary of War—Capture of Forts Henry and Donelson—The Confederates fall back from Kentucky—Battle of Shiloh—Capture of Island No. 10—Evacuation of Corinth—Capture of Memphis—Bragg's Kentucky Campaign—His Retreat into Tennessee —Battles of Iuka and Corinth—Battle of Murfreesboro', or Stone River—Grant's Campaign against Vicksburg—Its Failure—The War beyond the Mississippi—Battle of Pea Ridge—Capture of Roanoke Island—Capture of New Orleans—Surrender of Fort Pulaski—The War in Virginia—Johnston's Retreat from Centreville—Battle between the "Monitor" and "Virginia"—The Move to the Peninsula—Johnston Retreats to the Chickahominy—Battle of Seven Pines—Jackson's Successes in the Valley of Virginia—The Seven Days' Battles before Richmond —Battle of Cedar Mountain—Defeat of General Pope's Army—Lee Invades Maryland—Capture of Harper's Ferry—Battles of South Mountain and Antietam—Retreat of Lee into Virginia—McClellan Removed—Battle of Fredericksburg 666

CHAPTER XLII.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN—THE CIVIL WAR—CONCLUDED.

The Emancipation Proclamation—Battle of Chancellorsville—Death of Stonewall Jackson—Invasion of the North by Lee's Army—Battle of Gettysburg—Retreat of Lee into Virginia—Grant's Army crosses the Mississippi—Battle of Champion Hills—Investment of Vicksburg—Surrender of Vicksburg and Port Hudson—Battle of Chickamauga—Rosecrans shut up in Chattanooga—Grant in command of the Western Armies—Battles of Lookout Mountain and Mission Ridge—Defeat of Bragg's Army—The Campaign in East Tennessee—Retreat of Longstreet—Capture of Galveston—Attack on Charleston—Capture of Fort Wagner—Charleston Bombarded—State of Affairs in the Spring of 1864—The Red River Expedition—Grant made Lieutenant-General—Advance of the Army of the Potomac—Battles of the Wilderness, Spottsylvania and Cold Harbor—Sheridan's Raid—Death of General J. E. B. Stuart—Battle of New Market—Early sent into the Valley of Virginia—Butler's Army at Bermuda Hundreds—Grant crosses the James River—The Siege of Petersburg begun—Early's Raid upon Washington—Sheridan defeats Early at Winchester and Fisher's Hill—Battle of Cedar Creek—The final Defeat of Early's

PAGE

Army—Sherman's Advance to Atlanta—Johnston Removed—Defeat of Hood before Atlanta—Evacuation of Atlanta—Hood's Invasion of Tennessee —Battle of Franklin—Siege of Nashville—Hood Defeated at Nashville—His Retreat—Sherman's "March to the Sea"—Capture of Savannah—Battle of Mobile Bay—Attack on Fort Fisher—The Confederate Cruisers—Sinking of the "Alabama" by the "Kearsarge"—Re-election of President Lincoln—Admission of Nevada into the Union —The Hampton Roads Peace Conference—Capture of Fort Fisher—Occupation of Wilmington—Sherman advances through South Carolina—Evacuation of Charleston—Battles of Averasboro' and Bentonville—Sherman at Goldsboro'—Critical Situation of Lee's Army—Attack on Fort Steadman—Sheridan joins Grant—Advance of Grant's Army—Battle of Five Forks—Attack on Petersburg—Evacuation of Richmond and Petersburg—Retreat of Lee's Army —Richmond Occupied—Surrender of General Lee's Army—Rejoicings in the North—Assassination of President Lincoln—Death of Booth—Execution of the Conspirators—Johnston Surrenders—Surrender of the other Confederate Forces—Capture of Jefferson Davis—Close of the War 71

CHAPTER XLIII.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF ANDREW JOHNSON.

The New President—Return of the Army to Civil Life—The Public Debt—The Reconstruction Question—Action of the President—He declares the Southern States Readmitted into the Union—The Fifteenth Amendment—Meeting of Congress—The President's Acts Annulled—Reconstruction Policy of Congress—The Fourteenth Amendment—The Freedman's Bureau and Civil Rights Bill—The Tenure of Office Act—Admission of Nebraska into the Union—The Southern States Organized as Military Districts—Admission of Southern States into the Union—The Fourteenth Amendment Ratified—President Johnson's Quarrel with Secretary Stanton —Impeachment of the President—His Acquittal—Release of Jefferson Davis—Indian War—The French in Mexico—Fall of the Mexican Empire—Laying of the Atlantic Telegraph—Purchase of Alaska—Naturlization Treaty with Germany—Treaty with China—Death of General Scott—Death of ex-President Buchanan—General Grant Elected President—The Fifteenth Amendment 79

CHAPTER XLIV.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF ULYSSES S. GRANT.

Early Life of President Grant—Completion of the Pacific Railway—Death of ex-President Pierce—

PAGE

The Fifteenth Amendment Ratified—The Enforcement Act—The Test Oath Abolished—The Constitutionality of the Legal-Tender Act Affirmed—The Income Tax Repealed—The Alabama Claims—Treaty of Washington—The Geneva Conference—Award in Favor of the United States—Burning of Chicago—The Civil Disabilities Removed from the Southern People—Re-election of General Grant—Great Fire at Boston—The Modoc War—Murder of General Canby and the Peace Commissioners—Execution of the Modoc Chiefs—The Panic of 1873—Bill for the Resumption of Specie Payments—The Centennial Exhibition—The Sioux War—Death of General Custer—Presidential Election—The Electoral Commission—Count of the Vote—Hayes Declared Elected 801

CHAPTER XLV.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

Inauguration of President Hayes—Sketch of the New President—Civil Service Reform—Troops in South Carolina—Two Legislatures in Session—Investigation by President Hayes—Prompt Action—Settlement of the Troubles in South Carolina and Louisiana—General Grant's Tour Around the World—Enthusiastic Reception by the Crowned Heads of Other Nations—Election of General Garfield as President 841

CHAPTER XLVI.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES A. GARFIELD.

General Garfield Declared President—Inaugural Ceremonies—Sketch of the New President—The Star Route Cases—Assassination of President Garfield—His Illness—Removal to Long Branch—Death of President Garfield—Inauguration of President Arthur—Indictment of Guiteau for Murder—Trial and Execution of Garfield's Assassin—The Greely Arctic Expedition—Reaching a Point Beyond the Eighty-first Parallel—Lieutenant Lockwood's Heroic Exploit—Celebration of the Landing of William Penn—Great Suspension Bridge between New York and Brooklyn 849

CHAPTER XLVII.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF GROVER CLEVELAND.

Mr. Cleveland's Early Life—Governor of New York—Elected President—Inauguration Ceremonies—The New Cabinet—Death of General Grant—Honors to the Illustrious Dead—

PAGE

Death of General George B. McClellan—Pension Granted to the Widow of President Grant—President Cleveland's Message—Bill Regulating the Presidential Succession—Labor Agitations—Riot at Chicago Instigated by "Anarchists"—Statue of Liberty Enlightening the World—President Cleveland's Marriage—Nomination of President Cleveland—Nomination of Benjamin Harrison—Harrison's Election 864

CHAPTER XLVIII.

THE ADMINISTRATION OF BENJAMIN HARRISON.

Inauguration of President Harrison—President Harrison's Inaugural Address—Celebration of the Centennial Anniversary of Washington's Inauguration—The New Cabinet—Terrible Calamity at Johnstown—Admission of New States—President's Message to the Fifty-first Congress—Legislation of the First Session of the Fifty-first Congress—The New Tariff Law—Indian War in the Northwest—Death of Sitting Bull—Restriction of Immigration—Mob Law in New Orleans—Trouble in Chile—Political Conventions of 1892—Labor Contest at Homestead—Defeat of the Silver Bill . . 878

CHAPTER XLIX.

SECOND ADMINISTRATION OF GROVER CLEVELAND

Second Inauguration of President Cleveland—The New Cabinet—Extraordinary Session of Congress—Repeal of the Sherman Silver Law—New Tariff Bill—The Bill Passes the House of Representatives—Discussion in the Senate—Over Six Hundred Amendments—Senate Bill Rejected by the House—Afterwards Passed—The President Refuses to Sign the Bill—Bland Seigniorage Bill—Utah Admitted as a State—Congress Investigates the Relations of the United States to Hawaii—Subsequent Events—Bond Issue of 1896 898

CHAPTER L.

CUBA AND VENEZUELA.

Story of Cuban Insurrections—Great Revolution of 1848—Gallant Uprising of the People for Life and Liberty—Long and Bitter Struggle—Political Situation in Cuba—Insurrection of 1895-96—Boundary Line Dispute between Venezuela and Great Britain—The Monroe Doctrine Asserted 901

LATEST EVENTS 949

OUR NEW POSSESSIONS 999

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
FRONTISPIECE.	
Mounds at Marrietta, Ohio	19
A Dead Town of the Moquis Indians	21
Indian Village in Winter	24
Navajo Boy	25
Pueblo Indian at Prayer	26
Civilized Indian Woman	27
Thorvald Wounded by the Red Men	30
Christopher Columbus	33
Columbus Watching for Land	37
Landing of Columbus	38
Reception of Columbus by Ferdinand and Isabella	39
Norse Sea-king	41
Sebastian Cabot	44
Samuel Champlain	47
Cabot on the Shores of Labrador	48
The Coast of Florida	51
Hernando Cortez	52
Fernando De Soto	55
The Spaniards Descending the Mississippi after the Death of De Soto	59
The Renowned Explorer, Sir Martin Frobisher	64
Sir Walter Raleigh	65
Frobisher and His Ships Passing Greenwich	66
Queen Elizabeth	67
Murder of White's Assistant	70
Captain John Smith	76
Pocahontas Interceding for the Life of Captain John Smith	78
Pocahontas	80
Building the First House in Jamestown	82
Types of North American Indians	85
Massacre of Settlers by Indians	90
Flight of the Indians after the Massacre	92
Indian Weapons	94
King Charles II	99
Indians Making a Midnight Attack upon Settlers	103
Bacon Demands the Commission of Berkley	105
Cecil, Second Lord Baltimore	113
A Civilized Indian	115
Oliver Cromwell	116
William III	118
Chained Bible, Time of James I	122
The Puritans in Conference with James I	124
The Pilgrims at Plymouth	126
The "Mayflower" at Plymouth Harbor	128
Governor Brewster's Chair	129
Landing of the Pilgrims	131
The First Church in New England	133
The Treaty between Plymouth Colony and Massasoit	135
John Endicott	139
John Winthrop	141
Roger Williams Seeking Refuge Among the Indians	145
Landing of Roger Williams at Providence	147
John Hampden	151
A Group of Indians	153
Yale College	155
An American Free School	159
John Eliot Preaching to the Indians	162
Indian Medicine Man	164
Indian Life in Their Native Forests	170
King Philip	172
The Burning of Brookfield by the Indians	173
Mrs. Rowlandson Captured by the Indians	175
Sir Edmund Andros	178
The Charter Oak	180
The Rev. Cotton Mather	183
Execution of the Rev. George Burroughs	189
Nova Zembla—From an Old Print	194
Mock Suns Seen by Early Explorers	195
Henry Hudson	196
Hudson Strait	197
Mutiny on Hudson's Ship	198
First Settlement of New York	199
Peter Stuyvesant	203
Gustavus Adolphus	205
Queen Anne	212
William Penn	217
William Penn's Treaty with the Indians	220
Penn Treaty Monument	221
The Old Swedes' Church, Built in 1641	222
Indian Amusements—Canoe Race between Squaws	223
The Coast of North Carolina	229
A Settler's Cabin	231
Birds'-Eye View of Charleston, South Carolina	233
Scene on a Tributary of the St. John's River	235

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
King George I.	239
General Oglethorpe	243
A Southern Plantation	244
John Wesley	245
George Whitefield	246
University and Normal School Buildings at Toronto in 1892	254
Falls of St. Anthony	261
Murder of La Salle	263
View of Montreal from Mount Royal	268
Return of the Daughter of Eunice Williams	272
Cruel Murder of Rasle	274
French Explorers Buying Leaden Plates	279
Scenes in the Allegheny Mountains	281
The Half King	285
Benjamin Franklin	289
Wills' Creek Meadows	291
Disastrous Defeat of General Braddock	294
Burning of Kittaning by General Armstrong	296
The Palisades of the Hudson	302
Site of Fort William Henry on Lake George	305
Montcalm	306
Arrival of Indian Allies at the French Camp	307
William Pitt	310
Washington Planting the Flag on Fort Duquesne	315
Niagara Falls	317
General James Wolfe	318
Death of General Wolfe before Quebec	320
King George III.	321
Visit of Pontiac and the Indians to Major Gladwin	324
Scene near the Source of the Raritan River	329
Samuel Adams	332
Patrick Henry	333
Colonel Barré	335
Hanging a Stamp Act Official in Effigy	337
Stamp Act Official Beaten by the People	339
British Troops in Boston	342
Throwing the Tea Overboard in Boston Harbor	347
John Hancock	349
Carpenter's Hall, Philadelphia	351
The Minute Man	355
The Battle of Lexington, April 19, 1775	356
Death of Isaac Davis	358
Capture of Ticonderoga by Ethan Allen	360
Signers of the Mecklenburg Declaration	361
General Israel Putnam	364
General Burgoyne	365
Battle of Bunker Hill	368
Death of Major Pitcairn	370
Bunker Hill Monument	372
General Richard Montgomery	374
General Henry Knox	378
Medal Struck by Congress in Honor of the Recapture of Boston	380
Continental Bills	381
Sergeant Jasper at Fort Moultrie	383
Independence Hall, Philadelphia	385
House in which the Declaration of Independence was Written, Philadelphia	386
Signing the Declaration of Independence	387
Old Bell of Independence Hall	388
Signatures of the Signers of the Declaration of Independence	390
General John Sullivan	393
The Declaration of Independence Read to the Army	396
General Charles Lee	398
Washington Crossing the Delaware	401
Washington Calls on Colonel Rahl	403
American Marksman in a Tree	406
Washington's Quarters at Morristown	408
General Philip Schuyler	411
Flag and Shield	412
Seal of the United States—Obverse	412
Seal of the United States—Reverse	412
The Marquis de Lafayette	413
Arrest of General Prescott	415
Lafayette and Washington	417
General Burgoyne Addressing the Indians	420
Ruins of Fort Ticonderoga	421
Herkimer Mortally Wounded	423
General John Stark	424
General Horatio Gates	426
An American Rifleman	431
Louis XVI.	434
Sir Henry Clinton	435
Indian Scalp Dance	439
General Benjamin Lincoln	441
Gallant Charge of Count Pulaski	442
General Anthony Wayne	443
Lieutenant-Colonel Henry Lee	444
Paul Jones Seizing the Silver Plate of Lady Selkirk	445
John Paul Jones	446
Medal Struck in Honor of Paul Jones—Obverse	447
Medal Struck in Honor of Paul Jones—Reverse	447
Daniel Boone	448
Lord Cornwallis	453
Total Rout of the Loyal Recruits	454
General Francis Marion	455
General Nathaniel Greene	457
"Now Put Watts into them, Boys,"	458
Benedict Arnold	460
Major André	461
Escape of Benedict Arnold	463
General Daniel Morgan	466
Lord Rawden, afterwards Marquis of Hastings	468
Scene in the Highlands of the Hudson	471
View of Yorktown	473
Surrender of Lord Cornwallis	474

PAGE

Captain Huddy led from Prison to be Hanged . . . 477
Washington's Headquarters at Newburg, New York . 479
The Room with Seven Doors and One Window . . 479
Oliver Ellsworth 482
Washington's Reception at Trenton 483
Rufus King 484
C. C. Pinckney 485
The Inauguration of Washington 486
George Washington 487
Indian Child in Cradle 488
Alexander Hamilton 489
Rufus Putman 490
John Jay 491
Fisher Ames 492
Scene in the Mammoth Cave, Kentucky 493
Washington's Home at Mount Vernon 494
John Adams 497
John Marshall 498
Washington's Grave, Mount Vernon 500
Thomas Jefferson 501
Aaron Burr 502
Robert R. Livingston 503
Napoleon I. 504
Captain (afterward Commodore) Bainbridge and the Dey of Algiers 505
Duel between Burr and Hamilton 506
Fulton's First Steamboat 507
William Pinkney 509
Officers of the "Chesapeake" Surrendering their Swords 510
James Madison 513
A Pioneer Hero's Fight with the Savages 516
John Randolph 517
Stephen Van Rensselaer 519
Massacre by Indians at Fort Dearborn 520
Capture of the "Guerriere" by the "Constitution" . 522
Commodore Hull 523
The "Wasp" Boarding the "Frolic" 524
Indians Torturing Prisoners 526
Commodore Perry 527
Perry's Victory on Lake Erie 528
Battle of the Thames—Death of Tecumseh 529
Captain (afterward Sir Philip) Broke 531
Fight between the "Chesapeake" and the "Shannon" 533
Scene of the Battle of Lake Champlain 536
Commodore MacDonough 537
A New England Farm-house 539
Joseph Story 540
The Plain of Chalmette—Scene of the Battle of New Orleans 541
Pakenham Leading the Attack on New Orleans . . . 543
Commodore Decatur 544
Decatur and the Dey of Algiers 545
William C. C. Claiborne 546

PAGE

James Monroe 549
Old Way of Picking Cotton 551
Henry Clay 553
Unique Cotton Harvester 555
John Quincy Adams 557
Steamboat Loading with Cotton 558
Statue of Jefferson at Washington 559
Daniel Webster 560
Andrew Jackson 562
Robert Y. Hayne 563
A Lumberman's Camp in the Woods of Maine . . . 564
John C. Calhourn 565
Edward Livingston 566
The United States Treasury at Washington, D. C. . . 567
Osceola, Chief of the Seminoles 566
Martin Van Buren 571
Canadian Trappers 574
The Smithsonian Institution, Washington, D. C. . . 575
View of the National Capitol at Washington 577
William Henry Harrison 580
John Tyler 581
Fac-Simile, According to Joe Smith, of the Writing on the Original Plates of the "Book Mormon" . . 583
Murder of the Smiths 584
The Mormon Hand-cart Company Crossing the Plains 585
Mormon Tabernacle at Salt Lake, Utah 586
Professor Morse 587
A Village in Texas 588
Santa Anna 589
General Houston 590
General Post Office, Washington 591
James K. Polk 594
Columbia River, Oregon 595
Battle of Palo Alto 598
Major Ringgold Mortally Wounded 599
Charge of the Dragoons 600
General Winfield Scott 601
Capture of a Battery at Monterey 603
Lieutenant Grant Going for Ammunition at Monterey 604
Mexican Cart and Oxen 607
Battle of Buena Vista 609
General View of the Yosemite Valley 611
The Great Cañon and Lower Falls, Yellowstone . . 613
East Side of Plaza—Sante Fé 614
Bombardment of Vera Cruz 616
Battle of Cerro Gordo 617
Storming of Chapultepec 621
General Scott Entering the City of Mexico 622
A Mexican Cathedral 623
Hydraulic Mining 624
Zachary Taylor 627
The White House, Washington, D. C. 628

	PAGE
Robert Toombs	629
Millard Fillmore	631
Portraits of Leading Mormons	632
Cuban Fillibusters on the March	633
Sir John F lin	635
Relics of Franklin's Polar Voyage	636
Dr. E. K. Kane and his Companions	637
Franklin Pierce	640
Stephen A Douglas	642
Salmon P. Chase	644
Scene on the Allegheny River	645
Charles Sumner	647
James Buchanan	650
The Mormon Temple, Salt Lake City, Utah	651
Mountain Meadow Massacre	652
Washington Irving	655
Edward Everett	658
Bridge Crossing the Susquehanna River at Harrisburg	660
Jefferson Davis	663
Inauguration of Jefferson Davis	664
Abraham Lincoln	666
William H. Seward	667
Arrival of President Lincoln at the Capitol	668
Fort Prickens	669
Major Anderson	670
Fort Sumter in 1861	671
Forts Sumter and Moultrie	672
Fort Moultrie, Charleston Harbor	673
The Confederate Flag	674
The Sixth Massachusetts Regiment Passing through Baltimore	675
Fortifications in and around Washington	676
Portraits of Prominent Federal Generals	677
Map Showing the Shenandoah Valley	678
The Battle of Manassas, or Bull Run	680
Capitol at Richmond Virginia	681
Portraits of Prominent Federal Generals	682
The "Nashville" Destroying a Federal "Merchantman"	684
Lieutenant-General Polk	685
John M. Mason	686
John Slidell	686
The Arrest of Mason and Slidell on the British Steamer "Trent"	687
Grant's Headquarters near Fort Donelson	688
A View of the Country, Showing Fort Donelson in the Distance	689
Map Showing Pittsburg Landing and Corinth	690
Charge of the Federals at Corinth	691
Iron-clad Gunboat	692
Island No. 10	694
Burning Horses at Shiloh	695
Massacre of the Morrisites	696
Portraits of Prominent Confederate Generals	697
General Sherman at the Outbreak of the War	699
Burnside's Expedition Crossing Hatteras Bar	700
Portraits of the Principal Naval Commanders during the War	702
The "Merrimac" Sinking the "Cumberland"	704
General George B. McClellan	706
View of the Chickahominy near Mechanicsville	707
Map of Northern Virginia	708
Lieutenant-General T. J. Jackson	709
Portraits of Prominent Confederate Generals	711
Portraits of Prominent Federal Generals	714
Major-General Philip Kearney	715
McClellan at the Battle of Antietam	717
View of Antietam Battle Ground	718
Portraits of Some of the Generals of the Army of the Potomac	720
General John Sedgwick	721
General George G. Meade	722
Battle of Gettysburg	724
Positions during the First Day's Fight at Gettysburg	727
Positions during the Second and Third Days' Fight at Gettysburg	727
Map Showing Vicksburg and Its Approaches	730
Vicksburg, Mississippi	731
Gunboats Running Past Vicksburg at Night	732
General John C. Pemberton	733
Grant's Headquarters near Vicksburg	734
Map of the Chickamauga and Chattanooga Campaigns	735
Positions of the Armies at the Battle of Missionary Ridge	736
Grant's Headquarters at Chattanooga	737
Capture of Lookout Mountain	738
Missionary Ridge from the Cemetery at Chattanooga	739
The Attack on Fort Sumter by the Monitor Fleet	740
Portraits of Prominent Federal Generals	721
Fort De Russy	742
Bailey's Red River Dam	743
Grant Writing Dispatches before Crossing the Ripadan	744
General James Longstreet	745
The Place where Sedgwick was Killed	746
General Fitzhugh Lee	747
Battle of Cold Harbor	748
Battle of Spottsylvania Court-house	749
General J. E. B. Stuart	750
General Winfield S. Hancock	751
Stuart's Cavalry Cutting Telegraph Wires	752
Pontoon Bridge at Deep Bottom	753
General Philip H. Sheridan	754
Portraits of Federal Cavalry Commanders	755
Sheridan's Cavalry Charge at Cedar Creek	756

PAGE

Country between Chattanooga and Atlanta 757
General Joseph E. Johnston 758
General James B. McPherson 761
General George H. Thomas 762
Portraits of Sherman and some of his Commanders . 763
The Country Traversed by Sherman in His March through Georgia 764
Map Showing the City of Mobile and Its Defences . . 765
Commodore David G. Farragut 766
Cape Fear River and Approaches to Wilmington, N. C. 767
Boat on the "Deerhound" Rescuing Captain Semmes 768
Sinking of the "Alabama" by the "Kearsarge" . . 769
Raphael Semmes 770
Portraits of Prominent Federal Generals 771
Major-General J. M. Schofield 772
Portraits of Federal Cavalry Commanders 773
Interior of Fort Steadman 774
Positions of the Armies near Petersburg, Va. 775
General Robert E. Lee 776
The Last Cavalry Charge of the War 777
General John B. Gordon 780
The McLean House 781
Surrender of General Lee 782
General Lee's Farewell to His Soldiers 783
Assassination of President Lincoln 785
The Grave of President Lincoln 786
Interview between Generals Sherman and Johnston 788
Andrew Johnson 791
Ruins of Richmond after the War 792
Fort Warren, Boston Harbor 793
Lincoln Monument in Fairmount Park, Philadelphia 795
Emperor Maximilian 798
Natives of Alaska Building Houses 799
Ulysses S. Grant 802
View on the Greene River at the Crossing of the Union Pacific Railroad, Wyoming 803
President Grant on his way to the Inauguration. . . 804
Humboldt Palisades, Pacific Railway 805
Cheyenne Indians Reconnoitering the First Train on the Pacific Railroad 806
The Geneva Board of Arbitration Settling the Alabama Claims 807
The Burning of Chicago 808
Horace Greeley 809
President Grant Passing Through the Rotunda to take the Oath of Office 810
Mrs. U. S. Grant. 811
The Lava Beds—Scene of the Modoc War 812
Scene in the New York Stock Exchange During the Panic of 1873 814
Scene on the Colorado River 815

PAGE

View in the Grand Canyon of the Colorado River . 818
Memorial Hall, Fairmount Park, Philadelphia . . . 820
View of the Main Building of the International Centennial Exhibition 822
General J. R. Hawley. 824
Intersection of Ninth and Chestnut Streets, Philadelphia 826
Obverse of Centennial Medal 827
Reverse of Centennial Medal 827
Shoshone Falls, Idaho 828
General George Crook. 829
Indians Surprised and Defeated 830
Horseshoe Bend on the Pennsylvania Railroad near Altoona 831
Canyon of the Lodore and Greene Rivers, Wyoming. 832
Samuel J. Tilden 833
Thomas A. Hendricks 834
Point Pleasant, Ohio, the Birthplace of General Grant 835
Samuel J. Randall 836
The New Department of State, Washington, D. C . . 837
George F. Edmunds 838
Thomas F. Bayard 839
Rutherford B. Hayes 842
William A. Wheeler 843
Arrival of General Grant at San Francisco in the Steamer "City of Tokio" 844
William H. English 845
The "Jeannette" Crushed by the Ice 846
The Mirage—A Scene in the Arctic Regions 847
James A. Garfield 850
Mrs. Lucretia R. Garfield 851
James G. Blaine 852
The Assassination of James A. Garfield 853
Death-bed of James A. Garfield 854
The Catafalque at Cleveland, Ohio 855
James A. Garfield Lying in State in the Rotunda of the Capitol at Washington 856
Chester A. Arthur 857
John A. Logan 858
John G. Carlisle 859
Sanderson's Hope, Upernavik, Baffin Bay 860
Arctic Region—Beechey Head 861
Scene in the Arctic Region—Among the Icebergs . . 862
The Brooklyn Suspension Bridge 863
Grover Cleveland. 865
Chief Justice Waite Administering the Oath of Office to President Cleveland 866
Death of General Grant 867
Cottage in which Grant Died at Mount McGregor . . 868
General Grant's Temporary Tomb, Riverside Park, New York 869
Mrs. Frances Folsom Cleveland. 872
The New Post Office Building, Philadelphia 873

PAGE

The New City Hall, Philadelphia 874
Steamship Docks on the Delaware River, Philadelphia 875
Allen G. Thurman 876
Levi P. Morton 877
Benjamin Harrison 879
Bird's eye View of New York City 880
The Post Office, New York 881
The Battery and Castle Garden, New York . . . 882
The Harbor of New York 883
The Break in South Forks Dam, Johnstown, Pa. 888
William McKinley 885
Charles F. Crisp 886

PAGE

Sitting Bull in his War Dress 887
Chief American Horse 888
General Nelson A. Miles 889
Captain Wallace Found After the Wounded Knee Fight 890
Scene on the Yellowstone River 892
Manila Harbor– Scene of the Great Battle . . . 961
Uniforms of U. S. Marines and Naval Officers . 963
Street Scene in Manila—Philippine Islands . . 964
Bombardment of San Juan, Porto Rico 965
Lieut. R. P. Hobson 966
Harbor and Fortifications of Santiago 968

Superb Phototype (Full-page) Engravings Illustrating the Story of the New World.

Christopher Columbus
Landing of Columbus.
Columbus before Ferdinand and Isabella.
De Soto Discovering the Mississippi.
General Pepperell at the Siege of Louisburg.
George Washington.
Putnam's Escape at Horseneck.
Battle of Bennington.
General Harrison and Tecumseh.
Commodore Perry at the Battle of Lake Erie.
General Scott at the Battle of Cerro Gordo.
Bombardment of Island No. 10.
Capture of New Orleans.
Battle of Gettysburg.
Columbus Sighting Land.
The Landing of Roger Williams.
Boston Massacre, 1770.
Patrick Henry.
Washington Reviewing the Army.
Massacre at Fort Mimms.
Decatur's Conflict with the "Algerine" at Tripoli.
Capture of Roanoke Island.
General William T. Sherman.
Battle of Antietam.
Battle of Chickamauga.
General P. H. Sheridan.
Battle of Lookout Mountain.
General George G. Meade.
Capture of Fort Donaldson, Tenn.
Battle of Balls Bluff, Va.
General Grant.
U. S. Cruiser "Baltimore."
U. S. Cruiser "Petrel."
U. S. Cruiser "Philadelphia."
U. S. Cruiser "Newark."
U. S. Cruiser "Yorktown."
U. S. Cruiser "San Francisco."
U. S. Cruiser "Columbia."
U. S. Cruiser "Chicago."
U. S. Battleship "Texas."
U. S. Battleship "Oregon."
U. S. Battleship "Maine."
U. S. Battleship "Indiana."
U. S. Battleship "Iowa."
U. S. Monitor "Miantonomoh."
U. S. Ram "Katahdin."
U. S. Dynamite Cruiser "Vesuvius."
U. S. Cruiser "Olympia."
William McKinley.
Captain Chas. D. Sigsbee.
Destruction of the Battleship "Maine."
Admiral George Dewey.
Great American Victory at Manila.
Admiral W. T. Sampson.
Bombardment of San Juan, Porto Rico.
General Nelson A. Miles.
Lieut. R. P. Hobson.
Landing of General Shafter in Cuba.
Gallant Charge of General Wheeler's Cavalry.
United States Forces Capturing the Intrenchments at Santiago.
Commodore W. S. Schley.
Captain Robley D. Evans.
Working Rapid-fire Guns.

BATTLE OF SANTIAGO—FURIOUS

SHIPS OF THE AMERICAN NAVY

1. NASHVILLE 2. DETROIT 3. HELENA 4. NEWARK 5. BENNINGTON 6. BROOKLYN 7. OLYMPIA 8. CASTINE 9. CHARLESTON 10. MINNEAPOLIS
11. COLUMBIA 12. MONTEREY 13. IOWA 14. WYANDOTTE 15. BALTIMORE 16. CINCINNATI 17. TEXAS 18. ERICSSON 19. OREGON 20. KATAHDIN

ASSAULT OF THE AMERICANS

STANDARD HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

BOOK I

Discovery of the Western Continent

CHAPTER I

Strange People in a Strange Land

Earliest Inhabitants of the United States—The Mound Builders—Remarkable Works Constructed by Them—Evidences of a Primitive Civilization—Indications of the Antiquity of this Period—The American Indians—Division of the Country Among the Tribes—Names and Location of the Various Tribes—Organization and Government of the Indians—Their Dress, Manners and Customs—Villages—Indian Inventions—The War Dance—Legends of the Norsemen Respecting the Discovery of America.

WE do not know who were the inhabitants, or what was the history of North America previous to its discovery and settlement by the Europeans. That it was at some remote period occupied by a more civilized and powerful race than the Indians, found by the first explorers, is very certain; but who they were, what was their history, or what the cause of their extinction, are among the profoundest mysteries of the past. Traces as distinct as those which mark the various physical changes which the continent has undergone, exist to show that these primitive inhabitants were both numerous and far advanced in civilization; but this is all that we know concerning them.

In various parts of the country, and especially in the valley of the Mississippi, large mounds and other structures of earth and stone, but chiefly of earth, remain to show the magnitude of the works constructed by these people, to whom the name "Mound Builders" is generally applied. Some of these earthworks embrace as much as fifteen or sixteen miles of embankment.

As no domestic animals existed in this country at that period, these works must have been constructed by bringing the earth used in them by hand; a fact which shows that the primitive population was a large one. The construction of the works proves that they had considerable engineering skill. The square, the circle, the ellipse, and the octagon are all used in these structures, being all combined in a single system of works in some places. The proportions are always perfect. The square is always a true square, and the circle a true circle. Many implements and ornaments of copper, silver, and precious stones—such as axes, chisels, knives, bracelets, beads, and pieces of thread and cloth, and well-shaped vases of pottery have been found in these mounds, and show

BATTLE OF SANTIAGO—FURIOUS ASSAULT OF THE AMERICANS

the extent of the civilization of the "Mound Builders" and their knowledge of the arts.

In the region of Lake Superior are found old copper mines worked by these ancient people. In one of these mines there was discovered an immense block of copper weighing nearly six tons. It had been left in the process of removal to the top of the mine, nearly thirty feet above, and was supported on logs of wood which were partly petrified. The stone and copper tools used by the miners were discovered lying about as they had been left by their owners ages before. At the mouth of this mine are piles of earth thrown out in digging it, and out of these embankments trees are growing which are nearly four hundred years old.

Who Were the "Mound Builders?"

The following interesting account of the mounds and their builders is from the pen of Mr. J. H. Beadle, who has kindly given us permission to quote from his valuable work, entitled *The Undeveloped West*;

In his description, Mr. Beadle says:

A people for whom we have no name, vaguely included under the general term of Mound Builders, have left evidences of extensive works in the vicinity of the Mississippi and Ohio Rivers and their tributaries. These are of three kinds: mounds, square and circular inclosures, and raised embankments of various forms. Of mounds, the following are most important and best known: One at Grave Creek, West Virginia, 70 feet high and 1,000 feet in circumference at the base; one near Miamisburg, Ohio, 68 feet high and 852 feet in circumference; the great truncated pyramid at Cahokia, Illinois, 700 feet long, 500 wide, and 90 in height; the immense square mound, with face of 188 feet, near Marietta, Ohio; and some hundreds of inferior mounds from 60 to 30 feet in height, in different States, from Wisconsin to the mouth of the Mississippi. Unlike all the mounds in Mexico and Central and South America, those in our country have no trace of buildings on them. Why? Until I visited Arizona I had no answer. There the solution was easy. In those regions stone was abundant and timber was scarce; here the reverse was the case. Our predecessors built of wood, the others of stone; the works of the latter remain to this day, while wooden buildings would leave no trace after one or two centuries, if indeed they were not burnt by the savages as soon as abandoned.

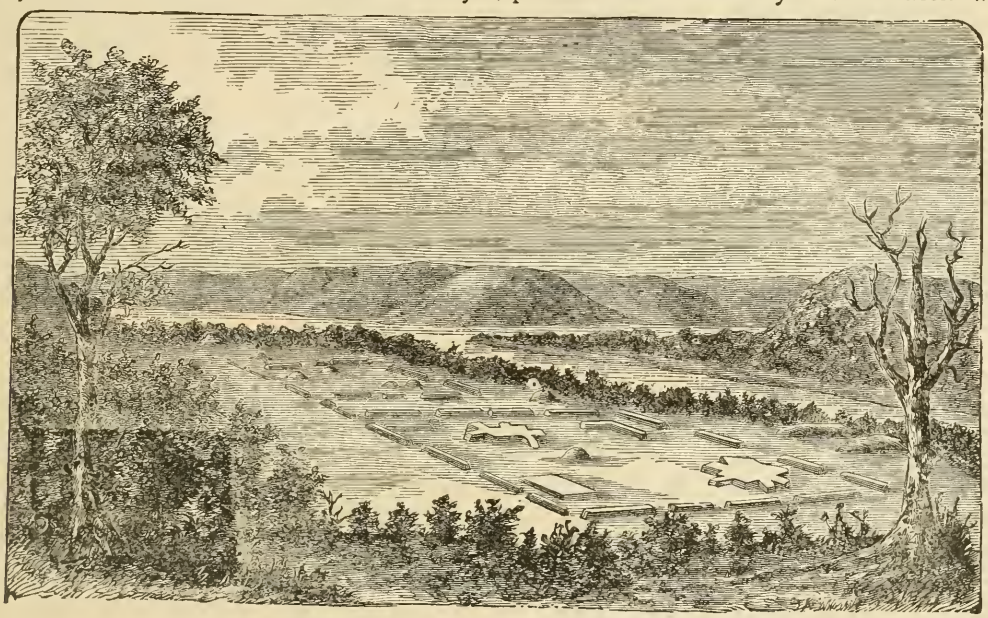
Immense Structures.

Of the second class the best known are: the square fortification at Cedar Bank, Scioto River, Ohio, with face of 800 feet, inclosing a mound 245 feet long by 150 broad; the works four miles north of Chillicothe, Ohio, a square and a circular fortification inclosing twenty acres each; the graded way near Piketon, Ohio; about a hundred mounds and inclosures in Ross County, Ohio; the pyramid at Seltzertown, Mississippi, 600 feet long and 40 feet high, and a vast number of mounds, inclosures, squares and pyramids on the upper lakes, and scattered through the Southern and Western States. Every State in this great region contains these ancient structures.

By far the greatest division is in Central and South America; and here we find ourselves at the point where our ancient civilization reached its height, among works which are the astonishment of explorers and perplexity of scholars. Yucatan is a vast field for antiquarian research, dotted from one end to the other with the ruins of cities, temples and palaces. But in the great forest which covers the northern half of Guatemala, the southern half of Yucatan, and parts of other States, covering an area larger than Ohio, is

to be found the key to our ancient history. Within a few years past cities have been discovered which must have contained a population of a quarter of a million, in an advanced condition of civilization; and yet, owing to the jealousy of the natives and the indifference of modern scholars, next to nothing is known, and few scientific researches have been made upon this intensely interesting subject.

In my limited space I confine this inquiry mostly to the remains in our own country.



MOUNDS AT MARIETTA, OHIO.

From what we see in the Western and Southern States, the following conclusions are evident:

1. The Mound Builders constituted a considerable population, under one government. No wandering and feeble tribes could have erected such works; and the extent of the works, evidently many years in erection, as well as their completeness and scientific exactness, show the controlling energy of one directing central power, which alone can account for their uniform character.

2. They were an agricultural people. The barbarous state requires many times as large an area for the same number of people as the civilized state; and the savage condition a much larger. The State of Ohio will support an agricultural population of many millions; yet it never contained fifty thousand savages. It is easily proven that that portion of the United States east of the Mississippi never contained half a million Indians. It follows, also, that a very large portion of the country around their works must have been cleared of timber and in cultivated fields.

3. They left our country a long time ago. Nature does not give a forest growth at once to abandoned fields; a preparatory growth of shrubs and softer timber come first. But forest trees have been found upon the summit of their mounds, which show, by annual rings and other signs, at least six hundred years of growth. There could be no better proof of their great antiquity.

Their works are never found upon the

lowest terrace of the formation on the rivers; though many signs indicate that they built some as nearly on a level with the streams as possible. Their "covered ways," leading down to water, now terminate on the second terrace above. It is demonstrable that of the various terraces—"second bottoms"—on our streams, the lowest was longest in forming. From these and many other signs, it is proved that the last of the Mound Builders left the Ohio valley at least a thousand years ago.

How Long were They Here?

4. They occupied the country, at least the southern part of it, where their population was densest a very long time. This is shown by the extent of their works, the evidences of their working the copper-mines of the Superior region, and many other proofs. The best judges estimate that nearly a thousand years elapsed from the time of their entrance till their departure from the Mississippi valley.

5. At the south they were at peace; but as they advanced northward, they came more and more into contact with the wild tribes, before whom they finally retired—again towards the south. These facts are clearly proved by the increase of fortifications northward, and broad flat mounds, suitable only for buildings, southward.

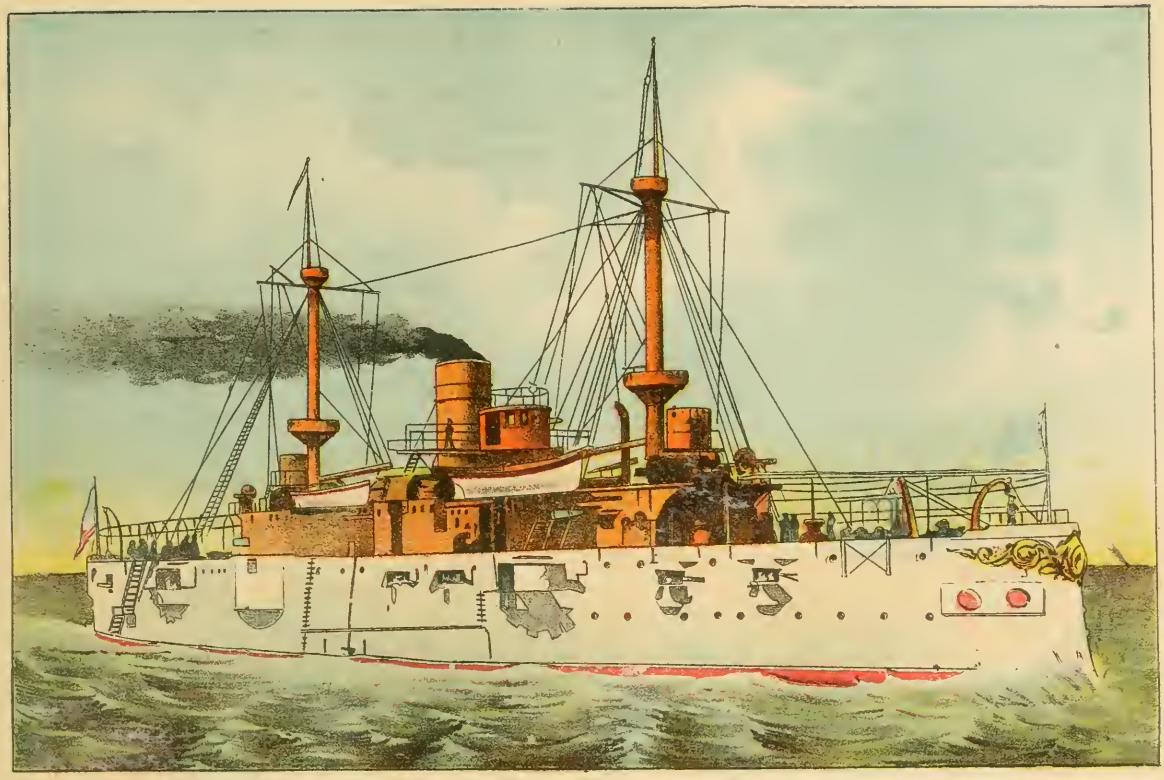
So much for proof; and, connecting these with other proofs, the latest antiquarians are of the opinion that the Toltecs—the civilized race preceding the Aztecs—were our Mound Builders. This opinion is the only reasonable one that can be formed under all the circumstances.

When we pass to the more southern ruins the proofs of great antiquity, large population and long occupation are vastly increased. Some of them have been alluded to. The great forest of Guatemala and Yucatan is nearly as large as Ohio and Indiana combined, and could easily have sustained a civilized population of ten millions. The Aztecs, whom the Spaniards found, were the last of at least three civilized races, and much inferior to the Toltecs immediately preceding them. Their history indicates that they were merely one of the original races, who overthrew and mingled with the Toltecs, adopting part of their religion and civilization. The Peruvian Incas, found by Pizarro, seemed to have been the second in the series of races. But civilization is not spontaneous; it must have required nearly a thousand years for the first of the three dynasties to have developed art and learning far enough to erect the buildings we find. To that race before the Incas, the authors of the original civilization, De Bourbourg and others have given the name of Colhuas.

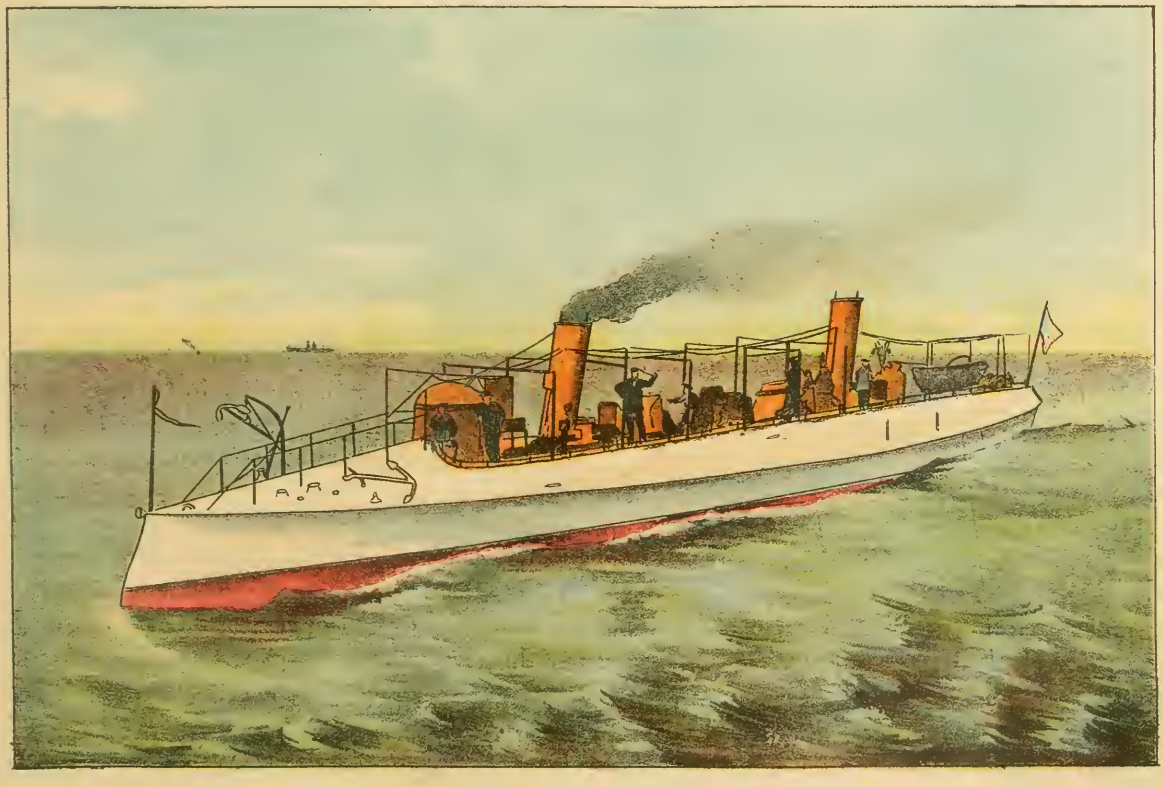
What may Reasonably be Conjectured.

Thus we have the series: a thousand years since the Mound Builders left our country; a previous thousand years of settlement and occupation, and a thousand years for the precedent civilization to develop. Or, beginning in Mexico, etc.: a thousand years of Spaniard and Aztec; a previous thousand years for Toltec migration and settlement, and a thousand years before that for the Colhuas to develop, flourish and decline. This carries us back to the time when the same course of events was inaugurated on the Eastern Continent. We know that it has required so long to produce all we see in Europe and Asia; all reasoning, by analogy, goes to show that at least as long a time has been required to produce equally great evidences in America.

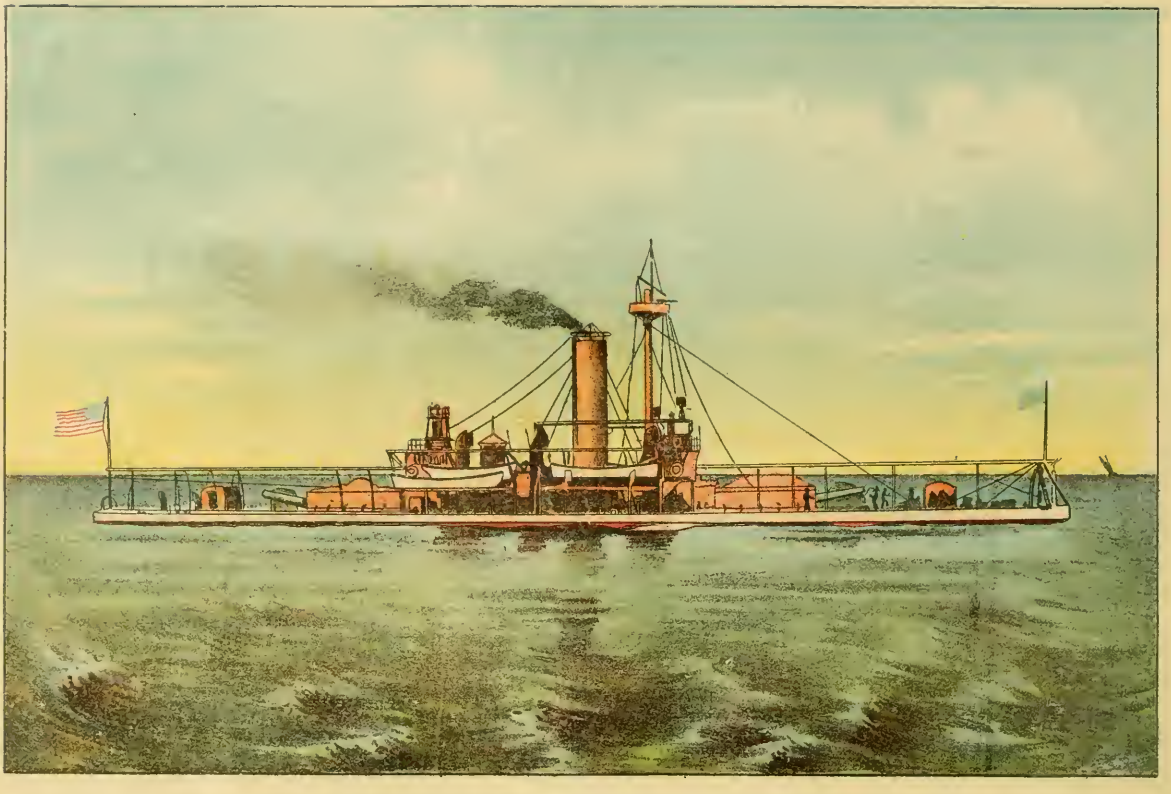
Besides a host of surmises there have been at least nine theories promulgated, and strenulously defended, in regard to the origin of this civilization.



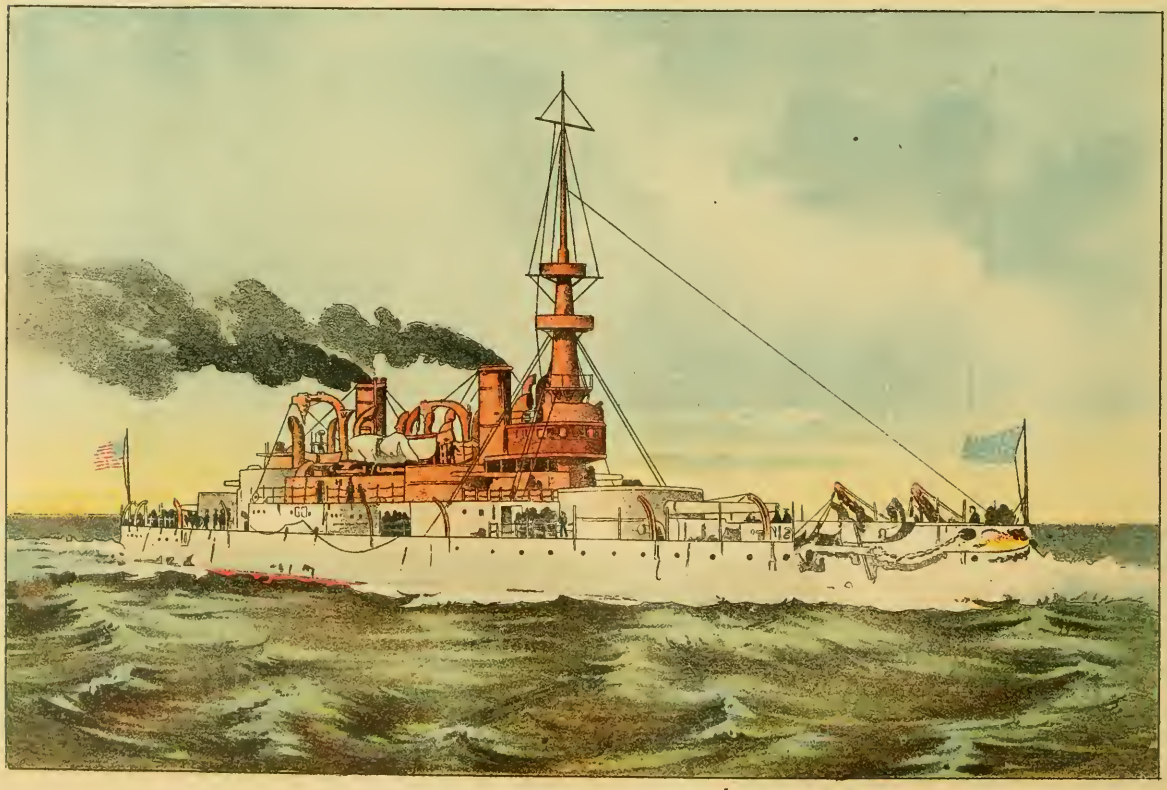
UNITED STATES BATTLESHIP TEXAS



UNITED STATES TORPEDO BOAT CUSHING



UNITED STATES MONITOR MIANTONOMOH



UNITED STATES BATTLESHIP INDIANA

1. The Jewish theory. Some sixty years since Major Noah maintained that the "Lost Tribes" were the ancestors of the American Indians and the builders of the ruins described; and a few others held that, if not the Ten Tribes, there was a Jewish Colony. It would certainly be an amazing thing if such a people as the Jews could, in a few centuries, lose all trace of their language, religion, laws, form of government, art, science and general knowledge, and sink into a tribe of barbarians. But when we add that their bodily shape must have completely changed, their skulls lengthened, the beard

A DEAD TOWN OF THE MOQUIS INDIANS.

dropped from their faces, and their language undergone a reversion from a derivative to a primitive type—a thing unknown in any human tongue—the supposition becomes too monstrous even to be discussed

2. The Malay theory is that a great Malay Empire, once existing in the island of Malaysia, planted colonies here; but this is easily disproved.

Works of the Phœnicians.

3. The Phœnician theory: that those ancient navigators planted colonies in America. If correct, this would be certain of demonstration; for they were pre-eminently a people of letters and monuments. The Phœnician alphabet is the parent of all the alphabets of Europe except the Turkish. They *must* have left some trace of their language But none has been found. Nor can any similarity be traced in the ruins with the works of the Phœnicians.

4, 5,6. The Assyrian, Egyptian and Roman theories fell for the same reasons as the Phœnician. The works of none of these people have any marked resemblance to those found in America. A pyramid or temple here is no more like an Egyptian or Assyrian one than a Chinese pagoda is like an American church.

7. The Northmen in America have been credited with these works. It is barely possible the remains in the United States might be thus accounted for; but how about the far more extensive and elaborate works in Mexico, Central and South America? The cause ascribed is utterly inadequate for the effect.

8. The Chinese or Tartary theory is, that about the year 1250 Kublai Khan sent Tartar colonies to America; that among them were some Nestorian Christians, which accounts for the crosses found. The time is utterly inadequate. Palenque and Copan were built and abandoned before the year 1250.

9. The Atlantean theory is, by far, the most brilliant and fascinating of all proposed, and appeals with subtle power to the imagination. It is propounded by Brasseur de Bourbourg, who maintains that the Island of Atlantis, often mentioned by ancient poets, had a real existence; that it extended nearly across the Atlantic, and was the cradle of civilization; that it actually sank in the sea as the Greek poets tell us, and that the West India Islands are the only portions that remain above water. He conjectures that from this common centre civilization spread east and west, and supports this view by numerous traditions from both sides of the Atlantic. Of this theory we must regretfully say, "Not proven."

A False Assumption.

To dispose of so many theories to make way for my own opinion, is scarcely in keeping with the modesty I had proposed to myself; but, in my humble judgment, these theorists all start from one fatal assumption: *that this civilization was necessarily an exotic.* Why not a civilization native to America as well as to any other country? I would suggest that a good basis might be laid by analogy with the course of civilization in Europe. There it began in the South, spread slowly by successive developments towards the North, where it was overwhelmed and driven back, as it were, by an irruption of barbarians; it again revived in the South, and slowly extended to the North, where it is now advanced beyond the original.

Similarly here the Colhuas originated civilization in the South; their successors the Toltecs, carried it towards the North, about the line of Ohio, they encountered the irruption of northern barbarians, and slowly retired towards the South; there civilization

again revived, and was steadily advancing towards the North when the Spaniards came and destroyed it. On each continent the full cycle required a period of about three thousand years.

On this basis I should place the Moquis and other Pueblo races the last in a series of four, the second the greatest, and a decline thence to the last: Colhaus, Toltecs, Aztecs, Pueblos. In summing up, why are we reduced to the necessity of adopting any hypothesis of an Eastern origin? Is it unreasonable to believe that self-improvement began among savages in America, as it did three thousand years ago among savages in Egypt and Greece? Does sound philosophy forbid the theory of a spontaneous civilization in America? We are, perhaps, too much in the habit of thinking that everything really good originated with our branch of the human race. To my mind, the evidences are many—though a profound American archæologist might smile at the supposition—that this civilization was *sui generis*, native and not derived.

A Remarkable Indian.

We now know that in China a civilization developed spontaneously, totally unlike and receiving no aid from that of Europe. Two starting points proved, what is there to forbid the idea of a third? This is as distinct from the European as is the Chinese; it shows no signs of derivation, and facts indicate clearly that the native mind of America is naturally equal to either of the others. Within the memory of man a Cherokee has invented a complete alphabet, one serving the purpose in his language better than ours does in the English. (Better because each letter represents invariably one and the same sound). This fact is worth a volume of conjecture. It shows that the human mind was slowly working toward something better in America, the same as in Europe, the only difference being that, from reasons of race or climate, it there got an earlier start.

Outgrowing Barbarism.

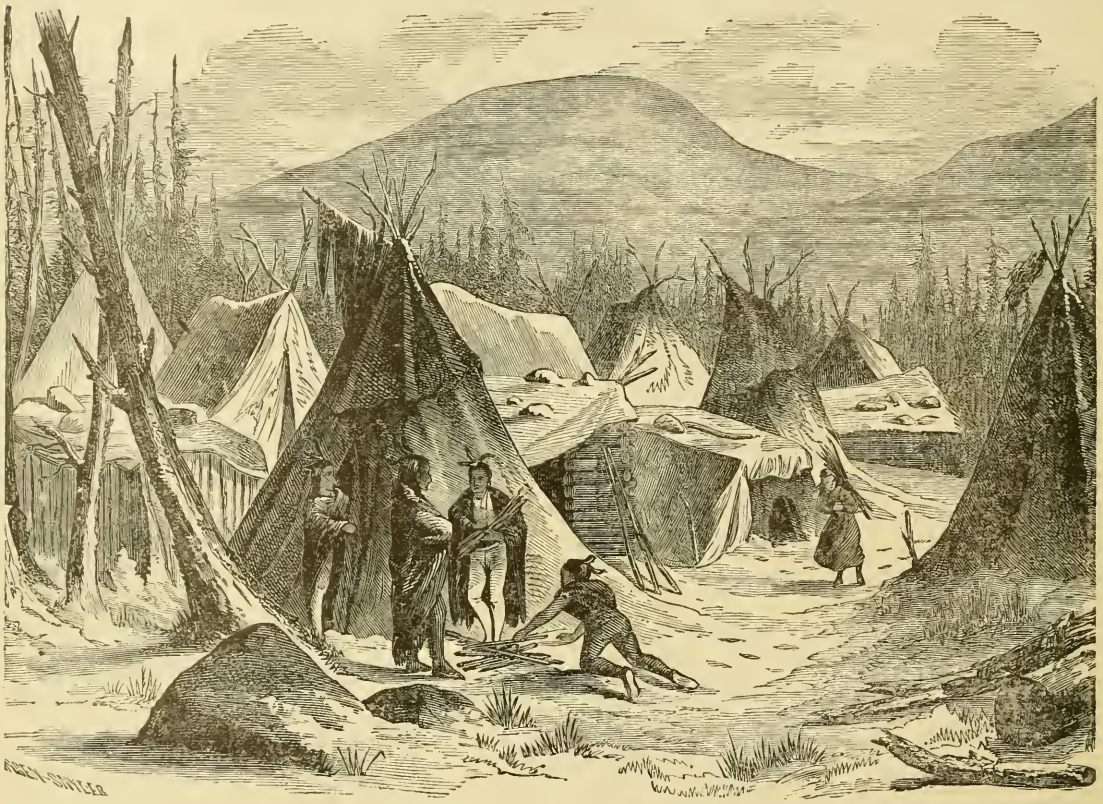
And as to the northern barbarians who destroyed this civilization, why are we driven to inventing a plausible theory as to how they crossed from Asia? On the whole, I incline to flank all the difficulties of the main question thus: America, as shown by geology, is the oldest of the continents, and it is quite reasonable, therefore, to suppose was early inhabited. This race had a native genius peculiarly its own, totally unlike that which developed in Asia the Chinese civilization, or that in Europe which created that of the Greek and Roman and the later nations. Like them, many hundreds of years passed in barbarism before even a start was apparent. But civilization did begin in America, and was reviving from its first overthrow when the whites came.

Mexico had advanced through the savage and barbarous to the half-civilized state; the New England tribes had taken the first steps toward improvement, and the New York Indians had already a political organization, code of laws, national confederacy and system of representative council and government. Had the whites discovered America a thousand years later, they might have found on the Atlantic coast a completed native civilization as perfect as that of China to-day. The innate power of the Indian mind among the superior tribes is evident. The inferior ones would have perished as did inferior aboriginal races before Asiatic and European civilization.

The foregoing theories, by Mr. Beadle, are doubtless the best solution to this problem. At the time of its discovery by the whites the Indians were the sole human occupants of the continent, which was covered with vast

woods and plains abounding with game of every description.

Though nominally divided into tribes and "nations," the Indians were really one great family in physical appearance, manners, customs, religion, and in the observance of their social and political systems. The division into tribes was the result of their difference in language. Each tribe had a dialect peculiar to itself and distinct from those of the others. The tribes were for the most part hostile to and were constantly engaged in war with each other. They were generally divided into eight nations, speaking eight radically distinct languages. These were:

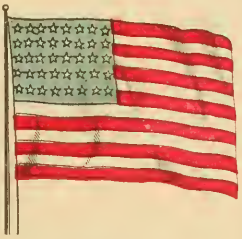


INDIAN VILLAGE IN WINTER.

I. *The Algonquins*, who inhabited the territory now comprised in the six New England States, the eastern part of New York and Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina as far south as Cape Fear, a large part of Kentucky and Tennessee, and nearly all of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, Wisconsin and Minnesota. This nation was subdivided into the following tribes: the Ottawas, Chippewas, Sacs and Foxes, Miamis, Potawatomies, Shawnees, Powhatans, Delawares, Mohegans, Narragansetts and Pequods.

The Famous "Five Nations."

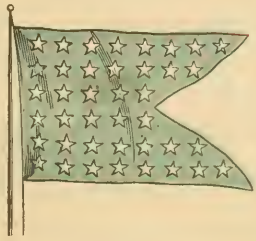
II. *Iroquois*, who occupied almost all of that part of Canada south of the Ottawa, and between lakes Ontario, Erie and Huron, the greater part of New York, and the country lying along the south shore of Lake Erie, now included in the States of Ohio and Pennsylvania. This territory, it will be seen,



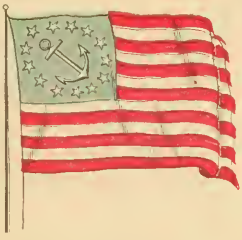
UNITED STATES.

UNION JACK.

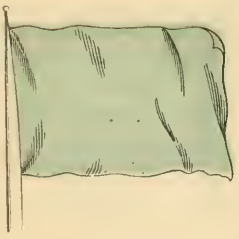
U. S. REVENUE.



U. S. COMMODORE PENNANT.



U. S. YACHT.

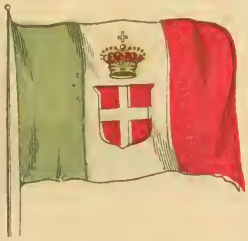


U. S. ADMIRAL.

ENGLAND.

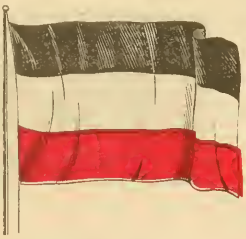
IRELAND.

GERMANY.



ITALY.

PENNSYLVANIA STATE.



GERMAN MERCHANT.

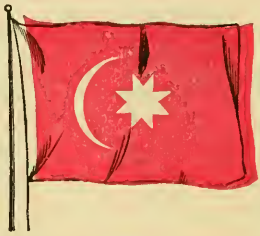
FLAGS OF ALL NATIONS.

GREECE.

INDIA

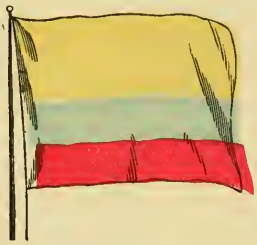
PERU.

VENEZUELA.

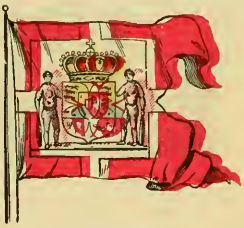


TURKEY.

PARAGUAY.

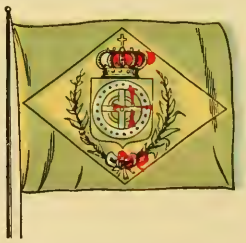


ECUADOR.



DENMARK.

RUSSIA.

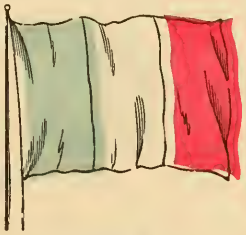


BRAZIL.

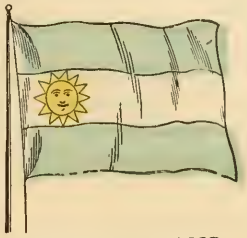
HANOVER.

BOLIVIA.

FLAGS OF ALL NATIONS.

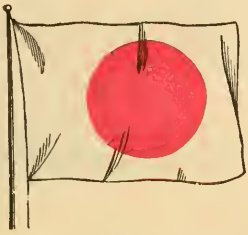


FRANCE.

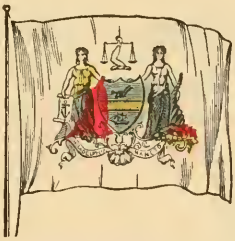


ARGENTINE REPUBLIC.

SANDWICH ISLANDS.

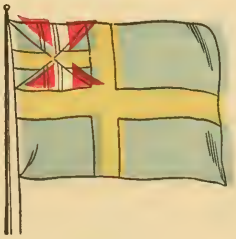


JAPAN.



PHILADELPHIA CITY.

HOLLAND.



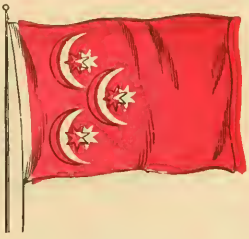
SWEDEN.

LIBERIA.

AUSTRIA.

BELGIUM.

MEXICO.

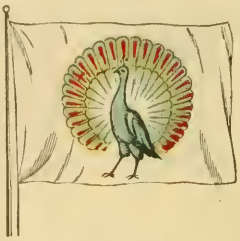


EGYPT.

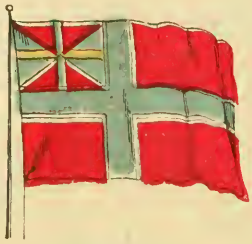
FLAGS OF ALL NATIONS.

SWITZERLAND.

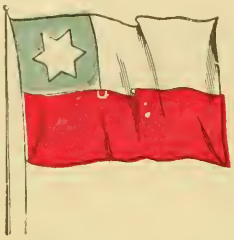
CHINA.



BURMAH

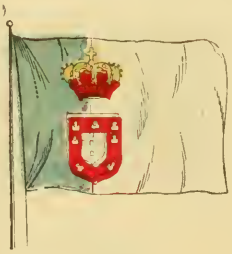


NORWAY.

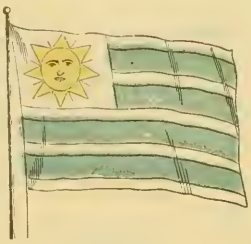


CHILI.

SPAIN.



PORTUGAL.



URUGUAY.

SIAM.

PERSIA.

HAYTI.

NEW GRANADA.

FLAGS OF ALL NATIONS.

bordered on the domains of their powerful and bitter enemies, the Algonquins. The nation was subdivided into the following tribes: the Senecas, Cayugas, Onondagas, Oneidas and Mohawks. These five were afterwards called by the English the "Five Nations." In 1722 they admitted the Tuscaroras into their confederation, and were afterwards called the "Six Nations."

Tribes of the South.

III. *The Catawbas*, who dwelt among the banks of the Yadkin and Catawba rivers, near the line which at present separates the States of North and South Carolina.

IV. *The Cherokees*, whose lands were bounded on the east by the Broad river of the Carolinas, including all of northern Georgia.

V. *The Uchees*, who dwelt south of the Cherokees, along the Savannah, the Oconee, and the head-waters of the Chattahoochee. They spoke a harsh and singular language, and are believed to have been the remnant of a once powerful nation.

VI. *The Mobilian Nation*, who inhabited all of Georgia and South Carolina not mentioned in the above statements, a part of Kentucky, Tennessee and Mississippi and all of Florida and Alabama. Their territory was next in extent to that of the Algonquins, and extended along the Gulf of Mexico from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mississippi River. The nation was divided into three great confederations—the Creeks or Muscogees, the Choctaws and the Chickasaws—and was subdivided into a number of smaller tribes, the principal of which were the Seminoles and Yemassees, who were members of the Creek Confederation.

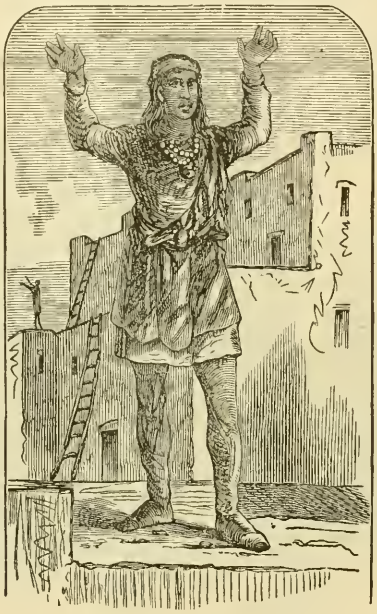
VII. *The Natchez*, who dwelt in a small territory east of the Mississippi, and along the banks of the Pearl River. They were almost surrounded by the tribes of the Mobilian language, yet remained until their extinction a separate nation, speaking a distinct language peculiar to themselves, and worshipping the sun as their God. They are believed to have been the most civilized of all the savage tribes of North America.

VIII. *The Dacotahs or Sioux*, whose territory was bounded on the north by Lake Winnipeg, on the south by the Arkansas River, on the east by the Mississippi, and on the west by the Rocky Mountains. The nation was divided into the following branches: the Winnebagoes, living between Lake Michigan and the Mississippi; the Southern Sioux, living between the Arkansas and the Platte; and the Mandans and Crows, who lived north of them.

NAVAJO BOY.

The great plains, the Rocky Mountains and Pacific coast were held by the powerful tribes of the Pawnees, Comanches, Apaches, Utahs, Black Feet, Snakes, Nezperces, Flatheads, Navajos and California Indians.

Each tribe was divided into classes or clans, which were distinguished by a mark tattooed on the breast. This mark was called the *totem*, and was generally the representation of an animal or bird. The Indians believed that all animals had protecting spirits, and each class was supposed to be protected by the spirit of the animal it chose for its totem. Over each class was a chief, and the head of the tribe was a chief or sachem, who was usually a man, but sometimes a woman. The Indians had no written laws, but the customs and traditions of the tribe took the place of these. The religious belief of the Indians was simple. They adored a Great Spirit—some tribes had many gods—and believed in a future state. The brave were admitted to the happy hunting-grounds of the spirit-world, but cowards were excluded from them. The weapons of a warrior were buried with him that he might use them in his spirit home, and pursue the occupations of his earthly life.



PUEBLO INDIAN AT PRAYER.

Their heaven lay far beyond the mountains of the setting sun. It was a land rich in game, and abounding in fertile meadows and sparkling streams. There the warrior, released from the cares and hardships of life, passed the ages of eternity in the chase; and there parting from friends, suffering, fatigue, hunger and thirst were unknown. The Indian heard voices of spirits in the wind, and saw them in the stars. The shades of his ancestors were constantly hovering over him, stimulating him to brave deeds, keeping fresh in his mind the duty of avenging them upon the enemies they had left behind, and of proving himself a true warrior.

Grotesque Dress of the Savages.

The dress of the savages consisted of the skins of animals, which were prepared by smoking them. After the settlement of the colonies they added a blanket to this dress. Their garments were decorated with skins and feathers, and on special occasions they painted their faces with various bright colors. In the warm weather they wore scarcely any clothing. Their houses or wigwams were formed of poles set firmly in the ground and bent toward each other at the top. These were covered with chestnut or birch bark. Some of the tribes had large houses, often thirty feet high and over two hundred feet long, which accommodated a number of families. Some of the Indian villages were laid off regularly and were permanent; others were broken up with each migration of the tribe. All the Indians, however, pursued a roving life, passing from point to point in search of game and the means of subsistence. Some of the tribes lived by hunting only; others added to this pursuit the cultivation of maize or Indian corn, beans, hemp, tobacco and pumpkins. The food of the Indians was coarser and less nourishing than that of the Europeans, and they were conse-

quently inferior to the latter in bodily strength. They surpassed them in endurance, however, and could bear tests which the whites could not. They were swift runners, and could accomplish long distances in this way. It was a common thing for a good runner to run seventy or eighty miles in a single day. They were thoroughly proficient in the craft of the woodsman. Sounds and sights which had no meaning to the white man were eloquent to them; and they surpassed the latter in keenness of hearing and of vision. They communicated with each other by signs or marks on rocks and trees.

For money they used wampum beads; and belts made of this wampum were used to record treaties and other important events. They had no intoxicating drinks before the arrival of the whites; but used tobacco, which they smoked in pipes made of clay. They were expert marksmen with the bow until they learned the use of firearms from the whites, when they lost much of their ancient skill with this weapon.

Canoes and Snow-shoes.

"The most ingenious inventions of the Indians," says Colonel Higginson, "were the snow-shoe and the birch canoe. The snow-shoe was made of a maple-wood frame three or four feet long, curved and tapering, and filled in with a network of deer's hide. This network was fastened to the foot by thongs, only a light, elastic moccasin being worn. Thus the foot was supported on the surface of the snow; and an Indian could travel forty miles a day upon snow-shoes, and could easily overtake the deer and moose whose pointed hoofs cut through the crust. The peculiar pattern varied with almost every tribe, as did also that of the birch canoe. This was made of the bark of the white birch, stretched over a very light frame of white cedar. The whole bark of a birch tree was stripped off and put around the frame without being torn. The edges were sewed with thongs cut from the roots of the cedar, and were then covered with pitch made from the gum of trees. If torn, the canoe could be mended with pieces of bark, fastened in the same way. The largest of these canoes was thirty feet long, and would carry ten or twelve Indians. They were very light and could be paddled with ease. They were often very gracefully shaped, and drew very little water.

"The Indians had great courage, self-control, and patience. They were grave and

CIVILIZED INDIAN WOMAN.

dignified in their manners on important occasions; in their councils they were courteous to one another, and discussed all important questions at great length. They were often kind and generous, and sometimes even forgiving; but they generally held sternness to be a virtue, and forgiveness a weakness. They were especially cruel to captives, putting them to death with all manner of tortures, in which women took an active part. It was the custom among them for women to do most of the hard work, in order that the

bodies of the men might be kept supple and active for the pursuits of the chase and war.

Great Power of Endurance.

"When employed on these pursuits, the Indian men seemed incapable of fatigue; but in the camp or in travelling the women carried the burdens; and when a hunter had carried a slain deer on his shoulders for a long distance, he would throw it down within sight of the village, that his squaw might go and bring it in.

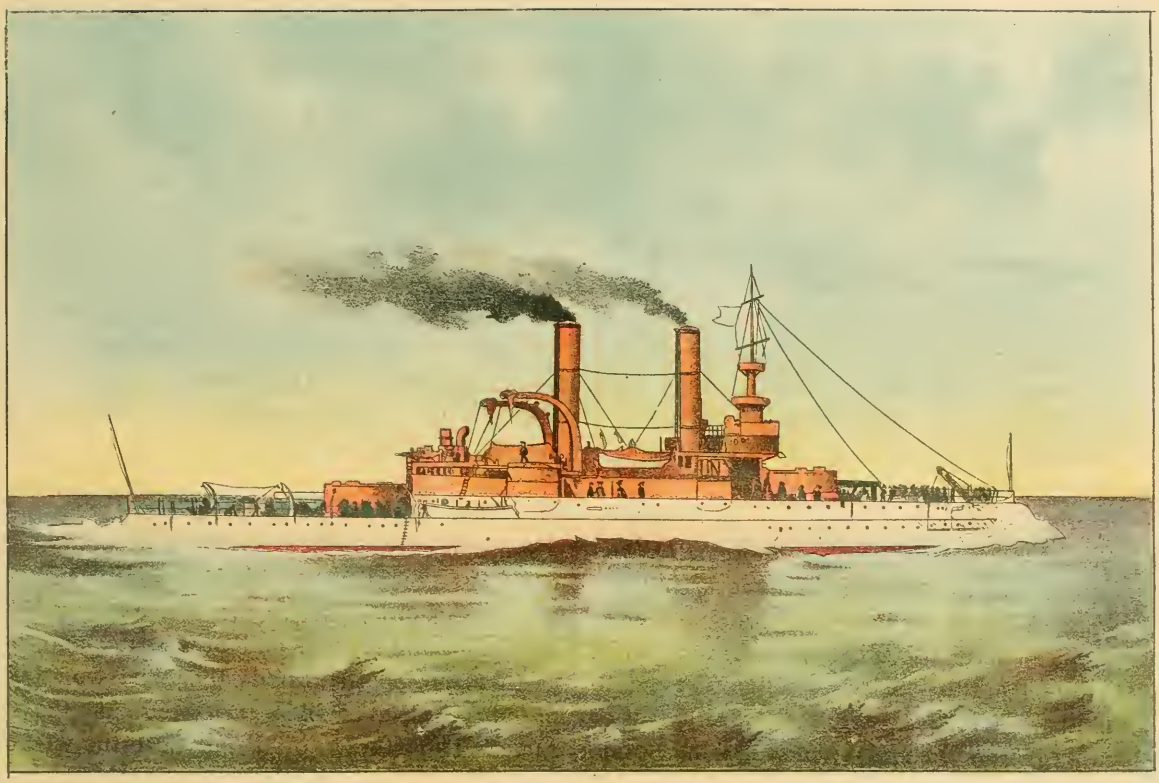
"Most of the Indian tribes lived in a state of constant warfare with one another. When there was a quarrel between tribes, and war seemed ready to break out, strange ceremonies were used. Some leading chief would paint his body black from head to foot, and would hide himself in the woods or in a cavern. There he would fast and pray, and call upon the Great Spirit; and would observe his dreams to see if they promised good or evil. If he could dream of a great war-eagle hovering before him it would be a sign of triumph. After a time he would come forth from the woods and return among his people. Then he would address them, summon them to war, and assure them that the Great Spirit was on their side. Then he would bid the warriors to a feast at his wigwam. There they would find him no longer painted in black, but in bright and gaudy colors, called 'war paint.' The guests would also be dressed in paint and feathers, and would seat themselves in a circle around the wigwam. Then wooden trenchers, containing the flesh of dogs, would be placed before them, while the chief would sit quietly smoking his pipe, and would not yet break his long and wearisome fast.

"After the feast, the war-dance would follow, perhaps at night, amid the blaze of fires and lighted pine knots. A painted post would be driven into the ground, and the crowd would form a wide circle round it. The war chief would leap into the open space, brandishing his hatchet, and would chant his own deeds and those of his fathers, acting out all that he described and striking at the post as if it were an enemy. Warrior after warrior would follow, till at last the whole band would be dancing, shouting, and brandishing their weapons, striking and stabbing at the air, making hideous grimaces and filling the forest with their yells.

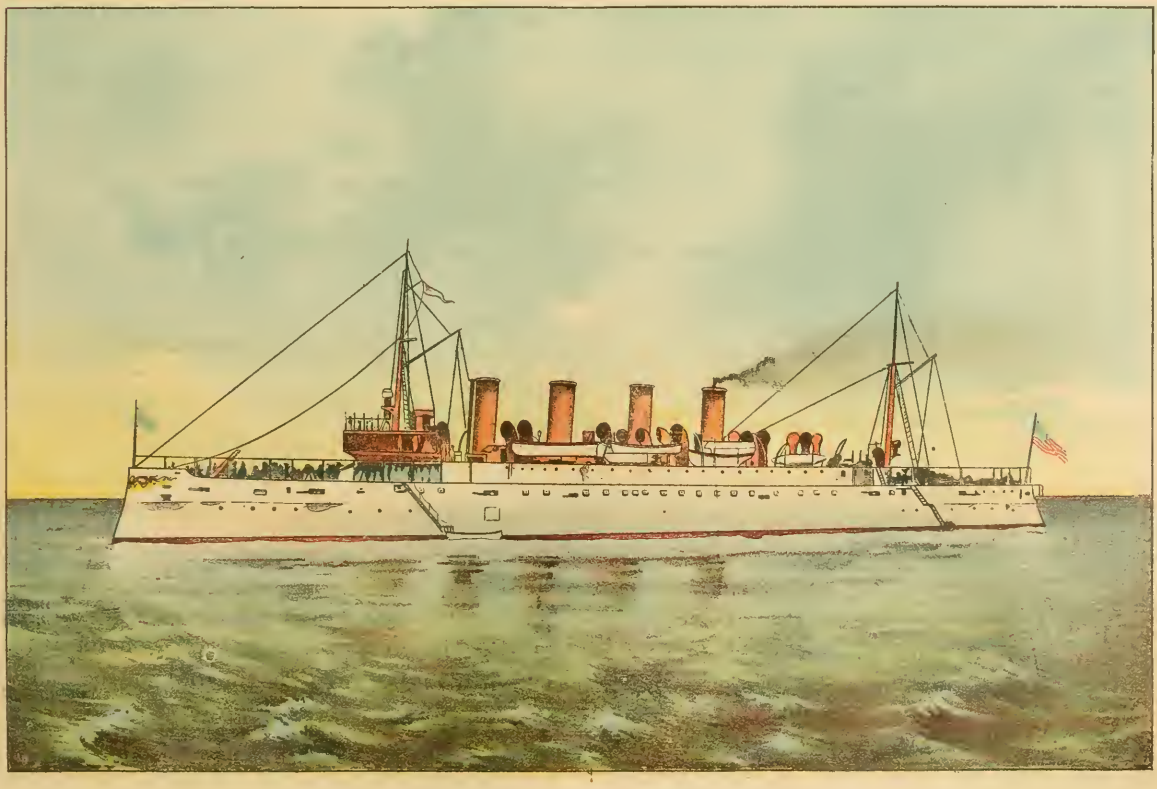
Making the Attack.

"Much of the night would pass in this way. In the morning the warriors would leave the camp in single file, still decorated with paint and feathers and ornaments; and, as they entered the woods, the chief would fire his gun, and each in turn would do the same. Then they would halt near the village, would take off their ornaments and their finery, and would give all these to the women, who had followed them for this purpose. Then the warriors would go silently and stealthily through the forest to the appointed place of attack. Much of their skill consisted in these silent approaches, and in surprises and stratagems, and long and patient watchings. They attached no shame to killing an unarmed enemy, or to private deceit and treachery, though to their public treaties they were always faithful. They were desperately brave, and yet they saw no disgrace in running away when there was no chance of success."

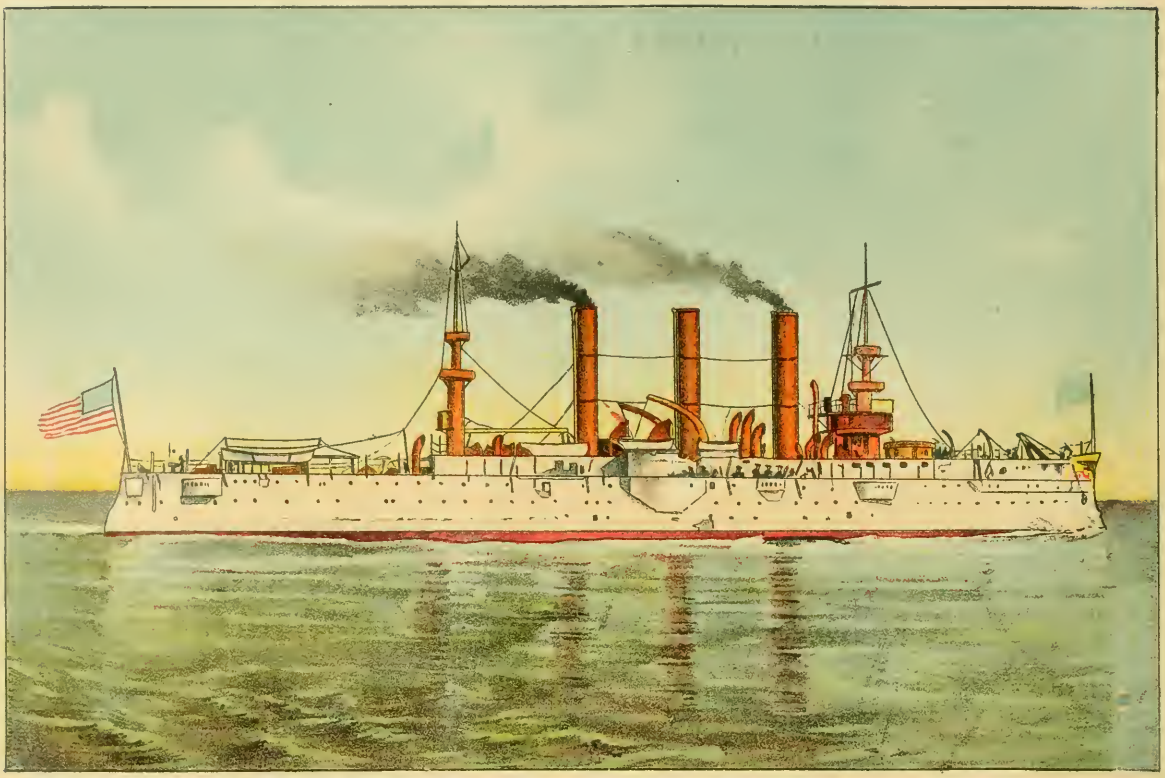
At the time of the discovery of America the Indians were rapidly disappearing. Their relentless wars and frequent pestilences were sweeping them away. Contact with the white race has hastened the work of destruction. Many of the tribes exist now but in name, and those which remain are growing smaller in numbers with each generation; and it would seem that the time is not far



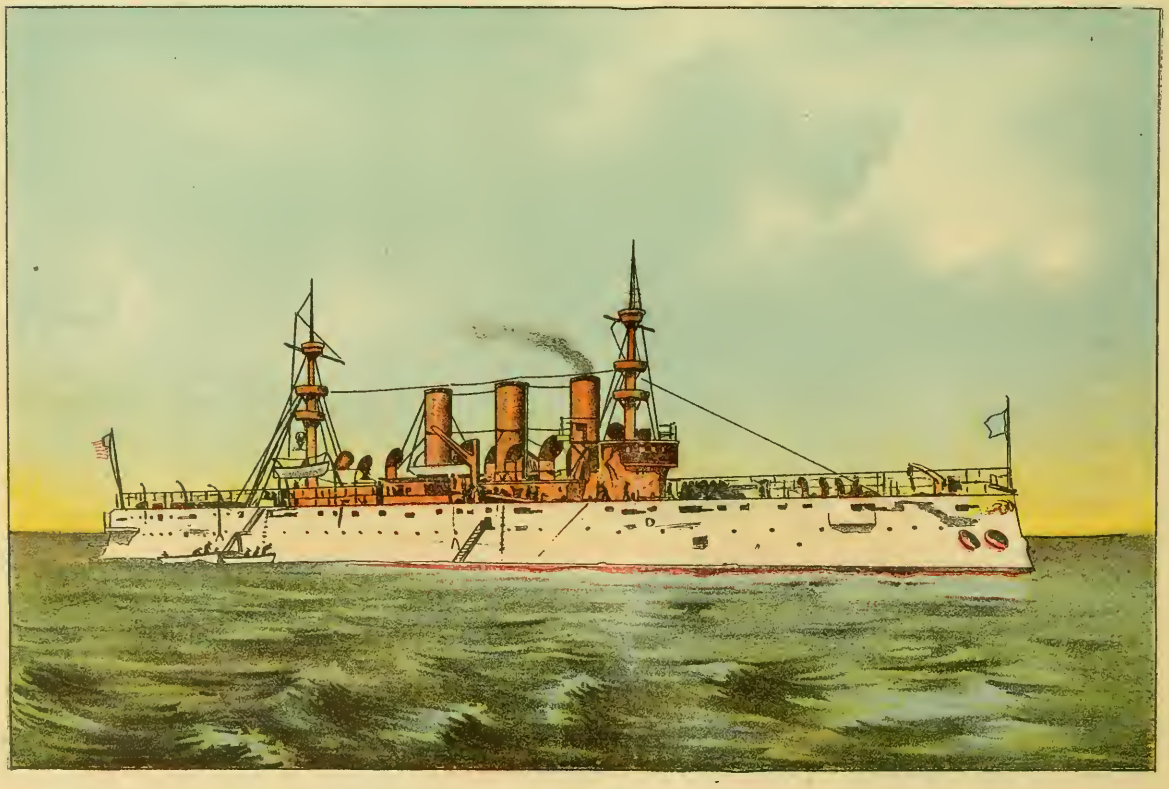
UNITED STATES BATTLESHIP IOWA



UNITED STATES PROTECTED CRUISER COLUMBIA



UNITED STATES ARMORED CRUISER BROOKLYN



UNITED STATES ARMORED CRUISER NEW YORK

distant when the last trace left of the red man in America will be his memory.

Old Traditions.

Whether any white men ever trod the shores of America previous to the coming of Columbus is a disputed question. It would seem, however, that, several centuries previous to his discovery, a Norwegian vessel from Iceland to Greenland was driven out of her course by storms to the coast of Labrador or Newfoundland. The national pride of the Icelanders and the Danes has led them to accept as literal history the traditions of their race concerning this voyage, and they have given it a definite date. According to them this voyage took place in A. D. 986, and was followed in 1001 by a voyage of Lief Erickson, an Icelandic navigator, who is said to have discovered America, reaching Labrador first, and then sailing southward to Newport and New York harbors. This voyage is said to have led the way to the further exploration of the coast as far south as the capes of Virginia, and to the planting of colonies, which soon perished, in Newfoundland and Nova Scotia. That some Icelandic voyagers visited the American continent previous to the expedition of Columbus is most likely; but we cannot accept the definite and explicit statements of the writers in question; at least in the present state of our knowledge upon this subject. We must content ourselves with the bare fact, without admitting all the details narrated.

Among the strange, stirring and wonderful stories of early voyages there was none which excited such interest as that of Bjarni, a native of Iceland, who had cruised along the coast of an unknown world, and looked upon hills, woods and mountains, of whose existence no one had ever dreamed. It naturally occurred to the hardy sailors who discussed the question, that they could do what Bjarni had done, and indeed far more, for he had not set foot on the shores he had seen at the west.

The oldest son of Eric the Red was Lief—Lief the Lucky, he was afterward called. In the year 1000 he set sail from Herjulfness with a crew of thirty-five men, Bjarni being among them. Heading boldly out to sea, the sailors ploughed through the icy waters until land, supposed to be Newfoundland, was reached. They went ashore and examined it, but there was little to please the eye and they soon left. The next place visited was probably Nova Scotia, as it is now called. It was found to correspond with the account given by Bjarni. Two days further sail, before a favoring wind, carried the explorers so far south that when land was once more descried, it must have been New England. The main facts of the remarkable voyage of Lief the Northman have been proven beyond all dispute, but the accounts themselves are so confused in minor details that it can never be positively known where it was these navigators first landed. There is good reason, however, to believe it was on the coast of Rhode Island, and probably at some point on the Narragansett Bay.

A Bold Navigator.

The Northmen were astonished and delighted when they came to explore the woods to find luscious grapes in abundance. To the Northmen, the climate seemed wonderfully mild. Lief gave the country the name of Vinland, and when he sailed northward, his vessel was loaded with grapes and valuable timber, as proof of the fertility of the region he had visited.

The Northmen were not men to rest content with the voyage and discoveries made by Lief. Eric the Red had another son, a brave and skillful navigator named Thorvald, who was eager to visit the new country.

THORVALD WOUNDED BY THE RED MEN

Lief gave him much help and in 1003 he set sail with a crew of thirty men. Good fortune attended them, and they found the rough houses left by Lief still strong and secure. The men spent the winter in hunting and fishing, but, so far as is known, never saw the face of any native of the New World. When spring came, part of the company went on an exploring tour along the coast of Rhode Island, Connecticut and Long Island. There is good reason to believe they entered the harbor of New York, but not a living person beside themselves was to be seen, and where stands to-day the most populous city in the New World, there was not so much as an Indian wigwam.

The records show that in the spring of 1004, Thorvald entered on a more extended voyage of exploration. He sailed slowly northward along the coast of Cape Cod, and was driven ashore by a tempest. It took the crew a long time to repair damages, but when everything was ready, they resumed their voyage, keeping close, no doubt, along the south shore of the Massachusetts Bay. Being favorably impressed with the appearance of a certain spot, they dropped anchor and went ashore. When they had done so, they saw for the first time some of the natives of the new country.

Under a couple of rude tents they discoved nine quietly lolling on the ground with no suspicion of the presence of the strangers who had landed near them. Who would think that the Northmen could offer harm to the poor savages? There was not the slightest excuse for the dreadful cruelty of the white men, and yet, no sooner did they see the natives, than they resolved to kill them all Creeping silently forward, they made a sudden rush, and with their heavy swords killed all but one.

Having completed the massacre, the triumphant Northmen lay down under the trees to sleep; but they had hardly closed their eyes when the woods resounded with shouts and yells, and the natives rushed upon them from every side. The single survivor of the slaughter had made haste to tell what had been done by the visitors, who were now compelled to flee to their ship, fighting as they went. Under the shelter of the vessel, however, they were able to beat back the natives, only one of the Northmen receiving a wound: he was Thorvald, who had been pierced so deeply by an arrow that he was past help. He died and was buried near the shore, the grave covered with stones and a cross placed both at the head and foot. Then the survivors sailed back to Vinland and told their countrymen the sad tidings. The next spring the whole colony returned to Greenland.

Thus ends all authentic history of the discovery and settlement of America by the Northmen. Having found one of the great continents of the world, it may be said they lost it, and, during nearly five centuries afterward there is no positive proof that it was known to Europeans.

CHAPTER II

The Voyages of Columbus

Maritime Enterprise in the Fifteenth Century—Theories Respecting the Earth's Surface—Christopher Columbus—His Early Life—His Theory of a Western Passage to India—His Struggles to Obtain the Means of Making a Voyage—Is Aided by Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain—His First Voyage—Discovery of America—Reception in Spain—His Second Voyage—Settlement of Hayti—Third Voyage of Columbus—He Reaches the Mainland—Discovery of Gold in Hayti—Troubles in the Colony—Columbus Sent to Spain in Irons—Indignation of the Queen—Last Voyage of Columbus—His Shipwreck—Returns to Spain—Refusal of Ferdinand to Comply with his Promises—Death of Columbus—Amerigo Vespucci—Origin of the Name AMERICA.

THE fifteenth century witnessed a remarkable awakening of human thought and enterprise, one of the most important features of which was the activity in maritime undertakings which led to the discovery of lands until then unknown to the civilized world. The invention, and the application to navigation, of the mariner's compass, had enabled the seamen of Europe to undertake long and distant voyages. The Portuguese took the lead in the maritime enterprises of this period, the chief object of which was to find a route by water from Europe to the Indies. The equator had been passed; Bartholomew Diaz had even doubled the Cape of Storms, and had established the course of the eastern coast of Africa; and it was hoped by some of the most daring thinkers that the ports of India could be reached by sailing around this cape.

Others, still bolder, believed that although the earth was a sphere, it was much smaller than it is, and that the central portion of its surface was occupied by a vast ocean which washed the shores of what they regarded as its solitary continent, on either side, and that by sailing due west from Europe, the shores of India, China or Japan could be be reached. Among those who held this opinion was Christopher Columbus. He was a native of Genoa, in Italy, was born about the year 1435, and was the son of a weaver of cloth. His ancestors had been sailors, for which calling he, at an early age, evinced a preference. He received a common school education, and afterwards went to the University of Pavia, where he studied geometry, astronomy, geography and navigation. He stayed at Pavia but a short time, only long enough to gain a decided relish for mathematical studies.

At the early age of fourteen he went on a voyage with a relative, and followed the calling of a sailor until he had completed his thirtieth year. During this period he had married, and by this marriage he had become possessed of the papers of the former husband of his wife, who had been a distinguished Portuguese navigator. He had learned but little at school, but he had been a close student all his life, and had stored his mind with a valuable fund of information. This habit of study he never abandoned, and his extensive knowledge, added to his years of practical experience, made him one of the most learned navigators of his day. In 1470, being then about thirty years old, Columbus

COLUMBUS BEFORE FERDINAND AND ISABELLA

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS

took up his residence in Portugal, which was then the centre of maritime enterprise in Europe. Here his spirit of discovery was quickened, and he became convinced that there were continents still unknown.

He continued to make voyages to the then known parts of the world, and while on shore engaged in the work of making and selling maps and charts. The papers given him by his wife were now of the greatest service to him. He entered eagerly into the speculations of the day concerning the shortest passage to the Indies, and his studies, fortified by his experience, induced him to believe that there was land beyond the western seas, which could be reached by sailing in that direction. This land he believed to be the eastern shores of Asia. He was confirmed in his belief by his correspondence with the learned Italian Toscanelli, who sent him a map of his own projection, in which the eastern coast of Asia was laid down opposite the western coast of Europe, with only the broad Atlantic between them. Other things also confirmed him in what had now become the profoundest conviction of

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

his life. Sailors who had been to the Canary Islands told him they had seen land far to the westward of those islands. A piece of wood strangely carved had been thrown by the waves upon the Portuguese coast after a long westerly gale, and had been seen by the brother-in-law of Columbus.

Seven Years of Disappointment.

An old pilot related to him the finding of a carved paddle at sea, a thousand miles to the westward of Europe. Pine trees had been cast ashore at Madeira, and at the Azores he learned that the bodies of two men, whose features and dress showed that they belonged to no nation of Europe, had been thrown on the land by the waves. Having settled it in his own mind that there was land to the westward, Columbus was eager to go in search of it. He was not possessed of sufficient means to accomplish this at his own expense, and began his efforts to interest some European state in the enterprise. His first application was addressed to his native country, the Republic of Genoa. He met with a refusal, and then turned to Venice, with a like result. His next effort was to enlist the Portuguese king, John II., in his scheme. Here he was subjected to delays and vexations innumerable, and once the Portuguese sovereign attempted to make a dishonorable use of the information given by Columbus in support of his theory.

Disgusted with the conduct of this sovereign, Columbus, after years of waiting, abandoned the hope of obtaining his assistance, and applied to Henry VII. of England, from whom he received a decided refusal. Quitting Lisbon in 1484, Columbus went to Spain, intending to lay his plans before Ferdinand and Isabella, the sovereigns of that country. He could scarcely have chosen a more unpropitious time. The Spanish nation was engaged in the Moorish war, which had exhausted the treasury, and which absorbed the attention of the sovereigns to the exclusion of every other matter. He spent seven years in endeavoring to interest the government in his plans. "During this time Columbus appears to have remained in attendance on the court, bearing arms occasionally in the campaigns, and experiencing from the sovereigns an unusual degree of deference and personal attention." At last, wearied with the long delay to which he had been subjected, he pressed the court for an answer, and was told by the sovereigns that, "although they were too much occupied at present to embark in his undertaking, yet, at the conclusion of the war, they should find time to treat with him."

He accepted this answer as a refusal, and prepared to go to France to ask the assistance of the king of that country, from whom he had received a friendly letter. Travelling on foot, he stopped at the monastery of Santa Maria de Rabida, near Palos, to visit the Prior Juan Perez de Marchena, who had befriended him when he first came to Spain. The prior, learning his intention to quit Spain, persuaded him to remain until one more effort could be made to enlist the government in his plans. Leaving Columbus at the convent, Juan Perez, who had formerly been the queen's confessor, mounted his mule and set off for the Spanish camp before Granada. He was readily granted an interview by Queen Isabella, and he urged the suit of Columbus with all the force of eloquence and reasoning of which he was master.

Columbus at the Royal Court.

His appeal was supported by several eminent persons whom Columbus, during his residence at the court, had interested in his project, and these represented to the queen the impolicy of allowing Columbus to secure the aid of a foreign power which

would reap the benefits of his discoveries, if he were successful. The result was that the sovereigns consented to reopen the negotiation, and Columbus was invited to return to the court, and was furnished with a sum of money to enable him to do so. Columbus promptly complied with the royal mandate, and reached the camp in time to witness the surrender of Granada. Amidst the rejoicings which attended this event he was admitted to an audience with the king and queen, and submitted to them the arguments upon which he based his theory. Isabella was favorably disposed toward the undertaking, but Ferdinand looked coldly upon it. Columbus demanded, as the reward of his success, the title and authority of admiral and viceroy over all lands discovered by him, with one-tenth of the profits, and that this dignity should be hereditary in his family. The archbishop of Granada advised the king to reject the demands of Columbus, which, he said, "savored of the highest degree of arrogance, and would be unbecoming in their highnesses to grant to a needy foreign adventurer."

Columbus firmly refused to abate his pretensions, and abruptly left the court, "resolved rather to forego his splendid anticipations of discovery, at the very moment when the career so long sought was thrown open to him, than surrender one of the honorable distinctions due to his services." His friends, however, remonstrated with the queen, and reminded her that if his claims were high, they were at least contingent on success. By representing to her the certainty of his being employed by some other potentate, and his peculiar qualifications for success, and by reminding her of her past generous support of great and daring enterprises, they roused her to listen to the impulses of her own noble heart. "I will assume the undertaking," she exclaimed, "for my own crown of Castile, and am ready to pawn my jewels to defray the expenses of it, if the funds of the treasury shall be found inadequate." Louis de St. Angel, the receiver who had been chiefly instrumental in bringing about this decision of the queen, offered to advance the necessary funds from the revenues of Aragon. That kingdom, however, was indemnified against loss, and all the charges and profits of the expedition were reserved exclusively for Castile. A messenger was despatched in haste after Columbus. He overtook him a few leagues from Granada, and delivered the royal order to return.

Three Ships of Renown.

On the seventeenth of April, 1492, a formal agreement was signed between Columbus and the Spanish sovereigns. Ferdinand and Isabella, "as lords of the ocean-seas, constituted Christopher Columbus their admiral, viceroy and governor-general of all such islands and continents as he should discover in the Western Ocean, with the privilege of nominating three candidates, for the selection of one by the crown, for the government of each of these territories. He was to be vested with the exclusive right of jurisdiction over all commercial transactions within his admiralty. He was to be entitled to one-tenth of all the products and profits within the limits of his discoveries, and an additional eighth, provided he should contribute one-eighth part of the expense. By a subsequent ordinance, the official dignities above enumerated were settled on him and his heirs forever, with the privilege of prefixing the title of Don to their names, which had not then degenerated into an appellation of mere courtesy."

A fleet of three vessels was assembled in the little harbor of Palos in Andalusia.

Two of these were furnished by the government, and one by Columbus, aided by his friend, the Prior of La Rabida, and the Pinzons, "a family in Palos, long distinguished for its enterprise among the mariners of that active community." The admiral had some difficulty in equipping his vessels, for his voyage was regarded by the sailors of the country as rash and perilous in the extreme. At length, however, a sufficient crew was obtained. One hundred and twenty persons were enlisted in the expedition. The three vessels were all small. The *Santa Maria*, the largest, was ninety feet long, was decked all over, had four masts, and carried a crew of sixty-six seamen. The *Pinta* and *Nina* were smaller, and were without decks. All the vessels were provisioned for a year. The admiral was instructed to keep clear of the African coast, and other maritime possessions of Portugal.

The Fleet Sails.

At length all things were in readiness, and, Columbus and his whole crew having confessed themselves and received the sacrament, the fleet sailed from Palos on the morning of Friday, the third of August, 1492. A month later the Canary Islands were reached. A brief delay was made there to refit, and then the vessels turned their prows to the westward, and sailed out into the unknown seas. As the night came on the sailors, imagining they had seen the land for the last time, gave way to tears. Columbus soothed their fears, and held his course. At length he fell in with the trade-winds, which wafted him steadily towards the west. The sailors were greatly alarmed at this, and declared, that if the wind did not change it would be impossible for them to reach home again. The variation of the compass also alarmed them, and their murmurs increased to almost open mutiny. It required all the firmness of the admiral to restrain them, and to keep them from abandoning the enterprise and returning to Europe.

Ten weeks of anxiety and disappointment had passed since the departure of the fleet from Palos; but still no land was seen. There were unmistakable signs that land was near, such as the flight of land birds around the ship, the finding of a bush floating on the waters with fresh berries upon it, and the frequent discovery of land weeds upon the waves. Often the lookout would startle the fleet by the cry of land, but as often the supposed shore would prove to be only a bank of clouds low down upon the western horizon. Still the ships held their westward course, and at length the sailors broke into open mutiny, and demanded that the fleet should return home. They were even ready to throw the admiral overboard if he refused to grant their demands.

The Torch that Lighted up a New Continent.

Columbus alone had been calm and hopeful throughout the voyage. He was resolved to succeed or perish in the attempt to find the land. The success of the mutiny would have destroyed all his hopes, and as the events of each succeeding day strengthened him in his conviction that they were rapidly approaching land, he condescended to plead with his men, and obtained from them a promise to obey him for a few days longer. The next night the land breeze, laden with the rich perfumes of tropical flowers, convinced the weary crews that the admiral was right, and that the long wished-for shore was indeed near. The ships were ordered to lie to for the night lest they should go ashore in the darkness. No one slept on board that night. About ten o'clock, Columbus saw a light moving along the shore, as if it were a

torch carried in a man's hand. He called Martin Alonzo Pinzon, one of his captains, and pointed it out to him. Pinzon confirmed the admiral's opinion, and all waited in the most intense eagerness for the approach of the morning.

With the first light, on the morning of Friday, the twelfth of October, 1492, a gun from one of the vessels announced that land was indeed in sight, and the rising sun revealed to the delighted seamen a large island, luxuriant in foliage and of very beautiful appearance, lying about six miles away, with crowds of natives running along the beach. As the great admiral stood with folded arms, and heaving breast, gazing upon the world which his genius had discovered, the penitent sailors crowded about him, and, kissing his garments, implored his pardon for their rebellious conduct.

COLUMBUS DISCOVERING LAND.

Orders to land were promptly issued, and the fleet stood in and anchored near the shore. The boats were manned, and the admiral, clad in rich scarlet, and bearing the royal banner of Spain and accompanied by his captains, each of whom bore a green banner inscribed with a cross, went ashore. As he set foot on the land, Columbus knelt reverently, and kissed the ground, and then rising and drawing his sword, took possession of the island in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain. The island was one of the Bahama group, and was called by the natives Guanahani. Columbus named it San Salvador. He explored the island, and then sailing on discovered Cuba, Hayti, and other West India islands. He believed these islands to lie off the coast of Asia and to

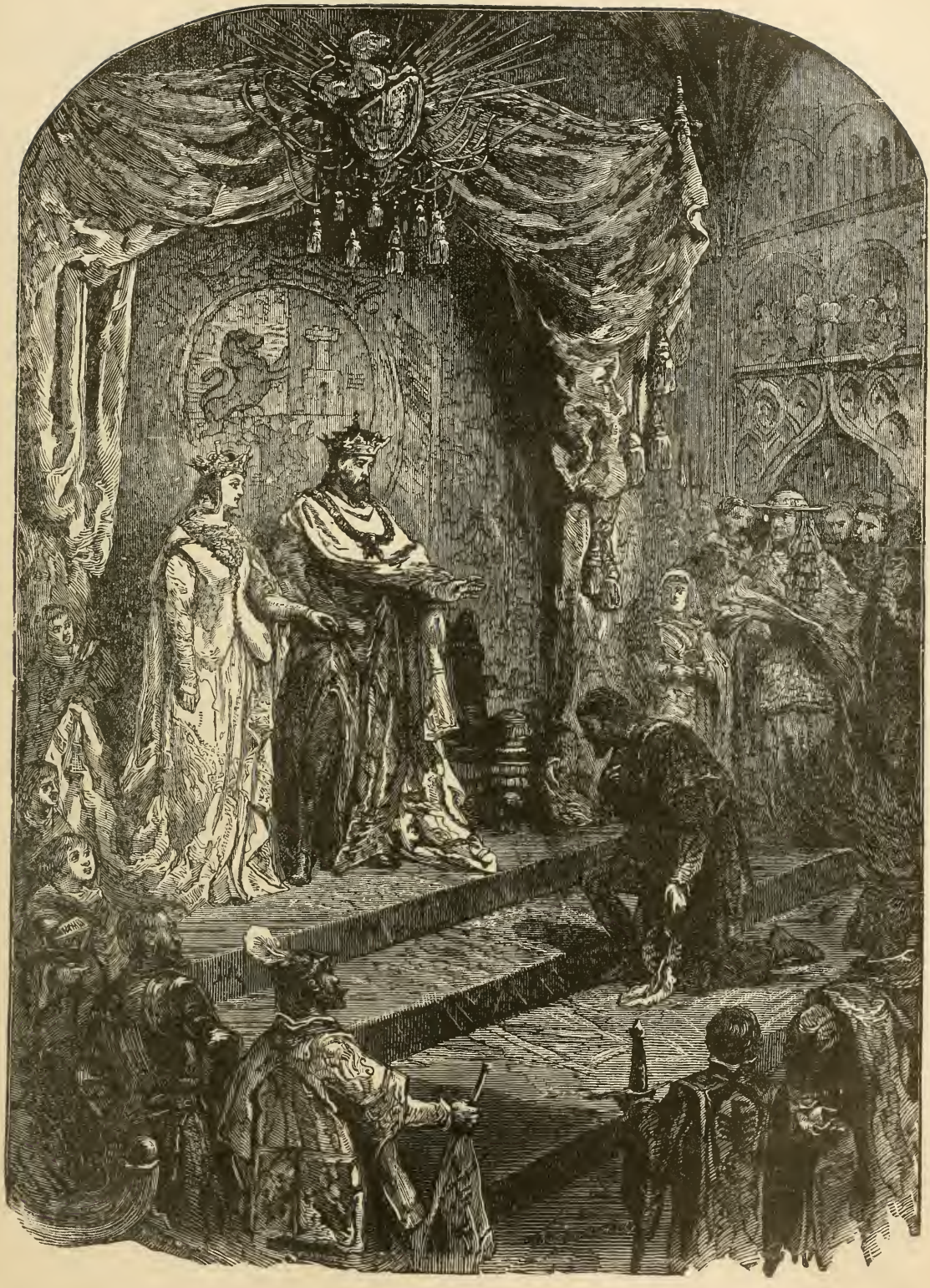
form a part of the Indies. For this reason he called the natives Indians, a name which they have since borne. Having built a garrison, a small fort in Hayti, Columbus took on board seven of the natives, and laid in a stock of fruits, plants and a number of animals as specimens of the products of the country, and set sail on his return to Spain. The voyage was a very tempestuous one. He arrived at Palos on the fifteenth of March, 1493. His arrival was greeted with enthusiasm. From Palos he set out for the court of Barcelona. Every step of the journey was a triumphal progress. He was received with the most distinguished honors by the sovereigns, and the whole court joined in a *Te Deum* of thankfulness for the success of his voyage.

LANDING OF COLUMBUS.

A second expedition, consisting of seventeen ships and fifteen hundred men, was now fitted out, and sailed from Cadiz under the command of Columbus on the twenty-fifth of September, 1493. On this voyage he discovered Jamaica, and many of the Caribbee Islands.

In 1498 Columbus made a third voyage, and in this expedition he discovered the mainland of the American Continent near the mouth of the Orinoco, and explored the coast of the provinces, since called Para and Cumana. He was not aware of the true nature of his discovery, but supposed that the South American coast was a part of a large island belonging to Cathay or Farther India.

In the meantime, gold had been discovered in Hayti, and crowds of adventurers were drawn hither from Spain. They inflicted great hardships upon the natives, and when Columbus arrived he found the affairs of the colony in a most deplorable state. The sovereigns at length sent over a commissioner named Bobadilla to investigate the affairs of the colony. He was a narrow-minded, incompetent man, and instead of investigating the charges against the admiral, arrested him,



RECEPTION OF COLUMBUS BY FERDINAND AND ISABELLA.

and sent him back to Spain in irons. When the officers of the ship which bore him back home wished to remove his fetters, he refused to allow them to do so, saying, "I will wear them as a memento of the gratitude of princes." The news of this outrage filled the people of Spain with honest indignation. "All seemed to feel it as a national dishonor," says Prescott, "that such indignities should be heaped upon the man, who, whatever might be his indiscretions, had done so much for Spain, and for the civilized world."

The Fetters Stricken Off.

Queen Isabella at once ordered his fetters to be struck off, and he was summoned to court, reinstated in all his honors, and treated with the highest consideration. Isabella gained from the king a promise to aid her in doing justice to the admiral, and in punishing his enemies; but Ferdinand, who could never bear to do a generous or noble act, evaded his promise, and the admiral failed to receive his just recompense.

In 1504 Columbus sailed on his fourth voyage; his object this time being to find a passage from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean, by which he might reach India. He explored the Gulf of Honduras, and saw the continent of North America, but was compelled by the mutiny of his crew and by severe storms to abandon his attempt and return to the northward. He was shipwrecked on the coast of Jamaica, where he remained more than a year. Returning to Spain in November, 1505, he found his best friend, Queen Isabella, on her death-bed. The enemies whom his great success had raised up for him were numerous and powerful, while he was now old and broken in health. He vainly sought from Ferdinand a faithful execution of the original compact between them; but though he received fair words and promises in abundance from the king, Ferdinand steadily refused to comply with the just demands of the admiral.

The Great Navigator's Death.

At last, worn out with care and disappointments, Columbus died at Valladolid, on the twentieth of May, 1506, being about seventy years old. He was buried with great pomp in the Convent of St. Francis, at Valladolid. In 1513 his remains were removed to the monastery of Las Cuevas, at Seville, and Ferdinand caused this inscription, which cost him nothing and expressed his excuse for his conduct towards the dead man, to be placed upon his tomb: "To Castile and Leon Columbus gave a New World!" In 1536 the body of the great admiral was conveyed with appropriate honors to St. Domingo. Upon the cession of that island to France in 1795, the body was removed to Cuba, and buried in the Cathedral of Havana. Not yet have the ashes of the Discoverer of America found their true resting place. That place is under the great dome of the Capitol of the Republic, for whose existence he prepared the way.

Though Columbus reached the continent of South America on his third voyage, he was not the first European who beheld the mainland of the western world. In the winter of 1497–98, Amerigo Vespucci, or Americus Vespucius, a Florentine navigator, made a voyage to the West Indies and the South American coast, thus reaching the mainland of the continent nearly a year before Columbus. Returning to Europe he published an account of his discoveries. This was the first account of the new world published in Europe, and some years later a German geographer gave to the continent the name of "*Americi Terra*," or the land discovered by Americus. From this time the name AMERICA was applied to the western continent.

COLUMBUS SIGHTING LAND.

and cavillings of men of cooler and safer, but more groveling minds.

Such were the conjectures formed on the coast of Paria about the form of the earth and the situation of the terrestrial paradise; about the mines of Ophir in Hispaniola, and of the Aurea Chersonesus in Veragua; and such was the heroic scheme of a crusade for the recovery of the holy sepulchre. It mingled with his religion, and filled his mind with solemn and visionary meditations on mystic passages of the scriptures, and the shadowy portents of the prophecies. It exalted his office in his eyes, and made him conceive himself an agent sent forth upon a sublime and awful mission, subject to impulses and supernatural intimations from the deity; such as the voice which he imagined spoke to him in comfort, amidst the troubles of Hispaniola, and in the silence of the night on the disastrous coast of Veragua.

A Man in Advance of His Time.

He was decidedly a visionary, but a visionary of an uncommon and successful kind. The manner in which his ardent, imaginative and mercurial nature were controlled by a powerful judgment, and directed by an acute sagacity, is the most extraordinary feature in his character. Thus governed, his imagination, instead of exhausting itself in idle flights, lent aid to his judgment, and enabled him to form conclusions, at which common minds could never have arrived, nay, which they could not perceive when pointed out.

To his intellectual vision it was given to read in the signs of the times, and to trace in the conjectures and reveries of past ages, the indications of an unknown world; as soothsayers were said to read predictions in the stars, and to foretell events from the visions of the night. "His soul," observes a Spanish writer, "was superior to the age in which he lived. For him was reserved the great enterprise of traversing a sea which had given rise to so many fables, and of deciphering the mystery of his time."

With all the visionary fervor of his imagination, its fondest dreams fell short of the reality. He died in ignorance of the real grandeur of his discovery. Until his last breath, he entertained the idea that he had merely opened a new way to the old resorts of opulent commerce, and had discovered some of the wild regions of the east. He supposed Hispaniola to be the ancient Ophir, which had been visited by the ships of Solomon, and that Cuba and Terra Firma were but remote parts of Asia. What visions of glory would have broken upon his mind, could he have known that he had indeed discovered a new continent, equal to the whole of the old world in magnitude, and separated by two vast oceans from all the earth hitherto known by civilized man! And how would his magnanimous spirit have been consoled amidst the afflictions of age and the cares of penury, the neglect of a fickle public, and the injustice of an ungrateful king, could he have anticipated the splendid empires which were to spread over the beautiful world he had discovered, and the nations, and tongues, and languages which were to fill its lands with his renown, and to revere and bless his name to the latest posterity!

It may be questioned whether any old Norse Sea-King, who braved the storms and billows of the North Atlantic, ever exhibited a purpose more resolute, a courage more daring, or a self-sacrifice more complete than characterized Columbus. Our illustration of the royal Norseman shows him to have been a man born to command and achieve; the hero of 1492 was no less illustrious.

CHAPTER III

English and French Discoveries

Discovery of the North American Continent by John Cabot—Voyages of Sebastian Cabot—The English fail to follow up these Discoveries—Efforts of the French to Explore America—Voyage and Discoveries of Verrazzani—Cartier Explores the St. Lawrence—Reaches Montreal—Efforts to Found a Colony on the St. Lawrence—Failure—Roberval's Colony—Trading Voyages—Explorations of Champlain—Colonization of Nova Scotia—Founding of Quebec—Discovery of Lake Champlain—Arrival of the Jesuits in Canada—Death of Champlain.

IN the meantime the success of the first voyage of Columbus had stimulated other nations to similar exertions. The English court had experienced a feeling of keen regret that the petition of Columbus had been refused, and when John Cabot, a native of Venice, then residing at Bristol, applied for leave to undertake a voyage of exploration his request was readily granted.

On the fifth of March, 1496, a patent or commission was granted to him and his three sons by Henry VII., authorizing either of them, their heirs or their agents, to undertake with a fleet of five ships, at their own expense, a voyage of discovery in the eastern, western or northern seas. Though they were to make the attempt at their own cost, they were to take possession of the countries they should discover for the king of England. They were to have the exclusive privilege of trading to these countries, but were bound to return to the port of Bristol, and to pay to the king one-fifth of the profits of their trade.

Early in 1497 Cabot sailed from Bristol, accompanied by his son, Sebastian. The object of his voyage was not only the discovery of new lands, but the finding of a northwest passage to Asia. He sailed due west, and on the twenty-fourth of June, 1497, reached the coast of Labrador. He thus discovered the mainland of the North American continent, fully fourteen months before Columbus reached the coast of South America, and nearly a year before Amerigo Vespucci made his discovery. He explored the coast to the southward for over a thousand miles, made frequent landings, and took possession of the country in the name of the English king. Returning home, he was received with many marks of honor by Henry VII., and was called the "Great Admiral" by the people.

Towards the close of the year 1497, the Cabots undertook a new voyage, and the king, pleased with the success of the first venture, became a partner in the enterprise, and assumed a portion of the expense. The object of this voyage was to trade with the natives, and to ascertain if the country was suited to colonization. The expedition sailed from Bristol in May, 1498, and was commanded by Sebastian Cabot, who reached the Labrador coast about four hundred miles north of the point discovered by his father.

He found the country cold and barren, though it was but the beginning of the summer, and sailed southward. "The coast to

which he was now borne was unobstructed by frost. He saw there stags larger than those of England, and bears that plunged into the water to take fish with their claws. The fish swarmed innumerably in such shoals they seemed to affect even the speed of his

"Continuing his voyage, according to the line of the shore, he found the natives of those regions clad in skins of beasts, but they were not without the faculty of reason, and in many places were acquainted with the use of copper. In the early part of his

SEBASTIAN CABOT.

vessels, so that he gave to the country the name of Bacallaos, which still linger, on the east side of Newfoundland, and has passed into the language of the Germans and the Italians, as well as the Portuguese and Spanish, to designate the cod.

voyage he had been so far to the north that in the month of July the light of day was almost continuous; before he turned homewards, in the late autumn, he believed he had attained the latitude of the Straits of Gibraltar and the longitude of Cuba."* On

* Bancroft.

his homeward voyage he noticed the Gulf Stream.

This was the last voyage from England made by Sebastian Cabot. On the death of Henry VII., he took service with Ferdinand of Spain, and under him and his grandson, Charles V., he made many voyages, and was for nearly sixty years the foremost man in Europe in maritime enterprises.

A Renowned Explorer.

He explored the eastern coast of South America, and in his efforts to find the northwest passage sailed within twenty degrees of the North Pole, and explored the eastern coast of North America from Hudson's Straits to Albemarle Sound. He was in many things one of the most remarkable men of his day, and besides his own discoveries contributed generously by his advice and encouragement to those of others. "He gave England a continent, and no one knows his burial place."

The English made no effort to take advantage of the discoveries of the Cabots. They sent a few vessels every year to fish on the banks of Newfoundland, but pursued even this industry without vigor. The other nations were more energetic, and showed a keener appreciation of the value of the new lands. The French were especially active in this respect. Their vessels engaged in the fisheries far outnumbered those of the English, and many plans were proposed in France for the colonization of those regions. In 1523 Francis I. employed a Florentine named John Verrazzani, an experienced navigator, to undertake the discovery of a northwest passage to India. Verrazzani sailed on the seventeenth of January, 1524, and, after a stormy voyage of fifty days, reached the American coast in the latitude of Wilmington, North Carolina. Failing to find a good harbor, he sailed southward for 150 miles, and then turned northward, examining the coast as he proceeded on his journey.

An Earthly Paradise.

Verrazzani was surprised and delighted by the appearance of the new country and its inhabitants. The latter welcomed with hospitality the strangers whom they had not yet learned to fear, and the Europeans, on their part, regarded with wonder the "russet"-colored natives in their dress of skins ornamented with feathers. Judging from the accounts which they carried to Europe, the voyagers regarded the country as a sort of terrestrial paradise. "Their imagination could not conceive of more delightful fields and forests; the groves spreading perfumes far from the shore, gave promise of the spices of the East; and the color of the earth argued an abundance of gold." The harbors of New York and Newport were carefully explored, and in the latter the voyagers remained fifteen days.

They then proceeded along the New England coast to Nova Scotia, and still farther to the north. They found the natives here less friendly than those farther south. A Portuguese commander, Gaspar Cortereal, had visited their coast a few years before, and had carried away some of their number and sold them into slavery.

Returning to France, Verrazzani published an account of his voyage. This narrative forms the earliest original description now in existence of the American coast, and added very much to the knowledge of the Europeans concerning this country. France at a subsequent period based, upon Verrazzani's discoveries, her claim to the whole coast of America from Newfoundland to South Carolina. The French, however, were not destined to obtain a foothold in the new world.

The struggle in which Francis I. was engaged with the Emperor Charles V. pre-

vented him from taking advantage of these discoveries, and nothing was done with regard to them by the French until ten years later, when Chabot, Admiral of France, induced King Francis to make another effort to explore and colonize America. An expedition was fitted out, placed under the command of James Cartier, a mariner of St. Malo, and despatched in April, 1534, for the purpose of exploring the American coast with a view to colonizing it. A quick voyage of twenty days carried Cartier to Newfoundland. Having passed through the straits of Belleisle, he crossed the gulf and entered a bay which he named Des Chaleurs, from the extreme heats he experienced there.

France Sends Out a Colony.

He proceeded along the coast as far as the small inlet called Gaspé, where he landed and took formal possession of the country in the name of the king of France. Leaving Gaspé Bay, Cartier discovered the great river of Canada, and sailed up the stream until he could see the land on either side. His explorations consumed the months of May, June and July. Being unprepared to pass the winter in America, the fleet sailed for Europe.

The reports of Cartier concerning America aroused the deepest interest in France, and it was determined by the government to proceed at once to the founding of a colony in the new world. A fleet of three well-equipped ships was fitted out, and volunteers from some of the noblest families in France were not lacking. The whole company repaired to the cathedral, where they received the bishop's blessing, and on the nineteenth of May, 1535, the expedition sailed from St. Malo. The voyage was long and stormy, but Newfoundland was reached at length. Passing through the straits of Belleisle, they entered the gulf lying west of Newfoundland on the tenth of August, the festival of St. Lawrence the Martyr, and gave to the gulf the name of that saint, which was subsequently applied to the great river emptying into it

A Beautiful Country.

The voyagers ascended the stream to the island since called Orleans. There the fleet anchored, while Cartier proceeded farther up the river to the chief Indian settlement on the island of Hochelega. It was the delightful season of September, and the country was beautiful and inviting. Cartier ascended a hill at the foot of which the Indian settlement lay, and gazed with admiration at the magnificent region which spread out before him. He named the hill Mont Real, or Royal Mount, a name which is now borne by the island and by the great city which marks the site of Indian village.

The balminess of the autumn induced Cartier to hope that the climate would prove as mild as that of France; but a rigorous winter, which was rendered horrible by the prevalence of scurvy among the ships' crews, disheartened the whole expedition. The winter was spent at the Isle of Orleans, and in the early spring Cartier erected a cross on the shore, to which was affixed a shield inscribed with the arms of France and a legend declaring Francis I. the true and rightful king of the country. The fleet then sailed for France, and arrived at St. Malo on the sixth of July, 1536. Cartier published a truthful account of his voyage, setting forth the severity of the Canadian climate and the absence of mines of precious metals. His report checked for the time the enthusiasm with which the French had regarded America, and for four years the plan of colonizing the new country was laid aside, and all attempts were abandoned until a more favorable opportunity should present itself.

Some ardent spirits, however, still believed in the possibility of planting successful colonies in the new world and bringing that

vast region under the dominion of France. Among these was Francis de la Roque, lord of Roberval, a nobleman of Picardy. He was appointed, by King Francis, Viceroy of the territories on or near the gulf and river of St. Lawrence, to which the high-sounding name of Norimbega was given, and was empowered to colonize it. The assistance of Cartier was necessary to such an undertaking, and he had the additional advantage of possessing the entire confidence of his royal master the king.

Roberval was forced to employ him, and Cartier was given authority by the king to search the prisons and take from them such persons as he needed for the expedition. Roberval and Cartier, however, failed to agree, and their dissensions defeated the object of the undertaking. Cartier sailed from St. Malo in May, 1541, and ascended the St. Lawrence to a point near the present city of Quebec, where he built a fort. The winter was passed in idleness and discord, and in the spring of 1542 Cartier abandoned the attempt, and sailed away for France with his ships just as Roberval arrived with a large reinforcement, prepared to render aid.

Roberval was unable to accomplish more than Cartier. His new subjects had been largely drawn from the prisons, and they gave him considerable trouble, if we may judge from the efforts resorted to to keep them quiet. One of them was hanged for theft during the winter, several were put in irons, and a number of men and women were whipped. After remaining in Canada for a year, Roberval became disheartened, and re-embarked his subjects and returned to France Thus ended the attempt to colonize Canada.

Nearly thirty years passed away, during which the French made no effort to secure to themselves the region of the St. Lawrence. Their fishermen, however, continued to frequent the American waters. By the close of the sixteenth century one hundred and fifty vessels were engaged in the fisheries of Newfoundland, and voyages for the purpose of trading with the Indians had become common. In 1598 the Marquis de la Roche,

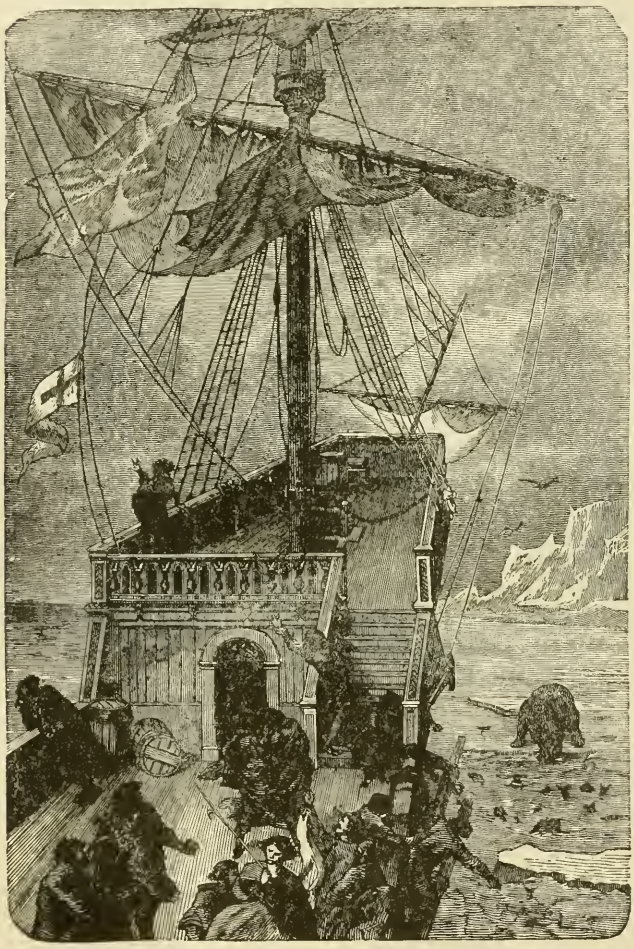
SAMUEL CHAMPLAIN.

a nobleman of Brittany, attempted to plant a colony on the Isle of Sable. The colonists consisted of criminals from the prisons of France, and the effort proved a failure, as might have been expected from the outset.

In 1600, Chauvin obtained a patent from the crown, conferring upon him a monopoly of the fur trade, and Pontgravé, a merchant of St. Malo, became his partner in the enterprise. Two successful voyages were made

to Canada, and Chauvin intended founding a colony there. His death, in 1602, prevented the execution of this plan.

In 1603, a company of merchants of Rouen was organized, and Samuel Champlain, an able and experienced officer of the French navy, was placed in charge of an expedition, and sent to Canada to explore the country. He was in every way qualified for the task committed to him, and after making a thorough and systematic examination of the region of the St. Lawrence, and fixing upon Quebec as the proper site for a fort, returned to France, and laid before his employers his report, which is still valuable for its accurate description of the country and the manners of the natives.



CABOT ON THE SHORES OF LABRADOR.

Soon after Champlain's return to France, a patent was issued to Des Monts, conferring upon him the sole right to colonize the vast region lying between the fortieth and forty-sixth parallels of latitude. As this territory embraced the St. Lawrence region, the Rouen company were unable for the present to accomplish anything. Des Monts proceeded with his preparations, and in March, 1604, an expedition, consisting of two ships, was sent out to Acadie or Nova Scotia. The summer was passed in trading with the Indians and exploring the coast, and in the autumn the colonists made a settlement on the island of St. Croix, at the mouth of the river of the same name.

In the spring of 1605, they abandoned this settlement and removed to Port Royal, now known as Annapolis. Efforts were made to find a more southern location in the latter part of 1605 and 1606, but the expeditions sent out for this purpose were driven back by storms or wrecked among the shoals of Cape Cod, and the colonists decided to remain at Port Royal. Thus the permanency of the colony was established. Some years later a number of Jesuit missionaries were sent out to Port Royal. These labored diligently among the tribes between the Penobscot and the Kennebec, and not only spread the Christian faith among them, but won for the French the constant affection of the savages. During all her contests with the English in America, these tribes remained

the faithful and unwavering allies of France. In 1613 a French colony was planted on the eastern shore of Mount Desert. The settlement was named St. Sauveur, and became another centre of missionary enterprise among the savages of Maine.

In the meantime the French merchants had succeeded in obtaining a revocation of the impolitic monopoly of Des Monts. A company of merchants of St. Malo and Dieppe was formed, and an expedition was sent out to Canada under Champlain, who "aimed not at the profits of trade, but at the glory of founding a state." On the third of July, 1608, the city of Quebec was begun by the erection of one or two cottages.

In 1609, Champlain, with but two Europeans, joined a party of Hurons from Montreal, and Algonquins from Quebec, in an expedition against the Five Nations. He ascended the Sorel, explored the lake which is now called by his name, and examined a considerable part of northern New York. The religious disputes of France spread to the colony, and Champlain was obliged to use all his energy and authority to overcome the evils which these inflicted upon the infant settlement. He succeeded in overcoming them, and by his energy and perseverance the fortunes of Quebec were placed beyond the reach of failure. Champlain died in 1635, and was buried in "New France," of which he is called "the father."

CHAPTER IV

The Spaniards in America

Settlement of the West Indies—Discovery of the Pacific Ocean—Voyage of Magellan—Discovery of Florida—Ponce de Leon's Search for the Fountain of Youth—Vasquez de Ayllon Kidnaps a Cargo of Indians—Effort of Pamphilo de Narvaez to Conquer Florida—A Terrible March—The Voyage on the Gulf of Mexico—Fate of the Fleet—Escape of Cabeza de Vaca and his Comrades—Discovery of New Mexico—Fernando de Soto—Obtains leave to Conquer Florida—Sails from Spain—Arrival in Cuba—Departure for Florida—Landing at Tampa Bay—Events of the First Year—De Soto enters Georgia—Decends the Alabama—Battle of Mavilla—Destruction of Chickasaw—Sufferings of the Spaniards—Discovery of the Mississippi—The Spaniards Cross the Great River—De Soto in Arkansas—Reaches the Mississippi again—Sickness and Death of De Soto—His Burial—Escape of his Followers to Mexico—The Huguenot Colony in Carolina—Its Failure—The French Settle in Florida—Wrath of Philip II.—Melendez ordered to Exterminate the Huguenots—Foundation of St. Augustine—Massacre of the French at Fort Carolina—The Vengeance of De Gourges.

WHILE the French were seeking to obtain a footing in the north, the Spaniards were busy in the south. In the first years of the sixteenth century the more important of the West India Islands were subdued and colonized, and from these, expeditions were from time to time sent out to explore the shores of the Gulf of Mexico. The southern part of the peninsula of Yucatan was explored, and a colony was established on the Isthmus of Darien. One of the governors of this colony was Vasco Nunez de Balboa. In 1513, while searching the Isthmus for gold, he discovered the Pacific Ocean, and took possession of it in the name of the king of Spain.

In 1520, a Portuguese navigator named Magellan, employed by the king of Spain, passed through the straits north of Cape Horn, which bear his name, and entered the Western ocean, which he named the Pacific, because it was so calm and free from storms. He died on the voyage, but his ship reached the coast of Asia, and returned thence to Spain by the Cape of Good Hope, thus making the first voyage around the world, and establishing its spherical form beyond dispute.

In 1513, Juan Ponce de Leon, who had been a companion of Columbus on his second voyage, and had been governor of Porto Rico, fitted out three ships at his own expense to make a voyage of discovery. He had heard the reports which were then commonly believed by his countrymen, that somewhere in the new world was a fountain flowing in the midst of a country sparkling with gold and gems, whose waters would give perpetual youth to the man who should drink of and bathe in them.

Ponce de Leon was an old man, and he longed to taste again the pleasures and the dreams of youth. He gave a willing ear to the stories of this wonderful fountain, and in March, 1513, set sail from Porto Rico in search of it. He sailed among the Bahamas, but failed to find it, and on Easter Sunday, which the Spaniards call *Pascua Florida*, land was discovered. It was supposed to be an island, but was in reality the long southern peninsula of the United States. Ponce

de Leon gave it the name of Florida—which it has since borne—partly in honor of the day, and partly because of the beauty of its flowers and foliage. The weather was very bad, and it was some days before he could go ashore. He landed near the site of St. Augustine, and took possession of the country for Spain on the eighth of April, 1513. He remained many weeks on the coast, exploring it, and sailing southward, doubled Cape Florida, and cruised among the Tortugas. He failed to find the fountain of youth and returned in despair to Porto Rico. The king of Spain rewarded his discovery by appointing him governor of Florida, on condition that he should colonize the country.

A few years later he attempted to plant a colony in Florida, but was attacked by the Indians, who were very hostile, and driven to his ships with the loss of a number of his men. Ponce de Leon himself received a painful wound, and returned to Cuba to die. He had staked his life upon the search for perpetual youth; he found only a grave.

Between the years 1518 and 1521, the expeditions of Hernando Cortez against Mexico, and of Francesco Pizarro against Peru, were despatched from Cuba. They resulted in the conquest of those countries and their colonization by Spain. These expeditions, however, form no part of this narrative, and we cannot dwell upon them.

The native population of the West Indies died out rapidly under the cruel rule of the Spaniards, and it soon became necessary to look elsewhere for a supply of laborers for the plantations and the mines. In 1520, Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon, at the head of a company of seven Spaniards, fitted out a fleet of two slave-ships from St. Domingo or Hispaniola, for the deliberate purpose of seizing the natives of the mainland and selling them as slaves. The vessels went first to the Bahamas, from which they sailed to the North American coast, reaching it at or near St. Helena sound, in the present State of South Carolina. The Indians had not yet learned to fear the whites, and were utterly unsuspicious of the fate which awaited them. They were timid at first, but this feeling was soon overcome by the distribution of presents among them. Their confidence being won, they received the Spaniards with kindness, and at their request visited the ships.

THE COAST OF FLORIDA.

When the decks of the vessels were covered with the unsuspecting natives Vasquez made sail, and standing out to sea steered for the West Indies, regardless of the entreaties of the natives who were thus torn from their friends and relatives on the shore. A retributive justice speedily avenged this crime. A violent storm arose and one of the ships foundered with all on board. A pestilence broke out in the remaining vessel, and swept away many of the captives. Returning to

HERNANDO CORTEZ.

Spain, Vasquez boasted of his infamous deed, and even claimed a reward for it at the hands of the Emperor Charles V., who acknowledged his claim, and appointed him governor of Chicora, as South Carolina was called, with authority to conquer that country. Vasquez spent his entire fortune in fitting out an expedition, and reached the coast of Chicora in 1525.

There he met with nothing but misfortune. His largest ship was stranded in the Combahee River, then called by the whites the River Jordan, and so many of his men were killed by the Indians that he was obliged to abandon the undertaking. He returned to Europe to die of grief and mortification for his failure. "It may be," says Bancroft, "that ships sailing under his authority made the discovery of the Chesapeake and named it the Bay of St. Mary; and perhaps even entered the Bay of Delaware, which in Spanish geography was called Saint Christopher's."

Adventurers Seeking Fortune.

In 1526, Pamphilo de Narvaez obtained from the Emperor Charles V. authority to explore and conquer all the country between the Atlantic and the River of Palms. He was very wealthy, and spent his entire estate in preparation for the expedition. There was no lack of volunteers, and many younger sons of nobles joined him, hoping to find fame and fortune in the new world. Among the adventurers was Cabeza de Vaca the historian of the expedition, who held the second place in it as treasurer. Narvaez sailed from the Guadalquivir in June, 1527, touched at St. Domingo, and passed the winter in Cuba. In the spring of 1528, he was driven by a strong south wind to the American coast, and on the fourteenth of April his fleet cast anchor in Tampa Bay. A week later he landed and took possession of the peninsula of Florida in the name of Spain.

The natives showed unmistakable signs of hostility, but they exhibited to the governor samples of gold, which he believed, from their signs, came from the north. In spite of the earnest advice of Cabeza de Vaca, he determined to go in search of the precious metal. He directed his ships to meet him at a harbor with which his pilot pretended to be acquainted, and then, at the head of three hundred men, forty of whom were mounted,

set off into the interior of the country. No one knew whither he was going, but all believed that each step led them nearer to the land of gold.

The beauty of the forest, the richness of its vegetation, and the size of its gigantic live-oaks, filled them with wonder and admiration, and the variety and abundance of the birds and wild beasts of the country excited their surprise; but they found neither the gold nor the splendid cities they had fondly believed they were about to discover. The forest grew denser and more intricate at every step, and the rivers were broad and deep, with swift currents, and could be crossed only by means of rafts, which were constructed with great difficulty. The march lay through swamps, in which the Indian warriors harassed the strangers painfully, and, their provisions becoming exhausted, they began to suffer with hunger. Late in June they reached Appalachee, which they had supposed was a large and wealthy city. They found it only a hamlet of some forty poor wigwams; but remained there twenty-five days, searching the neighboring country for gold and silver, and finding none.

A Perilous Voyage.

It was plain now even to the governor that there was no gold to be found in this region, and every nerve was strained to hasten the march to the harbor where they had appointed to meet the ships. There was but one impulse now in the whole expedition—to escape from the terrible country which was proving so fatal to them. After a painful march they reached a bay which they called the Baia de Caballos, now the harbor of St. Marks. The ships could not be seen, and it was resolved at once to build boats and attempt to reach some of the Spanish possessions by sea. The horses were slain to furnish food, and several hundred bushels of corn were seized from the Indians. Subsisting upon these supplies, the Spaniards beat their spurs, stirrups, cross-bows, and other implements into saws and axes and nails, and in sixteen days built five boats, each more than thirty feet long. Pitch for the calking of the boats was made from the pine trees, and the fibre of the palmetto served as oakum. Ropes were made of twisted horse-hair and palmetto fibres, and the shirts of the men were pieced together for sails. Fifty men had been lost on the march, and on the twenty-second of September the survivors, two hundred and fifty in number, began their perilous voyage.

The Fleet Scattered by a Storm.

They followed the shore, encountering many dangers, and suffering greatly from hunger and thirst. On the thirtieth of October they discovered one of the mouths of the Mississippi, and on the fifth of November a storm scattered the little fleet. Cabeza de Vaca's boat was wrecked upon an island which is believed to be that of Galveston. Castillo's boat was driven ashore farther to the east, but he and his crew were saved alive. Of the fate of the other boats nothing is known with certainty. Of those who were cast ashore, all but Cabeza de Vaca, Dorantes, Castillo, and Estevanico, a negro, died of exposure and hardship. These four were detained captives among the Indians for nearly six years.

At the end of this period, Cabeza induced his companions to join him in an attempt to escape. In September, 1534, they set out, naked, ignorant of the way, and without any means of sustaining life. In this condition these men accomplished the wonderful feat of traversing the continent. The journey occupied upwards of twenty months, and extended from the coast of Texas to the Canadian River, and thence into New

Mexico, from which they continued their way to the village of San Miguel, in Sonora, near the Pacific Ocean. They reached this village in May, 1536, and found themselves again among their countrymen. They were escorted to Compostella by Spanish soldiers, and from that place were forwarded to the City of Mexico by the authorities.

Fabulous Tales of Gold.

The reports of Cabeza and his companions made the Viceroy Mendoza anxious to send out an expedition to explore New Mexico, which was believed to be richer in wealth and splendid cities than Mexico itself. A Franciscan friar boasted that he had visited a region in the interior named Cibola, the Land of Buffaloes, in which were seven splendid cities. He declared that the land was rich in silver and gold, and that his Indian guides had described to him a region still wealthier. The friar's story was religiously believed, and an expedition set out in 1539, under command of Francisco Vasquez Coronado, the governor of New Galicia.

The expedition explored the region of the Colorado, examined the country now known as New Mexico, and penetrated as far east as the present State of Kansas. Coronado found neither gold nor precious stones, and the only cities he discovered were the towns of the Zuni Indians of New Mexico. He reported to the viceroy on his return to Mexico that the region was not fit to be colonized, and his description of the country through which he marched is so accurate as to challenge the admiration of every succeeding traveler.

Still the Spaniards refused to abandon the belief that fabulous wealth was to be found in the interior of the continent; and even those who had borne a part in the conquest of Mexico and Peru gave credit to the wild stories that were told concerning the undiscovered regions. Among those who gave such implicit faith to these stories was Fernando de Soto, of Xeres, a veteran soldier, who had served with distinction with Pizarro in the conquest of Peru, and had amassed a considerable fortune from the spoils of that province. The fame and wealth acquired by him in this expedition opened the way to other successes in Europe. He was honored with the favor of the Emperor Charles V., and received the hand of a noble lady in marriage. Eager to distinguish himself still further, he determined to attempt the conquest of Florida. He demanded and received from the emperor permission to undertake this at his own cost, and was also made governor of Cuba and all the territories he should conquer. As soon as he made known his intentions applications for leave to serve in the expedition poured in upon him. Many of the volunteers were of noble birth, and sold their lands and other property to equip themselves for the undertaking.

Adventures of De Soto.

De Soto selected six hundred well equipped men from the number who had volunteered, and in 1538 sailed from Spain to Cuba, where he was welcomed with great rejoicings. A vessel was despatched from Cuba to find a harbor in Florida suitable for the landing of the expedition. On its return it brought two Indian captives, who perceiving what was wanted of them, told by signs such stories of the wealth of the country as greatly delighted the governor and his companions. Volunteers in Cuba swelled the ranks of the expedition to nearly one thousand men, of whom three hundred were horsemen.

In May, 1539, leaving his wife to govern the island, De Soto sailed with his fleet for Florida, and a fortnight later landed at Espi-

ritu Santo, now Tampa Bay. Everything had been provided which the foresight of an experienced commander deemed necessary, and De Soto, in order to remove any temptation to retreat, sent his ships back to Cuba. He never dreamed of failure, for he believed that at the most the task before him would not be more difficult than those which had been accomplished by Cortez and Pizarro. After a brief halt at Tampa Bay the march into the interior was begun. It was long and tedious, and was full of danger. The Indians were hostile, and the guides constantly led the Spaniards astray, and plunged them into difficult swamps. The guides were instantly given to the bloodhounds, and torn in pieces by the ferocious animals; but not even this dreadful punishment was sufficient to prevent a renewal of such acts. Before the close of the first season the whole company, save the governor, had become convinced that their hope of finding gold was vain, and they besought De Soto to return to Cuba. He sternly refused to abandon the effort, and pushed on to the country of the Appalachians, east of the Flint River, and not far from the Bay of Appalachee. The winter was passed in this region, and a scouting party during this season discovered Pensacola.

In the spring of 1540 the march was resumed. An Indian guide promised to conduct the Spaniards to a country abounding in gold and governed by a woman, and he described the process of refining gold so accurately that De Soto believed his story. It is possible that the Indian may have referred to the gold region of North Carolina. One of the guides told the governor plainly that he knew of no such country as his companion had described, and De Soto had him burned for what he supposed was his falsehood. The Indians, terrified by his fate, from this time invented all manner of fabulous stories to excite the cupidity of the Spaniards. De Soto, with a singular perversity, held to his belief that he would yet realize his hopes, and continued to push on long after his men had become disheartened; and so great was his influence over them that in their deepest despondency he managed to inspire them with something of his own courage and hopefulness.

FERNANDO DE SOTO.

Instead of conciliating the Indians, the Spaniards seized their provisions, and provoked their hostility in numberless ways They treated their captives with the greatest cruelty. They cut off the hands of the poor Indians, burned them at the stake, or turned them over to the bloodhounds, who tore them in pieces. They were chained together by the neck, and forced to carry the baggage and provisions of the troops. The march was now into the interior of Georgia, as far as the headwaters of the Chattahoochee, from which the Spaniards passed to the headwaters of the Coosa. Here they turned to

the southwest, and marched through Alabama to the junction of the Alabama and Tombigbee Rivers.

At this point there was a large and strongly fortified town called Mavilla, or Mobile, a name which has since been given to the river and bay. The town consisted of "eighty handsome houses, each sufficiently capacious to contain a thousand men. They were encompassed by a high wall, made of immense trunks of trees, set deep in the ground and close together, strengthened with cross-timbers and interwoven with large vines." It was the middle of October when Mavilla was reached, and the Spaniards tired of living in the open country so long, wished to occupy the town. The Indians resisted them, and a desperate battle ensued, which was won by the Spanish cavalry. The victory cost the whites dear, however, for the town was burned during the battle, and with it all the baggage of the Spaniards was consumed. The Indians fought with a desperate bravery, and numbers of them were slain and burned to death in the town. The Spaniards had eighteen killed and one hundred and fifty wounded; twelve horses were killed and seventy-two wounded.

De Soto Presses On.

Ships had arrived in the meantime, according to appointment, at Pensacola, and by them De Soto received letters from his wife. He would send no news home, however. He had not yet realized the objects of the expedition, and he determined to send no news of himself to his countrymen until he had found or conquered some rich country. Turning his back resolutely upon the ships, the governor resumed his march to the northwest.

By the middle of December he reached the northwestern part of the State of Mississippi, and finding a deserted village in the country of the Chickasaws, occupied it as the winter quarters of the expedition. December, 1540 the winter was severe, and the ground was covered with snow, but the corn was still standing in the fields, and this furnished the Spaniards with food. Their force was now reduced to five hundred men, and it was evident to all, except the governor, that they would never find the cities or the wealth they had set out to seek.

Discovery of the Mississippi.

With the opening of the spring of 1541 a new disaster befell the Spaniards. De Soto, as had been his custom with the other tribes, demanded of the Chickasaw chief two hundred men to carry the baggage of the troops. The demand was refused, and that night the Indians, deceiving the sentinels, set fire to the village. The bewildered Spaniards were aroused from their slumbers to meet a fierce attack of the savages. The latter were repulsed after a hard fight, but the whites were left in an almost helpless condition. The little they had saved from the flames at Mavilla was destroyed in the burning village. Armor and weapons were rendered worthless, and scarcely any clothing was saved. The troops were forced to resort to dresses of skins and the long moss of the country woven into mats. In this condition, they suffered greatly from the cold. To supply the weapons destroyed forges were erected, and the swords were retempered and new lances made.

Renewing their march the Spaniards pushed on still farther west, and about the second of May reached the banks of the Mississippi, at a point a short distance below the present city of Memphis. They were the first white men to gaze upon the mighty flood of this noble river, but De Soto had no admiration to express for it. It was only an obstacle in his westward march, and would require greater efforts for its passage than

DE SOTO DISCOVERING THE MISSISSIPPI

THE LANDING OF ROGER WILLIAMS

any stream he had yet encountered. A month was passed on the banks of the river in constructing barges large enough to hold three horsemen each. At length they were completed, and the Spaniards were transported in safety to the opposite shore. The natives received them kindly, and presented them with food, and regarding them as the children of their god, the sun, brought to them their sick to be healed, and their blind to be restored to sight. The blunt soldier, cruel as he had been to the savages, shrank from claiming the power of heaven. "Pray only to God, who is in heaven, for whatsoever ye need," he answered.

Exploring the Country.

De Soto remained forty days on the western bank of the Mississippi, and during this time an exploring party was sent to examine the country to the north. They reported that this region was thinly inhabited by hunters, who lived by chasing the bison, which abounded in this region. The governor then turned to the west and northwest, and advanced two hundred miles farther into the interior of the continent, probably to the highlands of the White River.

Then turning southward, he passed through a succession of Indian tribes who lived by cultivating the soil, and who enjoyed a civilization superior to that of their nomadic brethren. The winter was passed near the Hot Springs of Arkansas. The Indians west of the Mississippi were treated with the same cruelties that had marked the conduct of the Spaniards towards the savages east of that stream. "Any trifling consideration of safety would induce the governor to set fire to a hamlet. He did not delight in cruelty, but the happiness, the life and the rights of the Indians were held of no account."

In the spring of 1542, De Soto determined to descend the Washita to its mouth, and endeavor to reach the sea. At last, after a most arduous march, in which he frequently lost his way amid the swamps and bayous of the region, he reached the Mississippi. The chieftain of this region could not tell him the distance to the sea, but informed him that the country along the lower river was a vast and uninhabited swamp. An exploring party was sent to descend the banks of the river, and returned, after penetrating about thirty miles in eight days, to confirm the Indian's report.

Reaching the vicinity of Natchez, the governor found the Indians prepared to contest his occupation of the town. He attempted to overawe them by claiming to be the child of the sun, their chief deity. The chieftain answered him scornfully: "You say you are the child of the sun Dry up the river and I will believe you. Do you desire to see me? Visit the town where I dwell. If you come in peace, I will receive you with special good will; if in war, I will not shrink one foot back." The savages were becoming more dangerous every day, and the Spaniards less able to resist their assaults.

Burial of De Soto.

De Soto was now conquered. It was at last as plain to him as it had been all along to his followers that the expedition was a failure. He had spent three years in roaming over the continent, and he had found neither the cities nor the wealth he had hoped for. His magnificent anticipations had disappeared; his little army was reduced to a mere handful of the splendid force that had left Cuba; and he was in the midst of a region from which he could see no escape. A deep melancholy took the place of the stern pride that had hitherto marked his demeanor, and his heart was torn by a conflict of

emotions. His health gave way rapidly, and he was seized with a violent fever.

When informed by his medical attendant that his end was at hand, he expressed his resignation to the will of God, and at the request of his men appointed Louis de Mocoso his successor, and advised him to continue the expedition. He died on the fifth of June, 1542. In order to conceal his death from the savages, who had come to regard him as immortal, his body was wrapped in a mantle, and in the silence of midnight was rowed out into the middle of the Mississippi. There, amid the darkness and the wailing requiems of the priests, the mortal remains of Fernando de Soto were committed to the great river he had discovered.

Harrassed by the Indians.

The Spaniards at once prepared to disregard the advice of their dead leader, and resolved to set out across the country for Mexico, believing it less dangerous to go by land than by sea. They roused the whole country against them by their barbarous treatment of the people, and, having proceeded upwards of three hundred miles west of the Mississippi, were driven back to that stream by the savages. It now became necessary to build vessels and descend the river. Seven of these were constructed with great difficulty, and amidst the constant hostility of the Indians. They were frail barks, without decks, and in order to construct them the Spaniards were obliged to beat their weapons, and even their stirrups, spurs and bridles into saws, axes and nails.

During this period they suffered greatly from the lack of clothing, for it was the winter season. They obtained provisions by plundering the granaries of the neighboring tribes, and thus dooming many of the savages to death by starvation. On the first of July, 1543, they embarked in their vessels, their number being now reduced to about two hundred and fifty, and began the descent of the river. Their progress was harassed at every mile by the Indians, who covered the stream with their canoes and kept up an almost constant assault upon the fleet. On the eighteenth of July, the vessels entered the Gulf of Mexico, and by the tenth of September the Mexican coast was reached. The vessels succeeded in gaining the Spanish settlement of Panuco, where the survivors were hospitably received by their countrymen.

Ribault's Expedition.

The failure of Narvaez and De Soto prevented the Spaniards from making any further attempt for many years to colonize the Florida coast. The next effort to found a settlement in that region was by the French. The religious wars which had distracted France for so many years made the great Huguenot leader, Coligny, Admiral of France, anxious to provide in the new world a refuge to which his persecuted brethren of the faith might fly in times of danger, and be free to worship God after the dictates of their own conscience. He succeeded in obtaining authority for this undertaking from Charles IX., and in 1562 an expedition was despatched to America under the command of Jean Ribault, a Protestant. Ribault was instructed to avoid the more rigorous climate of Canada, and to select a southern location for the colony. Land was made in May, 1562, in the vicinity of St. Augustine, Florida, and the fleet anchored in Port Royal Harbor.

Ribault was delighted with the noble harbor, which he believed to be the outlet of a large river, and with the beauty and richness of the country. A fort was built on an island in the harbor, and called Carolina, which name was also applied to the country in honor of Charles IX. of France. A force

of twenty-five men was left to garrison the fort, and Ribault returned to France to report his success and bring out reinforcements for the colony. He reached France in the midst of the civil war, which prevented any attention being paid to the colony. The garrison of Fort Carolina waited in vain for the promised reinforcements and supplies, and at last, becoming disheartened, built a brigantine and set sail for their own country. Their provisions soon gave out, and they began to suffer the horrors of famine. When they were nearly exhausted, they were rescued by an English vessel, which set the most feeble upon the coast of France, but carried the remainder to England. In both countries the colonists spread their accounts of the beauty and fertility of Carolina.

THE SPANIARDS DESCENDING THE MISSISSIPPI AFTER THE DEATH OF DE SOTO.

In 1564 there was a lull in the struggle between the contending parties in France, and Coligny took advantage of it to renew his efforts to colonize America. Three ships were furnished by the king, and were placed in command of Laudonniere, who had accompanied Ribault in the first expedition. Emigrants volunteered readily, and the required number was soon completed. In order to obtain reliable information concerning the country, Coligny sent out with the expedition a skillful painter, James le Moyne, called Des Morgues, with orders to make accurate colored sketches of the region. The fleet sailed on the twenty-second of April, 1564, and on the twenty-second of June reached the coast of Florida. Avoiding Port Royal, the site of the first colony, the colonists chose a location in Florida, on the banks of the

St. John's then called the River May. A fort was built, and called, like the first, Carolina.

The colony was begun with prayers and songs of thanksgiving, but the bulk of the colonists were by no means religious men. Their true character soon began to appear. They wasted the supplies they had brought with them, as well as those they succeeded in extorting from the Indians, whom they alienated by their cruelties. Mutinies were frequent. The majority of the men had joined the enterprise in the hope of acquiring sudden wealth, and, finding their hopes vain, resolved to abandon the colony. They compelled Laudonniere to sign an order allowing them to embark for New Spain, under the pretext of wishing to avoid a famine, and at once equipped two vessels and began a career of piracy against the Spaniards. Their vessels were soon captured, and the pirates were sold as slaves. A few escaped in a boat and took refuge at Fort Carolina. Laudonniere caused them to be hanged; but their outrages had already drawn upon the colony the bitter hostility of the Spaniards.

Beginning of the Slave-Traffic.

Famine now began to be felt by the little settlement, and as month after month passed by the sufferings of the colonists increased. The natives, who were at first friendly, had been rendered hostile by the cruel treatment they had received from the French, and no provisions could be obtained from them. On the third of August, 1565, Sir John Hawkins, an English commander, arrived with several ships from the West Indies, where he had just sold a cargo of negro slaves whom he had kidnapped in their native Africa. He is said to have been the first Englishman who engaged in this infamous traffic. He proved himself a generous friend to the suffering colonists, however, and supplied them with provisions and gave them one of his own ships. They had suffered too much to be content with this, and were resolved to adandon the settlement. They were on the point of embarking in the ship furnished them by Sir John, when a fleet of several vessels was discovered standing into the river. It was the squadron of Ribault, with reinforcements and all the supplies necessary for founding a permanent settlement. The despair of the colonists was changed to rejoicing, and all were now willing to remain in the colony.

Thrilling Events in Florida.

When the news of the planting of the French colony in Florida reached Philip II. of Spain, he was greatly incensed. Florida was a part of his dominions, and he not only resented the intrusion of the French, but could not tolerate the idea of allowing a Protestant colony to enjoy its settlement in peace. He determined at once to exterminate the heretics, and for this purpose employed Pedro Melendez de Avilès, an officer who had rendered himself notorious for his cruelty when engaged against the pirates and in the wars of Spanish America. His son and heir having been shipwrecked among the Bermudas, Melendez desired to return to America to search for him.

Philip, who knew his desperate character, suggested to him the conquest of Florida, and an agreement was entered into between the king and Melendez, by which the latter was to invade and conquer Florida within three years, and establish in that region a colony of not less than five hundred persons, of whom one hundred should be married men, twelve priests of the Catholic Church and four members of the order of the Jesuits. Melendez also agreed to transport to Florida all kinds of domestic animals, and five hundred negro slaves. All this was to be done

by Melendez at his own cost, and he was secured by the king in the government of the province for life with the privilege of naming his successor, and was granted large estates in the province and a comfortable salary.

Though the destruction of the French colony was not named in the agreement, Philip and Melendez understood each other on that point. The cry was at once raised in Spain that the heretics must be exterminated, and Melandez had no trouble in obtaining recruits. Twenty-five hundred persons gathered under his orders, "soldiers, sailors, priests, Jesuits, married men with their families, laborers and mechanics, and, with the exception of three hundred soldiers, all at the cost of Melendez."

Escape of the French Fleet.

The expedition sailed in June, 1565, but the vessels were parted by a storm, and Melendez reached Porto Rico in August with but a third of his force. Unwilling to lose time, however, he sailed at once to the mainland, and arrived off the coast of Florida on the twenty-eighth of August. On the second of September, he discovered a fine harbor and river, and selected this place as the site of his colony. He named the river and bay in honor of St. Augustine, on whose festival he had arrived off the Florida coast. Ascertaining from the Indians the position of the French, he sailed to the northward, and on the fourth of September arrived off Fort Carolina, where a portion of Ribault's fleet lay anchored in the roadstead.

The French commander demanded his name and the object of his visit. He was answered: "I am Melendez of Spain, sent with strict orders from my king to gibbet and behead all the Protestants in these regions. The Frenchman who is a Catholic I will spare; every heretic shall die." The French fleet being unprepared for battle, cut its cables and stood out to sea. Melendez gave chase, but failed to overtake it. Returning to the harbor of St. Augustine, he went on shore on the eighth of September, and took possession of the country in the name of Phillip II. of Spain, who was proclaimed monarch of all North America. A solemn mass was said and the foundations of the town of St. Augustine were laid. Thus was established the first permanent town within the limits of the United States. This task accomplished, Melendez prepared to attack Fort Carolina by land.

Ribault had returned with his ships to Fort Carolina after escaping from the Spaniards. A council of war was held, and it was debated among the French whether they should strengthen their works and await the approach of the enemy, or proceed to St. Augustine and attack them with the fleet. Ribault supposed that Melendez would attack the fort by sea, and favored the latter plan, but his officers opposed his design. Disregarding their advice, Ribault put to sea, but had scarcely cleared the harbor when a violent storm wrecked his entire fleet on the Florida coast. Nearly all the men reached the shore unharmed, about one hundred and fifty miles south of Fort Carolina.

Terrible Massacre.

The wreck of the French fleet was known to Melendez, and he resolved to strike a blow a once at the fort, which he knew to be in a defenceless state. Leading his men through the forests and swamps, which lay between the two settlements, he surprised and captured the fort on the twenty-first of September. Every soul within the walls including the aged, the women and children, was put to death. A few escaped to the woods before the capture of the fort, among whom were Laudonniere, Challus and Le Moyne. Their condition was pitiable. They

could expect no mercy from the Spaniards, and death awaited them in the forest. A few gave themselves up to the Spaniards, and were at once murdered; the remainder succeeded in gaining the sea-shore, where they were rescued by two French vessels which had remained in the harbor and escaped the storm. These immediately sailed for France.

The number of persons massacred by the Spaniards at Fort Carolina amounted to nearly two hundred. When the victims were all dead, mass was said, a cross raised, and a site selected for a church. Then Melendez set out to find the survivors of the shipwrecked fleet. They were discovered in a helpless condition, worn out with fatigue, hunger and thirst. Melendez promised to treat them with kindness if they would surrender to him, and trusting to his plighted word, they placed themselves in his hands. They were at once seized and bound, and marched towards St. Augustine. As they approached the settlement a signal was given, and the Spaniards fell upon them and massacred all but a few Catholics and some mechanics, who were reserved as slaves. French writers place the number of those who perished in the two massacres at nine hundred. The Spaniards gave a smaller number. On the scene of his barbarity, Melendez set up this inscription: "I do not this as unto Frenchmen, but as unto Lutherans."

In 1566 Melendez attempted to plant a colony on the shores of the Chesapeake Bay, but the vessel despatched for this purpose met such contrary winds that the crew abandoned the effort to reach the bay, and sailed for Spain. Melendez, the next year, returned to Spain, having spent his fortune in establishing the colony of St. Augustine, from which he had derived no benefit.

The massacre of the French and the destruction of the colony at Fort Carolina excited not even a remonstrance from the French court, which was blinded to its true interests by its religious bigotry. The Huguenots and the better part of the nation felt keenly the wrong the country had suffered, and Dominic de Gourges, a gallant gentleman of Gascony, determined to avenge it. Selling his ancestral estate, he equipped three vessels, and with one hundred and fifty men sailed for Florida, in August, 1567. He surprised and captured a Spanish fort near the site of Fort Carolina, and took the garrison prisoners.

He spent the winter here, and finding himself too weak to maintain his position, sailed for France in May, 1568. Before doing so, however, he hanged his prisoners, and set up over them the inscription: "I do not this as unto Spaniards or mariners, but as unto traitors, robbers and murderers." His expedition was disavowed by the French government, and he was obliged to conceal himself to escape arrest after his return to France.

France now abandoned her efforts to colonize the southern part of North America, and relinquished her pretensions to Florida. Spain, on the other hand, gave more attention to this region, and emigrants from her dominions were encouraged to settle, and new colonies were formed within its limits. In the West Indies, and in Mexico, Central and South America, Spain, during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, was supreme.

CHAPTER V

The First English Colony

The English Claim to America—Voyages of Frobisher—Exploits of Sir Francis Drake—Sir Humphrey Gilbert—Intends to Found a Colony in America—Is Lost at Sea—Sir Walter Raleigh Obtains a Patent of Colonization—Discoveries of Amidas and Barlow—Raleigh Sends Out a Colony to Virginia—Settlement on Roanoke Island—Its Failure—Arrival of Grenville—Second Effort of Raleigh to Colonize Virginia—Roanoke Island Again Settled—The "City of Raleigh"—Virginia Dare—Fate of the Colony—Death of Raleigh—Other Voyages of the English.

THOUGH England had made no effort to colonize America during the long period we have been considering, she never abandoned her claims to that region, claims which were based upon the discoveries and explorations of John and Sebastian Cabot. The voyages of her fishermen to Newfoundland kept the country fresh in the minds of the seafaring Englishmen, and from time to time voyages were made to the American coast for the purpose of trading with the savages. Under Elizabeth, who pursued the wise policy of fostering her navy, a race of hardy and daring sailors grew up in England, and carried the flag of their country into every sea.

In this reign Martin Frobisher with two small ships made a voyage to the frozen regions of Labrador in search of the northwest passage. He failed to find it, but penetrated farther north than any European had yet gone, A. D. 1576. His second voyage was made the next year, and was undertaken in the hope of finding gold, as one of the stones he had brought home on his first cruise had been pronounced by the refiners of London to contain the precious metal.

The fleet did not advance as far north as Frobisher had done on his first attempt, as a large mass of yellow earth was found which was believed to contain gold. The ships were loaded with this, and all sail was made for home, only to find on reaching England that their cargo was but a heap of worthless dirt. A third voyage with fifteen ships was attempted in 1578, but no gold was found and the extreme northern latitudes were ascertained to be too bleak for colonization.

Between the years 1577 and 1580 Sir Francis Drake sailed to the Pacific, and by levying exactions upon the Spanish settlements on the western coast of America acquired an immense treasure. As Bancroft well observes, this part of Drake's career "was but a splendid piracy against a nation with which his sovereign and his country professed to be at peace." Having acquired this enormous wealth Drake applied himself to the more useful task of discovery. Crossing the equator he sailed northward, as far as the southern part of Oregon, in the hope of finding a northern passage between the oceans. The cold seemed very great to voyagers just from the tropics, and he abandoned his attempt and returned southward to a harbor on the coast of Mexico. Here he refitted his ship, and then returned to England through the seas of Asia, having

circumnavigated the globe, a feat which had been accomplished only by the ship of Magellan.

It was not the splendid but demoralizing achievements of Drake which led the way to the establishment of the English power in America. That was the work of the humble fishermen who sailed on their yearly voyages to the banks of Newfoundland. The progress of this valuable industry was closely watched by Sir Humphrey Gilbert, who believed that a lucrative trade might be opened with the new world by the planting of a colony within its limits. He obtained authority from Queen Elizabeth to establish such a colony in the vicinity of the fisheries.

THE RENOWNED EXPLORER, SIR MARTIN FROBISHER.

In 1578 he sailed to America on a voyage of discovery, and in August of that year landed at St. Johns, Newfoundland, and took formal possession of the country for England. He then sailed to the southward, exploring the coast, but lost his largest ship with all

an board. This made it necessary for him to return home, as the two vessels which remained to him were too small to attempt a protracted voyage. One of them, called the "Squirrel," was a mere boat of ten tons. Unwilling to expose his men to a danger which he would not face, Sir Humphrey took passage in the "Squirrel" instead of in the larger and safer vessel.

Terrific Storm.

On the homeward voyage the ships encountered a terrific storm. In the midst of the gale the people on the "Hind," the larger ship, saw Sir Humphrey sitting at the stern of his little vessel, which was laboring painfully in the heavy seas. He was calmly reading a book, perhaps that sublimest of books, from which he had drawn the pure principles that guided his whole life. As the "Hind" passed him he called out to those on board of her, "We are as near to heaven by sea as by land." That night the lights of the "Squirrel" suddenly disappeared, and the good Sir Humphrey was seen no more. The "Hind" continued her voyage, and reached Falmouth in safety.

Sir Walter Raleigh, Gilbert's half brother, had been interested in this expedition, but its ill success did not dishearten him. He was one of the noblest spirits of his age, and has laid the world under heavy obligations to him by his many noble services in the cause of humanity. He had served in the army of the Huguenots of France under Coligni, and had heard from the voyagers sent out by that leader of the richness and beauty of Carolina.

Undaunted by the sad fate of Sir Humphrey Gilbert, Raleigh determined to plant a colony in the region from which the Huguenots had been driven. He had no difficulty in obtaining from the queen a patent as liberal as that which had been granted Sir Humphrey Gilbert. He was given ample powers over the region he proposed to colonize, as its feudal lord, and was bound to maintain the authority of the queen and church of England in his possessions.

An Inviting Country.

He fitted out two vessels, commanded respectively by Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow, and sent them to explore the region granted to him, and to obtain accurate information concerning it. They reached the coast of North Carolina at Ocracock Inlet, and took formal possession of the country. They partially explored Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds, together with the neighboring

SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

coast and islands. It was the month of July, and the climate was delightful, the sea was calm, the atmosphere clear, and the heat was tempered by the delicious sea-breeze. The woods abounded with birds and echoed with their carols, and wild grapes were found in the greatest profusion.

The explorers were enchanted with this delightful region, and returning to England published glowing accounts of it. They took with them two Indians, named Wanchese and Manteo, the latter of whom afterwards did good service to the colonists as an interpreter. Queen Elizabeth deemed her reign honored by the discoveries of Amidas and Barlow, and gave to the new region the name of Virginia in honor of England's virgin queen.

FROBISHER AND HIS SHIPS PASSING GREENWICH.

Raleigh at once set to work to organize a colony. Emigrants volunteered readily, and in a short time a fleet of seven vessels, containing one hundred and eight persons, apart from the crews, was in readiness. Sir Richard Grenville, a friend of Raleigh, and a man of tried skill and bravery, was given the command of the fleet, and Ralph Lane, who was also a man of considerable distinction, was made governor of the colony.

The fleet sailed from Plymouth on the ninth of April, 1585, and after a long and trying voyage reached Ocracock Inlet in June. Passing through the inlet, a settlement was established on Roanoke Island, lying between Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds. Expeditions were sent out to explore the surrounding country, and in one of these a silver cup was stolen by an Indian, and its restoration was delayed. With thoughtless cruelty Grenville punished this fault by the destruction of the village to which the culprit belonged, and also of all the standing corn. This inconsiderate revenge made the Indians the enemies of the whites, and brought great

future suffering upon the colony. A little later, having seen the colonists successfully established on Roanoke Island, Grenville returned to England with the fleet, capturing a rich Spanish prize on the voyage home.

QUEEN ELIZABETH.

Left to themselves the colonists began to explore the country, and to observe the productions of the soil, and the character of the inhabitants. Many of the plants were strange to them. Among these were the Indian corn, tobacco and the sweet potato. Hariot, "the inventor of the system of notation in modern algebra, the historian of the expedition," observed these plants and their culture with great minuteness, and became a firm believer in the healing virtues of tobacco. He has left an interesting account

of the natives of the country and their manners and customs.

The Indians, alarmed by the superiority of the whites, began to plot their destruction, as they believed their entire country would be overrun by the new comers. Lane on his part became suspicious of the savages, and this feeling of mutual distrust had the most unhappy consequences. Being informed by the savages that there was a splendid city, whose walls glittered with gold and pearls, on the upper waters of the Roanoke, Governor Lane made a boat voyage up that stream, but failed to find anything. He returned to the colony just in time to disconcert the plan of the savages for attacking the whites during the absence of the exploring party.

Inhuman Butchery.

Lane now determined to outrival the savages in perfidy. He visited Wingina, one of the most active of the neighboring chiefs, and professing to come as a friend, was received with confidence by the Indians. At a given signal from the governor the whites fell upon the chief and his warriors, and put them to death. Lane proved himself utterly unfit to govern such a colony, and his people soon lost confidence in him. Their discontent was increased by the failure of their provisions, and they began to entertain the idea of abandoning the colony and returning home.

On the eighth of June, 1586, Sir Francis Drake, with a fleet of twenty-three ships, anchored in the roadstead off Roanoke Island. He had been cruising in the West Indies, and had called on his homeward voyage to visit the plantation of his friend Raleigh. He at once set to work to remedy the wants of the colony, and supplied the settlers with such things as they needed. They were thoroughly disheartened, however, with their year's experience, and begged Drake so earnestly to take them back to England that he received them on board his ships and put to sea.

Thus the first effort of the English to settle America resulted in failure. Drake's fleet had scarcely disappeared when a ship loaded with supplies, which had been despatched by Raleigh, reached the island. Finding the place deserted, the commander returned to England. A fortnight later, Grenville arrived with three ships. Finding the colonists had gone, he too returned to England, leaving fifteen men to hold the island.

Another Colony and Its Fate.

Raleigh was greatly disappointed by the failure of his colony, but he did not despair of success; for notwithstanding the gloomy stories of Lane and his followers, the conclusive testimony of Hariot convinced him that the country could be made to yield a rich return for the trouble and expense of its settlement; and he set to work to form another colony. With the hope of giving the settlers a permanent interest in the plantation, he selected emigrants with wives and families, who should regard the new world as their future home, and endeavor to found a permanent State in that region. Everything was provided which could contribute to the success of the colony, and agricultural implements were furnished for the proper cultivation of the soil. All the expense of the undertaking was borne by Raleigh, for though Queen Elizabeth greatly favored the venture, she declined to contribute anything toward it. John White was appointed governor of the colony. A fleet of transport vessels was equipped, also at Raleigh's expense, and on the twenty-sixth of April, 1587, the expedition sailed from England. The coast of North Carolina was reached in July.

The approach to Roanoke Island was both difficult and dangerous, and Raleigh ordered the new settlers to select a site for their colony on the shores of the Chesapeake Bay. The expedition proceeded first, however, to Roanoke Island to search for the men left there by Grenville. They could not be found. The island was deserted, the fort was in ruins, and the human bones which lay scattered over the field told plainly that the unfortunate garrison left by Grenville had been murdered by the Indians. Governor White was now anxious to sail to the Chesapeake, but Fernando, the commander of the fleet, refused to proceed any farther, as he wished to go to the West Indies for purposes of trade. The instructions of Raleigh were thus disregarded, and the colonists were compelled to go ashore on Roanoke Island.

Dangers of the First Settlers.

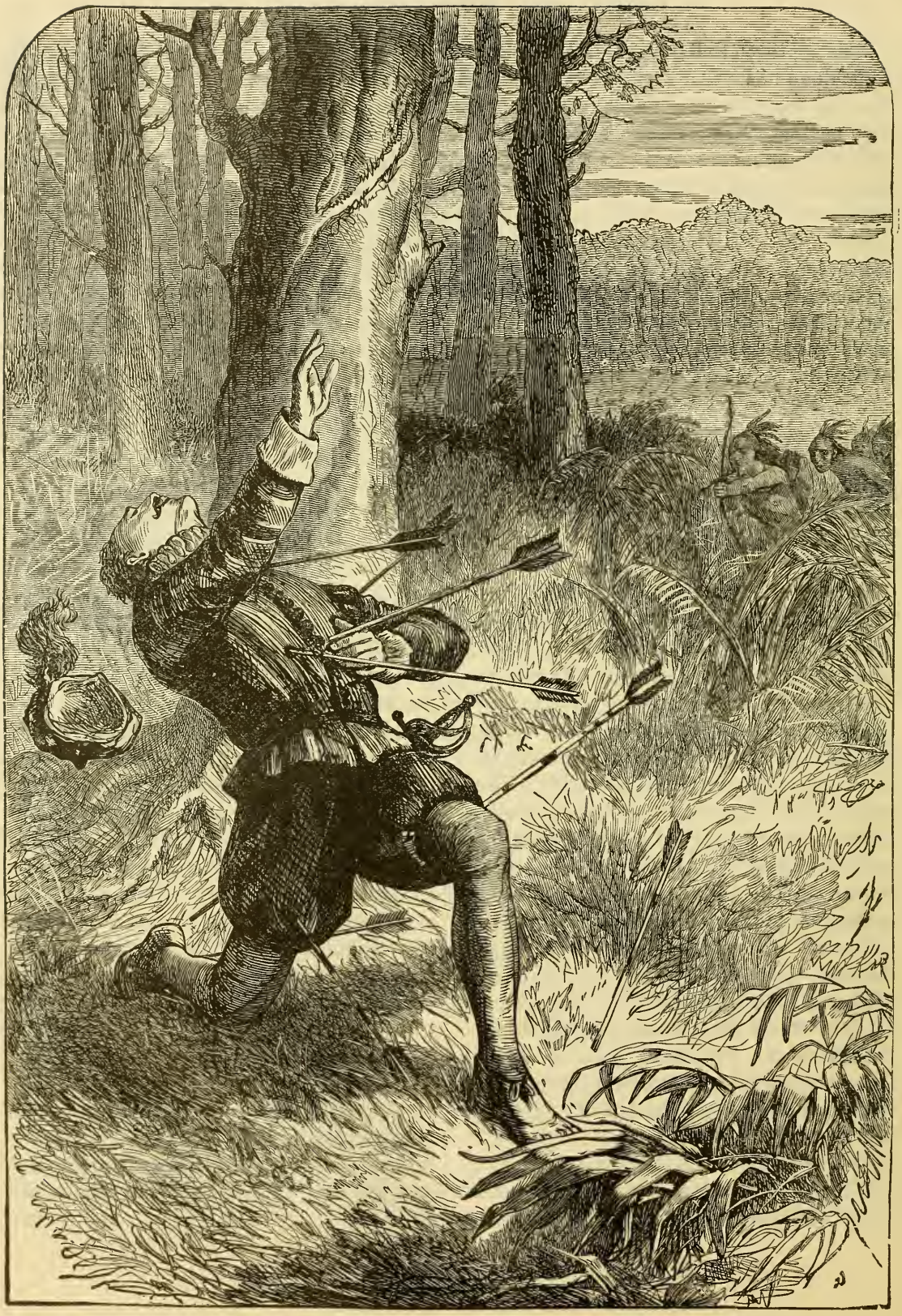
The old settlement of Governor Lane was rebuilt, and another effort was made to establish the "City of Raleigh." The Indians were bitterly hostile to the settlers, and a friendly tribe was offended by an unfortunate attack upon them, made upon the supposition that they were hostile Indians. The settlers becoming alarmed, implored the governor to return to England and exert himself to hasten the sending out of reinforcements and supplies to them. He was unwilling to do this, as he deemed it his duty to remain among them, but at length yielded to their unanimous appeal. Just before his departure his daughter, Mrs. Dare, the wife of one of his lieutenants, gave birth to a daughter, the first child born of English parents within the limits of the United States, and the little one was named Virginia from the place of its birth.

White sailed for England in August, 1587. He found the mother country greatly excited over the threatened invasion of the Spaniards. Raleigh, who was energetically engaged in the efforts for the defence of the country, did not neglect his colony. He fitted out two ships with the needed supplies, and dispatched them under White's orders in April, 1588. The commanders, instead of proceeding direct to the colony, undertook to make prizes.

No Traces of the Colony.

At last one of them fell in with a man-of-war from Rochelle, and after a sharp fight was plundered of her stores. Both ships were obliged to return to England, to the anger and disgust of Raleigh. The approach of the Invincible Armada and the exertions demanded of the nation for its defeat, made it impossible for anything more to be done for the colonists at Roanoke until after the Spanish fleet had been destroyed. Even then Raleigh, who had spent over forty thousand pounds without return, was unable to send aid at once to the colony, and a year elapsed before a vessel could be sent out under White. In 1590, the governor reached Roanoke, but no trace of the colony could be found. The settlers had either died, been massacred, or taken prisoners.

"The conjecture has been hazarded," says Bancroft, "that the deserted colony, neglected by their own countrymen, were hospitably adopted into the tribe of Hatteras Indians, and became amalgamated with the sons of the forest. This was the tradition of the natives at a later day, and was thought to be confirmed by the physical character of the tribe, in which the English and the Indian race seemed to have been blended." The generous heart of Raleigh could not bear to leave his countrymen unaided while a single hope of finding them remained, and he is said to have sent to America as many as five expeditions at his own cost to search for them.



With the failure of the settlement at Roanoke Raleigh relinquished his hope of colonizing Virginia. He had expended nearly his entire fortune in the undertaking, and the remainder of his life was passed under the cloud of undeserved misfortune. His career as a statesman was honorable to himself and to his country, and he proved himself in all his acts a loyal subject and a devoted patriot. His zeal in behalf of knowledge made him a generous friend of the learned, and he merits the gratitude of the American people, not only for his efforts to colonize our shores with his countrymen, but for the liberality with which he spread a knowledge of America throughout England by his publication of the reports of Hariot and Hakluyt. He opened the way for the dominion of the English in the new world, and his memory is preserved in the name of the capital city of the great State which he sought to make the seat of an English empire.

Accused of High Treason.

Upon the accession of James I., Raleigh, broken in health and fortune, but still the most illustrious Englishman of his day, was arraigned on a charge of high treason, of which not even his enemies believed him guilty, and was sentenced to the Tower, as the king did not yet dare to order his execution. During this period Sir Walter beguiled the weariness of his imprisonment by composing his "History of the World." He remained a prisoner for thirteen years, and was then released on condition of making a voyage to Guiana in search of gold. His failure to accomplish the object of the voyage sealed his doom, and on his return to England he was beheaded, not upon any fresh charge, but on his old sentence. His real fault was that he was too true an Englishman to sustain the sacrifice of the national honor by King James to the demands of Spain, and he was generally regarded by the nation as the victim of the king's cowardice. He met his fate with the calm bravery which had marked his whole life.

Kidnapping Indians.

Until now the voyage from England to America had been made by way of the Canary Islands and the West Indies. In 1602, Bartholomew Gosnold conceived the idea of proceeding direct from England to Virginia, as the whole region north of Florida was called by the English. Sailing directly across the Atlantic he reached Cape Elizabeth, on the coast of Maine, after a voyage of seven weeks. Proceeding southward along the coast he reached Cape Cod, to which he gave the name on the fifteenth of May, and went ashore there. He was thus the first Englishman to set foot in New England. He continued his voyage along the coast and entered Buzzard's Bay.

To the westernmost of the islands of this stately sound he gave the name of Elizabeth—a name which has since been applied to the entire group. Loading his ship with sassafras root, which was then highly esteemed for its medicinal virtues, Gosnold sailed for England, and arrived home safely after a voyage of less than four weeks. He gave the most favorable accounts of the region he had visited, and other adventurers were induced by his reports to undertake voyages for the purpose of trading with the natives. Among these was George Waymouth, who reached and explored the coast of Maine in 1605. On his return voyage Waymouth kidnapped five Indians and carried them to England, "to be instructed in English, and to serve as guides in some future expedition."

The voyages of Gosnold and Waymouth to the coast of New England were followed

by those of numerous other English adventurers. In 1614, Captain John Smith, who had already distinguished himself by his services in Virginia, made a voyage to America with two ships, furnished at the expense of himself and four merchants of London. The voyage was for the purpose of trading with the natives, and was very successful. Smith took advantage of the opportunity to explore the coast from Penobscot to Cape Cod. He prepared a map of the coast, and named the country New England—a title which was confirmed by the Prince of Wales, afterwards Charles I.

After Smith's return to England, Hunt the commander of the other vessel, succeeded in inducing twenty of the natives, with their chief, Squanto, to visit his ship, and as soon as they were on board put to sea. He sold the savages as slaves in Spain. A few of them, Squanto among the number, were purchased by some kind-hearted monks, who instructed them in the Christian faith in order to send them back to their own people as missionaries of the cross. Squanto escaped to England in 1619, and there learned the language, and was afterward an interpreter between the English settlers and his people

JAME

BOOK II

Settlement of America

CHAPTER VI

Captain John Smith and Pocahontas

Formation of the London Company—Conditions of its Charter—Departure of the First Colony—Quarrels During the Voyage—Arrival in the Chesapeake—Settlement of Jamestown—Formation of the Government—Character of Captain John Smith—Exploration of the James River—Newport and Smith Visit Powhatan—Smith Admitted to the Government—Explores the Chickahominy—Is Captured and Sentenced to Death—Is Saved by Pocahontas—Gains the Friendship of Powhatan for the Colony—Returns to Jamestown—His Decisive Measures—Return of Newport—Smith Explores the Chesapeake Bay—The New Emigrants—Smith Compels Them to Labor—Smith is Wounded and Compelled to Return to England—Disasters to the Colony—Arrival of Sir Thomas Gates—Jamestown Abandoned—Arrival of Lord Delaware—The Return to Jamestown—A Change for the Better—New Settlements—Sir Thomas Gates Arrives With Reinforcements—Capture of Pocahontas by Captain Argall—She is Baptized—Marries John Rolfe—Sir Thomas Dale's Administration—Yeardley Governor—The First Legislative Assembly—Representative Government Established in America—The Colonists Obtain Wives—Changes in the Government.

THE favorable reports which had been brought back to England by the voyagers to the new world had prevented the interest of Englishmen in America from entirely dying out, and some ardent spirits still believed it possible to make that continent the seat of a prosperous dominion dependent upon England. The former assistants of Raleigh, in particular, held to the convictions which their chief had entertained to the day of his death. The selfish and timid policy of King James having made it impossible for men to acquire distinction by naval exploits, as in the days of Elizabeth, the more adventurous classes lent a willing ear to the plans for colonizing America, which were discussed in various parts of the kingdom. Bartholomew Gosnold, who had explored the New England coast, was especially active in seeking to induce capitalists to send out a colony to it. His glowing accounts of the New World awakened a good deal of enthusiasm, and men who had money to invest, and were somewhat inclined to indulge in speculation, were ready to aid any scheme that promised to be lucrative and advantageous to themselves.

Sir Ferdinand Gorges, a wealthy gentleman and Governor of Plymouth, had been greatly interested in America by the accounts of Waymouth, who had given him two of the Indians he had brought to England. These succeeded in interesting others in their plans, and the result was that early in the reign of King James two companies were formed in England for the colonization of America. One of these was the "London Company," composed chiefly of noblemen and merchants residing in London. The other was the "Plymouth Company," composed of "knights, gentlemen and merchants," residing in the west of England. King James divided Virginia into two parts. To the London Company he granted "South Virginia," extending from Cape Fear, in

North Carolina, to the Potomac. To the Plymouth Company he gave "North Virginia," stretching from the Hudson to Newfoundland. The region between the Potomac and the Hudson he left as a broad belt of neutral land to keep the companies from encroaching upon each other's domains. Either was at liberty to form settlements in this region within fifty miles of its own border.

The London Company was the first to settle the country assigned it. A liberal charter was granted the company: the lands in the new world were to be held by it on the simple conditions of homage and the payment to the crown of one-fifth of the gold and silver and one-fifteenth of the copper that should be discovered. A general council, residing in England, was to have authority over the whole province, and the members of this council were to be appointed and removed by the king at his good pleasure. Each separate colony was to be under the control of a colonial council residing within its own limits, and the king retained the right to direct the appointment or removal of the members of these councils at his pleasure.

Laws of the London Company.

The king also reserved the supreme legislative authority over the colonies, and framed for their government a code of laws—"an exercise of royal legislation which has been pronounced in itself illegal." The colonists were placed by this code under the rule of the superior and local councils we have named, in the choice of which they had no voice. The religion of the Church of England was established as that of the colony, and conformity to it was secured by severe penalties. Death was the punishment for murder, manslaughter, adultery, dangerous seditions and tumults. In all cases not affecting life and limb offenders might be tried by a magistrate, but for capital offences trial by jury was secured. In the former cases the punishment of the offender was at the discretion of the president and council. The Indians were to be treated with kindness, and efforts were to be made for their conversion to Christianity. For five years at least the affairs of the colonists were to be conducted in a joint stock. The right to impose future legislation upon the province was reserved by the king.

The Settlers Oppressed.

Such was the form of government first prescribed for Virginia by England, in which, as Bancroft truly says, there was "not an element of popular liberty." "To the emigrants themselves it conceded not one elective franchise, not one of the rights of self-government. They were to be subjected to the ordinances of a commercial corporation, of which they could not be members; to the dominion of a domestic council, in appointing which they had no voice; to the control of a superior council in England, which had no sympathy with their rights; and finally, to the arbitrary legislation of the sovereign."

Under this charter the London Company prepared to send out a colony to Virginia. It was to be a commercial settlement, and the emigrants were composed altogether of men. One hundred and five persons, exclusive of the crews of the vessels, joined the expedition. Of these not twenty were farmers or mechanics. The remainder were "gentlemen," or men who had ruined themselves at home by idleness and dissipation. A fleet of three small ships, under command of Captain Newport, was assembled, and on the nineteenth of December, 1606, sailed for America.

The emigrants sailed without having perfected any organization. The king had foolishly placed the names of those who were to

constitute the government in a sealed box, which the adventurers were ordered not to open until they had selected a site for their settlement and were ready to form a government. This was most unfortunate, for during the long voyage dissensions arose, and there was no one in the expedition who could control the unruly spirits.

These quarrels grew more intense with the lapse of time, and when the shores of Virginia were reached the seeds of many of the evils from which the colony afterwards suffered severely had been thoroughly sown. There were among the number several who were well qualified to direct the affairs of the expedition, but they were without the proper authority to do so, and there was no such thing as voluntary submission to be seen among the adventurers. The merits of the deserving merely excited the jealousy of their companions, and the great master spirit of the enterprise found from the first his disinterested efforts for the good of the expedition met by a jealous opposition.

Point Comfort Named.

Newport was not acquainted with the direct route, and made the old passage by way of the Canaries and the West Indies. He thus consumed the whole of the winter, and while searching for the island of Roanoke, the scene of Raleigh's colony, his fleet was driven northward by a severe storm, and forced to take refuge in the Chesapeake Bay on the twenty-sixth of April, 1607. He named the headlands of this bay Cape Henry and Cape Charles, in honor of the two sons of James I., and because of the comfortable anchorage which he obtained in the splendid roadstead which enters the bay opposite its mouth, he gave to the northern point the name of Point Comfort, which it has since borne. Passing this, a noble river was discovered coming from the westward, and was named the James, in honor of the English king. The country was explored with energy, and though one small tribe of Indians was found to be hostile, a treaty of peace and friendship was made with another at Hampton. The fleet ascended the river and explored it for fifty miles. A pleasant peninsula, on the left bank of the stream was selected as the site of the colony, and on the thirteenth of May, 1607, the settlement was definitely begun, and was named Jamestown, in honor of the king.

Smith's Daring Deeds.

The leading spirit of the enterprise was John Smith, one of the truest heroes of history, who has been deservedly called "the father of Virginia." He was still a young man, being but thirty years of age, but he was old in experience and knightly deeds. While yet a youth he had served in Holland in the ranks of the army of freedom, and had travelled through France, Egypt and Italy. Burning to distinguish himself, he had repaired to Hungary, and had won a brilliant reputation by his exploits in the ranks of the Christian army engaged in the defence of that country against the Mohammedans. He repeatedly defeated the chosen champions of the Turks in single combat, but being at length captured was sent to Constantinople and sold as a slave. The wife of his master, pitying his misfortunes, sent him to a relative in the Crimea, with a request to treat him with kindness, but contrary to her wishes he was subjected to the greatest harshness.

Rendered desperate by this experience, he rose against his task-master, slew him, and seizing his horse escaped to the border of the Russian territory, where he was kindly received. He wandered across the country to Transylvania, and rejoined his old companions in arms. Then, filled with a longing

to see his "own sweet country" once more, he returned to England. He arrived just as the plans for the colonization of Virginia were being matured. He readily engaged in the expedition organized by the London Company, and exerted himself in a marked degree to make it a success. He was in all respects the most capable man in the whole colony, for his natural abilities were fully equal to his experience. He had studied human nature under many forms in

CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

many lands, and in adversity and danger had learned patience and fortitude. His calm, cool courage, his resolute will, and his intuitive perception of the necessities of a new settlement, were destined to make him the main stay of the colony of Virginia, but as yet these high qualities had only excited the malicious envy of his associates, and the efforts he had made to heal the dissensions which had broken out during the voyage had made him many enemies.

When the box containing the names of those who were to constitute the colonial government was opened, it was found that the king had appointed John Smith one of the council. Smith was at this time in confinement, having been arrested on the voyage upon the frivolous charges of sedition and treason against the crown, and his enemies, notwithstanding the royal appointment, excluded him from the council. Edward Wingfield, "a grovelling merchant of the west of England," was chosen president of the council and governor of the colony. The services of Smith could not be dispensed with, however, and he was released from his confinement, and sent with Newport and twenty others to explore the river. They ascended the James to the falls, where the city of Richmond now stands, and visited Powhatan, the principal chief of the Indian nation holding the country into which they had come. He was then dwelling at his favorite seat on the left bank of the river, a few miles below the falls. Powhatan received them kindly, and silenced the remonstrances of his people by saying: "They hurt you not; they only want a little land." The chief was a man of powerful stature, "tall, sour and athletic." He was sixty years of age, and had under him a population of six or eight thousand souls, two thousand being warriors. Having carefully observed the river, Smith and Newport returned to Jamestown.

Their presence there was needed, for Wingfield had proved himself utterly unfit to govern the colony. He would not allow the colonists to build either houses for themselves or a fortification for the common defence against the savages. While they were in this helpless condition, they were suddenly

attacked by a force of four hundred Indians, and were saved from destruction only by the fire of the shipping, which filled the savages with terror and put them to flight. It is believed that the cause of Wingfield's singular conduct was his jealousy of Smith whose talents he feared would attract the support of the settlers.

Tried and Acquitted.

The fort was now built without delay, cannon were mounted, and the men trained in the exercise of arms. When the ships were in readiness to sail to England, it was intimated to Smith that he would consult his own interests by returning in them, but he refused to do so, and boldly demanded a trial upon the charges which had been preferred against him. The council did not dare to refuse him this trial, and the result was his triumphant acquittal. More than this, he succeeded so well in exposing the malice of his enemies that the president, as the originator of the charges against him, was compelled to pay him two hundred pounds damages, which sum Smith generously applied to the needs of the colony. His seat in the council could no longer be denied him, and he took his place at the board to the great gain of the colony.

Newport sailed for England about the middle of June, leaving the settlement in a most pitiable condition. The provisions sent out from England had been spoiled on the voyage, and the colonists were too indolent to cultivate the land, or to seek to obtain supplies from the Indians. Sickness broke out among them, owing to the malarious character of their location, and by the beginning of the winter more than half their number had died. Among these was Bartholomew Gosnold, the originator of the London Company, who had come out to Virginia to risk his life in the effort to settle the country. He was a man of rare merits, and, together with Mr. Hunt, "the preacher," who was also one of the projectors of the company, had contributed successfully to the preservation of harmony in the colony. In the midst of these sufferings it was found that Wingfield was preparing to load the pinnace with the remainder of the stores and escape to the West Indies. He was deposed by the council, who appointed John Ratcliffe in his place.

The new president was not much better than his predecessor. He was incapable of discharging the duties of his office, and was perfectly satisfied that Smith should direct the affairs of the settlement for him. From this time Smith was the actual head of the government. Food was the prime necessity of the colony, and as it was now too late to raise it, Smith exerted himself to obtain it from the Indians. He purchased a supply, and towards the close of the autumn the wild fowl which frequent the region furnished an additional means of subsistence.

Danger of Famine.

The danger of a famine thus removed, Smith proceeded to explore the country. In one of these expeditions he ascended the Chickahominy as far as he could penetrate in his boat, and then leaving it in charge of two men, struck into the interior with an Indian guide. His men disobeyed his instructions, and were surprised and put to death by the Indians. Smith himself was taken prisoner, and deeply impressed his captors by his cool courage and self-possession. Instead of begging for his life, he set to work to convince them of his superiority over them, and succeeded so well that they regarded him with a sort of awe. He astonished them by showing them his pocket compass and explaining to them its uses, and excited their admiration by writing a letter

78 POCAHONTAS INTERCEDING FOR THE LIFE OF CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH.

to his friends at Jamestown informing them of his situation, and of the danger to which they were exposed from a contemplated attack of the Indians. One of the savages bore the letter to its destination.

A Grand Reception.

Smith had been captured by Opechancanough, a powerful chieftain of the Pamunkey Indians: but as the curiosity of the neighboring tribes was greatly aroused by his presence, he was led in triumph from the Chickahominy to the villages on the Rappahannock and the Potomac, and then taken through other towns to the residence of Opechancanough, on the Pamunkey. Here the medicine men of the tribe held a three days' incantation over him to ascertain his character and design. All this while his demeanor was calm and fearless, as if he entertained no apprehension for his safety. He was regarded by the savages as a superior being, and was treated with kindness, though kept a close prisoner.

His fate was referred to Powhatan for decision, as the other tribes feared to bring the blood of such an extraordinary being upon their heads. Powhatan was then residing at Werowocomoco, which lay on the north side of Fork River, in what is now Gloucester County, Virginia. He received the captive in great state, surrounded by his warriors. "He wore," says Smith, "such a grave and majestical countenance as drove me into admiration to see." Brought into the presence of Powhatan, Smith was received with a shout from the assembled warriors. A handsome young squaw brought him water to wash his hands, and another gave him a bunch of feathers to dry them. Food was then set before him, and while he applied himself to the repast a consultation was held by the savages as to his fate. Smith watched the proceedings closely, and was aware from the gestures of the council that his death had been determined upon. Two great stones were then brought into the assembly and laid before the king.

The captive was seized and dragged to the stones, forced down, and his head laid upon them. Two brawny savages stood by to beat out his brains with their clubs. During these proceedings Pocahontas, a child of ten or twelve years, "dearly loved daughter" of Powhatan, touched with pity for the unfortunate stranger, had been earnestly pleading with her father to spare his life. Failing in this, she sprang forward at the moment the executioners were about to despatch their victim, and throwing herself by his side, clasped her arms about his neck and laid her head upon his to protect him from the impending stroke. This remarkable action in a child so young moved the savages with profound astonishment. They regarded it as a manifestation of the will of Heaven in favor of the captive, and it was determined to spare his life and seek his friendship.

The Captive Released.

Smith was released from his bonds, and was given to Pocahontas to make beads and bells for her, and to weave for her ornaments of copper. The friendship which the innocent child of the forest conceived for him grew stronger every day, and ceased only with her life. Powhatan took him into his favor, and endeavored to induce him to abandon the English and cast his lot with him. He even sought to obtain his aid in an attack upon the colony. Smith declined these offers, and by his decision of character succeeded in averting the hostility of the savages from his friends at Jamestown, and in winning their good-will for the English. In a short while the Indians allowed him to return to Jamestown, upon his promise to send to King Powhatan two cannon and a

grindstone. Upon arriving at Jamestown he showed the Indians who had accompanied him two of the largest cannon, and asked them to lift them. This was impossible; nor could they succeed any better with the grindstone. Smith then discharged the cannon in their presence, which so frightened them that they refused to have anything to do with them. Having evaded his promise in this manner, Smith bestowed more suitable presents upon his guides, and sent them

POCAHONTAS.

home with gifts for Powhatan and Pocahontas. The savage king was doubtless well satisfied to let the "great guns" alone after hearing the report of his messengers concerning them, and was greatly pleased with the gifts sent him.

Pocahontas Brings Food.

Smith found the colony at Jamestown reduced to forty men and affairs in great confusion. His companions had believed that he had fallen a victim to the hostility of the Indians, and he was greeted with delight, as the need of his firm hand had been sadly felt. He found that a party of malcontents were preparing to run away from the colony with the pinnace, and he at once rallied his supporters and trained the guns of the fort upon the little vessel, and avowed his determination to fire upon the mutineers if they sought to depart.

His firmness put an end to this danger, and the friendly relations which he had managed to establish with the Indians now enabled him to buy from the savages the food necessary to sustain the colonists through the winter. In many ways his captivity proved a great blessing to the settlement. He had not only explored the country between the James and Potomac, and gained considerable knowledge of the language and customs of the natives, but had disposed the Indian tribes subject to Powhatan to regard the colony with friendship at the most critical period of its existence. Had the savages been hostile during this winter the Jamestown colony must have perished of starvation; but now, every few days throughout this season, Pocahontas came to the fort accompanied by a number of her countrymen bearing baskets of corn for the whites.

Exploring Chesapeake Bay.

In the spring of 1608, Newport arrived from England, bringing with him a reinforcement of one hundred and twenty emigrants. The newcomers were joyfully welcomed by the colonists but they proved of no real advantage to the settlement. They were either idlers or goldsmiths who had come out to America in the hope of finding gold. The refiners of the party believed they had found the precious metal in a heap of glittering earth, of which there was an abundance near Jamestown, and in spite of the remonstrances of Smith, would do nothing but dig gold. Newport, who shared the delusion, loaded

his ships with the worthless earth and sailed for England after a sojourn in the colony of fourteen weeks.

While these fruitless labors were in progress, Smith, thoroughly disgusted with the folly of the emigrants, undertook the exploration of the Chesapeake Bay. He spent the summer of 1608 in visiting the shores of the bay and ascending its tributaries in an open boat, accompanied by a few men. He explored the Chesapeake to the Susquehanna, ascended the Potomac to the falls, and explored the Patapsco. This voyage embraced a total distance of nearly three thousand miles, and resulted not only in the gaining of accurate information respecting the country bordering the Chesapeake, but also in establishing friendly relations with the tribes along its shores, and preparing the way for future friendly intercourse with them. The energetic explorer prepared a map of the Chesapeake and its tributaries, and sent it to his employers in England, by whom it was published. It is yet in existence, and its accuracy and minuteness have often elicited the praise of subsequent topographers.

Idlers Must Not Eat.

Smith returned to Jamestown on the seventh of September, and three days later was made president of the council. The good effects of his administration were soon felt. In the autumn, however, another reinforcement of idle and useless men arrived. Smith, indignant at the continual arrival of such worthless persons, wrote to the company: "When you send again, I entreat you rather send but thirty carpenters, husbandmen, gardeners, fishermen, blacksmiths, masons, and diggers up of trees' roots, well provided, than a thousand of such as we have."

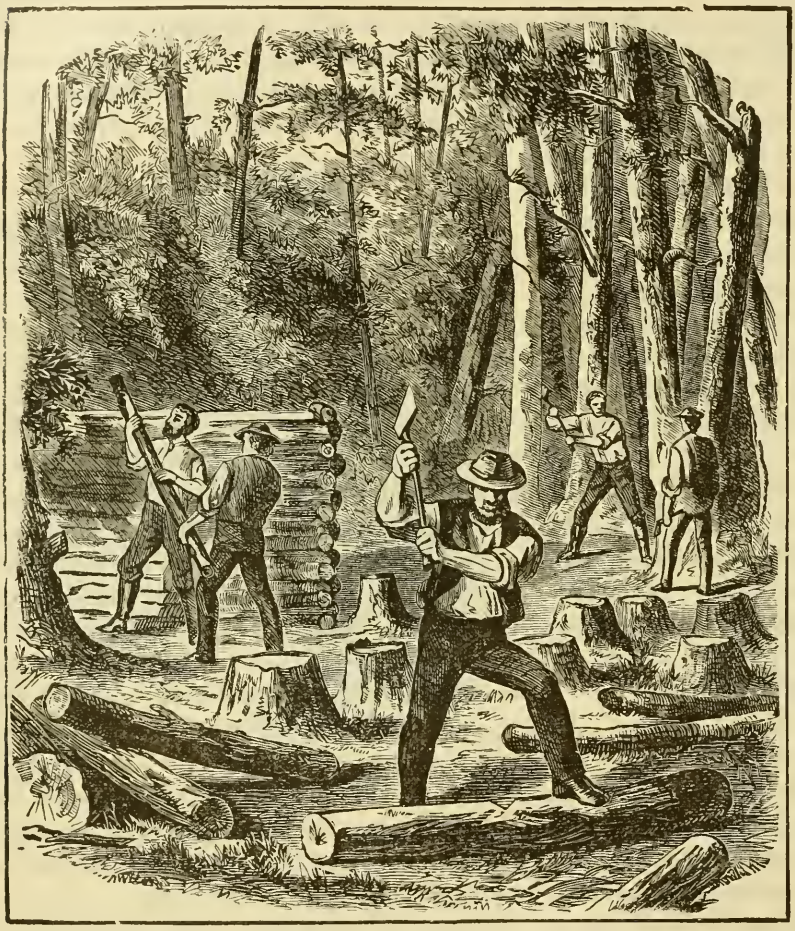
Upon the return of the fleet to England the governor exerted his authority to compel the idlers to go to work. It was ordered that six hours in each day should be spent in useful labor by each person, and that "he who would not work might not eat." In a short while the settlement began to assume the appearance of a regular habitation; but still so little land had been cultivated—only about thirty or forty acres in all—that during the winter of 1608–'9, the settlers were compelled to depend upon the Indians for food. Yet the prudent management of Smith kept the colony in good health.

Infamous Laws.

In the spring of 1609, great changes were made in the London Company, and a more earnest interest was manifested in the colony by all classes of the English people. Subscriptions were made to the stock of the company by many noblemen as well as merchants, and a new charter was obtained. By this charter the stockholders had the power to appoint the supreme council in England, and to this council were confided the powers of legislation and government, which were relinquished by the king. The council appointed the governor of the colony, who was to rule the settlement with absolute authority according to the instructions of the council. He was made master of the lives and liberties of the settlers by being authorized to declare martial law whenever in his judgment the necessity for that measure should arise, and was made the sole executive officer in its administration.

Thus the emigrants were deprived of every civil right, and were placed at the mercy of a governor appointed by a corporation whose only object was to make money. The company, however, defeated this object by the manner in which it selected emigrants. Instead of sending out honest and industrious laborers who were capable of building up a state, they sent only idlers and vagabonds, men who were

neither willing nor fit to work. The common stock feature was maintained, and thus the greatest obstacle to industry that could be devised was placed in the way of the success of the colony. Still there were many who were willing to seek the new world even under these conditions, and many others whose friends desired to get them out of the country.



BUILDING THE FIRST HOUSE IN JAMESTOWN.

The company was soon able to equip a fleet of nine vessels containing more than five hundred emigrants, and a stock of domestic animals and fowls was included in the outfit of the expedition. Lord Delaware, a nobleman, whose character commanded the confidence of his countrymen, was made governor of the colony for life. As he was not able to sail with the expedition, he delegated his authority during his absence to Newport, who was admiral of the fleet, Sir Thomas Gates, and Sir George Somers, who were to govern the colony until his arrival. The fleet sailed in the spring of 1609, but when off the American coast was overtaken by a severe storm, and two vessels—on one of which the admiral and the commissioners had sailed—were wrecked on one of the Bermuda islands.

Seven ships reached Virginia, and brought the worst lot of emigrants that had yet been sent out to the colony. Smith was still acting president, and as the commissioners had not arrived, was determined to hold his position until relieved by his lawful successors. The new emigrants at first refused to recognize his authority, but he compelled them to submit, and in order to lessen the evil of their presence, divided them into bodies sufficiently numerous for safety, and sent them to make settlements in other parts of Virginia. These settlements proved so many failures, and, unfortunately for the colony, Smith was so severely wounded by an accidental explosion of gunpowder, in the autumn of 1609, that

he was obliged to relinquish the government and return to England for surgical treatment. He delegated his authority to George Percy, and sailed for England, never to return to Virginia again. It was to him alone that the success of the colony was due, but he received in return nothing but ingratitude.

Pocahontas Saves the Colony.

The departure of Smith was followed by the most disastrous consequences. There was no longer an acknowledged government in Virginia, and the settlers gave themselves up to the most reckless idleness. Their provisions were quickly consumed, and the Indians refused to furnish them with any more. The friendship of the savages had been due to their personal regard for Smith, who had compelled the colonists to respect their rights and to refrain from maltreating them. Now that Smith was no longer at the head of affairs, the Indians regarded the settlers with the contempt they fully merited, and hostilities soon began. Stragglers from the town were cut off, and parties who went out to seek food among the savages were deliberately murdered.

On one occasion a plan was laid to surprise the town and massacre the colonists. The danger was averted by Pocahontas, who stole from her father's camp, through night and storm, to give warning to the settlers. Failing in this effort the Indians resolved to starve the colony, and soon the whites began to experience the sufferings of a famine. Thirty of them seized one of the ships, escaped to sea, and began a course of piracy. In six months the four hundred and ninety persons left by Smith in the colony at his departure had dwindled down to sixty; and this wretched remnant would have perished speedily had not aid reached them.

On the twenty-fourth of May, 1610, Sir Thomas Gates and the members of the expedition who had been wrecked on the Bermudas reached Jamestown after a stay of nine months on those islands, during which time they had built two vessels from the wreck of their ship and the wood found on the island. In these they managed to reach Virginia, expecting to find the colony in a prosperous condition. They found instead the sixty men already mentioned, so feeble and full of despair as to be helpless. In the general despondency it was determined to abandon the colony, sail to Newfoundland, and join the fishing vessels which came annually from England to that island.

A Welcome Arrival.

Some of the emigrants wished to burn the town, but this was prevented by the resolute conduct of Sir Thomas Gates. On the seventh of June the settlers embarked, and that night dropped down the James with the tide. The next morning they were astonished to meet a fleet of vessels entering the river. It was Lord Delaware, who had arrived with fresh emigrants and supplies. The fugitives hailed the arrival of the governor with delight, and put about and ascended the stream with him. A fair wind enabled them to reach Jamestown the same night.

On the tenth of June, 1610, the foundations of the colony were solemnly relaid with prayer and supplication to Almighty God for success in the effort to establish a state. The authority of Lord Delaware silenced all dissensions, and his equitable but firm administration soon placed the settlement on a more successful basis than it had yet occupied. The labors of each day were opened with prayer in the little church, after which, from six in the morning till ten, and from two in the afternoon until four, all engaged in the tasks demanded of them. The good effects of the new system were soon manifest in the increased comfort and

prosperity of the colony. In about a year the health of Lord Delaware gave way, and he delegated his authority to George Percy, whom Smith had chosen as his successor, and returned to England.

Fortunately for the colony, the company, before the arrival of Lord Delaware in England, had sent out Sir Thomas Dale with supplies. He reached Jamestown in May, 1611, and finding Lord Delaware gone, assumed the government. He brought with him a code of laws, prepared and sent out by Sir Thomas Smith, the treasurer of the company, without the order or sanction of the council, and which established martial law as the rule of the colony. Though he ruled with such a stern hand, Dale rendered good service to Virginia by recommending to the company to maintain the settlement at all hazards as certain of yielding them a rich reward in the end.

The New Settlers.

This energetic appeal so greatly encouraged the council, which had been considerably disheartened by Lord Delaware's return, that in the summer of 1611 Sir Thomas Gates was sent out to Virginia with six ships and three hundred emigrants. He carried also a stock of cattle and abundant supplies. The emigrants sent out with him were of a better character and more industrious than any that had yet left England for Virginia. Gates assumed the government, and matters began to prosper again. The colony now numbered seven hundred persons, and was deemed so prosperous that Dale, with the approval of the governor, led a number of the men to the vicinity of the falls of the James, and there established another settlement, which was called Henrico, in honor of the Prince of Wales.

Among the changes for the better was the assignment to each settler of a few acres of land for his own cultivation. This "incipient establishment of private property" produced the happiest results, and from this time there was no scarcity of provisions in the colony, which became so powerful and prosperous as to be no longer exposed to the mercy of the savages. The Indians themselves were quick to notice this change, and some of the neighboring tribes by formal treaty acknowledged themselves subjects of King James.

The whites, however, did not always respect the rights of the Indians. Late in 1613, Pocahontas was betrayed into the hands of a foraging party under Captain Argall. Argall kept her a prisoner, and demanded of Powhatan a ransom. For three months Powhatan did not deign to reply to this demand, but prepared for war. In the meantime Pocahontas was instructed in the faith of the Christians, and at length openly embraced it, and was baptized. Her conversion was hastened by a powerful sentiment, which had taken possession of her heart. She had always regarded the English as superior to her own race, and now her affections were won by a young Englishman of good character, named John Rolfe.

Marriage of Pocahontas.

Rolfe, with the approval of the governor, asked her hand of her father in marriage. Powhatan consented to the union, but refused to be present at the marriage, as he was too shrewd to place his person in the hands of the English. He sent his brother Opachisco and two of his sons to witness the marriage, which was solemnized in the little church at Jamestown, in the presence of Sir Thomas Dale, the acting governor. The marriage conciliated Powhatan and his tribe, who continued their peaceful relations with the colony. King James, however, was greatly displeased at what he deemed the presumption of a subject in wedding a

princess. Pocahontas was soon after taken to England by her husband, and was received there with great attention and kindness. She remained in England for a little more than a year, and then prepared to return to her own country. As she was about to sail, she died, at the age of twenty-two, A. D. 1616. She left a son, who subsequently became a man of distinction in Virginia, and the ancestor of some of the proudest families of the Old Dominion.

Earliest Land Laws of Virginia.

In the meantime the settlements of the French on the coast of Maine had attracted the attention and excited the jealousy of the English. In 1613, Captain Samuel Argall, who was cruising on the banks of Newfoundland to protect the English fishermen, discovered the French settlement of Saint Sauveur on the island of Mount Desert, and captured it. He treated the colonists with inexcusable harshness, and compelled them to leave the country. In the same year he destroyed the fortifications which Des Monts had erected on the isle of St. Croix and burned the deserted settlement of Port Royal.

At Jamestown and the other settlements that had been formed in Virginia private industry was fast placing the colony on an assured basis of success. "The condition of private property in lands, among the colonists, depended, in some measure, on the circumstances under which they had emigrated. Some had been sent and maintained at the exclusive cost of the company, and were its servants. One month of their time and three acres of land were set apart for them, besides a small allowance of two bushels of corn from the public store; the rest of their labor belonged to their employers. This number had gradually decreased; and in 1617 there were of them all, men, women and children, but fifty-four. Others, especially the favorite settlement near the mouth of the Appomattox, were tenants, paying two and a half bushels of corn as a yearly tribute to the store, and giving to the public service one month's labor, which was to be required neither at seed time nor harvest.

He who came himself, or had sent others at his own expense, had been entitled to a hundred acres of land for each person: now that the colony was well established, the bounty on emigration was fixed at fifty acres, of which the actual occupation and culture gave a further right to as many more, to be assigned at leisure. Besides this, lands were granted as rewards of merit; yet not more than two thousand acres could be so appropriated to one person. A payment to the company's treasury of twelve pounds and ten shillings likewise obtained a title to any hundred acres of land not yet granted or possessed, with a reserved claim to as much more. Such were the earliest land laws of Virginia: though imperfect and unequal, they gave the cultivator the means of becoming a proprietor of the soil. These valuable changes were established by Sir Thomas Dale."*

Tobacco Becomes the Currency.

The survivors of Raleigh's colony at Roanoke had introduced into England the use of tobacco which they had learned from the Indians, and there was now a steady demand for that article from the mother country. Encouraged by this demand, and stimulated by the acquisition of property of their own, the Virginia colonists devoted themselves with ardor to the culture of tobacco, and soon all the available land about the settlements, and even the streets and public squares of Jamestown, were

*_History of the United States._ By Geo. Bancroft, vol. i., p. 150.

planted with it. Tobacco soon became the currency of the colony, and great attention was given to it, even to the exclusion of other agricultural interests.

A New Governor.

In 1616, Sir Thomas Dale, who had been governor of the colony for two years, delegated his authority to George Yeardley, and sailed for England. Under Yeardley's admirable administration the colony continued to increase in prosperity. A faction of the settlers, however, succeeded in removing him from his position, and replaced him with Argall, who was a selfish and brutal tyrant. He held office for two years, and governed according to the most rigid forms of martial law. He swindled the company, and extorted their hard earnings from the settlers, who were driven to desperation by his brutalities. In their distress they appealed to the company for redress, and, as Argall had robbed the corporation also, their prayer was heard. Argall was removed from office, and the bloody code of Sir Thomas Smith was abolished. Sir George Yeardley was appointed governor, Lord Delaware having died, and reached Jamestown in April, 1619. He was greatly beloved by the Virginians, and his arrival was looked upon as the beginning of new life for the province, as indeed it was.

Among the changes which Yeardley was empowered by the company to inaugurate was one which exercised the greatest influence upon the subsequent history of Virginia. After years of blundering and arbitrary rule, the London Company had become convinced that the best way to promote the welfare of Virginia was to give the settlers a share in the management of their own affairs. "That the planters might have a hande in the governing of themselves, yt was graunted that a generall assemblie shoulde be helde yearly once, whereat were to be present the governor and consell with two burgesses from each plantation, freely to be elected by the inhabitantes thereof, this assemblie to have power to make and ordaine whatsoever lawes and orders shoulde by them be thought good and profitable for their subsistence."

First Representative Assembly.

In accordance with this authorization, Governor Yeardley issued his writs for the election of representatives from the various colonies, and on the tenth day of July, 1619, two delegates from each of the eleven settlements of the colony met at Jamestown, and organized the House of Burgesses of the Colony of Virginia, the first representative assembly ever convened in America. In this assembly the governor and council sat with the burgesses, and engaged in the debates and motions. John Pory, a member of the council and secretary of the colony, was chosen speaker, although he was not a member of the house. Sensible of their dependence upon the Supreme Ruler of the world, the burgesses opened their deliberations with prayer, and thus established the practice. "The assembly exercised fully the right of judging of the proper election of its members; and they would not suffer any patent, conceding manorial jurisdiction, to bar the obligation of obedience to their decisions." Laws were enacted against idleness and vice, and for the encouragement of industry and order. He who refused to labor was to be "sold to a master for wages till he shewe apparent signs of amendment."

The playing of dice and cards, and drunkenness and profane swearing were prohibited under severe penalties. Inducements were held out to increase the planting of corn, mulberry trees, hemp and the vine. The price of tobacco was fixed by law at three shillings a pound for the best grade

and half that price for the inferior grade. Provision was also made for "the erecting of a university and college" for the proper education of the children who should be born to the planters. It was designed to extend to the Indians the benefit of these institutions, and it was ordered that the "most towardly (Indian) boys in wit and graces of nature should be brought up in the first elements of literature, and sent from college to the work of converting the natives to Christianity."

The measures of the assembly were put in force without waiting the approval of the London Company, and the good effects of them were quickly visible in the colony. The principles of free government having been planted in the community, the settlers, who had been thereby transformed from the mere creatures of the governor into free-born Englishmen once more, began to regard Virginia as their permanent home, and set to work with a will to build houses and plant fields. One thing only was lacking to give the settlers homes in the truest sense of the word; and to supply that need Sir Edwin Sandys induced ninety young and virtuous women to emigrate to America, that the colonists might be able to marry and form domestic ties which alone could permanently attach them to America.

Wives Imported.

The young women were sent over to the colony in 1619, at the expense of the company, and were married to the tenants of the corporation or to men who were well enough to do to support them. The next year sixty more were sent over, and quickly found husbands. In all cases the husbands were required to repay to the company the cost of the passage of their wives from England. This was paid in tobacco, and was regarded as a debt of honor, to be discharged at any sacrifice. In order to aid the husbands in these payments, as well as in their general matters, the company, in employing labor, gave the preference to the married men. The colony now increased in a marked degree, emigrants coming out so rapidly from England that by 1621 there were four thousand persons in Virginia. It having become understood that the colony had passed the stage at which failure was possible, and had become a permanent state, the new emigrants were largely men of family, who brought their households with them.

Virginia's Written Constitution.

In July, 1621, the London Company, which was now controlled by the patriot party in England, granted to Virginia a written constitution, which gave to the colony a form of government similar to that of England herself. A governor and permanent council were to be appointed by the company. The house of burgesses was to have the power of enacting such laws as should be needed for the general good, but no law so enacted was to be valid unless approved by the company, On the other hand, no orders of the court in London were to be binding in Virginia unless ratified by the house of burgesses. Courts of justice were established and ordered to be administered according to the law and forms of trial in use in England. Thus the common law of England was firmly established in Virginia, and under its beneficent protection the colony advanced steadily in prosperity.

The colonists were to be no longer merely the subjects of a commercial corporation, and as such to hold their liberties and property at the pleasure of their masters; but were definitely accorded the right to govern themselves, and to take such measures for their safety and prosperity as in their judgment should seem best. Such were the provisions of the constitution.

CHAPTER VII

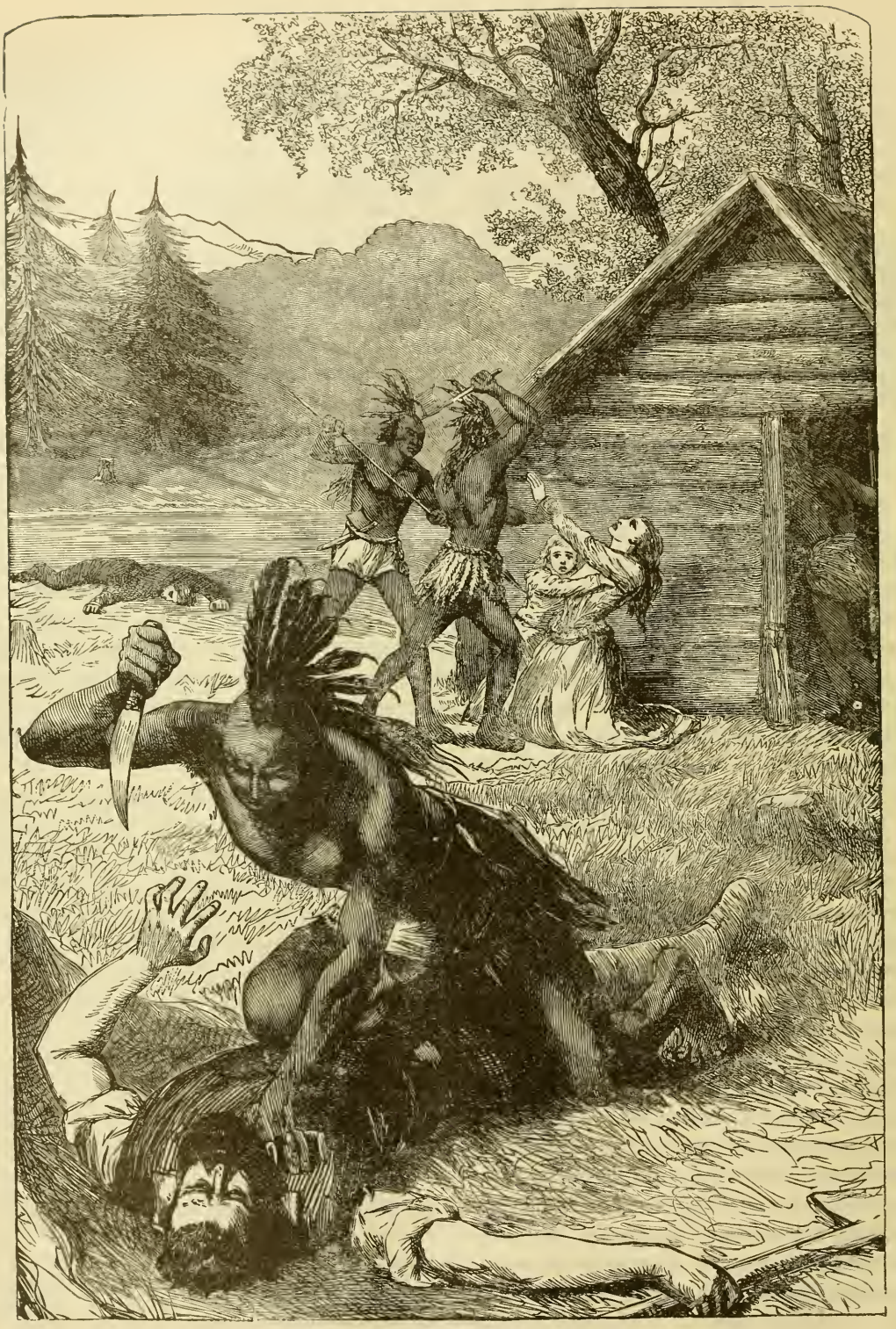
Progress of the Virginia Colony

Introduction of Negro Slavery Into Virginia—Efforts of the Assembly to Restrict Slavery—The Indians Attempt the Destruction of the Colony—Terrible Sufferings of the Whites—Aid from England—The Indian War Begun—King James Revokes the Charter of the London Company—Charles I. Desires a Monopoly of the Tobacco Trade—Action of the Assembly—Sir William Berkeley's First Administration—Severe Measures Against Dissenters—Close of the Indian War—Death of Opechancanough—Emigration of Royalists to Virginia—Virginia and the Commonwealth—Treaty with England—The Assembly Asserts Its Independence of the Governor—The Restoration—Berkeley Chosen Governor by the Assembly—His Hypocrisy.

IN August, 1619, a few months after the meeting of the first colonial legislature, there occurred an event which was destined to influence the history of Virginia and of America for remote generations, perhaps forever. A Dutch vessel of war entered the James River and offered twenty negroes for sale as slaves. These were purchased by the planters, and negro slavery was thus established in Virginia. Laborers were in demand, and the necessity for them blinded the planters to the evil they were fastening upon the colony. The first importation was followed by others, the infamous business being principally in the hands of the Dutch at this period. Still the blacks increased very slowly. The legislature from the first discouraged the traffic by a heavy tax upon female slaves.

Sir Francis Wyatt, the first governor appointed under the new constitution, reached Virginia in 1621, and the new laws were soon in successful operation. Soon after his arrival a terrible misfortune befell the colony, and almost caused its destruction. For some time there had been bad blood between the whites and the Indians. Powhatan, the friend of the English, was dead, and Opechancanough, the veteran chief, who, since the death of Powhatan, had become the leader of the nation, was bitterly hostile to the English, and not without reason. The savages originally held the best lands in the colony, but the whites, when these lands were wanted, took possession of them without regard to the rights of their dusky owners. The Indians, unable to contend with the whites in open conflict, saw themselves driven steadily away from their accustomed homes, and menaced with total destruction by the superior race. Opechancanough, though outwardly friendly to the colonists, now secretly resolved upon their destruction, and sought to accomplish this by treachery.

There were about five thousand Indians, of whom fifteen hundred were warriors, within sixty miles of Jamestown, and the whites in the same region numbered in all about four thousand. These were scattered in fancied safety along both sides of the James and for some distance into the interior. A plot was organized by the Indian leader for the extermination of every settler in the colony. At noon on a designated day every settlement was to be surprised and all the inhabitants murdered. The savages in the meantime kept up their pretence of friendship. Opechancanough declared with fervor, "Sooner shall the sky fall than my friendship for the English should cease." So unsuspicious were the English that to the very last moment they received the savages amongst them without fear of harm, and in



MASSACRE OF SETTLERS BY INDIANS.

many places the latter were then in the houses of the people they meant to destroy.

On the twenty-second of March, 1622, a general attack was made by the savages upon all the settlements of the colony. On the previous night the plot had been revealed to a converted Indian named Chauco, who at once hastened to Jamestown and gave warning of the danger. The alarm spread rapidly to the nearest settlements, but those at a distance could not be reached in time to avert their fate. Those settlements which had been warned were able to offer a successful resistance to their assailants, and some of those which were surprised beat off the Indians; but the number of victims, men women and children, who fell this day amounted to three hundred and forty-seven. All these were slain, and their fate would have been shared by the whole colony but for the warning of the friendly Indian.

Terrible Destruction.

The effect upon the colony was appalling. The distant plantations had been destroyed by the savages, and out of eighty settlements eight alone survived. These, and especially Jamestown, were crowded beyond their capacity with fugitives who had fled to them for shelter. Sickness soon began to prevail, the public works were discontinued, and private industry was greatly diminished. A gloom rested over the entire colony, and the population fell off. At the end of two years after the massacre, the number of inhabitants had been reduced to two thousand. Much sympathy was manifested for the suffering colonists by the people of England. The city of London sent them liberal assistance, and private individuals subscribed to their need. King James was aroused into an affectation of generous sympathy, and sent over to the colony a supply of muskets which had been condemned as worthless in England.

The whites recovered from their gloom, and on their part began to form plans for the extermination of their foes. During the next ten years expeditions were sent against the Indians at frequent intervals. The object kept sternly in view was to either destroy the savages altogether, or force them back from the seaboard into the interior. As late as 1630 it was ordered by the general assembly that no peace should be made with the Indians.

Virginia's Charter Revoked.

An important change now occurred in the fortunes of the colony. The London Company was bankrupt, and its stockholders having abandoned all hope of gain from the colony, held on to their shares merely as a means of exercising political power. The company was divided between two parties. One of these favored the direct rule of the colony by the sovereign, the other maintained the independent government of the province by its own legislature under the constitution granted to it. The debates between these factions greatly annoyed the king, who could never tolerate the expression of an independent opinion by any of his subjects. He endeavored in various ways to silence these disputes, and to regain the powers he had relinquished to the company, but the latter firmly refused to surrender their charter, and the colonists, who feared that the king might seek to impose his own arbitrary will upon them in the place of their constitution and the laws of England, sustained the company in its refusal.

In spite of this opposition, however, James carried his point. The charter of the company was revoked, and Virginia was made a royal province. The company appealed to the courts, but these being under the influence of the crown sustained the king. Their decision was rendered in June, 1624. James

did not interfere with any of the liberties or privileges of Virginia, however. Sir Francis Wyatt was retained in his office of governor,

FLIGHT OF THE INDIANS AFTER THE MASSACRE.

and the colony was left under the laws and in possession of the privileges secured to it in 1621. James announced his intention to prepare a code of laws for the government of Virginia, but fortunately for that province he died before he could execute his design.

Charles I. succeeded his father on the English throne on the twenty-seventh of March, 1625. He was favorably disposed toward the colony, for he did not suppose the principles of civil liberty had taken so deep a root in it, and, moreover, he wished to secure for the crown the monopoly of the tobacco trade He carried his condescension to the extent of recognizing the house of burgesses as a legislative body and requesting it to pass a bill restricting the sales of tobacco to the crown. The house answered him respectfully, but firmly, that to grant his majesty's request would be to injure the trade of the colony. Defeated in this effort to secure this monopoly the king continued throughout his reign to seek to get the tobacco trade into his hands. He declared London to be the sole market for the sale of tobacco, and endeavored in many ways, and in vain, to regulate the trade.

In the meantime Sir Francis Wyatt retired from the government of the colony, and Sir George Yeardley was appointed his successor in 1626. The latter died the next year, and Francis West was elected governor by the council until the pleasure of the king should be known. Upon the receipt in England of the news of Yeardley's death, Charles appointed Sir John Harvey governor of Virginia. At the same time he granted to the council in Virginia authority to fill all vacancies occurring in their body. Previous to the arrival of Harvey, West was succeeded by another governor, named Pott, elected by the council.

An Unpopular Governor.

Harvey reached Virginia late in the autumn of 1629, and remained in office until 1639. He was greatly disliked. and his failure to enforce the claims of Virginia against the colony of Maryland, which was planted in 1634 upon territory embraced within the original grant to Virginia, made him still more unpopular. In 1635 he was removed from office by the council, and an appeal was made to the king by both Harvey and the council. Harvey returned to England to manage his case, and John West was appointed governor until the decision of the case by the king. Harvey succeeded in defeating his opponents, who were not even allowed a hearing in England, and returned to Virginia in January, 1636, and resumed his place as governor.

The complaints against him were so numerous, that in 1639 he was removed by the king, who appointed Sir Francis Wyatt his successor. In 1641 Wyatt was succeeded by Sir William Berkeley, who reached Jamestown in 1642. In the spring of this year, an effort was made to revive the London Company, but Virginia, which was now a royal province, opposed the measure, and urged the king to allow her to remain in the exercise of the self-government which had contributed in so marked a degree to her prosperity. The king, impressed with the force of the arguments by which this appeal was sustained, declared his intention to make no change in the colonial government.

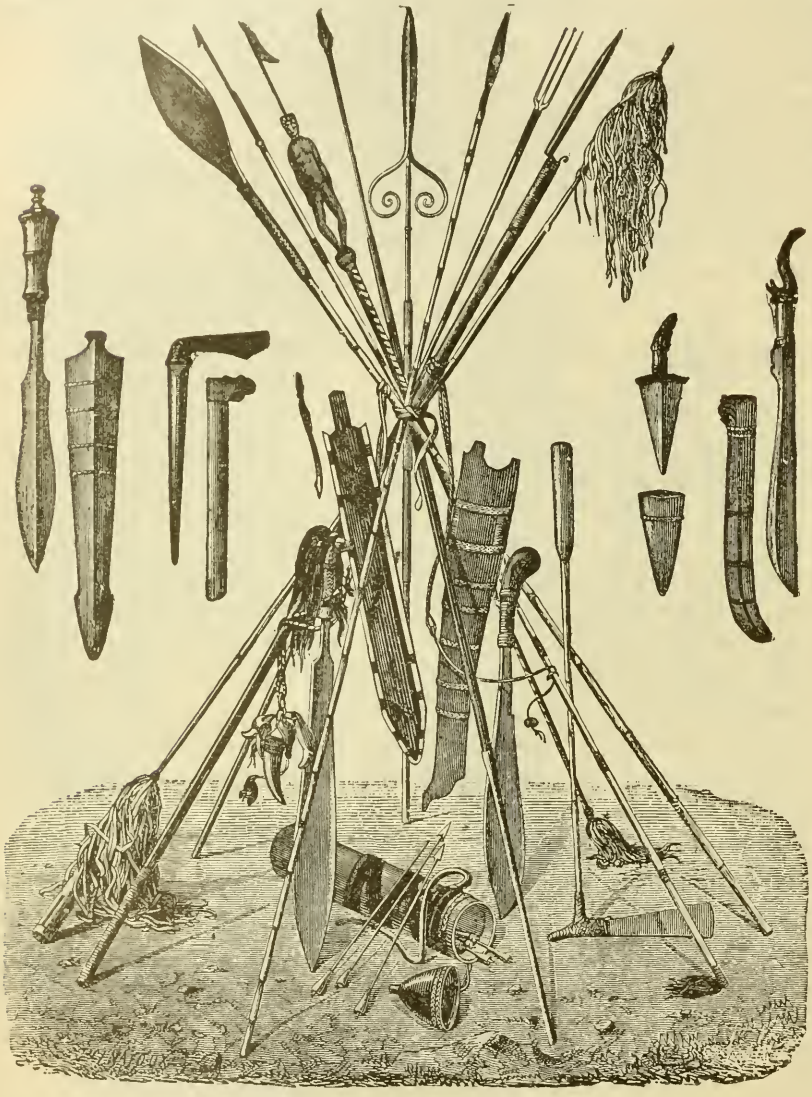
The Puritans Banished.

Berkeley, during his first administration, proved in the main a good governor, and the colony continued to improve. The courts of justice were brought as near as possible to the English standard, and the titles to lands were arranged upon a more satisfactory basis than had hitherto been found possible. Taxes were assessed according to the wealth of the settlers, and a treaty was arranged with Maryland by which the vexed questions between the two colonies were satisfactorily adjusted. The Virginians, accustomed to freedom, were in all things, save their acknowledgment of the king's supremacy, a practically independent nation, so little were they interfered with by the sovereign. The colony was devoted to the established church of England, and even at this early day there were severe laws for the enforcement of conformity to its rules, and for the punishment of dissenters.

When Puritan ministers came from New England into the colony in 1643, they were banished by the colonial government, notwithstanding they had been invited into Virginia by the Puritan settlements in that province. The majority of the Virginians, with the governor at their head, were royalists and staunch friends of the king.

The Puritans living in the colony were regarded with suspicion, and when they refused to conform to the established church, it was ordered that they should be banished. Many of them passed over into Maryland and settled there. With the exception of

this harmless bigotry, the colony took no share in the great quarrel which was rending the mother country in twain. It was rather a gainer by it, as the troubles which encompassed Charles I. compelled him to cease his efforts to interfere with the trade of the planters.



INDIAN WEAPONS.

The chief trouble of this period was with the Indians. There had been no peace with them since the massacre of 1622, but frequent expeditions had been sent against them. In 1644, the savages, led by their veteran chieftain Opechancanough, resolved to make one more effort to exterminate the whites, forgetting that in the twenty years that elapsed their enemies had grown stronger, while they had grown weaker. On the eighteenth of April the frontier settlements were attacked, and three hundred of the settlers were put to death. The whites at once inaugurated vigorous measures for their defence, and a sharp warfare was waged upon the savages until October, 1646.

It was brought to a close by the capture of Opechancanough, who was so decrepit that he was unable to walk, and was carried about in the arms of his people. His flesh was emaciated, the sinews so relaxed, and his eyelids so heavy that whenever he desired to see they were lifted by his attendants. Yet still the vigor of his intellect remained to him, and he was to the last both feared by his enemies and loved by his people. Berkeley, having taken him prisoner, exposed him to the rude gaze of the colonists, an indignity which stung the proud monarch of the forest to the heart. On one

occasion, hearing that the governor was approaching, he caused his eyelids to be raised, and fixing upon his captor a look of stern rebuke, said to him, "If Sir William Berkeley had become my prisoner, I should not thus meanly have exposed him as a show to my people."

A Cowardly Assassination.

A few days later, Opechancanough was basely assassinated by one of the colonists charged with the duty of guarding him. Thus perished one of the greatest of the native chieftains of America. In October, 1646, Necotowance, the successor of Opechancanough, entered into a treaty with the colony, by which he and his people relinquished to the English the lands that had been the heritage of their fathers, and withdrew into the interior. Their power was completely broken, and submission was all that was left to them.

Virginia was now on the high road to prosperity. The population at the close of the year 1648 numbered twenty thousand, and was increasing rapidly. A fair trade had been built up with other countries, and at Christmas of this year "there were trading in Virginia ten ships from London, two from Bristol, twelve Hollanders, and seven from New England." The quarrels of the mother country had not affected the colony, though a thrill of horror and indignation ran through all Virginia when the news was received of the execution of Charles I.

Upon the fall of that monarch a large number of the royalist party in England, unwilling to submit to or make any compromise with the Parliament, fled to Virginia, and were received there with sympathizing hospitality by the government and people. Many of them made the colony their permanent home, and thus began the pleasant relations between Virginia and England, which have in numerous cases remained unbroken. The Virginians regarded Charles II., then an exile at Breda, as their rightful sovereign, and it was seriously proposed to him to come over to America and be king of Virginia. Charles' interests obliged him to remain in Europe, but he continued to regard himself as king of Virginia. From this circumstance Virginia came to be called "The Old Dominion."

Arrival of a Fleet.

The Parliament, however, did not long suffer the colony to maintain this attitude. Having triumphed over all its enemies in Europe it prepared to enforce its authority in America. In 1650 an ordinance was passed forbidding all intercourse with the colonies that had adhered to the Stuarts, except by the especial permission of Parliament or the Council of State. In the spring of 1652 more energetic measures were put in force, and a fleet was dispatched to America to compel the submission of the colonies. The fleet arrived off Jamestown. No resistance was attempted, for the commissioners appointed by the commonwealth were instructed to grant terms honorable to both parties. The Virginians were prepared to resist any attempt to force them into submission, but they were disarmed by the liberal spirit with which the commonwealth met them, and a treaty was concluded between England and Virginia, as equal treating with equal. It was stipulated:

"First.—That this should be considered a voluntary act, not forced or constrained by a conquest upon the country; and that the colony should have and enjoy such freedoms and privileges as belong to the freeborn people of England.

"Secondly.—That the grand assembly, as formerly, should convene and transact the affairs of Virginia, doing nothing contrary to

the government of the commonwealth or laws of England.

"Thirdly.—That there should be a full and total remission of all acts, words, or writings against the Parliament.

Demand for a New Charter.

"Fourthly.—That Virginia should have her ancient bounds and limits, granted by the charters of the former kings, and that a new charter was to be sought from Parliament to that effect, against such as had trespassed against their ancient rights.

"Fifthly.—That all patents of land under the seal of the colony, granted by the governor, should remain in full force.

"Sixthly.—That the privilege of fifty acres of land for every person emigrating to the colony should remain in full force.

"Seventhly.—That the people of Virginia have free trade, as the people of England enjoy, with all places and nations, according to the laws of the commonwealth; and that Virginia should enjoy equal privileges, in every respect, with any other colony in America.

"Eighthly.—That Virginia should be free from all taxes, customs, and impositions whatsoever; and that none should be imposed upon them without the consent of their grand assembly; and no forts or castles be erected, or garrison maintained, without their consent.

"Ninthly.—That no charge should be required from the country on account of the expense incurred in the present fleet.

"Tenthly.—That this agreement should be tendered to all persons, and that such as should refuse to subscribe to it should have a year's time to remove themselves and effects from Virginia, and in the meantime enjoy equal justice."

"These terms," says Bancroft, "so favorable to liberty, and almost conceding independence, were faithfully observed until the restoration. Historians have, indeed, drawn gloomy pictures of the discontent which pervaded the colony, and have represented the discontent as heightened by commercial oppression. The statement is a fiction. The colony of Virginia enjoyed liberties as large as the favored New England; displayed an equal degree of fondness for popular sovereignty, and fearlessly exercised political independence."

"Old Ironsides."

Richard Bennett, one of the commissioners, was chosen governor in the place of Berkeley. Until now it had been customary for the governor and council to sit in the assembly, and take part in the debates. Objection was now made to their presence, and the matter was compromised by obliging them to take the oath required of the burgesses. During the protectorate Cromwell wisely let the colony alone. He appointed none of the governors, and never interfered with the management of its affairs. In 1658, Samuel Mathews being governor, the assembly, on the first of April, passed a law excluding the governor and council from their sessions, and thus secured to themselves a free and uninterrupted discussion of their measures. The governor and council in return declared the assembly dissolved, but that body vindicated its authority and independence by removing the governor and council and compelled them to submit. They were then re-elected to their respective positions. Thus did the spirit of popular liberty establish all its claims.

Upon the death of Oliver Cromwell, the burgesses met in secret session and decided to recognize Richard Cromwell as protector. "It was a more interesting question whether the change of protector in England would endanger liberty in Virginia. The letter from the council had left the government to be administered according to former usage

The assembly declared itself satisfied with the language. But that there might be no reason to question the existing usage, the governor was summoned to come to the house, where he appeared in person, deliberately acknowledged the supreme power of electing officers to be, by the present laws, resident in the assembly, and pledged himself to join in addressing the new protector for special confirmation of all existing privileges. The reason for this extraordinary proceeding is assigned, 'that what was their privilege now, might be the privilege of their posterity.' The frame of the Virginia government was deemed worthy of being transmitted to remote generations." *

Governor Mathews died in March, 1660, about the time of the resignation of Richard Cromwell in England. Both the mother country and the colony were thus left without a government. In this emergency the general assembly of Virginia resolved "that the supreme government of this country shall be resident in the assembly, and all writs shall issue in its name, until there shall arrive from England a commission, which the assembly itself shall adjudge to be lawful."

The assembly had no thought of asserting its independence of England, but as it cherished the earnest hope that the king would be restored to his rights, it proceeded to fill the vacancy occasioned by the death of Governor Mathews by electing Sir William Berkeley, the devoted partisan of the Stuarts, governor of Virginia. Berkeley accepted the office, acknowledged the validity of the acts of the assembly, and expressed his conviction that he could in no event dissolve that body. "I am," said he, "but the servant of the assembly." We shall see in the course of this narrative how he regarded this promise in the light of subsequent events.

**History of the United States.* By Geo. Bancroft, vol i., p. 228.

CHAPTER VIII

Virginia After the Restoration

Characteristics of the Virginians—Causes of the Success of the Royalists—Growth of the Aristocratic Class—Berkeley Decides Against the People—The Aristocratic Assembly Claims the Right to Sit Perpetually—Deprives the Common People of Their Liberties—Revival of the Navigation Act by Charles II.—The King Bestows Virginia as a Gift Upon His Favorites—Protests of the Assembly—Growing Hostility of the Virginians to the Colonial Government—The Indian War—The Governor Refuses to Allow the Colonists to Defend Themselves—Nathaniel Bacon—He Marches Against the Indians—Rebellion of the People Against Berkeley and the Assembly—The Convention—Repeal of the Obnoxious Laws—Berkeley's Duplicity—The People Take Up Arms—Flight of Berkeley—Destruction of Jamestown—Death of Bacon—Causes of the Failure of the Rebellion—Berkeley's Triumph—Execution of the Patriot Leaders—Berkeley's Course Condemned by the King—Death of Berkeley—The Unjust Laws Re-enacted—Lord Culpepper Governor—His Extortions—James II. and Virginia—Effects Upon Virginia of the Revolution of 1688—William and Mary College Founded.

ON the eighth of May, 1660, Charles II. was proclaimed king in England, and on the twenty-ninth made his entry into London. The rebellion and the commonwealth had produced but little effect upon Virginia. The restoration was productive of the most momentous consequences in the colony. During the long period of the commonwealth Virginia had been practically independent. The people had acquired political rights, and had exercised them with prudence.

The colony had prospered in a marked degree under the blessings of popular government, and the rights of the people were jealously guarded by their legislators. "No trace of established privilege appeared in its code or its government: in its forms and in its legislation Virginia was a representative democracy; so jealous of a landed aristocracy that it insisted on universality of suffrage; so hostile to the influence of commercial wealth, that it would not tolerate the 'mercenary' ministers of the law; so considerate for religious freedom, that each parish was left to take care of itself. Every officer was, directly or indirectly, chosen by the people."* The restoration was to change all this.

The society of Virginia was peculiar. The colony had been settled by adventurers under circumstances which compelled equality among all classes of its people. Thus there had grown up a strong population born to the enjoyment of this equality, and devoted to its maintenance. They constituted the bulk of the inhabitants. By degrees there had sprung up a colonial aristocracy composed of the large landholders. These were persons of culture, many of whom had been men of position and education in England. The laws favored the accumulation of large estates, and the possession of them awakened feelings of family pride.

The large emigration of men of rank and culture at the overthrow of Charles I. greatly increased this class. The existence of an established church gave it another element of strength, since the interests of the state church and the aristocracy are always identical. Education was almost entirely confined to the landholding class, and with this never-

*Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii., p. 188.

failing weapon in their grasp they soon obtained the direction of the affairs of the colony, and retained it. Unfortunately for Virginia, the mass of the people had no means of acquiring knowledge. There were no common schools in the colony. In 1671, Sir William Berkeley wrote: "Every man instructs his children according to his ability." He added: "I thank God there are no free schools nor printing, and I hope we shall not have these hundred years; for learning has brought disobedience and heresy and sects into the world, and printing has divulged them and libels against the best government. God keep us from both!" Thus were the common people doomed to hopeless ignorance, and left helpless and at the mercy of the smaller but educated class. There was no printing press in Virginia, and the colony remained without one until nearly a century after New England had enjoyed its benefits.

An Element of Weakness.

Bitterly did the people of Virginia atone for their neglect of their best interests. They had shown at the first the power of creating free institutions; but these institutions cannot be preserved among an ignorant people. Freedom and intelligence go hand in hand. The institution of negro slavery was another element of weakness and degradation. Labor was debased in the eyes of the whites by being made the task of a slave, when it should have been the glory of a freeman. The institution served to confirm the power of the landed aristocracy, while it sank the common people deeper into ignorance.

Thus when Sir William Berkeley entered upon his second term of office, at the period of the restoration, there were two elements, by nature hostile to each other, contending for the control of the colony—a people eager for the enjoyment of popular liberty, but sinking deeper into ignorance and helplessness, and a rising aristocracy, composed of men of wealth and education, and united by a common interest. Unhappily for the people, the governor was a natural aristocrat. In spite of his professions of loyalty to the assembly, he regarded the people with contempt, and could never tolerate the exercise of the least of their rights.

In the midst of the rejoicings in Virginia which hailed the return of Charles II. to the

KING CHARLES II.

throne of his fathers, Berkeley took a decisive stand, and boldly declared that he was governor of Virginia, not by the election of the assembly, but by virtue of his commission from the king. At the same time he issued writs for the election of a new assembly in the name of King Charles. Popular sovereignty was struck dead in Virginia. The new assembly met in March, 1661. It was

composed exclusively of landholders. Until now the assembly had been elected for but a single year, and its members were chosen by the people. This first aristocratic assembly, true to its instincts, at a blow deprived the people of the right of choosing their representatives, by assuming to itself the power to sit perpetually.

Sustained by the governor, the burgesses were enabled to continue their usurpation for fourteen years, and only yielded to an insurrection. The salaries of the members were paid by their respective counties, and the house, in 1662, passed a law regulating the pay and allowances of its members. The compensation was fixed at two hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco per day, or about nine dollars—a rate deemed enormous in these days of abundant wealth, and utterly unsuited to the period of poverty and struggle we are considering. In order to perpetuate its power, the assembly repealed the laws giving the right of suffrage to every citizen, and confined it to freeholders and housekeepers.

Laws Against the Quakers.

Nor did the assembly neglect to provide for the church. Conformity was required by severe laws. Every inhabitant of the colony was compelled to attend its services and to contribute a fixed sum to its support. The assessment of parish taxes was intrusted to twelve vestrymen in each parish, who had power to fill all vacancies in their number. They thus became practically a close corporation, responsible to no one for their acts. Rigorous laws were directed against the Quakers. They were forbidden to hold their own religious assemblies, and their absence from church was punished by a heavy fine. In September, 1663, the house expelled one of its members "because he was well affected to the Quakers."

"The organization of the judiciary placed that department of the government almost beyond the control of the people. The governor and council were the highest ordinary tribunal, and these were all appointed, directly or indirectly, by the crown. Besides this, there were in each county eight unpaid justices of the peace, commissioned by the governor during his pleasure. These justices held monthly courts in their respective counties. Thus the administration of justice in the counties was in the hands of persons holding their offices at the good will of the governor; while the governor himself and his executive council constituted the general court, and had cognizance of all sorts of causes.

Religious Liberty Destroyed.

"Was an appeal made to chancery it was but for another hearing before the same men; and it was only for a few years longer that appeals were permitted from the general court to the assembly. The place of sheriff in each county was conferred on one of the justices for that county, and so devolved to every commissioner in course. * * * But the county courts, thus independent of the people, possessed and exercised the arbitrary power of levying county taxes, which, in their amount, usually exceeded the public levy. This system proceeded so far that the commissioners, of themselves, levied taxes to meet their own expenses. In like manner, the self-perpetuating vestries made out their lists of tithables, and assessed taxes without regard to the consent of the parish. These private levies were unequal and oppressive, were seldom—it is said, never—brought to audit, and were, in some cases, managed by men who combined to defraud the public." *

These were the effects upon Virginia of the restoration of Charles II. to the throne

*_History of the United States._ By George Bancroft, vol. ii., pp., 204.

of England. The guarantee which a frequent renewal of the assembly secured to the rights of the people was removed by the perpetuation of that body. The right of suffrage—the sole protection of the liberties of a free people—was taken from a majority of the inhabitants of the province. Religious liberty, which it was fondly believed had been established, was struck down at a single blow. A system of arbitrary taxation by irresponsible magistrates was set up in the place of the carefully scrutinized levies of the representatives of the people. Education was discouraged and the press regarded with hostility. Ignorance, with all its accompanying evils, was fastened upon the colony. Ten years sufficed to accomplish these changes; but it took more than a century for the people of Virginia to recover their lost rights.

An Infamous Law.

Charles II. remembered the loyalty of Virginia only in his adversity. One of his first acts was to revive in a more odious form the navigation act, which had originated in the Long Parliament as a measure for compelling the submission of the colonies to the authority of the commonwealth. In 1660, a new and enlarged navigation act was passed by Parliament. It forbade foreign vessels to trade with the colonies, and required colonists to ship certain "enumerated articles, such as sugar, tobacco, cotton, wool, ginger or dyewoods" produced in the colony, to England alone.

This act bore very hard upon Virginia, as it gave to the English merchants the monopoly of her tobacco trade. The merchants were thus enabled to regulate the price of the commodity, and to supply the wants of the colonists in return upon their own terms. Efforts were made to evade this iniquitous law, but it remained fastened upon the colonies, and was the first of a long series of outrages.

Charles was not satisfied with crippling the industry of the colony that had remained faithful to him in his adversity. In order to please his worthless favorites at home he consented to plunder the Virginians of their property. In 1649, a patent was granted to a company of cavaliers for the region lying between the Rappahannock and the Potomac, and known in Virginia as the Northern Neck. It was intended to make this region a refuge for their partisans, but the design was never carried out. Other settlers located themselves there, and in 1669 it contained a number of thriving plantations. In the latter year Lord Culpepper, one of the most avaricious men in England, obtained from the king a patent for the Northern Neck, having previously acquired all the shares of the company to whom the grant of 1649 had been made. This patent was in direct violation of the rights of the actual settlers, and bore very hard upon them. But it was as nothing compared with the next gift of the king. In 1673, he bestowed, as a free gift, upon Lord Culpepper and the Earl of Arlington, "all the dominion of land and water called Virginia," for a term of thirty-one years.

Firm Remonstrance.

Even the aristocratic assembly was startled by this summary disposal of the colony and commissioners were sent to England to remonstrate with the king. "We are unwilling," the assembly declared, "and conceive that we ought not to submit to those to whom his majesty, upon misinformation, hath granted the dominion over us, who do most contentedly pay to his majesty more than we have ourselves for our labor. Whilst we labor for the advantage of the crown, and do wish we could be more advantageous to the king and nation, we humbly request not to be subjected to our fellow-subjects, but, for the future, to be secured from our fears of

being enslaved." The commissioners were granted no satisfaction in England, and the efforts of the colony to obtain justice at the hands of the king failed.

General Discontent.

Virginia at this time was a sparsely settled province. Jamestown was the only town deserving the name within the limits of the colony. The inhabitants were scattered over the country, separated from each other. They dwelt on their farms and plantations, coming together rarely except on Sundays, on court-days, and at elections. This solitary life taught them independence and self-reliance. They were proud of their personal liberty, and so long as this was not taken from them they were willing to submit to almost any form of government that might be imposed upon them. The truth is that until the restoration the Virginians were not accustomed to being governed much. The measures of the royalist governor and assembly greatly curtailed the freedom which the people had enjoyed under their former governments, and the imposition of new burdens upon them aroused a general discontent.

Men began to come together to discuss their wrongs, and the hostility to the aristocratic party and the governor increased rapidly, so rapidly, indeed, that the people were ripe for insurrection in 1674, and would have risen in revolt had not some of the cooler heads induced them to try more peaceful measures of redress. Still the taxes were continued at such a rate that the colonists were driven to desperation. They complained, with justice, that they were deprived of all the fruits of their labors by the iniquitous levies made upon them, and their complaints, instead of producing a change for the better, merely brought an increase of their burdens. At length their patience was exhausted, and they only lacked an excuse for taking up arms. The opportunity soon came. In the meantime the governor and the assembly, with characteristic contempt for the commons, went on extorting money from the people by unjust taxes principally for their own benefit, and put in successive operation the measures we have already described for strengthening their own power, and reducing the people to subjection to them.

Six Chiefs Murdered.

The people of Maryland had become involved in a war with the Susquehannah Indians and their confederates, and the struggle was so serious that the savages extended their depredations to the Potomac, and even to the limits of Virginia. To guard against this danger the border militia were set to watch the line of the river, and in 1675 a body of them, under Colonel John Washington, crossed over into Maryland to help the people of that colony. This John Washington had emigrated from the north of England about eighteen years before, and had settled in Westmoreland County. He became the great-grandfather of George Washington. The war was conducted with great fury on both sides. Six of the chiefs of the Susquehannah tribe at length came into the camp of the Virginians to treat for peace, and were treacherously murdered.

This barbarous act aroused the indignation of Governor Berkeley. "If they had killed my father and my mother, and all my friends," said he, "yet if they had come to treat of peace, they ought to have gone in peace." The massacre was bloodily avenged by the Indians. The Susquehannahs immediately crossed the Potomac and waged a relentless warfare along the borders of Virginia until they had slain ten whites for each one of their chiefs, a sacrifice required of

INDIANS MAKING A MIDNIGHT ATTACK UPON SETTLERS.

them by the customs of their tribe, in order that the spirits of their braves might rest in peace. The people appealed to the governor for protection, but Berkeley refused to grant them aid. It is said that he was too deeply interested in the fur trade to be willing to offend the Indians by aiding his people. The colonists then demanded permission to defend themselves, to invade the Indian country, and drive the savages farther into the interior. This was also refused, and during all this time the frontier was suffering fearfully from the outrages of Berkeley's Indian friends.

A Patriotic Leader.

At last the patience of the people was exhausted. A leader was at hand in the person of Nathaniel Bacon. He was a young planter of the county of Henrico, a native of England, and a lawyer by profession. He was ardent in temper, eloquent and persuasive in speech, winning in manner, a true patriot, and possessed of the firmness and decision necessary in a leader of a popular movement. He had been reared in England amid the struggles which ushered in the establishment of the commonwealth, and had learned the lesson of freedom too well to forget it in a home where every incident of his daily life required the exercise of the best qualities of his nature. His love of republicanism had gained him the dislike of Governor Berkeley, who hated any man that dared to criticise his tyranny. The same principles which made him obnoxious to the governor won him the affectionate confidence of the people of Virginia, who were quick to recognize their true friend.

When volunteers began to offer themselves for the war against the Indians they petitioned the governor to commission Bacon their commander-in-chief. This Berkeley refused, declaring that he would not countenance such presumption on the part of the "common people." In the meantime the murders continued, and Bacon, who shared the indignation of the people, determined that if another man was slain he would march the militia against the Indians without a commission. Almost immediately several of his own men were murdered on his own plantation near the falls of the James. He at once gave the signal. Five hundred men were soon under arms, and Bacon was made their leader. About the twentieth of April, 1676, he set out on his march against the savages, whom he chastised and drove back into the interior.

The people were in arms, and they were not disposed to lay down their weapons until their grievances were redressed. The quarrel was not with the Indians, but with the government. As soon as Bacon had begun his march into the Indian country, Berkeley denounced him as a traitor, and his followers as rebels, and ordered them to disperse. He was obeyed by some who feared the loss of their property, but the populous counties bordering the bay answered him by joining the insurrection.

The Assembly Dissolved.

The people of the colony with one voice demanded the dissolution of the assembly, which had unlawfully maintained its existence for fourteen years. Opposed by the entire people the governor was compelled to yield. The assembly had fairly earned the universal hatred with which it was regarded by its selfishness and its hostility to popular liberty. It was dissolved, and writs were issued for a new election. Among the new members elected was Bacon, who was returned from the county of Henrico.

The new assembly was naturally favorable to the rights of the people, and it at once proceeded to rectify many of the abuses

which had produced the insurrection. Taxes were adjusted more equitably; the right of suffrage was restored to the people; the monopoly of the Indian trade, in which it was believed the governor was deeply interested, was suspended; many of the evils connected with the expenditure of the public funds were corrected; the power of the parish vestries was broken by limiting their term of office to three years, and giving the election of these officials to the freemen of the parish; a general amnesty was proclaimed for all past offences; and Bacon, amid the rejoicings of the people, was elected commander of the army destined to act against the Indians.

BACON DEMANDS THE COMMISSION OF BERKELEY.

These measures were utterly distasteful to the haughty old governor. He refused to give them his sanction, or to sign the commission ordered for Bacon by the assembly. Fearful of treachery Bacon withdrew from the capital. The people quickly rallied to his support, and in a few days he entered Jamestown at the head of five hundred men. Berkeley, who was as courageous as he was obstinate, met him, and baring his breast said, haughtily, "A fair mark; shoot!" Bacon answered him calmly, "I will not hurt a hair of your head, or of any man's; we are come for the commission to save our lives from the Indians." The governor was at length obliged to yield. The commission was issued, the acts of the assembly were ratified, and Berkeley joined the assembly and council in sending to England an indorsement of the loyalty, patriotism, and energy of Bacon. This consent was given on the twenty-fourth of June, or, according to the new style of calculation, on the fourth of July, 1676, just one hundred years before the Declaration of Independence.

Hunted Like a Wolf.

Bacon at once marched against the Indians, and in a brilliant and successful campaign broke their power, and gave peace and security to the frontier. In the midst of these honorable labors he was again assailed by Berkeley, who had only consented to the reconciliation to gain time. The governor withdrew from Jamestown to Gloucester, which was the most popu' ous and the most loyal county of Virginia. He summoned a convention of the inhabitants, and renewed his efforts against Bacon. The people of Gloucester, justly regarding Bacon as the defender of the colony, opposed the governor's proposals, but he persisted in spite of their advice, and again proclaimed Bacon a traitor.

This inexcusable pursuit of a man who had rendered nothing but good service to the colony aroused the indignation of the troops. "It vexes me to the heart," said Bacon, "that while I am hunting the wolves and tigers that destroy our lambs I should myself be pursued as a savage. Shall persons wholly devoted to their king and country—men hazarding their lives against the public enemy—deserve the appellation of rebels and traitors? The whole country is witness to our peaceable behavior. But those in authority, how have they obtained their estates? Have they not devoured the common treasury? What arts, what sciences, what schools of learning, have they promoted? I appeal to the king and Parliament, where the cause of the people will be heard impartially."

Bacon appealed to the people of Virginia to unite for the defence of their liberties against the tyranny of the governor. They responded to this call with enthusiasm, and a convention of the most eminent men in the colony assembled at Middle Plantations, now Williamsburg, on the third of August, 1676. It was resolved by the convention to sustain Bacon with the whole power of the colony in the campaign against the Indians. If the governor persisted in his attempt to hunt him as a traitor, the members of the convention pledged themselves to defend Bacon with arms, even against the royal troops, until an appeal could be made to the king in person. The people of Virginia were fully resolved to protect themselves against the tyranny of Berkeley, and Bacon, strengthened by their indorsement of his course, finished his campaign against the Indians. Governor Berkeley withdrew across the bay to the eastern shore, and there collected a force of sailors belonging to some English vessels and a band of worthless Indians. With this force "men of a base and cowardly disposition

allured by the passion for plunder," he prepared to return to Jamestown.

The people decided to regard the retreat of the governor as an abdication on his part of his office. The ten years for which he had been appointed had expired, and the colonial records afforded a precedent for his removal. Bacon and four others, who had been members of the council, issued writs for the election of a representative convention to which the management of the affairs of the colony was to be committed. With the exception of a few royalists the whole people of Virginia indorsed the movement; the women were enthusiastic, and urged their husbands to risk everything, even life, in defence of their liberties.

Early in September Sir William Berkeley reached Jamestown with the rabble which he called his army. He took possession of the town without resistance, and was joined by a number of royalists. He offered freedom to the slaves of the Virginians who were opposed to him on the condition of their joining his ranks. Bacon and his party were again proclaimed traitors and rebels.

The People Fly to Arms.

The people at once flew to arms, and Bacon soon found himself at the head of the little army that had been so successful against the Indians. Without delay they marched to Jamestown. The resistance attempted by Berkeley's cowardly followers was feeble, and the whole force, including their leader, retreated to their ships, and dropped down the river by night. The next morning the army of the people entered Jamestown. It was rumored that a party of royalists was marching from the northern counties to the support of Berkeley, and a council was held to decide upon the fate of the capital. It was agreed that it should be burned to prevent it from being used as a stronghold for their enemies. The torch was applied; Drummond and Lawrence, leaders of the popular party, set fire to their dwellings with their own hands; and in a few hours only a heap of smouldering ruins marked the site of the first capital of Virginia. Its destruction left the colony without a single town within its limits.

From the ruins of Jamestown Bacon marched promptly to meet the royalist force advancing from the Rappahannock region. The latter in a body joined the army of the people, and even the county of Gloucester, the stronghold of royalty, gave its adhesion to the patriotic movement. With the exception of the eastern shore the entire colony was united in support of the cause of popular liberty.

Untimely Death of Bacon.

Unhappily, at this critical juncture, Bacon was seized with a fatal fever, of which he died on the first of October, 1676. His followers grieved for him with passionate sorrow, and with good cause. It has been the good fortune of Virginia to give many great names to the cause of liberty, but in all the immortal roll there are none who surpassed Nathaniel Bacon in pure and disinterested patriotism. Others were permitted to accomplish more, but none cherished loftier aims or desired more earnestly the good of their fellow-citizens.

The death of Bacon left the popular party without a head; and now began to be seen for the first time in Virginia the evils which the neglect of education must produce in a community. The Virginians were not lacking in courage, determination, or devotion to their liberties, and their cause was one calculated to succeed without leaders. In an educated community there would have been no lack of union or perseverance because of the death of one man, and the people would

have found the means to continue their struggle until successful. In the uneducated Virginian community of 1676 the presence of a bold, capable, and resolute leader was a necessity, and his sudden removal left the popular party helpless. The grand struggle degenerated into a series of petty insurrections; the royalists took heart, and Robert Beverley, their most competent leader, was able to destroy in detail the resistance of the patriots and to restore the supremacy of Berkeley.

A Woman's Self-Sacrifice.

The governor now proceeded to take a summary vengeance upon the patriots, and more than twenty of the best men of the colony gave their lives on the scaffold for the liberties of their country. The first of these martyrs for freedom—the first American to die for the right of the people to govern themselves—was Thomas Hansford, a Virginian born, and a noble specimen of the chivalrous sons of the Old Dominion.

The wife of Edmund Cheesman, upon the capture of her husband, flung herself at the governor's feet, and declaring that her exhortations had induced her husband to join Bacon, begged to be allowed to die in his place. The brutal Berkeley repelled the heroic woman with a gross insult. When Drummond was taken and brought before him the governor received him with mock courtesy. "I am more glad to see you," he said, "than any man in Virginia; you shall be hanged in half an hour." The royalist assembly, horrified at the cruelty of the governor, appealed to him to "spill no more blood." The property of the victims was confiscated, and their helpless families were turned out upon the charities of the people for whom the martyrs had died. Not content with these cruelties Berkeley attempted to silence the people, and prevent them from either censuring him or vindicating the memory of their dead heroes. Whoever should speak ill of Berkeley or his friends was to be whipped.

At last the end came, and Berkeley returned to England. His departure was celebrated with rejoicings throughout the colony; bells were rung, guns were fired, and bonfires blazed. Berkeley hoped to be able to justify his conduct in England, but upon his arrival in that country he found his course sternly condemned by the voice of public opinion. Even Charles II. censured him with all the energy that soulless monarch was master of. "The old fool," said the king, "has taken away more lives in that naked land than I for the murder of my father." His disappointment and mortification were too much for the proud man, and he died soon after his arrival in England.

Revival of Abuses.

The failure of Bacon's rebellion brought many serious misfortunes to Virginia. The insurrection was made the excuse by the king for refusing a liberal charter, and the colony was made dependent for its rights and privileges entirely upon the royal will. The assembly was composed almost exclusively of royalists, and at once proceeded to undo the work of the popular party. All the laws of Bacon's assembly were repealed; the right of suffrage was restricted to freeholders, and the iniquitous taxes were reimposed. All the abuses that had led to the rebellion were revived.

In 1677 Lord Culpepper, one of the favorites to whom Charles II. had granted Virginia, was appointed governor of the colony for life. The new governor regarded his office as a sinecure, and while receiving its emoluments desired to remain in England to enjoy them. In 1680, however, the king compelled him to repair to his government

person. He brought with him authority from the sovereign to settle all past grievances, but he used this power for his own profit. He extorted money from all parties, and when he had acquired a considerable sum returned to England, having spent less than a year in Virginia. He left the colony in the greatest distress. The Virginians, robbed of the profits of their labors for the enrichment of their rulers, were reduced to despair. Riots took place in various places, and the whole colony was on the verge of insurrection.

A Plunderer.

Rumors of these disturbances having reached England the king ordered Culpepper to return and reduce the colony to obedience. He did so, and caused several influential men to be hanged as traitors, and used the power intrusted to him to wrest from the council the last remnant of its authority to control his outrages upon the people. This accomplished, he proceeded to force the settlers of the Northern Neck to surrender their plantations to him, or pay him the sums he demanded for the privilege of retaining them.

He found his residence among a people he had come to plunder very disagreeable, and in the course of a few months returned to England amid the bitter curses of the Virginians. The council reported the distress of the province to the king, and appealed to him to recall the grant to Culpepper and Arlington. Arlington surrendered his rights to Culpepper, whose patent was rendered void by a process of law, and in July, 1684, Virginia became once more a royal province. Lord Howard, of Effingham, was appointed to succeed Culpepper, but he was a poorer and more grasping man than his predecessor, and the change afforded no relief to Virginia.

In 1685 James II. came to the throne of England, and in the same year occurred the insurrection in England known as Monmouth's rebellion. A number of prisoners were taken in this struggle by the royal forces, and many of these were sent out to the colonies of Virginia and Maryland to be sold as servants for a term of ten years. Many of them were men of education and family. The general assembly of Virginia refused to sanction this infamous measure, and, in spite of the prohibition of King James, passed a law declaring all such persons free. Indeed at this time the practice of selling white servants in America had become so profitable that quite a thriving business was carried on between the west of England and Virginia and Maryland.

Not only persons condemned for crime, but innocent people were kidnapped and sold in the colonies for a term of years for money. "At Bristol," says Bancroft, "the mayor and justices would intimidate small rogues and pilferers, who, under the terror of being hanged, prayed for transportation as the only avenue to safety, and were then divided among the members of the court. The trade was exceedingly profitable—far more so than the slave trade—and had been conducted for years."

Uprising for Freedom.

One of the last acts of Charles II. with reference to Virginia was to forbid the setting up of a printing press within the limits of the colony; James II. continued this prohibition. Effingham endeavored to take from the colony the few privileges left to it. The result was that the party of freedom increased rapidly. Many of the aristocratic party seeing that the king and the governor menaced every right and privilege they possessed went over to the popular side. The assembly began to assert the popular demand for self-government, and became so unmanageable that in November, 1686, it was dissolved by royal proclamation.

A new assembly was convened, which met in April, 1688, a few months before the British revolution. The governor and council found this body more indisposed to submit to the aggressions of the crown than its predecessor had been. The people sustained their delegates, and a new insurrection was threatened. Effingham was in the midst of a hostile population, without troops to enforce his will, and was obliged to conduct himself with moderation. The royal authority was never stronger in Virginia than during this reign, but it was found impossible to establish it upon the ruins of the liberties of the colony. The result of all the long years of oppression we have been considering was simply to confirm the Virginians in their attachment to their liberties, and in their determination to maintain them at any cost. Virginia remained to the end an aristocratic colony, but it was none the less "a land of liberty."

Founding a College.

The revolution of 1688 in England did not change affairs in Virginia materially as regarded the forms of the colonial government. The liberties of the colony were established by law too securely to be any longer at the mercy of an individual, but the power of the governor was still very great. Every department of the colonial administration, the finances, and even the management of the church, was made subject to his control. He had the power to dissolve the assembly at pleasure, and was sure to exercise it if that body manifested too great a spirit of independence. He also appointed the clerk of the assembly, who was for this reason a check upon its freedom of debate. The only means of resistance to the measures of the government which the assembly retained was to refuse to vote supplies in excess of the permanent revenue. This right was sometimes exercised, and the governor was prevented from carrying out unpopular measures by the lack of the necessary funds.

Soon after the accession of William and Mary to the throne an effort was made to establish a college in Virginia, although the printing press was still forbidden. Donations were made by a number of persons in England, and the king bestowed several liberal grants upon the proposed institution. The measure was carried through to success by the energy of the Rev. James Blair, who was sent out by the Bishop of London as commissary, "to supply the office and jurisdiction of the bishop in the outplaces of the diocese." The college was established in 1691, and was named William and Mary, in honor of the king and queen. Mr. Blair was its first president, and held that office for fifty years.

The ministry did not approve the action of the king in granting even the very moderate endowments which he bestowed upon the college. They regarded Virginia merely as a place in which to raise tobacco for the English market, and cared nothing for the interests of the people. They treated the colony with injustice and neglect in everything. The planters could sell their tobacco only to an English purchaser, who regulated the price to suit himself, and supplied the planters in return with the wares they needed at his own prices.

CHAPTER IX

The Colonization of Maryland

Extent of the Territory of Virginia—Clayborne's Trading Posts Established—Sir George Calvert, Lord Baltimore—He becomes Interested in American Colonization—Obtains a Grant of Maryland—Terms of the Charter—A Colony Sent Out—Arrival in the Chesapeake—St. Mary's Founded—Character of the Colony—Friendly Relations Established with the Indians—First Legislature of Maryland—Trouble with Clayborne—Rapid Growth of the Colony—Progress of Popular Liberty—Policy Respecting the Treatment of the Indians—Clayborne's Rebellion—Law Granting Religious Toleration Enacted—Condition of Maryland Under the Commonwealth—The People Declared Supreme—Lord Baltimore Recovers His Proprietary Rights—Characteristics of the Colony—Rapid Increase in Population—Charles Calvert, Governor—Death of the Second Lord Baltimore—Roman Catholics Disfranchised—Maryland Becomes a Royal Province—Triumph of the Protestants—Annapolis Made the Seat of Government—Restoration of the Proprietary Government—Continued Prosperity of Maryland.

THE second charter of Virginia granted to that province the country north of the Potomac as far as the headwaters of the Chesapeake Bay. This grant included the territory of the present State of Maryland. The discoveries of Captain John Smith had brought the region along the head of the bay into notice, and other explorers had confirmed his statements as to its value.

A very profitable trade was established with the Indians of this section, and, in order to develop its advantages, William Clayborne, a man of great resolution and of no mean abilities, a surveyor by profession, was employed by the Governor of Virginia to explore the region of the upper Chesapeake. His report was so favorable that a company was formed in England for the purpose of trading with the Indians. Under authority from this company, Clayborne obtained a license from the colonial government of Virginia, and established two trading stations on the bay; one on Kent Island, opposite the present city of Annapolis, and one at the mouth of the Susquehanna. These posts were established in the spring of 1631.

In the meantime efforts were being made in England to secure the settlement of the same region. Sir George Calvert, a man of noble character, liberal education and great political experience, had become at an early day deeply interested in the question of colonizing America. Having embraced the Roman Catholic faith, he relinquished his office of Secretary of State, and made a public acknowledgment of his conversion. His noble character commanded the confidence of King James, and he was retained as a member of the Privy Council, and was made Lord Baltimore in the Irish peerage. He was anxious to found a colony in America, which might serve as a place of refuge for persons of the Catholic faith, and obtained a patent for the southern part of Newfoundland. That region was too bleak and rugged to admit of the success of the enterprise, and the attempt to settle it was soon abandoned.

Lord Baltimore next contemplated a settlement in some portion of Virginia, and in October, 1629, visited that colony with a view to making arrangements for his plantation. The laws of Virginia against Roman Catholics were very severe, and immediately upon the arrival of so distinguished a Catholic the assembly ordered the oaths of allegiance and supremacy to be tendered him. Lord Baltimore proposed a form

which he was willing to subscribe, but the colonial government insisted upon that which had been ordered by the English Parliament, and which was of such a character that no Catholic could accept it. There was nothing left for Calvert but to withdraw from Virginia, and his reception there convinced him that that province was not the place for the plantation he wished to establish.

Large Grant to Lord Baltimore.

The region north of the Potomac was still uninhabited, and seemed to promise advantages equal to Virginia. Calvert applied to Charles I. for a patent for this region, and was given a territory corresponding very nearly to the present State of Maryland in extent. The king granted him a liberal charter, which, while it provided for his interests as proprietor, secured the liberties of the colonists. In this it was simply the expression of the wishes of Lord Baltimore, who desired to establish a settlement of freemen. The country embraced in the grant was given to Lord Baltimore, his heirs and assigns, in absolute possession. They were required to pay an annual tribute to the crown of two Indian arrows and one-fifth of all the gold and silver which might be found.

The colonists were to have a voice in making their own laws, and they were to be entitled to all the rights and privileges of Englishmen. No taxes were to be imposed upon them without their consent, nor was the authority of the proprietor to extend to their lives or property. It was enjoined that the exercise of the faith and worship of the established Church of England should be protected in the colony, but no uniform standard of faith or worship was imposed by the charter. The new province was carefully separated from Virginia and made independent of it. The colony was left free from the supervision of the crown, and the proprietor was not obliged to obtain the royal assent to the appointments or legislation of his province. The king also renounced for himself, his heirs and his successors, the right to tax the colony, thus leaving it entirely free from English taxation.

These were vast powers to intrust to one man; but they were placed in safe hands. The first Lord Baltimore was a man who hated tyranny of all kinds, and who had carefully observed the effects of intolerance and arbitrary rule upon the efforts that had already been made to establish successful colonies in America. He designed his colony as an asylum in which men of all creeds could meet upon a common basis of a faith in Jesus Christ, and his conviction that religious freedom is necessary to the success of a state confirmed in him his attachment to the principles of civil liberty.

Practical Charity.

He invited both Protestants and Catholics to join him in his enterprise, and adopted a form of government, based upon popular representation, well calculated to secure them in the possession of all their privileges. In honor of the queen of Charles I., he named the region granted to him Maryland. Before the patent was issued, Lord Baltimore died on the fifteenth of April, 1632, leaving h son, Cecil, heir to his designs as well as t his title. The charter granted to his fathe was issued to him, and he proceeded at once to collect a colony for the settlement of Maryland.

Lord Baltimore delegated the task of conducting the emigrants to Maryland to his brother, Leonard Calvert. On Friday, November 22, 1632, a company of two hundred, chiefly Roman Catholics of good birth, with their families and servants, sailed from

England in the "Ark" and the "Dove," the former a ship of large burthen, the latter a small pinnace. The voyage was made by way of the West Indies, and the Chesapeake was not reached until the twenty-fourth of February, 1634. The ships anchored off Old Point Comfort, and were visited by Sir John Harvey, Governor of Virginia, who had been commanded by the king to welcome the new colony with kindness.

Resting in Hampton roads for a few days the emigrants ascended the bay and entered the stately Potomac. Deeming it unsafe to plant his first settlement high up the river, Calvert chose a site on a small tributary of the Potomac, not far from its mouth. This stream, now known as the St. Mary's, he named the St. George's. An Indian village, called Yoacomoco, was selected as the site of the colony. The place was being deserted by the natives, who had suffered severely from the superior power of the Susequehannahs, and were removing farther into the interior for greater security. They readily sold their town and the surrounding lands to the English, and made with them a treaty of peace and friendship; and on the twenty-seventh of March, 1634, the colonists landed and laid the foundations of the town of St. Mary's.

CECIL, SECOND LORD BALTIMORE.

A few days later, Sir John Harvey arrived from Virginia on a friendly visit. His orders from the king were to treat the settlers with friendship, and to aid them as far as lay in his power. About the same time the native chiefs came in to visit the colony, and were so well received that they established friendly relations with the settlers. The Indian women taught their English sisters how to make bread from the meal of the Indian corn, and the warriors instructed the Englishmen in the simple arts of the chase. The colonists obtained provisions and cattle for a while from Virginia; but, as they went to work at once and with energy to cultivate their land, the first year's harvest gave them an abundance of supplies.

The proprietor sent out from England such things as were necessary to the success and comfort of the colony, treating the new settlement with a wise liberality. Thus were

the foundations of Maryland laid amid peace and prosperity. The colony was successful from the first. Roman Catholic settlers followed the first emigrants in considerable numbers, and even Protestants sought the shores of Maryland, which the liberality of Lord Baltimore had made a refuge to them from the persecutions of their own brethren. New settlements were formed, and within six months the colony "had advanced more than Virginia had done in as many years."

Piracy and Murder.

In February, 1635, the first legislative assembly of Maryland met. Legislation had become necessary by this time. Clayborne, who had established trading posts in the upper Chesapeake, had met the first settlers under Leonard Calvert at their anchorage at Old Point Comfort, and had endeavored to dissuade them from settling along the bay by exaggerating the dangers to be apprehended from the hostility of the Indians. Failing in this effort, he became the evil genius of Maryland, as the grant to Lord Baltimore made void his license to trade with the Indians along the bay. He refused to acknowledge the authority of the proprietor of Maryland, and attempted to retain his trading post by force of arms.

Within a year or two after the settlement of the colony, a bloody skirmish occurred in one of the rivers of the eastern shore, in which Clayborne's men were defeated. In 1638, Leonard Calvert took forcible possession of Kent Island, and hanged one or two of Clayborne's people on a charge of piracy and murder. Clayborne was in England at the time prosecuting his claims before the king. Governor Harvey of Virginia had given the weight of his influence in this contest to the cause of Lord Baltimore, but the people of Virginia, who resented the grant of Maryland as an invasion of their rights, sympathized with Clayborne, and caused Harvey to be impeached and sent to England for trial. The English courts decided that Clayborne's license was not valid against the charter granted to Lord Baltimore, and Harvey was sent back to Virginia as governor in April, 1639.

In the meantime the colony continued to grow and prosper. The assembly, while acknowledging the allegiance of the people of Maryland to the king, and making ample provisions for the rights of Lord Baltimore as proprietor, took care to secure the liberties of the people, and claimed for itself the exercise in the province of all the powers belonging to the British House of Commons. Representative government was definitely established, and the colonists were secured in all the liberties granted to the people of England by the common law of that country. Tobacco became, as in Virginia, the staple of the colony.

Maryland Contented.

In 1642, in gratitude for the great expense which Lord Baltimore had voluntarily incurred for them, the people of Maryland granted him "such a subsidy as the young and poor estate of the colony could bear." As far as the people themselves were concerned, the condition of Maryland was one of marked happiness and contentment. Harmony prevailed between all classes of the people and the government; the settlers were blessed with complete toleration in religion; emigration was rapidly increasing, and the commerce of the colony was growing in extent and value.

Maryland had its troubles, however. The Indians, alarmed by its rapid growth, began in 1642 a series of aggressions which led to a frontier war. This struggle continued for some time, but was productive of no decisive results, and in 1644 peace was restored. The

Indians promised submission, and the whites, on their part, agreed to treat them with friendship and justice. Laws were enacted compelling the settlers to refrain from injustice toward the savages, and humanity to the red man was made the policy of the colony.

The kidnapping of an Indian was punishable with death, and the sale of arms to the savages was constituted a felony. Efforts were also made to convert the natives to Christianity. Four missions were established among them by the priests of the Catholic church, and the effects of their devoted labors were soon manifest. A chief, named Tayac, and his wife were baptized, he taking the name of Charles and she that of Mary. About one hundred and thirty other converts were afterwards added to the Christian fold among the Indians, and many of these sent their children to receive instruction at the hands of the priests. Though the effort to Christianize the savages failed, as it has ever done, the good effects of these endeavors were not lost, as the friendship for the whites aroused by them continued to influence these tribes in their policy toward the colony.

Clayborne's Rebellion.

Clayborne, who had certainly cause for thinking himself wronged in being deprived of his property without just compensation, returned to Maryland to revenge himself upon the colonists. The civil war in England furnished him with an admirable opportunity for his attempt. He was able to secure a number of followers in Maryland, and in 1644 began an insurrection. The next year the governor was driven out of the colony and obliged to take refuge in Virginia, and Clayborne was triumphant. For more than a year the rebels held possession of the government, and this whole time was a period of disorder and misrule, during which the greater part of the colonial records were lost or stolen. At the end of this time, the better classes of the people of Maryland drove out the rebels, and recalled the proprietary government. A general amnesty was proclaimed to all offenders, and peace was restored to the colony.

The year 1649 was marked in England by the execution of Charles I., and the complete

A CIVILIZED INDIAN.

establishment of the authority of the Parliament. It seemed to the people of Maryland that this triumph of the popular party was to usher in a new war upon the Roman Catholic faith, which was professed by a large majority of the colonists. Dreading a war of religion as the greatest of evils, they determined to secure the colony from it, by placing the freedom of conscience within their limits upon as secure a basis as possible. In doing this they gave expression to the popular will, and aimed to secure their future welfare.

On the twenty-first of April, 1649, the assembly of Maryland adopted the following

act: "And, whereas, the enforcing of conscience in matters of religion hath frequently fallen out to be of dangerous consequence in those commonwealths where it has been practiced, and for the more quiet and peaceable government of this province, and the better to preserve mutual love and amity among the inhabitants, no person within this province, professing to believe in Jesus Christ, shall be anyways troubled, molested or discountenanced for his or her religion, or in the free exercise thereof, or be compelled to the belief or practice of any other religion against their consent."

OLIVER CROMWELL.

This statute, noble as it was, applied only to Christians. It was provided that "Whatsoever person shall blaspheme God, or shall deny or reproach the Holy Trinity, or any

of the three persons thereof, shall be punished with death." Maryland had taken a great stride in advance in making her soil a sanctuary for Christians of all beliefs, but she had not yet accorded to her people a toleration equal to that of Rhode Island, which colony, in 1647, granted liberty to all opinions, infidel as well as Christian.

Cromwell's Blunt Order.

During the existence of the commonwealth, the colony was troubled with an unsettled government. It submitted to the authority of Cromwell, and the Puritans, regardless of the example of their brethren of the Catholic faith, attempted by an act of assembly, in 1654, to disfranchise the whole Roman Catholic population on the ground of their religious belief. Cromwell disapproved this action, and bluntly ordered his commissioners "not to busy themselves about religion, but to settle the civil government." In 1660, without waiting to hear the issue of matters in England, the assembly repudiated the authority of both the commonwealth and the proprietor, and asserted the sovereignty of the people as the supreme authority in Maryland.

Upon the restoration of Charles II., Lord Baltimore made his peace with the king for having yielded to the power of Cromwell, and received back all the rights he had enjoyed in Maryland. He at once proceeded to re-establish his authority in the province, but being a man of humanity and of liberal views, he made a generous use of his power. A general pardon was granted to all offenders against him, his rule was once more submitted to, and for thirty years the colony was at peace.

"Like Virginia, Maryland was a colony of planters; its staple was tobacco, and its prosperity was equally checked by the pressure of the navigation acts. Like Virginia, it possessed no considerable village; its inhabitants were scattered among the woods and along the rivers; each plantation was a little world within itself, and legislation vainly attempted the creation of towns by statute. Like Virginia, its laborers were in part indentured servants, whose term of service was limited by persevering legislation; in part negro slaves, who were employed in the colony from an early period, and whose importation was favored both by English cupidity and provincial statutes."

"As in Virginia, the appointing power to nearly every office in the counties as well as in the province was not with the people; and the judiciary was placed beyond their control. As in Virginia, the party of the proprietary, which possessed the government, was animated by a jealous regard for prerogative, and by the royalist principles, which derive the sanction of authority from the will of Heaven. As in Virginia, the taxes levied by the county officers were not conceded by the direct vote of the people, and were, therefore, burdensome alike from their excessive amount and the manner of their levy. But though the administration of Maryland did not favor the increasing spirit of popular liberty, it was marked by conciliation and humanity. To foster industry, to promote union, to cherish religious peace, * * * * * * these were the honest purposes of Lord Baltimore during his long supremacy." *

Arrival of Immigrants.

Yet the colony continued to prosper. Emigrants came to it from almost every country of western Europe, and even from Sweden and Finland. The only persons who had cause for complaint in Maryland were the Quakers, who were treated with

* *History of the United States.* By George Bancroft, vol. ii., p. 235.

considerable harshness for their refusal to perform military duty; but no effort was made to interfere with the exercise of their religion.

In 1662, Charles Calvert, the son and heir of Lord Baltimore, came to reside in the colony. Money was coined at a colonial mint, a tonnage duty was imposed upon all vessels trading with the colony, and a state house was built in 1674, at a cost of forty thousand pounds of tobacco, or about five thousand dollars. By numerous acts of compromise between Lord Baltimore and the assembly the question of taxation was adjusted upon a satisfactory basis. The people assumed the expense of the provincial government, and agreed to the imposition of an export duty of two shillings per hogshead upon all the tobacco sent out of the colony. One-half of this duty was appropriated to the support of the government, and the remainder was assigned unconditionally to the

WILLIAM III.

uses of Lord Baltimore, as "an act of gratitude" for his care of the colony.

On the thirtieth of November, 1675, Cecil Calvert, second Lord Baltimore, died. He had been for fourteen years the earnest and devoted friend, as well as the generous lord of the province, and had lived long enough to enjoy the gratitude with which the colony sought to repay his judicious care. His memory is perpetuated by the chief city of Maryland, which bears his name, and which is already the largest city on the Atlantic coast, south of the Susequehanna, and the seventh in population in the United States. Charles Calvert, who had been for fourteen years governor of Maryland, succeeded to his father's titles and possessions, and in 1676 returned to England. Previous to his departure from Maryland he gave his sanction to the colonial code of laws, which had been thoroughly revised. One of these laws prohibited the "importation of convicted persons" into the colony without regard to the will of the king or Parliament of England.

Roman Catholics Disfranchised.

Notwithstanding the mild and equitable government of the third Lord Baltimore, the spirit of popular liberty was becoming too strong in the colony for the rule of the proprietor to be cheerfully acquiesced in much longer. The rebellion of Bacon in Virginia affected the Maryland colony profoundly, and when Lord Baltimore returned to the province in 1681, he found a large part of the people hostile to him. An attempt at insurrection was suppressed, but the seeds of trouble were too deeply sown not to spring up again.

The increase of the population had left the Roman Catholics in a small minority, so that Maryland was now to all intents and purposes a Protestant colony. During the latter part of the reign of Charles II. the Protestants, regardless of the wise policy of toleration which had hitherto marked the history of the province, endeavored to secure the establishment by law of the Church of England in Maryland. Lord Baltimore steadfastly resisted this unwise course, and maintained the freedom of conscience as the right of the people. He thus added to the existing opposition to his proprietary rule the hostility of the Protestant bigots. A little later, the English ministry struck the first blow at his proprietary rights and at the religious freedom of Maryland by ordering that all the offices of the colonial government should be bestowed upon Protestants alone. "Roman Catholics were disfranchised in the province which they had planted."

An Insurrection.

Lord Baltimore hoped that the succession of James II., a Catholic sovereign, would restore him the rights of which he had been deprived in his province; but he was soon undeceived, for the king, who intended to bring all the American colonies directly under the control of the crown, would make no exception in favor of Maryland, and measures were put in force for the abolition of the proprietary government. The revolution which placed William and Mary on the throne prevented the execution of these plans.

The troubles of Lord Baltimore were increased by the failure of the deputy-governor, whom he had left in Maryland, to acknowledge William and Mary promptly. In August, 1689, occurred an insurrection led by "The association in arms for the defence of the Protestant religion." The deputy-governor was driven from office, the proprietary government was overturned, and William and Mary were proclaimed sovereigns of Maryland. The party in power appealed to the king to annul the proprietary

charter, and governed the colony by means of a convention until the royal pleasure should be known. Lord Baltimore endeavored to defend his rights in spite of his struggles, William III., in June, 1691, annulled the charter of Maryland, and by the exercise of his own power constituted that colony a royal province.

In 1692, the king appointed Sir Lionel Copley Governor of Maryland. Upon his arrival in the colony he dissolved the convention and assumed the government. He at once summoned an assembly, which, recognizing William and Mary as the lawful sovereigns of Maryland, established the Church of England as the religion of the colony, and imposed taxes for its support. The capital was removed from St. Mary's to Annapolis, both because the old seat of government had become inconvenient and because it was desired to remove the government to the centre of Protestant influence. The disfranchisement of the Catholics advanced step by step. At first the dissenters from the established church were granted toleration and protection, but in 1704 the triumph of bigotry was complete. All the dissenting bodies were tolerated, but Roman Catholics were forbidden the exercise of their faith. Mass was not allowed to be said in public, nor was any bishop or clergyman of the Roman Catholic church to be permitted to seek to make converts for his faith. Other severe measures were enacted, and in the land which Catholics had settled, the members of that communion alone were denied the rights which in the day of their power they had offered to others. Nor did the royalist assembly manifest any care for the true interests of the province. Education was neglected; the establishment of printing was prohibited: and the domestic manufactures which the necessities of the colony had brought into existence were discouraged. In 1710 the population numbered over 30,000, free and slave.

In 1715 Benedict Charles Calvert, the fourth Lord Baltimore, succeeded in obtaining the restoration of his rights in Maryland, and the province passed into his hands. The people had been so disgusted with the rule of the royal governors that no opposition was made to this change. The new Lord Baltimore, unlike the rest of his family, was a Protestant, which was the cause of his restoration to his hereditary rights. After his restoration the colony increased with still greater rapidity. The establishment of a post route in 1695, between the Potomac and Philadelphia, had brought it into communication with the Northern colonies. In 1729 the town of Baltimore was founded. Frederick City was settled in 1745, and in 1751 was followed by Georgetown, now in the District of Columbia. In 1756 the population of the colony had increased to 154,188 souls, of whom over 40,000 were negroes. The increase in material prosperity was equally marked. By the last-mentioned year the annual export of tobacco was 30,000 hogsheads, and, in spite of the efforts of the home government to prevent it, there were eight furnaces and nine forges for smelting copper in operation in the province.

CHAPTER X

The Pilgrim Fathers

Rise of the Puritans—Their Increase in England—They Are Persecuted by the English Church and Government—Conduct of James I.—His Hatred of Puritanism—Puritans Take Refuge in Holland—The Congregation of John Robinson—They Escape to Holland—The Pilgrims—Their Sojourn at Leyden—They Wish to Emigrate to Virginia—Failure of Their Negotiations with the London Company—They Form a Partnership in England—A Hard Bargain—Departure of the Pilgrims from Holland—Voyage of the "Mayflower"—Arrival in New England—The Agreement on Board the "Mayflower"—Carver Chosen Governor—Settlement of Plymouth—The First Winter in New England—Sufferings of the Pilgrims—Arrival of New Emigrants—Continued Suffering—Assignment of Lands—Friendly Intercourse with Indians—Samoset and Squanto—Visit of Massasoit—A Threat of War—Bradford's Defiance—Weston's Men—A Narrow Escape—The Colonists Purchase the Interests of Their English Partners—Lands Assigned in Fee Simple—The Colony Benefited by the Change—Government of Plymouth—Steady Growth of the Colony.

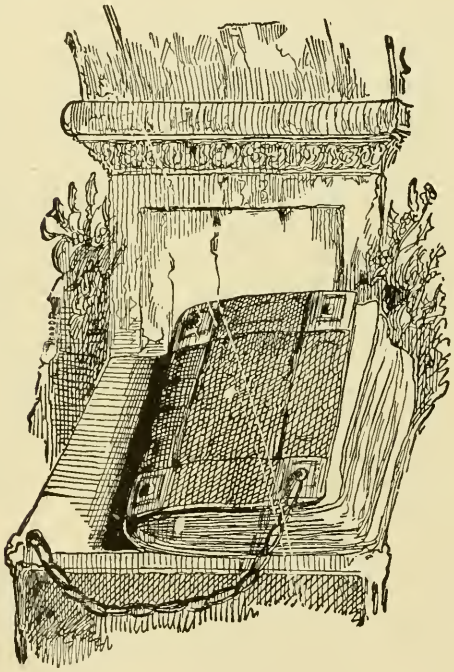
THE persecutions with which Queen Mary afflicted the reformers of England in her bloody effort to restore the Roman Catholic faith in that country caused many of the most eminent men of the English church to seek safety on the continent of Europe. Upon the accession of Elizabeth the Church of England became once more the religion of the state, and the reformers were free to return to their own country. They came back with broader and more liberal views than they had carried away with them, and there sprang up in the English church a party which demanded a purer and more spiritual form of worship than that of the church. These persons were called in derision *Puritans*. They adopted the name without hesitation, and soon made it an honorable distinction.

The queen, however, was determined to compel her subjects to conform to the established church, and was especially resolved to make them acknowledge her supremacy over the church. To the Puritan the worship of the Church of England was only less sinful than that of Rome, and to acknowledge the queen as the head of the church was to commit blasphemy. He claimed that the queen had no control over him in matters of religion, and that it was his right to worship God in his own way, without interference. The Puritans gradually came to embrace in their number some of the best men in the English church. These sincerely deprecated a separation from the church, and earnestly desired to carry the reformation to the extent of remedying the abuses of which they complained, and to remain in communion with the church. One of the reforms which they wished to inaugurate was the abolition of Episcopacy. Failing in their efforts, they desired to be let alone to form their own organizations and to worship God according to their own ideas, without the pale of the Church of England.

The queen and the bishops were not content to allow them this freedom. England had not yet learned the lesson of toleration, and severe measures were inaugurated to compel the dissenters to conform to the established church. All persons in the kingdom were required to conform to the ceremonies of the church. A refusal to do so was punished with banishment. Should any person so banished return to the kingdom without permission he was to be put to death. Accused persons were obliged to

answer upon oath all questions concerning themselves and their acquaintance, respecting their attendance upon public worship.

Ministers refusing to conform to the established usage were deprived of their parishes; and if they persisted in preaching to their congregations, or if the congregations were detected in listening to their deposed pastors, the offenders were fined or subjected to some severe punishment. Absence from the services of the church for a certain length of time was also punished. The persecution thus inaugurated drove many of the nonconformists, as they were termed, into exile from England. They fled to Holland and Switzerland, where alone they found "freedom to worship God." In spite of the severe measures and determined efforts of Elizabeth, the Puritans increased steadily in numbers and importance in England. Persecution only served to multiply them.



CHAINED BIBLE, TIME OF JAMES I.

They were hopeful that James I. would prove a more lenient sovereign to them than Elizabeth had been, and they had good ground for this hope. The real character of James was unknown in England, and while King of Scotland he had shown great favor to the Presbyterians of that kingdom, whom it was his interest to conciliate. He had once publicly thanked God "that he was king of such a kirk--the purest kirk in all the world. As for the Kirk of England," he added, "its service is an evil-said mass." This most contemptible of monarchs had scarcely become King of England when he uttered the famous maxim, "No bishop, no king!" Interest had made him the foe of Episcopacy in Scotland; the same motive made him its champion in England.

A Royal Demagogue.

Upon his entrance into his new kingdom, the Puritans met him with an humble petition for a redress of their grievances. James quickly saw that the majority of the English people favored a support of the church as it was, and had no sympathy with the Puritans, and he at once constituted himself the enemy of the petitioners. Still, in order to cover his desertion of the party to which he had belonged in Scotland, he appointed a conference at Hampton Court.

The conference was held in January, 1604, and the king, silencing all real debate, made the meeting merely the occasion of displaying what he regarded as his talents for theological controversy, and for announcing the decision he had resolved upon from the first. He demanded entire obedience to the church in matters of faith and worship. "I will have none of that liberty as to ceremonies," he declared. "I will have one doctrine, one discipline, one religion in substance and in ceremony. Never speak more as to how far you are bound to obey."

The Puritans then demanded permission to hold occasional ceremonies of their own, with the right of free discussions in them; but James, who could never tolerate the expression of any opinion adverse to his own, replied: "You are aiming at a Scot's presbytery, which agrees with monarchy as well as God and the devil. Then Jack and Tom and Will and Dick shall meet, and at their pleasure censure me and my council and all our proceedings. Then Will shall stand up and say, It must be thus. Then Dick shall reply and say, Nay, marry, but we will have it thus. And, therefore, here I must once more reiterate my former speech, and say, The king forbids." Then turning to the bishops, he added: "I will make them conform, or I will harry them out of the land, or else worse; only hang them; that's all."

Champions of Popular Liberty.

The king kept his word. The severe laws against the nonconformists were enforced that year with such energy that three hundred Puritan ministers are said to have been silenced, imprisoned or exiled. The church party proceeded in the next few years to still more rigorous measures, and were willing even to place the liberties of the nation at the mercy of the crown in order to compel the submission of the Puritans. The introduction of foreign publications into the kingdom was greatly restricted, and the press was placed under a severe censorship. The Puritans were thus forced to become the champions of popular liberty against the tyranny of the crown and the ecclesiastical party.

There was a congregation of Puritans in the north of England, composed of people of Lincolnshire and Nottinghamshire, with some from Yorkshire. The pastor was John Robinson, "a man not easily to be paralleled," who possessed in an unusual degree the love and confidence of his people. They were greatly harassed by the agents of the king and the bishops, and were subjected to such serious annoyances that it was with difficulty that they could hold their meetings. Finding it impossible to live in peace at home without doing violence to their consciences, they determined to leave England and seek refuge from persecution in Holland. That country was friendly to the English, and the Dutch had learned from their own sufferings to respect the rights of conscience in others.

It was not an easy matter to leave England, however, for it was held by the government to be almost a crime to attempt to escape from persecution. A vessel was hired to convey the refugees to Holland; but the royal officers were informed of the intended voyage, and seized the whole company as they were about to embark. Their persons were searched, their small possessions seized, and the whole church—men, women, and children—thrown into prison. In a short while all but seven were released. These were brought to trial, but it was found impossible to prove any crime against them, and they also were discharged.

A Boat Stranded.

This action of the government, so far from intimidating the sufferers, but increased their resolve to leave England, and in the spring of 1608 the effort was renewed. A Dutch captain consented to convey them to Holland, and it was agreed that the refugees should assemble upon a lonely heath in Lincolnshire, near the mouth of the Humber, and be taken on board by the Dutch skipper. The men of the party went to the rendezvous by land, and got safely on board the ship; but the boat conveying the women and children was stranded and captured by a party of horsemen sent in pursuit.

THE PURITANS IN CONFERENCE WITH JAMES I.

The Dutch skipper, fearful of becoming involved in trouble with the English authorities, at once put to sea, and the exiles were separated from their families, who were left helpless in the hands of their oppressors. The women and children were treated with great harshness by their captors, and were taken before the magistrates, who found it impossible to punish them for an attempt to follow the fortunes of their husbands and fathers. They were at loss to know what to do with the prisoners, who no longer had homes in England, and at last released them unconditionally, and permitted them to rejoin their natural protectors in Holland.

The Pilgrims Discontented.

The exiles reached Amsterdam in the spring of 1608. They were well pleased to be safe in this peaceful refuge, but they did not deceive themselves with the hope that it could ever be a home to them. "They knew they were PILGRIMS, and looked not much on those things, but lifted up their eyes to Heaven, their dearest country, and quieted their spirits." They found it hard to earn a support in Amsterdam, and in 1609 removed to Leyden, where, by their industry and frugality, they managed to live in comparative comfort. Their piety and exemplary conduct won for them the respect of the Dutch, who would have openly shown them marked favor but for their fear of offending the king of England. The magistrates of Leyden bore ready witness to their purity of life. "Never," said they, "did we have any suit or accusation against any of them."

In the course of time the Pilgrims were joined by a number of their brethren from England. They were nearly all accustomed to agricultural pursuits, and in Holland they were obliged to earn their bread by mechanical labors. It was with difficulty that they could do this, and they never formed any attachment to the place of their exile. They preserved, through all their trials, their affection for their native land, and cherished the hope that they might continue Englishmen to the close of their lives. They viewed with alarm the prospect of raising their children in Holland, where they would necessarily be thrown in constant contact with, and be influenced by, the manners and customs of the country.

Above all they dreaded the effect upon their children of the dissolute example of the disbanded soldiers and sailors who filled the country. These and other things made them unwilling to look upon Holland as their permanent home. But whither should they go in case of their departure from Holland? Their own country was closed against them, and the nations of continental Europe could offer them no asylum. As their conviction, that it was their duty to seek some other home, deepened, their thoughts became more irresistibly directed towards the new world. In the vast solitudes of the American continent, and there alone, they could establish a home in which they could worship God without fear or molestation, and rear their children in the ways that seemed to them good. Thither would they go.

Seeking a New Home.

They were anxious to make their venture under the protection of England, and declined the offers made them by the Dutch, who wished them to establish their colony as a dependency of Holland. They had heard of the excellent climate and fertile soil of Virginia, and it seemed best to them to choose that promising region as the scene of their experiment. It was necessary to obtain the consent of the London Company to their settlement, as Virginia had been granted to that body by the king of England; and in

1620

1617 two of the leading members of the congregation—John Carver and Robert Cushman—went to England to lay their application before the company.

They were kindly received by Sir Edwin Sandys, the secretary of the company. They laid before the directors the request for permission to form a settlement in Virginia, with which they had been charged by their brethren. The application was signed by the greater part of the congregation, and contained a statement of their principles, and their reasons for desiring to emigrate to America. "We verily believe that God is with us," said the petitioners, "and will prosper us in our endeavors; we are weaned from our mother country, and have learned patience in a hard and strange land. We are industrious and frugal; we are bound together by a sacred bond of the Lord, whereof we make great conscience, holding ourselves to each other's good. We do not wish ourselves home again; we have nothing to hope from England or Holland; we are men who will not be easily discouraged."

Efforts to Reach America.

The appeal of the Pilgrims was received with such favor by the London Company that Carver and Cushman ventured to petition the king to grant them liberty to exercise their religion unmolested in the wilds of America. The most that James would consent to grant them, however, was a half promise to pay no attention to them in their new home. The London Company agreed to grant them permission to settle in Virginia, but the dissensions of that body prevented anything from being done in their behalf.

The Pilgrims were too poor to defray the cost of their emigration, and they set to work to find persons of means willing to assist them. At length they were successful, and a company was formed consisting of themselves and several merchants of London. The latter were to advance the funds necessary for the enterprise, while the former were to contribute their entire services for a period of seven years as their share of the stock of the company. At the end of seven years the profits of the enterprise were to be divided according to the amount of each one's investment; and it was agreed that a contribution of ten pounds in money by a merchant should be entitled to as great a share of the profits as seven years of labor on the part of the emigrant.

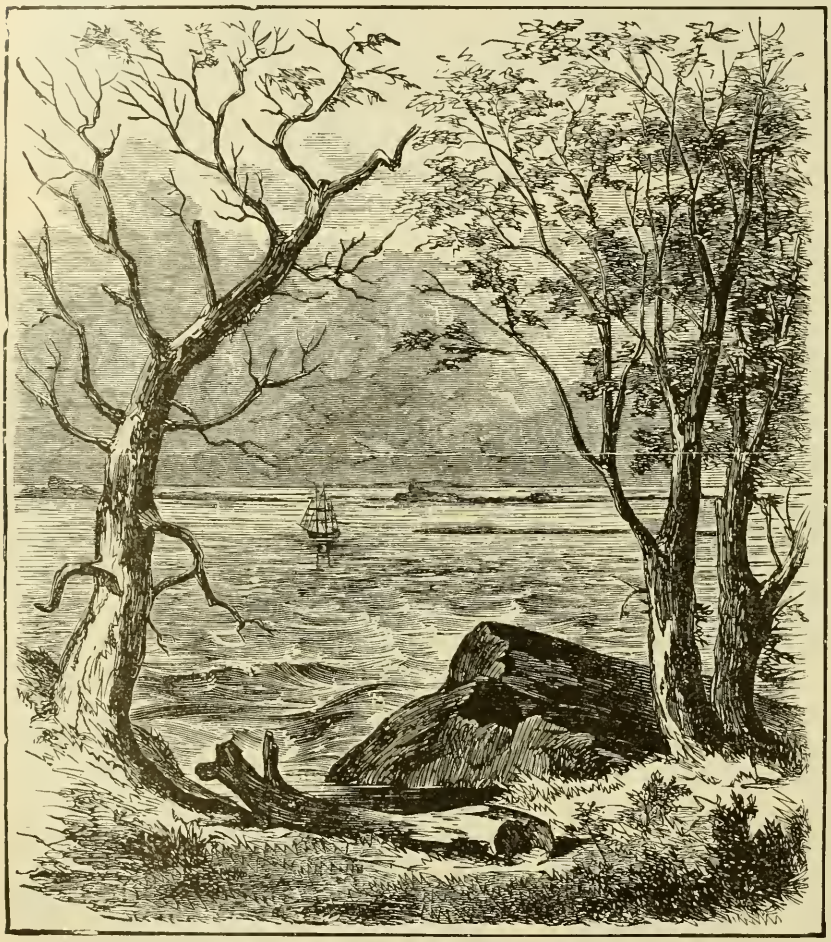
Departure for the New World.

These were hard terms for the Pilgrims, but they were the best they could obtain, and they were accepted, as the exiles were willing to suffer any sacrifice in order to be able to found a community of their own in which they could bring up their children in the fear of God. The main thing with them was to reach the shores of America. Once there these men who had learned the lessons of self-denial and endurance did not doubt their ability to succeed even in the face of the heavy disadvantages they were obliged to assume.

With the funds thus obtained the Pilgrims began to prepare for their departure. A ship of sixty tons, called the "Speedwell," was purchased, and another, of one hundred and eighty tons, called the "Mayflower," was chartered. These, however, could transport but a part of the congregation, and it was resolved to send out at first only "such of the youngest and strongest as freely offered themselves." The pastor, Robinson, and the aged and infirm were to remain at Leyden until their brethren could send for them, and the colony was placed under the guidance of William Brewster, the governing elder, who was an able teacher and much

respected and beloved for his noble character.

When all was in readiness, a day of fasting and prayer was held, in order that at the very beginning of their enterprise the Pilgrims might invoke the guidance and protection of God. "Let us seek of God," they said, "a right way for us, and for our little ones, and for all of our substance." The venerable pastor made this solemn season the occasion of delivering a tender farewell to the members of his charge who were about to depart, and of appealing to them to be true to the principles of their religion in their new home.



THE "MAYFLOWER" IN PLYMOUTH HARBOR.

"I charge you before God and his blessed angels," he said, in tones of deep emotion, "that you follow me no further than you have seen me follow the Lord Jesus Christ. If God reveal anything to you, be ready to receive it; for I am verily persuaded that the Lord has more truth yet to break out of his holy word. I beseech you, remember that it is an article of your church covenant, that you be ready to receive whatever truth shall be made known to you from the written word of God. Take heed what ye receive as truth; examine it, consider it, and compare it with other scriptures of truth before you receive it; the Christian world has not yet come to the perfection of knowledge."

From Leyden a number of the brethren accompanied the emigrants to Delft Haven, from which port they were to sail. The night before their departure, they all assembled in prayer and religious exercises, which were continued until the dawn, when they prepared to go on board the ship. Arrived at the shore, they knelt again, and the pastor, Robinson, led them in prayer—the emigrants listening to his voice for the last time on earth. "And so," says Edward Winslow, "lifting up our hands to each other, and

our hearts to the Lord our God, we departed."

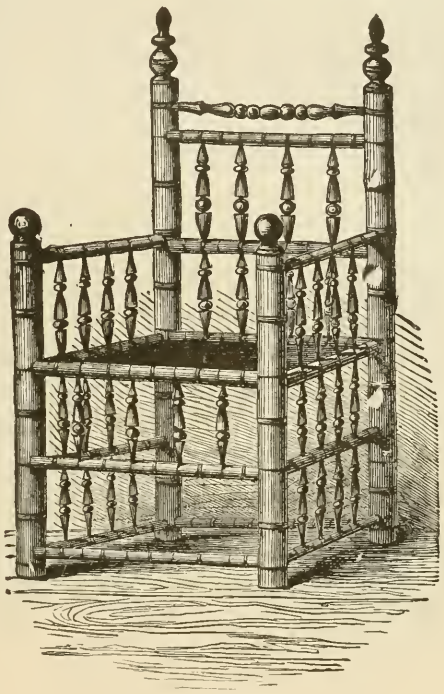
Southampton was soon reached, and the voyagers were transferred to the "Mayflower" and the "Speedwell." On the fifth of August, 1620, those vessels sailed from Southampton for America. Soon after getting to sea, it was discovered that the "Speedwell" was in need of repairs, and that they must return to England. They put about and reached the port of Dartmouth, where the smaller vessel was repaired. Eight days were consumed in this undertaking, and the voyage was resumed.

One Ship Abandoned.

They were scarcely out of sight of land when the commander of the "Speedwell," alarmed by the dangers of the voyage, declared that his ship was not strong enough to cross the ocean. The vessels at once put back to Plymouth, where the smaller ship was discharged. At the same time those who had grown faint-hearted were permitted to withdraw from the expedition. The remainder of the company, to the number of one hundred and one, sailed from Plymouth in the "Mayflower," on the sixth of September, 1620. Some of these were women well advanced in pregnancy, and some were children. Their little vessel was but a frail barque compared with the ships that now navigate the sea; but a band of braver and more resolute souls never trusted themselves to the mercies of the stormy Atlantic.

The leading man in the little band of Pilgrims was the ruling elder, William Brewster, who was to be their preacher until the arrival of a regularly chosen pastor. He was a man of fine education, refined and scholarly tastes, and of pure and lofty Christian character. "He laid his hand," says Elliott, "to the daily tasks of life, as well as spent his soul in trying to benefit his fellows —so bringing himself as near as possible to the early Christian practices; he was worthy of being the first minister of New England." He was well advanced in life, and was looked up to with affectionate regard by his associates.

Another was John Carver, also a man of years and ripe experience, who had sacrificed his fortune to the cause, and whose dignified and benevolent character won him the honor of being chosen the first chief magistrate of the colony.



GOVERNOR BREWSTER'S CHAIR.

Prominent among the leaders was William Bradford. He was only thirty-two, but was a man of earnest and resolute character, firm and true, "a man of nerve and public spirit." He had begun life as a farmer's boy in England, and in Holland had supported himself by practising the art of dyeing; but, in spite of his constant labors, he had educated himself and had managed to accumulate books of his own. He systematically devoted a large

part of his time to study, and thus carefully trained his great natural abilities.

Edward Winslow, a man of sweet and amiable disposition, was twenty-six years old. He was a gentleman by birth, and had been well educated, and had acquired considerable information and experience by travel.

Miles Standish had attained the manly age of thirty-six, and was a veteran soldier. He had seen service in the wars of the continent of Europe, and had gained an honorable distinction in them. He was not a member of the church, but was strongly attached to its institutions.

"With the people of God he had chosen to suffer affliction;
In return for his zeal, they made him Captain of Plymouth;
He was a man of honor, of noble and generous nature;
Though he was rough, he was kindly . . . .
Somewhat hasty and hot . . . . and headstrong,
Stern as a soldier might be, but hearty and placable always,
Not to be laughed at and scorned, because he was little of stature;
For he was great of heart, magnanimous, courtly, courageous."

Tempestuous Voyage.

The voyage of the "Mayflower" was long and stormy. The Pilgrims had selected the country near the mouth of the Hudson as the best region for their settlement, but a severe storm drove them northward to the coast of New England. Sixty-three days were consumed in the passage, during which, one of their number had died, and at length land was made, and two days later, the "Mayflower" cast anchor in the harbor of Cape Cod.

The Pilgrims had come to America at their own risk and without the sanction of, or a charter from, the king or any lawful organization in England. They were thrown upon their own resources, and could look to no quarter for protection or support. Appreciating the necessity of an organized government, their first acts after anchoring in Cape Cod bay were to organize themselves into a body politic and to form a government.

The First Compact.

The following compact was drawn up in the cabin of the "Mayflower," and was signed by all the men of the colony, to the number of forty-one: "In the name of God, amen; we whose names are underwritten, the loyal subjects of our dread sovereign King James, having undertaken, for the glory of God and advancement of the Christian faith, and honor of our king and country, a voyage to plant the first colony in the northern parts of Virginia, do, by these presents, solemnly and mutually, in the presence of God and of one another, covenant and combine ourselves together, in a civil body politic, for our better ordering and preservation, and furtherance of the ends aforesaid; and by virtue hereof, to enact, constitute and frame such just and equal laws, ordinances, acts, constitutions and offices, from time to time, as shall be thought most convenient for the general good of the colony, unto which we promise all due submission and obedience."

This was the first constitution of New England, democratic in form, and resting upon the consent of the governed. It at once established the new commonwealth upon the basis of constitutional liberty, and secured to the people "just and equal laws" for the "general good." In virtue of the compact, John Carver was chosen governor of the colony for the ensuing year.

The prospect which presented itself to the Pilgrims upon their arrival at Cape Cod might well have daunted even their resolute souls. It was the opening of the winter, and they had come to a barren and rugged coast.

The climate was severe, and the land was a wilderness. The English colony in Virginia was five hundred miles distant, and to the north of them the nearest white settlement was the French colony at Port Royal. The "Mayflower" was only chartered to convey them to America, and must return to England as soon as they had chosen a site and established a settlement. Yet no one faltered. The new land was reached, the difficulties and dangers were such as could be overcome by patience and fortitude, and the Pilgrims without hesitation addressed themselves to the task before them.

Planting the Colony.

The first thing to be done was to explore the coast and choose a site for the colony, for it was important to begin their settlement before the severity of the winter should render such an effort impossible. The shallop was gotten out, but unfortunately it was found to need repairs. The ship's carpenter worked so slowly that nearly three weeks were spent in this task. This delay was a great misfortune at this advanced season of the year, and, some of the party becoming impatient, it was resolved to go ashore in the ship's boat and explore the country by land. A party of sixteen men was detailed for this purpose, and placed under the command of Captain Miles Standish. William Bradford, Stephen Hopkins and Edward Tilly were included in the party as a council of war. The explorers were given numerous instructions, and were rather permitted than ordered to go upon their journey, which was regarded as perilous, and the time of their absence was limited to two days.

Upon reaching the shore they followed it for about a mile, when they discovered several Indians watching them from a distance. The savages fled as soon as they saw they were observed, and the whites followed in pursuit. They struck the trail of the retreating Indians, and followed it until nightfall, but being encumbered by the weight of their armor and impeded by the tangled thickets through which they had to pass, they were unable to overtake the Indians. The explorers bivouacked that night by a clear

LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS.

spring, whose waters refreshed them after their fatiguing march. They made few discoveries, but the expedition was not entirely unprofitable.

An Indian Graveyard.

In one place they found a deer-trap, made by bending a young tree to the earth, with a noose underground covered with acorns. Mr. Bradford was caught by the foot in this snare, which occasioned much merriment.

An Indian graveyard was discovered in another place, and in one of the graves there was an earthen pot, a mortar, a bow and some arrows, and other rude implements. These were carefully replaced by the whites, who respected the resting-place of the dead. The most important discovery was the finding of a cellar or pit carefully lined with bark, and covered over with a heap of sand, and containing about four bushels of seed corn in ears. As much of this as the men could carry was secured, and it was determined to pay the owners of the corn for it as soon as they could be found.

Searching the Neighborhood.

The shallop being finished at length, a party, consisting of Carver, Bradford, Winslow, Standish and others, with eight or ten seamen, was sent out on a second expedition on the sixth of December. The weather was very cold, and their clothing, drenched with spray, froze as stiff as iron armor. They reached the bottom of Cape Cod bay that day, and landed, instructing the people in the shallop to follow them along the shore. The next day they divided, and searched the neighborhood. They found a number of Indian graves, and some deserted wigwams, but saw no signs of the inhabitants of the country. That night they encamped near Namtasket, or Great Meadow Creek. On the morning of the eighth of December, just as they had finished their prayers, the explorers were startled by a war-whoop and a flight of arrows. The Indians, who were of the tribe of the Nausites, were put to flight by the discharge of a few guns. Some of their people had been kidnapped by the English a few years before, and hence they regarded the new-comers as bent on the same errand.

The day was spent in searching for a safe harbor for the ship, and at nightfall a violent storm of rain and snow drove them through the breakers into a small cove sheltered from the gale by a hill. They were so wet and chilled that they landed at once, and, regardless of the danger of drawing the savages upon them, built a fire with great difficulty, in order to keep from perishing with the cold. When the morning dawned they found that they were on an island at the entrance to a harbor. The day was spent in rest and preparations.

The next day, December 10th, was the Sabbath, and, notwithstanding the need of prompt action, they spent it in rest and religious exercises. The next day, December 11, 1620, old style, or December 22d, according to our present system, the exploring party of the Pilgrims landed at the head of the harbor they had discovered. The rock upon which their footsteps were first planted is still preserved by their descendants. The place was explored and chosen as the site of the settlement, and was named Plymouth, in memory of the last English town from which the Pilgrims had sailed.

Anchored at Plymouth.

The adventurers hastened back to the ship, which stood across the bay, and four days later cast anchor in Plymouth harbor. No time was to be lost; the "Mayflower" must soon return to England, and the emigrants must have some shelter over their heads before her departure. To save time each man was allowed to build his own house. This was a most arduous task. Many of the men were almost broken down by their exposure to the cold, and some had already contracted the fatal diseases which were to carry them to the grave before the close of the winter. Still they persevered, working bravely when the absence of rain and snow would permit them to do so.

As the winter deepened, the sickness and mortality of the colony increased. At one

time there were but seven well men in the company. More than forty of the settlers died during the winter. John Carver, the good governor of the colony, buried his son, and himself soon succumbed to the hardships from which he had never shrunk, though never able to endure them. He was followed by his heart-broken widow. The wives of Bradford and Winslow, and Rose Standish, the sweet young bride of "the Captain of Plymouth" were also among the victims. They were all buried on the shore near the rock on which they had landed, and lest their graves should tell the Indians of the sufferings and weakness of the settlement, their resting-place was levelled and sown with grass. William Bradford was chosen governor in the place of Carver, and the work went on with firmness and without repining.

At last the long winter drew to a close, and the balmy spring came to cheer the settlers with its bright skies and warm breezes. The sick began to recover, and the building of the settlement was completed. In course of time a large shed was erected for the public stores, and a small hospital for the sick. A church was also built. It was made stronger than the other buildings, as it was to serve as a fortress as well as a place of worship, and four cannon were mounted on top of it for defence against the savages. Here they assembled on the Sabbath for religious worship, and to hear the word of God from the lips of their pastor, the good Elder Brewster. In the spring the ground was prepared for cultivation, but until the harvest was grown the colonists lived by fishing and hunting.

THE FIRST CHURCH IN NEW ENGLAND.

No Wish to Leave the Wilderness.

In March, 1621, the "Mayflower" sailed for England. Not one of the Pilgrims wished to return in her. They had their trials, and these were sore and heavy, but they had also made a home and a government for themselves, where they could enjoy the benefits and protection of their own laws, and worship God in safety and in peace. They did not doubt that they would some day triumph over their difficulties, and that God would in His own good time crown their labors and their patience with success.

In the autumn of 1621, a reinforcement of new emigrants arrived. They brought no provisions, and were dependent upon the scanty stock of the colony, and the increased

demand upon this soon brought the settlers face to face with the danger of famine. For six months no one received more than half allowance, and this was frequently reduced. "I have seen men," says Winslow, "stagger by reason of faintness for want of food." On one occasion the whole company would have perished but for the kindness of some fishermen, who relieved their wants.

Every Man for Himself.

This scarcity of provisions continued for several years, and it was not until the end of the fourth year of the settlement that the colonists had anything like a proper supply of food. In that year neat cattle were introduced into Plymouth. None of the colonies were called upon to endure such privations as were suffered by the Pilgrims. Yet they bore them with unshaken fortitude, still trusting that God would give them a pleasanter lot in the end.

The conditions of the contract with the English merchants had required the labor of the colonists to be thrown into the common stock. This was found to be an unprofitable arrangement, and in 1623 it was agreed that each settler should plant for himself, and each family was assigned a parcel of land in proportion to its numbers, to cultivate, but "not for an inheritance." This arrangement gave great satisfaction and the colonists went to work with such a will that after this season there was no scarcity of food. In the spring of 1624 each colonist was given a little land in fee. The very existence of the colony demanded this departure from the hard bargain with the English merchants, and the result justified the measure. Abundant harvests rewarded the labors of the settlers, and corn soon became so plentiful that the colonists were able to supply the savages with it. These, preferring the chase to the labor of the field, brought in game and skins to Plymouth and received corn in return.

In the meantime a friendly intercourse had sprung up between the settlers and the Indians. In the first year of the settlement the red men were seen hovering upon the outskirts of the village, but they fled upon the approach of the whites. Distant columns of smoke, rising beyond the woods, told that the savages were close at hand, and it was deemed best to organize the settlers into a military company, the command of which was given to Miles Standish. One day, in March, 1621, the whole village was startled by the appearance of an Indian, who boldly entered the settlement, and greeted the whites with the friendly words, "Welcome, Englishmen! Welcome, Englishmen!"

A Romantic History.

He was kindly received, and it was found that he was Samoset, and had learned a little English of the fishermen at Penobscot. He belonged to the Wampanoags, a tribe occupying the country north of Narragansett Bay and between the rivers of Providence and Taunton. He told them that they might possess the lands they had taken in peace, as the tribe to which they had belonged had been swept away by a pestilence the year before the arrival of the Pilgrims. He remained one night with the settlers, who gave him a knife, a ring, and a bracelet, and then went back to his people, promising to return soon and bring other Indians to trade with them. In a few days he came back, bringing with him Squanto, the Indian who had been kidnapped by Hunt and sold in Spain.

From that country Squanto had escaped to England, where he had learned the language. He had managed to return to his own country, and now appeared to act as interpreter to the English in their intercourse with his people. They announced

that Massasoit, the sachem of the Wampanoags, desired to visit the colony. The chieftain was received with all the ceremony the little settlement could afford. Squanto acted as interpreter, and a treaty of friendship was arranged between Massasoit on behalf of his people and the English.

Friendly Agreement.

The parties to the agreement promised to treat each other with kindness and justice, to deliver up offenders, and to assist each other when attacked by their enemies. This treaty was faithfully observed by both parties for fifty years. The Pilgrims expressed their willingness to pay for the baskets of corn that had been taken by their first exploring party, and this they did six months later, when the rightful owners presented themselves. A trade with the Indians was established and furs were brought into Plymouth by them and sold for articles of European manufacture.

THE TREATY BETWEEN PLYMOUTH COLONY AND MASSASOIT.

Squanto was the faithful friend of the colony to the end of his life, and was regarded by the Pilgrims as "a special instrument sent of God for their good beyond their expectation." He taught them the Indian method of planting corn and putting fish with it to fertilize the ground, and where to find and how to catch fish and game. He showed them his friendship in many ways, and was during his lifetime the interpreter of the colony. The Pilgrims on their part were not ungrateful to him.

On one occasion it was rumored in Plymouth that Squanto had been seized by the Narragansetts, and had been put to death. A party of ten men at once marched into the forest, and surprised the hut where the chief of the Narragansetts was. Although the tribe could bring five thousand warriors into the field, the chief was overawed by the determined action of the English, whose firearms gave them a great superiority, and Squanto was released unharmed. On his death-bed Squanto, who had been carefully nursed by his white friends, asked the governor to pray that he might go to "the Englishman's God in Heaven." His death was regarded as a serious misfortune to the colony.

The Great Chief Massasoit.

Massasoit, whose tribe had been greatly reduced by pestilence, desired the alliance of the English as a protection against the Narragansetts, who had escaped the scourge, and whose chief, Canonicus, was hostile to him.

The Narragansetts lived upon the shores of the beautiful bay to which they have given their name, and were a powerful and warlike race. Canonicus regarded the English with hostility, and in 1622 sent them as a defiance a bundle of arrows wrapped in the skin of a rattlesnake.

Governor Bradford received the challenge from the hands of the chieftain's messenger, and stuffing the skin with powder and ball returned it to him, and sternly bade him bear it back to his master. The Indians regarded the mysterious contents of the skin with terror and dread, and passed it from tribe to tribe. None dared either keep or destroy it, as it was regarded as possessed of some mysterious but powerful influence for harm. It was finally returned to the colony, and in a short while Canonicus, who had been cowed by the spirited answer of Bradford, offered to make a treaty of peace and alliance with the colony.

The Pilgrims endeavored to treat the Indians with justice. Severe penalties were denounced against those who should deprive the savages of their property without paying for it, or should treat them with violence. Yet the colonists were to have trouble with the red men, and that through no fault of their own. It happened on this wise.

A Timely Warning.

Among the merchants of London who had invested money in the planting of the Plymouth colony was Thomas Weston. Envious of the advance made by the colony in the fur trade, he desired to secure all the profits of that traffic by establishing a trading-post of his own. He obtained a patent for a small tract on Boston harbor, near Weymouth, and settled there a colony of sixty men, the greater number of whom were indentured servants. These men, disregarding the warnings of the people of Plymouth, gave themselves up to a dissolute life, and drew upon themselves the wrath of the Indians by maltreating them, and stealing their corn. The Indians, unable to distinguish between the guilty and the innocent, resolved to avenge the misconduct of Weston's men by a massacre of every white settler in the country.

Before the plot could be put in execution Massasoit fell sick. Winslow visited him, and found his lodge full of medicine-men and jugglers, who were killing him with the noise they made to drive away the disease. The kind-hearted Englishman turned the Indian doctors out of the lodge, and by giving Massasoit rest, and administering such remedies as his case required, restored him to health. The grateful chief revealed the plot of his people for the extermination of the English. The Plymouth settlers were greatly alarmed, and measures were promptly taken to avert the danger.

Nine White Braves.

Standish, with eight armed men, was sent to the assistance of the settlement at Weymouth. They arrived in time to prevent the attack. The Indians, who had begun to collect for the massacre, were surprised and defeated in a brief engagement, and the chief, who was the leader of the conspiracy, was slain, with a number of his men. This gallant exploit established the supremacy of the English in New England, and many of the native tribes sought their friendship and alliance. The Weymouth men were unwilling to continue their colony after their narrow escape. Some went to Plymouth where they became a source of trouble, and others returned to England. The spring of 1623 saw the last of this settlement.

In the autumn of 1623 the best harvest was gathered in that had yet blessed the labors of the Pilgrims. It was an abundant

yield, and put an end to all fears of a renewal of the danger of famine. When the labors of the harvest were over Governor Bradford sent out men to collect game, in order that the people might enjoy a thanksgiving feast. On the appointed day the people "met together and thanked God with all their hearts for the good world and the good things in it." Thus was established the custom of an annual thanksgiving to God for the blessings of the year, which though at first a celebration peculiar to New England has at length become a national festival.

Each Settler a Land Owner.

The colonists themselves were satisfied with the progress they had made, but their merchant partners in England were greatly displeased with the smallness of the profits they had received from their investments, and in many ways made the colony feel their dissatisfaction. Robinson and his congregation at Leyden were anxious to join their friends in America, but the merchant partners refused to send them across the Atlantic, and not content with this endeavored to force upon the Plymouth people a pastor friendly to the Church of England. They soon got rid of this individual, however, whose conduct quickly enabled them to expel him from Plymouth as an evil liver. The merchants also sent a vessel to New England to oppose the colonists in the fur trade; and demanded exorbitant prices for the goods they sold the settlers, charging them the enormous profit of seventy per cent.

It was not possible, however, to destroy the results of the industry and self-denial of the Pilgrims. Seeing that their association with their English partners would continue to operate merely as a drag upon the advance of the colony, they managed in 1627, at considerable sacrifice, to purchase the entire interest of their partners. The stock and the land of the colony were then divided equitably among the settlers, and the share of each man became his own private property. Each settler was thus made the owner of a piece of land which it was to his interest to improve to the highest degree possible. Freed from the burdens under which it had labored for so long, the colony began to increase in prosperity and in population.

The government of the Pilgrims was simple, but effective. They had no charter, and were from the first driven upon their own resources. They had a governor who was chosen by the votes of all the settlers. In 1624 a council of five was given him, and in 1633 this number was increased to seven. The council assisted the governor in the exercise of his duties, and imposed a check upon his authority, as in its meetings he had merely a double vote. The whole number of male settlers for eighteen years constituted the legislative body. They met at stated times, and enacted such laws as were necessary for the welfare of the colony. The people were frequently convened by the governor, in the earlier years of the settlement, to aid him with their advice upon difficult questions brought before them. When the colony increased in population, and a number of towns were included within its limits, each town sent representatives to a general court at Plymouth.

If the colony grew slowly, it grew steadily, and at length the Pilgrims had their reward in seeing their little settlement expand into a flourishing province, in which the principles of civil freedom were cherished, religion honored, and industry and economy made the basis of the wealth of the little state.

CHAPTER XI

Settlement of Massachusetts and Rhode Island

Settlement of New Hampshire—The English Puritans Determine to Form a New Colony in America—The Plymouth Council—A Colony Sent Out to Salem under Endicott—Colonization of Massachusetts Bay Begun—A Charter Obtained —Concessions of the King—Progress of the Salem Colony—The Charter and Government of the Colony Removed to New England—Arrival of Governor Winthrop—Settlement of Boston—Sufferings of the Colonists—Roger Williams —His Opinions Give Offence to the Authorities—The Success of the Bay Colony Established—Growth of Popular Liberty—The Ballot Box—Banishment of Roger Williams—He Goes into the Wilderness—Founds Providence—Growth of Williams' Colony—Continued Growth of Massachusetts—Arrival of Sir Henry Vane—Is Elected Governor —Mrs. Aune Hutchinson—The Antinomian Controversy—Mrs. Hutchinson Banished—Settlement of Rhode Island—Murder of Mrs. Hutchinson.

THE success of the Pilgrims in establishing the Plymouth colony aroused a feeling of deep interest in England, and some of those who had watched the effort were encouraged to attempt ventures of their own. Sir Ferdinand Gorges, who had taken a deep interest in the schemes to settle the new world, and John Mason, the secretary of the council of Plymouth, obtained a patent for the region called Laconia, which comprised the whole country between the sea, the St. Lawrence, the Merrimac and the Kennebec, and now embraced partly in Maine and partly in New Hampshire. A company of English merchants was formed, and in 1623 permanent colonies were established at Portsmouth, Dover and one or two other places near the mouth of the Piscataqua. These were small, feeble settlements, and were more trading-posts than towns.

For many years their growth was slow, and it was not until other parts of New England were well peopled and advanced far beyond their early trials that they began to show signs of prosperity. In 1653, thirty years after its settlement, Portsmouth contained only "between fifty and sixty families." The settlers of these towns were not all Puritans, and their colonies had not the religious character of those of the rest of New England. In 1641, they were annexed at their own request to the province of Massachusetts, the general court having agreed not to require the freemen and deputies to be church members.

In the meantime the news of the successful planting of Plymouth was producing other and more important results in England. The persecutions of the Non-conformists, which marked the entire reign of James I., were continued through that of his son and successor, Charles I. The Puritans, sorely distressed by the tyranny to which they were subjected, listened with eagerness to the accounts of America which were sent over by the members of the Plymouth colony, and published from time to time in England. The descriptions of the Pilgrims were not exaggerated. They did not promise either fame or sudden wealth to settlers in their province, but clearly set forth the cares and labors which were to be the price of success in America.

They dwelt with especial emphasis, however, upon that which was in their eyes the chief reward of all their toil and suffering—the ability to exercise their religion without

restraint. Their brethren in England heard their accounts with a longing to be with them to enjoy the freedom with which they were blessed, and it was not long before a number of English Non-conformists began to concert measures for making New England a place of refuge for the persecuted members of their faith. The leading spirit in these enterprises was the Rev. Mr. White, a minister of Dorsetshire, a Puritan, but not a Separatist. Regarding the vicinity of the present town of Salem as the most suitable place for colonization, he exerted himself with energy to secure it for his brethren.

In the meantime the Plymouth Company had ceased to exist, and its place had been taken by the council of Plymouth. That body cared for New England only as a source of profit, and sold the territory of that region to a number of purchasers, assigning the same district to different people, and thus paving the way for vexatious litigation. In 1628, it sold to a company of gentlemen of Dorchester, which White's energy had succeeded in bringing into existence, a district extending from three miles south of Massachusetts Bay to three miles north of the Merrimac River. As was usual in all grants of the day, the Pacific was made the western boundary of this region.

This company was at once prepared to send out a colony, and in the early summer of that year one hundred persons under John Endicott, as governor, were despatched to New England. Endicott took his family with him, and in September, 1628, reached New England, and established the settlement of Salem, the site of which was already occupied by a few men whom White had placed there to hold it. Endicott, who was a man

JOHN ENDICOTT.

of undaunted courage and acknowledged integrity of character, soon established his authority over the few settlements that had sprung up along the shores of the bay. At this time the site of Charlestown was occupied by an Englishman named Thomas Walford, a blacksmith, who had fortified his cabin with a palisade. The only dweller on the

tri-mountain peninsula of Shawmut was the Rev. William Blackstone, a clergyman of the Church of England; the island now known as East Boston was occupied by Samuel Maverick. At Nantasket and a few places farther south some Englishmen had located themselves, and lived by fishing and trading in skins: and on the site of Quincy was the wreck of a colony which had nearly perished in consequence of its evils ways. These, with the settlement at Salem, constituted the colony of Massachusetts Bay.

Arrivals at Salem.

Soon after the departure of Endicott's colony from England, the company, acting upon the advice of their counsel, obtained from the king a confimation of their grant. In March, 1629, the king granted to the colony of Massachusetts Bay a charter under which it conducted its affairs for more than fifty years. By the terms of this charter the governor was to be elected by the freemen for the term of one year, provision was made for the assembling at stated times of a general court, which was to have the power to make all the needed laws for the colony, and it was not necessary that these laws should receive the royal signature in order to be valid. This was conceding practical independence to the colony.

In the spring of 1629, a second company of emigrants sailed from England for Massachusetts. They were, like the first, all Puritans, and took with them, as their minister, the Rev. Francis Higginson, formerly of Jesus College, Cambridge, a man of learning and deep piety. The colonists were instructed to do no violence to the Indians. "If any of the salvages," so read the company's orders, "pretend right of inheritance to all or any part of the lands granted in our patent, endeavor to purchase their tytle, that we may avoid the least scruple of intrusion." Six shipwrights were sent over for the use of the colony, an experienced engineer to lay out a fortified town, and a master gunner, who was to teach the men of the colony the use of arms and military exercises. Cattle and horses and goats were sent out also.

The voyage was prosperous, and the new settlers reached Salem about the last of June. They found the settlement in a feeble condition, and greatly in need of their assistance. The old and the new colonists numbered about three hundred. The majority of these remained at Salem, and the rest were sent by Endicott to establish a colony at Charlestown, in order to secure that place from occupation by the partisans of Sir Ferdinand Gorges, who claimed the region. The emigrants were scrupulous to acquire from the Indians the right to the lands they occupied. The twelfth of July was observed as a day of fasting and prayer "for the choice of a pastor and teacher at Salem." No one advanced any claim founded on his ordination in England; personal fitness was the only qualification recognized by the Puritans. Samuel Skelton was chosen pastor, and Francis Higginson teacher.

The Brownes Cast Out.

Three or four of the gravest members of the church laid their hands upon the heads of these men, with prayer, and solemnly appointed them to their respective offices. "Thus the church, like that of Plymouth, was self-constituted, on the principle of the independence of each religious community. It did not ask the assent of the king, or recognize him as its head; its officers were set apart and ordained among themselves; it used no liturgy; it rejected unnecessary ceremonies, and reduced the simplicity of Calvin to a still plainer standard. The motives which controlled its decisions were

so deeply seated that its practices were repeated spontaneously by Puritan New England." An opposition to the organization of the church was attempted by a party led by John and Samuel Browne, men of ability; but this was treated as a mutiny and put down, and the Brownes were sent back to England.

The charter of Massachusetts, though it made liberal concessions to the colony, contained no provision for the rights of the people, who were left at the mercy of the company. For the proper government of the colony, it was necessary to remove the charter to Massachusetts, and such a removal was advisable on another ground. The charter contained no guarantee for the religious freedom of the colony, and the king might at any moment seek to interfere with this, the most precious right of the Puritans. The only way to escape the evils which the company had reason to dread was for the governing council to change its place of meeting from England to Massachusetts, which the provisions of the charter gave it authority to do.

An Independent Colony.

On the twenty-sixth of August, 1629, John Winthrop, Isaac Johnson, Thomas Dudley, Richard Saltonstall and eight others, men of fortune and education, met at Cambridge and bound themselves by a solemn agreement to settle in New England if the whole government of the colony, together with the patent, should be legally transferred to that region before the end of September. On the twenty-ninth of the month, the court took the decisive step and ordered that "the government and patent should be settled in New England." This was a bold step, but its legality was not contested by any one, and it made the government of the colony independent of control by any power in England.

The officers of the colony were to be a governor and eighteen assistants. On the twentieth of October, a meeting of the court was held to choose them, and John Winthrop was elected governor for one year. It was a fortunate selection, for Winthrop proved himself for many years the very mainstay of the colony, sustaining his companions by his calm courage, and setting them a noble example in his patience, his quiet heroism and his devotion to the welfare of others. He seemed to find his greatest pleasure in doing good, and his liberality acted as a check upon the bigotry of his associates and kept them in paths of greater moderation.

JOHN WINTHROP.

Efforts were made to send over new settlers to Massachusetts, and about a thousand emigrants, with cattle, horses and goats, were transported thither in the season of 1630.

Early in April, Governor Winthrop and about seven hundred emigrants sailed from England in a fleet of eleven ships. Many of them were "men of high endowments and large fortune; scholars, well versed in the learning of the times; clergymen who ranked among the best educated and most pious in the realm."

Death Among the Settlers.

They reached Salem on the twelfth of June, after a voyage of sixty-one days, and were gladly welcomed by the settlers, whom they found in great distress from sickness and a scarcity of provisions. About eighty had died during the winter, and many were sick. There was scarcely a fortnight's supply of food in the settlement, and it was necessary to send one of the ships back to England at once for a supply of provisions.

Salem did not please the new-comers, and settlements were made at Lynn, Charlestown, Newtown, Dorchester, Roxbury, Malden and Watertown. The governor and a large part of the emigrants settled first at Charlestown, but at length, in order to obtain better water, crossed over and occupied the little tri-mountain peninsula of Shawmut. To this settlement was given the name of Boston, in honor of the town in Lincolnshire in England, which had been the home of the Rev. John Wilson, who became the pastor of the first church of Boston. The location was central to the whole province, and Boston became the seat of government. When the year for which the first colonial officers had been chosen expired a new election was held, and Governor Winthrop and all the old officials were re-elected.

Terrible Sufferings.

The colonists now began to feel the effects of their new life. The change of climate was very trying to them, and many of them fell victims to its rigors, and to the hardships of their position. A large number of them had been brought up in ease and refinement, and were unaccustomed to privation or exposure. They sank beneath the severe trials to which they were subjected. By December, 1630, at least two hundred had died. Among these were the Lady Arbella Johnson and her husband, among the most liberal and devoted supporters of the colony, and a son of Governor Winthrop, who left a widow and children in England. Others became disheartened, and more than a hundred returned to England, where they endeavored to excuse their desertion of their companions by grossly exaggerated accounts of the hardships of the colony.

Patient Endurance.

Yet among the colonists themselves there was no repining. They exhibited in their deep distress a fortitude and heroism worthy of their lofty character. "Honor is due," says Bancroft, "not less to those who perished than to those who survived; to the martyrs the hour of death was the hour of triumph; such as is never witnessed in more tranquil seasons. * * * * * Even children caught the spirit of the place; awaited the impending change in the tranquil confidence of faith, and went to the grave full of immortality. The survivors bore all things meekly, 'remembering the end of their coming hither.'" Winthrop wrote to his wife, who had been detained in England by sickness: "We enjoy here God and Jesus Christ, and is not this enough? I thank God I like so well to be here, as I do not repent my coming. I would not have altered my course though I had foreseen all these afflictions. I never had more content of mind."

Another danger which threatened the colony arose from the scarcity of provisions, but this was removed on the fifth of February, 1631, by the timely arrival of the "Lyon" from England, laden with provisions. This relief was greeted with public thanksgivings

in all the settlements. The "Lyon," however, brought only twenty passengers, and in 1631 only ninety persons came out from England. The number of arrivals in 1632 was only two hundred and fifty. Thus the colony grew very slowly. By the close of the latter year the total population of Massachusetts was only a little over one thousand souls.

Sketch of Roger Williams.

Among the passengers of the "Lyon" was a young minister, described in the old records as "lovely in his carriage, godly and zealous, having precious gifts," Roger Williams by name. He had been a favorite pupil of the great Sir Edward Coke, and had learned from him precious lessons of liberty and toleration. He had been carefully educated at Pembroke College, in the University of Cambridge, and had entered the ministry. His opposition to the laws requiring conformity to the established church had drawn upon him the wrath of Archbishop Laud, and he had been driven out of England.

The great doctrine which he had embraced as the result of his studies and experience was the freedom of conscience from secular control. "The civil magistrate should restrain crime, but never control opinion; should punish guilt, but never violate inward freedom." He would place all forms of religion upon an equality, and would refuse to the government the power to compel conformity to, or attendance upon, any of them, leaving such matters to the conscience of the individual. He also favored the abolition of tithes, and the enforced contribution to the support of the church.

Such views were far in advance of the age, and when Williams landed in Boston he found himself unable to join the church in that place, because of its adoption of principles the opposite of his own. Upon his arrival the church had intended engaging him to fill Mr. Wilson's place, while that minister returned to England to bring over his wife, but upon learning his views the idea was abandoned. A little later the church in Salem, which had been deprived of its teacher by the death of the Rev. Francis Higginson, called Williams to be his successor. Williams accepted the call; but Governor Winthrop and the assistants warned the people of Salem to beware how they placed in so important a position a man already at such variance with the established order of things. The warning had the desired effect upon the people of Salem, who withdrew their invitation. Williams then went to Plymouth, where he lived for two years in peace.

An Oath of Fidelity.

But though unwilling to accord to Williams the liberty he desired, the colonial government was careful to take every precaution against the anticipated efforts of the Church of England to extend its authority over Massachusetts. A general court held in May, 1631, ordered an oath of fidelity to be tendered to the freemen of the colony, which bound them "to be obedient and conformable to the laws and constitutions of this commonwealth, to advance its peace, and not to suffer any attempt at making any change or alteration of the government contrary to its laws." The same general court took a still more decided stand by the adoption of a law which limited the citizenship of the colony to "such as are members of some of the churches within the limits of the same." This was practically making the state a theocracy.

Yet the people were not prepared to surrender their political rights, even when alarmed by the danger which seemed to

threaten their religious establishment. Until now the assistants could hold office for life and they also possessed the power of electing the governor. They were thus independent of the people. The right of the freemen to choose their magistrates was now distinctly asserted, and in May, 1632, was conceded. The governor and assistants were to be elected annually, and by the votes of the freemen; none but church members being entitled to the privileges of freemen. Another important change was brought about at the same time by the hostility of the people to levying of taxes by the board of assistants. Each town was ordered to send two of its best men to represent it at a general court "to concert a plan for a public treasury."

Friendly Mohegan Chief.

The colonists had faithfully obeyed their instructions to treat the Indians with fairness, and to seek to cultivate their friendship. Many of the native tribes sought their alliance, and the sachem of the Mohegans came from the banks of the Connecticut to make a treaty with the colony, and to urge the English to settle in his country, which he described as exceedingly fertile and inviting. In the autumn of 1632 a pleasant intercourse was opened with the Plymouth colony; and in the same year a trade in corn was begun with Virginia, and commercial relations were established with the Dutch, who had settled along the Hudson River. The colony of Massachusetts Bay was slowly entering upon a more prosperous period.

Emigrants now began to come over in greater numbers, and among them were John Haynes, "the acute and subtile Cotton," and Thomas Hooker, who have been called the "Light of the Western Churches." The freemen by the middle of the year 1634 numbered between three and four hundred, and these were bent upon establishing their political power in the state. Great advances were made in the direction of representative government, and the ballot-box was introduced in elections, which had been formerly conducted by an erection of hands. As a guard against arbitrary taxation by magistrates it was enacted that none but the properly chosen representatives of the people might dispose of lands, or raise money.

A Long Controversy.

In the spring of 1635 the people went a step further, and demanded a written constitution for the purpose of still more perfectly securing their liberties. This demand opened a controversy which continued for ten years. The general court was composed of assistants and deputies. The first were elected by the people of the whole colony; the latter by the towns. The two bodies acted together in meetings of the assembly, but the assistants claimed the exclusive privilege of meeting and exercising a separate negative upon the proceedings of the court. This claim was energetically denied by the deputies, who were sustained by the body of the people; while the magistrates and the ministers upheld the pretensions of the assistants.

In 1644 the matter was compromised by the division of the general court into two branches, each of which was given a negative upon the proceedings of the other. All parties were agreed, however, in the work of connecting the religion and the government of the colony so closely that they should mutually sustain each other against the attacks of the Church of England.

While these measures were in course of adjustment other matters were engaging the attention of the colony. After Roger Williams had been a little more than two years in Plymouth, he was called again to Salem,

10 ROGER WILLIAMS SEEKING REFUGE AMONG THE INDIANS. 145

and accepted the invitation. This gave offence to many persons, and in January, 1634, complaints were made against Williams because of a paper he had written while at Plymouth, denying that the king had any power to grant lands in America to his subjects, since the lands were the property of the Indians. In this Williams was wrong, as the settlers in New England had been careful to obtain the consent of the natives to their occupation of the lands they had possessed. He made a proper explanation of his paper, when he understood the true state of the case, and consented that it should be burned.

Williams will not Retract.

Still the jealousy and dislike of the Puritans was aroused by the radical opposition of Williams to their system, although he conducted himself with a forbearance and amiableness that should have won him the love of those with whom he was thrown. Williams strongly condemned the law enforcing the attendance of the people upon religious services, declaring that a man had a right to stay away if he wished to do so. He also censured the practice of selecting the colonial officials exclusively from the members of the church, and said that a physician or a pilot might with equal propriety be chosen because of his piety, his skill in theology, or his standing in the church. These and other similar views were drawn from him in a series of controversies, held with him by a committee of ministers, for the purpose of inducing him to retract his radical sentiments. He remained firm in them, however, and his opponents declared that his principles were calculated not only to destroy religion, but also to subvert all forms of civil government.

It was resolved to banish him from the colony, and as the people of Salem warmly supported Williams, they were admonished by the court, and a tract of land, which was rightfully theirs, was withheld from them as a punishment. Williams and the church at Salem appealed to the people against the injustice of the magistrates, and asked the other churches of the colony to "admonish the magistrates of their injustice." This was regarded as treason by the colonial government, and at the next general court Salem was disfranchised until the town should make ample apology for its offence. Williams was summoned before the general court in October, 1635, and maintained his opinions with firmness, though with moderation. He was sentenced to banishment from the colony, not, as it was declared, because of his religious views, but because the magistrates averred his principles, if carried out, would destroy all civil government.

A Fugitive in the Wilderness.

The season was so far advanced that it would have been barbarous to drive any one out of the colony at that time, and Williams obtained leave to remain in the province until the spring, when he intended forming a settlement on Narragansett Bay. The affection of his people at Salem, which had seemed to grow cold when the town began to feel the weight of the punishment inflicted by the general court, now revived, and they thronged to his house in great numbers to hear him, and his opinions spread rapidly. The magistrates were alarmed, and it was resolved to send him at once to England in a ship that was just about to sail from Boston. He was ordered to come to Boston and embark there, but refused to obey the summons. A boat's crew was then sent to arrest him and bring him to Boston by force; but when the officers reached Salem he had disappeared.

Three days before their arrival Roger Williams had left Salem, a wanderer for conscience sake. It was the depth of winter, the snow lay thickly over the country, and the weather was cold and inclement. For fourteen weeks, he says, he "was sorely tost in a bitter season, not knowing what bread or bed did mean." Banished from the settlements of his own race the exile went out into the wilderness, and sought the country of the Indians, whose friendship he had won during his stay in the colony. He had acquired their language during his residence at Plymouth, and could speak it fluently.

He went from lodge to lodge, kindly welcomed by the savages, and lodging sometimes in a hollow tree, until he reached Mount Hope, the residence of Massasoit, who was his friend. Canonicus, the great chieftain of the Narragansetts, loved him with a strong affection, which ceased only with his life; and in the country of these friendly chiefs Williams passed the winter in peace and safety. He never ceased to be grateful for their aid in his distress, and during his whole life he was the especial friend and champion of the Indians in New England.

LANDING OF ROGER WILLIAMS AT PROVIDENCE.

It was the intention of Williams to settle at Seekonk, on the Pawtucket River; but that place was found to be within the limits of the Plymouth colony. Governor Winslow wrote to Williams advising him to remove to the region of Narragansett Bay, which was beyond the jurisdiction of the English, and would render any misunderstanding between the Plymouth and Bay colonies on his account impossible "I took his prudent motion," says Williams, "as a voice from God."

Providence Founded.

Being joined by five companions, Williams embarked in a canoe in June, 1635, and passing over to the west arm of Narragansett Bay, landed at an attractive spot, where he found a spring of pure water. He chose the place as the site of a new settlement, and in gratitude for his deliverance from the many dangers through which he had passed, named it PROVIDENCE. He sought to purchase enough land for a settlement, but Canonicus refused to sell the land, and gave it to his friend "to enjoy forever." This grant was made to Williams alone, and constituted him absolute owner of the lands included in it. He might have sold them to settlers on terms advantageous to himself; but he declined to do so.

In the next two years he was joined by a number of his old followers from Massachu-

setts, and by others who fled to his asylum. He gave a share of land to all who came to settle, and admitted them to an equality with himself in the political administration of the colony. The government was administered by the whole people. The voice of the majority decided all public measures; but in matters of conscience every man was left answerable to God alone. All forms of religious belief were tolerated and protected. Even infidelity was safe here from punishment by the civil or ecclesiastical power.

Praiseworthy Charity.

Williams was anxious to establish friendly relations with the Massachusetts colony; for though he felt keenly the injustice of his persecutors, he cherished no bitterness or resentment towards them. He condemned only what he considered the delusions of the magistrates of Massachusetts, but never attacked his persecutors. "I did ever from my soul," he wrote with simple magnanimity, "honor and love them, even when their judgment led them to afflict me." Winslow, touched with his true Christian forbearance, came from Plymouth to visit him, and left with his wife some money for their support; and some of the leaders of the Bay colony began to bear tardy witness to his virtues. The settlement at Providence continued to grow slowly, and was blessed with peace and an increasing prosperity.

Massachusetts in the meantime continued to receive numerous additions to her population by emigration from England. In the autumn of 1635, twelve families left Boston, and journeying into the interior, founded the town of Concord. They had a hard struggle to establish their little settlement, but persevered, and at length their labors were crowned with success. Three thousand people came over to Massachusetts this year. Among them were Hugh Peters, a man of great eloquence and ability and a devoted republican, who had been pastor to a church of exiles at Rotterdam, and Henry Vane the younger, "a man of the purest mind; a statesman of spotless integrity; whose name the progress of intelligence and liberty will erase from the rubic of fanatics and traitors, and insert high among the aspirants after truth and the martyrs for liberty." *

In the following spring (1636) Vane was elected governor of the colony. The people were dazzled by his high birth and pleasing qualities, and committed an error in choosing him, for neither his age nor his experience fitted him for the distinguished position conferred upon him. The arrival of Vane seemed to promise an emigration of a number of the English nobility, and an effort was made by several of them in England to procure the division of the general court into two branches, and the establishment of an hereditary nobility in the colony which should possess a right to seats in the upper branch of the court. The magistrates of the colony were anxious to conciliate these valuable friends, but they firmly refused to establish hereditary nobility in their new state.

Trouble in the Church.

Religious discussions formed a large part of the life of the colony. Meetings were held by the men, and passages of Scripture were discussed, and the sermons of the ministers made the subject of searching criticism. The women might attend these meetings, but were not allowed to take part in the discussions. Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, a woman of talent and eloquence, claimed for her sex the right to participate equally with the men in these meetings; but as this was not possible, she began to hold meetings for the benefit of the women at her own house. At these,

* Bancroft.

religious doctrines were discussed and advocated, which were at variance with the principles of the magistrates.

Mrs. Hutchinson and her followers held that the authority of private judgment was superior to that of the church, and condemned the efforts of the colony to enforce conformity to the established system as violative of the inherent rights of Christians. She was encouraged by John Wheelwright, a silenced minister, who had married her sister, and by Governor Vane, and her opinions were adopted by a large number of the people, and by members of the general court and some of the magistrates.

The ministers saw their authority menaced by the new belief, and made common cause against Mrs. Hutchinson and her protector, Governor Vane. The colony was divided into two parties, and the religious question became a matter of great political importance. Under the established system the ministers formed almost a distinct estate of the government, and political privileges were entirely dependent upon theological conformity.

Feeling sure that they would not receive justice at the hands of their opponents, the friends of Mrs. Hutchinson declared their intention to appeal to the king. This aroused a storm of indignation in the colony, and "it was accounted perjury and treason to speak of appeals to the king." This threat changed the whole character of the question, and was fatal to the party which made it. The Puritans had come to Massachusetts to escape the interference of the crown with their religious belief, and to appeal to the king in this case would be simply to place the liberties of the colony at his mercy. When the elections were held, in the spring of 1637, Governor Winthrop and the old magistrates were chosen by a large majority. Vane soon after returned to England.

The church party being now in power resolved to silence Mrs. Hutchinson. She was admonished to cease her teachings, and upon her refusal to obey this order, she and her followers were exiled from the colony. Wheelwright and a number of his friends went to New Hampshire, and founded the town of Exeter, at the head of tide-water on the Piscataqua. Mrs. Hutchinson and the majority of her followers removed, in the spring of 1638, to the southward, intending to settle on Long Island or on the Delaware. Roger Williams induced them to remain near his plantation, and obtained for them from Miantonomoh, the chief of the Narragansett tribe, the gift of the beautiful island in the lower part of Narragansett Bay, which they called the island of Rhodes, or Rhode Island.

Sad Fate of Mrs. Hutchinson.

The number of settlers was scarcely more than twenty, but they proceeded to form a government upon a plan agreeable to the principles they professed. It was a pure democracy, founded upon the universal consent of the people, who signed a social compact pledging themselves to obey the laws made by the majority, and to respect the rights of conscience. William Coddington, who had been a magistrate in the Bay colony, was elected judge or ruler, and three elders were chosen as his assistants. The settlement grew rapidly, and by 1641 the population had become so numerous as to require a written constitution.

Mrs. Hutchinson remained in Rhode Island for several years; but fearing that the hostility of the magistrates of Massachusetts would reach her even there, removed beyond New Haven into the territory of the Dutch, where, in 1643, she and all her family who were with her, except one child, who was taken prisoner, were murdered by the Indians.

CHAPTER XII

Colonization of Connecticut

The Dutch Claim the Connecticut Valley—They Build a Fort at Hartford—Governor Winslow Makes a Lodgment in Connecticut for the English—Withdrawal of the Dutch—The First Efforts of the English to Settle Connecticut—Emigration of Hooker and His Congregation—They Settle at Hartford—Winthrop Builds a Fort at Saybrooke—Hostility of the Indians—Visit of Roger Williams to Miantonomoh—A Brave Deed—The Pequod War—Capture of the Indian Fort—Destruction of the Pequod Tribe—Effect of This War Upon the Other Tribes—Connecticut Adopts a Constitution—Its Peculiar Features—Settlement of New Haven.

THE fertile region of the Connecticut had attracted the attention of the English at an early day; but before they could make any effort to occupy it the Dutch sent an exploring party from Manhattan Island, in 1614, and examined the river and the country through which it flowed. They built and fortified a trading-post on the site of the present city of Hartford, but soon excited the ill-will of the Indians by their cruel treatment of them. The Dutch found themselves unable to occupy the country, and, being unwilling to lose it, endeavored, but without success, to induce the Pilgrims to remove from Plymouth to the Connecticut, and settle in that region under their protection.

In 1630 the council of Plymouth granted the Connecticut region to the Earl of Warwick, who, in 1631, assigned his claim to Lords Say and Brooke, John Hampden, and others. As soon as this grant was known to the Dutch they sent a party to the site of Hartford and re-established their trading-post, and began a profitable trade with the Indians. They mounted two cannon on their fort for the purpose of preventing the English from ascending the river. Towards the latter part of the year 1633, Governor Winslow, of Plymouth, in order to secure a foothold for the English in this valuable region, sent Captain William Holmes to the Connecticut with a sloop and a number of men to make a settlement. Upon ascending the river to the site of Hartford, Holmes found his progress barred by the Dutch fort, the commander of which threatened to fire upon him if he attempted to continue his voyage. Undaunted by this threat, Holmes passed by the fort without harm, and ascended the stream to Windsor, where he erected a fortified post. In 1634, the Dutch made an unsuccessful attempt to drive him away. Failing in this, and seeing that it was the deliberate purpose of the English to occupy the Connecticut valley, the Dutch relinquished all claim to that region and a boundary line was arranged between their possessions and those of the English, corresponding very nearly to that between the states of Connecticut and New York.

In 1635, the Pilgrims determined to make settlements in this inviting region, and late in the fall of that year a company of sixty persons, men, women and children, set out from Plymouth by land, sending a sloop laden with provisions and their household goods around by sea, with orders to join them upon the Connecticut River. They began their journey too late in the season and their sufferings were very great in consequence. Upon reaching the river they found the ground covered with snow, and their sloop was delayed by storms and ice.

Their cattle died from cold and exposure, and but for a little corn which they obtained from the Indians, and such acorns as they could gather, the whole company must have starved to death. Many of them abandoned their new home and returned by land to the settlements on the coast.

The Puritans were resolved to continue the effort to settle Connecticut, and in the spring of 1636 several companies emigrated to that region. The principal party set out in June, led by the Rev. Thomas Hooker. It comprised about one hundred persons, and consisted principally of Hooker's congregation, who followed their pastor with enthusiasm. They drove before them a considerable number of cattle, which furnished them with milk on the march.

The emigrants were largely made up of persons of refinement and culture, and comprised many of the oldest and most valued citizens of the Bay colony. They were attracted to the valley of the Connecticut by the superior advantages which it offered for the prosecution of the fur trade, and by the great fertility of its soil. They had no guide but a compass, and their route lay through an unbroken wilderness. The journey was long and fatiguing. The emigrants accomplished scarcely more than ten miles a day, carrying their sick on litters, and making the forests ring with their holy hymns. At length the site of Hartford, where it was proposed to establish the settlement, was reached by the first of July. The greater number remained there; some went higher up the river and founded Springfield, and the rest went to Wethersfield, where there was already a small settlement.

In the same year the younger John Winthrop arrived from England, with orders from Lords Say and Brooke to establish a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut River. This he accomplished, naming the new settlement Saybrooke, in honor of the proprietors. The settlements in Connecticut grew rapidly, the excellent soil and pleasant climate attracting many emigrants to them.

JOHN HAMPDEN.

The existence of these settlements was precarious, however. The region in which

they had been planted was the country of the Pequods, who inhabited it in large numbers. They were the most powerful and warlike tribe in New England, and could bring nearly two thousand warriors into the field. They occupied the southwestern part of Connecticut, and their territory extended almost to the Hudson on the west, where it joined that of the Mohegans. On the east their territory bordered that of the Narragansetts. Both of these tribes were the enemies of the Pequods and the friends of the English. This friendship was resented by the Pequods, who were already jealous of the English because of their occupation of the lands along the Connecticut. The tribe bore a bad name, and had already manifested their hostility by murdering, a few years before, a Virginia trader named Stone, together with the crew of his vessel, who were engaged in a trading expedition on the Connecticut River.

Blood Shed on Both Sides.

Somewhat later Captain Oldham and his crew, while exploring the river, were also murdered by Indians living on Block Island. The Pequods justified the murder of Stone by alleging that he had attacked them. Wishing to make a treaty with the English, they sent their chiefs to Boston for that purpose, and promised—as the magistrates understood them—to deliver up the two men who had killed Stone. Captain John Endicott was sent with a vessel, in 1636, to punish the Block Island Indians for the murder of Oldham, and was ordered to call on his return at the Pequod town, and demand the surrender of the murderers of Stone. The Pequods declined to surrender these men, but offered to ransom them. This was in accordance with their customs. But Endicott refused to accept any compensation for the crime that had been committed, and to punish the Indians destroyed their corn and burned two of their villages. This made open hostilities inevitable. The Pequods began to hang around the Connecticut settlements and cut off stragglers from them. By the close of the winter more than thirty persons had fallen victims to their vengeance.

A Dangerous Mission.

The settlements in the Connecticut valley were now greatly alarmed. They could not muster over two hundred fighting men, and the Indians in their immediate vicinity could bring into the field at least seven hundred warriors. War was certain, and it was not known at what moment the savages would attack the settlements in overwhelming force. Connecticut called upon Massachusetts for aid, but only twenty men under Captain Underhill, were sent to their aid. The energies and attention of the Bay colony were engrossed by the Hutchinson quarrel.

The Pequods, notwithstanding their immense numerical superiority, were unwilling to make war upon the English without the support of another tribe. They accordingly sent envoys to Miantonomoh, the chief of the Narragansetts, to endeavor to engage that tribe in the effort against the whites. Such a union would have menaced all New England, and as soon as the news of the negotiation reached Boston the government of the Bay colony prepared to prevent the alliance. Governor Vane at once wrote to Roger Williams, the friend of Miantonomoh, urging him to seek that chieftain and prevent him from joining the Pequods.

It was a dangerous mission, and certainly a great service for the magistrates of Massachusetts to ask of the man whom they had driven into exile. They did not ask in vain, however. All of Williams' generous nature was aroused by the danger which threatened his brethren, and he embarked in a frail

canoe, and braving the danger of a severe gale, sought the quarters of Miantonomoh. He found the Pequod chiefs already there, and the Narragansetts wavering. Knowing the errand on which he had come, the hostile chieftains were ready at any moment to despatch him, and had Miantonomoh shown the least favor to the project, Williams would have paid for his boldness with his life. He spent three days and nights in the company of the savages, and succeeded in inducing Miantonomoh not only to refuse to join the war against the English, but to promise the colonists his assistance against the Pequods. In the meantime he sent a messenger to Boston to inform the governor of the designs of the Indians.

A GROUP OF INDIANS.

The Pequods, left to continue the struggle alone, flattered themselves that their superiority in numbers would give them the victory, and continued their aggressions upon the Connecticut settlements to such an extent that in May, 1637, the general court of that province resolved to begin the war at once. A force of eighty men, including those sent from Massachusetts, was assembled at Hartford, and the command was conferred by Hooker upon Captain John Mason. The night previous to their departure was spent in prayer, and on the twentieth of May the little force embarked in boats and descended

the river to the sound, and passed around to Narragansett Bay, intending to approach the Pequod town from that quarter. As the boats sailed by the mouth of the Thames, the savages supposed the English were abandoning the Connecticut valley.

The day after the arrival of the English in Narragansett Bay was the Sabbath, and was scrupulously observed. On the following day they repaired to the quarters of Canonicus, the old chief and principal ruler of the Narragansett tribe, and asked his assistance against the Pequods. Miantonomoh, the nephew and prospective successor of Canonicus, hesitated to join in the doubtful enterprise, but two hundred warriors agreed to accompany the English, who could not, however, count upon the fidelity of these reinforcements. Seventy Mohegans, under Uncas, their chief, also joined Mason. With this force the English commander marched across the country toward the Pequod towns on the Thames, and halted on the night of the twenty-fifth of May within hearing of them.

A Sudden Attack.

In the meantime the Pequods, convinced that the English had fled from the Connecticut region, and never dreading an attack in their fort, which they considered impregnable, had given themselves up to rejoicing The night, passed by the English in waiting the signal for the attack, was spent by the Pequods in revelry and songs, which could be plainly heard in the English camp. Two hours before dawn, on the morning of the twenty-sixth of May, the order was given to the little band under Mason to advance. They knew they would have to decide the battle by their own efforts, and were by no means certain that their Indian allies would not turn against them.

The Pequods were posted in two strong forts made of palisades driven into the ground and strengthened with rush-work, an excellent defence against a foe of their own race, but worthless when assailed by Europeans. The principal fort stood on the summit of a considerable hill, and was regarded by Sassacus, the Pequod chief, as impregnable. The tramp of the advancing force aroused a dog, whose fierce bark awoke the Indian sentinel. The keen eye of the savage detected the enemy in the gloom of the morning, and he rushed into the fort, shouting, "The English! The English!"

The next moment the English were through the palisades. On all sides they beheld the Indians pouring out of their lodges to take part in the hand-to-hand fight. The odds were too great. "We must burn them," cried Mason, and, suiting the action to the word, he applied a torch to a wigwam constructed of dry reeds. The flames sprang up instantly, and spread with the rapidity of lightning. The Indians vainly endeavored to extinguish the fire, and the English, withdrawing to a greater distance, began to pick off the savages, who were doubly exposed by the light of the blazing fort. Wherever a Pequod appeared, he was shot down. The Narragansetts and Mohegans now joined in the conflict, and the victory was complete. More than six hundred Pequods, men, women and children, perished, the majority of them in the flames. The English lost only two men; and the battle was over in an hour.

Indians in a Rage.

As the sun rose, a body of three hundred Pequod warriors were seen advancing from their second fort. They came expecting to rejoice with their comrades in the destruction of the English. When they beheld the ruined fort and the remains of its defenders, they screamed, stamped on the ground and tore their hair with rage and despair. Mason held them in check with twenty men, while

the rest of the English embarked in their boats, which had come round from Narragansett Bay, and hastened home to protect the settlements against a sudden attack. Mason, with the party mentioned, marched across the country to the fort at Saybrooke, where he was received with the honors due to his successful exploit.

In a few days a body of one hundred men arrived from Massachusetts, under Captain Stoughton, and the campaign against the Pequods was resumed. Their pride was crushed, and they made but a feeble resistance. They fled to the west, closely pursued by the English, who destroyed their cornfields, burned their villages and put their women and children to death without mercy. They made a last desperate effort at resistance in the fastnesses of a swamp, but were defeated with great slaughter. Sassacus, their chief, with a few of his men took refuge with the Mohawks, where he was soon after put to death by one of his own people. The remainder of the tribe, about two hundred in number, surrendered to the English, and were reduced to slavery. Some were given to their enemies, the Narragansetts and Mohegans; others were sent to the West Indies and sold as slaves. The Pequod nation was utterly destroyed.

The thoroughness and remorselessness of the work struck terror to the neighboring tribes. If the Pequods, the most powerful of all their race, had been exterminated by a mere handful of Englishmen, what could they expect in a contest with them but a similar fate? For forty years the horror of this dreadful deed remained fresh in the savage mind, and protected the young settlements more effectually than the most vigilant watchfulness on the part of the whites could have done.

Relieved from the fear of the Indians, the people of Connecticut prepared to establish a civil government for the colony, and in January, 1639, a constitution was adopted. It was more liberal, and therefore more lasting, than that framed by any of the other colonies. It provided for the government of the colony by a governor, a legislature and the usual magistrates of an English province, who were to be chosen annually by ballot. Every settler who should take the oath of

YALE COLLEGE.

allegiance to the commonwealth was to have the right of suffrage. The members of the legislature were apportioned among the towns according to the population. The colony was held to be supreme within its own limits, and no recognition was made of the sovereignty of the king or Parliament. When Connecticut took her place among the states of the American Union, at the opening of the war of the Revolution, her constitution needed no change to adapt her to her new position. It remained in force for one hundred and fifty years.

The Celebrated John Davenport.

In the year of the Pequod war (1637), John Davenport, a celebrated clergyman of London, and Theophilus Eaton, a merchant of wealth, and a number of their associates, who had been exiled from England for their religious opinions, reached Boston. They were warmly welcomed, and were urged to stay in the Bay colony, but the theological disputes were so high there that they preferred to go into the wilderness and found a settlement where they could be at peace Eaton with a few men was sent to explore the region west of the Connecticut, which had been discovered by the pursuers of the Pequods. He examined the coast of Long Island Sound, and spent the winter at a place which he selected as a settlement. In April, 1638, Davenport and the rest of the company sailed from Boston and established a settlement on the spot chosen by Eaton. The settlers obtained a title to their lands from the natives, and agreed in return to protect them against the Mohawks.

They named their settlement New Haven. In 1639 a form of government was adopted, and Eaton was elected governor. He was annually chosen to this position until his death, twenty years later. The colonists pledged themselves "to be governed in all things by the rules which the Scriptures held forth to them." The right of suffrage was restricted to church members. "Thus New Haven made the Bible its statute book, and the elect its freemen." In the next ten years settlements spread along the sound and extended to the opposite shores of Long Island. The colony was distinct from and independent of the Connecticut colony, with which friendly relations were soon established.

CHAPTER XIII

The Union of the New England Colonies

Feeling of the Colonies Towards England—Hostility of the English Government to New England—Efforts to Introduce Episcopacy—Massachusetts Threatens Resistance—The Revolution in England—Establishment of Free Schools in New England—Harvard College—The Printing Press—The Long Parliament Friendly to New England—The United Colonies of New England—Rhode Island Obtains a Charter—Maine Annexed to Massachusetts—The Quakers are Persecuted—Efforts to Christianize the Indians—John Eliot, the Apostle to the Indians.

THE sentiments with which the people of the New England colonies regarded the mother country may be briefly stated. They were proud of the name of Englishmen, and took a deep interest in the welfare of their old home. They regarded the British constitution as the supreme law of their new states, and claimed to be true and loyal subjects of the King of England. Nevertheless, they looked upon the success of their colonies as their own work, accomplished by their own patience and heroism, and they were fully aware that they owed nothing to the mother country.

They had been driven forth from her shores by persecution, and left in neglect to struggle up to the successful position they now occupied. They owed nothing to England; in their deepest distress they had never asked aid of her, and they were willing to undergo any hardship rather than do so. They had made laws and established institutions under which they had surmounted their early trials, and they regarded their paramount allegiance as due to their respective provinces. They acknowledged the right of no power beyond the Atlantic to interfere with or change their work. They would acknowledge their allegiance to the king as long as he respected the system they had built up at such great cost, and without assistance from him, but would resist any effort from him, or any one else, to interfere with it. They had made New England what she was, and they meant to retain the possession and control of their new home at any cost. They had made themselves a free people, and they meant to preserve their liberties as a precious heritage for their children.

This was the general sentiment of New England. There were some discontented persons, however, in the midst of these determined people. They had found the stern discipline of the Massachusetts colony too oppressive, and some had been severely punished by the fiery Endicott. Upon returning to England they endeavored to induce the king to exert his power and remedy what they termed the distraction and disorder of the province of Massachusetts. Their complaints were echoed by a strong party in England. Burdett wrote to Archbishop Laud that "The colonists aimed not at a new discipline, but at sovereignty; that it was accounted treason in their general court to speak of appeals to the king;" in which assertion he was right.

The English archbishop began to regard the departure of so many "faithful and free born Englishmen and good Christians" to join a new communion as a serious matter, and impediments were thrown in the way of emigration. In February, 1634, a requisition was addressed to the colony of Massachusetts ordering the colonial officials to produce the patent of the company in

England. The colony took no notice of this demand. A little later the king appointed the Archbishop of Canterbury and some others a special commission, with full power over the American colonies. They were authorized to make such changes in church and state as they deemed necessary; to enforce them with heavy penalties; and even to revoke all charters that contained privileges inconsistent with the royal prerogative.

Massachusetts Indignant.

The news of the appointment of this commission reached Boston in September, 1634, and it was also rumored that a governor-general for the colonies had been appointed, and had sailed from England. All Massachusetts burned with indignation, and the colony resolved to resist the attempt upon its liberties. It was very poor, but in a short space of time the large sum of six hundred pounds was raised for the public defence, and fortifications were begun and pushed forward with energy. In January, 1635, the ministers were assembled at Boston and their opinion was asked upon the question whether the colony should receive a governor-general. They answered boldly: "We ought to defend our lawful possessions if we are able; if not, to avoid and protract."

In April, 1638, the privy council demanded the surrender of the charter of Massachusetts, threatening in case of refusal that the king would take the management of the colony into his own hands. The colonial authorities were firmly resolved to give the king no pretext for interference with their affairs, and instead of complying with the order of the privy council, they addressed a remonstrance to that body against the surrender required of them, thus seeking to gain time. They were fully determined not to give up their charter; but before their remonstrance could reach England the troubles which encompassed Charles at home made it impossible for him to carry out his designs against Massachusetts.

The breaking out of the civil war in England put a stop to the emigration to New England. At the opening of the year 1640 the population of New England numbered twenty thousand. Some fifty towns and between thirty and forty churches had been built, and the most desponding could no longer doubt the ultimate success and prosperity of the country. The wretched cabins of the first settlers were rapidly giving way to fair and comfortable houses, and the colonists were beginning to gather about them many of the comforts and much of the refinement they had been accustomed to in England.

The Puritans.

Nor were the Puritans mindful of material success only. Many of them were persons of education, and they were anxious that their children should have the opportunity of enjoying the blessings of knowledge in their new homes. In 1636 the general court made provision for the establishment at Newtown of a high school. The name of the town was changed to Cambridge as a token that the people meant that it should yet be the seat of a university.

In 1637 the school was formally opened. The next year the Rev. John Harvard, of Charlestown, bequeathed to the infant institution his library and the half of his fortune, and in gratitude for this assistance the school took the name of "Harvard College." In 1647 the general court ordered that in every town or district of fifty families there should be a common school; and that in every town or district of one hundred families there should be a grammar school, conducted by teachers competent to prepare young men for college. This system rapidly found its way into the other New England colonies, with the exception of Rhode Island.

Thus was founded the American system of common schools. Until now education had been the task of the church, or had been confided to private individuals; but now, for the first time in the history of the world, the state took the task of educating its young citizens into its own hands, and established the schools in which it was to be conducted. Henceforth knowledge was to be restricted to no favored class; education was made free to every child, and every parent being taxed for the support of the public schools was made to feel interested in their proper conduct.

From the little beginning thus made a vast and noble system has been developed, the beneficial results of which must be felt to the latest period of our national existence. Had the fathers of New England done nothing more for posterity than this, they would still deserve to be held in grateful remembrance as the founders of our public schools. Generations yet unborn shall rise up to call them blessed, and to acknowledge the truth of their conviction that ignorant men cannot make good citizens.

In 1639 a printing press, presented to the colony by some friends in Holland, was set up in Massachusetts. Stephen Daye was the printer, and in that year printed an almanac calculated for New England, and in 1640 a metrical version of the Psalms, made "by Thomas Welde and John Eliot, ministers of Roxbury, assisted by Richard Mather, minister of Dorchester." It was the first book printed in the English language in America, and continued to be used for a long time in the worship of the New England churches.

AN AMERICAN FREE SCHOOL.

Many of the settlers went back to England at the outset of the civil war to take part in the struggle, among whom were Governor Henry Vane and Hugh Peters, and very few emigrants arrived in New England during the existence of the commonwealth. Yet the colonies continued to prosper. Ship-building, which had been introduced by the first settlers of Salem, was carried on with activity, and vessels of four hundred tons were constructed. A little later the manufacture of woollen and linen cloth was begun by order of the general court.

The colonial churches were invited to send their representatives to the assembly of divines at Westminster, but they wisely neglected to do so, judging it better to remain in their obscurity than to give the English people a pretext for future interference by joining in their affairs.

Religious Liberty.

The Long Parliament was friendly to New England, and granted to the colonies an exemption from all duties upon their commerce "until the House of Commons should take order to the contrary." Massachusetts took advantage of the security afforded by the friendship of the Long Parliament to establish a written constitution, or "body of liberties," which placed the rights and privileges of her people upon a more stable basis. It contained some of the severest laws of the Mosaic code, such as those against witchcraft, blasphemy, and sins against nature, but secured the freedom of the citizen, the right of representative government, and the independence of the state and the municipality. The rights of property, the freedom of inheritance, and the independence of each church from control by the others were also placed beyond dispute. "This constitution," says Bancroft, "for its liberality and comprehensiveness, may vie with any similar record from the days of Magna Charta."

In April, 1642, the towns on the Piscataqua, now embraced within the limits of the state of New Hampshire, were annexed at their own request to Massachusetts. As the people of this region were not Puritans, and many of them were attached to the forms and faith of the Church of England, the general court in September adopted a measure providing that neither the freemen nor the deputies of New Hampshire should be required to be church members. This act of justice removed all danger of political discord. In the same year Massachusetts made a less creditable and an unsuccessful effort to annex Rhode Island to her dominions.

The United Colonies.

Though relieved of the interference of the mother country, the dangers of New England were not yet at an end. The Indians were still powerful upon their narrow border, the French were beginning to threaten them from the direction of Canada, and the Dutch from the Hudson. The colonies had so many interests in common that it was of vital importance that they should act in concert for their defence. After several ineffectual attempts, a league was formed in 1643 between the colonies of Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven, under the title of "*The United Colonies of New England.*" Each colony was to retain its freedom in the management of its own affairs; the authority of the union, which was intrusted to a commission of two members from each province, being limited to objects which concerned the general welfare of the colonies. Provision was made for the preservation of the purity of the gospel, the commissioners were required to be church members, and the expenses of the confederacy were to be assessed upon the colonies according to population. This union lasted for forty years.

The colony of Rhode Island desired to be admitted into the union, but its petition was refused, as it would not acknowledge the jurisdiction of Plymouth. The people of the two settlements on Narragansett Bay, dreading an attempt to absorb them into some of the other colonies, now determined to apply to Parliament for an independent charter. Roger Williams was despatched to England for that purpose in 1643, and reached that country soon after the death of Hampden. The fame of his labors among the Indians secured for him a cordial welcome.

The Charter Confirmed

Assisted by Sir Henry Vane, a charter was obtained in March, 1644, organizing the settlements on Narragansett Bay as an independent colony under the name of "The Providence Plantations," "with full power and authority to rule themselves." The executive council of state in England, in 1651, made some grants to Coddington which would have dismembered the little state, and Williams was obliged to make a second voyage to England to have these grants vacated. He succeeded in his efforts, and the charter was confirmed. He received in this, as in his former mission, the cordial co-operation of Sir Henry Vane, whose name should be ever dear to the people of Rhode Island, since but for him her territory would have been divided among the neighboring colonies. In the interval between his first and second voyages Roger Williams became a Baptist, and founded the first church of that denomination in America.

The country between the Piscataqua and the Kennebec was assigned to Sir Ferdinand Gorges, who, in 1639, was confirmed in his possession by a formal charter from Charles I., who called the territory the Province of Maine. In 1640, Gorges sent his son Thomas to Maine as his representative. Thomas Gorges took up his residence at the settlement of Agamenticus, now the town of York, and in 1642 changed the name of the place to Gorgeana.

Maine Comes Into the Union.

Since the settlement of the colony the French had claimed the region between the St. Croix and the Penobscot, which they had settled under the name of Acadia, as has been stated elsewhere. After the death of Sir Ferdinand Gorges Maine was divided among his heirs. These cut it up into four weak communities, whose helplessness laid them open to the encroachments of the French in Canada. Apprehensive of the results of this, Massachusetts, to whom many of the inhabitants of the province had appealed to take such a course, in 1651 claimed the province of Maine as a part of the territory which had been granted to the colony by the original charter of Massachusetts.

Commissioners were sent to establish the authority of the Bay colony over the province, but the magistrates of Maine resisted them, and appealed to the English government for protection. The people of Maine were the adherents of the king and the established church, and England was now ruled by the Puritans; consequently Massachusetts won her cause, and Maine was declared a part of that province. Massachusetts made a generous use of her power, and allowed the towns of Maine very much the same government and privileges they now enjoy, and in religious matters treated them with the same leniency she had shown to New Hampshire.

In 1646, a dispute in the Bay colony induced one of the parties to it to appeal to Parliament to sustain his claims, and an order was sent out to Boston in his behalf "couched in terms which involved the right of Parliament to reverse the decisions and control the

government of Massachusetts." In plainer terms. Parliament claimed the right to revoke the charter of the colony, as the king had done at the outset of the civil war. The danger was great, and Massachusetts met it with firmness. The general court met on the fourth of November, and sat with closed doors to discuss the claim of the English government. It was resolved "that Massachusetts owed to England the same allegiance as the free Hanse towns had rendered to the empire; as Normandy, when its dukes were kings of England, paid to the monarchs of France."

Parliament Must Keep Hands Off.

The court also refused to accept a new charter from Parliament, as that action might imply a surrender of the original instrument, or to allow Parliament to control in any way the independence of the colony. Great as this claim was, it was admitted by the English Parliament, in which the rights of the colony were stoutly maintained by Sir Henry Vane and others; and in reply to a respectful address of the general court setting forth the views of that body, a committee of Parliament declared: "We encourage no appeals from your justice. We leave you with all the freedom and latitude that may, in any respect, be duly claimed by you." Later on, upon the establishment of the commonwealth, Parliament invited the people of Massachusetts to receive a new patent from that body; but the colonial authorities wisely declined to do this, or to allow the home government any hold upon the administration of the affairs of the province.

In 1651, Cromwell, who had subdued Ireland, offered that island to the Puritans of New England as a new home; but they declined to leave America. Cromwell proved himself in many ways a judicious friend of New England, and the people of that country treasured his memory with the gratitude and respect it so richly deserved.

Though so successful in asserting her own liberties, Massachusetts had not yet learned the lesson of religious tolerance. When the Baptists began to appear in the colony, severe measures were inaugurated to crush them, and one of their number—Holmes—a resident of Lynn, was whipped unmercifully. Still greater were the severities practised towards the Quakers. This sect had grown out of the Protestant Reformation, and constituted at this day the most advanced thinkers upon religious matters to be found in England. They claimed a perfect freedom in matters of faith and worship, and regarded all laws for enforcing religious systems as works of the devil. They were persons of pure lives, and even their most inveterate enemies could not charge them with wrongdoing. Previous to their appearance in Massachusetts exaggerated reports reached the colony concerning them. They were represented as making war upon all forms of religion and government.

Intolerance Toward Quakers.

The first of this creed who came to New England were Mary Fisher and Ann Austin, who reached Boston in July, 1656. In the absence of a special law against Quakers, they were arrested under the provisions of the general statute against heresy; their trunks were searched and their books burned by the hangman. Their persons were examined for marks of witchcraft, but nothing could be found against them, and after being kept close prisoners for five weeks, they were sent back to England.

During the year eight others were also sent back to England. Laws which were a disgrace to an enlightened community were now passed prohibiting the Quakers from entering the colony. Such as came were

imprisoned, cruelly whipped, and sent away. In 1657 a woman was whipped with twenty stripes for this offence. In 1658 a law was enacted that if any Quaker should return after being banished, his or her offence should be punished with death. It was hoped that this barbarous measure would rid the colony of their presence; but they came in still greater numbers, to reprove the magistrates for their persecuting spirit, and to call

INDIAN MEDICINE-MAN.

them to repentance. In 1659 Marmaduke Stephenson, William Robinson, Mary Dyar and William Leddro were hanged on Boston Common for returning to the colony after being banished.

These cruelties were regarded with great discontent by the people of the colony, whose humanity was shocked by the barbarity of the magistrates. Their opposition grew stronger every day, and at last it became evident to the magistrates themselves that their severities were of no avail. When William Leddro was being sentenced to death, the magistrates were startled by the entrance into the court-room of Wenlock Christison, a Quaker who had been banished and forbidden to return on pain of death. Christison was arrested, but the complaints of the people became so loud that the magistrates were obliged to pause in their bloody work. Christison and twenty-seven of his companions were released from custody, the persecution of the Quakers was discontinued, and the general court, in obedience to the will of the people, repealed the barbarous laws against that sect.

The Apostle to the Indians.

In pleasing contrast with these severities were the efforts of the Puritans to spread a knowledge of the gospel among the savages. Chief among those engaged in the good work was John Eliot, the minister of Roxbury, whose labors won him the name of "the apostle Eliot." He went among the red men in the forests, and acquired a knowledge of their language that he might preach to them in their own tongue. When he had become sufficiently proficient in it, he translated the Bible into the Indian language. This translation was printed at Cambridge, and a part of the type was set by an Indian compositor. He spent many years in the preparation of his Bible, and made a good use of it during his life; but it is now valuable only as a literary curiosity and as the evidence of the devotion of the translator to his noble work. The destruction of the race for which it was intended has made it a sealed book.

Eliot gathered his savage converts into a settlement at Natick, and taught the men the art of agriculture and the women to spin and to weave cloth. He had to encounter the

opposition of the chiefs and medicine men or priests, who resented his efforts to win their people from the worship and habits of their ancestors, but he persevered. He was greatly beloved by his disciples, and continued his labors among them far into old age, and to a limited extent to the day of his death, which took place when he had attained the ripe age of eighty-six years. "My memory, my utterance fails me," he said near the close of his life; "but I thank God my charity holds out still." When Walton, a brother minister, visited him on his death-bed, he greeted him with the words; "Brother, you are welcome; but retire to your study and pray that I may be gone." His last words on earth were the triumphal shout with which he entered upon his reward: "Welcome joy!"

Many of the Quakers, after the persecution against them was over, joined Eliot in his labors. He had other fellow-workers. The two Mayhews, father and son, Cotton, and Brainerd thought it a privilege to labor for the souls of the poor savages. Native preachers were ordained, and at last there were thirty churches of "praying Indians" under such preachers.

CHAPTER XIV

New England after the Restoration

Arrival of the News of the Restoration of Charles II.—The Regicides in New England—They are Protected—Revival of the Navigation Acts—Effect of this Measure upon the New England Colonies—Massachusetts Delays the Proclamation of the King—Connecticut Obtains a Charter—Union of New Haven with the Connecticut Colony—Rhode Island Given a New Charter—Massachusetts Settles her Difficulties with the Crown—Changes in the Government—High handed Acts of the Royal Commissioners—Troubles with the Indians—Injustice of the Whites—King Philip's War—A Forest Hero—An Incident in the Attack upon Hadley—Sufferings of the Colonies—Destruction of the Narragansetts—Death of Philip—Close of the War—England Asserts her Right to Tax the Colonies—Massachusetts buys Gorges' claims to Maine—New Hampshire Made a Separate Province—James II. Revokes the Charter of Massachusetts—Dudley and Randolph in New England—Andros Appointed Governor-General—His Tyranny—He Demands the Charter of Connecticut—It is Carried Away and Hidden—The Charter Oak—Fall of James II.—The People of Massachusetts take up Arms—Andros Arrested—Effects of the Revolution upon New England.

THE news of the restoration of Charles II. to the English throne was brought to Boston by Edward Whalley and William Goffe, two of the judges of Charles I. They came to seek refuge from the vengeance of the king, having offended him beyond forgiveness by their share in the death of his father. They remained about a year in Massachusetts, protected by the people, and preaching to them. A few months after their arrival, warrants for their arrest and transportation to England for trial arrived from the king, and to escape this danger they took refuge in New Haven.

The royal officers instituted a diligent search for them, and they were obliged to change their place of concealment frequently. Great rewards were offered for their betrayal, and even the Indians were urged to search the woods for their hiding-places. The people whom they trusted protected them, and aided them to escape the royal officers until the vigor of the search was exhausted. They then conducted them to a secure refuge in the vicinity of Hadley, where they remained in seclusion and peace until the close of their lives.

News was constantly arriving in the colonies of the execution of the men who had been the friends of America in the Parliament, and a general sadness was cast over the settlements by the tidings of the death of Hugh Peters and the noble Sir Henry Vane. From the first the people of New England saw plainly that they had little reason to expect justice at the hands of the royal government, and there was little rejoicing in that region at the return of the king to "his own again."

One of Charles's first acts was to revive in a more odious form the navigation act of the Long Parliament. We have spoken of the effect of this measure upon the colonies of Virginia and Maryland. This act closed the harbors of America against the vessels of every European nation save England, and forbade the exportation of certain American productions to any country but England or her possessions. This was a very serious blow to New England, and was intended as such. The colonies of that region had already built up a growing commerce, and this, together with their activity in shipbuilding, excited the envy and the hostility of the British merchants, who hoped, by

inducing the king to place these restrictions upon the colonies, to compel the Americans to depend upon them for the supply of all their wants.

Later on, America was forbidden not only to manufacture any articles which might compete with English manufactures in foreign markets, but to supply her own wants with her own manufactures. At the same time Parliament endeavored to destroy the trade that had grown up between New England and the southern colonies by imposing upon the articles exported from one colony to another a duty equal to that imposed upon the consumption of these articles in England.

Foul Injustice.

Thus did Great Britain lay the foundation of that system of commercial injustice toward her colonies which eventually deprived her of them, and which her greatest writer on political economy declared to be "a manifest violation of the rights of mankind." The policy thus established in the reign of Charles II. was never departed from. Each succeeding administration remained true to the principles of the navigation act, and consistently declined to admit the claim of the colonies to just and honorable treatment at the hands of the mother country.

Charles II. was promptly proclaimed in the colonies of Plymouth, Connecticut, New Haven and Rhode Island, and those provinces were administered in his name. Massachusetts, distrusting his purposes towards her, held back, and waited until he should show his intentions more plainly.

Connecticut had purchased the claims of the assigns of the Earl of Warwick to the region occupied by her, and had bought the territory of the Mohegans from Uncas, their sachem. The colony sent the younger Winthrop to England in 1661 to obtain a charter from the king. The noble character of Governor Winthrop was well known in England, and impressed even the profligate Charles. His reception was cordial and his mission entirely successful. In 1662, the king granted to the colony a charter incorporating Hartford and New Haven in one province under the name of Connecticut, and extending its limits from Long Island Sound westward to the Pacific Ocean, thus bestowing upon the colony those rich western lands which were subsequently made the basis of the magnificent school fund of Connecticut. The charter was substantially the same in its provisions as the constitution adopted by the Hartford colony. By it the king conferred upon the colonists the right to elect their own officers and to make and administer their own laws without interference from England in any event whatever. Connecticut was made independent in all but name, and the charter continued in force as the constitution of the state after the period of independence until 1818.

Good Fortune of Connecticut.

The colony of New Haven was much opposed to the union with Connecticut, and it required all Governor Winthrop's efforts to induce the people of that colony to accept it. The matter was adjusted in 1665, when the union was finally accomplished. The labors of Governor Winthrop were rewarded by his annual election as governor of Connecticut for fourteen years. Connecticut was a fortunate colony. Its government was ably and honestly administered; no persecutions marred its peace, and its course was uniformly prosperous and happy. It was always one of the most peaceful and orderly colonies of New England, and for a century its population doubled once in twenty years, notwithstanding frequent emigrations of its people to other parts of the country. The colony at an early day made a liberal provision for

education, and in 1700 Yale College was founded. It was originally located at Saybrooke, but in 1718 was removed to New Haven.

Rhode Island was equally fortunate. Through its resident agent at London, John Clarke, it made application to the king for a new charter, and after some delay, caused by the difficulty of arranging satisfactorily the limits of the province, a charter was granted in 1663, formerly establishing the colony of "Rhode Island and Providence Plantations" This charter continued to be the sole constitution of Rhode Island until the year 1842. By its provisions the government of the colony was to consist of a governor, deputy-governor, ten assistants, and representatives from the towns.

Equal Rights to All.

The laws were to be agreeable to those of England, but no oath of allegiance was required of the colony, and in matters of religion the charter declared that "no person within the said colony, at any time hereafter, shall be anywise molested, punished, disquieted, or called in any question for any difference in opinion in matters of religion; every person may at all times freely and fully enjoy his own judgment and conscience in matters of religious concernments." Freedom of conscience was not restricted to Christians; it was extended by the charter to infidels and pagans as well. This charter made the little colony secure against the attempts of Massachusetts to absorb her, and its reception by the people was joyful and enthusiastic.

At this period the population of Rhode Island was about twenty-five hundred. It increased rapidly and steadily; the excellent harbors of the province encouraged commerce, and the little state soon began to rival her larger associates in prosperity.

Massachusetts was from the first regarded with disfavor by the royal government. It delayed its acknowledgment of Charles II. for over a year, and the king was not proclaimed at Boston until the seventh of August, 1661. Even then the general court forbade all manifestations of joy. These signs of the independent spirit of the people had been observed in England, and the colony had been watched by the government with anything but favor. The enemies of the young state hurried their complaints before the king, and Massachusets at length found it to her interest to send commissioners to London, as, indeed, the express orders of the king required her to do. Among the agents sent over were John Norton and Simon Bradstreet, men of ability and moderation, who commanded the confidence of all classes of the colonists. Their instructions were to assure the king of the loyalty of Massachusetts, to engage his favor for the colony; but to agree to "nothing prejudicial to their present standing according to their patent, and to endeavor the establishment of the rights and privileges then enjoyed."

Two Parties in Massachusetts.

The commissioners reached London in January, 1662, and were graciously received by the king, who confirmed the charter, and granted a complete amnesty for all past offences against his majesty. He required, however, that all laws derogatory to his authority should be repealed; that the colonists should take the oath of allegiance to him; that justice should be administered in his name: that the right of suffrage should be thrown open to all freeholders of competent estates; and that all who wished to do so should be free to use "the book of common prayer, and perform their devotion in the manner established in England."

These were better terms than the commissioners had reason to expect, and were not in themselves objectionable, as Massachusetts was growing beyond its early prejudices; but the acceptance of them would have implied an acknowledgment by the colony of the king's right to change its fundamental law, and to interfere with its affairs at pleasure. Massachusetts was at once divided into two parties, the larger of which maintained the independence of the colony of royal control; the smaller party supported the claims of the king. Under other circumstances no opposition would have been made to the toleration of the practices of the Church of England in the colony; but now that it seemed that episcopacy was to be introduced as the ally of the royal power, the people of Massachusetts resolved to prevent it from obtaining a foothold in their midst. The general court resolved to maintain their political independence, and their religious establishment as well. As a measure of precaution, the charter was secretly intrusted for safe-keeping to a committee of four, appointed by the general court; and it was ordered that only small bodies of officers and men should be allowed to land from ships, and should be required to yield a strict obedience to the laws of the province while on shore.

Contempt for Puritan Customs.

These last measures were adopted because of the appointment by the king of commissioners to regulate the affairs of New England. The commissioners reached Boston in July, 1664, escorted by the fleet sent out from England for the reduction of New Amsterdam. They were ordered to investigate the manner in which the charters of the New England colonies had been exercised, and had "full authority to provide for the peace of the country, according to the royal instructions, and their own discretion"—a power which Massachusetts was justified in regarding as dangerous to her liberties.

The People Redress their Wrongs.

The commissioners cared very little for the prejudices of the people of Massachusetts, and from the first proceeded to outrage their feelings. They introduced the services of the Church of England into Boston to the great disgust of the people. The Puritans had always observed the old Jewish custom of beginning their Sabbath at sunset. The commissioners contemptuously disregarded this custom, and spent Saturday evening in merry-making. They soon gave cause for more serious alarm by exercising the powers with which they had been intrusted, and proceeding to redress the grievances of the people. All persons who had complaints against Massachusetts were called upon to lay them before the commissioners, and Rhode Island and the Narragansett chiefs promptly availed themselves of the invitation. The general court now cut the matter short by a decisive step, and sternly ordered the commissioners to discontinue their proceedings, as contrary to the charter. The commissioners obeyed the order, and though the firmness of the colony aroused the indignation of the king, he was not able to shake the determination of a free people.

Nor was this the only opposition shown by New England to the injustice of the mother country. The navigation acts were generally disregarded; they could not be enforced; and Boston and the other New England ports continued to enjoy their growing commerce as freely as before the passage of these infamous acts. Vessels from all the other colonies, and from France, Spain, Holland and Italy, as well as from England, were to be seen at all seasons in the port of Boston.

Massachusetts owned the greater number of vessels built and operated in America, and was the principal carrier for the other colonies. Its ships sailed to the most distant lands beyond the sea, and the commerce of the colony was rapidly becoming a source of great wealth. So marked indeed was the prosperity of New England, that upon the receipt of the news of the great fire in London the colonists were able to send large sums to the assistance of the sufferers. The people of New England were industrious and frugal. Villages multiplied rapidly, and wherever a village sprang up a common school accompanied it. The villages began to assume a more tasteful and pleasing appearance, and men gave more care to the adornment and beautifying of their homes.

INDIAN LIFE IN THEIR NATIVE FORESTS.

The population of New England in 1675 has been estimated at about 55,000 souls, divided among the colonies as follows: Plymouth, about 7,000; Connecticut, about 14,000; Massachusetts, about 22,000; Maine, about 4,000; New Hampshire, about 4,000; Rhode Island, about 4,000. The settlements lay principally along the coast, from New Haven to the northeastern border of Maine. Little progress had been made towards penetrating the interior. Haverhill, Deerfield, Northfield and Westfield were towns on the remote frontier.

This rapid growth alarmed the Indians, who had already begun to regard the whites as enemies bent on their destruction. Though there had been peace for forty years in New England, the savages saw that the policy pursued by the settlers was meant to force them back from the lands of their fathers. The whites had gradually absorbed the best lands in New England, and the red men had been as gradually crowded down upon the narrow necks and bays of the southern shores of the Plymouth and Rhode Island colonies. This had been done in pursuance

of a settled policy, as the savages could be more carefully watched, and more easily managed in these localities than if left to roam at will over the country. The Indians on their part sullenly resented the course of the whites, and they had cause for complaint. They were ignorant of the art of cultivating the soil, and unwilling to practice it, and in their restricted limits it was difficult for them to obtain the means of supporting life. The game had been almost entirely driven from the forests, and the savages were forced to depend upon fish for their food; and these were obtained in scanty and uncertain quantities. Thus the very success of New England was about to bring upon it the most serious misfortunes it had yet sustained.

The Chief Entrapped.

Massasoit, who had been the early friend of the English, left two sons at his death, Wamsutta and Metacom, who had long been reckoned among the friends of the Plymouth colony. They were frequent visitors at Plymouth, and had received from the English the names of Alexander and Philip. At the death of Massasoit, Wamsutta, or Alexander, became chief of the Wampanoags. He and his brother Philip were men of more than ordinary abilities, and felt deeply the wrongs which were beginning to fall thickly upon their race. Uncas, the chief of the Mohegans, the determined enemy of Wamsutta, exerted himself, with success, to fill the minds of the English with suspicions of the intentions of the Wampanoag chieftain, and it was resolved to arrest him and bring him to Plymouth.

Winslow was sent at the head of an armed force, and succeeded in surprising the chief in his hunting-lodge, together with eighty of his followers. The proud spirit of Wamsutta chafed with such fury at the indignity thus put upon him that he was seized with a dangerous fever, and the English were obliged to permit him to return home. "He died on his way," says Elliott. "He was carried home on the shoulders of men, and borne to his silent grave near Mount Hope, in the evening of the day, and in the prime of his life, between lines of sad, quick-minded Indians, who well believed him the victim of injustice and ingratitude; for his father had been the ally, not the subject, of England, and so was he, and the like indignity had not before been put upon any sachem."

By the death of his brother, Metacom, or Philip, became chief of the Wampanoags. He kept his own council, but the whites soon had cause to believe that he meditated a desperate vengeance upon them for the death of Wamsutta and the wrongs of his race. To make the sense of injury deeper in his mind, the Plymouth authorities treated him with great harshness and compelled him to give up his arms. A "praying Indian" who lived among his people informed the colonists that the chief meditated harm against them, and his dead body was soon after found. Three of Philip's men were suspected of the murder. They were arrested, tried at Plymouth, and found guilty by a jury composed of whites and Indians, and were put to death. This was early in 1675.

Cry for Revenge.

The execution of these men awoke a wild thirst for revenge among the tribe to which they belonged, and the young warriors clamored loudly for war against the English. Philip, whose vigorous mind enabled him to judge more clearly of the issue of such a struggle, entered into the contest with reluctance, for he saw that it must end in the destruction of his race. He was powerless to resist the universal sentiment of his people, and like a true hero resolved to make the best of the situation in which he was placed,

and to share the fate of his nation. The Indians were tolerably well provided with fire-arms, for, in spite of the severe punishments denounced against the sale of weapons to the savages, the colonists had not been proof against the temptations of gain held out to them by this traffic.

Their chief dependence, however, was upon their primitive weapons. The English, on the other hand, were well armed, and were provided with forts and towns which furnished them with secure places of refuge.

KING PHILIP.

They might have averted the war by conciliating the savages, but they persisted in their unjust treatment of them, regarding them as "bloody heathen," who it was their duty to drive back into the wilderness.

Philip was able to bring seven hundred desperate warriors into the field. They had no hope of success, and they fought only for vengeance. They knew every nook and hiding-place of the forest, and in these natural defences could hope to continue the struggle as long as the leaves remained on the trees to conceal their lurking-places from the white man's search.

War Breaks Out.

Immediately after the execution of the three Indians at Plymouth, Philip's men had begun to rob exposed houses and carry off cattle, but the war did not actually begin until the twenty-fourth of June, 1675, the day of fasting and prayer appointed by the government as a preparation for the struggle. On that day the people of Swanzey, in Plymouth colony, while returning home from church, were attacked by the Wampanoags, and eight or nine were killed. Philip burst into tears when the news of this attack was brought to him, but he threw himself with energy into the hopeless struggle, now that it had come.

Reinforcements were sent from Massachusetts to the aid of the Plymouth colony, and on the twenty-ninth of June the united forces made an attack upon the Wampanoags, killed six or seven of their men and drove them to a swamp in which they took refuge. The English surrounded this swamp, determined to starve the Indians into submission, but Philip and his warriors escaped and took refuge among the Nipmucks, a small tribe occupying what is now Worcester county, Massachusetts. The English then marched into the territory of the Narragansetts and compelled them to agree to remain neutral, and to deliver up the fugitive Indians who should take refuge among them. This accomplished, the colonists hoped they had put an end to the war.

Philip succeeded in inducing the Nipmucks to join him in the struggle, and his warriors began to hang around the English settlements. The whites were murdered wherever they ventured to expose themselves, and a feeling of general terror spread through the

colonies. No one knew the extent of the hostility of the savage tribes, or how many allies Philip had gained; nor was it certain when or where the next great blow of the savages would be struck.

Strange Stories.

Some of the colonists began to give way to superstitious fears. It was asserted that an Indian bow, a sign of impending evil, had been seen clearly defined against the heavens, and that at the eclipse which occurred at this time the moon bore the figure of an Indian scalp on its face. The northern heavens glowed with auroral lights of unusual brilliancy; troops of phantom horsemen were heard to dash through the air; the sighing of the night wind was like the sound of whistling bullets; and the howling of the wolves was fiercer and more constant than usual. These things, the superstitious declared, were warnings that the colonies were about to be severely punished for their sins, among which they named profane swearing, the neglect of bringing up their children in more rigid observances, the licensing of ale houses, and the wearing of long hair by the men, and of gay apparel by the women. The more extreme even declared that they were about to be "judged" for not exterminating the Quakers.

In the meantime, Philip, with a party of Nipmucks and his own people, carried the war into the valley of the Connecticut, and spread death along the line of settlements from Springfield to Northfield, then the most remote inland town. With the hope of withdrawing the Nipmucks, who could muster fifteen hundred warriors, from the confederacy, Captain Hutchinson, with twenty men, was sent to treat with them. His party was ambushed and murdered at Brookfield early in August. The Indians then attacked Brookfield, and burned the village with the exception of one strong house to which the colonists retreated.

THE BURNING OF BROOKFIELD BY THE INDIANS.

After a siege of two days, during which they kept up a constant fire upon the building, they attempted to burn the house, but were prevented by a shower of rain which

extinguished the flames. At the same moment a reinforcement of fifty men arrived to the aid of the whites, and the savages were driven off with the loss of several of their number. Philip succeeded in drawing to his support nearly all the tribes of New England, and it was resolved by the savages to make a general effort for the destruction of the whites. A concerted attack was to be made upon a large number of settlements at the same day and hour, and the Sabbath was chosen as the day most favorable for the movement.

King Philip a Refugee.

Deerfield in Massachusetts and Hadley in Connecticut were among the places attacked. The former was burned. Hadley was assailed while the congregation were worshiping in the church, and the whites were hard pressed by their antagonists. Suddenly in the midst of the battle there appeared a tall and venerable man with a flowing beard, and clad in a strange dress. With sword in hand he rallied the settlers, and led them to a new effort, in which the savages were beaten back and put to flight. When the battle was over, the stranger could not be found, and the wondering people declared that he was an angel sent by God for their deliverance. It was Goffe, the regicide, who had suddenly left his place of concealment to aid his countrymen in their struggle with the savages. He had been lying in concealment at the house of Russell, the minister of Hadley, and returned to his place of refuge when the danger was over.

On the whole, the Indians, though they succeeded in causing great suffering to the colonies, were unsuccessful in their efforts during the summer and autumn of 1675. In October, Philip returned to his old home, but, finding Mount Hope in ruins, took shelter among the Narragansetts, who protected him notwithstanding their promise to deliver up all fugitives to the English. The colonial authorities seeing that the tribe had no intention of fulfilling their promise, and being fearful that Philip would succeed in winning them over to his side, resolved to anticipate the danger and treat them as enemies.

A force was collected and sent into the Narragansett country in December, 1675. This tribe, numbering about three thousand souls, had erected a strong fort of palisades, in the midst of a swamp near the present town of Kingston, Rhode Island. It was almost inaccessible, and had but a single entrance, defended by a morass, which could be passed only by means of a fallen tree. The English were led to the fort by an Indian traitor, and attacked it on the nineteenth of December. After a severe fight of two hours they succeeded in forcing an entrance into the fort. The wigwams were then fired, and the whole place was soon in flames. The defeat of the savages was complete, but it was purchased by the loss of six captains and two hundred and fifty men, killed and wounded, on the part of the English.

Fury of the Savages.

About one thousand of the Narragansetts were slain, their provisions were destroyed and numbers were made prisoners. Those who escaped wandered through the frozen woods without shelter, and for food were compelled to dig for nuts and acorns under the snow. Many died during the winter. Canonchet, the Narragansett chief, was among the survivors. "We will fight to the last man rather than become servants to the English," said the undaunted chieftain. He was taken prisoner in April, 1676, near Blackstone, and was offered his life if he would induce the Indians to make peace He refused the offer with scorn, and, when

MRS. ROWLANDSON CAPTURED BY THE INDIANS. 175

sentenced to death, answered proudly: "I like it well; I shall die before I speak anything unworthy of myself."

In the spring of 1676, Philip, who had been to the west to endeavor to induce the Mohawks to join the war against the English, returned to place himself at the head of his countrymen in New England. The work of murdering and burning was resumed with renewed fury. The Indians seemed to be everywhere and innumerable, and the whites could find safety only in their forts. The surviving Narragansetts scourged the Rhode Island and Plymouth colonies with fire and axe, and even the aged Roger Williams was obliged to take up arms for the defence of his home. Lancaster, Medford, Weymouth, Groton, Springfield, Sudbury and Marlborough, in Massachusetts, and Providence and Warwick, in Rhode Island, were destroyed either wholly or in part, and numerous other settlements were attacked and made to suffer more or less severely.

Mother and Child Wounded.

Among the prisoners carried away by the savages was Mrs. Rowlandson, wife of the resident minister, and her little girl six years old. A single bullet fired during the attack wounded both mother and child. With that devotion which is part of the nature of a mother, she carried and nursed the little one for nine days, when it died in her arms. The parent endured many hardships, and was a captive among the Indians for three months, when she was ransomed for twenty pounds.

As the season advanced the cause of the Indians became more hopeless, and they began to quarrel among themselves. In June the Nipmucks submitted, and the tribes on the Connecticut refused to shelter Philip any longer. He then appealed to the Mohawks to take up the hatchet, but seeing that his cause was hopeless, they refused to join him. In proud despair Philip went back to Mount Hope to die. One of his people urged him to make peace with the whites, and was struck dead by the chief for daring to mention such a humiliation.

"I Am Ready to Die!"

It became known that Philip had returned to his old home, and Captain Church marched against him, dispersed his followers, and took the chief's wife and little son prisoners. Philip, who had borne the reverses and the reproaches of his nation with the firmness of a hero, was conquered by this misfortune. "My heart breaks," he cried, despairingly, "I am ready to die!" He was soon attacked by Church in his place of concealment, and in attempting to escape was shot by an Indian who was serving in the ranks of his enemies. Philip's little son was sold as a slave in Bermuda, and the grandson of Massasoit, who had welcomed and befriended the English, was condemned to pass his days in bondage in a foreign clime.

The death of Philip was soon followed by the close of hostilities. The power of the Indians was completely broken. Of the Narragansetts scarcely one hundred men were left alive, and the other tribes had suffered severely. The Mohegans had remained faithful to the English, and Connecticut had been happily spared the sufferings experienced by the other colonies, which were very severe. Twelve or thirteen towns were destroyed, and many others were seriously crippled. Six hundred houses were burned, and the pecuniary losses amounted to the then enormous sum of half a million of dollars. Over six hundred men, chiefly young men, fell in the war, and there was scarcely a family which did not mourn some loved one who had given his life for the country.

In all their distress the colonies received no aid from England. The mother country left them to fight out their struggle of life and death alone. The English people and government were indifferent to their fate. One generous Non-conformist church in Dublin sent a contribution of five hundred pounds to the sufferers. This relief was gratefully acknowledged; but to the credit of New England it should be remembered that her colonies never asked assistance from England. The king was very careful, however, to exact every penny he could wring from the colonies, and towards the close of the Indian war established a royal custom-house at Boston for the collection of duties. Duties were imposed upon the commerce of the colonies, and the royal government endeavored to enforce their payment by threatening to refuse the New England ships the protection which enabled them to escape the outrages of the African pirates of the Mediterranean.

The province of Maine had been restored by Charles II. to the heirs of Sir Ferdinand Gorges, and in 1677 Massachusetts purchased their claims for the sum of twelve hundred and fifty pounds, and thus confirmed her possession of the region between the Piscataqua and the Kennebec. The region between the Kennebec and the Penobscot was held by the Duke of York, and that from the Penobscot to the St. Croix was occupied by the French.

In July, 1679, King Charles detached New Hampshire from Massachusetts, and organized it as a royal province; the first ever erected in New England. The province at once asserted its rights, and a controversy was begun with the crown, which was continued for several years. The people resisted the effort to force upon them the observances of the English church, and the collection of taxes assessed by the royal officials, and Cranfield, the royal governor, finding it impossible to continue his arbitrary rule, wrote to the British government, "I shall esteem it the greatest happiness in the world to remove from these unreasonable people. They cavil at the royal commission, and not at my person. No one will be accepted by them who puts the king's commands in execution."

Conflict With the King.

In the last years of his reign Charles II. made a determined effort to destroy the charter of Massachusetts. Commissioners were sent by the colony to England to endeavor to defend its rights, but the royal government was resolved upon its course, and the people of Massachusetts were equally determined not to consent to the surrender of their liberties. At length, in 1684, the general court having in the name of the people distinctly refused to make a surrender of the charter to the king, the English courts declared the charter forfeited. A copy of the judgment was sent to Boston, and was received there on the second of July, 1685. The colony was full of apprehension. The charter under which it had grown and prospered, and which secured its liberties to it without the interference of the crown, had been stricken down by the subservient courts of the mother country, and there was now no defence between the liberties of Massachusetts and the arbitrary will of the king, who had given the colony good cause to fear his hostility.

James II. came to the English throne in 1685. He was even more hostile to New England than his brother Charles. He was a bigoted Roman Catholic, and was resolved to introduce that faith, not only into England, but also into the colonies. He attempted to accomplish this by proclaiming an indulgence or toleration of all creeds. As he

dared not proceed openly to violate his coronation oath, he hoped by this underhanded scheme to place his own religion upon such a footing in England that he would soon be in a position to compel its adoption by his subjects. He had greatly mistaken the temper of both England and America.

Joseph Dudley, who had been sent to England as one of the agents of Massachusetts in the last controversy between the colony and King Charles, now found it to his interest to become as ardent a defender as he had formerly been an opponent of the royal prerogative, and James finding him a willing abettor of his designs, appointed him president of Massachusetts until a royal governor should arrive, for the king was resolved to take away the charters of all the colonies and make them royal provinces. At the same time, being determined to curtail the liberty of the press, the king appointed Edward Randolph its censor. Dudley was regarded by the people as the betrayer of the liberties of his country, and both he and Randolph were cordially despised by them. The king in appointing Dudley made no provision for an assembly or general court, as he meant to govern the colonies without reference to the people. He regarded the American provinces as so many possessions of the crown, possessed of no rights, and entitled to no privileges save what he chose to allow them.

SIR EDMUND ANDROS.

In pursuance of this plan, Sir Edmund Andros, whom the king had appointed governor of New York, was made governor-general of all New England. He reached Boston in December, 1686. Dudley was made chief justice, and Randolph colonial secretary. The governor-general was empowered by the king to appoint his own council, impose such taxes as he should think fit, command the militia of the colonies, enforce the navigation acts, prohibit printing, and establish episcopacy in New England; and in order to enable him to enforce his will, two companies of soldiers were sent over with him and quartered in Boston. Thus were the liberties of New England placed at the mercy of a tyrant, and thus was inaugurated a despotism the most galling that was ever imposed upon men of English descent.

Andros promptly put in force a series of the most arbitrary measures. The public schools, which had been fostered with such care by the colonial governments, were allowed to fall into decay. The support which had been granted to the churches was withdrawn. The people were forbidden to assemble for the discussion of any public matter, though they were allowed the poor privilege of electing their town officers. The form of oath in use in New England was an appeal to Heaven with uplifted hand. The governor now ordered the substitution of a form which required the person to place his hand on the Bible. This was particularly repugnant to the Puritans, who regarded it as a "Popish practice." Probate fees were increased twenty-fold. The holders of lands were told that their titles were invalid because obtained under a charter which had been declared forfeited.

Tyrannical Proceedings.

No person was allowed to leave the colony without a pass signed by the governor. The Puritan magistrates and ministers were refused authority to unite persons in marriage. The clergyman of the Church of England, stationed at Boston, was the only person in New England who could perform a legal marriage. Episcopacy was formally established, and the people were required to build a church for its uses. At the command of the king, a tax of a penny in the pound, and a poll-tax of twenty pence, was imposed upon every person in the colony.

Some of the towns had the boldness to refuse to pay this tax, and John Wise, the minister of Ipswich, advised his fellow-townsmen to resist it. He and a number of others were arrested and fined. When they pleaded their privileges under the laws of England, they were told by one of the council: "You have no privilege left you but not to be sold as slaves." "Do you think," asked one of the judges, "that the laws of England follow you to the ends of the earth?" The iniquitous exactions of Andros and his associates threatened the country with ruin. When the magistrates mentioned this, they were told, "It is not for his majesty's interest you should thrive." "The governor invaded liberty and property after such a manner," wrote Increase Mather, "as no man could say anything was his own."

The Old "Charter Oak."

The other colonies came in for their share of bad treatment. Soon after he reached Boston, Andros demanded of the authorities of Rhode Island the surrender of their charter. Governor Clarke declined to comply with this demand, and Andros went to Providence, broke the seal of the colony, and declared its government dissolved. He appointed a commission irresponsible to the people for the government of Rhode Island, and then had the effrontery to declare that the people of that colony were satisfied with what he had done.

In October, Andros went to Connecticut with an armed guard to take possession of the government of that colony. He reached Hartford on the thirty-first of the month, and found the legislature in session, and demanded of that body the surrender of the charter. The discussion was prolonged until evening, and then candles were brought, and the charter was placed on the table. Suddenly the lights were extinguished, and when they were relighted the charter could not be found. It had been secured by Joseph Wadsworth of Hartford, and carried to the southern part of the city, where it was concealed in a hollow oak tree, which was afterwards known as the "Charter Oak."

Andros, furious at the disappearance of the charter, was not to be balked of his purpose

of seizing the colonial government, and taking the record book of the assembly, he wrote the word "*Finis*" at the end of the last day's proceedings. He then declared the colonial government at an end, and proceeded to administer the affairs of the province in the spirit in which he had governed Massachusetts and Rhode Island.

The people of New England had borne these outrages with a patience which no one had expected of them. They were a law-abiding people, and wished to exhaust all legal means of redress before proceeding to extreme measures for their protection: but

THE CHARTER OAK.

the party in favor of driving Andros and his fellow-plunderers out of the country was rapidly growing stronger, and it was not certain how much longer the policy of forbearance would be continued. Increase Mather was appointed to go to England and endeavor to procure a redress of the grievances of the colonies. It was a dangerous mission, for the king was in full sympathy with the men whom he had placed over the liberties of New England. It was also difficult to leave America without the knowledge of Andros and his colleagues, but Mather succeeded in escaping their vigilance, and was on his way to the old world when relief arrived from a most unexpected quarter.

The efforts of James to bring about the re-establishment of the Roman Catholic religion in England roused the whole English nation against him, and in 1689 the nation invited William, Prince of Orange, the husband of James' eldest daughter, Mary, to come over to England and assume the throne. James, left without any adherents, fled to France, and William and Mary were securely seated upon the throne.

The news of the landing of William in England and the flight of King James reached Boston on the fourth of April, 1689. The messenger was at once imprisoned by Andros, but his tidings soon became known to the citizens. On the morning of the eighteenth the people of Boston took up arms, and having secured the person of the commander of the royal frigate in the harbor, seized the royalist sheriff.

Sent to England for Trial.

The militia were assembled, and Andros and his companions were obliged to take refuge in the fort. Simon Bradstreet, the governor who had held office at the time of the abrogation of the charter, was called upon by the people to resume his post, and the old magistrates were reinstated and organized as a council of safety. Andros and his creatures attempted to escape to the frigate, but were prevented and were compelled to surrender. The next day reinforcements came pouring into Boston from the other settlements, and the fort was taken and the frigate mastered. Town meetings were now held throughout the colony, and it was voted to resume the former charter. The people were almost unanimous in favor of this course, but the counsels of a more timid minority prevailed, and the council, which had appointed itself to the control of

affairs, decided to solicit a new charter from William and Mary. A general court was convened on the twenty-second of May. The people of the colony were anxious that Andros, Dudley and Randolph should receive prompt punishment for their offences, but the authorities wisely determined to send them to England for trial.

Plymouth, upon receipt of the news from Boston, seized the agent of Andros, imprisoned him, and re-established the government which Andros had overthrown, under the constitution signed on board the "Mayflower." There were none of the old Pilgrim fathers living to witness this event, but their children were none the less determined to maintain unimpaired the liberties they had inherited from them.

The Charter Safe.

Rhode Island promptly resumed her charter and reinstated the officers whom Andros had displaced. Connecticut, upon hearing of the downfall of the governor-general, brought out her charter from its hiding place, and restored the old officers to their positions.

Thus the work of James II. was overthrown, and the destinies of New England were once more in the hands of her own people. The generation that had settled New England had nearly all been gathered to their rest, and their children were in some respects different from the fathers. They had learned lessons of toleration, and had acquired many of the refining graces that the elder Puritans regarded as mere vanity. They retained, however, the earnest and lofty virtues which had made the first generation superior to hardships and trials of all kinds, and which had enabled them in the face of every discouragement to lay the foundations of the great commonwealths which to-day cherish their memories as their most precious legacies. The fathers of New England richly merited the honor which succeeding generations have delighted to bestow upon their memories. However they may have erred, they were men who earnestly sought to do right in all things, and who did their duty fearlessly according to the light before them.

In the first generation we have noticed an extraordinary degree of influence exerted by the ministers. This was due to no desire of the Puritans to connect church and state, but was owing to the fact that the ministers represented the best educated and most intellectual class of that day, and the people regarded them as the best qualified guides in the community. As New England advanced in prosperity her schools and colleges were able to turn out numbers of educated men, who embraced the other learned professions, and divided the influence with the ministers. New England always chose its leaders from among its most intelligent men, and its people always yielded a willing homage to the claims of intellect.

At the downfall of Andros there were about two hundred thousand white inhabitants in the English colonies of North America. Of these, Massachusetts, including Plymouth and Maine, had about forty-four thousand; New Hampshire and Rhode Island about six thousand each; Connecticut about twenty thousand; making the total population of New England about seventy-six thousand.

CHAPTER XV

Witchcraft in Massachusetts

Results of the Failure of Massachusetts to Resume her Charter—The New Charter—Loss of the Liberties of the Colon—Union of Plymouth with Massachusetts Bay—Belief in Witchcraft—The History of Witchcraft in Massachusetts—The Case of the Goodwin Children—Cotton Mather Espouses the Cause of the Witches—Samuel Parris—He Originates the Salem Delusion—A Strange History—A Special Court Appointed for the Trial of the Witches—The Victims—Execution of the Rev. George Burroughs—Cotton Mather's Part in the Tragedies—The General Court takes Action in Behalf of the People—End of the Persecution—Failure of Cotton Mather's Attempt to Save his Credit.

THE decision of the magistrates of Massachusetts to disregard the wishes of a majority of the people of the colony, who desired an immediate restoration of the government under the old charter, and to wait for a new charter from William and Mary, gave great offence to the popular party. Had the wish of this party been complied with, Massachusetts might have recovered every liberty and privilege of which she had been deprived by King James. Increase Mather distinctly declares that "had they at that time entered upon the full exercise of their charter government, as their undoubted right, wise men in England were of opinion that they might have gone on without disturbance." The self-constituted government hesitated, however, and the opportunity was lost.

When the convention of the people met, in May, 1689, they refused to acknowledge the council that had taken charge of affairs upon the downfall of Andros, and demanded that the governor, deputy governor and assistants elected in 1686 should be restored to office. The council refused to comply with this demand, and the matter was referred to the people, who sustained their representatives. A compromise was effected, and the council agreed to permit the officers of 1686 to resume their places until instructions could be received from England. Agents were sent to England to solicit a restoration of the charter, and their appeal was supported by the English Presbyterians with great unanimity. Even the Archbishop of Canterbury urged the king "not to take away from the people of New England any of the privileges which Charles I. had granted them."

In spite of the pressure exerted upon him in behalf of the colony, King William granted to Massachusetts a charter which placed the liberties of the province so entirely at the mercy of the crown that the colonial agent refused to accept it. There was no help for it, however, and the charter became the fundamental law of Massachusetts. Under the old charter the governor of Massachusetts had been elected annually by the votes of the freemen; he was now to be appointed by the king and to serve during the royal pleasure. He was given power to summon the general court, and to adjourn or dissolve that body.

The election of magistrates of all kinds, which had been confided to the people by the old charter, was taken from them, and henceforth these officials were to be appointed by the governor with the consent of the council. The old charter had made the decision of the colonial courts final; the new permitted appeals from these tribunals to the privy council in England. The old charter had given to the general court full

powers of legislation; the new conferred upon the governor the right to veto any of its measures, and reserved to the crown the power of cancelling any act of colonial legislation within three years after its passage. The council was at first appointed by the king, but was subsequently elected by the joint ballot of the two branches of the general court.

To compensate the people for the loss of their political power the king greatly enlarged the limits of the colony. Massachusetts and Plymouth were united in one province, the name of the former being given to the whole. The Elizabeth Islands were also added to the province, and its northern boundary was extended to the St. Lawrence. Toleration was granted to every religious sect except the Roman Catholics. New Hampshire was separated from the jurisdiction of Massachusetts and made a separate province; but Maine and the vast wilderness beyond it were confirmed to the Bay colony. The charter bore the date of October 7, 1691. Upon the nomination of Increase Mather, one of the colonial agents, Sir William Phipps, a native of New England, a well-meaning but incompetent man, who was in religious matters strongly inclined to superstition, was appointed governor of Massachusetts, William Stoughton, "a man of cold affections, proud, self-willed, and covetous of distinction" —a man universally hated by the people— was appointed deputy governor to please Cotton Mather. The members of the council were chosen entirely for their devotion "to the interests of the churches."

THE REV. COTTON MATHER.

While these matters were in progress of settlement, there occurred in Massachusetts one of the most singular delusions recorded

in history, and which was in some respects the last expiring effort of ecclesiastical ambition to control the political affairs of the colony. The clergy had always sought in New England, as in other lands, to fight their political enemies with spiritual weapons. They now carried this to an extreme which taught the people of New England a lesson that was not soon forgotten.

Witches and Witchcraft.

The belief in witchcraft has not been confined to any single nation, and at this time was common to America and Europe. "The people did not rally to the error; they accepted the superstition only because it had not yet been disengaged from religion." It was believed that as Christians were united with God by a solemn covenant, so were witches leagued with the devil by a tie which, once formed, they could not dissolve. Those who thus placed themselves in the arch-fiend's power were used by him as instruments to torment their fellow-men. They were given power to annoy them by pinching them, thrusting invisible pins into them, pulling their hair, afflicting them with disease, killing their cattle and chickens with mysterious ailments, upsetting their wagons and carts, and by practising upon them many other puerile and ludicrous tricks.

The witches generally exerted their arts upon those whom they hated, but it was a matter of doubt how many persons were included in their dislikes. One of the most popular superstitions was that of the "Witches' sacrament," a gathering at which the devil, in the form of "a small black man," presided, and required his followers to renounce their Christian baptism and to sign their names in his book. They were then re-baptised by the devil, and the meeting was closed with horrid rites which varied in different narratives according to the imagination of the relators.

The belief in the existence of witchcraft was held by some of the leading minds of this period. Sir Matthew Hale, Lord Chief Justice of England, was firmly convinced of the truth of the doctrine, and it was advocated by many of the clergy of England. In New England the clergy held it to be heresy to deny the existence of witches, which, they claimed was clearly taught in the Scriptures. It was evidently to their interest to maintain this belief, as it made them the chief authorities in such cases, and furnished them with a powerful weapon against their adversaries.

Devils and Wizards.

By the early settlers of New England the Indians were supposed to be worshipers of the devil, and their medicine-men to be wizards. Governor Hutchinson, in his "History of Massachusetts," thus sums up the cases of supposed witchcraft that had occurred in the colony previous to the time or which we are now writing:

"The first suspicion of witchcraft among the English was about the year 1645, at Springfield, upon Connecticut River; several persons were supposed to be under an evil hand, and among the rest two of the minister's children. Great pains were taken to prove the facts upon several of the persons charged with the crime, but either the nature of the evidence was not satisfactory, or the fraud was suspected, and so no person was convicted until the year 1650, when a poor wretch, Mary Oliver, probably weary of her life from the general reputation of being a witch, after long examination, was brought to confession of her guilt, but I do not find that she was executed.

"Whilst this inquiry was making, Margaret Jones was executed at Charlestown; and Mr. Hale mentions a woman at Dorchester, and another at Cambridge about the

same time, who all at their death asserted their innocence. Soon after, Hugh Parsons was tried at Springfield, and escaped death. In 1655 Mrs. Hibbins, the assistant's widow, was hanged at Boston.

"In 1662, at Hartford, in Connecticut, one Ann Cole, a young woman who lived next door to a Dutch family, and no doubt had learned something of the language, was supposed to be possessed with demons, who sometimes spoke Dutch and sometimes English, and sometimes a language which nobody understood, and who held a conference with one another. Several ministers who were present took down the conference in writing and the names of several persons, mentioned in the course of the conference, as actors or bearing parts in it, particularly a woman, then in prison upon suspicion of witchcraft, one Greensmith, who upon examination, confessed and appeared to be surprised at the discovery. She owned that she and the others named had been familiar with a demon, who had carnal knowledge of her, and although she had not made a formal covenant, yet she had promised to be ready at his call, and was to have had a high frolic at Christmas, when the agreement was to have been signed. Upon this confession she was executed, and two more of the company were condemned. In 1669 Susanna Martin, of Salisbury, was bound over to the court upon suspicion of witchcraft, but escaped at that time.

A Fortunate Escape.

"In 1671 Elizabeth Knap, another *ventriloqua*, alarmed the people of Groton in much the same manner as Ann Cole had done those of Hartford; but her demon was not so cunning, for, instead of confining himself to old women, he railed at the good minister of the town and other people of good character, and the people could not then be prevailed on to believe him, but believed the girl when she confessed that she had been deluded, and that the devil had tormented her in the shape of good persons; so she escaped the punishment due to her fraud and imposture.

"In 1673 Eunice Cole, of Hampton, was tried, and the jury found her not legally guilty, but that there were strong grounds to suspect her of familiarity with the devil.

An Invisible Hand.

"In 1679 William Morse's house, at Newbury, was troubled with the throwing of bricks, stones, etc., and a boy of the family was supposed to be bewitched, who accused one of the neighbors; and in 1682 the house of George Walton, a Quaker, at Portsmouth, and another at Salmon Falls (in New Hampshire), were attacked after the same manner.

"In 1683 the demons removed to Connecticut River again, where one Desborough's house was molested by an invisible hand, and a fire kindled, nobody knew how, which burnt up a great part of his estate; and in 1684 Philip Smith, a judge of the court, a military officer and a representative of the town of Hadley, upon the same river (a hypochondriac person), fancied himself under an evil hand, and suspected a woman, one of his neighbors, and languished and pined away, and was generally supposed to be bewitched to death. While he lay ill, a number of brisk lads tried an experiment upon the old woman. Having dragged her out of her house, they hung her up until she was near dead, let her down, rolled her some time in the snow, and at last buried her in it and left her there, but it happened that she survived and the melancholy man died."

These cases, which were not generally regarded in the enlightened spirit of the writer we have quoted, served to confirm the common belief in witchcraft. Increase Mather published a work in 1684 containing

an account of the cases which had already occurred in the colony, and giving detailed descriptions of the manner in which the afflicted persons had exhibited their "deviltry." The publication of this work seemed to revive the trouble, and in a more aggravated form, for it is a singular fact that the general discussion of delusions of this kind rarely fails to produce an increase of the evil.

A Child Bewitched.

In 1688 a case occurred which excited general interest, and was the beginning of one of the saddest periods in the history of New England. The daughter of John Goodwin, a child of thirteen years, accused the daughter of an Irish laundress of stealing some linen. The mother of the laundress, a friendless emigrant, succeeded in disproving the charge, and abused the girl soundly for making a false accusation. Soon after this, the accuser was seized with a fit, and pretended to be bewitched in order to be revenged upon the poor Irish woman. Her younger sister and two of her brothers followed her example. They pretended to be dumb, then deaf, then blind, and then all three at once. "They were struck dead at the sight of the 'Assembly's Catechism,'" says Governor Hutchinson, dryly, "'Cotton's Milk for Babes,' and some other good books, but could read in Oxford jests, Popish and Quaker books, and the Common Prayer without any difficulty." Nevertheless their appetite was good, and they slept soundly at night. The youngest of these little impostors was less than five years old. It was at once given out that the Goodwin children were bewitched, and no one suspected or hinted at the fraud. They would bark like dogs and mew like cats, and a physician who was called in to treat them solemnly declared that they were possessed by devils, as he discovered many of the symptoms laid down in Increase Mather's book.

A conference of the four ministers of Boston, and one from Charlestown, was held at Goodwin's house, where they observed a day of fasting and prayer. As a result of their efforts, the youngest child, a boy of less than five years, was delivered of his evil spirit. The ministers now had no doubt that the children had been bewitched, and as the little ones accused the Irish woman of their misfortune, she was arrested, tried for witchcraft, convicted and hanged, notwithstanding that many persons thought the poor creature a lunatic.

Among the ministers who had investigated this case and had procured the execution of the woman was Cotton Mather, the son of Increase Mather, then president of Harvard College. He was a young man who had but recently entered the ministry, and was regarded as one of the most learned and gifted preachers in the colony. He was withal a man of overweening vanity and full of ambition. He could not bear contradiction, and was devoted to the maintenance of the political power of the clergy. He was superstitious by nature, and was firmly convinced of the reality of witchcraft. He had become deeply interested in the case of the Goodwin children, and in order to study it more deeply took the eldest girl to his house, where he could observe and experiment upon her devil at his leisure. She was a cunning creature, and soon found that it was to her interest to humor the young pastor in his views, and she played upon his weakness with a shrewdness and skill which were remarkable in one so young, and exhibit the credulity of the investigator in a most pitiable light.

"All Devils are Not Alike."

Mather carried on his experiments with a diligence which would have seemed ludicrous had its object been less baneful to the

community. He read the Bible, and prayed aloud in the presence of the girl, who would pretend to be thrown into a fit by the pious exercise. At the same time she read the Book of Common Prayer, or Quaker or Popish treatises, without any interruption from her familiar spirits. The minister then tested the proficiency of the devil in languages, by reading aloud passages of the Bible in Hebrew, Greek and Latin, which the girl professed to understand. When he tried her with an Indian dialect, however, she could not comprehend him. By other experiments, designed to ascertain if the spirits could read the thoughts of others, Mather came to the sage conclusion that "all devils are not alike sagacious." The girl flattered his vanity, and lulled his suspicion of fraud by telling him that his own person was especially protected against the evil spirits by the power of God, and that the devils did not dare to enter his study.

Pious Belief in Witchcraft.

The vanity of Cotton Mather was elated to the highest pitch by what he deemed his successful experiments, and he wrote a book upon witchcraft, in which he endeavored to prove the truth of his theories, and declared that he should esteem it a personal insult if any one should hereafter venture to deny the existence of witchcraft. His book was reprinted in London, with a preface by Richard Baxter, the well-known author of "The Saints' Rest," warmly indorsing it. It was very generally read in New England, and had a most pernicious effect upon the people by inducing them to give credit to the stories of the writer rather than to listen to the promptings of their own good sense.

Still there were some in Boston who had the boldness to differ with Mather, and these the indignant divine denounced as "sadducees." Mather supported his views by his sermons. "There are multitudes of sadducees in our day," he declared. "A devil in the apprehension of these mighty acute philosophers is no more than a quality or a distemper. Men counted it wisdom to credit nothing but what they say and feel. They never saw any witches; therefore there are none." The ministers of Boston and Charlestown gave their young colleague their hearty support, and declared that those who doubted the existence of witchcraft were guilty of atheism, and indorsed Mather's book as proving clearly that "there is both a God and a devil, and witchcraft." Thus did the clergy of Massachusetts set themselves to the task of forcing their own narrow views upon the people. It was a needed lesson. New England had passed the time when clerical rule in political affairs could be productive of good, and was now to be taught the danger of permitting it to extend beyond this period.

At this juncture Mather's power was greatly strengthened by the appointment of his friend and parishioner, Sir William Phipps, as governor of the province, and the nomination of his father-in-law and many of his intimate friends to the council. The ambitious Stoughton, the deputy governor, was also subject to his influence. Here was a fine opportunity to endeavor to establish the power of the clergy upon the old foundations, which were being destroyed by the growing intelligence and independence of the people. Many of the ministers, under the lead of Cotton Mather, had committed themselves to the doctrine of witchcraft, and the people must accept it upon their simple assertion. No inquiry must be allowed into the matter, the opinions of the ministers must be adopted by the laity. And so Mather and his followers resorted to the usual weapons of superstition to accomplish the success of their plans.

In 1692, a new case of witchcraft occurred in Salem village, now the town of Danvers. The minister of this place was Samuel Parris, between whom and a number of his people there had for some time existed dissensions of such a bitter nature that the attention of the general court had been directed to them. In February, 1692, the daughter and niece of Parris, the former a child of nine years, and the latter of less than twelve, gave signs of being bewitched. Parris at once recognized the opportunity which was thus offered him for vengeance upon his enemies, and deliberately availed himself of it. He demanded of the children the names of the persons who had bewitched them, and then proceeded to accuse those whom he succeeded in inducing the girls to denounce. The first victim was Rebecca Nurse. She was known in the community as a woman of exemplary Christian character; but she was one of the most resolute opponents of Parris. Upon his accusation she was arrested and imprisoned. The next Sunday Parris preached a sermon from the text, "Have I not chosen you twelve, and one of you is a devil." As his remarks were directed against Mistress Nurse, Sarah Cloyce, her sister, at once left the church.

A Hundred in Prison.

This in itself was a serious offence in those days, and Parris took advantage of it to accuse the offender of witchcraft, and she was sent to join her sister in prison. Mather, who deemed his credit at stake, lent his active aid to the persecution of these unfortunate people, and had the vanity to declare that he regarded the efforts of "the evil angels upon the country as a particular defiance unto himself." Parris scattered his accusations right and left, becoming both informer and witness against those whom he meant to destroy for their opposition to him.

In a few weeks nearly one hundred persons were in prison upon the charge of witchcraft. Abigail Williams, Parris's niece, aided her uncle with her tales, which the least examination would have shown to be absurd. George Burroughs, one of the ministers of Salem, had long been regarded by Parris as a rival, and he now openly expressed his disbelief in witchcraft, and his disapproval of the measures against those charged with that offence. This boldness sealed his doom. He was accused by Parris and committed to prison "with the rest of the witches." "The gallows was to be set up, not for those who professed themselves witches, but for those who rebuked the delusion."

Hanging a Witch.

Governor Bradstreet, who had been chosen by the people, was unwilling to proceed to extreme measures against the accused, as he had no faith in the evidence against them. The arrival of the royal governor and the new charter in Boston in May, 1692, placed Cotton Mather and his fellow-persecutors in a position to carry out their bloody designs. The general court alone had authority to appoint special courts, but Governor Phipps did not hesitate to appoint one himself for the trial of the accused persons at Salem, and this illegal tribunal, with Stoughton as its chief judge, met at Salem on the second of June. In this court Parris acted as prosecutor, keeping back some witnesses, and pushing others forward as suited his plans.

The first victim of the court was Bridget Bishop, "a poor, friendless old woman." Parris, who had examined her at the time of her commitment, was the principal witness against her. Deliverance Hobbs being also accused, a natural infirmity of her body was taken as a proof of her guilt, and she was hanged, protesting her innocence. Rebecca Nurse was at first acquitted of the

charges against her, but the court refused to receive the verdict of the jury, and Parris was determined that the woman against whom he had preached and prayed should not escape him, and the jury were induced to convict her, and she was hanged. John Willard, who had been compelled by his duty as a constable to arrest the accused, now refused to serve in this capacity any longer, as he had become convinced of the hypocrisy of the instigators of the persecution. He was immediately denounced, tried and hanged.

When George Burroughs, the minister, was placed on trial, the witnesses produced against him pretended to be dumb. "Who hinders these witnesses from giving their testimonies?" asked Stoughton, the chief judge. "I suppose the devil," replied Burroughs, contemptuously. "How comes the devil," cried Stoughton, exultingly, "so loath to have any testimony borne against you?" The words

EXECUTION OF THE REV. GEORGE BURROUGHS.

of the prisoner were regarded as a confession, and his remarkable bodily strength was made an evidence of his guilt. He was convicted and sentenced to be hanged. He was executed on the nineteenth of August with four others. As he ascended the scaffold, Burroughs made an appeal to the people assembled to witness the execution, and effectually vindicated himself from the absurd charges against him, and repeated the Lord's prayer, which was regarded as a test of innocence. The spectators seemed about to interfere in favor of the victim.

An Innocent Man Hanged.

Cotton Mather, who was present on horseback, now exerted himself to complete the judicial murder. He harangued the people, insisted on the guilt of Burroughs, reminding them that the devil could sometimes assume the form of an angel of light, and even descended to the falsehood of declaring that Burroughs was no true minister, as his ordination was not valid. His appeal was successful and the execution was completed.

Giles Cory, an old man over eighty years of age, seeing that no denial of guilt availed anything, refused to plead, and was *pressed to death,* in accordance with an old English law, long obsolete, which was revived to meet his case. Samuel Wardwell confessed his guilt, and escaped the gallows. Overcome with shame for his cowardice, he retracted his confession, and was hanged for denying witchcraft. A reign of terror prevailed in Salem; the prisons were full; and no one could feel sure how long he would escape accusation and arrest. Many persons confessed their guilt to save their lives. Children accused their parents, parents their children, and husbands and wives each other of the most impossible offences, in the hope of escaping the persecution themselves. Hale, the minister of Beverley, was a zealous advocate of the persecution until the bitter cup was presented to his own lips by the accusation of his wife. Many persons were obliged to fly the colony, and the magistrates, conscious that they were exceeding their powers, did not demand their surrender.

Crime Added to Crime.

We have mentioned only some of the principal cases to show the character of the persecution, as our limits forbid the relation of all. The total number hanged was twenty; fifty-five were tortured or terrified into confessions of guilt. The accusations were at first lodged against persons of humble station, but at length reached the higher classes. Governor Phipps' wife and two sons of Governor Bradford are said to have been among the accused. "Insanity," says Judge Story, "could hardly devise more refinements in barbarity, or profligacy execute them with more malignant coolness." Every principle of English justice was violated to secure the condemnation of the accused, and people were encouraged by the magistrates to accuse others as a means of securing the favor of the authorities.

These terrible deeds were not the work of the people of Massachusetts, and under a popular government would have been impossible; for though the belief in witchcraft was general, the sentiment of the people was against the barbarity of the court. The Salem tragedies were the work of a few men, not one of whom was responsible in any way to the people. "Of the magistrates at that time, not one held office by the suffrage of the people; the tribunal, essentially despotic in its origin, as in its character, had no sanction but an extraordinary and an illegal commission; and Stoughton, the chief judge, a partisan of Andros, had been rejected by the people of Massachusetts. The responsibility of the tragedy, far from attach-

ing to the people of the colony, rests with the very few, hardly five or six, in whose hands the transition state of the government left for a season unlimited influence. Into the interior of the colony the delusion did not spread at all." *

Public Indignation.

Stoughton's court, having hanged twenty of its victims, adjourned about the last of September, 1692, until November, and on the eighteenth of October the general court met. The indignation of the people had been gathering force, and men were determined to put a stop to the judicial murders and tortures which had disgraced them so long. Remonstrances were at once presented to the assembly against "the doings of the witch tribunals," the people of Andover leading the way in this effort. The assembly abolished the special court, and established a tribunal by public law. It was ordered that this court should not meet until the following January. The governor attempted to undo the work of the assembly by appointing Stoughton chief judge of the new court.

When that tribunal met at Salem in January, 1693, it was evident that the public mind had undergone a marked change. The influence of the leaders of the delusion was at an end. The grand jury rejected the majority of the presentments offered to it, and when those who were indicted were put on trial, the jury brought in verdicts of acquittal in all but three cases. The governor, now alive to the force of public sentiment, reprieved all who were under sentence to the great disgust of Stoughton, who left the bench in a rage when informed of this action. The persecutors, anxious to cover their defeat by the execution of one more victim, employed all their arts to procure the conviction of a woman of Charlestown, who was commonly believed to be a witch. They supported their charge by more important evidence than had been presented in any case at Salem, but the jury at once returned a verdict of "not guilty."

Cotton Mather was intensely mortified by the failure of his efforts to force the people into a general acceptance of his views. He got up a case of witchcraft in Boston, but was careful to caution his possessed people to refrain from accusing any one of bewitching them. Robert Calef, an unlettered man, but one whose common sense could not be led astray by Mather, promptly exposed the imposture in a pamphlet, which effectually destroyed Mather's influence for harm. Mather, unable to reply to him, denounced him as an enemy of religion, and complained that Calef's book was "a libel upon the whole government and ministry of the land," forgetting that only seven or eight ministers, and no magistrate commanding the confidence of the people, had any share in the tragedies. Calef continued his writings, however, undismayed by the indignation of his adversary, and his book was finally published in England, where it attracted considerable attention.

The Danger Past.

The danger was now over. It was no longer possible to procure a conviction for witchcraft. The indignant people of Salem village at once drove the wretched Parris and his family from the place. Noyes, the minister of Salem, who had been active in the persecutions, was compelled to ask the forgiveness of the people, after a public confession of his error. The devotion of the rest of his life to works of charity won him the pardon he sought. Sewall, one of the judges, struck with horror at the part he had played in the persecution, made an open and

* Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. iii., p. 88.

frank confession of his error, and implored the forgiveness of his fellow-citizens. His sincerity was so evident that he soon regained the favor he had lost. Stoughton passed the remainder of his life in proud and haughty disregard of the opinion of his fellow-men, scorning to make any acknowledgment of error, and evincing no remorse for his cruelties.

Cotton Mather Duped.

As for the prime mover of the delusion, the Rev. Cotton Mather, nothing could induce him to admit that he could by any possibility have been in error; not even the recollection of the sorrow he had brought upon some of the best people in the colony could shake his impenetrable self-conceit or humble him. When it was plain to him that he was the object of the indignation of all good men in New England, he had the hardihood to endeavor to persuade them that after all he had not been specially active in the sad affair. "Was Cotton Mather honestly credulous?" asks Bancroft. "Ever ready to dupe himself, he limited his credulity only by the probable credulity of others. He changes, or omits to repeat, his statements, without acknowledging error, and with a clear intention of conveying false impressions. He is an example how far selfishness, under the form of vanity and ambition, can blind the higher faculties, stupefy the judgment, and dupe consciousness itself. His self-righteousness was complete till he was resisted."

And yet this man was not to die without rendering to the country a genuine service. In 1721, having become satisfied that inoculation was a sure preventive of small-pox, he advocated the introduction of it into the colony. He was opposed by the whole body of the clergy, who declared that it was an attempt to defeat the plans of the Almighty, who "sent the small-pox as a punishment for sins, and whose vengeance would thus be only provoked the more." The people of the colony were also bitterly opposed to inoculation, and threatened to hang Mather if he did not cease his advocacy of it. His life was at one time in serious danger, but he persevered, and at length had the satisfaction of seeing the practice of inoculation generally adopted by the people who had so hotly opposed it.

CHAPTER XVI

The Settlement of New York

Voyages of Henry Hudson—He is Employed by the Dutch—Discovery of the Hudson River—Early Dutch Voyages—Adrian Block—Fate of Hudson—The Dutch Build a Fort on Manhattan Island—Settlement of New Amsterdam—The Province Named New Netherlands—Fort Nassau—Peter Minuits Governor—The Dutch Settlement of Delaware—Wouter Van Twiller—Kieft Governor—His Unjust Treatment of the Indians—Massacre of the Indians at Hoboken—The Indian War—Stuyvesant Appointed Governor—Disputes with the English in Connecticut—The Swedes Settle Delaware—Stuyvesant Captures the Swedish Forts—Growth of New Amsterdam—Disputes Between the People and Governor—Growing Spirit of Popular Liberty—The People Appeal to the States General—Capture of New Netherlands by the English—The Name of the Province Changed to New York—Results of the English Conquest—Progress of New Jersey—Andros Governor of New York—He Fails to Establish His Authority Over Connecticut—New York Allowed an Assembly—Discontents of the People—Leisler's Rebellion—Execution of Leisler and Milbourne—Fletcher Governor—His Attempt to Obtain Command of the Connecticut Militia—Episcopacy Established in New York—The Freedom of the Press Sustained—New Jersey a Royal Province.

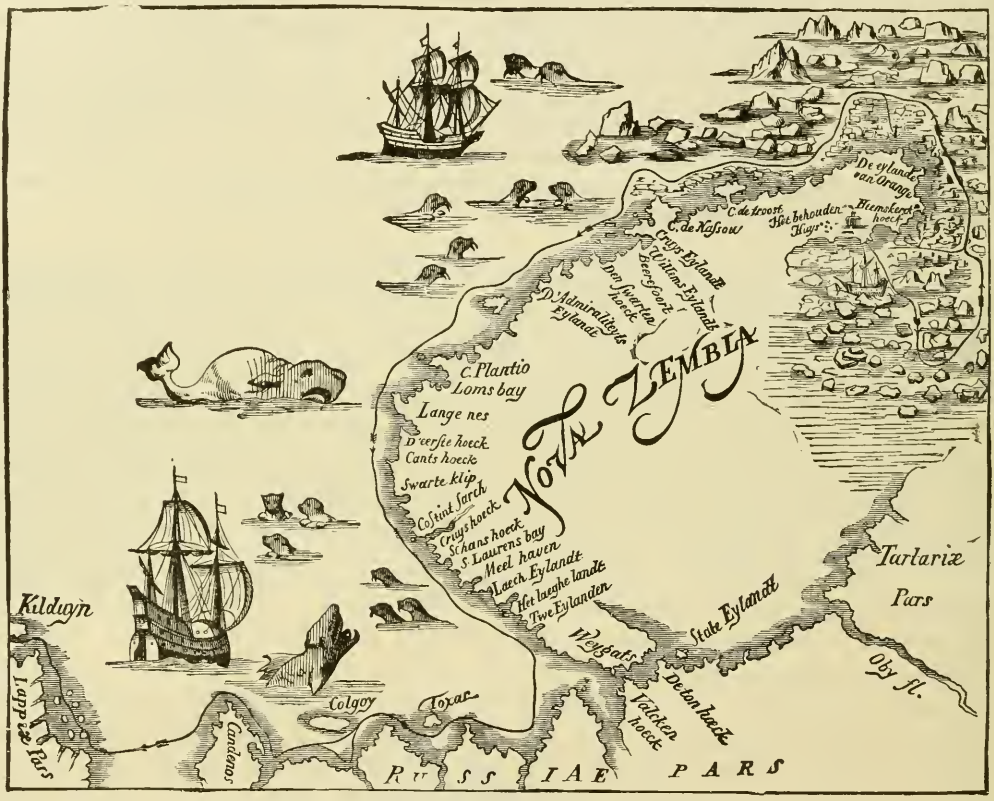
WHEN the hope of finding a northwest passage to India began to die out, a company of "certain worshipful merchants" of London employed Henry Hudson, an Englishman and an experienced navigator, to go in search of a north*east* passage to India, around the Arctic shores of Europe, between Lapland and Nova Zembla and frozen Spitzbergen. These worthy gentlemen were convinced that since the effort to find a north*west* passage had failed, nothing remained but to search for a north*east* passage, and they were sure that if human skill or energy could find it, Hudson would succeed in his mission. They were not mistaken in their man, for in two successive voyages he did all that mortal could do to penetrate the ice-fields beyond the North Cape, but without success.

An impassable barrier of ice held him back, and he was forced to return to London to confess his failure. With unconquerable hope, he suggested new means of overcoming the difficulties; but while his employers praised his zeal and skill, they declined to go to further expense in an undertaking which promised so little, and the "bold Englishman, the expert pilot and the famous navigator" found himself out of employment. Every effort to secure aid in England failed him, and, thoroughly disheartened, he passed over to Holland, whither his fame had preceded him.

The Dutch, who were more enterprising and more hopeful than his own countrymen, lent a ready ear to his statement of his plans, and the Dutch East India Company at once employed him and placed him in command of a yacht of ninety tons, called the "Half Moon," manned by a picked crew. On the twenty-fifth of March, 1609, Hudson set sail in this vessel from Amsterdam and steered directly for the coast of Nova Zembla. He succeeded in reaching the meridian of Spitzbergen, but here the ice, the fogs and the fierce tempests of the north drove him back, and turning to the westward, he sailed past the capes of Greenland, and on the second of July was on the banks of Newfoundland. He passed down the coast as far as Charleston Harbor, vainly hoping to find the north*west* passage, and then in despair turned to the northward, discovering Delaware Bay on his voyage.

On the third of September he arrived off a large bay to the north of the Delaware, and passing into it, dropped anchor "at two cables' length from the shore," within Sandy Hook. Devoting some days to rest, and to the exploration of the bay, he passed through The Narrows on the eleventh of September, and then the broad and beautiful "inner bay" burst upon him in all its splendor, and from the deck of his ship he watched the swift current of the mighty river rolling from the north to the sea. He was full of hope now, and the next day continued his progress up the river, and at nightfall cast anchor at Yonkers. During the night the current of the river turned his ship around, placing her head down stream; and this fact, coupled with the assurances of the natives who came out to the "Half Moon" in their canoes, that the river came from far beyond the mountains, convinced him that the stream flowed from ocean to ocean, and that by sailing on he would at length reach India—the golden land of his dreams.

Thus encouraged, he pursued his way up the river, gazing with wondering delight upon its glorious scenery, and listening with gradually fading hope to the stories of the natives who flocked to the water to greet him. The stream narrowed, and the water grew fresh, and long before he anchored below Albany, Hudson had abandoned the belief that he was in the northwest passage. From the anchorage a boat's crew continued the voyage to the mouth of the Mohawk. Hudson was satisfied that he had made a



NOVA ZEMBLA—FROM AN OLD PRINT.

great discovery—one that was worth fully as much as finding the new route to India. He was in a region upon which the white man's eye had never rested before, and which offered the richest returns to the commercial ventures. He hastened back to New York Bay, took possession of the country in the name of Holland, and then set sail for Europe. He put into Dartmouth, in England, on his way back, where he told the story of his discovery. King James I. prevented his continuing his voyage, hoping to deprive the Dutch of its fruits; but Hudson took care to send his log-book and all the ship's papers over to Holland, and thus placed his employers in full possession of the knowledge he had gained. The English at length released the "Half Moon," and she continued her voyage to the Texel, but without her commander.

The discovery of Hudson was particularly acceptable to the Dutch, for the new country was rich in fur-bearing animals, and Russia offered a ready market for all the furs that could be sent there. The East India Company, therefore, refitted the "Half Moon" after her return to Holland, and despatched her to the region discovered by Hudson on a fur trading expedition, which was highly successful. Private persons also embarked in similar enterprises, and within two years a prosperous and important fur trade was established between Holland and the country along the Mauritius, as the great river discovered by Hudson had been named, in honor of the Stadtholder of Holland. No government took any notice of the trade for a while and all persons were free to engage in it.

MOCK SUNS, SEEN BY EARLY EXPLORERS.

Among the adventurers employed in this trade was one Adrian Block, noted as one of

the boldest navigators of his time. He made a voyage to Manhattan Island in 1614, then the site of a Dutch trading-post, and secured a cargo of skins, with which he was about to return to Holland, when a fire consumed both his vessel and her cargo, and obliged him to pass the winter with his crew on the island. They built them log huts on the site of the present Beaver Street—the first houses erected on the island—and during the winter constructed a yacht of sixteen

HENRY HUDSON.

tons, which Block called the "Onrust"—the "Restless." In this yacht Block made several voyages of discovery, and explored the coasts of Long Island Sound, and gave his name to the small island near the eastern end of the sound. He soon after went back to Europe.

In the meantime Hudson had not been permitted by the English king to take service again with the Dutch, and after apprising his employers in Holland of his discoveries, he was engaged by an English company to make further explorations in their behalf. He sailed to the north of his former route, reached the coast of Labrador, and passing through the straits, entered the bay which bears his name. He spent the remainder of the season in exploring its coasts, and resolved to winter there, hoping to push his discoveries still further northward in the spring. In the spring of 1611 he found it impossible to continue his voyage, as his provisions had begun to run low, and with tears turned his vessel's prow homeward. His men now broke out into mutiny, and seizing Hudson and his son and four others, who were sick, they placed them in the shallop and set them adrift. And so the great navigator, whose memory is perpetuated by one of the noblest of the rivers of America, and whose genius gave the region through which it flows to civilization, perished amid the northern seas. "The gloomy waste of waters which bears his name is his tomb and his monument."

Forts Along the Hudson.

In 1614 the Dutch built a fort on the lower end of Manhattan Island, and in the next few years established forts or trading houses along the river as far as Fort Orange, on the site of Albany. These were merely trading-posts, no effort being yet made to occupy the country with a permanent colony. In 1621 the Dutch West India Company was organized for the purpose of trading with America, and took possession of the country along the Hudson, intending to hold it merely as temporary occupants. The States General of Holland granted them the monopoly of trade from Cape May to Nova Scotia, and named the whole region New Netherland. The Dutch thus extended their

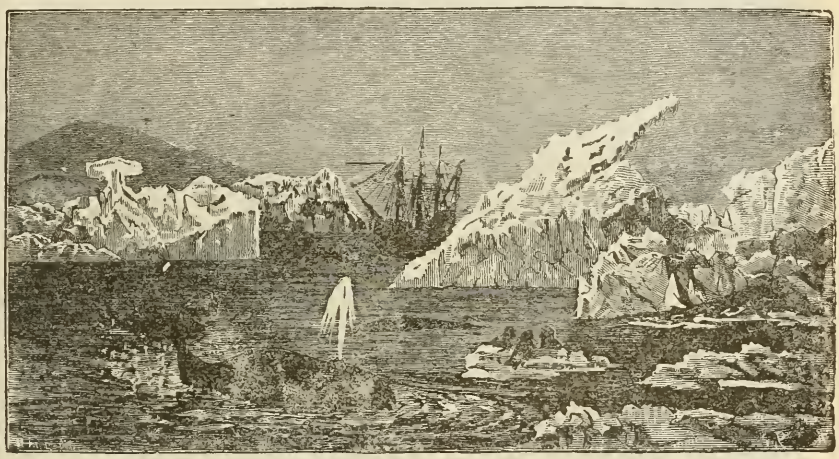
claims into regions already claimed by the English and French, and prepared the way for future quarrels and complications.

The English, now awake to the importance of Hudson's discoveries, warned the Dutch government to refrain from making further settlements on "Hudson's River," as they called the Mauritius; but the latter, relying upon the justice of their claim, paid no attention to these warnings, and in the spring of 1623 the Dutch West India Company sent over thirty families of Walloons, or one hundred and ten persons in all, to found a permanent colony.

These Walloons were Protestants from the frontier between France and Flanders, and had fled to Amsterdam to escape religious persecution in their own country. They were sound, healthy, vigorous and pious people, and could be relied upon to make homes in the new world. The majority of them settled around the fort on the lower end of Manhattan Island, and the colony was named New Amsterdam. The remainder established themselves on Long Island, about where the Brooklyn navy yard now stands, and there Sarah de Rapelje, the first white child born in the province of New Netherlands, saw the light. Eighteen families ascended the river and settled around Fort Orange.

In the same year (1623) a party under command of Cornelis Jacobsen May, who gave his name to the southern cape of New Jersey, ascended the Delaware, then called the South River, and built Fort Nassau, on the east side of the river, a few miles below the present city of Camden. This was done in order to establish the claim of the Dutch to this region.

In 1626 the West India Company sent out to New Amsterdam the first regular governor of the province, Peter Minuits by name. He brought with him a koopman, or general commissary, who was also the secretary of the province, and a schout, or sheriff, to assist him in his government. The only laws prescribed for the colony were the instructions of the West India Company. The colonists, on their part, were to regard the orders of the governor as their law. He was authorized to punish minor offences at his discretion, but cases requiring severe or capital punishmen. were to be sent to Holland for trial. Minuits set to work with great vigor to lay the foundations of the colony. He called a council of the Indian chiefs, and purchased the island of Manhattan from them for presents valued at about twenty-four dollars in American money. He thus secured an equitable title to the island



HUDSON STRAIT.

MUTINY ON HUDSON'S SHIP.

and won the friendship of the Indians. To encourage emigration, the company granted to each emigrant as much land as he could properly cultivate, and it was ordered that any member of the company who in four years should induce fifty persons to settle anywhere within the limits of New Netherland, the island of Manhattan alone excepted, should be termed "Patroon," or "Lord of the Manor," and should be entitled to purchase a tract of land sixteen miles in length by eight in width for the support of this dignity. A number of persons availed themselves of this privilege and secured from the Indians by purchase the best lands and the most valuable trading places in the province. Those who were inferior to them in wealth were of necessity compelled to become the tenants of the patroons, and thus a check was placed upon the improvement of the colony. In order to compel the colonists to purchase their supplies from Holland, the company forbade them to manufacture even the simplest fabrics for clothing, on pain of banishment. The patroons were enjoined to provide a minister and a schoolmaster for their tenants, but no provision was made for them by the company, which was careful, however, to offer to furnish the patroons with African slaves if their use should be found desirable.

In 1629 Samuel Godyn and Samuel Blommaert purchased from the Indians the region between Cape Henlopen and the mouth of the Delaware River, and in 1631 a colony of thirty souls was planted on Lewes Creek, in the present state of Delaware. "That Delaware exists as a separate commonwealth is due to this colony. According to English rule, occupancy was necessary to complete a title to the wilderness, and the Dutch now occupied Delaware." Less than a year later De Vries came over from Holland with a reinforcement, and found only the ruins of the settlement, the people of which had been massacred by the Indians.

FIRST SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK.

Under the vigorous administration of Minuits, New Netherland prospered; houses were built, farms laid off; the population was largely increased by new arrivals from Europe. During this period New Amsterdam fairly entered upon its career as one of the most important places in America. It was a happy settlement as well; the rights of the people were respected, and they were practically as free as they had been in Holland.

Troubles with the Indians marked the close of Minuit's administration. The latter were provoked by the murder of some of their number by the whites, and by the aid rendered by the commander at Fort Orange to the Mohegans in one of their forays upon the Mohawks. Alarmed by the hostility of the savages, many of the families at Fort Orange, and from the region between the Hudson and the Delaware, abandoned their settlements and came to New Amsterdam for safety, thus adding to the population of that town. Minuits was recalled in 1632 and left the province in a prosperous condition. During the last year of his government New Amsterdam sent over $60,000 worth of furs to Holland.

The Renowned Van Twiller.

Minuits was succeeded by Wouter Van Twiller, a clerk in the company's warehouse at Amsterdam, who owed his appointment to his being the husband of the niece of Killian Van Rensselaer, the patroon of Albany. Irving has thus sketched this redoubtable governor: "He was exactly five feet six inches in height, and six feet five inches in circumference. His head was a perfect sphere, and of such stupendous dimensions that dame Nature, with all her sex's ingenuity, would have been puzzled to construct a neck capable of supporting it; wherefore she wisely declined the attempt, and settled it firmly on top of his back-bone just between the shoulders. His body was oblong and particularly capacious at bottom, which was wisely ordered by Providence, seeing that he was a man of sedentary habits and very averse to the idle labor of walking.

"A Beer Barrel on Skids."

"His legs were very short, but sturdy in proportion to the weight they had to sustain; so that, when erect, he had not a little the appearance of a beer barrel on skids. His face—that infallible index of the mind—presented a vast expanse, unfurrowed by any of those lines and angles which disfigure the human countenance with what is termed expression. Two small gray eyes twinkled feebly in the midst, like two stars of lesser magnitude in a hazy firmament; and his full-fed cheeks, which seemed to have taken toll of everything that went into his mouth, were curiously mottled and streaked with dusky red, like a Spitzenberg apple. His habits were as regular as his person. He daily took his four stated meals, appropriating exactly an hour to each; he smoked and doubted eight hours, and he slept the remaining twelve of the four-and-twenty."

Van Twiller ruled the province seven years, and, in spite of his stupidity, it prospered. In 1633, Adam Roelantsen, the first schoolmaster, arrived—for the fruitful Walloons had opened the way by this time for his labors—and in the same year a wooden church was built in the present Bridge Street, and placed in charge of the famous Dominie Everardus Bogardus. In 1635, the fort, which marked the site of the present Bowling Green, and which had been begun in 1614, was finished, and in the same year the first English settlers at New Amsterdam came into the town.

The English in New England also began to give the Dutch trouble during this admin-

istration, and even sent a ship into "Hudson's River" to trade with the Indians. Influenced by De Vries, the commander of the fort, the governor sent an expedition up the river after the audacious English vessel, seized her, brought her back to New York, and sent her to sea with a warning not to repeat her attempt. The disputes between the English and the Dutch about the Connecticut settlements also began to make trouble for New Amsterdam. Van Twiller possessed no influence in the colony, was laughed at and snubbed on every side, and was at length recalled by the company in 1638. The only memorial of Van Twiller left to us is the Isle of Nuts, which lies in the bay between New York and Brooklyn, and which he purchased as his private domain. It is still called the "Governor's Island."

Van Twiller was succeeded by William Kieft, a man of greater abilities, but unscrupulous and avaricious. He had become a bankrupt in Holland, and hoped to find in America the means of restoring his fortunes. His administration of the province was full of troubles, the greater part of which were due to his recklessness and rapacity.

Mohawk Braves.

The colonists were forbidden to sell firearms to the Indians, but some of the traders along the Hudson had violated this order, and it was estimated that the Mohawks had at least four hundred warriors armed with muskets. They were willing to pay large prices for the guns, as these weapons enabled them to meet on equal terms their enemies, the Canada Indians, who had been armed by the French. During Van Twiller's administration the colony had been on good terms with the Mohegans and other tribes of the Algonquin race, who were generally known as the river Indians. Kieft, soon after his arrival, demanded of them the payment of a tribute, which he pretended he had been ordered by the company to levy upon them. They refused his demand with contempt, and from this time the friendship which they had entertained for the Dutch began to disappear.

A year or two later the Raritans, a tribe living on the river of that name, were accused of stealing some hogs from the colony. The animals had been taken by some Dutch traders; but Kieft, instead of investigating the matter, sent a party of soldiers among the Raritans and destroyed their corn and killed several of their number. The savages determined upon revenge, and with their usual unreasoning fury attacked the settlement which De Vries—who was always a friend of the Indians—had founded on Staten Island, and killed four men. The people of the colony now urged the governor to conciliate the savages by kind treatment, but he refused to do so.

An Avenger of Blood.

Another cause of trouble soon arose. Twenty years before a Dutch trader had killed an Indian chief in the presence of a little nephew of the warrior. That child, now grown to manhood, came into the colony in 1641, and avenged his uncle by killing an innocent settler. Kieft ordered the Indians to surrender the young man that he might be punished for his crime; but the savages refused to give him up, but offered to ransom him. Kieft refused their proposition, and the matter remained an open source of trouble.

With the hope of finding a remedy for the Indian difficulty, the people obtained from the governor, in 1642, permission to hold a meeting of the heads of families at New Amsterdam. These appointed twelve of their number to investigate the affairs of the colony. This was the first representative assembly of New Netherland, and its career was short.

Venturing to pass beyond the Indian question, and to criticise the administration of the governor in other matters, it was dissolved.

Near the end of the year 1642 the Mohawks sent a band of warriors armed with muskets to demand tribute of the river tribes. These, too weak to contend with their enemies, fled to the Dutch for protection. Kieft was at this time angry with the Indians for refusing to surrender to him one of their number who had killed a Dutchman who had made him drunk and then ill-treated him, and he resolved to take a signal vengeance upon them, and exterminate them. De Vries, to whom he communicated his plan, remonstrated with him in the hope of inducing him to abandon it. "If you murder these poor creatures who have put themselves under your protection, you will involve the whole colony in ruin, and their blood, and the blood of your own people, will be required at your hands," said De Vries. Nothing, however, could move the governor from his purpose.

Attack Upon the Savages.

The Indians who had sought the protection of the Dutch were encamped with the Hackensack tribe just above Hoboken. On the night of the twenty-fifth of February, the garrison of the fort at New Amsterdam, reinforced by the crews of some Dutch privateers in the river, crossed the Hudson and attacked the unsuspecting savages. Nearly a hundred were killed, and when the morning came many of the poor wretches were seen crowding along the shore of the river in the vain attempt to cross over to their supposed friends at New Amsterdam. They were forced into the stream and drowned. A company of Indians, trusting to the friendship of the Dutch, had encamped on Manhattan Island, near the fort. They were put to death almost to a man.

The massacre was regarded by the colonists with horror and detestation, and they took no part in the joy with which the governor greeted the troops on their return from their bloody work. He was not allowed to rejoice long, however. When it became known among the Algonquins that their brethren had been murdered, not by the Mohawks, but by the Dutch, every tribe took up the hatchet to avenge them, and a general warfare began along the entire line of the Dutch settlements. Several villages were destroyed, and a number of settlers were murdered or carried into captivity. The colony was threatened with ruin, and Kieft was obliged to open negotiations for peace. It was in this war that Mrs. Anne Hutchinson and her family, who had taken refuge in the territory of the Dutch, were murdered by the savages.

Treaty of Peace Negotiated.

On the fifth of March, 1643, a conference was held at Rockaway, between sixteen Indian chiefs and De Vries and two other envoys from the colony. One of the principal sachems arose, holding in his hands a bundle of small sticks. "When you first arrived on our shores," said the Indian, addressing the whites, "you were destitute of food. We gave you our beans and our corn; we fed you with oysters and fish; and now, for our recompense, you murder our people." He then laid down one of the little sticks and proceeded: "The traders whom your first ships left on our shores to traffic till their return, were cherished by us as the apple of our eye We gave them our daughters for their wives. Among those whom you have murdered were children of your own blood."

"I know all," said De Vries, interrupting his recital of wrongs. He then invited the chiefs to go with him to the fort. They accompanied him to New Amsterdam, where

presents were exchanged and a treaty of peace negotiated. The younger warriors were not satisfied. Kieft's presents were niggardly. They were not regarded by the savages as a sufficient compensation for the wrongs they had suffered, and the war was renewed.

The leader of the Dutch in this campaign was Captain John Underhill, who had served in the Pequod war in New England, and had removed to New Amsterdam in consequence of having been made to do penance in public at Boston in 1640. The war continued for two years, and though the colony suffered severely, the Dutch were able to inflict such heavy losses upon the savages that the latter were at length as anxious for peace as the whites. Sixteen hundred of the Indians had fallen, but the colony had been brought to the verge of ruin, and the population of New Amsterdam was reduced to one hundred souls.

PETER STUYVESANT.

On the thirtieth of August, 1645, the chiefs of the Algonquins and a deputation from their old enemies, the Mohawks, who came as mediators, met the whites on the spot now known as the Battery, and concluded a peace.

The close of the war was hailed with rejoicings throughout the colony. Kieft was regarded with universal hatred as the author of the terrible sufferings of the struggle, and his barbarous conduct was censured and disavowed by the company, and he was recalled. Hated throughout the colony, he at length determined to return to Europe. Freighting a vessel with his ill-gotten gains, he sailed from Manhattan in 1647. As he neared the shores of the old world his ship was wrecked on the coast of Wales, and all on board perished.

Kieft, in the vain hope of conciliating the people, appointed, immediately after the

close of the war, a new municipal council of eight members. The first act of this council was to demand of the States General of Holland the removal of Kieft. Their demand was complied with, as we have seen, and in 1647 Peter Stuyvesant was made governor of New Netherlands, and reached New Amsterdam in the same year.

"Vain as a Peacock."

Stuyvesant was essentially a strong man. A soldier by education and of long experience, he was accustomed to regard rigid discipline as the one thing needful in every relation of life, and he was not slow to introduce that system into his government of New Amsterdam. He had served gallantly in the wars against the Portuguese, and had lost a leg in one of his numerous encounters with them. He was as vain as a peacock, as fond of display as a child, and thoroughly imbued with the most aristocratic ideas—qualities not exactly the best for a governor of New Amsterdam. Yet he was, with all his faults, an honest man, he had deeply at heart the interests of the colony, and his administration was mainly a prosperous one.

He energetically opposed from the first all manifestations in favor of popular government. His will was to be the law of the province. "If any one," said he, "during my administration shall appeal, I will make him a foot shorter, and send the pieces to Holland, and let him appeal in that way." He went to work with vigor to reform matters in the colony, extending his efforts to even the morals and domestic affairs of the people. He soon brought about a reign of material prosperity greater than had ever been known before, and exerted himself to check the encroachments of the English on the east, and the Swedes on the south. He inaugurated a policy of kindness and justice toward the Indians, and soon changed their enmity to sincere friendship. One thing, however, he dared not do—he could not levy taxes upon the people without their consent, for fear of offending the States General of Holland. This forced him to appoint a council of nine prominent citizens, and, although he endeavored to hedge round their powers by numerous conditions, the nine ever afterwards served as a salutary check upon the action of the governor.

Opposition to Stuyvesant.

The English in Connecticut made great efforts to extend their territories westward at the expense of New Netherland, and gave Stuyvesant no little annoyance by their aggressions. During his administration the colony received large accessions of English emigrants from New England, who came to New Netherland "to enjoy that liberty denied to them by their own countrymen." They settled in New Amsterdam, on Long Island, and in Westchester County. Being admitted to an equality with the Dutch settlers, they exercised considerable influence in the affairs of the colony, and towards the close of his administration gave the governor considerable trouble by their opposition to his despotic acts. Stuyvesant entered into an arrangement with Connecticut for the proper adjustment of the boundaries of the two colonies, and left the English in possession of half of Long Island.

Upon his removal from his place as governor of New Amsterdam Peter Minuits offered his services to Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, who was anxious to found in America a colony which might prove a place of refuge for the persecuted Protestants of Europe. The offer was accepted by the king, and the shores of the Delaware were chosen as the site of the new settlement. Near the close of 1637 a little company of Swedes and Fins embarked in two vessels

under the direction of Minuits, and sailed for America. The Delaware was reached early in 1638, and the new-comers purchased from the natives the country on the west side of the river from Cape Henlopen to Trenton. A fort was built within the limits of the present state of Delaware, on the site of the present city of Wilmington, and named Fort Christiana, in honor of the youthful queen of Sweden, the daughter of Gustavus.

Swedish Immigrants.

Kieft, the Dutch governor of New Netherland, protested against this occupation of the country by the Swedes, as Holland claimed the region along the Delaware. Sweden was too formidable a power for her colony to be attacked, however, and Kieft contented himself with his protest. Fresh emigrants came out from Scandinavia, and New Sweden grew rapidly. The Dutch Fort Nassau was renewed, but the Swedes succeeded in maintaining their ascendency along the Delaware in spite of it. Their plantations were extended along the river, and the smallest of the American commonwealths was permanently settled by Europeans.

When Stuyvesant was made governor of New Netherland the Dutch West India Company resolved to enforce their claim to Delaware, and in 1651 built Fort Casimir on the site of Newcastle. The Swedes regarded this as an encroachment upon their domain, and in 1654 captured the Fort. Upon the receipt of this news the Dutch Company indignantly ordered Stuyvesant "to drive the Swedes from the river, or compel their submission." In September, 1655, Stuyvesant, with a force of six hundred men, sailed from Manhattan into the Delaware. The Swedish forts were compelled to surrender one after another, and the colonists were forced to submit to the establishment of the rule of the Dutch. They were allowed to retain their possessions, and on the whole were treated well. Many of them, however, were dissatisfied with their new rulers, and in the next few years emigrated to Maryland and Virginia.

The territory now included in the state of New Jersey was also claimed by the Dutch. They built Fort Nassau on the Delaware to establish this claim, but the Swedes were the first to settle the country. Soon after, establishing themselves in Delaware, they crossed over to the eastern side of the river, and built a line of trading-posts extending from Cape May to Burlington.

GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS.

New Amsterdam continued to prosper and was even at this early day rapidly becoming an important commercial town. Stuyvesant's arbitrary temper was held in check to a considerable extent by the more liberal policy of the company, who sincerely desired the prosperity of the colony. "Let every peaceful citizen," wrote the directors, "enjoy freedom of conscience; this maxim has made our city the asylum for fugitives from every land; tread in its steps, and you shall be blessed." The infant metropolis from the

first acquired a cosmopolitan character. It contained settlers from every nation of Europe, and even from Africa; for the Dutch at an early day introduced negro slavery into the colony.

The people of New Netherland had no political rights, and the West India Company, with every disposition to treat the colony with fairness, did not mean to allow the settlers to have any voice in governing themselves. Town meetings were positively forbidden, and every care was taken to discourage any manifestation of public spirit. Nevertheless the colonists were beginning to feel the promptings of the spirit of democracy, and the English settlers who had come into the province were by no means content to remain without the privileges of freemen. A series of disputes at once arose with the fiery old governor, who entertained the most profound contempt for the people, and laughed in scorn at the assertion of their ability to govern themselves.

Rights of the People Disregarded.

The discontents went on increasing, however, and at length the people appointed a convention of two delegates from each settlement for the purpose of deliberating on the affairs of the colony. Stuyvesant was bitterly opposed to this assembly, but deemed it best not to seek to prevent its meeting, as such a step would have brought about a collision with the people. The convention addressed the governor as follows: "The States General of the United Provinces are our liege lords; we submit to the laws of the United Provinces; and our rights and privileges ought to be in harmony with those of the fatherland, for we are a member of the state, and not a subjugated people. We, who have come together from various parts of the world, and are a blended community of various lineage; we, who have, at our own expense, exchanged our native lands for the protection of the United Provinces; we, who have transformed the wilderness into fruitful farms, demand that no new laws shall be enacted but with the consent of the people; that none shall be appointed to office but with the approbation of the people; that obscure and obsolete laws shall never be revived."

This was too much for the governor. He attempted to reason with the deputies, who had the temerity to demand the right of self-government, and finding them firm, dissolved the convention with the haughty declaration: "We derive our authority from God and the West India Company, not from the pleasure of a few ignorant subjects." The West India Company entirely approved the course of the governor. "We approve the taxes you propose," they wrote to Stuyvesant; "have no regard to the consent of the people. Let them indulge no longer the visionary dream that taxes can be imposed only with their consent."

Neither the company nor the governor could understand that this persistent disregard of the rights of the people was alienating all classes of the colonists and making them long for the conquest of New Netherland by the English as the only means of obtaining the privileges of the freemen of the English colonies.

Large Land Grant.

Nor was this an idle hope. For a long time past the English government had seriously entertained the idea of driving out the Dutch, and adding New Netherland to its American possessions. The English claim extended to the entire Atlantic coast as far south as Florida, and the Dutch were regarded as intruders. Cromwell and his son had each contemplated making such an effort, and at the return of Charles II. to the

throne the plan was more seriously discussed, and at length put in operation. Charles, although at peace with Holland, and in spite of the charter which he had granted to Connecticut, bestowed upon his brother, the Duke of York, afterwards James II., the entire region between the Connecticut and Delaware rivers. This was in February, 1664. A squadron was at once fitted out for the purpose of seizing the Dutch colony, and was placed in command of Richard Nicolls, an officer of the Duke of York's household. The fleet touched at Boston to land the commissioners sent out by Charles to the New England colonies and to receive reinforcements. Governor Winthrop, of Connecticut also embarked on board of it.

The first intimation Stuyvesant had of the intended robbery was the appearance of the fleet within the Narrows on the twenty-eighth of August, 1664. The next day Nicolls demanded the surrender of the town and fort of New Amsterdam. Stuyvesant, who had made preparations for defending the place, endeavored to resist the demand, but the citizens refused to sustain him and he was obliged to submit. On the eighth of September he embarked his troops for Holland and put to sea. The English at once took possession of the fort and town, and their vessels ascending the Hudson, received the submission of the other Dutch forts and settlements along the river. A few weeks later the Dutch and the Swedes along the Delaware submitted to the English, and the entire province was in their hands. The name of New Amsterdam was changed to New York, which name was also bestowed upon the province, and Fort Orange was called Albany, all in honor of the new proprietor. Nicolls was appointed governor.

The English set themselves to work to conciliate the Dutch residents, a task not very difficult, as the English settlers in the province had already prepared the way for the change, and the treatment the colony had received from the West India Company had prevented the formation of any decided attachment to the rule of Holland. The English system of government was introduced, the towns were allowed to elect their own magistrates, and the desires of the people for representative government seemed about to be gratified.

A Strong Alliance.

The Mohawks had been the friends of the Dutch, and they now readily entered into an alliance with the English as their successors. This alliance remained unbroken all through the colonial period, and during the war of the Revolution; and in the first-named period proved of the greatest advantage to the colonies, as the Mohawks, whose hatred of the French was deep and unrelenting, proved a formidable obstacle in the way of invading parties from Canada.

Immediately upon becoming master of the province, the Duke of York proceeded to divide it. He sold to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Cartaret, both of whom were already proprietaries of Carolina, the country between the Hudson and the Delaware. This purchase was named New Jersey, in honor of the island of Jersey, of which Cartaret was governor, and corresponded in size very nearly to the present state of that name. The new proprietors made liberal offers to induce emigrants to settle in their territory, and among other things offered them lands free of rent for five years. They granted to the province a political establishment consisting of a governor, a council, and assembly of representatives of the people, who were given the power to make the laws necessary for their government.

The proprietors reserved the right to appoint the governor and judicial officers,

and to veto the proceedings of the assembly. Negro slavery was also introduced. These offers drew a large number of settlers to New Jersey, and many families came over from Long Island to the new province. The principal settlement was named Elizabethtown, in honor of Cartaret's wife. The colony prospered; no trouble was experienced from the neighboring Indians, whose power had been thoroughly broken by the Dutch, and everything went on happily until the year 1670, when the proprietaries demanded the rents due for the lands held by the settlers. The demand was refused. Many of the colonists had lived in the province under the rule of the Dutch, and had bought their lands from the Indians, and they claimed that the grant of the province to Cartaret could not invalidate these purchases, as the king had no claim to the lands which he so lavishly bestowed upon his favorites. Others refused to pay rent because they had made their plantations without any assistance from the proprietaries and did not acknowledge any debt to them. The representative of the proprietaries was obliged to fly for safety, and went to England for assistance in enforcing his demands.

Insult Added to Injury.

The Duke of York heard the complaints of the proprietaries, but the only attention he paid to them was to appoint Sir Edmund Andros, who subsequently became infamous for his tyranny in New England, governor of New Jersey. This was a flagrant violation of the rights of Cartaret and Berkeley, and an act thoroughly characteristic of the last of the Stuarts. Berkeley in disgust sold his half of the province, known as West Jersey, to an English Quaker named Edward Byllinge, who subsequently made over his claim to William Penn, who made an arrangement with Cartaret to divide the Jerseys. Cartaret retained East Jersey, and the line of division was drawn from the northwest corner of the province to the sea at Little Egg Harbor. This purchase became the cause of considerable litigation in after years, and West Jersey was claimed by Pennsylvania until the next century, when, as we shall see, the dispute was settled.

Scotch Covenanters.

New Jersey received a considerable accession to her population in consequence of the re-establishment of episcopacy in Scotland. The Cameronians or Covenanters refused to submit to the authority of the church, and thus became the objects of a cruel persecution. As so many of their faith had done before them, they sought refuge from their persecutors in America, and in 1683 and the following years large numbers of them came over and settled in East Jersey. This portion of the state was the cradle of Presbyterianism in America.

In the meantime matters in New York had not been conducted to the satisfaction of the people. The promises made to the colonists by the English authorities were not kept. The province was treated as the absolute property of the Duke of York, and the governor and his council were constituted the highest authority for both the making and execution of the laws. Representative government was denied them, arbitrary taxes were imposed by Governor Nicolls, and the titles to the lands held by the settlers, not even excepting the Dutch patents, were declared invalid, in order that by issuing new title-deeds Nicolls might gain enormous fees. Lovelace, the successor of Nicolls, carried his tyranny to a still greater extent. His system of government is thus summed up: "The method for keeping the people in order is severity, and laying such taxes as may give them liberty for no

thought but how to discharge them." When the people of a number of the towns ventured to remonstrate with the governor, he ordered their petition for the redress of their grievances to be publicly burned before the town house in New York. The settlements in Delaware were treated with equal injustice.

Peace Between England and Holland.

In 1673, war having broken out between Holland and England, a Dutch squadron entered the harbor of New York. The people, thoroughly cured of their partiality for English rule by the injustice they had suffered, made no resistance and surrendered the town. Its name was changed to New Orange, and the authority of the Dutch was again extended over the province, and also over Long Island, New Jersey and Delaware. The Mohawks sent a deputation of their chiefs to congratulate the Dutch upon the recovery of their colony. The next year, however, peace was made between England and Holland, and the Dutch surrendered their conquests in America. New York passed once more into the hands of the Duke of York, and East Jersey into those of Carteret.

In the same year the Duke of York appointed Sir Edmund Andros governor of New York. The eastern settlements of Long Island were anxious to adhere to Connecticut, but the governor compelled them on pain of being declared rebels to acknowledge themselves a part of New York. The claim of the duke extended within the limits of Connecticut as far as the river of that name, and in the summer of 1675 Andros sailed with several armed sloops for that colony to establish his authority as far as the river. The government of Connecticut, warned of his purpose, determined to resist him, and Captain Bull, the commander of the fort at Saybrooke, was ordered to pay no attention to his claim. Andros, arriving off Saybrooke, hoisted the royal standard and demanded the surrender of the fort.

A Connecticut Captain.

Bull instantly ran up the English colors, and refused to comply with the demand. Andros, who was a coward at heart, quailed before the firmness of the Connecticut captain, and abandoned his undertaking and sailed for Long Island. Thus ended the attempt of the Duke of York to dismember Connecticut. Andros returned to New York to disgust the people of that province with his tyranny.

When James II. became king he compelled the proprietaries of New Jersey to surrender their claim to the jurisdiction of that province to him, and annexed it to New York. In 1683 the grievances of the people of New York had become so unendurable that James, then Duke of York, deemed it best to conciliate them, and allowed the freeholders to send representatives to an assembly. This assembly met in October, 1683, and its first act was to demand the rights of Englishmen. "Supreme legislative power," they declared, "shall forever be and reside in the governor, council and people, met in general assembly. Every freeholder and freeman shall vote for representation without restraint. No freeman shall suffer but by the judgment of his peers; and all trials shall be by a jury of twelve men. No tax shall be assessed, on any pretence whatever, but by the consent of the assembly. No seaman or soldier shall be quartered on the inhabitants against their will. No martial law shall exist. No person professing faith in God by Jesus Christ shall at any time be any ways disquieted or questioned for any difference of opinion." These privileges were conceded by the Duke of York, who solemnly promised not to change

them except for the dvantage of the colony; but he had scarcely become king when he overturned the liberties he had conceded and made New York a royal province, dependent entirely upon his unrestrained will for its privileges.

Leisler Holds the Fort.

The people of New York were Protestants, many of whom had had cause to dread the restoration of the Roman Catholic religion in England. When James gave evidence of his intention to compel the acceptance of that faith by all his subjects, the colonies included, they were greatly discontented. Their fears were increased by the appointment by the king of a Roman Catholic as collector of customs at New York. Nicholson, the royal governor, was also exceedingly unpopular.

As soon as the news of the overthrow of James II. in England reached New York, Jacob Leisler, the senior captain of the military companies, was requested by his men to take possession of the fort and assume the management of affairs until the government should be settled by the orders of King William. Leisler was a prominent merchant and was very popular with the common people, but he was opposed by the great landholders, who were principally Dutch, and by the party devoted to the Church of England. He found himself at the head of about five hundred armed men, and taking possession of the fort avowed his intention to hold it until the will of King William should be known. He was sustained by a large majority of the people of New York, but the aristocratic party, and the churchmen, who hated him, as he was a Presbyterian, denounced him as a rebel, and sustained the council of Nicholson, the last governor appointed by King James, which withdrew to Albany in August, 1689.

Leisler appointed his son-in-law, Milbourne, his secretary. Later in the year the people of Albany, being in danger of an attack from the French from Canada, asked aid from New York. Leisler sent Milbourne with a body of troops to their assistance, but the old council refused to acknowledge his authority, or to allow him to assume the command of the fort, and he went back with his men to New York, leaving the people of Albany to depend upon their own exertions for the defeat of the French. In their necessity they asked for and received aid from Connecticut.

Blood Runs High.

In December letters from the English government were received, addressed to Nicholson, or, in his absence, to "such as, for the time being, take care for preserving the peace and administering the law" in New York. A commission for Nicholson accompanied these documents; but he was on his way to England, and Leisler, who was temporarily in authority in New York, regarded his position as confirmed by the letters from England, and caused himself to be proclaimed governor. He ordered the members of the old council at Albany to be arrested, and summoned an assembly to provide for the wants of the colony.

Upon first taking charge of affairs Leisler had addressed a letter to King William setting forth his reasons for his action, and asking the king to make known his royal pleasure concerning the colony. No answer was sent by the king to this communication, but on the thirtieth of January, 1691, a ship suddenly arrived in the harbor having on board a company of English soldiers, commanded by a Captain Ingoldsby, who had been sent by Colonel Henry Sloughter, whom King William had appointed governor of New York.

The aristocratic party at once rallied around Ingoldsby as their leader, and that officer demanded of Leisler the surrender of the

fort. Leisler insisted that he should produce his authority for such a demand, and, as none could be shown, refused to give up the fort, but offered Ingoldsby every assistance for himself and his men, and avowed his intention to submit to Sloughter upon his arrival. In the time which elapsed between the arrivals of Ingoldsby and the new governor party spirit ran so high that a collision occurred between the soldiers and the people, in which one man was wounded.

Charged with Treason.

Sloughter reached New York on the nineteenth of March, 1691. Leisler at once sent messengers to receive his orders, but the messengers were detained. The next morning Leisler addressed a letter to Sloughter, asking to whom he should deliver up the fort. Sloughter returned no answer to this letter, but ordered Ingoldsby to "arrest Leisler and the persons called his council."

Leisler, Milbourne, and six others were arrested and immediately arraigned before a tribunal composed of their inveterate enemies, on a charge of treason. This was a frivolous pretence, for it was well known that Leisler, who was an enthusiastic admirer of King William, had never dreamed of denying his authority; but it was as good a charge as any other, as the fate of the prisoners was decided from the first. The prisoners denied the authority of the court, and refusing to plead before it, appealed to the king. The presiding officer of the court was the chief justice of New York, the infamous Joseph Dudley, who had been driven out of New England by the people whose liberties he had outraged. The prisoners, in spite of their appeal, were condemned to death.

Sloughter was unwilling to disregard their appeal as entirely as the court had done, and wished to leave the matter to the king; but the enemies of Leisler were resolved upon his death. Taking advantage of the known weakness of the governor, they made him drunk at a dinner party, and in this state induced him to sign the death warrant of the prisoners. The next morning at daybreak (May 16th) Leisler and Milbourne were hurried from their weeping families to the gallows, to be executed for treason.

Judicial Murder.

In spite of a pouring rain, the people who had gotten news of the tragedy crowded around the place of execution to cheer their martyrs in their last moments. "Weep not for us, who are departing to our God," said Leisler to the multitude. Milbourne saw standing among the crowd one of the men who had been prominent in their condemnation, and cried out to him: "Robert Livingston, I will implead thee for this at the bar of God." Then turning to the people, he said: "I die for the king and queen, and for the Protestant religion, in which I was born and bred. Father, into thy hands I commend my spirit." The judicial murder was then completed, and New York's first martyrs laid down their lives in behalf of the rights of the people.

The popular party was now more than ever embittered against the aristocratic class, and the principles which Leisler and Milbourne upheld were more than ever insisted upon. Their friends, "who were distinguished always by their zeal for popular power, for toleration, for opposition to the doctrine of legitimacy," continued the struggle, and at length succeeded in making their principles the law of the colony.

The royalist assembly, while denying to the people an equality with themselves in political matters, were yet indisposed to surrender to the crown the independence of the colony, and, with their successors, insisted upon the right of self-government, and the

regulation of taxation by the assembly, with such firmness that in 1705 Queen Anne yielded so far as to permit the assembly to appoint "its own treasurer to take charge of extraordinary supplies."

arts to prevent this act of justice. As for Governor Sloughter, who was at the best but a poor weak adventurer, he died of the effects of his dissipation six months after the execution of his victims.

QUEEN ANNE.

The memory of Leisler and Milbourne was vindicated after their death. The son of the former made the appeal to the king which had been denied his father, and Parliament at length reversed the attainder under the charge of treason, and restored their estates to their families. Dudley exerted all his

In 1692 Benjamin Fletcher was appointed to succeed Sloughter. He was an officer of the royal army, and was as passionate and avaricious as he was incompetent in other respects. He was a firm ally of the aristocratic party, and a bitter foe to popular liberty. In 1693, in order to assist New York

against the attacks of the French in Canada, all the colonies were required to contribute their quota of troops to her defence. An effort was also made to place the militia of New Jersey and Connecticut under the orders of the governor of New York. The authorities of Connecticut, however, were resolved not to relinquish the control of their militia, which would have been to sacrifice their rights secured by the charter.

In order to enforce his authority, Governor Fletcher repaired to Hartford, where the assembly of Connecticut was in session. At the time of his arrival a company of militia was engaged in training in the town. Governor Fletcher rode up to this force; but its commander, Captain Wadsworth, paid no attention to him, and did not even acknowledge his presence. Fletcher, who had boasted that he would not stir from the colony until he was obeyed, ordered his secretary to read his commission in the hearing of the troops.

"Silence!" "Music! Music!"

As the secretary commenced to read, Wadsworth ordered the drums to be beaten, and the secretary's voice was drowned. "Silence!" cried Fletcher; "begin again with the commission." "Music! music!" ordered Wadsworth, the same man who had hid the charter from Governor Andros. The drummers began again, and the governor, in a rage, ordered them to cease their music. Wadsworth sharply commanded the bewildered musicians to go on with their drumming, and then turning upon Fletcher, said to him fiercely: "If I am interrupted again, I will make daylight shine through you." The voice and manner of the man convinced the governor that he was in earnest, and he went back to New York, satisfied of the impossibility of bringing the Connecticut militia under his orders.

New York was the most northern colony in which the authority of the Church of England was established. A number of its people were members of that communion, and in the colonial government the influence of that church was predominant. The vast majority of the people, however, were hostile to it, and it was not until 1695 that Governor Fletcher was able to obtain for it anything like favor from the assembly. The representatives of the people were fearful that if it obtained a firm footing among them, the British government might bestow upon it a power which would be dangerous to the other denominations. Naturally it enjoyed the favor of the home government, and engrossed all the provision made by England for religious matters in the colony.

Struggle for Liberty.

Lord Cornbury, the royal governor, attempted in 1705 to silence a Presbyterian minister for preaching without a license from the governor; but a jury, composed of Episcopalians, acquitted the prisoner. The same governor connived at the seizure by the Episcopalians of a church in Jamaica, which had been built by the whole town; but the colonial court restored it to its rightful owners. The spirit of popular liberty and toleration was growing rapidly in New York, and its colonial history is the story of a constant struggle between the people and the royal governors for the assertion and maintenance of their rights. Nearly all the governors regarded their position as but a means of enriching themselves, and systematically defrauded both the king and the colony.

By 1732 the population of New York City numbered a little less than nine thousand souls. In that year a case of the deepest interest occurred in that city. John Peter Zenger had established a newspaper called

the *Weekly Journal*, which ventured to censure the arbitrary action of the governor and assembly in levying illegal taxes upon the colony. This was a bold step, for until now no newspaper had dared to criticise the action of the government. Cosby, the governor of New York, resolving to make an example of the offender, arrested Zenger on the charge of libel and caused his paper to be publicly burned. Zenger employed two lawyers to defend him, and these increased the anger of the government by denying the competency of the court, inasmuch as the appointment of the chief justice, Delancy, had been made by Cosby without the consent of the council, and was therefore illegal. The court at once struck their names from its list of attorneys, and this arbitrary action so intimidated the remaining members of the bar that Zenger found it impossible to procure counsel.

Famous "Quaker Lawyer."

In this helpless condition he was put on trial, and the court had actually begun its proceedings when a stranger, a venerable and noble-looking man, entered the room and took his seat at the bar. He announced his name to the court, and stated that he had come to act as counsel for the prisoner. A murmur of admiration greeted the announcement of his name. He was Andrew Hamilton, speaker of the assembly of Pennsylvania, the famous "Quaker lawyer" of Philadelphia. In the trial which ensued, Hamilton offered to prove the truth of the alleged libel, but was not allowed to do so; the chief justice quoting English precedents in support of his decision.

Hamilton then made an eloquent appeal to the jury, declaring that they of their own knowledge knew the statements of Zenger's paper to be true, and urged them to maintain the great principles of the freedom of the press and liberty of speech throughout the colonies, which principles, and not John Peter Zenger, he solemnly declared were on trial before them. In spite of the unfavorable charge of the judge, the jury brought in a unanimous verdict of acquittal, which was announced amid the cheers of the people. Thus while the freedom of the press was still in doubt in England, and thirty-seven years before the famous trial for libel of the publisher of the Letters Junius established it in the mother country, the people of New York declared themselves its guardians, and struck down the effort of the royal power to impose shackles upon their most vigilant defender.

In 1702 the proprietaries of New Jersey surrendered their rights of jurisdiction to the crown, and Queen Anne united the two Jerseys in one province, and placed it under the governor of New York. It was given a separate assembly, but this concession of partial independence of its neighbor did not suit the province, and after many protests it was given its own governor in the person of Lewis Morris, in 1708. During the rest of the colonial period it remained a loyal province.

CHAPTER XVII

Colonization of Pennsylvania

The Quakers—Their Origin and Doctrines—William Penn—Becomes a Quaker—Is Persecuted for His Religious Opinions—Becomes Interested in American Colonization—Purchases West Jersey from the Proprietor—Conceives the Idea of Founding a Free State in America—Purchases Pennsylvania from Charles II.—Conditions of His Charter—Sends Out a Colony—Arrival of Penn in America—Philadelphia Founded—Penn's Treaty with the Indians—Religious Toleration Guaranteed—Penn's Relations with His Colonists—Rapid Growth of Pennsylvania in Population and Prosperity—William Penn and James II.—Renewal of Penn's Troubles—William III. Declares Pennsylvania a Royal Province—Penn is Vindicated and Restored to His Proprietary Rights—His Return to Pennsylvania—Character of the Settlers of the Province—Penn Goes Back to England—Efforts to Deprive Him of His Possessions—His Death.

ONE of the most remarkable results of the English Reformation was the rise and growth of the Society of Friends, or Quakers, as they came to be called. Discarding what seemed to them superfluous and unnecessary forms in religion, they confined themselves to a simpler and more primitive expression of their faith. Believing that the only evil a Christian should resist is the evil of his own heart, they opposed no resistance to persecution or to ill-treatment from their fellowmen; and as servants of the Prince of Peace, were unchangeably opposed to war and bloodshed. They held the doctrine of the Trinity: that we obtain salvation by the atoning blood of Christ; that man was created a free and responsible agent; that he forfeited his right to the blessings of the Creator by his fall, and will owe his restoration to his lost estate to the mercy of God and the blood of Christ; that the Holy Scriptures are the work of inspiration, and a good rule of life and faith.

With them the test of Christianity was not a man's standing in the church, but the answer of a good conscience; the sense of true inward communion between the soul of the individual and God. They conducted their worship in silence, and regarded all their members as sent by God to preach His Gospel; therefore, any one, even women, was free to speak in their meetings the message which came to him from the Holy Spirit. They denied that the right to preach was restricted to any particular class, and refused to acknowledge the authority of the regular clergy. Oaths were regarded as unlawful for Christian men, and temperance and the utmost simplicity in all things were enjoined upon their people. They refused to recognize the social distinctions which prevailed in the world, though they admitted the power of the magistrates to enforce the laws, and regarded all men as equals. Their dress was simple and in proportion to the means of the wearer, and their lives were blameless. They admitted the right of all men to worship God in their own way, and thus extended to all others the perfect toleration they claimed for themselves.

The founder of this sect was the good George Fox, the son of a weaver of Leicestershire, and "by his mother descended from the stock of the martyrs." He began to teach his doctrines about the middle of the seventeenth century, and at first his converts were people of the humbler classes of England. He was met with a determined opposition from both the established church

and the Presbyterians, and was imprisoned, set in the stocks, cruelly beaten and otherwise persecuted, and driven from place to place. Yet he persevered, and his doctrines began to spread. Distressed by the persecutions to which his followers were subjected, he visited America after the restoration of Charles II., in the hope of finding there a place of refuge for his people, but could find none. Puritan New England was hostile to his doctrines, and the power of the Church of England was strong enough in the southern colonies to defeat his object.

The Founder of Pennsylvania.

Among Fox's converts were a few from the higher classes of English society. One of these was destined to be, next to its founder, the greatest benefactor of his faith, and one of the choice instruments of the Almighty in the settlement and Christianization of America. This was William Penn. He was the son and heir of Admiral Sir William Penn, one of the most distinguished naval commanders of England. The admiral desired for his son the advantages which his high position would readily secure to him, but the young man at an early day, happening to converse with a simple-minded Quaker, became so deeply impressed with his principles that he adopted them as his own. This greatly annoyed the father, but supposing that it was a mere boyish notion which his son would outgrow, William was sent to study at the University of Oxford, and after leaving that institution was made to travel through Europe to improve his mind and to remove his tendency to Quakerism.

William returned to England, after an absence of two years, greatly improved in mind, but still true to his religious convictions. In 1666, while traveling in Ireland, Penn met his old friend, Thomas Loe, and heard him speak of the glorious triumph of the faith of a Christian over the adversities of the world. His enthusiasm was once more awakened to such an extent that he from that moment began to seek to draw others into the communion which had given him so much happiness. His course gave offence to the authorities and he was imprisoned. He addressed a remonstrance to the viceroy of Ireland, in which he declared: "Religion is my crime and my innocence; it makes me a prisoner to malice, but my own freeman."

Being liberated, he went back home, but only to meet with mockery and persecution. He was ridiculed by his companions of his own rank in life, and it was a common jest in society, says Pepys, that "William Penn was a Quaker again, or some very melancholy thing." His father, disappointed and indignant at the failure of his hopes, turned him out of his house without a penny; but his mother, truer to her nature, supplied him with sufficient funds to relieve his most pressing wants.

Thrust Into Prison.

Penn now began to defend his doctrines through the press, and thus brought them into greater prominence. This soon made him the victim of the ecclesiastical authorities, and the Bishop of London threatened him with imprisonment for life if he did not recant his doctrines. He answered firmly: "Then my prison shall be my grave." He was committed to the Tower on a charge of heresy and kept in close confinement. Charles II., naturally kind-hearted, was touched by his firmness, and sent the learned Stillingfleet, himself a man of humanity, to reason with him. "The Tower," said Penn, "is to me the worst argument in the world." At the end of a year his father's friend, the Duke of York, procured his release, for the consistency of the young man had won back

for him the affection and sympathy of the stern old admiral.

Every effort was now made to draw William Penn away from his faith. A high rank in the royal navy, the favor of the king, and many other inducements were held out to him, but he refused them all and remained true to his principles. In less than a year after his release from the Tower he was arrested for having spoken at a Quaker meeting. He protested his right to do this and declared that no power on earth should prevent him from worshiping the God who made him.

He was placed on trial for his offence, and boldly demanded to know on what law the indictment against him was founded. "On the common law," replied the recorder. "Where is that law?" asked Penn. "The law which is not in being, far from being common, is no law at all." He conducted his own defence, and as he was pleading earnestly for his rights as an Englishman, was hurried out of court. He appealed to the jury to remember that they were his judges. The jury, in spite of an unfavorable charge from the judge, brought in a verdict of acquittal. The court ordered them back to their room, with the angry declaration: "We will have a verdict, by the help of God, or you shall starve for it." "You are Englishmen," cried Penn to the jurors, as they were retiring: "mind your privilege; give not away your right."

At last, after being kept two days and nights without food, the jury repeated their verdict of "not guilty," and were fined by the court for daring to assert their independence. Penn was fined for contempt of court, and sent back to prison. His fine was soon discharged by his father, who died shortly afterwards. "Son William," said the dying admiral, to whom earthly honors

WILLIAM PENN.

now appeared in their true light, "if you and your friends keep to your plain way of preaching and living, you will make an end of the priests."

Penn was now nearly twenty-six years old, and had inherited from his father a handsome estate. He continued to explain and defend his doctrines through the press, and in 1671 was arrested and sentenced to six months' imprisonment in Newgate. From his prison he addressed a noble plea to Parliament and to the nation for toleration in all matters of faith.

The Wife of Penn.

Upon his release from prison, Penn travelled in Holland and Germany, and upon his return to England, in 1673, married a woman of great beauty, whose noble character rendered her a fitting companion to him. He took no part in public affairs until the imprisonment of George Fox, upon his return to England to America, called him once more to the defence of his brethren. Fox being released, he and Penn and several others travelled through Holland and a part of Germany, seeking to make converts to their faith—an effort in which they were very successful among the Dutch and German peasantry. Returning to England, he once more appealed to Parliament, but without success, to do justice to the Quakers, and grant them the toleration to which they were entitled.

Despairing of success in England, Penn now directed the whole of his energies to securing a home for his persecuted brethren in the new world. A number of Quakers were already settled along the banks of the Delaware and in New Jersey, and in 1675 the embarrassments of Edward Byllinge, who had purchased Lord Berkeley's interest in New Jersey, obliged him to sell his share of that province. It was purchased by William Penn, Gawen Lourie and Nicholas Lucas, for the benefit of the Quakers. This placed the Friends in possession of an asylum, but it left them more at the mercy of the English government and church than they desired to be, and New Jersey was divided into two equal parts; Cartaret, Berkeley's former partner, retaining East Jersey, and West Jersey becoming the property of the Quakers.

The People Rule.

This was accomplished in 1676, and in March of the following year a government resting upon the will of the people, and securing to the inhabitants protection and equality in all their political and religious rights and privileges, was set up in West Jersey. The English Quakers came over to the new province in great numbers, with the good wishes of Charles II., and peaceful relations were established with the Indians. Byllinge, who had retained some interest in the province, now began to be troublesome, and claimed the right to nominate the deputy governor. The people denied his claim, and at the instigation of William Penn, amended their constitution so as to place the choice of all their officers in their own hands, and then elected a governor.

Penn had now become deeply interested in the colonization of America, and wished to secure for his faith a wider domain than West Jersey. He had inherited from his father a claim against the English government amounting to sixteen thousand pounds. He now proposed to exchange this claim for a grant of territory in America. Charles II., who was always in want of money, and who never set much value upon the lands of the new world, readily accepted his offer, as it was urged by Lords North, Halifax and Sunderland, and the Duke of York, who were firm friends of William Penn. The

king, in 1681, granted to Penn a district lying west of the Delaware River, and corresponding very nearly to territory embraced in the present state of Pennsylvania, which name the king bestowed upon it in honor of the proprietor.

The Duke of York claimed Delaware as his own property, and Penn, who wished to have free access to the sea, purchased it of him the next year. The territory was granted to Penn as absolute proprietor; the people were secured in the right of self-government; religious equality was guaranteed to all; the acts of the colonial legislature were to be submitted to the king and council, who had the power to annul them if contrary to the law of England; the power of levying customs was reserved to Parliament; and no taxes were to be imposed upon the people save by the colonial legislature or by Parliament.

Settlers Throng the Wilderness.

Penn then invited all persons who desired to do so to settle in Pennsylvania, and in a proclamation declared his intention to leave the settlers free to make their own laws. "I propose," he said, "to leave myself and successors no power of doing mischief, that the will of no one man may hinder the good of a whole country." "God," he declared, "has furnished me with a better resolution, and has given me His grace to keep it."

His resolution was soon tested. Soon after he obtained his patent a company of traders offered him six thousand pounds and an annual payment of a stipulated sum for the monopoly of the Indian traffic between the Delaware and the Susquehanna. He had already straitened himself very much by his expenditures for his colony, and his family had been obliged to endure some deprivations in consequence. The offer was tempting, but he declined it firmly. What was free to him should be free to every inhabitant of Pennsylvania, and he would derive no advantage at the expense of his people.

Liberal Education.

A company was collected and sent out to Pennsylvania, under William Markham, Penn's nephew, and the personal character of the proprietor of the colony was deemed by all a sufficient guarantee for the protection of their liberties. Penn intended following this company as soon as he could, and in the meantime enjoined Markham to continue the establishment already existing along the Delaware, and to govern in accordance with the laws of England. In 1682 he prepared to go out to America to superintend the formal establishment of his colony. As he was about to sail, he wrote to his wife, to whom he was devoted with all the ardor of his youth: "Live low and sparingly till my debts be paid; I desire not riches, but to owe nothing; be liberal to the poor and kind to all." With regard to their children, he wrote: "Let their learning be liberal; spare no cost, for by such parsimony all is lost that is saved."

Penn took out with him one hundred emigrants, and reached Newcastle on the twenty-seventh of October, 1682, after a long and trying voyage. In the presence of the Swedish, Dutch and English settlers, who welcomed him with joy, he took formal possession of the province, which was surrendered to him by the agents of the Duke of York. He pledged himself to the people to grant them liberty of conscience and all their civil privileges. From Newcastle Penn went up the river to Chester, where a settlement had been formed by emigrants from the north of England, who had preceded him.

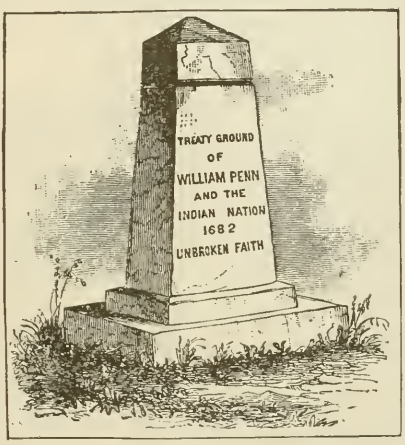
Early in November, accompanied by a few friends, Penn ascended the Delaware in an

WILLIAM PENN'S TREATY WITH THE INDIANS.

open boat to the mouth of the Schuylkill, and passing a little distance beyond this, landed on the beautiful site now occupied by the city of Philadelphia. The place at which he landed was long known as the "Blue Anchor Landing," from a tavern of that name which stood there. A little later, under a spreading elm, Penn met the chiefs of the neighboring Indian tribes and entered into a treaty of peace and friendship with them. This treaty was confirmed by no oath, but it remained unbroken for fifty years, and as neither side sought to evade its obligations, which were simply of peace and good will, the colony of Pennsylvania escaped in its earlier years the horrors of a savage warfare from which the other settlers suffered. "We will live," said the Indian sachems, "in love with William Penn and his children as long as the moon and the sun shall endure." They kept their word. "Penn came without arms; he declared his purpose to abstain from violence; he had no message but peace; and not a drop of Quaker blood was ever shed by an Indian." The scene of the treaty was at Shackamaxon, now Kensington, in the city of Philadelphia.

Philadelphia Laid Out.

On the pleasant tract lying between the Delaware and the Schuylkill, which was purchased from the Swedes, who had on their part purchased it from the Indians, Penn in 1683 laid out the capital of his province, which he named PHILADELPHIA, the City of Brotherly Love, in token of the principles which he meant should constitute the common law of his possessions. It was abundantly supplied with streams of pure water and was admirably situated for purposes of trade. He did not wish it to be built after the manner of European cities, but designed it to be a "greene country town, gardens round each house, that it might never be burned, and always be wholesome." The streets were laid off by marking their course through the primitive forest by blazing the trees, and the building of dwellings was begun. In the first year of Penn's arrival in the colony twenty-three ships with emigrants arrived in Pennsylvania. In three years after its foundation Philadelphia contained upwards of six hundred houses, and the colony had a population of ten thousand. The Indians proved the firm friends of the colonists and supplied them with wild fowl and venison in return for articles of European manufacture.



PENN TREATY MONUMENT.

Penn from the first refused to retain in his hands the exercise of the vast powers with which the charter granted him by the king invested him. As early as December, 1682, he convened a general convention of the people and gave them a charter of liberties which Bancroft thus sums up: "God was declared the only Lord of conscience; the first day of the week was reserved as a day of leisure, for the ease of the creation. The rule of equality was introduced into families by abrogating the privileges of primogeniture. The word of an honest man was

evidence without an oath. The mad spirit of speculation was checked by a system of strict accountability, applied to factors and agents.

"Every man liable to civil burdens possessed the right of suffrage; and, without regard to sect, every Christian was eligible to office. No tax or custom could be levied but by law. The Quaker is a spiritualist; the pleasures of the senses, masks, revels and stage plays, not less than bull-baits and cock-fights, were prohibited. Murder was the only crime punishable by death. Marriage was esteemed a civil contract; adultery a felony. The Quakers had suffered wrong from imprisonment; the false accuser was liable to double damages. Every prison for convicts was made a workhouse. There were neither poor-rates nor tithes. The Swedes, and Finns, and Dutch were invested with the liberties of Englishmen."* In March, 1683, the first general assembly of Pennsylvania met at Philadelphia. "I am ready," said Penn to this body, "to settle such foundations as may be for your happiness."

THE OLD SWEDES' CHURCH, BUILT IN 1641.

Under the guidance of the founder of the colony, the assembly established a constitution which made Pennsylvania emphatically a free state. A government was established, consisting of a governor, a legislative council and an assembly composed of representatives of the people. As the charter made the proprietor responsible to the king for the legislation of the colony, no act of legislation was to be valid until it had passed the great seal of the province.

With this exception, the entire power of the province was left in the hands of the people. "But for the hereditary office of proprietary, Pennsylvania had been a representative democracy. In Maryland the council was named by Lord Baltimore; in Pennsylvania, by the people. In Maryland, the power of appointing magistrates, and all, even the subordinate executive officers, rested solely with the proprietary; in Pennsylvania, William Penn could not appoint a justice or a constable; every executive officer, except the highest, was elected by the people or their representatives; and the governor could perform no public act but with the consent of the council. Lord Baltimore had a revenue derived from the export of tobacco, the staple of Maryland; and his colony was burdened with taxes; a similar revenue was offered to William Penn and declined, and tax-gatherers were unknown in his province."

* Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii., p. 385.

Thus did the "Quaker King" complete one of the sublimest surrenders of political power in all the annals of history. "I desired," he said, in his grand simplicity, "to show men as free and happy as they can be."

The colony improved rapidly. Men were attracted from all parts of Great Britain, from Ireland, the Low countries, from Germany and Sweden, to Pennsylvania. The personal character of William Penn, not less than the advantages afforded them, induced them to settle in the happy colony. Philadelphia especially grew with rapidity, and already gave promise of becoming the principal city of colonial America. Schools were opened and liberally encouraged, for ignorance had no advocates in this thrifty community. The printing press was also set up and put to work. In August, 1684, Penn, having successfully established his colony, took leave of his people and returned to England.

Lord Baltimore claimed Delaware as a part of the country granted to him. Penn sustained his claim to that region by pleading the actual settlement of the Dutch previous to the grant to Lord Baltimore, and his purchase of the rights which the Duke of York had derived from the Dutch. The English courts decided, in 1685, that Delaware did not constitute a part of Maryland and sustained Penn's claim. The boundaries of the two colonies were settled by a compromise.

INDIAN AMUSEMENTS—CANOE-RACE BETWEEN SQUAWS.

During Penn's absence in England the people of Delaware began to be restless. They presented to the proprietary a list of grievances, and were granted by Penn a separate government.

The fall of James II., who continued the friend of William Penn, though so widely opposed to him in religion, was the beginning of trouble for the proprietor of Pennsylvania. Penn did not relinquish his friendship for the dethroned king, and his enemies made this

constancy, which in no way interfered with his loyalty to William and Mary, the means of injuring him in the estimation of the new king. William was induced to believe the charges of disloyalty which were brought against Penn, and deprived him of his patent and proprietorship of Pennsylvania. Penn was also imprisoned several times for disloyalty.

Absurd Teachings.

During this period the colony was much annoyed by a disturbance led by one George Keith, who pushed the Quaker doctrine of non-resistance to the verge of absurdity. He argued that no Quaker could with consistency take part in public affairs as a magistrate or legislator. As the liberties of the colony were the work of Quakers the inference was plain. If Keith was right, then Pennsylvania had no lawful government, and must apply to the king for one. Keith produced such trouble in the colony that even the tolerant Quakers were at length obliged to lay hands on him. He was tried and fined for using seditious language; but lest their action should seem to be a punishment of opinion the Quaker magistrates remitted the fine. He subsequently became a clergyman of the English church.

This disturbance gave the king a pretext for declaring Pennsylvania a royal province, and in April, 1693, Benjamin Fletcher was appointed by William and Mary governor of Pennsylvania, to which province Delaware was reunited. The people, indignant at this invasion of their rights, attempted no resistance, but refused to recognize the royalist governor.

Some of the magistrates resigned their offices upon his arrival. Upon the meeting of the assembly the hostility to Fletcher increased. The members of the assembly declared the laws they had made under the charter granted to Penn to be valid, and refused to have new ones, or recognize any other authority. A charter granted by King Charles was, they maintained, as valid as one granted by King William, and they refused to re-enact their old laws, as such a course would be to brand them as illegal. Fletcher demanded that the assembly should appropriate a sum for the defence of New York against the Indians. His demand was flatly refused. The assembly was willing, however, to make an appropriation for the relief of the people of New York who had suffered by this war, but only upon condition that this sum should be disbursed by officers of its own appointment. Fletcher refused to consent to this condition, as he regarded it as an infringement of the king's prerogative, and the assembly was dissolved, A. D. 1694.

Penn's Misfortunes.

In the meantime Penn had been restored to his proprietary rights. The king expressed himself satisfied of his innocence, which was established before the council, and in August, 1694, the patent for his restoration was formally issued. Penn was anxious to return to Pennsylvania, but was detained in England by his inability to raise the funds necessary for the voyage. He had spent a large part of his fortune in planting the colony, and the persecutions and annoyances to which he had been subjected in England had caused him great loss. Nor was this his only trouble. His wife and eldest son had died during his trials, and some whom he had imagined his friends in his prosperity had in his adversity shown themselves his enemies. He retained his serenity of mind, however, and persevered in the good work to which he had devoted his life. Being unable to go to Pennsylvania he sent his nephew, Markham, as his deputy. Markham summoned an assembly, and this body, alarmed at the recent changes in

their charter, which had threatened to deprive them of their political rights, endeavored to provide against a recurrence of the danger by assuming the power of framing a constitution for themselves. The assembly of 1696 made still further changes, and placed the control of the colonial government entirely in the hands of the people by giving them the election of all the officials of the province.

Old Charter Discarded.

Penn returned to Pennsylvania in November, 1699, and sanctioned the action of the people. One of the members of the council proposed that they should make a constitution that should be "firm and lasting" to them and to their descendants. "Keep what is good in the charter and frame of government," said Penn; "and lay aside what is burdensome, and add what may best suit the common good." It was agreed by all parties that it would be best to surrender the old charter and frame a new constitution. This was attended with considerable difficulty, as Delaware dreaded the loss of its independence. It was conciliated by being given its own legislature, but was under the administration of the governor of Pennsylvania. The two colonies were never again united. The constitution secured to the people all the political privileges they claimed. Penn, whose sole desire was for the welfare of the colony, held back nothing for himself.

Among the earliest emigrants to Pennsylvania were many Germans, who had been converted to the Quaker doctrines by William Penn during his missionary labors on the continent of Europe. They settled at Germantown, to which they gave its name. Towards the close of the seventeenth century the severe wars in Europe drove out large numbers of Germans from the Rhine valley. They sought refuge in England at first, and from that country passed over to Pennsylvania. They were chiefly Lutherans, and members of the German Reformed church. They settled chiefly in the southern part of Pennsylvania, and clung together instead of separating, thus giving to this part of the state the peculiar characteristics which distinguish it to the present day. They held aloof from the English, and allowed the German language alone to be taught to their children. They attracted other settlers from their native country, and the region occupied by them was soon thickly settled, and was noted as one of the best cultivated sections of the province.

Industrious Settlers.

About the beginning of the eighteenth century a large emigration from the north of Ireland and from Scotland began to set in, and continued for some years. These people were nearly all Presbyterians and located themselves chiefly in the eastern and central sections of the province. They were an energetic, industrious and intelligent community, and set to work with a will to improve their new home. They advanced the frontier of Pennsylvania steadily westward by their new plantations, and proved themselves among the most desirable settlers that had yet come into the province.

William Penn had come to Pennsylvania with the intention of passing the remainder of his life there; but rumors now began to reach the colony that it was the intention of the crown to deprive Pennsylvania of its charter and make it a royal province. These reports made it necessary for Penn to return to England, a step to which nothing but the importance of being near the home government to defend the liberties of his people could have forced him. He had done his work in America well, and could go back to

his native land with the satisfaction that he had successfully laid the foundations of a great and rapidly-growing state, and had placed the liberties of its people upon such a secure basis that they would endure for all time. He had founded a democracy, and had proved by the most generous surrender of his truly regal powers that his chief aim in life was the good of his fellow-men. After making such arrangements as he deemed best for the welfare of his "young countrie," he went back to England in 1701.

Penn's Honorable Poverty.

There were not wanting efforts after his arrival in England to deprive him of his proprietary rights and to convert Pennsylvania into a royal province; but the deep reverence with which the English people had now come to regard the virtues of William Penn prevented the consummation of these designs, and saved the people of Pennsylvania from the rule of royal governors, such as plundered the sister province of New York. The crown could never be persuaded to rob the man whose pure life was an honor to the nation. In his last years Penn was so poor that he was for a while an inmate of a debtors' prison. He had bought the province of Pennsylvania from Charles II., and had confirmed his claim by purchasing the lands from the Indians, so that he was absolute owner of the unoccupied lands of the colony.

He thus had it in his power to relieve his distress by selling his claims, but in his deepest poverty he refused to part with Pennsylvania, except upon terms which would secure to his people the full and perfect enjoyment of the liberties he had guaranteed them. He died in 1718, peacefully and amid the sympathy of his countrymen in England, and the sorrow of those whom he had befriended in his beloved Pennsylvania. By his pure life he won for the people of his faith the respect of all candid men, and by his fidelity to the principles he professed he became the benefactor of millions who will ever count it a privilege to honor his name.

Penn left three sons, who were all minors at the time of his death. They succeeded to his rights as proprietary of Pennsylvania, and the government of the colony was administered for them by deputies until the Revolution, when their claims were purchased by the state.

CHAPTER XVIII

Settlement of the Carolinas

Gradual Settlement of North Carolina from Virginia—Charles II. Grants Carolina to Clarendon and Others—The "Grand Model"—An Ideal Aristocracy Proposed for Carolina—The Authority of the Proprietaries Established in North Carolina—Continued Settlement of that Region—Characteristics of the Early Settlers of North Carolina—The People Reject the Grand Model—Hostility of England to the Colonial Commerce—Insurrection in North Carolina—Slothel Governor—Settlement of South Carolina—Charleston Founded—The Proprietary Constitutions Rejected by South Carolina—Rapid Growth of the Colony—Introduction of Slavery—Characteristics of the Early Settlers of South Carolina—Efforts to Enforce the Navigation Acts—Resistance of the People—The Proprietaries Abandon their Constitutions—Archdale's Reforms—Religious Intolerance—Establishment of the Church of England in South Carolina—Action of the Crown—Continued Prosperity of South Carolina—Governor Moore Attacks St. Augustine—Failure of the Effort—The Spaniards are Repulsed in an Attempt to Capture Charleston—Indian War in North Carolina—The Tuscaroras Driven Northward—War with the Yemmassees—Destruction of their Power—Separation of the Carolinas.

WE have related the efforts of the French to colonize the shores of the beautiful region which they named Carolina, and the failure of Raleigh's attempt to found a city upon Roanoke Island. We have now to consider the successful planting of this same region with English settlements.

After the settlement of Virginia the attention of the English was frequently drawn to the fertile region south of the James, and as their plantations spread in that direction adventurous explorers went into this region, and returned with reports of its great beauty and fertility. When the severe measures of the Virginia colony for enforcing conformity to the established church were put in operation, many dissenters withdrew from the limits of the colony and settled in what are now the northeastern counties of North Carolina. Among these were a company of Presbyterians, who settled upon the Chowan. Others followed them, and by the year 1663 these counties contained a prosperous and growing community of English-speaking people.

In 1663, Charles II., who always displayed the most remarkable liberality in his gifts of American lands, granted to eight of his favorites the vast region extending from the present southern boundary of Virginia to the St. John's River in Florida, and from the Atlantic to the Pacific. Those upon whom this rich gift was bestowed were the Earl of Clarendon, the prime minister, Lord Ashley Cooper, who was afterwards Earl of Shaftesbury, the Duke of Albemarle, Lord Craven, Sir John Colleton, Lord John Berkeley, his brother, Sir William Berkeley, the governor of Virginia, and Sir George Cartaret. They were given absolute power over their territory, the king reserving only a claim upon their allegiance. The country had been called Carolina by the first French settlers in honor of Charles IX. of France; the old name was retained in honor of Charles II. of England.

The proprietors had but one object in view, to enrich themselves; but they claimed to be influenced by a "pious zeal for the propagation of the gospel." They at once set to work to prepare a code of laws for the government of their province. This task was committed to Ashley Cooper, Earl of Shaftesbury, and the great philosopher, John Locke, then an almost unknown man. These produced

a code known as "The Grand Model," or "Fundamental Constitutions." This was a system which might have been successful if the people for whom it was intended had been some European community of the Middle Ages, but it was utterly unsuited to a colony in the woods of America, composed of men whose personal independence and sturdy love of freedom were the indispensable conditions of the success of their enterprise. By the terms of the "Grand Model" an order of nobility was created, into whose hands the sole right to rule was committed. Earls, barons, and squires were made the natural heads of the various classes of society, and the common people were attached to the soil as tenants.

A Mockery of Freedom.

A simple tenant could never rise above his humble position, and was denied the right of suffrage; only those who possessed fifty acres of land were allowed this right, or were entitled to the name of freemen. The freemen were allowed an assembly, but that body was placed entirely under the control of the nobility. Religious freedom was promised to all persons, but the constitution expressly declared that the only orthodox establishment was the Church of England. Trial by jury was guaranteed, but with the destructive provision that a majority should decide the verdict of the jury.

It was very clear that this magnificent constitution would not suit the settlers in the log cabins of North Carolina, but the proprietors, ignorant of the people they had to deal with, proceeded to organize their government in England by electing the Duke of Albemarle to the rank of Palatine, as the head of their system was termed. Sir William Berkeley, then governor of Virginia, was ordered to establish the authority of the proprietors over the settlers on Albemarle Sound. This he did, and appointed William Drummond, a Scotchman and one of the settlers, governor. This was the same Drummond who afterwards took part in Bacon's rebellion in Virginia, and was hanged by Berkeley, as has been related. A simple form of government was established, and the people of North Carolina were left in peace until it should be time to collect the quit-rents which the proprietors claimed as due for their occupation of their lands.

In 1661, a few years previous to this action of Berkeley, a company from New England had made a settlement on the Cape Fear River. The colony did not prosper, however, though liberal inducements were held out to it, and many of the emigrants returned home. In 1664 a colony from the Barbadoes joined the settlers on the Cape Fear. The new-comers had been sent out by a company at the Barbadoes, who purchased from the Indians a tract of land thirty-two miles square on the Cape Fear, and asked of the proprietors of Carolina a confirmation of their purchase and a separate charter of government. A liberal charter was granted them, the country was named Clarendon, and Sir John Yeamans, a resident of Barbadoes, was appointed governor. He was instructed to "make things easy to the people of New England; from thence the greatest supplies are expected."

Lumber Trade.

In 1665 he led a company of emigrants from Barbadoes, and formed a settlement on the Cape Fear. The effort to found a town was unsuccessful, and the emigrants found great difficulty in contending against the natural barrenness and poverty of the region in which they had located. They devoted themselves to the cutting and export of lumber, and established a trade in boards, staves and shingles to the West Indies, which is

still carried on by their descendants. This trade was found to be profitable, and emigration increased. In 1666 the colony is said to have had a population of eight hundred souls.

In the meantime the settlements on Albemarle Sound and the Chowan had prospered, and had increased steadily in population, under the simple government established over them. This government consisted of a council of six persons named by the proprietaries and six chosen by the assembly, and an assembly consisting of the governor, the council and twelve representatives chosen by the freeholders of the colony. The proprietaries had confirmed the colonists in the possession of their lands, and had solemnly promised them religious toleration and exemption from taxation except by the colonial legislature. In 1669 the assembly, feeling secure in these guarantees, enacted a series of laws for the government of the colony, which remained in force in North Carolina until near the close of the next century. It was enacted that no emigrant should be sued for a debt contracted before his settlement in the colony until he had been a resident of the province for five years.

Marriage was made a civil contract, and for its validity required simply the consent of the contracting parties before a magistrate in the presence of witnesses. No emigrant could be taxed during his first year's residence in the colony. New settlers were invited by the offer of large bounties in lands, but no title to these lands could be obtained until after a two years' residence in the colony. The governor's salary and the other expenses of the province were secured by the imposition of a fee of thirty pounds of tobacco in every lawsuit. The members of the assembly served without compensation, seeking no emoluments from office.

THE COAST OF NORTH CAROLINA.

In 1670 the constitution of Shaftesbury and Locke was sent over by the proprietaries, and the governor was ordered to establish it in the colony. It met with a determined resistance from both legislature and people, who could never be induced to submit to it.

The people upon whom the proprietaries endeavored to enforce their "Grand Model" were in many respects the most singular

community in America. Many of them had fled from injustice and persecution in other colonies, and in the solitude of the forests of North Carolina had become possessed of an independence which scorned any control but that of the government established by their own consent. The plantations were chiefly along the rivers and the shores of Albemarle Sound; there were no roads but the paths marked through the forests by the blazing of the trees; the inhabitants visited each other and travelled through the country in their boats, scarcely any, even among the women and children, being unacquainted with the use of the oar.

A Happy Community.

The people were attached to their beautiful "summer land," and to the freedom which they enjoyed in it. They had little use for laws, for they were mainly a simple-hearted and virtuous race, who, by pursuing the paths of right, gave no cause for restraint. They had no court-house until 1722. Their first church was not built until 1705, and the freedom of conscience which they enjoyed was perfect. Yet they were a God-fearing people, and George Fox, who visited them in 1672, testifies to their readiness to hear the word of God and to their homely virtues. They were cut off from the world, careless of the struggles which rocked Europe to its foundations, and anxious only to live in the peaceful enjoyment of the good things God had given them, and to rear their children in the ways which they deemed conformable to His will. There were no towns in the colony, and in power and importance North Carolina could not compare with any of her more northern sisters; but there were no communities in which the people were happier or more contented than in this one.

When the cruelties of Berkeley drove many of the Virginians from their province, they fled to North Carolina, and were kindly received by the people, who treated Berkeley's demands to surrender the refugees for punishment with contempt. "Are there any who doubt man's capacity for self-government, let them study the early history of North Carolina; its inhabitants were restless and turbulent in their imperfect submission to a government imposed on them from abroad; the administration of the colony was firm, humane and tranquil when they were left to take care of themselves. Any government but one of their own institution was oppressive." *

These were the people for whom the "Grand Model" was designed, and who successfully resisted its imposition. The proprietaries had withdrawn the government they had first established, at the time when the constitutions of Shaftesbury and Locke were offered to the colony, and the refusal of these constitutions by the colonists left North Carolina without any regularly established system of government. In this state of affairs Stevens, the governor, continued to administer the old system until a settlement of the matter in dispute could be had. He died in 1674, and the assembly elected Cartwright, their speaker, as his successor, by whom the government was administered for two years.

Another Appeal to England.

Eastchurch, the new speaker, was sent to England to explain the grievances of the colony to the proprietaries and to endeavor to secure the withdrawal of the obnoxious constitution. Without withdrawing their favorite system, the proprietaries, who were disposed to conciliate the colony, thought best to leave matters in their present condition and appointed Eastchurch governor

* Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. ii., p. 158.

They did away with much of the good effect of this measure by coupling this appointment with that of Miller as collector of customs. He had been driven out of the colony by the people some time before, and he was now sent to compel the payment of the revenues claimed by the proprietaries, and to enforce the navigation acts in North Carolina.

England's Iniquitous Policy.

The enforcement of the navigation acts meant simply the certain crippling and the probable ruin of the industry of North Carolina. The commerce of the colony was small and was already struggling against natural difficulties. The whole province contained a little less than four thousand inhabitants, and its exports consisted of about eight hundred hogsheads of tobacco, a small quantity of Indian corn and a few cattle. These were shipped in a few small vessels which came for them from New England, and brought in return the few articles of foreign manufacture which the planters could afford to purchase. Yet this humble trade was made the object of the envy of the English merchants, and it was resolved by a vigorous enforcement of the navigation acts to cut the North Carolinians off from the use of the New England markets and to compel them to send their products to England for sale. Never was the iniquitous policy of England toward her colonies more strikingly and perfectly illustrated than in her treatment of North Carolina at this period.

The effort to enforce the navigation act was met by a deliberately planned and executed insurrection of the people, who published to the world a declaration of the causes which had impelled them to this action, and which were chiefly the loss of their liberties by the changes in the government, the imposition of excessive taxes, and the interruption of their commerce by the burdens laid upon it by the navigation acts.

The leader of the movement was John Culpepper. One of the members of the council joined the insurrection; but the rest, with Miller, who, in addition to his office of collector, had been acting as governor in the absence of Eastchurch, were arrested and imprisoned. When Eastchurch arrived the colonists refused either to

A SETTLER'S CABIN.

acknowledge his authority or to allow him to enter the colony. In the meantime they arranged matters upon the old popular system, and sent Culpepper and another of their number to England to negotiate a settlement with the proprietaries.

Miller escaped from confinement and repaired to England to oppose the efforts of Culpepper. By cunningly making himself

the champion of the navigation acts, Miller succeeded in arousing a strong sentiment against Culpepper, who was arrested on a charge of resisting the collection of the revenue and embezzling the public funds. In support of this arbitrary act the government pleaded an old statute of Henry VIII., by which a colonist could be arraigned in England for an offence committed in a colony. Culpepper demanded to be tried in North Carolina, upon the scene of his alleged crime; but this was refused him, and he was put on trial in England. The Earl of Shaftesbury, shrewdly perceiving that such a course was repugnant to the real sentiment of the English people, and that it offered him an opportunity to increase his popularity, undertook the defence of Culpepper, and procured his acquittal.

Captured by Pirates.

The proprietaries now appointed as governor one of their number, Seth Slothel, who had purchased the rights of Lord Clarendon. Slothel on his voyage out was captured by the Algerine pirates, and during his absence the government of North Carolina was administered by governors appointed by the insurgents, who seem to have acted with the consent, or at least without the opposition of the proprietaries, who were much at a loss to know how to enforce their authority in the province. They instructed the colonists to "settle order among themselves," and appear to have left them very much to their own devices. The government was well and fairly administered, and order was maintained; an act of amnesty was published; and when Slothel reached the colony, in 1683, after his release from his captivity, he found it peaceful and orderly.

The administration of Slothel was unfortunate for the province. He could enforce neither the constitutions of the proprietaries nor the navigation acts, as he was expected to do; so he devoted his energies to the task of enriching himself, which he accomplished by robbing the colonists and defrauding his proprietary associates in England. In 1688 the colonists, greatly exasperated by his exactions, to which they had submitted for about five years, drove him out of the province by condemning him to an exile of a year, and forever disqualifying him from holding the office of governor. This was their boldest act yet and was an open defiance of the proprietaries.

Charleston Founded.

In the meantime the southern portion of Carolina had been brought under English rule. In 1670 a company of emigrants was sent out by the proprietaries, under the direction of William Sayle and Joseph West, the latter of whom was the commercial agent of the proprietaries. They went by way of Barbadoes and landed at Port Royal, where the ruins of Fort Carolina, which had been erected by the French, were still to be seen. After a short delay here, they removed to a more favorable location farther northward, between two rivers, which they named the Ashley and Cooper, in honor of the Earl of Shaftesbury, one of the proprietaries. In 1680 this settlement was abandoned for a better situation nearer the harbor. This last settlement was the foundation of the city of Charleston. The first plantation on the Ashley River was afterwards known as Old Charleston. At present not even a log cabin remains to mark the site.

The emigrants to South Carolina had been furnished with a copy of the constitutions of Shaftesbury and Locke, but they were as averse to the acceptance of them as were the people of North Carolina, for they perceived that such a system as that devised by the proprietaries could not be put in

operation in America. Immediately upon their arrival they proceeded to establish a form of government suited to their needs. It consisted of a governor, a council composed of five members appointed by the proprietaries and five by the assembly, and an assembly of twenty delegates chosen by the people. Thus was representative government established as the basis of the political life of the province, and throughout all her subsequent history it was cherished by South Carolina as her most precious possession.

The colony grew rapidly in population; the delightful climate, the rich soil and the liberal offers of lands by the proprietaries attracting settlers in considerable numbers. In 1671 Sir John Yeamans brought over African slaves from Barbadoes, thus introducing negro slavery into the colony at the very outset of its existence. This species of labor being found well suited to the necessities of the province, was generally adopted in the remaining years of the century, and became the basis of the industry of South Carolina, which was from the first a purely agricultural state. The negroes multiplied rapidly by natural increase and by fresh importations; "so rapidly," says Bancroft, "that in a few years, we are told, the blacks were to the whites in the proportion of twenty-two to twelve, a proportion that had no parallel north of the West Indies."

The white population also increased rapidly. The dissenters, as all the Protestant sects who differed from the Church of England were called, came over to the colony in large numbers, hoping to find there the toleration they were denied at home. They consisted of Dutch and German Protestants, and Presbyterians from the north of Ireland and from Scotland. The last were generally people of culture and gave to the colony many clergymen, physicians, lawyers and schoolmasters. Churchmen from England also emigrated in considerable numbers, as the "Grand Model" established their church as the orthodox faith of the province. Dutch emigrants came also from New York to escape the outrages of the English governors of that province.

BIRDS-EYE VIEW OF CHARLESTON, SOUTH CAROLINA.

Last of all were the Huguenots, who were induced to settle in South Carolina by Charles II., who was sincerely anxious to give them

a refuge from their persecutions in Europe, and who wished them to establish in Carolina the culture of the vine, the olive and the silk-worm. The revocation of the Edict of Nantes drove thousands of the Huguenots from France. Large numbers of them joined their brethren in South Carolina. They were almost invariably persons of education and refinement. In France they had constituted the most useful and intelligent part of the population. They had almost monopolized the mechanical skill and mercantile enterprise of their native land, and their loss was severely felt by it for many generations.

In South Carolina they soon became sufficiently numerous to constitute an important part of the population, and their influence was felt in a marked degree and for the good of the colony. They brought with them the virtues which had won them the respect and confidence of the people of Europe, and the industry which could not fail to place them among the most prosperous citizens of the new state. They mingled freely and intermarried with the other classes of the people of the province, and thus became the ancestors of a splendid race who did honor to their country and upheld her cause with their valor in her hour of trial in the next century.

A Settlement Ruined.

The early years of South Carolina were marked by a constant struggle between the colonists and the proprietaries. The latter vainly attempted to introduce the "Grand Model" as the law of the province, and the former steadily resisted it. A little later the proprietaries offered to make some modifications in their constitutions, but these concessions were rejected also. The governor, Sir John Yeamans, regarded his office solely as a means of repairing his fortunes at the expense of both proprietaries and colonists, and was dismissed by his employers. West, who was a man of ability and liberality, was appointed his successor, and under him the colony prospered, but as he was too friendly to the people, he was removed also.

In 1684 a small colony under Lord Cardross, a Presbyterian, settled at Port Royal. These settlers had fled to America to escape persecution in England, but their effort to find an abiding place in the new world was not destined to be successful. Lord Cardross returned to Europe in a year or two, and in 1686 the Spaniards from St. Augustine, who claimed the region as a dependency of their own, invaded the little settlement and laid it waste. Of the ten families which had constituted the colony, some returned to Scotland, while the remainder disappeared among the colonists in the vicinity of the Cooper and Ashley rivers.

Stubborn Resistance.

In 1685, the proprietaries ordered the colonial authorities to enforce the navigation acts in the ports of the province. A rigid execution of this order would have been as fatal to the feeble commerce of South Carolina as to that of the settlements in the northern part of the province, and it was resisted by the colonists as a violation of their natural rights and of the promises made to them at the time of their emigration. In order to establish their authority more firmly the proprietaries appointed James Colleton governor, with the rank of landgrave.

He was brother of one of the proprietaries, and it was supposed that this fact and his aristocratic rank would give him a moral ppower which his predecessors had not possessed. The new governor attempted to enforce the constitutions, but was met with a determined resistance, and when he undertook to collect the rents claimed by the

SCENE ON A TRIBUTARY OF THE ST. JOHN'S RIVER.

proprietaries, and the taxes he had been ordered to levy, the assembly seized the records of the province, imprisoned the colonial secretary, and defied the governor to execute his orders. In 1690, they went still further, and having proclaimed William and Mary, disfranchised Colleton and banished him from South Carolina.

Disputes now ran high in the colony, chiefly in regard to rents and land tenures. The "cavaliers and ill-livers," as the party devoted to the interests of the proprietaries was termed, endeavored to compel the remainder of the settlers—the Presbyterians, Quakers and Huguenots, the last of whom had recently been admitted to all the privileges of citizenship—to submit to their high-handed measures. They hoped among other things to secure the supremacy of the Church of England in the colony, notwithstanding the fact that a majority of the people were dissenters. The troubles went on increasing, and at length the proprietors, in the hope of putting an end to them, consented to abandon their effort to force upon the Carolinas the legislation of Shaftesbury and Locke. In April, 1693, they abolished the fundamental constitutions by a formal vote, and decided to allow the government of the province to be conducted according to the terms of the charter.

A Wise Governor.

Thomas Smith was appointed governor, but in spite of his many virtues he was unacceptable to the people, and the proprietaries determined to send out to Carolina one of their own number with full powers to investigate and remedy the grievances of the colony. John Archdale, "an honest member of the Society of Friends," was chosen, and at once repaired to Carolina. He was a man of great moderation, and was well suited to the task before him. He succeeded in harmonizing the hostile factions which divided the province, and in the formation of the council selected two men of the moderate party to one high churchman, an arrangement which fairly represented the actual state of parties, and gave satisfaction to the mass of the people. He remitted the quit-rents for three and four years, and arranged the price of lands and the system of conveyances upon an equitable basis, and gave the colonists the privilege of paying their dues to the proprietaries either in money or in produce. He established peaceful relations with the Indians, and put an end to the infamous practice of kidnapping them, which had prevailed since the establishment of the colony. The savages in the Cape Fear region had suffered especially from this, and now showed their gratitude by treating with kindness the sailors who were cast away on their coast.

Friendly relations were also begun with the Spaniards at St. Augustine. Several Yemmassee Indians, who had been converted by the missionaries, having been captured and exposed for sale in Carolina, were ransomed by Archdale, who sent them to the governor of St. Augustine. The Spaniards gratefully acknowledged this kindness, and returned it by forwarding to South Carolina the crew of an English vessel which had gone ashore on the coast of Florida. The colonial government was organized by Archdale, on a plan similar to that of Maryland. The council was appointed by the proprietaries, and the assembly elected by the people; and the militia were charged with the defence of the colony. Archdale's administration was so satisfactory to all parties that upon his withdrawal from the province the assembly declared that he had, "by his wisdom, patience and labor, laid a firm foundation for a most glorious superstructure."

Archdale went back to England in 1697, and the proprietaries, failing to profit by the lesson of his success, attempted to introduce a measure which would give the political power of the colony exclusively into the hands of the landowners. This measure was resolutely rejected by the colonial assembly. The majority of the people of the colony were, as has been stated, dissenters, Presbyterians, Quakers and Huguenots. They had consented, in order to pacify the high church party, that one minister of the Church of England should be maintained at the public expense, but the churchmen were resolved to force their system upon them.

The Assembly's Intolerance.

In 1704 the churchmen had a majority of one in the assembly; the governor was favorable to them, and the council was no longer arranged upon the just plan of Archdale. The assembly, in violation of the plainest principles of justice, disfranchised the dissenters, and established the Church of England as the religion of the colony. This action was approved by the council and governor, and was sustained by the proprietaries in spite of the earnest opposition of Archdale. The disfranchised people appealed for justice to the queen and the House of Lords. The committee of the lords declared that the proprietaries had forfeited their charter, and advised its recall, and the house pronounced the intolerant acts null and void, which decision was proclaimed by the queen in June, 1706. In November of the same year the colonial legislature repealed its acts, and restored to the dissenters their political rights, but the laws establishing the Church of England as the religion of the province remained unrepealed until the Revolution.

The disputes in the colony went on, but in spite of them South Carolina continued to prosper, and its population increased rapidly. During Archdale's residence in the colony the captain of a ship from Madagascar gave him some rice, which he distributed among the planters for the purpose of ascertaining whether it could be cultivated in the maritime regions of the province, which were unsuited to the culture of wheat. The experiment was entirely successful, and the colony at once embarked in the culture of rice, which has ever since been one of its principal industries. Carolina rice soon took rank as the best grown in any country. The fur trade was also carried on with great activity, and the manufacture of tar and the export of lumber also became prominent sources of wealth.

It was believed that the colony could successfully manufacture a large part of the woollen fabrics necessary to the supply of its wants, and the attempt was made. It was struck down by the British government in pursuance of its plan to compel the colonies to depend upon England for all their supplies. Parliament forbade the several colonies to export woollen goods to any other province or to any foreign port. They were to ship their products to England alone, and to receive their supplies from her only. English merchants were to be privileged to set a price to suit their own interests upon the products of the colonies and also upon the articles of European manufacture sold them in return. The effect of this iniquitous law upon Carolina was to drive her back into agricultural pursuits, and thus to increase the demand for slaves, which was promptly supplied by British traders.

A Reckless Adventurer.

In 1702, England was at war with France and Spain, and James Moore was governor of Carolina. He was a needy adventurer, who endeavored to fill his purse by kidnapping Indians and selling them as slaves. This being too slow a process, he determined to

plunder the Spanish settlement of St. Augustine. He attacked that place with a force of whites and Indians. The town was readily taken, but he could make no impression upon the citadel, and despatched a vessel to Jamaica for cannon to reduce the fort. The garrison in the meantime sent an Indian runner to Mobile with news of their situation, and word was sent from Mobile to Havana. In a short while two Spanish ships of war arrived at St. Augustine to the relief of the garrison, and Moore was obliged to raise the siege. He abandoned his stores and retreated overland to Charleston. The only result of his expedition was the accumulation of a debt which the colony was obliged to carry for many years.

Brutal Butchery.

Moore's next effort was directed against the Appalachee Indians of Florida. These had been converted to the Roman Catholic faith by the Spanish missionaries, and had begun to adopt habits of civilization; they lived in villages, and supported themselves by cultivating the soil. They were also very friendly to the French, who had settled Louisiana. Moore professed to be very apprehensive of the effects of the Spanish and French influence upon the Appalachees, and declared his intention to cripple them before they could do any harm to the English settlements. His real motive was the hope of plunder. The only crime of the poor savages was their adoption of the Roman faith.

In 1705, with a force of about fifty white men and one thousand Seminole warriors, Moore invaded the settlements of the Appalachees, destroyed them, killed many of the natives, and made prisoners of large numbers, who were removed to the region of the Altamaha. The churches were plundered and destroyed, and the country of the Appalachees was given to the Seminoles as a reward for their services. They at once occupied it, and thus became a barrier between their English friends and the Spanish settlements.

In 1706, the Spaniards and French sent a combined fleet to Charleston to avenge the attacks upon St. Augustine and the Appalachees. The attack of the fleet was repulsed by the people, who were led by William Rhet and Sir Nathaniel Johnson, and the assailants were forced to withdraw with the loss of one ship belonging to the French and upwards of three hundred men.

North Carolina continued to prosper. Her people were happy and contented under their simple system of government, which was described by Spotswood as "scarce any government at all." In 1704, the proprietaries attempted to establish the Church of England in this part of the province, the people of which were nearly all Presbyterians, Quakers and Lutherans. It was ordered that all who refused to submit to the laws for the establishment and support of the English church should be disfranchised.

Open Rebellion.

The people opposed a general and determined resistance to this measure, and at the end of a year there was but one clergyman of the English church within the limits of the colony. The resistance finally culminated in open rebellion. The colony was divided into two parties, one of which sustained the authority of the proprietors, the other the rights of the people. Each party had its governor and assembly, and for six years the colony remained in a state of anarchy. The Quakers were the leading spirits of the popular party and maintained their rights with a steadfastness characteristic of their race.

Thus far North Carolina had escaped a war with the Indians. The Tuscaroras, who

occupied the central and northwestern portions of the present state, had emigrated at some remote period from the north, and they now viewed with jealousy and distrust the encroachments of the whites upon their lands. About 1711 the proprietaries assigned large tracts in the country of this tribe to a company of Germans from the region of the Neckar and the Rhine, who had fled to America to escape religious persecution. A company of these exiles had come out under the direction of De Graffenreid, and in September, 1711, De Graffenreid accompanied Lawson, the surveyor-general of the province, in an expedition up the Neuse for the purpose of locating these lands and of ascertaining how far the river was navigable. They were captured by a party of sixty Indians and hurried to a distant village of the Tuscaroras. Lawson was regarded with bitter hostility by the Indians, who looked upon him as responsible above all others for the loss of their lands, as he had been compelled by his duties to locate the grants of the proprietaries, and he was put to death with cruel torments.

Condemned to Death.

De Graffenreid was also condemned to die, but he told the savages that he had been but a short time in the country, and that he was the "chief of a different tribe from the English," and promised that he would take no more of their land. The Indians kept him a prisoner for five weeks, and then permitted him to return to his friends. During this time the Tuscaroras and Corees, whom they had drawn into an alliance with them, attacked the settlements of the whites on the Roanoke and Pamlico Sound, and for three days spread death and devastation all along the frontier of the colony. A large number of the unoffending settlers were slain and many homesteads were destroyed.

The people of North Carolina appealed to Virginia and South Carolina for assistance. South Carolina sent a small body of troops and a force of friendly Indians; and Governor Spotswood, of Virginia, unable to send assistance, engaged one tribe of the Tuscaroras in a treaty of peace. The people of North Carolina, divided by their internal dissensions, took scarcely any part in the struggle. The South Carolina forces attacked

KING GEORGE I.

the Tuscaroras in their fort and compelled them to make peace. The troops, however, on their return home, violated the treaty by seizing some of the Indians for the purpose of selling them as slaves. The war broke out again and was prosecuted with vigor for about a year, and resulted in the expulsion of the Tuscaroras from North Carolina.

The Yemmassees had for some time been hostile to the Spaniards, as they resented the efforts of the priests to convert them

to Christianity. They had acted as the allies of the English in the war with the Tuscaroras, but after the close of that struggle the unscrupulous traders, who regarded them as "a tame and peaceable people," had treated them so badly, and plundered them so systematically, that they were driven into hostility to the English. They thereupon renewed their friendship with the Spaniards, and induced the Catawbas, the Creeks and Cherokees, who had also been friendly to the English, to join them against their former allies.

Indian Depredations.

In 1715 the savages, suddenly, and without warning, attacked the settlements on the frontier. The alarm was sent to Port Royal and Charleston, and the assailed people fled towards the settlements along the coast. The Indians continued their depredations, and the colony prepared as rapidly as possible to resist them. Aid was sent from North Carolina, whose government had now been placed on a more stable footing. Governor Craven took the field without delay, with such troops as he could raise, and a long and bloody struggle ensued. The power of the savages was broken, however. The Yemmassees were compelled to take refuge in Florida, where they were provided for by the Spaniards, and the other tribes were driven farther westward.

The contests between the proprietaries and the colonists now came to an end. The proprietaries had made no effort to help the colonists during their struggle with the Indians, and the latter determined to have no more to do with their former lords. The dispute was carried before Parliament, which body declared that the proprietaries had forfeited their charter. In 1720 King George I. appointed Francis Nicholson provisional governor of Carolina. In 1729 the controversy was ended by the purchase of the proprietaries' interests by the crown for the sum of one hundred and ten thousand dollars. Carolina thus became a royal province, and was divided by the king into two separate states, known respectively as North and South Carolina, to each of which a royal governor was appointed.

CHAPTER XIX

Settlement of Georgia

General James Edward Oglethorpe—His Efforts to Reform Prison Discipline of England—Proposes to Found a Colony in America for the Poor and for Prisoners for Debt—A Charter Obtained from the King—Colonization of Georgia—Savannah Settled—First Years of the Colony—Labors of Oglethorpe—Arrival of New Emigrants—Augusta Founded—The Moravian Settlements—The Wesleys in America—George Whitefield—War Between England and Spain—Oglethorpe Invades Florida—Failure of the Attack upon St. Augustine—The Spaniards Invade Georgia—Oglethorpe's Stratagem—Its Success—Battle of "Bloody Marsh"—Close of the War—Charges Against Oglethorpe—His Vindication—His Return to Europe—Changes in the Colonial Government—Introduction of Slavery into Georgia—Prosperity of the Colony.

THE severe laws in force in England in the last century against debtors aroused the opposition of many philanthropists, who strove to procure their abolition or amelioration. Among these was General James Edward Oglethorpe, an officer of the English army and a member of Parliament. He was a man of fortune, and of generous nature, and devoted himself with energy to reform not only the laws against debtors but the entire prison discipline of England. There were at this time upwards of four thousand men in prison for debt. Their condition was most pitiful. They had no hope of relief save through the mercy of the creditors who had consigned them to their prisons, and were treated with a severity due only to criminals.

It seemed an outrage to the generous Oglethorpe to visit such heavy punishments upon persons whose only crimes were their misfortunes, and he endeavored to have the laws authorizing imprisonment for debt repealed, and failing in this conceived the plan of establishing in America a place of refuge to which the poor and unfortunate might resort, and earn a support by their own industry. He succeeded in interesting others in his benevolent scheme, and in 1732 a petition, signed by a number of men of rank and influence, was presented to George II., praying him to grant to the petitioners a tract of unoccupied land in America for the purpose of founding such an asylum as that proposed by Oglethorpe. The king responded favorably to this appeal, and granted to Oglethorpe and twenty other persons the region between the Savannah and the Altamaha rivers.

This region was to be held "in trust for the poor," for a period of twenty-one years, by the trustees named in the charter, and was to constitute a home for unfortunate debtors and Protestants from the continent of Europe, who might wish to seek safety there from persecution. The territory thus assigned formed a part of South Carolina, but was formally separated from it and named Georgia, in honor of the king. The "free exercise of religion" was secured to all sects "except Papists." No grant of land to any single settler was to exceed five hundred acres, a condition which it was hoped would prevent the rich from securing the best lands, and give to the poor an opportunity to become landowners. It was believed that the climate and soil of the new province were specially adapted to the raising of silk-worms and the cultivation of the vine.

The scheme of Oglethorpe enlisted the sympathies of all classes of the English people. Liberal donations were made in its behalf, and its benevolent projector exerted himself with energy to secure a colony with which to lay the the foundations of the new state. It was determined to take none but the poorest and most helpless, and Oglethorpe himself decided to accompany them and give his personal care to the planting of the colony.

Settlement of Savannah.

One hundred and fifty persons, comprising thirty-five families, were embarked, and they sailed from England in November, 1732. They reached Charleston in fifty-seven days, and were formally welcomed by the assembly of South Carolina and presented with a supply of cattle and rice. From Charleston the company sailed to Port Royal, while Oglethorpe hastened to explore the Savannah and select a cite for the settlement. He chose a location at Yamacraw Bluff, on the right bank of the river, about twenty miles from its mouth. He purchased the lands from the Yamacraw Indians, and the foundations of a town were laid.

The place was named Savannah, from the river on which it stood. Oglethorpe hastened forward the clearing of the land and the building of houses, but for nearly a year contented himself with a tent which was erected under four wide-spreading pines. "The streets were laid out with the greatest regularity; in each quarter a public square was reserved; the houses were planned and constructed on one model—each a frame of sawed timber, twenty-four feet by sixteen, floored with rough deals, the sides with feathered-edge boards, unplained, and the roof shingled." A garden was laid off by the river-side, to be the nursery of European fruits and other productions.

Friendly relations were cultivated with the Indians. The chief of the Yamacraws came in bringing a buffalo skin, on the inner side of which was painted the head and feathers of an eagle. "Here is a little present," said Tomo-chichi, as the chief was named. "The feathers of the eagle are soft and signify love; the buffalo skin is warm, and is the emblem of protection; therefore love and protect our little families." The Muscogees, Creeks, Cherokees and Oconees also sent their chiefs to Savannah to make an alliance with the English. The savages were well pleased with the noble and commanding appearance of Oglethorpe and his frank and kind manner of dealing with them, and trusted implicitly in the promises he made them. The distant Choctaws also sent messengers to open friendly relations with the new settlers, and a profitable trade was established with the tribes as far west as the Mississippi.

Grand Old German Hymns.

Thus far the colony of Georgia was a success, and the friends of the movement in England were not slow to make public the accounts which came to them of its delightful climate and fertile soil, and all who were oppressed or in need were invited to seek the protection and advantages which the new land offered. The fame of the colony attracted the attention of a number of German Protestants in and around Salzburg, who were undergoing a severe persecution for the sake of their religion.

Their sufferings enlisted the sympathy of the people of England, and the "Society for the Propagation of the Gospel" invited them to emigrate to Georgia and secured for them the means of doing so. The Germans readily accepted the offer, and rejoiced greatly that they were thus afforded an opportunity of spreading the gospel among the Indians. Nearly one hundred persons

set out from Salzburg, taking with them their wives and little ones in wagons, and journeyes across the county to Frankfort-on-the-Main.

They carried with them their Bibles and books of devotion, and as they journeyed lightened their fatigues with those grand old German hymns which they were to make as precious in the new world as they were to the people of God in the old. From Frankfort they proceeded to the Rhine and floated down that stream to Rotterdam, where, being joined by two clergymen—Bolzius and Gronau—they sailed to England. They were warmly received by a committee of the trustees of the colony and forwarded to Georgia.

A stormy passage of fifty-seven days brought them to Charleston, in March, 1734, where they were met by Oglethorpe, who led them to their destination. They were assigned a location on the Savannah, a short distance above the town of Savannah, where they began without delay to lay off a town, which they named *Ebenezer*, in gratitude to God for his guidance of them into a land of plenty and of rest from persecution. Others of their countrymen joined them from time to time, and their settlement grew rapidly and became noted as one of the most orderly, thrifty and moral communities in the new world.

In 1734 the town of Augusta was laid out at the head of boat navigation on the Savannah, and soon became an important trading-post. Emigrants came over from England in large numbers, and Oglethorpe had the satisfaction of seeing his colony fairly started upon the road to prosperity. He was justly proud of the success of the colony, for it was mainly due to his disinterested efforts. Governor Johnson, of South Carolina, who had watched the labors of Oglethorpe with the deepest interest, wrote: "His undertaking will succeed, for he nobly devotes all his powers to serve the poor and rescue them from their wrechedness." The pastor of Ebenezer bore equally emphatic testimony to his devotion. "He has taken care of us to the best of his ability," said the pastor. "God has so blessed his presence and his regulations in the land that others would not in many years have accomplished what he has brought about in one."

GENERAL OGLETHORPE.

In April, 1734, Oglethorpe, whose presence was required in Europe, sailed from Savannah, taking with him several Indians, and enough of the raw silk which had been produced in the colony to make a dress for the queen. Georgia was left to manage its own affairs during the absence of its founder. As the colonists regarded the use of ardent spirits as the sure cause of the debt and misery from which they had fled, they

prohibited their introduction into the colony; but it was found impossible to enforce this law. The importation of negro slaves was also forbidden. The colony was a refuge for the distressed and oppressed of all nations, and it seemed a violation of the spirit in which it was founded to hold men in bondage. "Slavery," said Oglethorpe, "is against the gospel as well as the fundamental law of England. We refused, as trustees, to make a law permitting such a horrid crime."

with the intention of becoming missionaries of the gospel among the savage tribes, and under their leader, Spangenberg, formed a new settlement on the Ogeechee, south of the Savannah. They claimed and received a grant of fifty acres of land for each of their number, in accordance with a law which had been passed for the encouragement of emigration. In the same year a company of Scotch Highlanders, under their minister, John McLeod, arrived and founded

A SOUTHERN PLANTATION.

The visit of Oglethorpe to England was productive of great benefit to Georgia. Parliament was induced to grant it assistance, and the king became deeply interested in the province which had been called by his name. Emigrants from England continued to seek its hospitable shores, and the trustees induced a band of Moravians, or United Brethren, to emigrate to the colony. They came in 1735, the town of Darien, on the Altamaha. In 1736 Oglethorpe himself returned, bringing with him three hundred emigrants.

Among the new-comers were two brothers, men of eminent piety, who were destined to exercise a powerful influence upon the world. They were John and Charles Wesley, sons of a clergyman of the Church of England, and themselves ministers of that

communion. Charles Wesley had been selected by Oglethorpe as his secretary, and John Wesley came with the hope of becoming the means of converting the Indians to Christianity. He did not succeed in realizing his noble ambition, but we cannot doubt that his experience in America formed a very important part of the training by which God was preparing him for the great work he meant to intrust to him at a later day.

The preaching of Wesley had a marked effect upon the colony. Crowds flocked to hear him, neglecting their usual amusements in their eagerness to listen to him. His austerity of life, however, involved him in troubles with the people, and his popularity at length disappeared. His brother Charles was too tenderly moulded for so rough a life as that of the infant colony, and his health sank under it. The brothers remained in Georgia only two years, and then went back to their labors in Europe, never to return to America.

JOHN WESLEY.

Soon after the departure of the Wesleys came to the colony George Whitefield, their friend and associate, the "golden-mouthed" preacher of the century. In his own land he had begun to preach the message of his Master when but a mere youth, and had proclaimed it to the inmates of the prisons and to the poor in the fields, and now he had come to bring the gospel to the people of the new world. He visited the Lutherans at Ebenezer, and was deeply impressed with the care with which they protected the orphan and helpless children of their community. He determined to establish an institution similar to the orphan house at Halle, in

Germany, and by his personal exertions succeeded in raising in England and America the funds necessary for the success of his enterprise.

He thereupon established near Savannah the first orphan asylum in America. He watched it with unceasing care during his life, but after his death it languished and was at length discontinued. Whitefield did not confine his labors to Georgia. He visited every colony in America, and finally died and was buried in New England. The memory of his wonderful eloquence is still retained in this country by the children of those who listened to him.

GEORGE WHITEFIELD.

Immediately upon his return to Georgia, Oglethorpe proceeded to visit the Lutheran settlement at Ebenezer, to encourage the people and lay out their town The Germans repaid his care by their industry, and in a few years their total annual product of raw silk amounted to ten thousand pounds. The culture of indigo was also carried on by them with marked success.

Oglethorpe, having visited the Scotch settlement at Darien, now resolved to come to a definite understanding with the Spaniards at St. Augustine respecting the southern border of Georgia, and to sustain the pretensions of Great Britain to the country as far south as the St. John's. Proceeding with a detachment of Highlanders to Cumberland Island, he marked out the location for a fort, to be called St. Andrew's, and on the southern end of Amelia Island, at the mouth of the St. John's, built Fort St. George. The Spaniards on their part claimed the whole coast as far north as St. Helena's Sound, and Oglethorpe, a little later, decided to abandon Fort St. George, but strengthened Fort St.

Andrew, as it defended the entrance to the St. Mary's, which stream was finally settled upon as the boundary between Georgia and Florida. Oglethorpe was commissioned a brigadier-general by the king, and was charged with the defence of Georgia and South Carolina. He repaired to England and raised a regiment of troops, with which he returned to Georgia in 1738.

Spain and England were rapidly drifting into war. The system of restrictions by which the European governments sought to retain the exclusive possession of the commerce of their respective colonies was always a fruitful source of trouble. It now operated to bring England and Spain to open hostilities. The Spanish colonies were forbidden by law to trade with any port but that of Cadiz. The merchants of this place, being given a monopoly of the colonial commerce, were enabled to fix their prices without fear of competition, and thus earned large fortunes.

Grasping Smugglers.

The trade of the Spanish-American colonies, however, was too tempting not to produce rivals to the merchants of Cadiz. The English, who had watched its growth with eager eyes, determined to gain a share of it. By the terms of a treaty between the two nations, an English vessel was allowed to visit Portobello, in the West Indies, once a year, and dispose of its cargo. This vessel was followed by smaller ones, which in the night replaced with their cargoes the bales of goods that had been discharged during the day. An active smuggling trade sprang up between the English and Spanish-American ports, and English vessels repeatedly sought these ports, under the pretence of distress, and sold their goods. These enterprises were carried to such an extent that the Spanish merchants were unable to compete with the English smugglers in the colonial markets, and the tonnage of the port of Cadiz fell from fifteen thousand to two thousand tons.

The Spaniards visited with severe punishments all who were detected in engaging in this illicit traffic. Some of the offenders were imprisoned, and others were deprived of their ears. The English people resented the punishment of these traders as an infringement of the freedom of trade, and regarded the smugglers who had suffered at the hands of Spanish justice as martyrs. The popular sentiment was therefore in favor of a war with Spain, and the English government, which had all along connived at this illicit trade, which was rapidly crippling a rival power, shared the national feeling.

Grievances of the Settlers.

The English colonists, who had watched the growth of the trouble between the two European countries, had grievances of their own. South Carolina was a sufferer by the loss of numerous runaway negro slaves, who escaped to the Spaniards at St. Augustine. The return of these fugitives was demanded, and was refused, not because the Spaniards were opposed to slavery, but because they were always ready to injure the English colonies by any means in their power. Moreover, the Spanish authorities of Florida had ordered the English to withdraw from Georgia, and it was not certain that they would refrain from seeking to enforce this order. Oglethorpe had become convinced that war was inevitable, and in order to be prepared for it had visited Europe and raised a regiment of six hundred men, as has been related.

War was declared against Spain by England in October, 1739. Admiral Vernon was sent against Portobello with his fleet, and captured that town and its fortifications, and gained some other successes over the

Spaniards in Central America. In 1740, the American colonies were ordered by the British government to contribute each its quota to a grand expedition against the Spanish possessions in the West Indies. Each colony made its contribution promptly, and Pennsylvania, in the place of troops, voted a sum of money.

Fleet of a Hundred Vessels.

The expedition reached Jamaica in January, 1741, but instead of proceeding at once to attack Havana, which was only three days distant, and the conquest of which would have made England supreme in the West Indies, the fleet was detained for over a month at Jamaica by the dissensions between Wentworth, the incompetent commander of the land forces, and Vernon, the admiral of the fleet. The expedition numbered over one hundred vessels, of which twenty-nine were ships of the line, and was manned with fifteen thousand sailors and twelve thousand troops, and supplied with every requisite for a successful siege. Havana might have been taken, and England have gained a hold upon the southern waters of America which could never have been wrested from her.

Instead of undertaking this important measure, the expedition attacked Carthagena, the strongest fortress in Spanish America. The Spaniards defended it with obstinancy and held the English in check until the besieging force, decimated by the ravages of the climate, was compelled to withdraw. The war continued through the next year, but England gained no advantage in the West Indies which could at all compensate her for her losses in the struggle.

In the autumn of 1739, upon the breaking out of the war, Oglethorpe was ordered to invade Florida, and attack St. Augustine. He hastened to Charleston and urged upon the authorities of South Carolina, which formed a part of his military command, the necessity of acting with promptness and decision. He was granted supplies and a force of four hundred men, which, added to his own regiment, gave him a force of one thousand white troops. He was also furnished with a body of Indian warriors by the friendly tribes, and with his little army invaded Florida in the spring of 1741, and laid siege to St. Augustine. He found the garrison more numerous and the fortifications stronger than he had been led to believe. The Indians soon became disheartened and began to desert, and the troops from South Carolina, "enfeebled by the heat, dispirited by sickness and fatigued by fruitless efforts, marched away in large bodies."

Spanish Settlers Protected.

The small naval force also became dissatisfied, and Oglethorpe, left with only his own regiment, was obliged to withdraw into Georgia after a siege of five weeks. During this campaign Oglethorpe made a few prisoners, whom he treated with kindness. He prevented the Indians from maltreating the Spanish settlers, and, throughout the invasion, "endured more fatigues than any of his soldiers; and in spite of ill-health, he was at the head in every important action."

The invasion of Florida was a misfortune for Georgia in every way. Not only were some of the inhabitants lost to the colony by death, and the industry of the province greatly interfered with by the calling off of the troops from their ordinary avocations, but a serious misfortune was sustained in the withdrawal of the Moravians from the province. Uncompromisingly opposed to war, they withdrew from Georgia in a body and settled in Pennsylvania, where they founded the towns of Bethlehem and Nazareth.

In the last year of the war, 1742, the Spaniards resolved to avenge the attack upon Florida by driving the English out of Georgia. A strong fleet with a considerable land force was sent from Cuba to St. Augustine, from which it proceeded to the mouth of the St. Mary's. Oglethorpe had constructed a strong work called Fort William, on the southern end of Cumberland Island, for the defence of this river. With no aid from Carolina, and with less than a thousand men, Oglethorpe was left to defend this position as well as he could. He posted his main force at Frederica, a small village on St. Simon's Island. The Spanish fleet attacked Fort William in June and succeeded in passing it and entering the harbor of St. Simon's. The troops were landed and arrangements were made for a combined attack upon Frederica.

Entrapped and Defeated.

Oglethorpe now resolved to anticipate the attack of the enemy by a night assault upon their position, but as his forces were approaching the Spanish camp, under cover of darkness, one of his soldiers, a Frenchman, betrayed the movement by firing his gun, and escaping into the enemy's lines, where he gave the alarm. Oglethorpe, by a happy stratagem, now induced the enemy to withdraw, and drew upon the deserter the punishment he merited. He bribed a Spanish prisoner to carry a letter to the deserter, in which he addressed the Frenchman as a spy of the English, and urged him to use every effort to detain the Spaniards before Frederica for several days longer, until a fleet of six English ships of war, which had sailed from Charleston, could reach and destroy St. Augustine. The letter was delivered by the released prisoner to the Spanish commander, as Oglethorpe had known would be the case, and the deserter was placed in confinement.

Fortunately, at this moment, some vessels from South Carolina, laden with supplies for Oglethorpe, appeared in the offing. These the Spanish commander was confident were the ships on their way to attack St. Augustine. He determined to strike a vigorous blow at Frederica before sailing to the relief of his countrymen in Florida. On his march towards the English position he was ambuscaded and defeated, with great loss, at a place since called "Bloody Marsh." The next night he embarked his forces and sailed for St. Augustine to defend it from the attack which had no existence save in the fertile brain of Oglethorpe, whose stratagem was thus entirely successful. On their withdrawal the Spaniards renewed their attempt to capture Fort William, but without success. The firmness and vigor of Oglethorpe had saved Georgia and Carolina from the ruin which the Spaniards, who had no intention of occupying the country, had designed for them.

Oglethorpe Acquitted.

Yet the founder and brave defender of Georgia was not to escape the experience of those who seek with disinterested zeal to serve their fellow-men. The disaffected settlers sent an agent to England to lodge complaints against him with the government. In July, 1743, having made sure of the tranquility and safety of the colony, Oglethorpe sailed for England to meet his accuser, and upon arriving in his native country demanded an investigation of his conduct in the land for which he had sacrificed so much.

The result of the inquiry was the triumphant acquittal of Oglethorpe and the punishment of his accuser for making false charges. Oglethorpe was promoted to the grade of major-general in the English army. He did not return to Georgia again, but he had the satisfaction of knowing that during

his ten years of sacrifice and toil in America he had successfully laid the foundations of a vigorous state and had placed it far beyond the possibility of failure, and that his name was honored and loved by the people for whom he had given his best efforts without any personal reward. He died at the age of ninety years. After the departure of Oglethorpe many improvements were made in the government of Georgia, which was changed from a military rule to a civil establishment. The forms and customs of the English law were introduced and the usual magistrates appointed.

Human Cargoes from Africa.

Slavery had been forbidden by the trustees, but the majority of the people were dissatisfied with this prohibition. The Germans and the Scotch were opposed to the introduction of slave labor, but the greater number of the English, many of whom had been reduced to poverty by their idleness and wastefulness, were of the opinion that the agricultural wealth of the colony could not be properly developed by white labor alone. "They were unwilling to labor, but were clamorous for privileges to which they had no right." They declared that the use of strong liquors was rendered absolutely necessary by the climate and demanded the repeal of the laws against their introduction. Negro slaves were hired from the Carolina planters at first for a few years, and finally for a term of one hundred years, which was a practical establishment of slavery in the colony.

Within seven years after Oglethorpe's departure slave-ships from Africa brought their cargoes direct to Savannah and sold them there. The scruples of the Germans were at length overcome, and they were induced to believe that negroes might be led into the Christian fold by their proper treatment by Christian masters, and that in this way their change of country might result in benefit to them. "If you take slaves in faith," wrote their friends from Germany, "and with the intent of conducting them to Christ, the action will not be a sin, but may prove a benediction." Even the pious Whitefield took this view of the subject and urged the trustees to grant permission to the colonists to hold slaves, as indispensable to the prosperity of Georgia.

The trustees were so strongly urged to this step by all classes of the colony, and so overrun with complaints, that the twenty-one years of their guardianship having expired, they were glad to surrender their trust, which they did in 1752, and Georgia became a royal province. Privileges similar to those granted the other colonies were allowed it. The king appointed the governor and some of the other higher officials, and the assembly discharged the duties, and enjoyed the rights appertaining to similar bodies in the other provinces.

Georgia was always a favored colony. Among the most important privileges bestowed upon it was the right to import and hold negro slaves, which was conferred upon it by Parliament after a careful examination into the matter. After this the colony grew rapidly, and cotton and rice were largely cultivated. In 1752, at the time of the relinquishment of the colony to the crown, Georgia contained a population less than twenty-five hundred whites and about four hundred negroes. In 1775, at the outbreak of the Revolution, the population numbered about seventy-five thousand souls, and its exports were valued at over half a million of dollars.

CHAPTER XX

The French in the Valley of the Mississippi

Origin of the Hostility of the Iroquois to the French—Settlement of Canada—Plans of the French Respecting the Indians—The Jesuits—Their Work in America—Success of their Missions—The Early Missionaries—Foundation of a College at Quebec—Efforts of the Jesuits to Convert the Iroquois—Father Jogues—Death of Ahasistari—Father Allouez—The Missions on the Upper Lakes—Father Marquette—His Exploration of the Upper Mississippi—Death of Marquette—La Salle—Efforts of France to Secure the Valley of the Mississippi—La Salle Descends the Mississippi to its Mouth—His Effort to Colonize the Lower Mississippi—The First Colony in Texas—Its Failure—Death of La Salle—Lemoine d'Ibberville—Settlement of Louisiana—Colony of Biloxi—Settlement of Mobile—Crozat's Monopoly—Founding of New Orleans—Detroit Founded—Slow Growth of the French Colonies—Occupation of the Ohio Valley by the French—Wars with the Indians—Extermination of the Natchez Tribe—War with the Chickasaws.

WE have already spoken of the explorations of Samuel Champlain in Canada and in the northern part of New York. It is necessary now, in order to obtain a proper comprehension of the period at which we have arrived, to go back to the time of his discoveries and trace the efforts of France to extend her dominion over the great valley of the Mississippi. We have seen Champlain in one of his last expeditions accompanying a war party of the Hurons and Algonquins against their inveterate enemies, the Iroquois or Five Nations. By his aid the former were enabled to defeat the Iroquois, and that great confederacy thus became the bitter and uncompromising enemies of the French nation. They cherished this hostility to the latest period of the dominion of France in Canada, and no effort of the French governors was ever able to overcome it.

The efforts of Champlain established the settlement of Canada upon a sure basis of success, and after his death settlers came over to Canada from France in considerable numbers. Quebec became an important place, and other settlements were founded. It was apparent from the first that the French colonies must occupy a very different footing from those of England. The soil and the climate were both unfavorable to agriculture and the French settlements were of necessity organized chiefly as trading-posts. The trade in furs was immensely valuable, and the French sought to secure the exclusive possession of it. To this end it was indispensable to secure the friendship of the Indians, especially of those tribes inhabiting the country to the north and west of the great lakes.

In 1634, three years before the death of Champlain, Louis XIII. granted a charter to a company of French nobles and merchants, bestowing upon them the entire region embraced in the valley of the St. Lawrence, then known as New France. Richelieu and Champlain, who were members of this company, were wise enough to understand that their countrymen were not suited to the task of colonization, and that if France was to found an empire in the new world, it must be by civilizing and Christianizing the Indians and bringing them under the rule of her king, and not by seeking to people Canada with Frenchmen. From this time it became the policy of France to bring the savages under her sway. The efforts of the settlers in Canada were mainly devoted to trading with the Indians.

and no attempt was made to found an agricultural state.

Champlain had conceived a sincere desire for the conversion of the savages to Christianity, and had employed several priests of the order of St. Francis as his companions, and these had gained sufficient success among the savages to give ground for the hope that the red men might yet be brought into the fold of Christ. Father Le Caron, one of this order, had penetrated far up the St. Lawrence, had explored the southern coast of Lake Ontario, and had even entered Lake Huron. He brought back tidings of thousands of the sons of the forest living in darkness and superstition, ignorant of the gospel, and dying "in the bondage of their sins." In France a sudden enthusiasm was awakened in behalf of the savages, and at court zeal for the conversion of the Indians became the sure road to distinction. Much of this was the result of genuine disinterested regard for the welfare of the red men, but much also was due to the conviction that by such a course the power of France would be most surely established in Canada.

Work of the Jesuits.

The missions were placed entirely in the hands of the Jesuits, an order well suited to the task demanded of it. It had been established by its founder for the express design of defeating the influences and the work of the Reformation, and its members were chosen with especial regard to their fitness for the duties required of them. They were to meet and refute the arguments by which the Reformers justified their withdrawal from the Roman church, to beat back the advancing wave of Protestantism, and bring all Christendom once more in humble submission to the feet of the Roman pontiff.

The Reformers had made a most successful use of education in winning men from Rome, the Jesuits would take their own weapons against the Protestants. They would no longer command absolute and unquestioning submission to their church; but would educate the people to accept the faith of Rome as the result of study and investigation; and in order that study and investigation should lead to this desired result, the control of these processes should be placed exclusively in the hands of the members of the Jesuit order, who should direct them as they deemed best. Such a task required a band of devoted men, carefully trained for their special work; and such an order the Jesuits became. Surrendering his conscience and will to the direction of his superiors, and sinking his personality in that of his order, the Jesuit became a mere intellectual machine in the hands of his superior.

A Solemn Oath.

Bound by a most solemn oath to obey without inquiry or hesitation the commands of the Pope, or the superiors of the order, the Jesuit holds himself in readiness to execute instantly, and to the best of his ability, any task imposed upon him. Neither fatigue, danger, hunger nor suffering was to stand in his way of perfect and unhesitating obedience. No distance was to be considered an obstacle, and no lack of ordinary facilities of travel was to prevent him from attempting to reach the fields in which he was ordered to labor. The merit of obedience in his eyes atoned for every other short-coming; devotion to the church, the glory of making proselytes, made even suffering pleasure and death a triumph, if met in the discharge of duty.

Such an order was in every way qualified for the work of Christianizing the savages, and America offered the noblest field to which its energies had yet been invited. There, cut off from the ambitious schemes

and corrupt influences which had enlisted their powers in Europe, the Jesuits could achieve and did achieve their noblest and most useful triumphs. There, their influence was for good alone, and their labors stand in striking contrast with those which won for the order the universal execration of Europe. Not only did they win the honor of gaining many converts to the Christian faith, but they were the means of extending the dominion of their country far beyond the boundaries of Canada, and of bringing the great valley of the Mississippi under the authority of France.

Marriage of Whites and Indians.

By the year 1536 there were thirteen Jesuit missionaries in Canada laboring among the Indians. Not content with remaining around the posts, they pushed out beyond the frontier settlements into the boundless forest, making new converts and important discoveries. Each convert was regarded as a subject of France, and the equal of the whites, and the kindliest relations were established between the French and the natives. Many of the traders took them Indian wives, and from these marriages sprang the class of half-breeds afterwards so numerous in Canada.

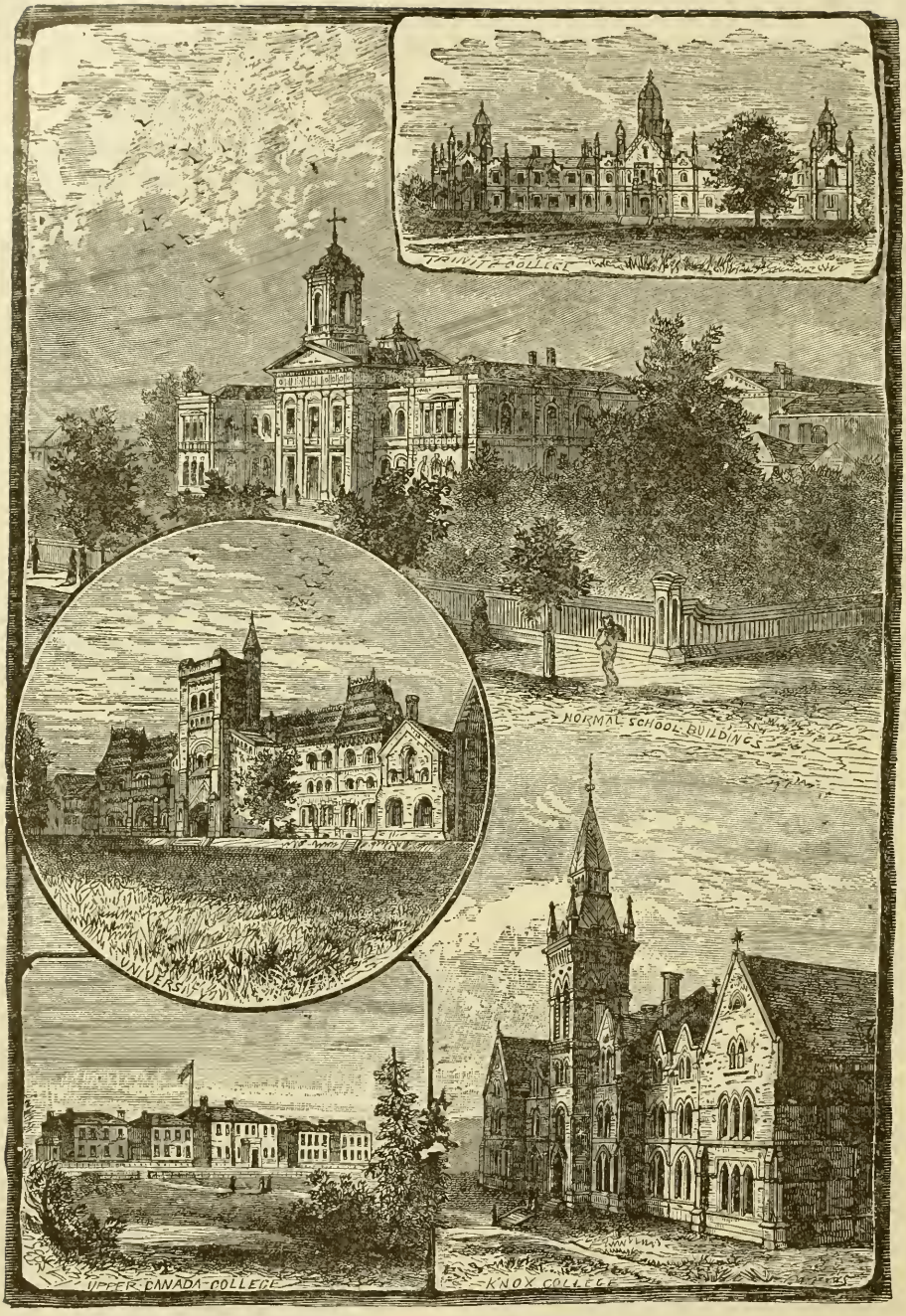
The limits of Canada were too narrow for the ambition of the Jesuits; they burned to carry Christianity to the tribes in the more distant regions beyond the lakes. In the autumn of 1634 Fathers Brabeuf and Daniel accompanied a party of Hurons, who had come to Quebec on a trading expedition, to their home on the shores of the lake which bears their name. It was a long and difficult journey of nine hundred miles, and it taxed the endurance of the missionaries to the utmost, but they persevered, and finally gained a resting-place at the Huron villages on Georgian Bay and Lake Simcoe There they erected a rude chapel in a little grove, and celebrated the mysteries of their religion in the midst of the wondering red men, who looked on with awe and not without interest.

New Missions.

Six missions were soon established among the Indian villages in this part of the lake, and converts began to reward the labors of the devoted priests. Father Brabeuf had not an idle moment. The first four hours of the day were passed in prayer and in the flagellation of his body; he wore a shirt of hair, and his fasts were frequent and severe. The remainder of the day was given to catechising and teaching the Indians. As he passed along the streets of the village he would ring his little bell, and in this way summon the warriors to converse with him upon the mysteries of the Christian faith. He spent fifteen years in his labors among the Indians, and hundreds of converts were by means of him gained to Christ among the dusky children of the forest.

The great Huron chief, Ahasistari, was among the converts of Father Brabeuf. "Before you came to this country," he said to the missionary, "when I have incurred the greatest perils and have alone escaped, I have said to myself, 'Some powerful Spirit has the guardianship of my days.'" That Spirit he now declared was Jesus Christ, and as he had before adored him in ignorance, he now became his acknowledged servant. Being satisfied of his sincerity, Father Brabeuf baptized him, and the chief, in the enthusiasm of his new belief, exclaimed, "Let us strive to make the whole world embrace the faith in Jesus."

The report of the successful efforts of the missionaries gave great satisfaction in France, and the king and queen and the nobles made liberal donations in support of the missions and for the assistance of the converts. A



254 UNIVERSITY AND NORMAL SCHOOL BUILDINGS AT TORONTO, IN 1892.

college for the education of missionaries was founded at Quebec in 1635. This was the first institution of learning established in America, and preceded the founding of Harvard College by two years. Madame de la Peltrie, a wealthy young widow of Alencon, with the aid of three nuns, established in 1639 the Ursuline Convent for the education of Indian girls. The three nuns came out from France to take charge of it, and were received with enthusiasm, especially by the Indians. Montreal being regarded as a more suitable place, the institution was removed to that island and permanently established there.

The Powerful Mohawks.

The labors of the missionaries had thus far been confined to the Huron and Algonquin tribes, whom they found very willing to listen to them, and among whom they counted their converts by thousands. They had encountered but little hostility from them, and the dangers of the enterprise were merely those inseparable from the unsettled condition of the country. They were anxious to extend their efforts to the fiercer and more powerful Iroquois, as the conversion of the tribes of this confederacy would not only swell the number of their converts, but would extend the influence of France to the very borders of the English settlements on the Atlantic coast.

The Iroquois, or Five Nations, consisted, as has been said, of the Seneca, Cayuga, Onondaga, Oneida and Mohawk tribes. They occupied almost all that part of Canada south of the Ottawa, and between Lakes Ontario, Erie and Huron, the greater part of New York and the country lying along the south shore of Lake Erie, now included in the states of Ohio and Pennsylvania. They were generally called by the English the Mohawks. They were the most intelligent, as well as the most powerful, of the tribes with whom the French missionaries came in contact.

Their traditions related that their confederacy had been formed in accordance with the instructions of Hiawatha, the greatest and wisest of their chiefs, who had been blessed by the Great Spirit with more than human beauty and wisdom and courage. He had made his people great, united and prosperous; had then taken a solemn leave of them, and had sailed out into the distant sunset in a snow-white canoe, amid the sweetest music from the spirit land. They were regarded with dread by the surrounding tribes, many of which were tributary to them. Their influence extended eastward as far as New England, and westward as far as the countries of the Illinois and the Miamis. They regarded the Hurons as their hereditary enemies, and the French, as allies of the Hurons, now shared this hostility. The savages long remembered, and never forgave, the alliance of Champlain with the Hurons and Algonquins, to which reference has been made.

Enmity of the Red Men.

The Jesuit missionaries vainly endeavored to add the tribes of the Five Nations to their converts. The latter, regarding the French as enemies, could never be made to look upon the missionaries of that race as friends, and considered the efforts of the good fathers in their behalf as a species of incantation designed for their destruction. They closed the region south of Lake Ontario to the French traders and priests and kept a vigilant watch over the passes of the St. Lawrence for the purpose of breaking up the trade of the French at Montreal with the tribes on the lakes.

The only route by which the lakes could be reached in safety was by the Ottawa and

through the wilderness beyond. Yet occasionally a trading party would slip through the blockade established by the Iroquois, and, descending the lakes and the St. Lawrence, reach Montreal and Quebec in safety. These expeditions constituted the only means by which the Jesuit missionaries in the remote regions could communicate with their principal establishment at Montreal.

In the summer of 1642, Father Jogues, who had labored with great success in the country now embraced in the state of Michigan, left the Sault Sainte Marie under the escort of the great Huron war chief Ahasistari and a number of his braves, and, descending the Ottawa and the St. Lawrence, reached Montreal and Quebec in safety. On the first of August he set out on his return, accompanied by a larger fleet of Huron canoes. Before the mouth of the Ottawa was reached the party was attacked by a band of Mohawks, and the canoes were so much damaged that the occupants were forced to make for the opposite shore. The greater number escaped, but a few, among whom were Father Jogues and Father Goupil, a fellow-priest, were taken prisoners.

Died at the Stake.

Ahasistari had succeeded in reaching a place of safety, and from his concealment saw the missionaries prisoners in the hands of their enemies. He knew the fate that awaited them, and resolved to share it with them. Father Jogues might have escaped, but as there were among the prisoners several converts who had not yet received baptism, he decided to remain with them in the hope of being able to administer the sacred rite to them before their execution. Ahasistari strode through the midst of the astonished Mohawks to the side of the priest. "My brother," said the chief, "I made oath to thee that I would share thy fortune, whether death or life; here am I to keep my vow." He received absolution from the hands of his teacher, and died at the stake with the firmness of a Christian and a hero. Jogues and Goupil were carried to the Mohawk, and in each village through which they were led were compelled to run the gauntlet. On an ear of corn which was thrown to them for food a few drops of the dew had remained, and with these Father Jogues baptized two of his converts.

Peace with the Five Nations.

Goupil was not so fortunate. He was seen in the act of making the sign of the cross over an Indian child, and was struck dead by a blow from the tomahawk of the child's father, who supposed he was working a spell for the little one's harm. Father Jogues had expected the same fate, but he was spared, and even allowed to erect a large cross near the village at which he was detained, and to worship before it at pleasure. He escaped at length and reached Albany, where he was kindly received by the Dutch, who enabled him to return to France, from which country he sailed again for Canada. He went boldly into the Mohawk country and began again the efforts which he had made during his captivity to convert his enemies to the true faith, but his labors were soon cut short by his murder by a Mohawk warrior. Other missionaries sought the country of these tribes, but only to meet torture and death at their hands.

In 1645, the French, who desired to secure their possessions, made a treaty of peace with the Five Nations. The latter professed to forget and bury the wrongs of the past, and agreed to be the true friends of the French. The Algonquins joined in the peace, but neither tribe was sincere in its professions of friendship.

The Abenakis of Maine, who had heard of the good deeds of the Jesuit fathers, sent messengers to Montreal asking that missionaries might be sent to dwell among them. Their appeal was favorably considered, and Father Dreuilettes made his way across the wilderness to the head of the Kennebec, and descended that stream to a point within a few miles of its mouth, where he established his mission. Large numbers of the savages came to him for religious instruction, and he found them ready to embrace the truths he taught them. He entered heartily into all the modes of Indian life, hunting and fishing with them, and winning their confidence and affection. After remaining with them about a year he returned to Quebec, escorted by a band of his converts. He gave such favorable accounts of the disposition of the Maine Indians that a permanent mission was established among them.

Uncivilized Wild Men.

By the close of the year 1646 the French had established a line of missions extending across the continent from Lake Superior to Nova Scotia, and between sixty and seventy missionaries were actively engaged in instructing and preaching to the savages. How far the labors of these devoted men were actually successful will never be known, as their work was of a character which cannot be submitted to any human test. They did not succeed, however, in changing either the character or the habits of their converts. They were still wild men, who scorned to engage in the labor of cultivating their lands, and lived by hunting and fishing. They learned to engage in the religious services of the missionaries, to chant matins and vespers, but they made no approach to civilization. When, in after years, the zeal of the whites for their conversion became less active, and the missionaries less numerous, they fell back into their old ways.

In 1648 the peace between the Mohawks and the Hurons was broken, and the war blazed up again fiercer than ever. Bands of Mohawk warriors invaded the territory of the Hurons, and both the savage and the missionary fell victims to their fury. On the morning of the fourth of July the village of St. Joseph, on Lake Simcoe, was attacked by a war party of the Mohawks.

Pierced With Arrows.

The Huron braves were absent on a hunting expedition, and only the old men and the women and children of the tribe were left in the village. This was the village founded by the missionaries Brabeuf and Daniel, the latter of whom, now an old man, was still dwelling with his converts. At the opening of the attack the good priest hastened to baptize such as he could, and to give absolution to all whom he could reach. Then, as the Mohawks forced the stockade which protected the village and swarmed in among the wigwams, he advanced calmly from the chapel to meet them, and fell pierced with numerous arrows.

During the next year the Jesuit missions in Upper Canada were broken up. At the capture of the village Father Brabeuf and his companion, Gabriel Lallemand, were made prisoners, and were subsequently put to death with the cruelest tortures. They bore their sufferings with a firmness which astonished their persecutors. The Hurons were scattered and their country was added to the dominion of the Five Nations. Many of the captive Hurons were adopted into the conquering tribes. A large number of these had embraced Christianity—so many, indeed, that the Jesuits, who had been in nowise discouraged by the terrible scenes which had marked the war, began to cherish the hope that the presence of these converts would induce the Iroquois to receive a missionary

among them. It was decided to make the attempt among the Onondagas, and Oswego, which was their principal village, was chosen as the site of the mission.

Useless Efforts.

The Iroquois made no effort to disturb the missionaries, and priests were sent among the other tribes of the confederacy. Encouraged by this reception, the French undertook to secure a firm footing in this inviting region by establishing a colony at the mouth of the Oswego, and fifty persons were despatched to that point to begin a settlement there. This aroused the alarm of the Indians, who compelled the colonists to withdraw and forced the missionaries to depart with them. This was the last effort of the French to obtain possession of New York. The Five Nations were not to be reconciled with them on any terms, and their hostility made it useless to attempt the colonization of that fertile region.

Defeated in their hope of obtaining a footing in the country of the Five Nations, the Jesuit fathers turned their attention more energetically to the vast region beyond the lakes. In 1654 two young fur-traders had penetrated into the country beyond Lake Superior, and after an absence of two years had returned to Quebec, bringing with them accounts of the powerful and numerous tribes occupying that region. They brought with them a number of Indians, who urged the French to open commercial relations with and send missionaries among these tribes. Their request was promptly granted, and missionaries were soon on the ground. One of these, the aged Father Mesnard, while journeying through the forests, wandered off from his attendants and was never seen again. His cassock and breviary were found by the Sioux, and were long retained by them as a protection against evil.

In 1665 Father Claude Alloüez ascended the Ottawa and crossed the wilderness to the Sault Ste-Marie, on a mission to the tribes of the far west. In October he reached the principal town of the Chippewas at the head of Lake Superior. He found the tribe in great excitement; the young warriors were eager to engage in a war against the formidable Sioux, and the old men were seeking to restrain them. A grand council was in progress, which was attended by the chiefs of ten or twelve of the neighboring tribes for the purpose of preserving peace if possible. Father Alloüez was admitted to this assembly and exhorted the warriors to abandon their hostile intentions, and urged them to join the French in an alliance against the Five Nations.

His appeal was successful; the war against the Sioux was abandoned, and the savages came in from all parts of the surrounding country to listen to the words of the missionary. A chapel was built on the shore of the lake and the mission of the Holy Spirit was founded. The fame of the missionary spread far to the west and north, and the tribes dwelling north of Lake Superior, the Pottawatomies from Lake Michigan, who worshiped the sun, and the Sioux and the Illinois from the distant prairies of the west, came to the mission to hear the teachings of the missionary. They told him of their country, an unbroken expanse of level land, without trees, but covered with long rich grass, upon which grazed innumerable herds of buffalo and deer; of the rice which grew wild in their distant homes; of the rich yield of maize which their fields produced; of the copper mines of which they but dimly comprehended the value; and of the great river which flowed through their country from the far north to the unknown regions of the south, and which Alloüez understood them to call the "Messipi."

After remaining at his mission for two years, Alloüez returned to Quebec to ask for other laborers in the great field around him, and to urge the French to establish permanent settlements of emigrants or traders in the Lake Superior country. He remained at Quebec two days, was given an assistant, and at once returned to his post, where he continued his labors for many years. "During his long sojourn he lighted the torch of faith for more than twenty different nations."

In 1668 the French West India Company, under whose auspices the settlement of Canada had been conducted, relinquished their monopoly of the fur trade, and a great improvement in the condition and prospects of Canada ensued. In the same year Fathers Claude Dablon and James Marquette established the mission of Ste-Marie at the rapids through which the waters of Lake Superior rush into those of Huron. "For the succeeding years," says Bancroft, "the illustrious triumvirate, Alloüez, Dablon and Marquette, were employed in confirming the influence of France in the vast regions that extend from Green Bay to the head of Lake Superior, mingling happiness with suffering, and winning enduring glory by their fearless perseverance."

Wonderful Scene.

In 1669, Father Alloüez went to establish a mission at Green Bay, and Father Marquette took his place at the mission of the Holy Spirit. Marquette had heard so much of the Mississippi that he resolved to undertake the discovery of the upper waters of that stream. He employed a young Illinois warrior as his companion, and from him learned the dialect of that tribe. In 1673, accompanied by a fellow-priest named Joliet, five French boatmen, and some Indian guides and interpreters, bearing their canoes on their backs, Marquette set out from his mission, and crossing the narrow portage which divides the Fox River from the Wisconsin, reached the headwaters of the latter stream.

There the guides left them, wondering at their rashness in seeking to venture into a region which the simple imagination of the savages filled with vague terrors. The adventurers floated down the Wisconsin, and in seven days entered the Mississippi, "with a joy that could not be expressed." Raising the sails of their canoes they glided down the mighty father of waters, gazing with wonder upon the magnificent forests which lined its shores, and which swarmed with game, and admiring the boundless prairies which stretched away from either bank to the horizon.

The Pipe of Peace.

One hundred and eighty miles below the mouth of the Wisconsin the voyagers for the first time discovered signs of human beings. They landed, and found an Indian village a few miles distant from the river. They were kindly received by the inhabitants, who spoke the language of the Indians who had come with Marquette, and a week was passed at this hospitable village. The villagers told the travellers that the lower river extended far to the south, where the heat was deadly, and that in those latitudes the stream abounded with monsters which destroyed both men and canoes. At the departure of the whites the chief of the tribe hung around Marquette's neck the peace-pipe, and explained to him that it would prove a safeguard to him among the tribes into whose territory his journey would lead him.

Continuing their voyage the explorers reached the mouth of the Missouri, and noticed the strong, muddy stream which it poured into the Mississippi. "When I return," said Marquette, "I will ascend that river and pass beyond its headwaters, and

proclaim the gospel." One hundred and twenty miles farther south they passed the mouth of the Ohio, of which river they had heard from the Illinois at the village they had visited. As they proceeded farther south the heat became more intense, for it was the month of July. They met with Indians, whose hostility was disarmed by the peace-pipe which Marquette bore. Some of these Indians were armed with axes of European manufacture, which they had obtained either from the Spaniards in the far south, or from the English in Virginia. The voyage was continued to the mouth of the Arkansas. Marquette was now satisfied that the great river flowed into the Gulf of Mexico, and as he was fearful of falling into the hands of the Spaniards in that region, he decided to bring his voyage to an end, and return to the lakes.

The Dying Missionary.

The task of ascending the river was accomplished with great difficulty, and at length the mouth of the Illinois was reached. As they supposed this stream would lead them to the lakes the voyagers ascended it to its headwaters, and then crossed the country to the site of Chicago, from which they continued the voyage by way of Lake Michigan to Green Bay.

Marquette despatched Joliet to Quebec to report the results of the voyage, but himself remained at Green Bay. It was his purpose to preach the gospel among the Illinois, who had begged him during his voyage to come back to them. He was detained at Green Bay for some time by feeble health, but in 1675 went back to the Illinois, and began his labors among them. Feeling that his end was near he undertook to return to the mission of St. Mary's, but fell ill on the way. He gave absolution to all his companions, and retired to pray. An hour afterwards, uneasy at his absence, his people went to seek him, and found him kneeling, but praying no longer, for his spirit had gone to receive its reward. He was buried on the banks of the river that bears his name, and his memory was long cherished with affection by the Indians.

The work of exploration which Marquette had begun was taken up by a bolder and firmer hand. Robert Cavalier de la Salle, a man of good family, had been educated for the service of the Jesuits, but had abandoned his design of entering that order after completing his education. In 1667 he had emigrated to Canada to seek his fortune, and had established himself as a fur-trader on Lake Ontario. Encouraged by the governor of Canada he had explored Lake Ontario, and had ascended to Lake Erie. When the French governor a few years later built Fort Frontenac to guard the outlet of Lake Ontario, La Salle was granted an extensive domain, including Fort Frontenac, now the town of Kingston, on condition that he would maintain the fort. He thus obtained the monopoly of the fur-trade with the Five Nations. Here he was residing at the time of the death of Marquette.

On the Road to Fortune.

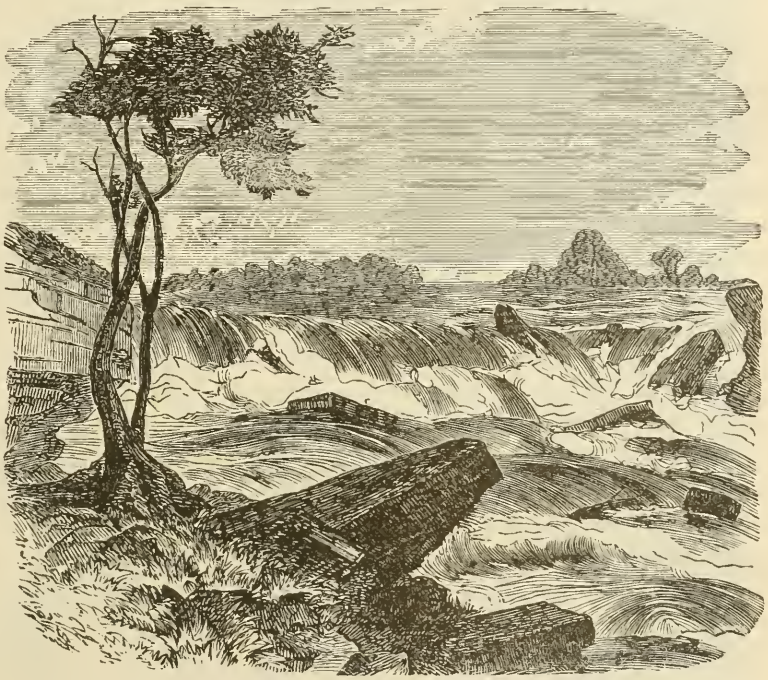
The news of Marquette's discoveries filled him with the deepest interest, and he was eager to continue the exploration of the river at the point at which Marquette had discontinued it, and to trace it to its mouth. He was already on the road to fortune, but the prospect of winning greater fame was too tempting to be resisted, and, leaving his possessions on Lake Ontario, he sailed for France and laid before Colbert, the minister, the schemes he had for the exploration and colonization of the valley of the Mississippi. He obtained a grant of valuable privileges and received permission to attempt the task

of adding that vast region to the dominions of France. He returned to Fort Frontenac in the autumn of 1678, bringing with him as his lieutenant an Italian veteran named Tonti and a number of mechanics and seamen, together with the materials for rigging a ship.

Before the winter had set in he ascended Lake Ontario to the Niagara River, where he built a trading-post. Then passing around the falls he constructed a vessel of sixty tons at the foot of Lake Erie. Tonti and Father Hennepin, a Franciscan, went among the Senecas during the construction of the ship and established friendly relations with them, and La Salle exerted himself to procure furs with which to freight his vessel. The vessel completed, he ascended Lake Erie, passed through the straits into Lakes Huron and Michigan, and entered Green Bay. Then loading his vessel with a cargo of valuable furs, he sent her to the Niagara, with orders to return with supplies as soon as possible.

During her absence La Salle and his companions ascended Lake Michigan in canoes as far as the mouth of the St. Joseph's, where they built a fort. Then crossing over to the valley of the Illinois, he built a fort on a bluff near the site of Peoria, and awaited the return of the "Griffin." The vessel had been wrecked on the voyage to Niagara, and when it became evident that she would not return, La Salle named his fort Crèvecœur ("Heartbreak.")

Supplies were necessary to the exploration of the Mississippi, and La Salle being determined to obtain them, took with him three companions and crossed the wilderness to Fort Frontenac, which he reached in the spring of 1680. During his absence, Father Hennepin, by his orders, explored the Upper Mississippi as far as the falls, which he named in honor of St. Anthony, the patron saint of the expedition. In the summer of 1680 La Salle returned to the Illinois, but various causes intervening to delay him, he was not able to undertake his exploration of the Mississippi until 1682. In that year he built a barge on the upper Illinois, and embarking with his companions, floated down that stream to the Mississippi, which he descended to the Gulf of Mexico. He named the country along the banks of the river Louisiana, in honor of Louis XIV., King of France. Then ascending the Mississippi, he returned



FALLS OF ST. ANTHONY.

by the Lakes to Quebec, and in 1683 sailed for France to enlist the government and people in his project for colonizing the country along the lower Mississippi.

An Unfortunate Wreck.

His design was encouraged by the king, and emigrants were readily found. In 1684, he sailed from France with four ships and two hundred and eighty persons to plant a colony at the mouth of the Mississippi. Unhappily the commander of the fleet was not in sympathy with La Salle, and being jealous of his authority, manifested a degree of stubbornness which was fatal to the expedition. One hundred of the colonists were soldiers; of the rest, some were volunteers, some mechanics, some women, and some priests. After a long voyage they entered the Gulf of Mexico in January, 1685. They sailed past the mouth of the Mississippi, and when La Salle perceived his error, Beaujeu, the commander of the fleet, refused to return, but continued his western course until the bay of Matagorda was reached. There La Salle, weary of his disputes with Beaujeu, resolved to land, hoping that he might yet find the mouth of the Mississippi. A careless pilot, in attempting to get the store-ship into the harbor, wrecked her, and all the supplies which Louis XIV. had provided with a lavish hand were lost.

The colony, which was named Fort St. Louis, was from the first doomed to misfortune, and in a little more than two years was reduced by disease and suffering to thirty-six persons. In January, 1687, La Salle, leaving twenty men at Fort St. Louis, set out with sixteen men to march across the continent to Canada to obtain aid for the settlement. His remarkable courage and determination would doubtless have accomplished this feat but on the way he was murdered by two of his men, who regarded him as the author of their sufferings. Of the rest of his companions, five who kept together reached a small French post near the mouth of the Arkansas, after a journey of six months. The twenty men left at Fort St. Louis were never heard of again. The effort to colonize Texas completely failed, and all that was accomplished by La Salle's enterprise was the establishment of the claim of France to this region.

Searching for La Salle.

To La Salle is due the credit of having been the first to comprehend the importance of securing to France the great region watered by the Mississippi and its tributaries, and it was through his efforts that the attention of France was seriously directed to its colonization. His remarkable qualities must always command the admiration and his sad fate elicit the sympathy of all generous hearts.

While La Salle was vainly striving to accomplish some good result with the Texas colony, his friend and lieutenant, Tonti, in obedience to his instructions, started from the Illinois and descended the Mississippi almost to its mouth, hoping to meet him. At length, despairing of seeing him, Tonti engraved a cross and the arms of France upon a tree on the banks of the river, and returned to the Illinois.

In 1699, twelve years after the death of La Salle, another and this time a successful effort was made to secure Louisiana to France. Lemoine d'Ibberville, a native of Canada and a man of ability and courage, resolved to plant a colony near the mouth of the Mississippi. With four vessels and two hundred emigrants, some of whom were women and children, he sailed from Canada for the mouth of the Mississippi. He landed at the mouth of the river Pascagoula, and with two barges

MURDER OF LA SALLE. 263

manned by forty-eight men searched the coast for the mouth of the Mississippi. He found it and ascended as high as the mouth of the Red River. Here he was met by the Indians, who, to his astonishment, gave him a letter which had been placed in their charge fourteen years before. It was from Tonti, and was addressed to La Salle. He had given it to the Indians, and had charged them to deliver it to the first Frenchman they met.

Shiftless Colonists.

D'Ibberville returned to the gulf by way of Lakes Maurepas and Pontchartrain, which he named after two of the ministers of Louis XIV. Deeming the shores of the Mississippi too marshy for colonization, D'Ibberville formed a settlement at Biloxi, at the mouth of the Pascagoula, within the limits of the present state of Mississippi, and soon afterwards sailed for France to obtain reinforcements and supplies, leaving one of his brothers, Sauville by name, as governor, and he other, Bienville, to explore the Mississippi and the country along its banks.

Early in 1700 D'Ibberville returned from France, and about the same time Tonti, La Salle's former lieutenant, now an aged man, arrived from the country of the Illinois. Acting upon Tonti's advice, D'Ibberville ascended the Mississippi for four hundred miles, and on the site of the present city of Natchez built a fort which he named Rosalie, in honor of the Duchess of Pontchartrain. Neither the settlement at Biloxi nor Rosalie prospered, however. The colonists were a shiftless set, and instead of seeking to cultivate the soil and establish homes for themselves, went farther west to seek for gold. In 1702 D'Ibberville removed the colony from Biloxi to Mobile, which was founded in that year, and became the capital of Louisiana and the centre of the French influence in the south. This settlement languished however, and in ten years only two hundred emigrants were added to its population. It was forced to depend upon the French colonies in the West Indies for subsistence.

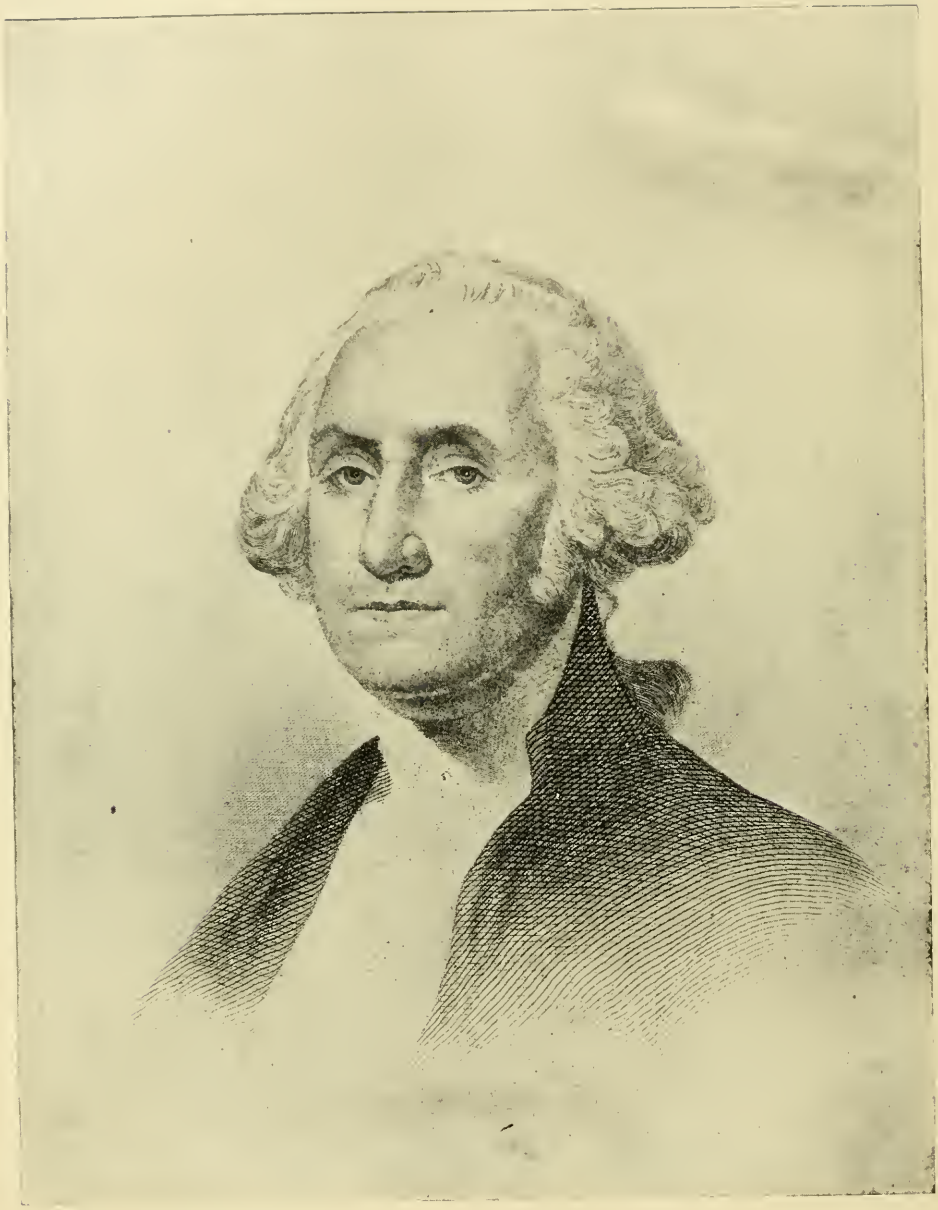
New Orleans Founded.

In 1714 the French government, becoming convinced that it was necessary to make a more vigorous effort to colonize Louisiana if it meant to hold that country, granted a monopoly of trade to Arthur Crozat, who agreed to send over every year two ships laden with emigrants and supplies, and also a cargo of African slaves. The king, on his part, agreed to furnish the sum of ten thousand dollars annually for the protection of the colony. In the same year a trading-house was established at Natchitoches on the Red River, and another on the Alabama, near the present site of Montgomery. Fort Rosalie was made the centre of an important trade, and matters began to wear a new aspect in Louisiana.

In 1718 Bienville, who had become satisfied of the propriety of removing the seat of government from Mobile to the more productive region of the lower Mississippi, put the convicts to work to clear up the thicket of cane which covered the site on which he meant to locate his new city, and upon the ground thus prepared erected a few huts, the germ of the great city of *New Orleans*. It grew more rapidly than any of the settlements in Louisiana. In 1722 it contained about one hundred log huts, and a population of seven hundred. In 1723 the seat of government was removed from Mobile to New Orleans; and 1727 the construction of the levee was begun.

While these efforts were in progress in the lower Mississippi, the French were even more active in the west. Detroit was founded in 1701, and the villages of Kaskaskin and

GEN. PEPPERELL AT THE SIEGE OF LOUISBURG



G. Washington

Cabokia were formed around the stations of the missionaries on the east bank of the Mississippi, above the mouth of the Ohio. The French population in America grew very slowly, however. In 1690 the population of Canada was only twelve hundred; that, of Acadia, or Nova Scotia, less than one thousand; and that of Louisiana less than five hundred.

France had formed a deliberate and magnificent plan with respect to her American possessions. She meant to build up a mighty empire in the valley of the Mississippi, extending from the great lakes to the Gulf of Mexico, and touching Canada. Her efforts to accomplish this were lavish and persistent, but the unhealthiness of the climate, and the almost constant wars with the Natchez and Chickasaw Indians disheartened the settlers, and the French population grew so slowly that it could not accomplish the destiny demanded of it by the government at home. As late as 1740 Louisiana contained only about five thousand whites and less than two thousand five hundred negroes. The slow increase of the population made it necessary to hold the country by a series of military posts. By the year 1750 more than sixty of these posts had been built between Lake Ontario and the Gulf of Mexico, by way of Green Bay, the Illinois, the Wabash, and the Maumee rivers, and along the Mississippi to New Orleans.

French Claims in America.

The most important of these forts were held by garrisons of regular troops, who were relieved once in six years. They accomplished this in the face of the constant hostility of their old enemies, the tribes of the Five Nations, and the Natchez and Chickasaws. In 1748 the French extended their claim to the country south of Lake Erie, as far east as the mountains, which they explored, and took formal possession of by burying at the most important points leaden plates engraved with the arms of France. According to the ideas of the times, their claim was a valid one.

In the meantime the settlements of Louisiana had been obliged to struggle against the constant hostility of the Natchez Indians, who occupied the country around the present city which bears their name. They were not very numerous, but were more intelligent and civilized than the tribes among whom they dwelt. They worshiped the sun, from which deity their principal chief claimed to be descended. They watched the growing power of the French with alarm, and at length resolved to put a stop to the progress of the whites by a general massacre.

Seven Hundred Murders.

On the twenty-eighth of November, 1729 they fell upon the settlement at Fort Rosalie and massacred the garrison and settlers, seven hundred in number. They were not long permitted to exult over their success. When the news of the massacre reached New Orleans, Bienville resolved to retaliate severely upon the aggressors. He applied to the Choctaws, the hereditary enemies of the Natchez, for assistance, and was furnished by them with sixteen hundred warriors. With these and his own troops Bienville besieged the Natchez in their fort; but they escaped under the cover of the night and fled west of the Mississippi. They were followed by the French and forced to surrender, after which they were taken to New Orleans and sent to St. Domingo, where they were sold as slaves. The Great Sun was among the captives, and the tribe of the Natchez was completely destroyed.

It was well known to the French that the Chickasaws, a powerful tribe dwelling between the territory of the Natchez and the Ohio or

the north, and as far as the country of the Cherokees on the east, had incited the Natchez against them. Bienville therefore resolved to turn his arms against them. They had also given great trouble to the French by attacking and plundering their trading-boats descending the Mississippi from the posts on the Illinois. Bienville concerted measures for a combined attack upon the Chickasaws with D'Artaguette, governor of the Illinois country, and two expeditions were despatched against the Indians.

Bienville, with a strong force of French troops and twelve hundred Choctaw warriors, sailed in boats from New Orleans to Mobile and ascended the Tombigbee five hundred miles, to the place now known as Cotton Gin point. He landed here and marched twenty-five miles overland to the principal fort of the Chickasaws, which he at once attacked. He was repulsed with the loss of one hundred men, and was so discouraged that he returned to New Orleans. D'Artaguette entered the Chickasaw country with fifty Frenchmen and one thousand Indians. He was defeated and taken prisoner, and was burned at the stake in May, 1735. In 1740 another effort was made by the French to crush the Chickasaws, but was equally unsuccessful.

CHAPTER XXI.

Conflicts Between the English and French.

Relations Between the English and the Five Nations—The Hostility of the Latter to the French—King William's War—Destruction of Dover—The Jesuit Missionaries Incite the Indians to Attack the English—Expedition Against Quebec—Attack on Dustin's Farm—Peace of Ryswick—Hostility of the English to Roman Catholics—Queen Anne's War—Burning of Deerfield—Eunice Williams—Cruelties to the French—Effort of New England to Conquer Acadia—Capture of Port Roval—Failure of the Expedition Against Quebec—King George's War—Expedition Against Louisburg—Its Composition—Arrival of the Fleet at Cape Breton—Good Conduct of the Provincials—Capture of Louisburg—Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle—Unjust Treatment of the Colonies by England—Sentiment of the Americans Towards England.

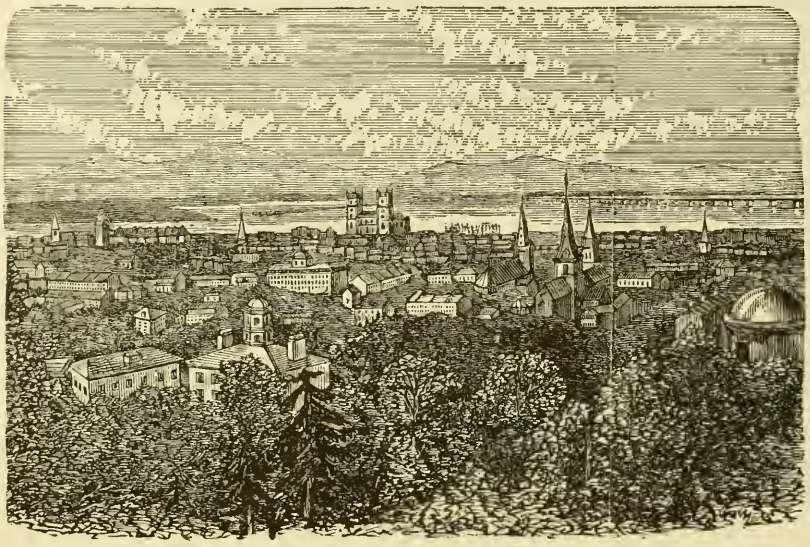
THE territory of the Five Nations lay between the English and French colonies. The friendship which these tribes had borne to the Dutch was transferred to the English upon the conquest of New Netherlands by the latter, and they remained the faithful and devoted allies of Great Britain until after the Revolution. Though they remained at peace with the French for some years after the treaty, which has been mentioned in the preceding chapter, they regarded a renewal of hostilities with them as certain, and were on the whole anxious to resume the struggle at the earliest moment.

James II., eager to establish the Roman Catholic religion in America, instructed the governor of New York to cultivate friendly relations with the French, and to exert all his influence to induce the Five Nations to receive Jesuit missionaries. The governor, however, saw that the French were rapidly monopolizing the fur trade, and he encouraged the Five Nations to regard them with suspicion and dislike. The French by their own bad treatment of the Mohawks put an end to the hope of a lasting peace with them.

Upon the escape of James II. to France, Louis XIV. warmly espoused the cause of the dethroned king, which he declared was the cause of legitimate monarchy as opposed to the right of the people to self-government; and the war which was thus begun in Europe spread to the possessions of the rival powers in America. The objects of the two parties in America were very different. That of the people of New England, who were principally interested in the struggle, was to secure their northern frontier against invasion from Canada, and to get possession of the fisheries. The French, on the other hand, wished to obtain entire control of the valley of the Mississippi, which would make them sole masters of the fur trade, and to extend their power over the valley of the St. Lawrence, and thus obtain control of the fisheries also.

To accomplish their first object the friendship of the Indian tribes in the valley of the Mississippi was indispensable, and they exerted every means of which they were possessed to gain it. They renewed their efforts to win over the Five Nations, but without success. The war between these tribes and the French was soon renewed, as has been related, and on the twenty-fifth of August, 1689, a band of fifteen hundred Mohawk warriors surprised and captured Montreal, and put two hundred of the inhabitants to death with horrible cruelty. An equal number of whites were made prisoners.

In the same year Count Frontenac was appointed governor of Canada for the second time. He came resolved to break the power of the English, and reached Canada just in time to hear of the capture of Montreal. He at once set to work to incite the Indians to a series of incursions against the English settlements which should thoroughly establish his influence over the savage warriors, who would obey none but a successful chief, and at the same time strike terror to the enemies of France.



VIEW OF MONTREAL FROM MOUNT ROYAL.

The first blow was struck at Dover, in New Hampshire. The commander of the garrison at this place was Major Richard Waldron. Thirteen years before, during King Philip's war, two hundred eastern Indians came to Dover to treat of peace. Waldron treacherously seized them and sent them to Boston, where some of them were hanged, and the remainder sold into slavery. The savages had neither forgotten nor forgiven the wrongs of their brothers, and now they resolved to meet the whites with their own weapons of deceit and treachery.

On the evening of the twenty-seventh of June, 1689, two Indian squaws came to Dover and asked for a night's lodging. Waldron, now an old man of eighty, was unsuspicious of harm. Their request was granted and the squaws were lodged in his house. In the dead of the night the women arose, unbarred the gates and admitted the warriors, who had lain in ambush near the town. Waldron's house was first entered, the first duty of the savages being to discharge their debt of vengeance by a cold-blooded murder.

The brave old man seized his sword and defended himself until he was felled to the floor by a blow which stunned him. He was then seated in a chair and placed on a table, and the savages saluted him with jeers. "Who will judge Indians now?" they asked. "Who will hang our brothers? Will the pale-face Waldron give us life for life?" As they spoke they gashed him across the breast with their knives, inflicting wounds equal in number to their friends whom he had betrayed. The old man bore his tortures firmly until he died; the Indians then set fire to the house and burned the rest of the settlement. Nearly half the inhabitants were murdered and the remainder were carried into captivity.

The other frontier towns suffered severely from Maine to New York. A band of French and Indians, in February, 1690, toiled across the wilderness from Montreal to central New York on snow-shoes and

surprised Schenectady. The place was burned, the majority of the settlers were killed, and many women and children were carried into captivity. A few escaped through the snow to Albany. Deerfield and Haverhill in Massachusetts, Salmon Falls in New Hampshire, and Casco in Maine met a similar fate. The French had resolved to make the war one of extermination, and neither they nor their savage allies showed any mercy to the English in their hour of triumph.

Failure to Capture Montreal.

The savages were incited to their bloody task by the Jesuit missionaries. The first race of missionaries, whose good deeds we have chronicled in the last chapter, had died out, and their successors could conceive of no higher standard of duty than the extermination of the English heretics. They roused the fury of their dusky converts against the English as the enemies of the Roman religion, and then confessing and absolving the savage warriors, sent them forth to murder and destroy, with the solemn assurance that such acts on their part would win them the favor of their Father in Heaven. When peace was made two Jesuit priests, Thury and Bigot, induced the Eastern Indians to break the treaty and renew the war, and even took pride in acknowledging themselves the instigators of the atrocities of the savages. These things were well understood among the English, and they came to regard the Jesuit missionaries as the enemies of mankind.

In May, 1690, a congress of delegates from Massachusetts, Connecticut and New York was held at New York for the purpose of concerting a plan for an invasion of Canada. It was resolved to send an army against Montreal by way of Lake Champlain, while Massachusetts should despatch a fleet to attack Quebec. The first expedition, composed of the troops of New York and Connecticut, advanced to Lake Champlain, attended by a strong force of Mohawk allies.

Frontenac promptly assembled his French and Indians for the defence of Montreal, and succeeded in inflicting a sharp defeat upon the Mohawks, under Colonel Philip Schuyler, who led the advance of the English army. The Mohawks were unable to regain their lost ground and the provincial troops were delayed by the dissensions of their leaders until the provisions ran short and the smallpox broke out among the men. It then became necessary to abandon the attempt.

Death and Desolation.

In the meantime Massachusetts equipped a fleet of thirty-two vessels and two thousand men and despatched it to the St. Lawrence under the command of the governor, Sir William Phipps, whose incompetency produced the failure of the expedition. Frontenac was promptly informed of the departure of the fleet by an Indian runner from the Piscataqua, who reached Montreal in twelve days. Frontenac at once set out for Quebec and arrived there three days in advance of the English fleet, which was obliged to feel its way cautiously up the St. Lawrence. When the hostile vessels arrived off the city, Quebec was prepared to offer a determined resistance. After a few harmless demonstrations, Sir William Phipps withdrew and returned to Boston, to the great disappointment of the colony. A large debt had been incurred in this enterprise and a number of valuable lives had been lost, but nothing had been gained.

The Eastern Indians continued their aggressions, but were severely punished by Captain Samuel Church, who had served with distinction in King Philip's war. On one occasion he was so exasperated by the

cruelties of the savages that he put a number of his prisoners, including some women and children, to death. The savages mercilessly avenged the murder of their friends and carried death and desolation along the borders of New England. Nearly every settlement in Maine was destroyed by them or abandoned by the inhabitants, who fled to the other colonies for protection. The Indians prowled around the frontier posts. They had been well armed by the French, and shot down the men without mercy. The women and children were generally spared and carried to Canada, where they were sold to the French as slaves. In 1693 peace was made with the Abenakis, or Eastern Indians, but within a year the Jesuits had succeeded in inducing the savages to resume hostilities.

A Daring Escape.

A party of Indians attacked the house of a farmer named Dustin, residing near Haverhill. He was at work in the field when the shouts of the savages warned him of the danger of his wife and children. Throwing himself on his horse, he hastened to their rescue, and on the way met his children flying for safety pursued by the savages. He threw himself in front of the little ones, and by a few well-aimed shots kept the pursuers back until the children reached a place of safety. Hannah Dustin, her youngest child —only a few days old—her nurse, and a boy from Worcester, unable to fly, were made prisoners by the Indians. The little one was killed, and the two women and the boy were carried away by the savages to their village, situated on an island in the Merrimac, just above Concord.

Hannah Dustin resolved to escape, and communicated her plan to her companions. Each secured a tomahawk, and at night began the destruction of their captors, twelve in number. Ten Indians were killed and one squaw was wounded. The twelfth, a child, was purposely spared. Then collecting the gun and tomahawk of the murderer of her infant, and a bag full of scalps, the heroic women secured a canoe, and embarking in it with her companions, floated down the Merrimac and soon reached Haverhill, where they were received with astonishment and delight by their friends.

This struggle, which is known in American history as "King William's War," was brought to a close in September, 1697, by the Peace of Ryswick. It had lasted seven years, and had caused severe suffering to the northern colonies, without yielding them any compensating advantages.

The Five Nations were also severe sufferers. Failing to win them from their alliance with the English, Frontenac several times invaded their country with an army of French troops and Indians, and ravaged it with great cruelty. Frontenac led these expeditions in person, though he was seventy-four years old.

The people of New York, regarding the Jesuits as the true authors of the miseries endured by the English and their allies, enacted a law in 1700, that every Romish priest who voluntarily came into the province should be hanged.

Butchery at Deerfield.

Five years after the Peace of Ryswick, the War of the Spanish Succession, or, as it is known in American history, "Queen Anne's War," began in Europe. It soon extended to America, and embroiled the English and French in this country. The English settlements on the western frontier of New England were almost annihilated by the Indians, and the French were unusually active.

The people of Deerfield were warned by the friendly Mohawks that the French and Indians were meditating an attack upon their

settlements and through the winter of 1703–4 a vigilant watch was kept by night and day. The winter was very severe; the snow lay four feet deep, and the clear, cold atmosphere made it almost as hard as ice. Profiting by this, a war party of about two hundred French and one hundred and forty-two Indians, under the command of Hertel de Rouville, set out from Canada, and by the aid of snow-shoes crossed the country on the snow and reached the vicinity of Deerfield on the last night of February, 1704. Towards daybreak on the first of March the sentinels, supposing that all was safe, left their posts at Deerfield, and the enemy at once silently mounted on the snow-drifts to the top of the palisades and entered the enclosure, which had an area of twenty acres. A general massacre followed. The town was destroyed, forty persons were killed, and one hundred and twelve were carried away into Canada.

Fate of Eunice Williams.

Among the captives were the minister Williams, his wife Eunice, and their five children. The sufferings of the prisoners on the march to Canada were fearful. Two men starved to death. The infant, whose cries disturbed the captors, was tossed out into the snow to die; and the mother who faltered from fatigue or anguish was despatched by a blow from the tomahawk. Eunice Williams had brought her Bible along with her, and in the brief intervals afforded by the halts of the savages for rest, drew from its sacred pages the consolations she so sorely needed. Her strength soon failed, as she had but recently recovered from her confinement. Her husband sought to cheer her by pointing her to "the house not made with hands," and she assured him that she was satisfied to endure any suffering, counting it gain for Christ's sake. Perceiving that her end was near, she commended her children to God and to their father's care, and was immediately killed by the savages, as she could go no farther.

The Williams family were taken to Canada, and a few years later were ransomed, with the exception of the youngest daughter, with whom the savages refused to part. She was adopted into a village of Christian Indians near Montreal, and became a convert to the Roman Catholic faith, and subsequently married a Mohawk chief. Years afterwards she appeared at Deerfield clad in the dress of her tribe. She had come to visit her relatives; but no entreaties could induce her to remain with them, and she went back to her adopted people and to her children.

Slaughter of the Helpless.

The war was conducted with brutal ferocity by the French. Hertel de Rouville gained eternal infamy by his butcheries of helpless women and children. Vaudreuil, the governor of Canada, urged on his forces to deeds of fresh atrocity, but at length the savages became disgusted with their bloody work, and refused to murder any more English. The French succeeded, however, in inducing some of them to continue their assistance, and in 1708 Haverhill was surprised by the French and Indians under Rouville, and its inhabitants massacred with the most fiendish cruelty. None of them escaped death or captivity.

Filled with horror and indignation, Colonel Peter Schuyler, of New York, wrote to the Marquis de Vaudreuil: "I hold it my duty towards God and my neighbor, to prevent, if possible, these barbarous and heathen cruelties. My heart swells with indignation when I think that a war between Christian princes, bound to the exactest laws of honor and generosity, which their noble ancestors have illustrated by brilliant examples, is degenerating into a savage and boundless butchery.

These are not the methods for terminating the war."

"Such fruitless cruelties," says Bancroft, "inspired our fathers with a deep hatred of the French missionaries; they compelled the employment of a large part of the inhabitants as soldiers, so that there was one year during this war when even a fifth part of all who were capable of bearing arms were in active service. They gave birth also to a willingness to exterminate the natives. The Indians vanished when their homes were invaded; they could not be reduced by usual methods of warfare; hence a bounty was offered for every Indian scalp; to regular forces under pay the grant was ten pounds—to volunteers in actual service, twice that sum; but if men would, of themselves, without pay, make up parties and patrol the forests in search of Indians, as of old the woods were scoured for wild beasts, the chase was invigorated by the promised 'encourgement of fifty pounds per scalp.'"

RETURN OF THE DAUGHTER OF EUNICE WILLIAMS.

In 1707 Massachusetts, New Hampshire and Rhode Island made a combined attempt to conquer Acadia. A fleet was despatched against Port Royal, but without success. In 1710 a second expedition was sent from Boston against Port Royal, aided this time by an English fleet. Port Royal was taken, the French were driven out of the greater part of Acadia, and that province was annexed to the English dominions and called Nova Scotia. The name of Port Royal was changed to Annapolis, in honor of the Queen of England.

Encouraged by this success, the English Government the next year attempted the conquest of Canada by two expeditions, one by land and the other by sea. A powerful fleet and a strong army was despatched from England to co-operate with the colonists. The effort was unsuccessful. The fleet, which was badly handled by the admiral in attempting to ascend the St. Lawrence, was wrecked with the loss of eight vessels and eight hundred and eighty-four men, and was obliged to return to Boston. The failure of the fleet to accomplish anything compelled the abandonment of the land expedition against Montreal. In 1713 the war was brought to an end by the treaty of Utrecht, by which Acadia was ceded permanently to Great Britain and became a province of the English crown.

The third Indian war broke out in 1722

in the northern colonies, and spread from the disputed border on the east to Maine and New Hampshire, where the scenes which we have so often described were enacted over again. The crack of the rifle, the war-whoop of the Indian, the crash of the tomahawk, and the smoke of the cabin played their dreadful part, as they had done so many times before, and have done so often since.

Father Sebastien Rasle had dwelt among Indians for nearly forty years, living so thoroughly their life, while he preached and ministered to them, that his influence was unbounded. He possessed great learning, and, being a French Jesuit, sympathized so strongly with the views of the governor of Canada that he was worth a whole regiment of troops. The Indian settlement at Norridgewock, where it may be said this French chief was sole ruler, was highly prosperous. Two attempts were made to break it by capturing Rasle, but he escaped each time.

Peace at Last.

In August, 1724, however, it was attacked by a force of two hundred men, when most of the warriors were gone from home. Those who escaped fled to the woods, and Father Rasle was killed while trying to divert attention from the flying fugitives. When the assailants departed and the Indians returned, they found the dead body of Rasle, scalped, hacked and mutilated. They gave it tender burial under the altar of the pillaged chapel, and uttered many a wild vow of vengeance on those who had robbed them of their beloved leader.

In the hope of checking the shocking brutalities, the provinces sent representatives to Governor Vaudreuil at Montreal. He treated them with much courtesy, but it took a long time to bring him to terms. He finally promised to advise the Indians to stop hostilities. The eastern tribe learned shortly after that preparations were on foot to press them more than ever, and they consented to make peace, which, with now and then a slight interruption, continued down to the French and Indian war.

In 1744 the disputes in Europe concerning the succession of the Austrian throne culminated in a war, which is known in European history as the War of the Austrian Succession, and in America as King George's war. As usual, England and France were arrayed on opposite sides, and their colonies in America soon became involved in hostilities. The French were the first to receive information from Europe of the existence of war, and began the struggle by attacking and capturing the English fort at Canso and carrying the garrison prisoners to Louisburg.

Louisburg, the principal port of the island of Cape Breton, was at this time the strongest fortress in America, and from its secure harbor the French were constantly despatching privateers against the merchant vessels and fishermen of New England. These depredations caused such serious loss to the eastern colonies that at length Governor Shirley proposed to the general court of Massachusetts to undertake the capture of Louisburg as the only means of putting a stop to them, and this measure was laid by the general court before the other colonies.

Another Appeal to Arms.

It was understood that no aid was to be expected from the mother country, which was too busily engaged in conducting the war in Europe, and that the colonies would be obliged to depend entirely upon their own resources for their success. Nevertheless, the measure was popular, and the enthusiasm of the colonists was aroused to the highest point. Nearly all the northern colonies had suffered severely at the hands of

the French and Indians, and in every shipping port were to be found scores of men who had been robbed and otherwise maltreated by the French privateers. Pennsylvania and New Jersey, under the influence of the Quaker dislike of war, declined to send troops, but furnished a fair supply of money to defray their share of the expenses of the expedition; New York made a contribution of money and of a number of pieces of artillery; Connecticut gave five hundred men, and New Hampshire and Rhode Island each contributed a regiment.

Moving Against the Enemy.

Massachusetts, being the most interested in the success of the expedition by reason of being the largest owner of shipping, undertook the principal part of the expense and agreed to furnish a majority of the troops and the vessels. There was no difficulty in procuring volunteers, but those who offered themselves were civilians, ignorant of military discipline, and utterly unprepared to attempt the reduction of such a fortress as that against which the expedition was directed. These disadvantages, however, were lost sight of in the enthusiasm aroused by the hope of destroying the ability of the French to prey upon the commerce of the colonies.

Sir William Pepperell, a wealthy merchant of Maine, was elected commander of the expedition, which rendezvoused at Boston in the early spring of 1745. One hundred vessels and a force of over three thousand men were assembled, and about the first of April sailed for Canso, which was reached on the seventh. The ice was drifting in such quantities that the fleet could not enter the harbor of Louisburg, and was obliged to remain at Canso for more than two weeks. Admiral Warren, commanding the West India squadron, had been invited to join the expedition, but in the absence of instructions from England had declined to do so. Almost immediately afterwards he received orders from home to render Massachusetts every aid in his power, and at once joined the New England fleet at Canso with four ships of war and a detachment of regular troops.

At length, the ice having moved southward, the New England fleet entered the harbor of Louisburg on the thirtieth of April. The fortress was built on a neck of land on the south side of the harbor, and its walls were from twenty to thirty feet high and forty feet thick at the base, and were surrounded with a ditch eighty feet in width. Outlying forts protected the main work, and there was not a foot of the walls that was not swept by the fire of the artillery. Nearly two hundred and fifty cannon of all sizes constituted the armament of the fortress, and the principal outwork, the "royal battery," was deemed capable of withstanding an attack of five thousand men. The garrison numbered sixteen hundred men. To attack this fortress the New England troops brought with them eighteen cannon and three mortars.

The French Driven to the Woods.

As the fleet drew near the town the French marched down to the beach to oppose the landing of the troops. Immediately the whale-boats of the ships were lowered and manned, and at a signal from the flagship darted for the shore with a speed which astonished and struck terror to the French, who were quickly driven to the woods. The landing was secured, and the next day a detachment of four hundred men marched by the town, giving it three cheers as they passed, and took position near the northeast harbor, completely cutting off the fortress from communication with the country in its rear. This completed the investment, as the fleet closed the harbor, and prevented the approach of relief by sea.

That night the troops in the royal battery spiked the guns of that work, abandoned it, and retreated into the town. It was immediately occupied by the New Englanders, who drilled the spikes out of the vent-holes of the guns, and turned them against the town. Batteries were erected by the colonial troops, and their fire opened upon Louisburg. The volunteers proved admirable soldiers, exciting the surprise of the English naval officers by the readiness and facility with which they discharged the various duties required of them. Numbers of them were mechanics by profession, and their skill was of the greatest service in this emergency.

A New Hampshire colonel, who was a carpenter, constructed sledges with which to drag the artillery across a morass to the positions assigned the batteries. The weather was mild and singularly dry, and the men were healthy. "All day long the men, if not on duty, were busy with amusements—firing at marks, fishing, fowling, wrestling, racing or running after balls shot from the enemy's guns."

An Important Capture.

In the meantime the ships of Admiral Warren blockaded the harbor, and not only prevented French vessels from entering the port, but succeeded in decoying into the midst of the English fleet the French frigate "Vigilante," of sixty guns, which was captured after a sharp engagement of several hours. She was loaded with stores for the fortress, and these fell into the hands of the victors.

The French commander, who had shown but little energy during the siege, was now so thoroughly disheartened that on the seventeenth of June, just seven weeks after the commencement of the investment, he surrendered the town and fortifications. As the colonial troops entered the place to take possession of it they were astonished at the strength of the works. "God has gone out of the way of His common providence, in a remarkable and miraculous manner," they said, "to incline the hearts of the French to give up, and deliver this strong city into our hands." The capture of Louisburg by the undisciplined volunteers of America was the greatest success achieved by England during the war. The colonists were justly proud of it. Bells were rung and bonfires lighted in all the colonies, and the people rejoiced greatly at the success of their brethren and friends. England, with characteristic selfishness, claimed the glory exclusively for the squadron of Admiral Warren.

Humiliating Treaty.

France was greatly alarmed at the capture of Louisburg, which seriously threatened her dominion in America, and measures were at once begun for its recovery, and for the destruction of the English colonies. In 1746, a large fleet was despatched to America under the Duke d'Anville, but many of the vessels were lost at sea, and the fleet was greatly weakened by pestilence. In the midst of these misfortunes the Duke d'Anville suddenly died, and his successor lost his mind, and committed suicide. The expedition made no serious demonstration against the English, and resulted in total failure. In 1747, another fleet was sent out from France for the same purpose, but was captured after a severe fight by an English fleet under Admirals Anson and Warren.

In spite of these successes, however, the frontiers of the northern colonies suffered considerably, and the English government resolved to attempt once more the conquest of Canada. All the colonies were required to furnish men or money to this enterprise, and eight thousand men were enlisted. The British government delayed, however, and

finally abandoned the enterprise. On the eighteenth of October, 1748, the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle closed the war.

The treaty required that all places taken by either party during the war should be restored, and Louisburg was delivered up to the French, to the great disgust of the New England colonies, who saw all the results of their sacrifices thrown away, and their commerce and fisheries once more placed at the mercy of the French. England had never regarded the interests of her colonies as worth considering, however, and it was not to be expected that she should manifest any concern for them now.

Dangerous Neighbors.

It was commonly believed in America, and with good reason, that the king did not desire that New England should enjoy the security necessary to her prosperity. His majesty was beginning to be jealous of his American subjects, who had, as Admiral Warren expressed it, "the highest notion of the rights and liberties of an Englishman," and he was resolved to keep them so weak that they should not forget their dependence upon him. Peter Kalm, a Swedish traveller, who visited New York in 1748, thus records the prevailing sentiment in America at this period: "The English colonies in this part of the world have increased so much in wealth and population that they will vie with European England. But to maintain the commerce and the power of the metropolis they are forbid to establish new manufactures, which might compete with the English; they may dig for gold and silver only on condition of shipping them immediately to England; they have, with the exception of a few fixed places, no liberty to trade to any ports not belonging to the English dominions, and foreigners are not allowed the least commerce with these American colonies. And there are many similar restrictions.

"These oppressions have made the inhabitants of the English colonies less tender to their motherland. This coldness is increased by the many foreigners who are settled among them; for Dutch, Germans and French are here blended with England, and have no special love for old England. Besides, some people are always discontented and love change; and exceeding freedom and prosperity nurse an untamable spirit. I have been told, not only by native Americans, but by English emigrants, publicly, that within thirty or fifty years the English colonies in North America may constitute a separate state entirely independent of England. But as this whole country is towards the sea unguarded, and on the frontier is kept uneasy by the French, these dangerous neighbors are the reason why the love of these colonies for their metropolis does not utterly decline. The English government has, therefore, reason to regard the French in North America as the chief power that urges their colonies to submission."

During the last year of the war an incident occurred at Boston which might have opened the eyes of the ministry to the growing determination of the Americans to resist any interference with their liberties. Desertions from the English ships-of-war in Boston harbor had become so frequent that Sir Charles Knowles, the commanding officer, sent his boats up to Boston one morning and seized a number of seamen in the vessels at the wharves, and a number of mechanics and laborers engaged in work on shore. The people of Boston indignantly demanded of the governor the release of the impressed men. As his excellency declined to interfere in the matter, the people seized the commanders and officers of the ships who happened to be in the town, and kept them prisoners until they agreed to release the men they had unlawfully seized.

BOOK III

The French and Indian War

CHAPTER XXII

Outbreak of Hostilities

England Claims the Valley of the Ohio—Organization of the Ohio Company—The French Extend Their Posts Into the Ohio Country—Washington's Mission to the French at Fort Duquesne—His Journey—Reception by the French—His Journey Home—A Perilous Undertaking—Organization of the Virginia Forces—Washington Made Second in Command—The French Drive the English from the Head of the Ohio—Fort Duquesne Built by Them—Washington Crosses the Mountains—The Fight at Great Meadows—Beginning of the French and Indian War—Surrender of Fort Necessity to the French—Unjust Treatment of the Colonial Officers—Congress of the Colonies at New York—Franklin's Plan of a Union of the Colonies—Its Failure—Reasons of the British Government for Rejecting It—England Assumes the Direction of the War—Arrival of General Braddock—Plan of Campaign—Obstinacy of Braddock—He Passes the Mountains—Defeat of Braddock—Heroism of Washington—Retreat of Dunbar Beyond the Mountains—Vigorous Action of Pennsylvania—Armstrong Defeats the Indians and Burns the Town of Kittanning.

THE wars between the English and French in America which we have just considered were but a prelude to the great struggle which was to decide which of these powers should control the destinies of the new world. The English, as we have seen, were growing stronger and more numerous along the Atlantic coast, and were directing their new settlements farther into the interior with each succeeding year. The French held Canada and the valley of the Mississippi, but their tenure was that of a military occupation rather than a colonization.

Between the possessions of these hostile nations lay the valley of the Ohio, a beautiful and fertile region, claimed by both, but occupied as yet by neither. The French had explored the country, and had caused leaden plates engraved with the arms of France to be deposited at its principal points to attest their claim; and had opened friendly relations with the Indians.

The region had been frequently visited by the traders, who brought back reports of its remarkable beauty and fertility and of its excellent climate. The British government regarded this region as a portion of Virginia, and one of the chief desires of the Earl of Halifax, the prime minister of England, was to secure the Ohio valley by planting an English colony in it. A company was organized in Virginia and Maryland for this purpose and for the purpose of trading with the Indians, and was warmly supported by the Earl of Halifax. It was named the Ohio Company, and at length succeeded in obtaining a favorable charter from the king, who, in March, 1749, ordered the governor of Virginia to assign to the Ohio Company five hundred thousand acres of land lying between the Monongahela and Kanawha rivers, and along the Ohio

The company were required to despatch, within seven years at least, one hundred families to the territory granted them, to locate

without delay at least two fifths of the lands they desired to occupy, and to build and garrison a fort at their own cost. They were granted an exemption from quit-rents and other dues for ten years, and this freedom from taxation was extended by the company to all who would settle in their domain.

A number of Indian traders had located themselves west of the Alleghanies, and in order to supply these with the articles needed for their traffic with the Indians, the Ohio Company built a trading-post at Wills' Creek, within the limits of Maryland, on the site of the present city of Cumberland. Here one of the easiest of the passes over the Alleghanies began, and by means of it the traders could easily transport their goods to the Indian country west of the mountains and return with the furs their traffic enabled them to collect.

FRENCH EXPLORERS BURYING LEADEN PLATES.

Being anxious to explore the country west of the mountains, the company employed Christopher Gist, one of the most experienced Indian traders, and instructed him "to examine the western country as far as the falls of the Ohio, to look for a large tract of good level land to mark the passes in the mountains, to trace the courses of the rivers, to count the falls, to observe the strength and numbers of the Indian nations."

A Land of Beauty.

Gist set out on his perilous mission on the last day of October, 1750, and crossing the mountains reached the Delaware towns on the Alleghany River, from which he passed down to Logstown, a short distance below the head of the Ohio. "You are come to settle the Indians' lands; you shall never go home safe," said the jealous people; but in spite of their threats they suffered him to proceed without molestation. He traversed the country to the Muskingum and the Scioto, and then crossing the Ohio explored the Kentucky to its source, and returned to Wills' Creek in safety. He reported that the region he had traversed merited all the praise that had been bestowed upon it; that it possessed a pleasant and healthy climate, and was a land of great beauty. The soil was fertile and the streams abundant and excellent. The land was covered with a rich growth of the most valuable and beautiful trees, and abounded in small level districts and meadows covered with long grass and white clover, on which the elk, the deer, and the buffalo grazed in herds. Wild turkeys and other game abounded, and the country offered every attraction to settlers who were willing to improve it.

Gist also reported that the agents of the French were actively engaged in seeking to induce the western tribes to make war upon the English and prevent them from obtaining a footing west of the mountains. The purposes of the English were well known to the French, who viewed them with alarm, as the successful occupation of the Ohio valley by the English would cut off the communication established by the French between Canada and the Mississippi. This the French were resolved to prevent at any cost. The Indians regarded both of the white nations as intruders in their country. They were willing to trade with both, but were averse to giving up their lands to either. "If the French," said they, "take possession of the north side of the Ohio, and the English of the south, where is the Indian's land?"

A Line of Forts.

The possession of the Ohio valley was thus of the highest importance to the French. Their fortified post of Fort Frontenac gave them the command of Lake Ontario, which they further secured by constructing armed vessels for the navigation of the lake. They retained their hold upon Lake Erie by strengthening Fort Niagara, which La Salle had built at the foot of that lake. They entered into treaties with the Shawnees, the Delawares and other powerful tribes between the lake and the Ohio, and steadily pushed their way eastward towards the mountains. They began their advance into the valley of the Ohio by building a fort at Presque Isle, now the city of Erie, in Pennsylvania, another on French Creek, on the site of the present town of Waterford, and a third on the site of the present town of Franklin, at the confluence of French Creek with the Alleghany.

These rapid advances eastward alarmed the English government, which instructed the governor of Virginia to address a remonstrance to the French authorities and to warn them of the consequences which must result from their intrusion into the territory

SCENE IN THE ALLEGHENY MOUNTAINS. 281

of the English. To do this it was necessary for the governor to despatch his communication to the nearest French post by the hands of some messenger of sufficient resolution to overcome the natural dangers of such an undertaking, and of sufficient intelligence to gain information respecting the designs and strength of the French; and Governor Dinwiddie was somewhat at loss to find such a person. Fortunately the man needed was at hand, and the attention of the governor being called to him, his excellency decided to intrust him with the delicate and dangerous mission.

The Coming Hero.

The person selected for this task was a young man in the twenty-second year of his age, George Washington by name. He was a native of Westmoreland County, Virginia, where he was born on the twenty-second of February, 1732. He was a great-grandson of the Colonel John Washington, whom we have noticed as the leader of an expedition against the Indians in the time of Sir William Berkeley. His father, Augustine Washington, was a wealthy planter, but his death, when George was eleven years old, deprived his son of his care, and also of the means of acquiring an education. He soon acquired all the learning that it was possible to gain at a country school, from which he passed to an academy of somewhat higher grade, where he devoted himself principally to the study of mathematics. His half-brother, Lawrence, who was fourteen years older than himself, had received a careful education and directed the studies of his younger brother, to whom he was devotedly attached.

Though deprived of the care of his father at such an early age, it was the good fortune of George Washington to possess in his mother a guide well qualified to fill the place of both parents to her fatherless children. She was a woman of rare good sense, of great decision of character, and one whose life was guided by the most earnest Christian principle. Her tenderness and sweet womanly qualities won the devoted love of her children, and her firmness enforced their obedience. From her George inherited a quick and ardent temper, and from her he learned the lesson of self-control which enabled him to govern it.

Washington's Boyhood.

As a boy, Washington was noted for his truthfulness, his courage and his generosity. He was both liked and respected by his schoolmates, and such was their confidence in his fairness and good judgment that he was usually chosen the arbiter of their boyish disputes. He joined heartily in their sports and was noted for his skill in athletic exercises. He was a fearless rider and a good hunter, and by his fondness for manly sports developed his naturally vigorous body to a high degree of strength. He was cheerful and genial in temper, though reserved and grave in manner. He early acquired habits of industry and order, and there are still existing many evidences of the careful and systematic manner in which he discharged every duty assigned him at this early age.

At the age of fourteen it was decided that he should enter the navy, and his brother Lawrence, who had served with credit in that branch of the royal service, had no difficulty in obtaining for him a midshipman's warrant. The ship he was to join lay in the Potomac, and his trunk was sent on board; but at the last moment his mother, dreading the effect of the temptations of a seaman's life upon a boy so young, appealed to him by his affection for her to remain with her Washington was sorely disappointed, but he yielded cheerfully to his mother's wish.

The marriage of his brother Lawrence gave to the young man a second home at Mount Vernon, where he passed a large part of his time. Here he was brought into constant contact with the most cultivated and refined society of Virginia, an association which had a happy influence upon the formation of his character. There also he formed the acquaintance and won the friendship of Lord Fairfax, the grandson of Lord Culpepper, and the inheritor of Culpepper's vast estates in Virginia, which comprised about one-seventh of the area of the state of Virginia as it existed prior to the separation of West Virginia in 1861. Lord Fairfax conceived a great fondness for the young man, and took a deep interest in his future welfare.

Industry and Diligence

Washington, upon leaving school, had chosen the profession of a surveyor as his future avocation, and soon after his first meeting with Lord Fairfax was employed by that nobleman to survey the lands belonging to him, many of which had been occupied by settlers without right or title. It was an arduous and responsible task, and Washington, who was just entering his seventeenth year, seemed almost too young for it; but "Lord Thomas" had satisfied himself of his young friend's capability for it, and the result justified the opinion he had formed. His work was done with care and accuracy, and his measurements were so exact that they are still relied upon.

His life as a surveyor was in many respects a hard one, but he enjoyed it. It gave new vigor to his naturally robust constitution and his splendid figure, and while yet a youth he acquired the appearance and habits of mature manhood. He also learned forest life in all its various phases, and by his constant intercourse with the hunters and Indians, gained a knowledge of the character and habits of these wild men which in after years was of infinite value to him.

During his surveying expeditions Washington was a frequent visitor at Greenway Court, the seat of Lord Fairfax, where, in addition to the other attractions, there was a well-selected library, of which the young man regularly availed himself. His reading was of a serious and useful nature; "Addison's Spectator" and the "History of England" were among his favorite works.

Though the heir to a considerable estate, Washington supported himself during this period by his earnings as a surveyor. "His father had bequeathed to the eldest son, Lawrence, the estate afterwards called Mount Vernon. To Augustine, the second son, he had given the old homstead in Westmoreland County. And George, at the age of twenty-one years, was to inherit the house and lands in Suffolk County. As yet, however, he derived no benefit from this landed property. But his industry and diligence in his laborious occupation supplied him with abundant pecuniary means. His habits of life were simple and economical; he indulged in no gay and expensive pleasures."

Military Education.

In 1751, in order to prepare for any emergency to which the hostility of the French and Indians might give rise, the colony of Virginia was divided into military districts, each of which was placed in charge of an adjutant and inspector, with the rank of major, whose duty it was to keep the militia in readiness for instant service. Washington had at an early day evinced a great fondness for military exercises, and as a boy had often drilled his school-fellows in the simplest manœuvres of the troops.

As he advanced towards manhood, his brother Lawrence, Adjutant Muse, of Westmoreland, and Jacob Vanbraam, a fencing-master, and others, had given him numerous

lessons in the art of war. Though but nineteen years old, he was regarded by his acquaintance as one of the best informed persons upon military matters in the colony, and at the general desire of those who knew him he was commissioned a major in the colonial forces, and placed in command of one of the military districts. He discharged his duties with ability and zeal, and gave such satisfaction that when Governor Dinwiddie, in 1752, divided the province into four military districts, Major Washington was placed in command of the northern district. "The counties comprehended in this division he promptly and statedly traversed, and he soon effected the thorough discipline of their militia for warlike operations." He was discharging the duties of this position when selected by the governor of Virginia to bear his message to the commander of the French forces on the Ohio.

Governor Dinwiddie intrusted to his young envoy a letter addressed to the commander of the French forces on the Ohio, in which he demanded of him his reasons for invading the territory of England while Great Britain and France were at peace with each other. Washington was instructed to observe carefully the numbers and positions of the French, the strength of their forts, the nature of their communications with Canada and with their various posts, and to endeavor to ascertain the real designs of the French in occupying the Ohio valley, and the probabilities of their being vigorously supported from Canada.

Perilous Journey.

"Ye're a braw lad," said the governor, as he delivered his instructions to the young major, "and gin you play your cards weel, my boy, ye shall hae nae cause to rue your bargain."

Washington received his instructions on the thirtieth of October, 1753, and on the same day set out for Winchester, then a frontier post, from which he proceeded to Wills' Creek, where he was to cross the mountains. Having secured the services of Christopher Gist as guide, and of two interpreters and four others, Washington set out on his journey about the middle of November. They crossed the mountains and journeyed through an unbroken country, with no paths save the Indian trails to serve as guides, across rugged ravines, over steep hills, and across streams swollen with the recent rains, until in nine days they reached the point where the Alleghany and Monongahela unite and form the Ohio. Washington carefully examined the place and was greatly impressed with the advantages offered for the location of a fort by the point of land at the junction of the two rivers. The judgment expressed by him at the time was subsequently confirmed by the choice of this spot by the French for one of their most important posts—Fort Duquesne.

Interview With "Half-King."

Washington had been ordered by the governor to proceed direct to Logstown, where he was to hold an interview with the Delaware chief known as the Half King, to acquaint the Indians with the nature of his mission and ascertain their disposition towards the English. While he was at this place he met several French deserters from the posts on the lower Ohio, who told him the location, number and strength of the French posts between Quebec and New Orleans by way of the Wabash and the Maumee, and informed him of the intention of the French to occupy the Ohio from its head to its mouth with a similar chain of forts.

The Half King confirmed the story of the deserters. He had heard that the French were coming with a strong force to drive the

English out of the land. A "grand talk" was held with the chiefs in council by Washington, and they answered him, by the Half King, that what he had said was true; they were brothers, and would guard him on his way to the nearest French post. They wished neither the English nor the French to settle in their country; but as the French were the first intruders, they were willing to aid the English in their efforts to expel them. They agreed to break off friendly relations with the French; but Washington, who knew the Indian character well, was not altogether satisfied with their promises.

On the thirtieth of November he set out from Logstown with his companions, attended by the Half King and three other Indians, and on the fourth arrived at the French post at Venango. The officer in command of this fort had no authority to receive his letter and referred him to the Chevalier St. Pierre, the commander of the next post. They treated the English with courtesy and invited Washington to sup with them. When the wine was passed around they drank deeply and soon lost their discretion.

Loud Boasting.

The sober and vigilant Washington noted their words with great attention and recorded them in his diary. "They told me," he writes, "that it was their absolute design to take possession of the Ohio, and, by G—d, they would do it; for, that although they were sensible the English could raise two men for their one, they knew their motions were too slow and dilatory to prevent any undertaking of theirs. They pretend to have an undoubted right to the river, from a discovery made by one La Salle sixty years ago; and the rise of this expedition is to prevent our settling on the river or waters of it, as they heard of some families moving out in order thereto." The French officers then informed Washington of their strength south of the lakes, and of the number and location of their posts between Montreal and Venango.

The French exerted every stratagem to detach the Indians from Washington's party, and they met with enough success to justify Washington's distrust of them. All had come to deliver up the French speech-belts, or, in other words, to break off friendly relations with the French. The Delaware chiefs wavered and failed to fulfill their promise;

THE HALF KING.

"but the Half King clung to Washington like a brother, and delivered up his belt as he had promised."

The party left Venango on the seventh of December, and reached Fort Le Boeuf, the next post, on the eleventh. It was a strong work, defended by cannon, and near by Washington saw a number of canoes and boats, and the materials for building others, sure indications that an expedition down the river was about to be attempted. He obtained an interview with St. Pierre, the commander, an officer of experience and integrity, greatly beloved as well as feared by the Indians. He received the young envoy with

courtesy, but refused to discuss questions of right with him. "I am here," he said, "by the orders of my general, to which I shall conform with exactness and resolution."

On the fourteenth, St. Pierre delivered to Washington his answer to the letter of Governor Dinwiddie, and next day the party set out on its return. They descended French Creek in canoes, at no little risk, as the stream was full of ice. At Venango, which was reached on the twenty-second, they found their horses, which were so feeble that it was doubtful whether they would be able to make the journey home.

"I put myself in an Indian walking-dress," says Washington, "and continued with them three days, until I found there was no possibility of their getting home in any reasonable time. The horses became less able to travel every day; the cold increased very fast, and the roads were becoming much worse by a deep snow continually freezing; therefore, as I was uneasy to get back to make report of my proceedings to his honor the governor, I determined to prosecute my journey the nearest way through the woods on foot."

A Shot that Missed.

Taking Gist as his only companion, and directing their way by the compass, Washington set out on the twenty-sixth, by the nearest way across the country, for the head of the Ohio. The next day an Indian who had lain in wait for them fired at Washington at a distance of only fifteen steps, but missed him, and was made a prisoner by him. Gist was anxious to kill the savage on the spot, but Washington would not allow this, and they kept the fellow until dark, and then released him. They travelled all night and all the next day in order to make sure of escaping from the enemies they felt certain their freed captive would set upon their trail.

At dark on the twenty-eighth they reached the Alleghany, and spent the night on the banks of that stream. The next morning they set to work with one poor hatchet to construct a raft, on which to pass the river, which was full of floating ice. They completed their raft about sunset and launched it upon the stream. It was caught in the floating ice, and Washington was hurled off into the water and nearly drowned. Unable to reach the opposite shore, they made for an island in mid-stream and passed the night there. The cold was intense, and Gist had all his fingers and several of his toes frozen. The next morning the river was a solid mass of ice, hard enough to bear their weight. They at once crossed to the opposite bank and continued their journey, and on the sixteenth of January, 1754, were at Williamsburg, where Washington delivered to the governor of Virginia the reply of the French commander, and reported the results of his journey.

Eager for New Territory.

The French commander returned a courteous but evasive answer to Governor Dinwiddie's communication, and referred him for a definite settlement of the matter to the Marquis Duquesne, the governor of Canada. It was clear from the tone of his letter that he meant to hold on to the territory he had occupied, and the governor of Virginia was satisfied from Major Washington's report of his observations that St. Pierre was about to extend the line of French posts down the Ohio. The authorities of Virginia resolved to anticipate him, and in the spring of 1754 the Ohio Company sent a force of about forty men to build a fort at the head of the Ohio, on the site to which Washington had called attention.

In the meantime, measures were set on foot in Virginia for the protection of the

frontiers. A regiment of troops was ordered to be raised, and it was the general wish that Major Washington should be appointed to the command. He declined the commission when tendered him, on the ground of his youth and inexperience, and was made lieutenant-colonel, the command of the regiment being conferred upon Colonel Joshua Fry. Washington was ordered to repair to the west to take charge of the defence of the frontiers, and in April, 1754, reached Wills' Creek with three companies of his regiment.

Washington Pushes Forward.

Just at this moment news arrived that the party sent to build a fort at the head of the Ohio had been driven away by the French. A force of one thousand men, with artillery, under Captain Coutrecœur, had descended the Alleghany and had surrounded the English. One hour was given them to surrender, and being utterly unable to offer any resistance, they capitulated upon condition of being allowed to retire to Virginia. Immediately upon the withdrawal of the English, the French forces occupied the unfinished work, completed it, and named it Fort Duquesne. This was a more important act than either party believed it at the time. It was the beginning of the final struggle by which the power of France in America was broken. In the history of Europe this struggle is known as the "Seven Years' War;" in our own history as the "French and Indian War."

Hostilities were now inevitable, and Washington, who was on his march to the Ohio when the news of the aggression of the French was received, resolved to push forward without delay. Colonel Fry had fallen sick, and the direction of affairs on the border had passed entirely into the hands of the young lieutenant-colonel. He intended to proceed to the junction of Red Stone Creek and the Monongahela, the site occupied by the present town of Brownsville, to erect a fort there and hold it until he could be reinforced. His force was poorly provided with clothing and tents, and was deficient in military supplies of all kinds. The country to be traversed was a wild, unbroken region, without roads or bridges, and through it the artillery and wagons were to be transported. The little force moved slowly and with difficulty, and Washington pushed on in advance with a small detachment, intending to secure the position on the Monongahela and await the arrival of the main body, when the whole force could descend the river in flatboats to Fort Duquesne.

On the twentieth of May he reached the Youghiogheny and there received a message from his ally, the Half King, telling him that the French were in heavy force at Fort Duquesne. This report was confirmed at the Little Meadows by the traders, and by another message from the Half King on the twenty-fifth of May, warning Washington that a force of French and Indians had left Fort Duquesne on a secret expedition. Washington was sure that this expedition was destined to attack him, and advanced to the Great Meadows and took position there.

The First Blood Shed.

On the morning of the twenty-seventh Gist arrived and reported that he had seen the trail of the French within five miles of the Great Meadows. In the evening of the same day a runner came in from the Half King, and with a message that the French were close at hand. Taking with him forty men, Washington set off for the Half King's camp, and by a difficult night march through a tangled forest, in the midst of a driving rain, reached it about daylight. The runners of the Half King found the French encamped in a deep glen not far distant, and it was

decided to attack them at once. The Half King and his warriors placed themselves under Washington's orders, and the march was resumed towards the French camp. The French were surprised, and an action of about a quarter of an hour ensued. The French lost ten men killed, among whom was their commander, Jumonville, and twenty-one prisoners. This was the first blood shed on the American continent in the long struggle which won America for the free institutions of the Anglo-Saxon race.

Washington was very anxious to follow up the advantage he had gained, and had already appealed to the governors of Maryland and Pennsylvania for assistance, but no aid reached him. Unable to advance in the face of the rapidly increasing forces of the French, he threw up a stockade fort at Great Meadows, which he named Fort Necessity, from the fact that the provisions of the troops were so nearly exhausted that the danger of a famine was imminent.

A Dutchman's Blunder.

On the third of July six hundred French and one hundred Indians suddenly appeared before the fort and occupied the hills surrounding it. The attacking party were able to shelter themselves behind trees and could command the fort from their safe position, while the English were greatly exposed, and it was evident to the most inexperienced that the fort was untenable. Nevertheless, the work was held for nine hours under a heavy fire, and amid the discomforts of a severe rain-storm. At length De Villiers, the French commander, fearing that his ammunition would be exhausted, proposed a parley and offered terms to Washington. The English had lost thirty killed, and the French but three. The terms of capitulation proposed by De Villiers were interpreted to Washington, who did not understand French, and in consequence of the interpretation, which was made by "a Dutchman little acquainted with the English tongue," Washington and his officers "were betrayed into a pledge which they would never have consented to give, and an act of moral suicide which they could never have deliberately committed.

"They understood from Vanbraam's interpretation, that no fort was to be built beyond the mountains *on lands belonging to the King of France;* but the terms of the articles are, 'neither in this place or beyond the mountains.'" The Virginians were allowed to march out of the fort with the honors of war, retaining their arms and all their stores, but leaving their artillery. This they did on the next morning, July fourth, 1754. The march across the mountains was rendered painful by the lack of provisions, and after much suffering the troops arrived at Fort Cumberland in Maryland. Although the expedition had been unsuccessful, the conduct of Washington had been marked by so much prudence and good judgment that he received the thanks of the general assembly of Virginia.

Washington's Cutting Reply.

Governor Dinwiddie had already thrown many obstacles in the way of the defence of the colony, and he now refused to reward the provincial officers with the promotions they had so well earned. In order to avoid this he dissolved the Virginia regiment, and reorganized it into independent companies, no officer of which was to have a higher rank than that of captain. It was also ordered that officers holding commissions from the king should take precedence of those holding commissions from the colonial government.

Washington, feeling that he could no longer remain in the service with self-respect,

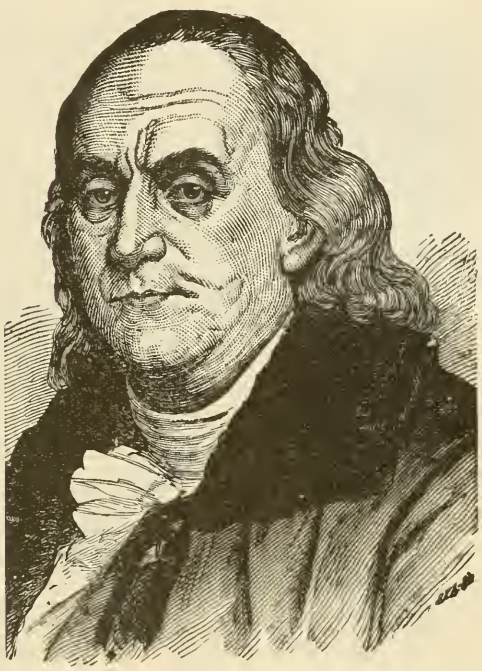
resigned his commission and withdrew to Mount Vernon. Soon afterwards Governor Sharpe, of Maryland, having been appointed by the king commander-in-chief of the forces of the southern colonies, proposed to Washington, through a friend, to return to the army and accept the rank of colonel, but with the actual authority of captain. Washington declined the offer with characteristic dignity. "If you think me," he wrote, "capable of holding a commission that has neither rank nor emolument annexed to it, you must maintain a very contemptible opinion of my weakness, and believe me more empty than the commission itself."

In the meantime, although peace still remained nominally unbroken between England and France, each nation was perfectly convinced of the certainty of a conflict in America, and each began to prepare for it. France sent large reinforcements to Canada, and the English went on rapidly with their plans for the conquest of that country. The British government was very anxious that the colonies should bear the brunt of the struggle, though it was fully determined to send a royal army to their assistance, and urged upon them to unite in some plan for their common defence.

Alliance with the Six Nations.

For the purpose of carrying out the wishes of the home government, a convention of delegates from seven of the colonies assembled at Albany, New York, on the nineteenth of June, 1754. "The Virginia government was represented by the presiding officer, Delancey, the lieutenant-governor of New York;" but New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York and Maryland were represented by their own delegates. The first object of this convention was to secure the friendship of the powerful confederacy of the Six Nations, on the northern border, and this was successfully accomplished.

The leading man of this convention was Benjamin Franklin. He was a native of Boston, and the son of a tallow chandler. While still a youth he had removed to Philadelphia, and by the force of his own genius had risen from poverty and obscurity to great prominence among the public men of Pennsylvania, and the literary and scientific men of his day.



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

He had chosen the avocation of a printer; and by his industry, energy and integrity had accumulated property enough to make him independent. He was among the most active men in America in promoting the advancement of literary, scientific and benevolent institutions, and had already won a world-wide reputation by his discoveries in science, and especially by his investigations in electricity and lightning. He was not inexperienced in public affairs. He had served as

clerk to the general assembly of Pennsylvania, as postmaster of Philadelphia, as a member of the provincial assembly of Pennsylvania, and in 1753 had been appointed by the king postmaster-general of the American colonies. In each of these positions he had served with distinction, and now, at the ripe age of forty-eight, he had come to take part in the most important convention ever held in America. Franklin had long been of the opinion that the true interests of the colonies required their union in all measures relating to their common welfare. Believing that the force of circumstances would soon drive them into such a union, he sought to accomplish that end through the medium of this convention. Accordingly he presented to the convention a plan for the union of all the American colonies, which union he intended should be perpetual.

Proposed Confederacy.

He proposed that while each colony should retain the separate and independent control of its own affairs, all should unite in a perpetual union for the management of their general affairs. This confederacy was to be controlled by a general government, to consist of a governor-general and a council. The seat of the federal government was to be Philadelphia, which city he regarded as central to all the colonies. The governor-general was to be appointed and paid by the king, and was to have the power of vetoing all laws which should seem to him objectionable. The members of the council were to be elected triennially by the colonial legislatures, and were to be apportioned among the colonies according to their respective population.

"The governor-general was to nominate military officers, subject to the advice of the council, which, in turn, was to nominate all civil officers. No money was to be issued but by their joint order. Each colony was to retain its domestic constitution; the federal government was to regulate all relations of peace or war with the Indians, affairs of trade, and purchases of lands not within the bounds of particular colonies; to establish, organize and temporarily to govern new settlements; to raise soldiers, and equip vessels of force on the seas, rivers or lakes; to make laws, and levy just and equal taxes. The grand council were to meet once a year to choose their own speaker, and neither to be dissolved nor prorogued, nor continue sitting longer than six weeks at any one time, but by their own consent."

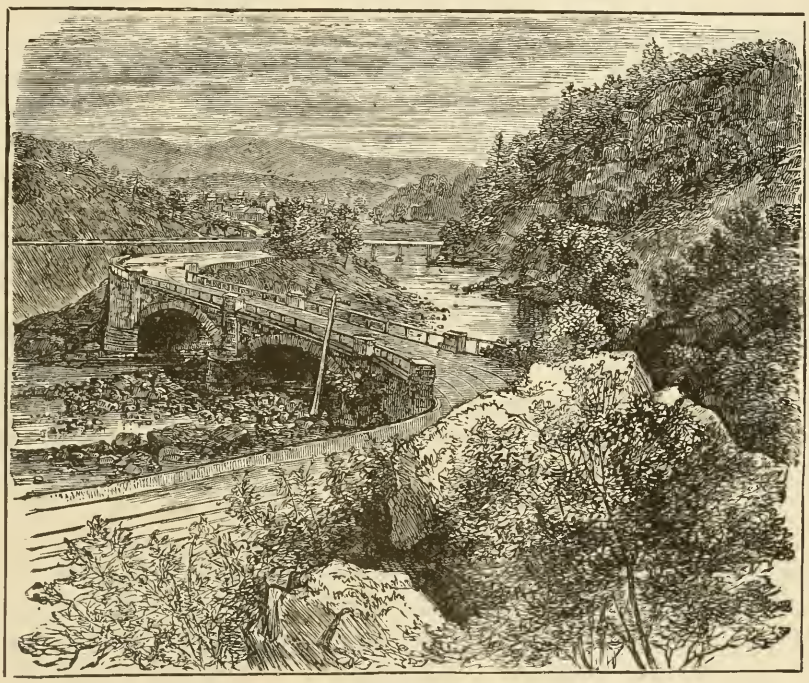
The Union Opposed.

This plan met with considerable opposition, was thoroughly discussed, and was finally adopted by the convention. It was not altogether acceptable to the colonies, each of which dreaded that the establishment of a central government would result in the destruction of the liberties of the individual provinces. Connecticut promptly rejected it, New York received it with coldness, and Massachusetts showed a more active opposition to it. Upon its reception in England it was at once thrown aside by the royal government. The Union proposed by the plan was too perfect and would make America practically independent of Great Britain, and so the board of trade did not even bring it before the notice of the king.

Franklin regarded the failure of his plan of union with great regret. In after years he wrote: "The colonies so united would have been sufficiently strong to defend themselves. There would then have been no need of troops from England; of course the subsequent pretext for taxing America, and the bloody contest it occasioned, would have been avoided. But such mistakes are not new; history is full of the errors of states and princes."

The plan for the union of the colonies having failed, the British government resolved to take into its own hands the task of carrying on the war, with such assistance as the colonies might be willing to afford. A million of pounds was voted for the defence of the British possessions in America, and four strong fleets were sent to sea, together with numerous privateers, which nearly destroyed the French West Indian trade.

In 1755, Major General Edward Braddock was appointed commander-in-chief of the English forces in America. He had served under the Duke of Cumberland, in his expedition into Scotland against the Pretender Charles Edward, in 1746, and was regarded as one of the most promising officers in his majesty's service. Braddock sailed from Cork, in Ireland, early in January, 1755, and on the twentieth of February arrived at Alexandria, in Virginia. He was soon followed by two regiments of infantry, consisting of five hundred men each, the largest force of regulars Great Britain had ever assembled in America.



WILLS' CREEK NARROWS, MD.

A conference of the colonial governors with the new commander-in-chief was held at Alexandria, and a plan of campaign was decided upon. Four expeditions were to be despatched against the French. The first, under Braddock in person, was to advance upon Fort Duquesne; the second, under Governor Shirley of Massachusetts, was to attempt the capture of Fort Niagara; the third, under William John, the Indian agent among the Mohawks, and a man of great influence over them, was to be directed against Crown Point; and the fourth was to capture the French posts near the head of the Bay of Fundy, and expel the French from Acadia.

It was now evident that the war was about to commence in good earnest, and the colonies exerted themselves to support the efforts of the mother country to the extent of their ability.

General Braddock was thoroughly proficient in the theory of his profession, but his experience of actual warfare had been limited to a single campaign, and that a brief one. He possessed the entire confidence of his superiors in England, and his faith in

himself was boundless. He believed that the regulars of the British army were capable of accomplishing any task assigned them, and entertained a thorough contempt for the provincial troops that were to form a part of his command. Soon after his arrival in Virginia he offered Washington a position on his staff as aid-de-camp, with the rank of colonel, which was promptly accepted.

Had General Braddock been a different man the presence of Washington in his military family might have been of the greatest service to him, for the experience of the young colonel would have made him an invaluable counselor. Braddock was in a strange country, and was charged with the conduct of a campaign in which the ordinary rules of warfare as practiced in Europe could not be adhered to. He knew nothing of the difficulties of marching his army through a tangled wilderness and over a mountain range of the first magnitude. Unfortunately for him, he was not aware of his ignorance, and would neither ask for nor listen to advice or information upon the subject.

Franklin's Opinion of Braddock.

"He was, I think, a brave man," says Franklin, "and might probably have made a figure as a good officer in some European war. But he had too much self-confidence, too high an opinion of the validity of regular troops, and too mean a one of both Americans and Indians." During one of his interviews with him Franklin undertook to impress upon him the necessity of guarding against the danger of Indian ambuscades. "He smiled at my ignorance," says Franklin, "and replied: 'These savages may indeed be a formidable enemy to your raw American militia; but upon the king's regular and disciplined troops, sir, it is impossible they should make any impression.'"

The army assembled at Wills' Creek, to which place General Braddock repaired in his coach. The bad roads had put him in a passion, and had broken his coach, and he was in no mood upon his arrival to pursue a sensible course. He was advised to employ Indians as scouts on the march, or to use them to protect a force of Pennsylvanians who were making a road over the mountains for the passage of the army, but he refused to do either. Washington urged him to abandon his wagon-train, to use pack-horses in place of these vehicles, and to move with as little baggage as possible. Braddock ridiculed this suggestion. Neither he nor any of his officers would consent to be separated from their cumbrous baggage, or to dispense with any of the luxuries they had been used to.

Famous "Captain Jack."

A month was lost at Wills' Creek, and in June the army began its march. It was greatly impeded by the difficulty of dragging the wagons and artillery over roads filled with the stumps of trees and with rocks. Such little progress was made that Braddock, greatly disheartened, privately asked Washington to advise him what to do. As it was known that the garrison at Fort Duquesne was small, Washington advised him to hasten forward with a division of the army, in light marching order, and seize the fort before reinforcements could arrive from Canada.

Braddock accordingly detached a division of twelve hundred men and ten pieces of cannon, with a train of pack-horses to carry the baggage, and pushed on in advance with them, leaving Colonel Dunbar to bring up the main division as promptly as possible. A famous hunter and Indian fighter named Captain Jack, who was regarded as the most experienced man in savage warfare in the

colonies, now offered his services and those of his men to Braddock to act as scouts. Braddock received him with frigid courtesy, and refused his offer, saying that he "had experienced troops upon whom he could rely for all purposes."

Braddock's Blunder.

Instead of pushing on with energy with his advance division, Braddock moved very slowly, gaining but a little more than three miles a day. "They halt," wrote Washington, "to level every mole hill and to erect a bridge over every brook." On the eighth of July the army reached the east bank of the Monongahela, about fifteen miles above Fort Duquesne, having taken about double the necessary time in the march from Wills' Creek. On the same day Washington, who had been ill for some days, and was still unwell, rejoined Braddock.

Early on the morning of the ninth of July the march was resumed. The Monongahela was forded a short distance below the mouth of the Youghiogheny, and the advance continued along the southern bank of that river. About noon the Monongahela was forded again, and the army was planted upon the strip of land between the rivers which form the Ohio. Washington was well convinced that the French and Indians were informed of the movements of the army and would seek to interfere with it before its arrival before the fort, which was only ten miles distant, and urged Braddock to throw in advance the Virginia Rangers, three hundred strong, as they were experienced Indian fighters.

Braddock angrily rebuked his aide, and as if to make the rebuke more pointed, ordered the Virginia troops and other provincials to take position in the rear of the regulars. The general was fully convinced of the ability of his trained troops to take care of themselves. They made a gallant show as they marched along with their gay uniforms, their burnished arms and flying colors, and their drums beating a lively march. Washington could not repress his admiration at the brilliant sight, nor his anxiety for the result.

In the meantime the French at Fort Duquesne had been informed by their scouts of Braddock's movements, and had resolved to ambuscade him on his march. Early on the morning of the ninth a force of about two hundred and thirty French and Canadians and six hundred and thirty-seven Indians, under De Beaujeu, the commandant at Fort Duquesne, was despatched with orders to occupy a designated spot and attack the enemy upon their approach. Before reaching it, about two o'clock in the afternoon, they encountered the advanced force of the English army, under Lieutenant-Colonel Thomas Gage, and at once attacked them with spirit.

Galling Fire.

The English army at this moment was moving along a narrow road, about twelve feet in width, with scarcely a scout thrown out in advance or upon the flanks. The engineer who was locating the road was the first to discover the enemy, and called out: "French and Indians!" Instantly a heavy fire was opened upon Gage's force, and his indecision allowed the French and Indians to seize a commanding ridge, from which they maintained their attack with spirit. There, concealed among the trees, they were almost invisible to the English, who were fully exposed to their fire, as they occupied a broad ravine, covered with low shrubs, immediately below the eminence held by the French.

The regulars were quickly thrown into confusion by the heavy fire and the fierce yells of the Indians, who could nowhere be

seen, and their losses were so severe and sudden that they became panic-stricken. They were ordered to charge up the hill and drive the French from their cover, but refused to move, and in their terror fired at random into the woods. In the meantime the Indians were rapidly spreading along the sides of the ravine and continuing their fire from their cover among the trees with fearful accuracy.

that not one of his commands was obeyed, and his defeat was complete.

The only semblance of resistance maintained by the English was by the Virginia Rangers, whom Braddock had insulted at the beginning of the day's march. Immediately upon the commencement of the battle, they had adopted the tactics of the Indians, and had thrown themselves behind trees, from which shelter they were rapidly picking

DISASTROUS DEFEAT OF GENERAL BRADDOCK.

The advance of the English was driven back, and it crowded upon the second division in utter disorder. A reinforcement of eight hundred men, under Colonel Burton, arrived at this moment, but only to add to the confusion. The French pushed their lines forward now and increased the disorder of the English, who had by this time lost nearly all their officers. Braddock now came up and gallantly exerted himself to restore order, but "the king's regulars and disciplined troops" were so utterly demoralized

off the Indians. Washington entreated Braddock to allow the regulars to follow the example of the Virginians, but he refused, and stubbornly endeavored to form them in platoons under the fatal fire that was being poured upon them by their hidden assailants. Thus through his obstinacy many useful lives were needlessly thrown away before he would admit his defeat.

The officers did not share the panic of the men, but behaved with the greatest gallantry. They were the especial marks of the Indian

sharpshooters, and many of them were killed or wounded. Two of Braddock's aides were seriously wounded, and their duties devolved upon Washington in addition to his own. He passed repeatedly over the field, carrying the orders of the commander and encouraging the men. When sent to bring up the artillery, he found it surrounded by Indians, its commander, Sir Peter Halket, killed, and the men standing helpless from fear. Springing from his horse, he appealed to the men to save the guns, pointed a field-piece and discharged it at the savages, and entreated the gunners to rally. He could accomplish nothing by either his words or example. The men deserted the guns and fled. In a letter to his brother, Washington wrote: "I had four bullets through my coat, two horses shot under me, yet escaped unhurt, though death was levelling my companions on every side around me." *

Braddock had five horses shot under him, and at length himself received a mortal wound. As he fell, Captain Stewart, of the Virginia troops, caught him in his arms. He was borne from the field, though he begged to be left to die on the scene of his defeat. His fall was fortunate for the army, which it saved from destruction.

A Fatal Rout.

The order was given to fall back, and the "regulars fled like sheep before the hounds." The French and Indians pressed forward in pursuit, and all would have been lost had not the Virginia Rangers themselves been in the rear, and covered the flight of the regulars with a determination which checked the pursuers. The artillery, wagons, and all the camp train was abandoned, and the savages, stopping to plunder these, allowed the fugitives to recross the river in safety.

Having seen the general as comfortable as circumstances would permit, Washington rode all that night and the next day to Dunbar's camp to procure wagons for the wounded and soldiers to guard them. With these he hastened back to the fugitives.

The English General's Death.

Braddock, unable to ride or to endure the jolting of a wagon, was carried in a litter as far as the Great Meadows. He seemed to be heart-broken and rarely spoke. Occasionally he would say, as if speaking to himself, with a deep sigh, "Who would have thought it?" It is said that he warmly thanked Captain Stewart for his care and kindness, and apologized to Washington for the manner in which he had received his advice. He had no wish to live, and he died at Fort Necessity on the night of the thirteenth of July. He was buried the next morning before daybreak as secretly as possible for fear that the savages might find and violate his grave. Close by the national road, about a mile west of Fort Necessity, a pile of stones still marks his resting-place.

The losses of the English in the battle were terrible. Out of eighty-six officers, twenty-six were killed and thirty-six wounded. Upward of seven hundred of the regulars were killed and wounded. The Virginia Rangers had suffered terrible losses, for they had not only borne the brunt of the battle, but had lost many of their number by the random fire of the frightened regulars. Dunbar, who succeeded Braddock in the command, still had fifteen hundred effective men

* Washington attributed his wonderful escape from even a wound to the overruling providence of God. The Indians regarded the matter in the same light. About fifteen years after the battle, while examining some lands near the mouth of the Great Kanawha River, Washington was visited by an old chief. The chief told him "he was present at the

left to him; but he was too badly frightened to attempt to retrieve the disaster, which a competent officer might have done with such a force. He broke up his camp, destroyed his stores, and retreated beyond the mountains. Disregarding the entreaties of the colonists not to leave the frontiers exposed to the savages, he continued his retreat to Philadelphia, and went into winter quarters there, to get ready for future operations.

BURNING OF KITTANNING BY GENERAL ARMSTRONG.

The effect of these reverses upon the colonists was most marked. When they understood that Braddock's splendid force of disciplined regulars had been routed by a mere handful of French and Indians, their respect for the invincibility of British troops was destroyed; and their confidence in their own prowess was greatly increased by the proud reflection that the only thing that had been done to save the army of Braddock from total destruction had been accomplished by the provincials. Washington's conduct was a subject of praise in all the colonies and brought his name conspicuously before the whole people of America. In a sermon preached a few months after Braddock's defeat, the Rev. Samuel Davies, a learned clergyman, spoke of him as "that heroic youth, Colonel Washington, whom I cannot but hope Providence has hitherto preserved in so signal a manner for some important service to his country."

The retreat of Dunbar left the frontiers of Virginia and Pennsylvania at the mercy of the savages, who maintained a desultory but destructive warfare along the entire border. The defence of this exposed region was intrusted to Colonel Washington; but he had so few men as to make his undertaking a hopeless one. The frontier settlements of Virginia were destroyed; the beautiful valley of the Shenandoah was ravaged with merciless fury, and the more protected regions were kept in a state of constant uneasiness and alarm. Governor Dinwiddie was repeatedly appealed to to furnish more men, but refused, and endeavored to excuse his delinquency by saying: "We dare not part with any of our white men to any distance, as we must have a watchful eye over our negro slaves."

---

battle, and among the Indian allies of the French; that he singled him out and repeatedly fired his rifle at him; that he also ordered his young warriors to make him their only mark; but that on finding all their bullets turned aside by some invisible and inscrutable interposition, he was convinced that the hero at whom he had so often and so truly aimed must be, for some wise purpose, specially protected by the Great Spirit. He now came, therefore, to testify his veneration."

Pennsylvania met the troubles with greater vigor and resolution. About thirty miles above Fort Duquesne, on the Alleghany River, was the Indian village of Kittanning, the home of a noted chief named Captain Jacobs. Together with the Delaware chief Shingis, he had, at the instigation of the French, kept up a continual warfare upon the frontier settlements. A military force for the defence of the frontier was raised by the colony and placed under the command of Benjamin Franklin as colonel. He soon resigned, and was succeeded by Colonel John Armstrong, a man better suited to the position, and who subsequently became a major general in the war of the Revolution.

Armstrong resolved to destroy Kittanning and the tribe inhabiting it as the best means of putting a stop to their outrages, and called for volunteers for the enterprise. Three hundred men responded. Toward the last of September, 1756, they crossed the mountains on horseback, and in a few days reached the vicinity of Kittanning. Dismounting and leaving their horses in charge of a guard, they silently surrounded the village. The Indians spent the night in carousing within hearing of the whites, and retired to rest at a very late hour. Just before daybreak the whites attacked the village and set it on fire. It was completely destroyed, and Jacobs and all but a handful of his men were slain. The few survivors fled farther west, and the Pennsylvania frontier was relieved of the sufferings it had so long endured.

CHAPTER XXIII

Sanguinary Struggles on the Frontier

Expedition Against Acadia—Brutal Treatment of the Acadians—They Are Expelled from Their Country—A Sad Story—Fate of the Acadians—Johnson at Lake George—March of Dieskau—Battle of Lake George—Failure of Shirley's Expedition—Arrival of the Earl of Loudon—Montcalm in Canada—Capture of Oswego by the French—Outrages of the Earl of Loudon Upon New York and Philadelphia—Expedition Against Louisburg—How the Earl of Loudon Beat the French—Capture of Fort William Henry by Montcalm—Massacre of the Prisoners by the Indians—Efforts of Montcalm to Save Them—The Royal Officers Attempt to Cover Their Failures by Outraging the Colonies.

WHILE the events we have related were transpiring in the Ohio valley other expeditions were despatched against the French. One of these was directed against that part of Acadia, or Nova Scotia, which still remained in the hands of the French. It lay at the head of the Bay of Fundy, and was defended by two French forts. This region was the oldest French colony in North America, having been settled sixteen years before the landing of the Pilgrims, but was regarded by the English as within their jurisdiction.

In May, 1755, an expedition of three thousand New England troops was despatched from Boston, under Colonel John Winslow, to attack these forts and establish the English authority over the French settlements. Upon reaching the Bay of Fundy Winslow was joined by three hundred English regulars under Colonel Monckton, who assumed the command. The forts were taken with comparatively little effort, and the authority of England was extended over the whole of Nova Scotia. The Acadians agreed to acknowledge the authority of their new masters, and to observe a strict neutrality between France and England in the war; and the English on their part promised not to require of them the usual oaths of allegiance, to excuse them from bearing arms against France, and to protect them in the exercise of the Catholic religion.

The Acadians numbered about seventeen thousand souls. They were a simple and harmless people, and were enjoying in a marked degree the blessings of industry and thrift. They had begun their settlements by depending upon the fur trade and the fisheries for their support, but had abandoned these pursuits for that of agriculture, which was already yielding them rich rewards for their skill and labor. They were proud of their farms, and took but little interest in public affairs, scarcely knowing what was transpiring in the world around them. It is hard to imagine a more peaceful or a happier community than this one at the time they passed under the baleful rule of England. Crime was unknown among them, and they seldom carried their disputes before the English magistrates, but settled them by the arbitration of their old men. They encouraged early marriages as the best means of preserving the morality of their people; and when a young man married, his neighbors turned out in force and built him a house, and for the first year of his marriage aided him to establish himself firmly, while the bride's relatives helped her to furnish the home thus prepared.

Thus the people were taught to regard and practice neighborly kindness as one of the

cardinal Christian virtues. They were devoted Catholics, and practiced their religion without bigotry. They were attached to the rule of France by language and religion, and would have been glad to see her authority re-established over them; but they submitted peacefully to the rule of the English and faithfully observed the terms of their surrender.

Unfortunately for the Acadians their possessions soon began to excite the envy of the English. Lawrence, the governor of Nova Scotia, expressed this feeling in his letter to Lord Halifax, the English premier "They possess the best and largest tract of land in this province," he wrote; "if they refuse the oaths, it would be much better that they were away." The English authorities had prepared a cunningly devised scheme for dispossessing these simple people of their homes, and they now proceeded to put it in execution. The usual oaths of allegiance had not been tendered to the Acadians upon their surrender, as it was known that as Frenchmen and Catholics they could not take them, as they required them to bear arms against their own brethren in Canada, and to make war upon their religion.

Cruel Treatment.

It was resolved now to offer the oaths to them, and thus either drive them into rebellion or force them to abandon their homes. When this intention was known, the priests urged them to refuse the oaths. "Better surrender your meadows to the sea," they declared, "and your houses to the flames, than, at the peril of your souls, take the oath of allegiance to the British government." As for the Acadians themselves, "they, from their very simplicity and anxious sincerity, were uncertain in their resolves; now gathering courage to flee beyond the isthmus, for other homes in New France, and now yearning for their own houses and fields, their herds and pastures."

The officers sent by the English authorities to enforce their demands conducted themselves with a haughtiness and cruelty which added greatly to the sorrows of the Acadians. Their titles to their lands were declared null and void, and all their papers and title-deeds were taken from them. Their property was taken for the public service without compensation, and if they failed to furnish wood at the times required, the English soldiers "might take their houses for fuel." Their guns were seized, and they were deprived of their boats on the pretext that they might be used to communicate with the French in Canada. At last, wearied out with these oppressions, the Acadians offered to swear allegiance to Great Britain. This, however, formed no part of the plan of their persecutors, and they were answered that by a British statute persons who had been once offered the oaths, and who had refused them, could not be permitted to take them, but must be treated as Popish recusants.

This brought matters to a crisis, and the English now resolved to strike the decisive blow. A proclamation was issued, requiring "the old men, and young men, as well as all lads over ten years of age," to assemble on the fifth of September, 1755, at a certain hour, at designated places in their respective districts, to hear the "wishes of the king." In the greater number of places the order was obeyed. What happened at the village of Grand Pré, the principal settlement, will show the course pursued by the English in all the districts. Four hundred and eighteen of the men of the place assembled. They were unarmed, and were marched into the church, which was securely guarded.

Winslow, the New England commander, then addressed them as follows: "You are

convened together to manifest to you his majesty's final resolution to the French inhabitants of this his province. Your lands and tenements, cattle of all kinds, and live stock of all sorts, are forfeited to the crown, and you yourselves are to be removed from this his province. I am, through his majesty's goodness, directed to allow you liberty to carry off your money and household goods, as many as you can, without discommoding the vessels you go in." He then declared them, together with their wives and children, a total of nineteen hundred and twenty-three souls, the king's prisoners.

English Barbarity.

The announcement took the unfortunate men by surprise, and filled them with the deepest indignation; but they were unarmed and unable to resist. They were held close prisoners in the church, and their homes, which they had left in the morning full of hope, were to see them no more. They were kept without food for themselves or their children that day, and were poorly fed during the remainder of their captivity. They were held in confinement until the tenth of September, when it was announced that the vessels were in readiness to carry them away. They were not to be allowed to join their brethren in Canada lest they should serve as a reinforcement to the French in that province, but were to be scattered as paupers through the English colonies, among people of another race and a different faith.

On the morning of the tenth the captives were drawn up six deep. The English, intending to make their trial as bitter and as painful as possible, had resolved upon the barbarous measure of separating the families of their victims. The young men and boys were driven at the point of the bayonet from the church to the ship and compelled to embark. They passed amid the rows of their mothers and sisters, who, kneeling, prayed Heaven to bless and keep them. Then the fathers and husbands were forced by the bayonet on board of another ship, and as the vessels were now full, the women and children were left behind until more ships could come for them. They were kept for weeks near the sea, suffering greatly from lack of proper shelter and food, and it was December before the last of them were removed. Those who tried to escape were ruthlessly shot down by the sentinels. "Our soldiers hate them," wrote an English officer, "and if they can but find a pretext to kill them, they will."

In some of the settlements the designs of the English were suspected and the proclamation was not heeded. Some of the people fled to Canada; others sought shelter with the Indians, who received them with kindness; others still fled to the woods, hoping to hide there till the storm was over. The English at once proceeded to lay waste their homes; the country was made desolate in order that the fugitives might be compelled through starvation to surrender themselves.

Families Scattered.

Seven thousand Acadians were torn from their homes and scattered among the English colonies on the Atlantic coast, from New Hampshire to Georgia. Families were utterly broken up, never to be reunited. The colonial newspapers for many years were filled with mournful advertisements, inquiring for a lost husband or wife; parents sought their missing children, and children their parents in this way. But of all these inquiries few were answered. The exiles were doomed to a parting worse than death, and their captors had done their work so well that human ingenuity could not undo it. Some of those who had been carried to Georgia attempted to return to their homes.

They escaped to sea in boats, and coasted from point to point northward until they reached New England, when they were sternly ordered back. Their homes were their own no longer.

More than three thousand Acadians fled to Canada, and of these about fifteen hundred settled south of the Ristigouche. Upon the surrender of Canada they were again subjected to the persecutions of the English. "Once those who dwelt in Pennsylvania presented a humble petition to the Earl of Loudon, then the British commander-in-chief in America, and the cold-hearted peer, offended that the prayer was made in French, seized their five principal men, who in their own land had been persons of dignity and substance, and shipped them to England, with the request that they might be kept from ever again becoming troublesome by being consigned to service as common sailors on board ships of war.

Unparalleled Oppression.

"No doubt existed of the king's approbation. The lords of trade, more merciless than the savages and than the wilderness in winter, wished very much that every one of the Acadians should be driven out; and when it seemed that the work was done, congratulated the king that 'the zealous endeavors of Lawrence had been crowned with an entire success.' I know not if the annals of the human race keep the record of sorrows so wantonly inflicted, so bitter and so perennial, as fell upon the French inhabitants of Acadia. 'We have been true,' they said of themselves, 'to our religion, and true to ourselves; yet nature appears to consider us only as the objects of public vengeance.' The hand of the English official seemed under a spell with regard to them; and was never uplifted but to curse them." *

* Bancroft's *History of the United States*, vol. iv., p. 206.

While these sorrows were being heaped upon the helpless Acadians by England, the provincial forces were serving the cause elsewhere with more credit to their manhood. As has been stated, the expedition against the French fort at Crown Point, on Lake Champlain, had been intrusted to General William Johnson. His army consisted principally of troops from Massachusetts and Connecticut. They were joined at Albany by a regiment from New Hampshire. The troops rendezvoused at the head of boat navigation, on the Hudson, in July, 1755, under the command of General Lyman. They numbered about six thousand men. A fort was built and named by the troops, in honor of their commander, Fort Lyman.

Johnson's Expedition.

In August Johnson arrived with the stores and artillery, and assumed the command of the expedition. He ungenerously changed the name of the fort to Fort Edward. Leaving a strong force to garrison it, he moved with five thousand men to the head of Lake George, from which he intended to descend the lake in boats.

The French had been informed of Johnson's movements by their scouts. Baron Dieskau, the governor of Canada, placed the entire arms-bearing population of the Montreal district in the field and resolved to prevent Johnson from reaching Crown Point by attacking him in his own country. With a force of two hundred French regulars and about one thousand two hundred Indians, he set out across the country to attack Fort Edward. Upon arriving in the vicinity of the fort the Indians learned that it was defended by artillery, of which they were greatly afraid, and refused to attack it. Dieskau was, therefore, compelled to change his plan, and resolved to strike a blow at Johnson's camp, which he was informed was without cannon.

In the meantime the scouts of the English had detected the movement against Fort Edward. Ignorant of the change in Dieskau's plans Johnson sent a force of one thousand men, under Colonel Ephraim Williams of Massachusetts, and two hundred Mohawks, under their famous chief Hendrick, to the relief of the fort. Their march was reported to the French, who placed

THE PALISADES OF THE HUDSON.

themselves in ambush along the road they were pursuing, and attacked them as soon as they had fairly entered the defile. The English were at once thrown into confusion. Hendrick was shot down at the first fire, and Williams fell a few moments later. The English and Mohawks then began a rapid retreat to their camp, closely pursued by their assailants.

The sound of the firing was soon heard in Johnson's camp, and as it drew nearer it became apparent that the detachment was retreating. The troops were gotten under arms, and the trees in front of the camp were hurriedly felled to form a rude breastwork. A few cannon had just arrived from the Hudson, and these were placed to command the road by which the French were approaching. These arrangements were just completed when the fugitives of Williams' command appeared in full retreat, with the French and Indians but a few hundred yards behind them. Dieskau urged his men forward with the greatest energy, intending to force his way into the English camp along with the fugitives. The artillery was carefully trained upon the road by which he was advancing, and the moment the fugitives were past the guns they opened with a terrific fire of grape, which caused the Canadians and Indians to break in confusion, and take to the woods for shelter.

Stolen Honors.

The regulars held their ground, and maintained a determined contest of five hours, in which they were nearly all slain. The Indians and Canadians did little execution, as they stood in dread of the artillery. At length Dieskau, seeing that his effort had failed, drew off his men, and retreated. He was pursued for some distance by the English. Towards evening he was suddenly attacked by the New Hampshire regiment, which was marching from Fort Edward to Johnson's assistance. The French were seized with a panic at this new attack, and abandoning their brave commander fled for their lives. Dieskau, who had been severely wounded several times, was taken prisoner. He was kindly treated, and was subsequently sent to England, where he died.

General Johnson was slightly wounded at the commencement of the battle, and with-

drew from the field, leaving the command to General Lyman, to whom the victory was really due. Notwithstanding this Johnson did not even mention Lyman's name in his report of the battle, but claimed all the honor for himself. He was rewarded by the king with a baronetcy, and the gift of twenty-five thousand dollars. General Lyman was not even thanked for his services.

Great Military Preparations.

Johnson made no effort to improve his victory. The expedition against Crown Point, which might now have been undertaken with a better prospect of success, was abandoned, and Johnson contented himself with building a useless log fort at the head of Lake George, which he named Fort William Henry. Late in the fall he placed a garrison in this fort, and then returned to Albany, where he disbanded his army.

The expedition under Governor Shirley, against Fort Niagara, was equally unsuccessful. By the month of August Shirley had advanced no farther than Oswego. Here he received the news of Braddock's defeat, which so disheartened him that, after building and garrisoning two forts at Oswego, he returned to Albany. By the death of Braddock Shirley succeeded to the chief command of all the royal forces in America.

In December, 1755, Shirley held a conference with the colonial governors, at New York, to decide upon the campaign for the next year. It was agreed that three expeditions should be undertaken in 1756: one against Niagara; a second against Fort Duquesne, and a third against Crown Point. In the meantime Lord Loudon was appointed by the king commander-in-chief of the forces in America. He sent over General Abercrombie as his lieutenant. Abercrombie arrived in June with several regiments of British regulars. He relieved General Shirley from command, but nothing was to be done until the arrival of the commander-in-chief, who did not reach America until July.

Lord Loudon was a more pompous and a slower man than Braddock, and more incompetent. A force of seven thousand men was assembled at Albany for the expedition against Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and Loudon at once repaired thither, and assumed the command. The colonists were confident that something of importance would now be accomplished; but they were destined to disappointment. The commander-in-chief and his subordinates spent their time in settling the relative rank of the royal and provincial officers.

Notwithstanding the fact that all that had been accomplished during the war had been gained by the colonial forces, there was an iniquitous regulation which gave the precedence to the lowest officer holding a royal commission over one holding a higher rank from any of the colonies. This led to many disputes, and the colonists saw themselves robbed of the honors they had so fairly won. This was only one of the many wrongs by which Great Britain succeeded in alienating the people of America from their attachment to her.

Successes of Montcalm.

In the meantime Dieskau had been succeeded as governor of Canada by the Marquis de Montcalm, the ablest of the rulers of New France. He was a man of genuine ability and of indomitable energy. He reached Quebec in 1756, and at once set out for Ticonderoga, which he placed in a state of defence. Perceiving the exposed condition of the English forts at Oswego he resolved to capture them. Collecting a force of five thousand Frenchmen, Canadians and Indians, he crossed the lake from Frontenac, and reached Oswego on the fifth of August.

He soon drove the English out of Fort Oswego; but Fort Ontario, the second work, opposed a more vigorous resistance to him.

The garrison held out until their commander, Colonel Mercer, was killed, and they had lost all hope of receiving aid from Albany, when they capitulated. An immense amount of military stores, one hundred and thirty-five pieces of cannon, and all the boats and vessels Shirley had prepared for the expedition against Niagara fell into the hands of Montcalm. The Iroquois had viewed the erection of the forts at Oswego by the English with great jealousy, and in order to conciliate them Montcalm wisely destroyed the works, and withdrew into Canada.

Master of Twenty Legions.

Loudon had detached a force under Colonel Webb to the assistance of the Oswego forts, but it was sent so late that it was met on the way by the news of the capture of the forts. Colonel Webb, in dismay, fell back rapidly, and obstructed the road to Albany.

Having failed to accomplish anything against the enemy Lord Loudon now undertook to subjugate the colonies of New York and Pennsylvania. He was firmly convinced that the colonists needed to be taught submission to the will of the royal commander, and as he had been made a sort of viceroy of all the colonies, he thought the present a fitting occasion to teach them this lesson. He demanded of the cities of Albany, New York and Philadelphia free quarters for his troops during the winter. The mayor of New York refused the demand "as contrary to the laws of England and the liberties of America." "G—d d—n my blood," said the viceroy to the mayor; "if you do not billet my officers upon free quarters this day, I'll order here all the troops in North America under my command, and billet them myself upon the city."

There was no reasoning with "the master of twenty legions," and the magistrates were obliged to get up a subscription for the free support, during the winter, of an army that had passed a whole campaign without coming in sight of the enemy. In Philadelphia the matter was settled very much in the same way. Albany was also obliged to submit, but the magistrates took occasion to tell the royal officers that they did not want their services, as they could defend their frontiers themselves. "The frontier was left open to the French; this quartering troops in the principal towns, at the expense of the inhabitants, by the illegal authority of a military chief, was the great result of the campaign." It was becoming clear to the colonists that their safety from the depredations of the French and savages was not to be gained by the royal troops, but by their own efforts.

Mock Battles and Sieges.

A congress of governors was held at Boston in January, 1757, and it was resolved that there should be but one expedition this year, and that this should be sent under the Earl of Loudon against Louisburg. The frontier posts, especially Forts Edward and William Henry, were to be defended, and Washington, with the Virginia troops, was to guard the border of that colony against the expeditions of the French from Fort Duquesne. The last was a difficult and almost impossible duty, for the French from Fort Duquesne could choose their point of attack anywhere on the long and exposed frontier, while the force under Washington was utterly inadequate to the task of watching the entire line.

Leaving Bouquet to guard the frontier of Carolina against the Cherokees, and Webb to

hold the country between Lake George and the Hudson, Lord Loudon, on the twentieth of June, 1757, sailed from New York with six thousand regulars to attack Louisburg. He proceeded to Halifax, where he was joined by a fleet of eleven ships of war and four thousand troops, bringing his whole force to ten thousand regulars and sixteen ships of the line and a number of frigates.

The campaign of this redoubtable warrior is thus described by Bancroft "He landed (at Halifax), levelled the uneven ground for a parade, planted a vegetable garden as a precaution against the scurvy, exercised the men in mock battles and sieges and stormings of fortresses, and when August came, and the spirit of the army was broken, and Hay, a major-general, expressed contempt so loudly as to be arrested, the troops were embarked, as if for Louisburg. But ere the ships sailed, the reconnoitring vessels came with the news that the French at Cape Breton had one more ship than the English, and the plan of campaign was changed. Part of the soldiers landed again at Halifax, and the Earl of Loudon, leaving his garden to the weeds, and his place of arms to briars, sailed for New York.

SITE OF FORT WILLIAM HENRY ON LAKE GEORGE.

The Marquis of Montcalm was a very different man from the Earl of Loudon. As a man he was superior to him in every way; as a commander he was active, quick and resolute; while Loudon was incompetent, slow and pompous. Montcalm had stationed himself at Ticonderoga, in order to be able to watch the English, and he resolved to take advantage of Lord Loudon's absence to attack Fort William Henry, at the head of Lake George. In the first place, previous to starting on this enterprise, he made his court to the Oneidas, the Senecas and other savage tribes, and gained them over to his interests. These native warriors crossed the waters of Lake Champlain in two hundred canoes with pennons flying, and all the pomp of savage warfare. Assembling beneath the

battlements of Ticonderoga, in the midst of woods and mountains, they sang the war-song, danced the war-dance, and listened to the eloquence of their orators. On the second of August Montcalm appeared before the fort with a force of about six thousand French and Canadians and seventeen hundred Indians, and laid siege to it. The

MONTCALM.

garrison consisted of about three thousand men, under Colonel Monroe, a gallant officer. Montcalm summoned him to surrender the fort, but Monroe returned an indignant refusal to this demand, and sent to General Webbe, at Fort Edward, fifteen miles distant, to ask for assistance. Webbe might easily have saved the fort, as he had four thousand men under his command, but he made no effort to do so.

Colonel Putnam, afterwards famous in the Revolution, eagerly sought and at last received permission to march with his regiment to Monroe's assistance, but he had proceeded only a few miles when Webbe commanded him to return to Fort Edward.

In the place of assistance, the timid Webbe then sent to Monroe a letter greatly exaggerating the force of the French and advising him to surrender. This letter was intercepted by Montcalm, who was on the point of raising the siege, and he forwarded it to Monroe, with a renewed demand for his surrender. The brave veteran held out, however, until nearly all his guns were disabled and his ammunition nearly exhausted. He then hung out a flag of truce, and Montcalm, who was too true a hero not to appreciate valor in a foe, granted him liberal terms. The garrison were allowed to march out with the honors of war upon giving their parole not to serve against France for eighteen months. They were to retain their private property and were to liberate all their prisoners. On the ninth of August the fort was surrendered to the French.

Montcalm had kept the savages from liquor, in order to be able to restrain them in the hour of victory. They now sought and obtained rum from the English, and spent the night in dancing and singing. The next morning, as the English marched out of their camp, the Indians fell upon them and began to plunder them. From robbery the

ARRIVAL OF INDIAN ALLIES AT THE FRENCH CAMP.

excited savages soon passed to murder, and many of the English were killed and others made prisoners. The French officers threw themselves into the melee and exerted themselves gallantly to control the Indians. Many of them were wounded in these efforts. Montcalm in an agony implored the Indians to respect the treaty. "Kill me," he cried, as he struggled to restrain the savages, "but spare the English, who are under my protection." He called to the English soldiers to defend themselves. The retreat to Fort Edward became a disorderly fight. Only about six hundred men reached there in a body. More than four hundred had sought shelter in the French camp, and were sent by Montcalm to their friends under the protection of a strong escort. He also sent one of his officers to ransom those who had been taken prisoners by the Indians. The vast stores accumulated at Fort William Henry were carried away by the French, and the work itself demolished.

Triumph of the French.

The loss of Fort William Henry greatly frightened General Webbe at Fort Edward. In spite of his force of six thousand men, and the withdrawal of the French to Lake Champlain, he seriously contemplated a retreat to beyond Albany. Lord Loudon, who had arrived at New York, was equally impressed with the danger, and proposed to take position with his army on Long Island, for the defence of the continent.

The campaign was over, and the French were everywhere triumphant. With the exception of Acadia, they held all the country they had occupied at the beginning of the war. The English had lost the forts at Oswego and William Henry, and immense quantities of supplies. They had been entirely expelled from the valleys of the Ohio and the St. Lawrence, and the hostile parties of the Indians were enabled to extend their ravages far into the interior of the colonies.

America was thoroughly disgusted with the incompetency and cowardice of the royal commanders. The old spell of British invincibility was broken, and the colonists were rapidly losing their respect for the troops sent over from England to protect them. Men were coming to the conclusion that their connection with Great Britain was simply a curse to the colonies. They regarded the conduct of the war thus far by the royal officials as simply "a mixture of ignorance and cowardice," and were satisfied that they were amply able to defend themselves against the French and Indians without any assistance whatever from England.

Attempts to Force Submission.

The royal officials sought to cover their failures by complaints against the Americans. The hearty disgust and contempt with which the colonists regarded their pusillanimous conduct was reported by them to the home goverment as evidence of a mutinous spirit on the part of the Americans. Throughout the colonies they pursued one uniform system of seeking to force the provinces into submission to their own illegal acts, and to compel them to an acknowledgment of the arbitrary power of the crown. "Everywhere," says Bancroft, "the royal officers actively asserted the authority of the king and the British nation over America. Did the increase of population lead the legislature to enlarge the representative body? The right to do so was denied, and representation was held to be a privilege conceded by the king as a boon, and limited by his will. Did the British commander believe that the French colonies through the neutral islands derived provisions from the continent? By his own authority he proclaimed an embargo in every American port."

CHAPTER XXIV

End of the French and Indian War

A Change for the Better—William Pitt, Prime Minister—Vigorous Measures Adopted—Recall of the Earl of Loudon—Capture of Louisburg—Abercrombie on Lake George—Advances Against Ticonderoga—Death of Lord Howe—Failure of the English Attack Upon Ticonderoga—Disgraceful Conduct of Abercrombie—His Retreat—Capture of Fort Frontenac—Advance of General Forbes—Grant's Defeat—The Virginians Again Save the Regulars—Capture of Fort Duquesne—Washington Retires from the Army—Ticonderoga and Crown Point Occupied by the English—Capture of Fort Niagara—The Expedition Against Quebec—Failure of the First Operations—Despondency of Wolfe—He Discovers a Landing Place—The Army Scales the Heights of Abraham—Montcalm's Surprise—Battle of the Plains of Abraham—Death of Wolfe—Defeat of the French—Death of Montcalm—Surrender of Quebec—Capture of Montreal—Treaty of Paris—Canada Ceded to England—France Loses All Her American Possessions—The Cherokee War—Hostility of the Indians to the English—Pontiac's War—Death of Pontiac—Bouquet Relieves Fort Duquesne—Results of the War.

THE gross mismanagement of affairs in America aroused a storm of indignation in England, and King George was obliged to yield to the popular sentiment and change his ministers. At the head of the new ministry he placed William Pitt, the leader of the popular party, who was destined to become one of the greatest of English statesmen. His great talents had raised him from the insignificant position of ensign in the guards to the leadership of the government of Great Britain, and were now to be the means of retrieving the disasters of his country and regaining for her her lost power and prestige.

A truly great man, Pitt knew how to admire and sympathize with merit in others, and was not blinded by the glitter of rank, nor hampered by an aristocratic faith in the divinity of royalty. He appreciated and sympathized with the Americans more perfectly than any of his predecessors in office, and began his career with the wise determination to encourage and develop their patriotism by a generous and systematic assistance of their efforts. He caused the government of Great Britain to assume the expenses of the war, and announced that the sums expended by the colonies for the public defence, since the commencement of hostilities, would be refunded, and that henceforth the British government would provide the funds for the prosecution of the war.

The colonies were each required to furnish troops, but Pitt "stipulated that the colonial troops raised for this purpose should be supplied with arms, ammunition, tents and provisions in the same manner as the regular troops and at the king's expense; so that the only charge to the colonies would be that of levying, clothing, and paying the men. The governors were also authorized to issue commissions to provincial officers, from colonels downwards, and these officers were to hold rank in the united army according to their commissions. Had this liberal and just system been adopted at the outset, it would have put a very different face upon the affairs of the colonies."* These energetic and just measures were promptly responded to by the colonies, which placed a force of twenty-eight thousand men in the field. To these Pitt added twenty-two thousand British regulars, making a total of fifty thousand men,

* Sparks' *Writings of Washington*, vol. ii., p. 289—*Note.*

the largest army that had ever been assembled in America, and exceeding in number the entire male population of Canada.

The Earl of Loudon was recalled, and instead of a single supreme command three separate expeditions were organized under different officers. An expedition against Louisburg was placed under the orders of Lord Jeffrey Amherst, an able and upright soldier, assisted by Brigadier General James Wolfe; who, though only thirty-one years old, had spent eighteen years in the army, and had served at Dettingen, Fontenoy and Laffeldt. He was considered one of the ablest commanders in the English service, and was universally beloved. To General Forbes the task of conquering the Ohio valley was assigned; and the expedition against Ticonderoga and Crown Point was intrusted to General Abercrombie. Pitt had little faith in Abercrombie, who had been Lord Loudon's most trusted lieutenant; but retained him to please Lord Bute, and associated with him, as his second in command, the young and gifted Lord George Howe, in the hope that Howe's genius would redeem Abercrombie's faults, and lead him to victory.

WILLIAM PITT.

The expedition against Louisburg consisted of a fleet of twenty ships of the line and eighteen frigates, under Admiral Boscawen, and an army of fourteen thousand men, under General Amherst. The fleet reached Cabarus Bay on the second of June, 1758. The fortifications of Louisburg were somewhat dilapidated, but were held by a garrison of thirty-two hundred men, commanded by Chevalier Drucour, an officer of experience and determination. These frigates were sunk across the mouth of the harbor to close it against the English, and within the basin lay five ships of the line, one fifty-gun ship and two frigates, which took part in the defence of the place.

The surf was so heavy that Amherst was unable to land his troops until the eighth. The first division was led by Wolfe, under the cover of the fire of the fleet. He forbade a gun to be fired from his command, and, upon nearing the shore, leaped into the water, followed by his men, and in the face of a sharp resistance, drove the French from their outposts into the town. The place was now regularly invested, and, after a bombardment of fifty days, during which the shipping in the harbor was destroyed, the town and fortifications were surrendered to the English on the twenty-seventh of July. With Louisburg the French gave up the islands of Cape Breton and Prince Edward. Five thousand prisoners and an immense quantity of military supplies were secured by the English.

Halifax being already the chief naval station of the English in these waters, Louisburg was abandoned. Amherst, Wolfe and Boscawen were honored by the English government for their victory. The season was too far advanced after the capture of Louisburg to admit of the commencement of operations against Quebec, and Amherst was suddenly called away from the coast to take charge of the army on Lake George.

Down Lake George.

Abercrombie had assembled a force of seven thousand English regulars and nine thousand Americans at the head of Lake George. Among the American troops were Stark and Putnam, afterwards famous in the war for independence, the former serving as a captain in the New Hampshire regiment, the latter as a major of Connecticut troops. Abercrombie was commander-in-chief, but the troops had little confidence in him. They were devoted to Lord Howe, who was the real leader of the expedition. On the fifth of July the army broke up its camp, and embarking in ten hundred and thirty-five boats, with the artillery on rafts, descended the lake to its lower end, from which they were to advance overland upon Fort Carillon, which the French had erected on the promontory of Ticonderoga. The next morning Lord Howe pushed forward with the advanced guard, and encountered a scouting party of the French. A sharp conflict ensued. The French were easily driven back, but Lord Howe was killed almost at the first fire. His death cast a gloom over the army, which promised ill for the success of the undertaking.

Gallant Attack.

Abercrombie continued to advance, and on the morning of the ninth sent Clerk, his chief engineer, to reconnoitre the French position at Ticonderoga. Clerk reported that the French works were feeble, and imperfectly armed. Stark, of New Hampshire, and some of the English officers saw that they were both strong and well provided with artillery. They so reported to Abercrombie, but he accepted the statement of his engineer, and, without waiting for his artillery, ordered an assault upon the French lines that very day.

The Marquis of Montcalm was commanding in person at Ticonderoga, and had disposed his small force of thirty-six hundred and fifty men in a line of breastworks thrown up about half a mile beyond the fort, and extending across the promontory on which that work stood. The death of Lord Howe had deprived the English of their only leader capable of contending against this accomplished commander, and the incompetency of Abercrombie was to render easy what might have been, under other circumstances, a most difficult undertaking.

Abercrombie could have brought up his artillery by the next day, but he was unwilling to wait for it, as he anticipated an

easy victory. He stationed himself in a place of safety about two miles from the field, and ordered his troops to assail the French intrenchments with the bayonet. The attack was made in gallant style, and was continued with energy during the afternoon. The English performed prodigies of valor, but were not able to overcome the strength of the French works, or the activity with which the defenders maintained their position. Unlike the English commander, Montcalm was everywhere along his line, cheering his men with his presence and example, and distributing refreshments to them with his own hands.

Without a commander who dared place himself under fire, with no one on the spot to direct their movements, the valor of the English was thrown away. A volley from an advanced party of their own men completed their confusion, and they broke helplessly and fell back in disorder towards Lake George. Abercrombie made no effort to rally them; he was too badly frightened for that; and led the army towards the landing-place, on Lake George, with such haste that but for the energetic action of Colonel Bradstreet the troops would have rushed pell-mell into the boats, without any semblance of order, and with a still greater loss of life.

The English Retreat.

The English lost nearly two thousand men in the attack upon the French works, but they still had left a force of more than four times the strength of the French, and their artillery had not been engaged. With this force they might have taken Ticonderoga, but Abercrombie was too much terrified to attempt anything of the kind. On the morning of the ninth he embarked his troops and hastened to the head of Lake George. Montcalm was astounded at his retreat, but as he had too small a force, and his men were exhausted, he made no effort at pursuit. Arrived at the head of Lake George, the frightened Abercrombie sent the artillery and ammunition back to Albany for safety, and occupied his army with the erection of Fort George, near the ruins of Fort William Henry. The news of this disaster caused General Amherst to hasten with four regiments and a battalion from Louisburg to Lake George. He reached the camp of Abercrombie on the fifth of October. In November orders arrived from England appointing Amherst commander-in-chief of the royal forces in America, and recalling Abercrombie, who returned to England to attempt to excuse his cowardice by villifying America and the Americans. He could not deceive Pitt, however, whose indignation at his pusillanimous conduct was only restrained by the influence of Lord Bute in the royal councils.

Sudden Flight.

After Abercrombie's retreat, Colonel Bradstreet, of New York, at his earnest solicitation, obtained leave from the council of war to undertake an expedition against Fort Frontenac, which, being situated at the foot of Lake Ontario, commanded both the lake and the St. Lawrence. Its possession was of the highest importance to the French, as it was their main depot for the supply of the posts on the upper lakes and the Ohio with military stores. Collecting a force of twenty-seven hundred men, all Americans, consisting chiefly of troops from New York and Massachusetts, Bradstreet hastened to Oswego before his movements were known to the enemy. From Oswego he crossed the lake in open boats, and landed on the Canada side within a mile of Fort Frontenac.

His sudden arrival struck terror to the garrison, and the greater part secured their safety by an instantaneous flight. The next day the fort surrendered. The victors cap-

tured with it a vast quantity of military stores destined for the forts in the interior, and a fleet of nine armed vessels, with which the French controlled the lake. Two of the vessels were laden with a part of the stores and sent to Oswego, and the remainder of the vessels and stores, together with the fort, were destroyed. The English then recrossed the lake to Oswego. The capture of Fort Frontenac was an event of great importance, as it led, as we shall see further on, to the abandonment by the French of their posts in the valley of the Ohio.

For the reduction of Fort Duquesne a force of seven thousand men was assembled under General Forbes. Of these, five thousand were from Pennsylvania and Virginia, the troops from the latter colony being under the command of Colonel Washington. The Pennsylvania troops assembled at Raystown, on the Juniata, and the Virginians at Fort Cumberland. Washington urged upon Forbes the advantages of adopting the old road cut by Braddock's army in his advance to the Ohio, but Forbes, at the suggestion of some land-speculators, decided to construct a new and a better road farther to the north. As regarded the future settlement of the west this was an excellent plan, but as far as it concerned the immediate object of the campaign it was a mistake, as it involved a large expenditure of labor and a great waste of time.

While this road was being constructed General Bouquet, with the advanced guard, crossed Laurel Hill and established a post at Loyal Hanna. The new road progressed very slowly, only forty-five miles being constructed in six weeks. Bouquet had with him a force of about two thousand men, chiefly Highlanders and Virginians. Learning from his scouts that Fort Duquesne was held by a garrison of only eight hundred men, of whom three hundred were Indians, Bouquet, without orders from General Forbes, resolved to attempt the capture of the fort by a sudden blow.

He detached a force of eight hundred Highlanders and a company of Virginians, under Major Grant, to reconnoitre Fort Duquesne. The French were fully informed of all of Grant's movements, but they allowed him to approach unmolested, intending to disarm his vigilance and then attack him. Grant affected the usual contempt for the provincial troops, and upon arriving before the fort, placed Major Lewis with the Virginians to guard the baggage, and sent his regulars forward to reconnoitre and make a sketch of the work. He was greatly encouraged by the fact that the French allowed him to approach without firing a gun at him, and in his self-complacency marched right into an ambuscade which the enemy had prepared for him.

The Regulars' Narrow Escape.

The French commander had posted the Indians along the sides of the defile by which Grant was advancing, and at a given signal the garrison made a sudden sally from the fort against the Highlanders, while the Indians opened a heavy fire upon them from their place of concealment. The regulars were quickly thrown into confusion, and their officers were found incapable of conducting such a mode of warfare. Attracted by the firing, Major Lewis, with a company of Virginians, hastened to the scene of the encounter, and by engaging the enemy hand to-hand enabled the regulars to save themselves from a general massacre. The detachment was routed with heavy loss, and both Grant and Lewis were taken prisoners. The fugitives retreated to the point where the baggage had been left. It was guarded by Captain Bullit, whom Lewis had left there with one company of Virginians.

By the gallant and skillful resistance of this little force the French and Indians were checked, and finally driven back in confusion. The English then continued their retreat with all speed to Loyal Hanna. Again the provincials had saved the regulars from total destruction. General Forbes had the magnanimity to acknowledge and compliment the Virginians for their services, and Captain Bullit was promoted to the rank of major.

General Forbes was greatly disheartened by the news of Grant's disaster. A council of war was called to deliberate upon the future operations of the army, and decided that as it was now November, and they were still fifty miles from Fort Duquesne, with an unbroken forest between them and the fort, nothing more could be accomplished until the spring. The enterprise was on the point of being abandoned when fortunately three prisoners were brought in, from whom Washington drew the information that the garrison of Fort Duquesne was reduced to a very small force, that the Indians had all deserted the French, and that the expected reinforcements and supplies from Canada had not arrived. It was evident that a well-executed effort would result in the capture of the fort.

The Fort Abandoned.

This information decided General Forbes to continue the expedition. A force of twenty-five hundred picked troops was placed under Washington's command, and he was ordered to push forward as rapidly as possible, and prepare the road for the advance of the main army. Washington was ably seconded in his movements by the energetic Armstrong, and the march was pressed with such vigor that in ten days the army arrived in the vicinity of Fort Duquesne.

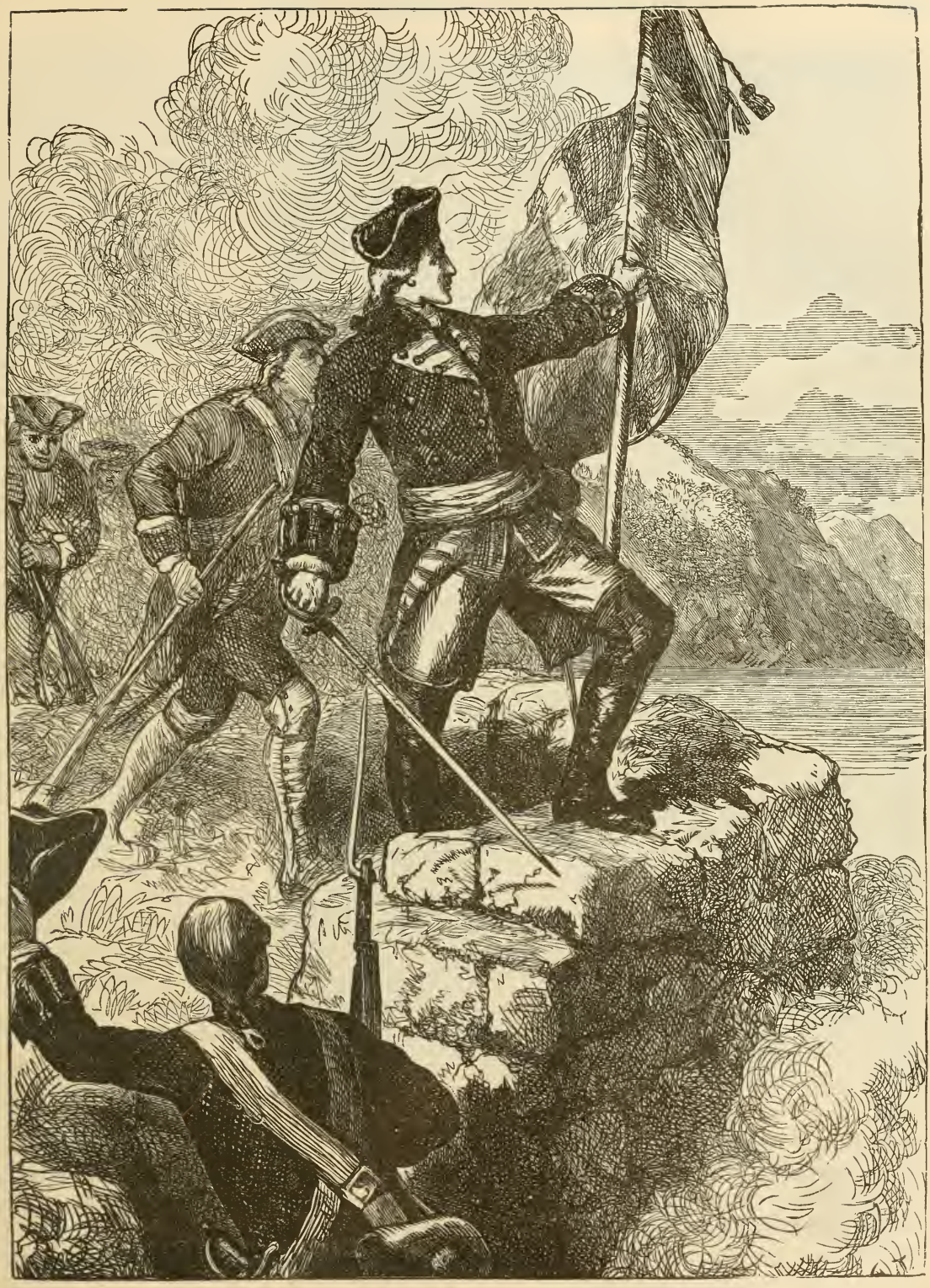
The French now saw that the fall of the fort was inevitable. They had but five hundred men, and Bradstreet's capture of Fort Frontenac had cut them off from the reinforcements and supplies they had expected from Canada. Unwilling to stand a siege, the result of which was certain, they abandoned the fort on the night of the twenty-fourth of November, and embarking in flat boats, floated down the Ohio to join their countrymen in the valley of the Mississippi.

On the morning of the twenty-fifth, Washington, with his gallant band, entered the fort and planted the British flag on the ramparts just abandoned by the French.

At the universal desire of the army, Forbes named the place Fort Pitt, which has since been changed to Pittsburgh. The splendid city which occupies the site is the proudest monument that has been built to the memory of the "Great Commoner."

Two regiments, composed of Pennsylvanians, Virginians and Marylanders, under Mercer, were left to garrison Fort Pitt, which was restored to its former strength. General Forbes then returned east of the mountains, and Washington resigned his commission and retired to private life. The object of the campaign was accomplished, and he could now enjoy the rest to which five years of constant service had entitled him.

The capture of Fort Duquesne was the most important event of the war. It put an end to the French occupation of the valley of the Ohio and settled the claim of Great Britain to that valuable region. The Indians, having no longer the support and encouragement which they had derived from the French at this post, ceased their hostile efforts, and during the remainder of the war the frontiers of Virginia and Pennsylvania were at peace. The capture of the fort was followed by a large emigration west of the mountains, which, beginning the next spring,



WASHINGTON PLANTING THE FLAG ON FORT DUQUESNE. 315

soon placed a large and energetic population of Englishmen and their families in the valley of the Ohio. The Indians, disheartened by the defeat of the French, began to form treaties of peace or neutrality with the English.

Washington's Valor.

Washington's services in this campaign were acknowledged with pride throughout the colonies, but the British government took no notice of them. Not even Pitt, with all his appreciation of America, thought it worth while to offer him any promotion or reward, as had been done in the case of other meritorious provincial commanders Soon after his withdrawal from the army he took his seat in the house of burgesses, to which he had been elected. That body ordered its speaker to publicly thank Colonel Washington in the name of the house and of the people of Virginia for his services to his country. The speaker discharged this duty with ease and dignity, but when Washington attempted to reply he blushed and stammered and was unable to speak a word. The speaker relieved his confusion by coming to his assistance with the kind remark: "Sit down, Mr. Washington; your modesty equals your valor, and that surpasses the power of any language I possess."

The English cause was now more successful than it had ever been, and Canada was exhausted by the efforts she had put forth for her defence. This was clear to Montcalm, who had no hope of holding New France against the attacks of Great Britain, and it was also clear to the far-seeing mind of Pitt. The British minister, therefore, resolved that the next campaign should be decisive of the war. He promptly reimbursed the colonies for the expenses incurred by them during the past year, and found no difficulty in enlisting them heartily in his schemes.

Three expeditions were ordered for the year 1759. Amherst was to advance by way of Lake Champlain, and after capturing Ticonderoga and Crown Point, was to lay siege to Montreal; Wolfe was to ascend the St. Lawrence and attack Quebec, and was to be joined by Amherst if the latter should be successful in his efforts against Montreal; and General Prideaux was to proceed by way of Oswego to capture Fort Niagara, and then descend Lake Ontario and join Amherst at Montreal.

Amherst moved promptly against Ticonderoga, which post was abandoned by the French upon his approach. Crown Point fell into his hands in the same manner, but here the advance of the English was stayed. No boats had been provided to transport the army down Lake Champlain, and Amherst was forced to halt until these could be procured. He was thus able to invest Montreal, or to co-operate with Wolfe in the movement against Quebec.

The American Gibraltar.

General Prideaux began his march to Oswego about the same time, and proceeding from Oswego, laid siege to Fort Niagara. He was killed by the bursting of a gun soon after the commencement of the siege, and the command devolved upon Sir William Johnson, who pressed the attack with vigor. On the twenty-third of July, 1758, the fort capitulated; but Johnson was obliged to abandon the attempt to descend the St. Lawrence to Wolfe's assistance from a lack of boats and provisions.

The expedition against Quebec assembled in June, 1758, at Louisburg, under the command of General Wolfe. It consisted of eight thousand troops and a fleet of twenty-two ships of the line, besides frigates and some smaller vessels. On the twenty-sixth of June the Isle of Orleans was reached, and

the troops were immediately landed. A short distance up the river Quebec rose defiantly, its seemingly impregnable citadel of St. Louis crowning the lofty hills that rose from the river's brink. For the defence of the place Montcalm had six greatly reduced battalions of regulars and a force of Canadian militia. A few Indians remained faithful to him; but the majority of the tribes, doubtful of the issue of the contest, preferred to remain neutral. The French commander, seeing the inferiority of his force to that of the English, put his trust chiefly in the natural strength of his position, which he believed would enable him to hold it even with his small force.

NIAGARA FALLS.

The situation of Quebec was peculiar. It lay on a peninsula, between the river St. Charles on the north and the St. Lawrence on the south and east. On these sides it was perfectly protected by the river, leaving the west side alone exposed. The lower town was situated on the beach, while the upper stood on the cliffs two hundred feet above the water, and above this still rose the castle of St. Louis. Above the city the high promontory on which the upper town was built stretched away for several miles in an elevated plain, and from the river to this plain the rocks rose almost perpendicularly.

Every landing-place was carefully guarded, and the whole range of cliffs seemed

bristling with cannon. The French commander did not believe it possible for an army to scale these cliffs. Montcalm located his camp below the city, between the St. Charles and the Montmorenci rivers, and covered the river front of his position with many floating batteries and ships of war, which presented a formidable appearance.

GENERAL JAMES WOLFE.

The naval superiority of the English at once gave them the command of the river. The French were driven from Point Levi, opposite the city, and upon it Wolfe erected batteries, from which he bombarded the lower town and soon laid it in ashes. The upper town and the citadel were beyond the range of his guns, and could not be injured by this fire.

Wolfe now decided to storm the French camp on the opposite side of the St. Lawrence, and in the month of July attacked them from the direction of the Montmorenci, but owing to the haste of the first division, which advanced to the assault before it could be properly supported by the second, the attack was repulsed with a loss of five hundred men. This repulse greatly disheartened the English commander, whose sensitive spirit suffered keenly under the dread that his enterprise was doomed to failure. He obtained news of the capture of Fort Niagara and the occupation of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and eagerly watched for the approach of the promised assistance from Amherst. It never came, and Wolfe saw that he must take Quebec by his own efforts or not at all. He attempted several diversions above the city in the hope of drawing Montcalm from his intrenchments into the open field, but the latter merely sent De Bougainville with fifteen hundred men to watch the shore above Quebec and prevent a landing. Wolfe fell into a fever, caused by his anxiety, and his despatches to his government created the gravest uneasiness in England for the success of his enterprise.

Though ill, Wolfe examined the river with eagle eyes to detect some place at which a landing could be attempted. His energy was rewarded by his discovery of the cove which now bears his name. From the shore at the head of this cove a steep and difficult pathway, along which two men could scarcely march abreast, wound up to the summit of the heights and was guarded by a small force of Canadians. Wolfe at once resolved to effect a landing here and ascend

the heights by this path. The greatest secrecy was necessary to the success of the undertaking, and in order to deceive the French as to his real design, Captain Cook, afterwards famous as a great navigator, was sent to take soundings and place buoys opposite Montcalm's camp, as if that were to be the real point of attack. The morning of the thirteenth of September was chosen for the movement, and the day and night of the twelfth were spent in preparations for it.

"To Conquer or Die."

At one o'clock on the morning of the thirteenth a force of about five thousand men under Wolfe, with Monckton and Murray, set off in boats from the fleet, which had ascended the river several days before, and dropped down to the point designated for the landing. Each officer was thoroughly informed of the duties required of him, and each shared the resolution of the gallant young commander, to conquer or die. As the boats floated down the stream, in the clear, cool starlight, Wolfe spoke to his officers of the poet Gray, and of his "Elegy in a Country Churchyard." "I would prefer," said he, "being the author of that poem to the glory of beating the French to-morrow." Then in a musing voice he repeated the lines:

"The boast of heraldy, the pomp of power,
And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
Await alike the inexorable hour;
The paths of glory lead but to the grave."

In a short while the landing-place was reached, and the fleet, following silently, took position to cover the landing if necessary. Wolfe and his immediate command leaped ashore and secured the pathway. The light infantry, who were carried by the tide a little below the path, clambered up the side of the heights, sustaining themselves by clinging to the roots and shrubs which lined the precipitous face of the hill. They reached the summit and drove off the picket-guard after a slight skirmish. The rest of the troops ascended in safety by the pathway, and a battery of two guns was abandoned on the left to Colonel Howe. Having gained the heights, Wolfe moved forward rapidly to clear the forest, and by daybreak his army was drawn up on the Heights of Abraham, in the rear of the city

Montcalm was speedily informed of the presence of the English. "It can be but a small party come to burn a few houses and retire," he answered incredulously. A brief examination satisfied him of his danger, and he exclaimed in amazement: "Then they have at last got to the weak side of this miserable garrison. We must give battle and crush them before mid-day." He at once despatched a messenger for De Bougainville, who was fifteen miles up the river, and marched from his camp opposite the city to the Heights of Abraham to drive the English from them. The opposing forces were about equal in numbers, though the English troops were superior to their adversaries in steadiness and determination.

Death of a Hero.

The battle began about ten o'clock and was stubbornly contested. It was at length decided in favor of the English. Wolfe, though wounded several times, continued to direct his army until, as he was leading them to the final charge, he received a musket ball in the breast. He tottered and called to an officer near him: "Support me; let not my brave fellows see me drop." He was borne tenderly to the rear, and water was brought him to quench his thirst. At this moment the officer upon whom he was leaning cried out: "They run! they run!" "Who run?" asked the dying hero, eagerly. "The French," said

the officer, "give way everywhere." "What?" said Wolfe, summoning up his remaining strength, "do they run already? Go, one of you, to Colonel Burton; bid him march Webb's regiment with all speed to Charles River to cut off the fugitives." Then, a smile of contentment overspreading his pale features, he murmured: "Now, God be praised, I die happy," and expired. He had done his whole duty, and with his life had purchased an empire for his country.

Monckton, the second in rank, having been wounded, the command devolved upon General Townshend, a brave officer, but incapable of following up such a success with vigor. He recalled the troops from the pursuit and contented himself with the possession of the battle-field. At this moment De Bougainville arrived with his division, but Townshend declined to renew the engagement.

Montcalm had borne himself heroically during the battle, and had done all that a brave and skillful commander could do to win the victory. As he was endeavoring to rally his troops at their final repulse, he was wounded for the second time, and was carried into the city. The surgeon informed him that his wound was mortal. "So much the better," he answered cheerfully; "I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec." De Ramsay, the commandant of the post asked his advice about the defence of the city. "To your keeping," answered Montcalm, "I commend the honor of France. I will neither give orders nor interfere any

DEATH OF GENERAL WOLFE BEFORE QUEBEC.

further. I have business of greater moment to attend to. My time is short. I shall pass the night with God, and prepare myself for death."

He then wrote a letter to the English commander, commending the French prisoners to his generosity, and at five o'clock on the morning of the fourteenth his spirit passed away. Succeeding generations have paid to his memory the honors it deserves, and on the spot where the fate of Quebec was decided the people of Canada have erected, to commemorate the heroism of the conqueror and the conquered, a noble monument inscribed with the names of WOLFE and MONTCALM.

The French lost five hundred killed and one thousand prisoners, while the loss of the English was six hundred in killed and wounded. Five days afterward, on the eighteenth of September, the city and garrison of Quebec surrendered to General Townshend. The capture of this great stronghold was hailed with rejoicings in both America and England. Congratulations were showered upon Pitt, who modestly put them aside with the reverent remark: "I will aim to serve my country; but the more a man is versed in business, the more he finds the hand of Providence everywhere."

In April, 1760, De Levi, the French commander at Montreal, attacked Quebec with a force of ten thousand men, hoping to reduce it before the arrival of reinforcements from England. Murray, the English commander, marched out with three thousand men to attack him, and in a severe battle on the twenty-sixth of April was defeated and driven back to the city with a loss of one thousand men. The French then laid siege to Quebec, but on the ninth of May an

KING GEORGE III.

English fleet arrived to its relief, and De Levi was obliged to withdraw to Montreal.

In September, Montreal itself was invested by a powerful force under General Amherst. Seeing that there was no hope of resistance, the French commander surrendered the town on the eighth of September, 1760. With this capture Canada passed entirely into the hands of the English. Detroit and the other posts on the lakes were soon given up by the French, and the dominion of France in America was confined to the valley of the Mississippi. There were no further hostilities between the English and French.

Important Treaty.

The French and Indian war was closed by the treaty of Paris, on the tenth of February, 1763. By this treaty Great Britain obtained all the French territory east of the Mississippi, with the exception of the island of New Orleans, the northern boundary of which was the rivers Iberville and Amité, and Lakes Maurepas and Pontchartrain. Florida was ceded to England by Spain in exchange for Havana. France ceded to Spain the island of New Orleans and all Louisiana west of the Mississippi. Thus Great Britain was mistress of the whole of the vast region east of the Mississippi, with the exception of the island of New Orleans, from the Arctic Ocean to the Gulf of Mexico. The region west of the Mississippi was claimed by Spain. In all the vast continent of America France retained not one foot of ground.

In the meantime the Indians of the southwest had become involved in war with the whites. The Cherokees, who had always been friendly to the English, had done good service during the early part of the war by protecting the frontiers of Virginia, and had served also in Forbes' expedition against Fort Duquesne. They received for their services no reward or pay from any source, and as they were setting out for their homes neither General Forbes nor the colonial authorities supplied them with either food or money. To avoid starvation on their march they were compelled to plunder the barns of some of the settlers, and this led to a conflict which rapidly spread into a border war.

The Cherokees Driven to Arms.

Lyttleton, the governor of South Carolina, exerted himself to prevent the restoration of peace, and with success, as he desired the credit of exterminating the Cherokees. He was opposed by the legislature and people of the colony, but in 1759 he sent a force into their country, which committed such ravages that the Cherokees, driven to despair, resolved upon a war of extermination. They made a league with the Muscogees, and sent to the French in Louisiana for military stores. The Carolinians asked aid of General Amherst, who sent them a force of twelve hundred men, principally highlanders, under General Montgomery. Reinforced by a body of Carolinians, Montgomery invaded the Cherokee country in 1760, and laid it waste. This tribe had made great advances in civilization, and had settled in villages, and engaged in the cultivation of their lands. Their homes were made desolate, and they were driven to the mountains. Montgomery then rejoined Amherst, in the north, in obedience to orders; but the Indians for many years maintained a desultory warfare along the southwestern border.

The surrender of Canada to the English was viewed with the greatest disfavor by the Indians of the north and west, who were attached to the French, and were unwilling to submit to the rule of the English. Immediately after the surrender the English occupied all the French posts along the lakes, and in the Ohio valley, with small

garrisons. The contrast between these and the French, who had formerly held these forts, soon impressed itself forcibly upon the minds of the savages. The French had been friendly and kind to the Indians, and had sought to convert them to Christianity; the English were haughty and domineering, and insulted their priests, and denounced their religion.

"King Pontiac."

The French had prohibited the sale of rum to the Indians; the English introduced it, and finding it profitable continued it, with a recklessness of consequences which did not escape the keen observation of the savages. The demoralization of the red men was rapid, and drunkenness and its attendant vices wrought sad changes in them. The tribes were bitterly hostile to the men who were ruining their people, and all were alarmed by the rapidity with which emigration had been pouring over the mountains since the capture of Fort Duquesne. They saw that they were about to be driven from their homes, and forced westward, before the advancing tide of the whites.

The most determined opponent of the English rule was Pontiac, a chief of the Ottawas. He was a Catawba by birth, had been brought from his native country as a prisoner, and had been adopted into the Ottawa tribe, whose chief he had become by his bravery and skill. He was the idol of his own people, and his influence over the neighboring tribes was boundless. He was styled "the king and lord of all the country of the northwest," and bitterly resented the English occupation of his dominions. The first English officer who came to take possession of the French forts was received by him with the stern demand, "How dare you come to visit my country without my leave?"

This "forest hero" now resolved to unite all the tribes of the northwest in a last determined effort to drive out the English, and regain the independence of the red man. The plan of operations which he adopted was most comprehensive, and was the most remarkable exhibition of genuine leadership ever given by an Indian. He began negotiations with the neighboring tribes, and induced the Delawares, Shawnees, the Senecas, Miamis, and many of the smaller tribes, occupying the great region of the upper lakes, the valley of the Ohio, and a portion of the Mississippi valley, to join his people in their effort against the English. He sent a prophet to all the tribes to declare to them that the Great Spirit had revealed to him "that if the English were permitted to dwell in their midst, then the white man's diseases and poisons would utterly destroy them." The conspiracy was pressed forward with energy, and though it was more than a year in forming, it was kept a profound secret.

The Plot Revealed.

The principal post on the upper lakes was Detroit. It was surrounded by a numerous French population engaged in agriculture and trading. It was the centre of the trade of this region, and its possession was of the highest importance to the English. Pontiac was anxious to obtain possession of this fort and sent word to Major Gladwin, the commandant, that he was coming on a certain day, with his warriors, to have a talk with him. The chief was resolved to make this visit the occasion of seizing the fort and massacring the garrison, and he and his warriors selected for the attempt cut down their rifles to a length which enabled them to conceal them under their blankets, in order to enter the fort with their arms.

The plot was revealed to Gladwin by an Indian girl, whose affections had been won by one of the English officers, and when Pontiac and his warriors repaired to the fort

VISIT OF PONTIAC AND THE INDIANS TO MAJOR GLADWIN.

for their "talk" Gladwin made him aware that his conspiracy was discovered, and very unwisely permitted him to leave the fort in safety. Pontiac now threw off the mask of friendship and boldly attacked Detroit.

Wholesale Slaughter.

This was the signal for a general war. In about three weeks' time the savages surprised and captured every fort west of Niagara, with the exception of Detroit and Pittsburgh. The garrisons were, with a few exceptions, put to death. Over one hundred traders were killed and scalped in the woods, and more than five hundred families were driven, with the loss of many of their numbers, from their settlements on the frontier. Pontiac endeavored, without success, to capture Detroit, and a large force of the warriors of several of the tribes laid siege to Pittsburgh, the most important post in the valley of the Ohio. The ravages of the Indians were extended over the wide territory between the Ohio and the Mississippi, and the settlements in that region were for the time completely broken up.

General Bouquet, with a force of five hundred men, consisting chiefly of Scotch Highlanders, was sent from eastern Pennsylvania to the relief of Fort Ligonier, which was located at the western base of the mountains, near Pittsburgh. Their march lay through a region which had been desolated by the Indians, and they were obliged to depend upon the stores they carried with them. Upon reaching Fort Ligonier, Bouquet found the communication with Pittsburgh cut off, and could learn nothing of the fate of the fort or garrison.

Leaving his cattle and wagons at Ligonier, he pushed forward with his men in light marching order, determined to ascertain if Pittsburgh still held out. He had to fight his way through the Indians, who turned aside from the siege of the fort and ambushed the Highlanders at nearly every step. They were overwhelmingly defeated by the gallant Highlanders, for Bouquet was now a veteran Indian fighter, and had learned to fight the savages with their own tactics. Their rout was complete, and Bouquet reached Pittsburgh in safety, to the great joy of the garrison.

Victory Over the Indians.

Bouquet's victory was decisive. The Indians were utterly disheartened and fled westward; and from that day the Ohio valley was freed from their violence. The tide of emigration once more began to flow over the mountains, and this time it was to know no cessation. The tribes concerned in Pontiac's conspiracy lost hope, and were overawed by the preparations of the English for their destruction, and began to withdraw from the confederacy and make peace with the whites. Pontiac soon found himself deserted by all his followers, even by his own people; but his proud spirit would not brook the thought of submission. He would make no treaty; he was the mortal foe of the English, and would never acknowledge their rule. Leaving his home and his people, he set out for the country of the Illinois, for purpose of stirring up the more distant tribes to war. A proclamation from Lord Amherst offered a reward for his murder, and he soon fell, the victim of the hired assassin.

The long war was over. It had brought both loss and gain to the colonies. It had involved them in an expenditure of sixteen million dollars, of which sum but five million dollars had been refunded by the English government. Thus the debts of the colonies were greatly increased. Thirty thousand men had been killed, or had died from wounds or disease during the war, and the sufferings of the settlers along the extended

and exposed frontiers had been almost incalculable.

On the other hand, the war had greatly increased the business of the colonies, especially in those of the north. Large sums had been spent in America by Great Britain for the support of her armies and fleets, and many fortunes were built up by enterprising men during this period. Above all the Americans had been taught their own strength, and the value of united action. They had often proved their superiority to the regular troops of the English army, and had learned valuable lessons in the art of war. In the long struggle Washington, Gates, Morgan, Montgomery, Stark, Putnam and others were trained for the great work which was to be required of them in future years.

The colonies were bound together by a common grievance, arising out of the haughty contempt with which the royal commanders treated the provincial troops, and sacrificed their interests to those of the regulars. The lesson that the colonies could do without the assistance of England, and that their true interests demanded a separation from her, was deeply implanted in the minds of many of the leading men.

Another gain for the colonies was a positive increase in their liberties resulting from the war. The necessity of securing the cordial co-operation of the Americans during the struggle caused the royal governors to cease their efforts to enforce arbitrary laws, during the existence of hostilities, as the enforcement of such measures would have alienated the colonists, and have prevented them from raising the needed supplies of men and money. The colonial assemblies were careful to take advantage of this state of affairs. They made their grants of supplies with great caution, and retained in their own hands all the disbursements of the public funds. They thus accustomed the people to the practices of free government, and taught them their rights in the matter, so that when the war closed the royal governors found that they were no longer able to practice their accustomed tyranny.

BOOK IV

The American Revolution

CHAPTER XXV

Causes of the Struggle for Independence

Injustice of Great Britain Towards Her Colonies—The Navigation Acts—Effects of These Laws Upon the Colonies—Great Britain Seeks to Destroy the Manufactures of America—Writs of Assistance—They Are Opposed—Home Manufactures Encouraged by the Americans—Ignorance of Englishmen Concerning America—Great Britain Claims the Right to Tax America—Resistance of the Colonists—Samuel Adams—The Parsons' Cause—Patrick Henry—England Persists in Her Determination to Tax America—Passage of the Stamp Act—Resistance of the Colonies—Meeting of the First Colonial Congress—Its Action—William Pitt—Repeal of the Stamp Act—Franklin Before the House of Commons—New Taxes Imposed Upon America—Increased Resistance of the Colonies—Troops Quartered in Boston—The "Massacre"—The Non-Importation Associations—Growth of Hostility to England—Burning of the "Gaspé"—The Tax on Tea Retained by the King—Destruction of Tea at Boston—Wrath of the British Government—Boston Harbor Closed—Troops Quartered in Boston—The Colonies Come to the Assistance of Boston—Action of the Virginia Assembly—General Gage in Boston—The Regulating Act—Its Failure—Gage Seizes the Massachusetts Powder—Uprising of the Colony—Meeting of the Continental Congress—Its Action—Addresses to the King and People of England—The Earl of Chatham's Indorsement of Congress—The King Remains Stubborn.

THE treaty of Paris placed England in control of the North American continent east of the Mississippi, and the English government was of the opinion that this possession brought with it the right to treat America as it pleased, without regard to the rights or liberties of her people. We have already considered some of the many acts of injustice by which Great Britain drove the colonies into rebellion against her. We have now to relate those bearing more immediately on the separation.

The navigation acts of 1660 and 1663 were passed, as we have seen, for the purpose of crippling the commerce of the colonies, and confirming their dependence upon England. They were severely felt throughout all the colonies, and especially in New England, which was largely dependent upon its commerce. These acts were the beginning of a policy deliberately adopted by England, and persisted in by her for more than a century, for the purpose of enriching her mercantile class by depriving the colonists of the just rewards of their labors. The Americans were regarded by the mother country as inferiors, and as dependents, who had been planted by her in "settlements established in distant parts of the world for the benefit of trade." The natural right of all men to acquire property and wealth by the exercise of their industry was denied to them; they were to labor only that the British merchant might grow rich at their expense. Every species of industry in America, save the mere cultivation of the soil, was to be heavily taxed that it might be crushed out of existence. The Americans were to be obliged to ship their products to England for sale, and to be compelled to purchase in her markets the supplies they needed. No foreign country might trade directly with the colonies.

Such articles of foreign production as were needed must be shipped to England, and then

transferred to British vessels for transportation to the colonies, in order that they might yield a profit to the English ship-owner. The only direct trade which was allowed, and was not taxed, was the infamous traffic in negro slaves, against which every colony protested, and which Great Britain compelled them to accept. Even the trees in the "free woods," suitable for masts, were claimed by the king, and marked by his "surveyor-general of woods." It was a criminal offence to cut one of them after being so marked.

Restrictions upon Trade.

In spite of these outrages the colonies persisted in their efforts to establish manufactures and a commerce of their own. As early as 1643 iron works were established in Massachusetts, and in 1721 the New England colonies contained six furnaces and nineteen forges. Pennsylvania was still more largely engaged in the manufacture of this metal, and exported large quantities of it to other colonies.

By the year 1756 there were eight furnaces and nine forges, for smelting copper, in operation in Maryland. In 1721 the British iron-masters endeavored to induce Parliament to put a stop to the production of iron in America, but without success. In 1750 they were more successful. In that year an act of Parliament forbade, under heavy penalties, the exportation of pig-iron from America to England, and the manufacture by the Americans of bar-iron or steel for their own use. All the iron works in the colonies were ordered to be closed, and any that might afterwards be erected were to be destroyed as "nuisances."

Some of the colonies had engaged in the manufacture of woolen goods, and the making of hats had become a very large and profitable business. In 1732 Parliament forbade the transportation of woolen goods of American manufacture from one colony to another, and the same restriction was placed upon the trade in hats. As an excuse for this outrage it was argued that as the Americans had an unlimited supply of beaver and other furs open to them, they would soon be able to supply all Europe, as well as themselves, with hats. England was unwilling that America should manufacture a single article which she could supply, and in order to cripple the industry of the colonies still further it was enacted by Parliament that no manufacturer should employ more than two apprentices. In 1733 the famous "Molasses Act" was passed, imposing a duty on sugar, molasses, or rum, imported into any of the British possessions from any foreign colony. The object of this act was to benefit the British West India possessions by compelling the North American colonies to trade with them.

Thrilling Speech of James Otis.

In order to enforce the various restrictions upon the trade of the colonies Great Britain established in America a large force of customs officers, who were given unlawful powers for this purpose. Parliament enacted that any sheriff or officer of the customs, who *suspected* that merchandise imported into the colony in which he was stationed had not paid the duty required by law, might apply to the colonial courts for a search warrant, or "writ of assistance," and enter a store or private dwelling and search for the goods he *suspected* of being unlawfully imported.

These writs were first used in Massachusetts in 1761, and aroused a storm of indignation from the people, who felt that their most sacred rights were being violated by them. They were resisted, and the case was carried before the courts in order to test their validity. James Otis, the attorney for the crown, resigned his office rather than argue

SCENE NEAR THE SOURCE OF THE RARITAN RIVER. 329

in behalf of them, and with great eloquence pleaded the cause of the people. His speech created a profound impression throughout the colonies, and aroused a determination in the hearts of his fellow-citizens to oppose the other enactments of Parliament which they felt to be unjust. This trial was fatal to the writs, which were scarcely ever used afterwards. "Then and there," says John Adams, "was the first opposition to arbitrary acts of Great Britain. Then and there American Independence was born."

Taxing the Colonies.

The spirit of opposition soon manifested itself in the New England colonies. The manufactures, trade and fisheries of that section were almost ruined, and the people had no choice but to defend themselves. Associations were formed in all the colonies pledging themselves not to purchase of English manufacturers anything but the absolute necessities of life. Families began to make their own linen and woolen cloths, and to preserve sheep for their wool. Homespun garments became the dress of the patriot party, and foreign cloths were almost driven out of use. It was resolved to encourage home manufactures in every possible way and associations were formed for this purpose. These measures became very popular, and were adopted by the other colonies in rapid succession.

England was blind to these signs of alienation and danger, and such of her public men as saw them regarded them as of no importance. It was resolved to go still further, and levy direct taxes upon the colonies. In 1763 such a proposition was brought forward by the ministers. It was claimed by them that as the debt of England had been largely increased by the French war, which had been fought in their defence, it was but right that they should help to defray the expense by paying a tax to the English government.

In the meantime the colonies had warmly discussed the intentions of Great Britain respecting them, and all strenuously denied the right of the mother country to tax them without granting them some form of representation in her government. They claimed the right to have a voice in the disposal of their property, and they regarded the design of Parliament as but a new proof of the indisposition of the mother country to treat them with justice.

The feeling of the Americans towards England at this period has been aptly described as "distrust and suspicion, strangely mixed up with filial reverence—an instinctive sense of injury, instantly met by the instinctive suggestion that there must be some constitutional reason for doing it, or it would not be done." In spite of the injuries they had received at her hands, the Americans were warmly attached to England. They gloried in her triumphs, were proud to trace their descent from her, and claimed a share in her great history and grand achievements. Had England been wise she might have strengthened this attachment to such an extent that the ties which bound the two countries could never have been sundered. But England was not only careless of the rights of Americans, she was grossly ignorant of their country and of their character.

Ignorant Rulers.

"Few Englishmen had accurate ideas of the nature, the extent, or even the position of the colonies. And when the Duke of Newcastle hurried to the king with the information that Cape Breton was an island, he did what perhaps half his colleagues in the ministry, and more than half his colleagues in Parliament, would have done in his place. They knew that the colonies were of vast

extent; that they lay far away beyond the sea; that they produced many things which Englishmen wanted to buy, and consumed many things which Englishmen wanted to sell; that English soldiers had met England's hereditary enemies, the French, in their forests; that English sailors had beaten French sailors on their coasts. But they did not know that the most flourishing of these colonies had been planted by men who, prizing freedom above all other blessings, had planted them in order to secure for themselves and their children a home in which they could worship God according to their own idea of worship, and put forth the strength of their minds and of their bodies, according to their own conception of what was best for them here and hereafter."*

The few Americans who visited Great Britain found themselves looked upon as aliens and inferiors; their affection for the land of their fathers was met with contempt, and they were ridiculed as barbarians. The English colonial officials made this feeling apparent to those Americans who remained at home. Everywhere the colonists saw themselves treated with injustice. The hard-earned glories of their troops in the colonial wars were denied them and claimed for the English regulars, and there was scarcely a provincial who had borne arms but had some petty insult or injury, at the hands of the royal authorities, to complain of.

Looking back over their history, the Americans could not remember a time when they had not been treated with injustice by Great Britain. They owed that country nothing for the planting of the colonies; that was the work of their ancestors, who had been forced to fly from England to escape wrong and injury. They had been left to conquer their early difficulties without aid, and with scanty sympathy from England, who had taken no notice of them until they were sufficiently prosperous to be profitable to her.

Injustice of the Mother Country.

Then she had rarely laid her hand upon them but to wrong them. She had pursued such a uniformly unjust policy towards them that their affection for her was rapidly giving way to a general desire to separate from her. They owed her nothing; they were resolved to maintain their liberties against her. Some of the leading men of the colony had already begun to dream of the future greatness of America, and had become convinced that the true interests of their country required a separation from England.

In spite of this feeling England persisted in her course of folly. In March, 1764, the House of Commons resolved, "that Parliament had a right to tax America." The next month (April) witnessed the enforcement of this claim in the passage of an act of Parliament levying duties upon certain articles imported into America. By the same act iron and lumber were added to the "enumerated articles" which could be exported only to England. The preamble to this measure declared that its purpose was to raise "a revenue for the expenses of defending, protecting and securing his majesty's dominions in America."

The colonists protested against this act as a violation of their liberties, and declared that they had borne their full share of the expense of the wars for their defence, that they were now able to protect themselves without assistance from the king, and added the significant warning that "taxation without representation was tyranny." No one yet thought of armed resistance; the colonists were resolved to exhaust every peaceful

*_Historical View of the American Revolution._ By G. W. Greene, p. 15.

means of redress before proceeding to extreme measures. As yet the desire for separation was confined to a few far-seeing men.

Prominent among these was Samuel Adams, of Boston, a man in whom the loftiest virtues of the old Puritans were min-

SAMUEL ADAMS.

gled with the graces of more modern times. Modest and unassuming in manner, a man of incorruptible integrity and sincere piety, he was insensible to fear in the discharge of his duty. He was a deep student of constitutional law, and was gifted with an eloquence which could move multitudes. His clear vision had already discerned the dangers which threatened his country, and had discovered the only path by which she could emerge from them in safety. His plan was simple: resistance, peaceable at first; forcible if necessary. Under his guidance the people of Boston met and protested against the new plan of taxation, and instructed their representatives in the general court to oppose it.

"We claim British rights, not by charter only," said the Boston resolves; "we are born to them. If we are taxed without our consent, our property is taken without our consent, and then we are no more freemen, but slaves." The general court of Massachusetts declared "that the imposition of duties and taxes by the Parliament of Great Britain upon a people not represented in the House of Commons is absolutely irreconcilable with their rights." A committee was appointed to correspond with the other colonies, with a view to bringing about a concerted action for the redress of grievances. In Virginia, New York, Connecticut and the Carolinas equally vigorous measures were taken.

In Virginia the first indication of the intention of the people to resist the arbitrary measures of the crown was given in a matter insignificant in itself, but clearly involving the great principle at issue. In that colony tobacco was the lawful currency, and the

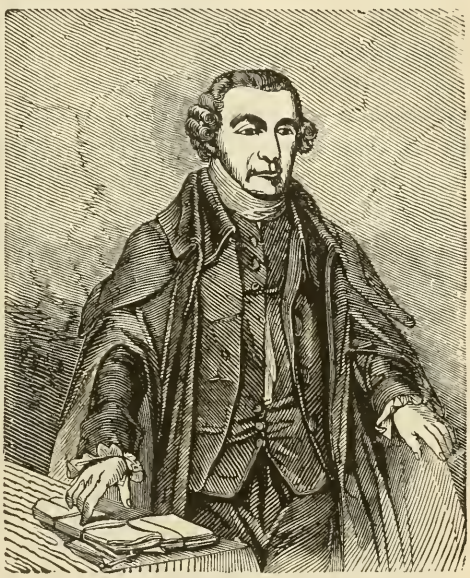
failure of a crop, or a rise in the price of tobacco, made such payments often very burdensome. In the winter of 1763 the legislature passed a law authorizing the people of the colony to pay their taxes and other public dues in money, at the rate of twopence a pound for the tobacco due. The clergymen of the established church had each a salary fixed by law at a certain number of pounds of tobacco, and as this measure involved them in a loss they refused to acquiesce in it and induced Sherlock, the bishop of London, to persuade the king to refuse the law his signature. "The rights of the clergy and the authority of the king must stand or fall together," was the sound argument of the bishop. Failing of the royal signature the law was inoperative.

The matter was soon brought to an issue in Virginia. The Rev. Mr. Maury, one of the clergymen affected by the law, brought a suit to recover damages, or the difference between twopence per pound and the current market price of tobacco, which was much higher. This was popularly known as the "Parsons' Cause." It was a clearly joined issue between the right of the people to make their own laws on the one side, and the king's prerogative on the other.

The Man for the Hour.

The "parsons" secured the best talent in the colony for the prosecution of their claims; the cause of the "people" was confided to a young man of twenty-seven, whose youth was supplemented by the additional disadvantages of being poor and unknown. He was Patrick Henry, the son of a plain farmer, and a native of the county of Hanover. He had received but little education, as his father's straitened circumstances had compelled him to put his son to the task of earning his bread at the early age of fifteen years. He entered a country store, and the next year went into business with his elder brother, William, who, being too indolent to attend to business, left the store to the management, or rather the mismanagement of Patrick.

The young man was brimming over with good nature, and could never find it in his heart to refuse any one credit, and was too kind-hearted to press unwilling debtors to payment. He let the store "manage itself," and amused himself by studying the character of his customers, and with his flute and violin. He was also a great reader, and read



PATRICK HENRY.

every work he could buy or borrow. The store survived about a year, and the next two or three years were passed by Patrick in settling its affairs. At the age of eighteen he married, and began life as a farmer. He soon grew tired of this pursuit, and selling his farm once more engaged in mercantile life. It was not suited to him, nor he to it. He passed his days in reading, this time giving his attention to works of history and philosophy. Livy was his favorite, and he read it through at least once a year for many years.

His second mercantile enterprise ended in bankruptcy in a few years, and in extreme want he determined to try the law. He obtained a license to practice after a six weeks' course of study, and entered upon his new career utterly ignorant of its duties. It is said that he could not then draw up the simplest legal paper without assistance. He was then twenty-four years old, but it was not until he had reached the age of twenty-seven that he obtained a case worthy of his powers for he had genius, and it only required the proper circumstances to draw it out. He had passed days in communion with nature in his frequent hunting and fishing excursions, and had drunk deeply of the wisdom she imparts to her votaries. He had studied men with the eye of a master, and he had at last fallen into the position from which he could rise to his true place among the leading spirits of the age. In the case with which he was now intrusted, a decision of the court on a demurrer, in favor of the claims of the clergy, had left nothing undetermined but the amount of damages in the cause which was pending.

Argument for Damages.

"The array before Mr. Henry's eyes," says his biographer, William Wirt, "was now most fearful. On the bench sat more than twenty clergymen, the most learned men in the colony, and the most capable, as well as the severest critics before whom it was possible for him to have made his debut. The court house was crowded with an overwhelming multitude, and surrounded with an immense and anxious throng, who, not finding room to enter, were endeavoring to listen without, in the deepest attention. But there was something still more awfully disconcerting than all this for in the chair of the presiding magistrate sat no other person than his own father. Mr. Lyons opened the cause very briefly: in the way of argument he did nothing more than explain to the jury that the decision upon the demurrer had put the act of 1750 entirely out of the way, and left the law of 1748 as the only standard of their damages; he then concluded with a highly wrought eulogium on the benevolence of the clergy."

When it came Patrick Henry's turn to speak, he rose awkwardly, amid a profound silence. No one had ever heard him speak, and all were anxious to see how he would acquit himself. He clutched nervously at his papers, and faltered out his opening sentences with a degree of confusion which threatened every moment to put an end to his effort. The people watched their champion in sorrow and indignation; the clergy exchanged glances of triumph, and eyed the speaker with contempt; while his father, overcome with shame, seemed ready to drop from his chair. But suddenly there came a change over the young advocate. Warming with his subject, he threw off his embarrassment and awkwardness, and stood erect and confident. His look of timidity gave place to one of command; his countenance glowed with the fire of genius, and startled the gazers by the aspect of majesty which it assumed for the first time.

"He Has Spoken Treason."

His tones grew clear and bold, his action graceful and commanding, and the astounded jury and audience were given a display of eloquence such as was without a parallel in the history of the colony. Henry knew that the case was against him, but he pleaded the natural right of Virginia to make her own laws independently of the king and Parliament. He proved the justness of the law; he drew a striking picture of the character of a good king, who should be the father of his people, but who becomes their tyrant and

oppressor, and forfeits his claim to obedience when he annuls just and good laws. The opposing counsel cried out at this bold declaration, "He has spoken treason," but was silenced by the excited throng.

"They say," says Mr. Wirt, "that the people, whose countenances had fallen as he arose, had heard but a very few sentences before they began to look up; then to look at each other in surprise, as if doubting the evidence of their own senses; then, attracted by some gesture, struck by some majestic attitude, fascinated by the spell of his eye, the charm of his emphasis, and the varied and commanding expression of his countenance, they could look away no more. In less than twenty minutes they might be seen in every part of the house, on every bench, in every window, stooping forward from their stands, in death-like silence; their features fixed in amazement and awe, all their senses listening and riveted upon the speaker, as if to catch the last strain of some heavenly visitant.

"The mockery of the clergy was soon turned into alarm, their triumph into confusion and despair, and at one burst of his rapid and overwhelming invective, they fled from the bench in precipitation and terror. As for the father, such was his surprise, such his amazement, such his rapture, that, forgetting where he was, and the character which he was filling, tears of ecstacy streamed down his cheeks without the power or inclination to repress them."

COLONEL BARRÉ.

The jury brought in a verdict of one penny damages for the "parsons," and the court overruled the motion of their counsel for a new trial. Henry from that moment took his place among the leaders of the patriot party in Virginia. He had struck a

chord which responded in every American heart; he had denied the right of the king to make laws for the colonies.

The remonstrance of Massachusetts was followed by similar appeals from Connecticut, New York, Rhode Island and Virginia. The petition of New York was couched in such strong terms that no member of Parliament could be found bold enough to present it. These remonstrances were unheeded by Parliament, which pronounced them "absurd" and "insolent." That body persisted in its determination to tax the colonies, and Grenville, the prime minister, warned the Americans that in a contest with Great Britain they could expect nothing but defeat. He announced the intention of the English government to levy the taxes, and graciously added that if the colonies preferred any special form of taxation, their wishes would be met as far as possible. In March, 1765, the measure known as the "Stamp Act" passed the House of Commons by a vote of five to one, and was adopted almost unanimously by the House of Lords.

An Insane King.

It met with a warm opposition in the Commons from the friends of America, prominent among whom was Colonel Barré, who had served with Wolfe in America, and had learned to appreciate the American character. The measure received the royal signature at once. The poor king would have signed anything he was bidden—*he was insane*. The act imposed a duty on all paper, vellum and parchment used in the colonies, and required that all writings of a legal or business nature should be made on "stamped paper;" otherwise they were declared null and void.

In order to enforce the "Stamp Act," Parliament, two months later, passed "the Quartering Act." It authorized the ministers to send as many troops as they should see fit to America, to enforce submission to the acts of Parliament. Wherever these troops should be stationed, it should be the duty of the people, at their own expense, to furnish them with quarters, fuel, bedding, cider or rum, candles, soap "and other necessaries."

Exciting Scene.

The news of the passage of these acts produced the most intense excitement in America. The general assembly of Virginia was in session when the news was received in May. The royalist leaders were amazed at the folly of the ministry, but deemed it best to take no action in the matter. Patrick Henry, now a member of the assembly, rose in his place and offered a series of resolutions, declaring that the people of Virginia were bound to pay only such taxes as should be levied by their own assembly, and that all who maintained the contrary should be regarded as enemies of the liberties of the colony.

These resolutions provoked an exciting debate, in which Henry, in a magnificent oration, exposed the tyranny of the British government, and stirred the hearts of the burgesses with a determination to resist. "Cæsar had his Brutus," exclaimed the orator in one of his loftiest flights, "Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third—." The assembly was in an uproar. "Treason! treason!" shouted the speaker. A few joined in the cry, but the majority waited in breathless suspense the completion of the sentence of Henry, who, fixing his eye upon the speaker, added in a tone which was peculiar to himself, "may profit by their example. If that be treason, make the most of it." The resolutions were adopted by a large majority.

The next day, during Henry's absence, the timid assembly rescinded some of the

resolves and modified the others. The assembly, for thus daring to exercise its right of expressing its opinion, was at once dissolved by the governor, but too late to prevent its action from producing its effect. Copies of the resolutions of Henry were forwarded to Philadelphia, where they were printed and circulated through the colonies. the colonies to send delegates to a congress to be held at New York in October. In the meantime associations were organized in all the colonies as far south as Maryland, called "Sons of Liberty," for the purpose of stopping the use of stamps. The people were resolved to take the matter in their own hands.

HANGING A STAMP ACT OFFICIAL IN EFFIGY.

They aroused the drooping spirits of the people, and it was resolved everywhere that the stamps should not be used in America.

The general court of Massachusetts ordered that the courts should not require the use of stamps in conducting their business; and in June, before the Virginia resolutions reached Boston, issued a circular inviting all

In Boston the mob attacked the house of Oliver, the secretary of the colony, who had been appointed to distribute the stamps, and compelled him to resign. They also attacked the houses of some of the most prominent supporters of the ministry, but the patriots sincerely deplored and condemned these violent proceedings. At Wethersfield,

Connecticut, five hundred farmers seized Jared Ingersol, the stamp officer for that colony, compelled him to resign, and then to remove his hat and give "three cheers for liberty, property, and no stamps." Similar scenes were enacted in the other colonies.

Rights and Grievances.

On the seventh of October, 1765, the *First Colonial Congress* met at New York. It was composed of delegates from the colonies of Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, Pennsylvania, Maryland, South Carolina, New York and New Jersey. New Hampshire, though not represented by a delegate, gave her support to its measures, and Georgia formally signified her acceptance of the work of this body. Timothy Ruggles, of Massachusetts, was chosen president. The session extended over three weeks, and resulted in the adoption of a "Declaration of the Rights and Grievances of the Colonies;" a petition to the king; and a memorial to both Houses of Parliament.

In the Declaration of Rights the Congress took the ground that it was a violation of their rights to tax them without granting them a representation in the Parliament of Great Britain, and that as such representation was impossible because of the distance between the two countries, no taxes could be legally imposed upon the colonies but by their own assemblies. The measures of the Congress were, as soon as possible, indorsed by all the colonial assemblies, and thus the colonies were drawn into that union which, in their own language, became "a bundle of sticks, which could neither be bent nor broken."

At length the first of November arrived, the day on which the Stamp Act was to go into operation. Not a man could be found to execute the law, all the stamp officers having resigned through fear of popular violence. Governor Colden, of New York, declared he was resolved to have the stamps distributed, but the people of the city warned him that he would do so at his peril, and burned him in effigy. Colden became alarmed at these demonstrations, and on the fifth of November delivered the stamps to the mayor and council of New York.

A Day of Mourning.

In all the colonies the first of November was observed as a day of mourning. Bells were tolled, flags hung at half-mast, and business suspended. The merchants of New York, Boston and Philadelphia united in an agreement to import no more goods from England, to countermand the orders already sent out, and to receive no goods on commission until the Stamp Act should be repealed. Their action was promptly sustained by the people, who pledged themselves to buy no articles of English manufacture, and to encourage home productions. Circulars were sent throughout the colonies urging the people to unite in such action, and were heartily responded to. Business went on without the use of stamps, and the courts ignored them in their proceedings.

The news of these proceedings should have warned the English ministers of their folly; it only made them more determined to persist in it. They resolved not to repeal the Stamp Act. To comply with the request of the colonists, now that they had resisted the law, would, they declared, be simply a surrender to rebellion. "Sooner than make our colonies our allies," said one of their number, "I would wish to see them returned to their primitive deserts." The friends of America, led by the aged and infirm William Pitt, made a determined effort to procure the repeal of the Stamp Act,

and they were now supported by all the influence of the English merchants, who found their trade rapidly falling off in consequence of the non-intercourse resolves adopted by the Americans.

Swathed in flannels, Pitt proceeded to the House of Commons, and in a speech of great vigor urged the House to repeal the obnoxious and unconstitutional measure. In reply to Grenville, the prime minister, who accused him of exciting sedition in America, he said, "Sir, I have been charged with giving birth to sedition in America. Sorry I am to have the liberty of speech in this House imputed as a crime. But the imputation will not deter me; it is a liberty I mean to exercise. The gentleman tells us that America is obstinate; that America is almost in rebellion. I rejoice that America has resisted." The House started at these words, but Pitt continued firmly, "If they had submitted, they would have voluntarily become slaves. They have been driven to madness by injustice. My opinion is that the Stamp Act should be repealed, absolutely, totally, immediately." Edmund Burke, then a rising young man, eloquently sustained the appeal of the great commoner.

STAMP ACT OFFICIAL BEATEN BY THE PEOPLE.

The Commons had already begun to waver, but before yielding entirely they wished to ascertain from competent witnesses the exact temper and disposition of the Americans. For this purpose, Benjamin Franklin, who was residing in London at the time as the agent of several of the colonies, was summoned before the bar of the House to give the desired information. He appeared, in answer to the summons, on the thirteenth of February, 1766. He was questioned by Lord Grenville and Charles Townshend, and by several friends of the ministry, and delivered his answers with firmness and clearness. He told them that the colonists could not pay for the stamps, as there was not enough gold and silver in the colonies for that purpose; that they had incurred more than their share of the expense of the last war, for which Great Britain had in no way reimbursed them; that they were still burdened with heavy debts contracted in consequence of this war; that they were well disposed towards Great Britain before 1763, and considered Parliament as "the great bulwark and security of their liberties and privileges; but that now their temper was much altered, and their

respect for it lessened; and if the act is not repealed, the consequence would be a total loss of the respect and affection they bore to this country, and of all the commerce that depended on that respect and affection."

Franklin Startles Parliament.

He startled the House by declaring that in a few years America would be amply able to supply herself with all the necessities of life then furnished her by Great Britain. "I do not know," said he, "a single article imported into the northern colonies but what they can either do without or make themselves. The people will spin and work for themselves, in their own houses. In three years there may be wool and manufactures enough." "If the legislature," he was asked, "should think fit to ascertain its right to lay taxes, by any act laying a small tax, contrary to their opinion, would they submit to pay the tax?" "An internal tax," he replied, "how small soever, laid by the legislature here, on the people there, will never be submitted to. They will oppose it to the last. The people will pay no internal tax by Parliament." "May they not," asked a friend of Grenville, "by the same interpretation of their common rights, as Englishmen, as declared by Magna Charta and the Petition of Right, object to the Parliament's right of external taxation?" * "They never have hitherto," answered Franklin, promptly. "Many arguments have been lately used here to show them that there is no difference, and that if you have no right to tax them internally, you have none to tax them externally, or make any other law to bind them. At present they do not reason so; but in time they may be convinced by these arguments."

* The levying of duties by Parliament on merchandise imported into the colonies.

Franklin's testimony was conclusive. The Stamp Act was repealed on the eighteenth of March, 1766, not because it was acknowledged by England as a measure of injustice, but because it could not be enforced without a collision with the colonies, which the ministry were not as yet prepared for. The people of London greeted the repeal with great joy. Bonfires were lighted, bells were rung, the city was illuminated, and the shipping in the Thames was decorated with flags. The news was sent by special messengers to the nearest ports, in order that it might reach America with as little delay as possible.

Rejoicings in America.

In America the news of the repeal of the Stamp Act was received with the greatest joy. The bells were rung in the principal cities, the imprisoned debtors were released from captivity, the associations for non-intercourse with England were dissolved, and everywhere Pitt was hailed as the champion of the liberties of America. New York, Virginia and Maryland each voted a statue to him.

The rejoicings of the Americans were premature. Parliament in repealing the Stamp Act solemnly asserted, by a bill for that purpose, its right and power to "bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever." England was only baffled for the moment; she had not relinquished her designs upon the liberties of America.

The repeal of the Stamp Act brought with it the fall of Grenville's ministry. Another was appointed under the leadership of the Marquis of Rockingham; but it was short-lived and soon gave way. The king then summoned William Pitt, who had in the meantime been created Earl of Chatham, to form an independent ministry, late in 1766. This act was regarded with great hope in

America, as Pitt was universally considered the colonists' best friend. These hopes were doomed to disappointment. In January, 1767, Charles Townshend, the chancellor of the exchequer in Pitt's cabinet, taking advantage of the absence of the prime minister, declared in the House of Commons that it was his intention, at all risks, to derive a revenue from America by laying taxes upon her, and that he knew how to raise this revenue from her.

Pitt Withdraws from the Cabinet.

Having thus thrown down the gauntlet to his official chief, it became evident that either the Earl of Chatham must relinquish the premiership, or Townshend must leave the cabinet. Chatham was anxious to dismiss him from the chancellorship, but as it was known that Townshend was acting in accordance with the sympathies and wishes of the king, no one was willing to risk his prospects by accepting the chancellorship in Townshend's place; and Chatham, unable to fill his place, was obliged to retain him. In utter disgust Chatham withdrew from active participation in the affairs of the cabinet, and Townshend remained supreme director of the colonial policy of England. In May, Townshend revealed his plan for raising a revenue in America. It was to levy a duty, to be collected in the colonies, on certain articles of commerce, such as wine, oil, paints, glass, paper, and lead colors, and especially upon *tea*, which last commodity he declared the Americans obtained cheaper from the Dutch smugglers than the English themselves.

He was told that if he would withdraw the army from America there would be no necessity for taxing the colonies. He replied, "I will hear nothing on the subject; it is absolutely necessary to keep an army there." In June, 1767, an act was passed by Parliament levying upon the colonies the duties proposed by Townshend; and a board of commissioners of the customs for America was established, with its headquarters at Boston. Soon after their appointment the "Romney" frigate entered Boston Harbor, and the new commissioners, confident in her protection, treated the people of Boston with unbearable haughtiness. Her officers frequently stopped the New England vessels as they entered the harbor, and impressed seamen from their decks.

The colonies were moved with the profoundest indignation upon the receipt of the news of the imposition of the new taxes. The colonial newspapers, which now numbered twenty-five, were filled with appeals to the people to stand up for their liberties. The old associations for non-importation of English goods were revived, and on every hand the declaration was unanimous that the Americans would neither eat, drink, nor wear anything imported from England. The general court of Massachusetts issued a circular letter to the other colonial assemblies inviting them to unite with her in measures for obtaining redress.

The Colonies Strike Back.

The English ministers were greatly incensed at the new resistance of the colonists, and in June, 1768, ordered the general court of Massachusetts to rescind its circular letter. Their demand was refused, and the general court, led by James Otis and Samuel Adams, expressed its conviction that Parliament would better serve the cause of peace by repealing its obnoxious laws. The circular had been favorably received by the other colonies, and Massachusetts was constantly receiving from them encouragement to persist in her resistance to the tyranny of the ministry. As a punishment for the refusal of the general court to rescind its circular, that body

was dissolved by the royal governor of Massachusetts. Some of the other colonial assemblies that had shown sympathy with Massachusetts were also dissolved by their respective governors.

Opposition in Boston.

A very bitter feeling existed between the people and the royal officials, and, to make matters worse, at this crisis the revenue officers at Boston seized a schooner belonging to John Hancock, one of the patriot leaders, on the pretext that her owner had made a false entry of her cargo, which consisted of wine. The schooner was towed under the guns of the "Romney" frigate, and a crowd collected in Boston and attacked the houses of the commissioners of customs, who were forced to fly to the fort on Castle Island for safety.

The report of this outbreak was transmitted to England as proof that Massachusetts was almost in a state of insurrection, and it was resolved by the ministry to send troops to overawe "the insolent town of Boston," and to hold Massachusetts as a conquered country. A regiment of regulars under General Gage reached Boston in September, 1768, but the assembly refused to provide quarters or food, or the other necessaries which were demanded by their commander in accordance with the "Quartering Act." General Gage was obliged to encamp a part of his men on Boston Common, while he lodged the rest temporarily in Faneuil Hall. With considerable difficulty he hired several houses in Boston and quartered his troops in them. The assembly of New York also refused to provide food or quarters for the royal troops, and was dissolved by the governor of the province.

The wrath of the English officials was concentrated upon Boston, which was held as though it were a conquered city. Sentinels were placed at the street corners, and the citizens were challenged by them as they went about their daily duties. The ill-feeling between the citizens and the troops gave rise to several encounters between them. On the evening of the second of March, 1770, a sentinel was attacked by the mob. A detachment of troops was sent to his aid, and was stoned by the mob. At length a soldier fired his musket at the crowd and his comrades poured in a volley, killing three and wounding five citizens. The city was thrown into an uproar, the alarm bells were rung, and crowds poured into the streets. The danger of a general collision was very great, but the people were persuaded to disperse upon the promise of Hutchinson, the governor, that justice should be done. This outbreak was known at the time as "the Boston Massacre."

The Soldiers Driven Out.

The next morning a meeting of the citizens was held at Faneuil Hall. Resolutions were passed, demanding the removal of the troops from the city to the fort on Castle Island, and the arraignment before the civil courts of Captain Preston, the officer who ordered the troops to fire. The soldiers were removed from the town as the only means of preserving the peace, and Captain Preston and six of his men were arraigned for murder. John Adams and Josiah Quincy, two leaders of the patriot party, undertook the defence of the accused officer and his men in order to make sure that they should have a fair trial. They were acquitted of murder but two of the soldiers were convicted of manslaughter. The calmness and deliberation with which this trial was conducted had a happy effect in England, and exhibited the fairness and moderation of the colonists in the most favorable light.

The British merchants now began to feel the effect of the non-importation associations

of the Americans, and their trade suffered even more than it had done in the times of the Stamp Act, in consequence of the cessation of orders for goods from the colonies. They now began to sustain the demand of the colonists for the repeal of the unjust taxes. Lord North, who was now prime minister, was willing to grant their demand, and to remove all the taxes except the duty on tea, which he retained at the express command of the king, who had now recovered his reason, and was the real director of the policy of his government. George III. held on with the most stubborn tenacity to the assertion of his right to tax the colonies, and insisted "that there should be always one tax, at least, to keep up the right of taxing." This concession was made in May, 1770, and for nearly a year there was a lull in the excitement. The matter was not settled, however, for the Americans had not resisted the amount of the tax, but the imposition of any tax at all. They were contending for a principle, not for the saving of a few dollars.

Depredations and Quarrels.

The bad feeling which was rapidly growing up between the colonists and the mother country was greatly increased by the injustice and annoyance heaped upon the colonists by the royal officials. Almost every colony had to complain of these outrages, and the king's officers seemed to think they could not do their cause better service than by exasperating the Americans. In New York the people had erected a liberty pole in the fields, now the City Hall Park. One night in January, 1770, a party of soldiers from the fort cut down the pole. This act was bitterly resented by the citizens, and frequent quarrels occurred between them and the troops, though there was no actual bloodshed.

Early in 1772 the armed schooner "Gaspé" was stationed in Narragansett Bay to enforce the revenue laws. Her commander, Lieutenant Dudingston, undertook to execute his orders in the most insulting and arbitrary manner. Market boats and other vessels passing the "Gaspé" were compelled to lower their colors to her, and armed parties from the schooner were sent ashore on the neighboring islands, and carried off such provisions as they desired. Complaint was made by the citizens of Providence to the governor of Rhode Island, who referred the matter to the chief justice, Hopkins, for his opinion. The chief justice declared "that any person who should come into the colony and exercise any authority by force of arms, without showing his commission to the governor, and, if a custom-house officer, without being sworn into his office, was guilty of a trespass, if not piracy." It was clear from the opinion of the chief justice that Dudingston was exceeding his authority, and the governor sent a sheriff on board the "Gaspé" to ascertain by what orders the lieutenant acted. Dudingston referred the matter to the admiral at Boston, who replied: "The lieutenant, sir, has done his duty. I shall give the king's officers directions that they send every man taken in molesting them to me. As sure as the people of Newport attempt to rescue any vessel and any of them are taken, I will hang them as pirates."

The Schooner Captured.

The insolence of the admiral caused even more indignation than the outrages of Dudingston, and the citizens of Rhode Island resolved to take the matter into their own hands at the earliest opportunity. On the ninth of June, 1772, the Providence packet, a swift sailer, was passing up the bay when she was hailed by the "Gaspé." She paid

no attention to the hail, and being of light draught, stood in near the shore. The "Gaspé" gave chase, and, attempting to follow her, ran aground on Namquit, a short distance below Pautuxet. The tide falling soon, left her fast. The news of her disaster was conveyed to Providence by the packet, and a plan was at once matured for her destruction.

On the following night a party of men in six or seven boats, led by John Brown, a leading merchant of Providence, Captain Abraham Whipple, of Providence, Simeon Potter, of Bristol, and others, left Providence and dropped down towards the position of the "Gaspé." They were discovered as they approached, and were hailed by Dudingston. One of the party in the boats fired and Dudingston fell wounded. The schooner was then boarded without opposition, her crew were set ashore, and the "Gaspé" was set on fire and burned to the water's edge. A large reward was offered for the perpetrators of this bold act. All were known in Providence, but in spite of this, the royal officials were not able to secure the apprehension of any of them The secret was faithfully kept.

Objections Are Useless.

The non-importation associations had, upon the repeal of the duties we have mentioned, limited their opposition to the use of tea, and the East India Company in England found itself burdened with an enormous stock of tea, which it could not dispose of as usual in consequence of the cessation of sales in America. The company therefore proposed to pay *all* the duties on the tea in England and ship it to America at its own risk, hoping that the fact of there being no duty to pay *in America* would induce the colonists to purchase it.

This plan met the determined opposition of the king, who would not consent to relinquish the assertion of his right to tax the Americans. Lord North could not understand that it was not the amount of the tax, but the principle involved in it, that was opposed by the Americans, and he proposed that the East India Company should pay *three-fourths* of the duty in England, leaving the other fourth—about three pence on a pound—to be collected in America. His lordship was told plainly that the Americans would not purchase the tea on these conditions, but he answered: "It is to no purpose the making objections, for the king will have it so. The king means to try the question with the Americans."

Trouble About Tea.

There were men in America who fully understood that the king meant "to try the question with the Americans," and were willing the trial should come. Samuel Adams was satisfied as to what would be the result, and was diligently working to prepare the people for it. He had the satisfaction of seeing public opinion in America daily assume a more enlightened and determined condition. A convention of all the colonies for taking action for a common resistance seemed to him a necessity, and he sent forth circulars to the various provinces urging them to assert their rights upon every possible occasion, and to combine for mutual support and protection.

The news of the agreement between the East India Company and the government for the exportation of tea increased the determination of the colonists to resist the tax. It was also resolved that the tea should neither be landed nor sold. A meeting was held in Philadelphia and resolutions were passed requesting those to whom the tea was consigned "to resign their appointments." It was also resolved that whosoever should "aid or abet in unloading, receiving,

or vending the tea" should be regarded "as an enemy to his country." Meetings of a similar nature were held in New York and Charleston, and similar resolutions were adopted.

A fast-sailing vessel reached Boston about the first of November, 1773, with the news that several ships laden with tea had sailed from England to America. On the third of November a meeting was held at Faneuil Hall, and, on motion of Samuel Adams, it was unanimously resolved to send the tea back upon its arrival. A man in the crowd cried out: "The only way to get rid of it is to throw it overboard." The meeting invited the consignees of the tea to resign their appointments. Two of these men were sons of Governor Hutchinson, who was intensely hated by the people of Massachusetts because of his double-faced policy, which had been detected and exposed by Dr. Franklin. Until this discovery Hutchinson had induced the people of Massachusetts to believe that he was their best friend, when in reality he had suggested to the British government nearly all the unjust measures that had been directed against that colony.

An Ominous Silence.

The first of the tea ships reached Boston on the twenty-fifth of November, 1773. A meeting of the citizens was held at Faneuil Hall, and it was ordered that the vessel should be moored to the wharf, and a guard of twenty-five citizens was placed over her to see that no tea was removed. The owner of the vessel agreed to send the cargo back if the governor would give his permit for the vessel to leave Boston. This the governor withheld, and in the meantime two other ships arrived with cargoes of tea and were ordered to anchor beside the first The committee appointed by the meeting of citizens waited on the consignees, but obtained no satisfaction from them.

The law required that the tea must be landed within twenty days after its arrival, or be seized for non-payment of duties. The consignees and the governor had determined to wait until the expiration of this time, when the royal authorities would seize the tea and remove it beyond the reach of the citizens The duties could then be paid and the tea landed and sold. Their intentions were fully understood by the patriots. When the committee made its report to the meeting of citizens, it was received in a dead silence, and the meeting adjourned without taking any action upon it. This ominous silence alarmed the consignees. Hutchinson's two sons fled to the fort and placed themselves under the protection of the troops, while the governor quietly left the city.

Tea Thrown Overboard.

On the sixteenth of December another meeting was held. The next day the time allowed by law would expire, and the tea would be placed under the protection of the fort and the armed ships in the harbor. The owner had gone to see the governor, at Milton, to obtain a pass for his vessels, without which they could not leave the harbor. This the governor refused, on the ground that he had not a proper clearance. He returned to Boston late in the evening and reported the result of his mission to the meeting. Then Samuel Adams arose and gave the signal for the action that had been determined upon by saying: "This meeting can do nothing more to save the country."

Instantly a shout rang through the room, and a band of forty or fifty men "dressed like Mohawk Indians," with their faces blackened to prevent recognition, hastened from the meeting to the wharf where the ships were moored. A guard was posted to prevent the intrusion of spies, and the ships

were at once seized. Three hundred and forty-two chests of tea were broken open and their contents poured into the water. The affair was witnessed in silence by a large crowd on the shore. When the destruction of the tea was completed, the "Indians" and the crowd dispersed to their homes. Paul Revere was despatched by the patriot leaders to carry the news to New York and Philadelphia.

THROWING THE TEA OVERBOARD IN BOSTON HARBOR.

At New York and Philadelphia the people would not allow the tea to be landed, and at Charleston it was stored in damp cellars, where the whole cargo was soon ruined. At Annapolis a ship and its cargo were burned; the owner of the vessel himself setting fire to the ship.

The British government was greatly incensed at the refusal of the colonists to allow the tea to be landed, and determined to compel the Americans to submit to the authority of Great Britain. Boston, in particular, was to be made a terrible example to the rest of the colonies. A bill was introduced into Parliament, and passed by a majority of four to one, closing the port of Boston to all commerce, and transferring the seat of government to Salem. The British ministry boasted that with ten thousand regulars they could "march through the continent," and they were resolved to bring America to her knees and make her confess her fault in dust and humiliation.

In addition to the Boston Port Bill, Parliament passed other measures of equal severity. By one of these the royal officers were ordered to quarter the troops sent out from England on all the colonies at the people's expense; another provided that if any officer, in the execution of the Quartering Act, should

commit an act of violence, he should be sent to England for trial. The deliberate purpose of this last act was to encourage the military and other officials to acts of violence and oppression by shielding them from punishment in America. The liberties of the American people were thus placed at the mercy of every petty official bearing a royal commission. Another law, known as the "Quebec Act," granted unusual concessions to the Roman Catholics of Canada, in order to attach them to the royal cause in the event of a collision between England and her colonies.

Help for the Patriots.

Boston was largely dependent upon her commerce, and the closing of her harbor entirely destroyed her trade and brought great loss and suffering to her people. The outrage to which she was thus subjected was resented by the whole country, and evidences of sympathy poured in upon her from every quarter. Salem refused to allow the establishment of the seat of government within her limits, and offered the use of her port to the merchants of Boston free of charge. Marblehead made a similar offer. Large numbers of the people of Boston were thrown out of employment by the closing of Boston harbor, and their families, left helpless, suffered considerably.

The various colonies came forward promptly to their relief. The neighboring towns sent in provisions and other necessaries of life, and money was subscribed in other parts of the country. South Carolina sent to Boston two hundred barrels of rice, and promised eight hundred more when they were wanted. North Carolina sent a contribution of two thousand pounds in money, and money and provisions were sent from Virginia and Maryland. In the former colony, the farmers beyond the Blue Ridge raised a contribution of one hundred and thirty seven barrels of flour and sent it to Boston. Even the city of London sent one hundred and fifty thousand dollars to the relief of Boston. Cheered by these evidences of sympathy, Boston resolved to hold out to the end.

One of the first and most determined of the colonies in expressing her sympathy for Massachusetts was Virginia. Upon the receipt of the news of the closing of the port of Boston, the assembly of this colony passed resolutions of sympathy with Massachusetts, and appointed the first of June, the day designated for the enforcement of the Port Bill, as a day of fasting and prayer. For this bold action the governor dissolved the assembly.

General Gage Appointed Governor.

It met the next day—May 25th—in spite of Governor Dunmore's prohibition, in the coffee-room of the Raleigh Tavern, and declared that an attack on Massachusetts was an attack on every other colony and ought to be opposed by the united wisdom of all. The assembly urged that a general congress of all the colonies should be held to take united action for the redress of grievances, and a committee was appointed to correspond with the other colonies for the purpose of bringing about this congress. The first of June was rigidly observed in Virginia as a fast day. George Mason charged his family to be careful to attend church on that day clad in mourning.

In the meantime Hutchinson had been replaced as governor of Massachusetts by General Gage, the commander-in-chief of the British army in North America. He landed in Boston on the seventeenth of May, 1774, and was well received by the people. He was a man of mild character and great good-nature, and utterly unfit for the task of

coercing a free people. The determined attitude of the patriots bewildered him. He brought with him instructions for "the seizure and condign punishment of Samuel Adams, John Hancock, Joseph Warren and other leading patriots, but he stood in such dread of them that he never so much as attempted their arrest." He was greatly perplexed to know how to manage the people of Boston. It was clear to him that they intended to resist the injustice of the mother country, but they kept so carefully within the law that he could not take hold of their acts. They held meetings and discussed their grievances, but violated no law, and discountenanced violence of all kinds. He was authorized by the British government to fire upon the colonists whenever he should see fit; but their prudent and peaceful course gave him no opportunity for so doing.

The government at length undertook to put a stop to the town meetings of the Americans by forbidding them to hold such meetings after a certain day. They evaded this law by convoking the meetings before the designated day, and "keeping them alive" by adjourning them from time to time. Faneuil Hall and the Old South Church were the favorite places of meeting, but many of these assemblies were held under the Liberty Tree.

In the meantime the recommendation of Virginia for a general congress was accepted by the other colonies, and measures were set on foot to bring it about. The need of such an assembly, which should represent the whole country, was becoming more and more apparent every day. In the various colonies delegates were chosen, and it was agreed, at the instance of the legislature of Massachusetts, that the congress should meet in Philadelphia on the fifth of September, 1774. Martin, the royalist governor of Georgia, prevented that colony

JOHN HANCOCK.

from choosing delegates to the congress, and General Gage attempted a similar interference with the general court of Massachusetts. Samuel Adams, as usual, had anticipated him, however. On the seventeenth of June, having privately ascertained the sentiments of the members, he locked the door of the room in which the meeting of the assembly was held, and so kept out the governor's secretary, who came to dissolve the session, and who knocked in vain for admission. Thus, safe from executive interference, the general court proceeded to appoint its delegates to the congress and to make provision for their support. This accomplished, the doors were opened and the members submitted to the dissolution pronounced by Governor Gage.

Organized Opposition.

The act of Parliament by which the British government undertook to prohibit the town meetings of Massachusetts was known as the "Regulation Act." It was introduced into Parliament by Lord North in April, and received the royal assent in May, 1754. It was an infamous measure. It annulled the charter of the colony, and "without previous notice to Massachusetts, and without a hearing, it arbitrarily took away rights and liberties which the people had enjoyed from the foundation of the colony, except in the evil days of James II." All the power of the colony was concentrated in the hands of the royal governor by conferring upon him the appointment of all the courts of justice and every official connected with them. The courts were all to be remodelled in the interest of the king, and Gage at once set to work to appoint the new judges.

The whole colony united in a determined resistance to them. In many of the towns the citizens would not allow the new courts to be opened, and in Boston no man could be found to serve as a juror in the courts appointed for that city. A meeting of the citizens of Boston was held at Faneuil Hall on the twenty-sixth of August, 1774, and was attended by delegates from the counties of Worcester, Middlesex and Essex. It adopted a series of resolutions denying the authority of Parliament to change any of the laws of the province, and declared that the new government set up by Gage under the Regulating Act was unconstitutional, and that the new officers, should they attempt to act, would become the enemies of the province although they bore the commission of the king.

The People Aroused.

In order to provide for the safety of the colony a provincial congress with large executive powers was advised by the convention. Gage found himself unable to enforce the new laws. "The chief justice and his colleagues, repairing in a body to the governor, represented the impossibility of exercising their office in Boston or in any other part of the province; the army was too small for their protection; and besides, none would act as jurors. Thus the authority of the new government, as established by act of Parliament, perished in the presence of the governor, the judges and the army."* Thus defeated, Gage began to increase the number of troops at Boston.

On the first of September Gage sent a detachment to Quarry Hill, near Charlestown, and seized the public magazine in which the province of Massachusetts kept its powder for its militia, and brought it to Boston. The news of this seizure roused the people of the surrounding counties to a high state of indignation. A body of several thousand of the best citizens of Middlesex, "leaving their guns in the rear," marched to Cambridge to

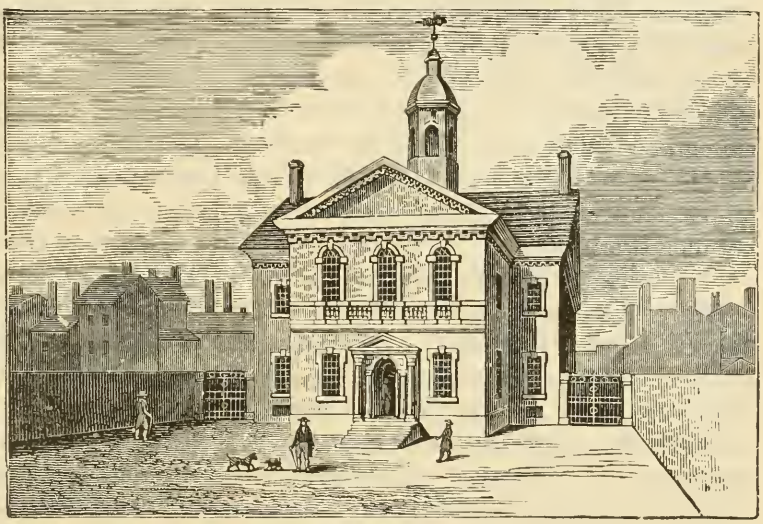
*Bancroft.

protest against the outrage. They compelled Danforth, a county judge and a member of Gage's council; Phipps, the high sheriff; and Oliver, the lieutenant-governor, to resign their places. They attempted no violence, and inasmuch as Gage had acted within the letter of the law in removing the powder, dispersed quietly, satisfied for the time with their protest. Their demonstration thoroughly alarmed Gage, who kept the troops in Boston under arms all night, posted cannon to command the approaches to the town, and doubled all the guards. At the same time he wrote to England for reinforcements.

The news of the seizure of the Massachusetts powder spread rapidly through the province and into the adjoining colonies. The seizure was made on Thursday morning, and by Saturday morning twenty thousand men were under arms and advancing upon Boston. They were stopped by expresses from the patriots at Boston, but their prompt action showed the spirit of the province. When the news reached Israel Putnam, in his home in Connecticut, the old hero at once called on the militia to go with him to the aid of Boston, where the report said the people had been fired on by the royal troops and shipping. His call was answered by thousands, but later advices from Boston put a stop to the march.

"But for counter intelligence," wrote Putnam to the patriots at Boston, "we should have had forty thousand men, well equipped and ready to march this morning. Send a written express to the foreman of this committee when you have occasion of our martial assistance; we shall attend your summons, and shall glory in having a share in the honor of ridding our country of the yoke of tyranny which our forefathers have not borne, neither will we. And we much desire you to keep a strict guard over the remainder of your powder, for that must be the great means, under God, of the salvation of our country."

The excitement was not without its good results, however. It led every man to examine the condition of his means of resistance, and to supply his deficiencies in arms and equipments. The royal authority was at an end outside of Boston, and active royalists found it best to seek safety within that city.



CARPENTER'S HALL, PHILADELPHIA.

The general congress, or, as it is better known, the Old Continental Congress, met in Carpenter's Hall, in Philadelphia, on the fifth of September, 1774. It numbered fifty-five members, consisting of delegates from every colony save Georgia, whose governor had prevented the election of delegates.

Among the members were many of the most eminent men in the land. From Virginia came George Washington, Patrick Henry and Richard Henry Lee; from Massachusetts, Samuel Adams and John Adams; from New York, Philip Livingston, John Jay and William Livingston; from Rhode Island, the venerable Stephen Hopkins; from Connecticut, Roger Sherman; from South Carolina, Edward and John Rutledge and Christopher Gadsden; and from New Jersey, the Rev. John Witherspoon, the president of Princeton College. The members of this illustrious body were not strangers to each other, though the majority of them met now for the first time. They had corresponded with each other and had discussed their wrongs so thoroughly that each was well acquainted with the sentiments of his colleagues, and all were bound together by a common sympathy.

Prayer and Patriotism.

The congress was organized by the election of Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, as speaker. Charles Thomson, of Pennsylvania, an Irishman by birth, and the principal of the Quaker High School in Philadelphia, was then chosen secretary. It was proposed to open the sessions with prayer. Some of the members thought this might be inexpedient, as all the delegates might not be able to join in the same form of worship. Up rose Samuel Adams, in whose great soul there was not a grain of sham. He was a strict Congregationalist. "I am no bigot," he said. "I can hear a prayer from a man of piety and virtue, whatever may be his cloth, provided he is at the same time a friend to his country." On his motion, the Rev. Mr. Duché, an Episcopal clergyman of Philadelphia, was invited to act as chaplain. Mr. Duché accepted the invitation.

When the congress assembled the next morning, all was anxiety and apprehension, for the rumor of the attack upon Boston, which had reached Putnam and aroused Connecticut, had gotten as far as Philadelphia. The chaplain opened the session by reading the thirty-fifth Psalm, which seemed, as John Adams said, ordained by Heaven to be read that morning, and then broke forth into an extempore prayer of great fervor and eloquence.

A Recital of Wrongs.

At the close of the prayer a deep silence prevailed in the hall. It was broken by Patrick Henry, who rose to open the day's proceedings. He began slowly and hesitatingly at first, "as if borne down by the weight of his subject," but as he proceeded he rose grandly to the duty of the occasion, and in a speech of masterly eloquence he recited the wrongs of the American colonies at the hands of Great Britain, and declared that all government in America was dissolved, and urged upon the congress the necessity of forming a new government for the colonies. Towards the close of his speech he struck a chord which answered in every heart. "British oppression," he exclaimed, "has effaced the boundaries of the several colonies; the distinctions between Virginians, Pennsylvanians, New Yorkers and New Englanders are no more. I am not a Virginian, but an American." The deputies were astonished at his eloquence, as well as at the magnitude of the interests with which they were intrusted.

The congress continued its sessions for seven weeks. It had no authority to bind the colonies to any course; its powers were merely advisory, and it did not transcend its authority. It drew up a Declaration of Rights, in which it defined the natural rights of man to be the enjoyment of life, liberty and property. It claimed for the Americans, as British subjects, the right to partici-

pate in the making of their laws, and the levying of taxes upon their own people. The right of trial by jury in the immediate vicinity of the scene of the alleged offence, and the right of holding public meetings and petitioning for the redress of grievances were solemnly asserted. A protest was entered against the maintaining of standing armies in America without the consent of the colonies, and against eleven specified acts passed since the opening of the reign of George III., as violative of the rights of the colonies. The declaration concluded with the solemn warning, "To these grievous acts and measures Americans cannot submit."

Prompt Measures.

Congress then addressed itself to a plan for obtaining redress. It was agreed to form an "American Association," whose members were to pledge themselves not to trade with Great Britain or the West Indies, or with persons engaged in the slave trade; not to use tea or any British goods; and not to trade with any colony which should refuse to join the association. For the purpose of enforcing the objects of this association, committees were to be appointed in the various parts of the country to see that its provisions were carried into effect.

Other papers were adopted by the congress, setting forth its views more clearly. A petition to the king was prepared by John Dickinson, of Pennsylvania, who also drafted an address to the people of Canada. A memorial to the people of the colonies was written by Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, and an address to the people of Great Britain by John Jay, of New York. These papers were forwarded to England to be laid before the British government, and on the twenty-sixth of October the congress adjourned to meet on the tenth of May, 1775.

In January, 1775, Lord North presented the papers adopted by congress to the House of Commons, and at the same time they were laid before the House of Lords by Lord Dartmouth. The venerable Earl of Chatham made this the occasion of a powerful appeal to the majority in Parliament to reverse their arbitrary course towards the Americans before it should be too late.

Referring to the papers laid before the House, he said: "When your lordships look at the papers transmitted us from America, when you consider their decency, firmness and wisdom, you cannot but respect their cause and wish to make it your own. For myself, I must avow, that in all my reading—and I have read Thucydides, and have studied and admired the master states of the world—for solidity of reason, force of sagacity, and wisdom of conclusion under a complication of difficult circumstances, no nation or body of men can stand in preference to the general congress at Philadelphia. The histories of Greece and Rome give us nothing equal to it, and all attempts to impose servitude upon such a mighty continental nation must be in vain. We shall be forced ultimately to retract; let us retract while we can, not when we must. These violent acts must be repealed; you will repeal them; I pledge myself for it, I stake my reputation on it, that you will in the end repeal them. Avoid, then, this humiliating necessity."

The king was furious when the words of the greatest statesman of his kingdom were repeated to him. Neither the wisdom nor the eloquence of Chatham could turn the king or the ministers from their mad course. They had but one plan for America now. She must submit humbly to their will; if she should resist, she must be crushed into submission. The king meant to try the question with the Americans.

CHAPTER XXVI

Progress of the War

Gage Fortifies Boston Neck—He Summons the General Court—Recalls his Proclamation—The Provincial Congress of Massachusetts—It takes Measures for Defence—The Militia Organized—The Minute Men—Friends of America in England—Gage Resolves to Seize the Stores at Concord—Midnight March of the British Troops—The Alarm Given—Skirmishes at Lexington and Concord—Retreat of the British—A Terrible March—Uprising of New England—Boston Invested—Dunmore Seizes the Virginia Powder—Is Made to Pay for It—Uprising of the Middle and Southern Colonies—The Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence—Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point—Meeting of the Second Continental Congress—Congress Resolves to Sustain Massachusetts—Renewed Efforts for Peace—Congress Assumes the General Government of the Colonies—A Federal Union Organized—Its Character—A Continental Army Formed—George Washington Appointed Commander-in-Chief—General Officers Appointed—Condition of the Army Before Boston—Inaction of Gage—Battle of Breed's Hill—A Glorious Defence—The Battle Equivalent to a Victory in its Effects upon the Country—Arrival of Washington at Cambridge—He Takes Command of the Army—He Reorganizes the Army—Difficulties of the Undertaking—The Invasion of Canada Resolved Upon—March of Montgomery and Arnold—Rapid Successes of Montgomery—He Captures Montreal—March of Arnold Through the Wilderness—Arrival Before Quebec—Forms a Junction with Montgomery—The Siege of Quebec—The Ice Forts—Failure of the Attack—Death of Montgomery—Retreat of the Americans from Canada—Lord Dunmore's War in Virginia—Destruction of Norfolk—The Thirteen United Colonies—Burning of Falmouth—Naval Matters—Action of Great Britain—The War to be Carried On—The Hessians.

WHILE the Continental Congress was in session, matters were in a most serious state in Massachusetts. General Gage, alarmed by the threatening aspect of the Americans, began to fortify Boston Neck, the narrow peninsula which united the city with the mainland. A regiment was stationed at these works to prevent communication between the citizens and the people in the country. The news of this action spread rapidly. At Portsmouth, New Hampshire, a company of volunteers seized the fort and carried off one hundred and fifty barrels of powder and several cannon. At Newport forty-four cannon were seized by the people and sent to Providence for safe-keeping.

In the midst of this excitement, Gage, thinking such a step might conciliate the people, summoned the general court to meet at Salem; but, alarmed at the growing spirit of liberty, countermanded the order. The members of the general court met, however, at Salem, on the fifth of October, 1774, but finding no one to organize them adjourned to Concord, where they resolved themselves into a provincial congress, of which John Hancock was elected president. This congress existed as the government of the people, and was independent of the authority of the king. They protested their loyalty to King George and their desire for peace, and endeavored to induce Gage to desist from fortifying Boston Neck. Gage refused to comply with their demand, and warned them to desist from their unlawful course. The provincial congress paid no attention to his warning, but proceeded to call out the militia to the number of twelve thousand. They were allowed to remain at their homes, but were required to be ready for service at a minute's warning. Hence they were known as "Minute Men."

Two committees of safety were appointed: one to call out the minute men when their services were needed; the other to supply

them with provisions and ammunition. Two general officers, Artemas Ward and Seth Pomeroy, were appointed. The other New England colonies were invited to increase the number of minute men to twenty thousand. The sum of twenty thousand pounds was voted for the military service, and Massachusetts prepared for the worst. In every colony military preparations were set on foot, and the whole of America began to prepare for the coming storm which all thinking men now saw was close at hand.

The papers drawn up by the Continental Congress had been widely circulated in England, and had aroused a great deal of sympathy for America, and it was hoped by many that the new Parliament, which met in January, 1775, would see the necessity of doing justice to the colonies. The cause of America was eloquently pleaded by the Earl of Chatham and others, but the King and the Ministers were resolved to compel the submission of the Americans, and the majority in Parliament sustained them. A measure known as the "New England Restraining Bill" was introduced by Lord North, which deprived the people of New England of the privilege of fishing on the banks of Newfoundland.

The Colonies Act Promptly.

In March news arrived that all the colonies had endorsed the action of the Continental Congress and had pledged themselves to support it. To punish them the provisions of the Restraining Bill were extended to every colony save New York, Delaware and North Carolina. These colonies were exempted in the hope of inducing them to desert the American cause. The measure failed of its object, and the three favored colonies remained firm in the support of the Congress.

General Gage now resolved to take a decisive step. He learned that the patriots had established a depot of provisions and military stores at Concord, eighteen miles from Boston, and resolved to seize these supplies at once. The military force under his command at Boston numbered three thousand men, and he felt himself strong enough not only to seize these stores, but also to arrest John Hancock and Samuel Adams, who were lodging at Lexington. Accordingly, on the night of the eighteenth of April, 1775, he

THE MINUTE MAN.

detached a force of eight hundred men under Lieutenant-Colonel Smith, and shortly before midnight had them conveyed across Charles River to Cambridge, from which place they began their march to Concord. Gage had conducted the whole movement with the greatest secrecy, but his preparations had been detected by the patriot leaders in Boston, and Hancock and Adams had been warned

of their danger. The British had hardly embarked in their boats when two lanterns were displayed from the tower of the Old North Church.

Paul Revere, the chosen messenger, who had been awaiting this signal, at once set off from Charlestown and rode in haste to Lexington to warn the patriots of the approach of the British troops. At the same time not gone far when they heard in advance of them the firing of alarm guns and the tolling of bells. The British officers were astonished at the rapidity with which their movement had been discovered; but they could not doubt the meaning of these signals. The country was being aroused, and their situation was becoming serious. Lieutenant-Colonel Smith sent a messenger to General

THE BATTLE OF LEXINGTON, APRIL 19, 1775.

William Dawes left Boston by the road over the Neck, and rode at full speed towards Lexington, arousing the country as he went along with his stirring tidings. Other messengers were sent forward by these men, and the alarm spread rapidly through the country.

From Cambridge the British pushed forward rapidly towards Lexington. They had Gage for reinforcements, and ordered Major Pitcairn to push forward with a part of the force and seize the two bridges at Concord. Pitcairn obeyed his orders promptly, and arrested every one whom he met or overtook save a countryman, who escaped and reached Lexington in time to give the alarm.

Pitcairn's division reached Lexington at daybreak on the nineteenth of April. They found seventy or eighty minute men, and several other persons, assembled on the common. They were ignorant of the intentions of the British, and supposed they merely wished to arrest Adams and Hancock, who had left the village upon the first alarm.

"Disperse, ye Rebels!"

As he saw the group Pitcairn ordered his men to halt and load their muskets, and called out to the Americans: "Disperse, ye villains, ye rebels, disperse; lay down your arms; why don't you lay down your arms and disperse?" The Americans stood motionless and silent, "witnesses against agression; too few to resist; too brave to fly." Pitcairn, seeing that his order was not obeyed, discharged his pistol and ordered his men to fire. A few straggling shots followed this order, and then the regulars poured a close heavy volley into the Americans killing seven and wounding nine of them. Parker, the commander of the minute men, seeing that the affair was to be a massacre instead of a battle, ordered his men to disperse. The British then gave three cheers for their victory. In a little while Colonel Smith arrived with the remainder of his command, and the whole party then pushed on towards Concord.

The alarm had already reached Concord, and in a little while news was received of the massacre at Lexington. The minute men promptly assembled on the common, near the church, and awaited the approach of the enemy. The minute men from Lincoln came in at an early hour, and a few from Acton. About seven o'clock the British were seen advancing in two divisions, and as it was evident that they were about four times as numerous as the Americans, the latter retreated to the summit of a hill on the opposite side of the Concord River, and there awaited the arrival of reinforcements, which were coming in from the surrounding country.

The British occupied the town, and posting a force of one hundred men to hold the North Bridge, began their search for arms and stores. The greater part of these had been secreted, but the soldiers found a few that could not be removed, and gave the rest of their time to plundering the houses of the town. "This slight waste of stores," says Bancroft, "was all the advantage for which Gage precipitated a civil war."

Arrival of the Minute Men.

Between nine and ten o'clock the American force had increased by the arrival of the minute men from Acton, Bedford, Westford, Carlisle, Littleton and Chelmsford, to about four hundred and fifty. Below them, in full view, were the regulars plundering their homes, and from the town rose the smoke of the fires the soldiers had kindled for the destruction of the few stores they had managed to secure. Not knowing whether they meant to burn the town or not, the officers of the minute men resolved to advance and enter Concord. Barret, the commanding officer, cautioned the men not to fire unless attacked. As their approach was discovered the British began to take up the planks of the North Bridge, and to prevent this the Americans quickened their pace. The regulars then fired a volley, which killed two of the minute men. The fire was returned, and two of the soldiers were killed and several wounded. These volleys were followed by some desultory skirmishing, and about noon Colonel Smith drew off his men and began to retreat by the way he had come.

One of those killed at the bridge was Isaac Davis, the captain of the minute men of Acton. He had bidden his young wife a

touching good-bye, as he ran to lead his men to the fight. A little later his dead body was brought to her door.

With the retreat of the British from Concord the real work of the day began. The country was thoroughly aroused, and men came pouring in from every direction, eager to get a shot at the regulars. The road by which the royal forces were retreating was narrow and crooked, and led through forests and thickets, and was bordered by the stone walls which enclosed the farms. At every step the militia and minute men hung upon the enemy, and kept up an irregular but fatal fire upon them from behind trees, fences and houses. Flanking parties were thrown out to clear the way, but without success. The number of the Americans increased at every step. Each town took up the strife as the regulars entered its limits. Far and wide the alarm was spreading through the country, and the people were getting under arms. By noon a messenger rode furiously into the distant town of Worcester and shouted the alarm. Instantly the minute men of the town got under arms, and after joining their minister in prayer, on the common, took up the march for Cambridge. The whole province was rising, and the enemies of the fugitive regulars were increasing every moment.

DEATH OF ISAAC DAVIS.

Smith hurried his command through Lexington at a rapid rate, and a short distance beyond the town met Lord Percy advancing to his assistance with twelve hundred infantry and two pieces of artillery. Percy formed his men into a square, enclosing the fugitives, who dropped helplessly on the

ground, "their tongues hanging out of their mouths like those of dogs after a chase," and with his cannon kept the Americans at bay. He could not think of holding his position, however, and after a halt of half an hour resumed the retreat, first setting fire to some houses in Lexington.

The fighting now became more energetic than ever. From either side, from in front and the rear, the Americans kept up a constant fire upon the British, who revenged themselves by murdering some helpless people along the road and burning houses. Below West Cambridge the British broke into a run, and at length, about sunset, succeeded in escaping across Charlestown Neck, where they were safe under the fire of their shipping. Had the militia from Marblehead and Salem, who were on the march, been more alert, the entire British force would have been captured, as they were in no condition to resist a determined attack in front.

The loss of the Americans during the day was forty-nine killed, thirty-four wounded and five missing. The British lost in killed, wounded and missing two hundred and seventy-three men, or more than fell in Wolfe's army in the battle of the Heights of Abraham. Many of the officers, including Colonel Smith, were wounded.

The News Spreads Like Wildfire.

The news of the conflicts at Lexington and Concord spread rapidly through New England, and was sent by express messengers to New York and the colonies farther south. In New England it produced a general uprising of the people, and in ten days Boston was blockaded by an irregular army of twenty thousand provincial troops, whose encampments extended from Roxbury to the Mystic River, above Charlestown, a distance of ten miles. John Stark, who had served with gallantry in the old French war, was on his way to Boston in ten minutes after he was informed of the fighting.

Israel Putnam, a veteran soldier, and as true a hero as ever lived, was ploughing in his field when the courier rode by with the tidings of the battle. He left his plough, sprang on his horse, and after rousing his neighbors rode from his home, in Connecticut, to Cambridge, without even stopping to change his clothes. The Massachusetts Congress took energetic measures for the support of the army before Boston, and in a few days this force began to assume a more regular character.

Arms and Ammunition Seized.

Matters had also reached a crisis in Virginia. On the night of the twentieth of April Lord Dunmore seized the powder in the magazine at Williamsburg, and sent it, under guard of a party of marines, on board an armed schooner in the James river. The inhabitants, on the morning of the twenty-first, took arms to compel the restoration of the powder, but were persuaded to refrain from violence. In a few days the news from Lexington and Concord was received, and it was the general belief that Dunmore's course was only a part of a general plan to disarm the colonies.

On the second of May Patrick Henry summoned the independent companies of Hanover to meet him at a certain place, and led them towards Williamsburg, determined to compel the governor to restore the powder or pay its full value in money. On the march they were met by a messenger from Dunmore, who paid them the full value of the powder in money. This money was soon after forwarded to Congress. The companies then disbanded and returned home. Dunmore, thoroughly frightened, fled with his family on board a man of-war, and declared "Patrick Henry and his associates to be in rebel-

lion." Afraid to meet the Virginians in an open fight, he threatened to arm their slaves against them, and inaugurated a general massacre.

The middle and southern colonies were prompt to follow the example of New England. The people of New York seized the provisions intended for the king's troops at Boston, shut up the custom-house, and forbade any vessels to leave the harbor for ports or colonies acknowledging the authority of Great Britain. The arms and ammunition belonging to the city were seized by the volunteers, and measures were set on foot for a general resistance to the authority of the king. New Jersey was equally determined, and in Pennsylvania enthusiastic meetings of citizens resolved "to associate for the purpose of defending, with arms, their lives, their property, and liberty."

CAPTURE OF TICONDEROGA BY ETHAN ALLEN.

Military companies were formed and trained in the exercise of arms. The people of Maryland compelled their royalist governor to surrender to them all the arms and ammunition of the province. The militia officers of South Carolina at once resigned their commissions from the governor, and regiments of militia for the defence of the colony were raised and drilled. At Charleston the royal arsenal was seized, and its contents distributed among the people. Georgia also placed herself in the ranks of her patriot sisters, and seizing the ammunition and arms within her limits prepared for resistance.

North Carolina took a more decisive stand than any of the colonies. The spirit of resistance ran high within her borders. A convention of the people of Mecklenburg county was held at Charlotte on the twenty-ninth of May, and adopted a series of resolutions declaring themselves independent of the control of Great Britain, and renouncing all allegiance to her. This was the famous "Mecklenburg Declaration of Independence." The whole country, from New Hampshire to Georgia, was united in its determination to resist the injustice of Great Britain with arms. Massachusetts had struck the first blow, but every colony was now prepared and determined to bear its part in the great struggle for freedom.

The Massachusetts Committee of Safety were anxious to secure the important posts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point on Lake Champlain. The possession of these posts would not only enable the Americans to command the entrance to Canada, but would give them the large quantities of military supplies stored in these forts. The project

WASHINGTON REVIEWING THE ARMY

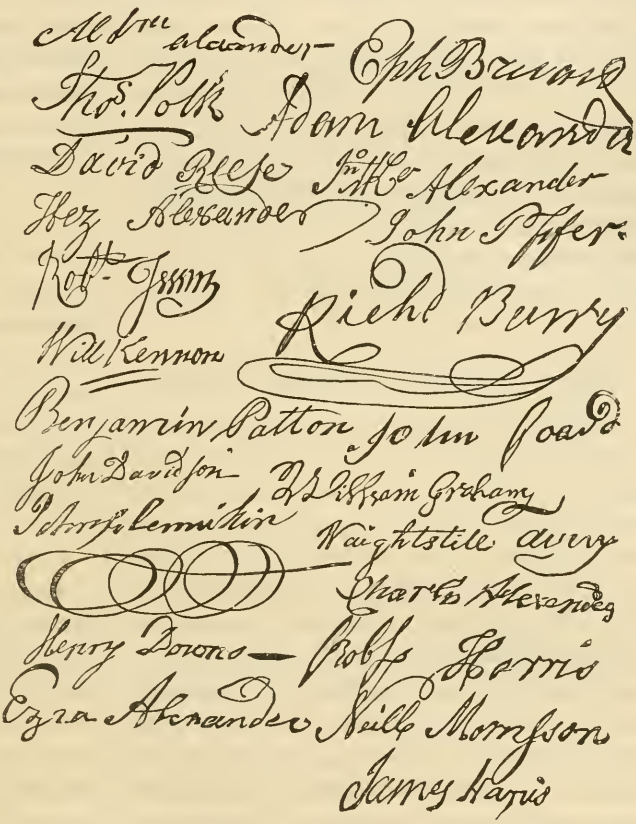
BOSTON MASSACRE 1770

was entered into with great energy by Benedict Arnold, then commanding a company before Boston, and by Ethan Allen, of Vermont. Allen was the leader of the Green Mountain Boys, a military organization in Vermont, which had been formed to resist the authority of New York, which claimed Vermont as a part of its territory.

The people of Vermont, however, preferred the authority of New Hampshire to that of New York. The dispute had become quite animated when the outbreak of the Revolution drew the attention of all parties to more stirring events. Arnold, upon hearing that Allen was preparing to seize the forts, set out at once for Vermont, and overtook the Green Mountain Boys near the head of Lake Champlain. Producing a colonel's commission he ordered Allen to surrender the command to him, but the latter refused, and was sustained by his men, and Arnold at length agreed to serve as a volunteer.

Securing a few boats Allen crossed the lake with his little force, about two hundred and seventy in number, and at daybreak, on the morning of May 10, surprised Fort Ticonderoga, and made prisoners of the garrison before they were fairly awake. Not a blow was struck. The astounded commander of the fort asked Allen by whose authority he acted. "In the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," was the instant reply, delivered in stentorian tones. The commandant instantly submitted. On the twelfth of May Seth Warner, Allen's lieutenant, surprised Crown Point, and secured the fort. Arnold secured a number of boats and, descending the lake, captured St. John's, in the "Sorel." Sixty prisoners were taken in this expedition, and besides two of the most important military posts in America the patriots secured two hundred cannon, and a large supply of ammunition.

On the tenth of May, the day of the capture of Ticonderoga, the second Continental



SIGNERS OF THE MECKLENBURG DECLARATION.

Congress met at Philadelphia. This time they assembled in the State House, a place more suited to the dignity of such a body, and calculated to give more publicity to their proceedings. No change was at first made in the officers of the preceding session, but in a few days Peyton Randolph resigned his position to return home to attend the Virginia legislature, which had been summoned

by the governor. Thomas Jefferson was appointed to fill his position as a delegate.

John Hancock of Massachusetts, who had been specially exempted by the king from all offers of amnesty, was chosen president of the Congress. Three new members of note now entered the Congress. They were Benjamin Franklin, a delegate from Pennsylvania, and George Clinton and Robert R. Livingston, delegates from New York. Franklin had just returned from England, where he had resided for several years as the agent for some of the colonies. He had been in constant official contact with the leading men of Great Britain and was thoroughly informed as to the policy of the British government respecting America. He was, therefore, a most valuable acquisition to the Congress.

Justice Demanded of Great Britain.

The circumstances under which this Congress assembled were very different from those which had attended the meeting of its predecessor. Then there was hope that the remonstrances of the colonies would open the eyes of the British government to the folly of its course; but those remonstances had been received with fresh outrages, their petitions had "been spurned with contempt from the foot of the throne," and the British army had begun the war at Lexington and Concord. Massachusetts, driven beyond the point of forbearance, had taken up arms, and had besieged the royal troops in Boston. A state of war actually existed and Congress must either sustain Massachusetts, and so involve every colony in the struggle, or leave her to meet the power of Great Britain unaided.

The whole country was in favor of standing by Massachusetts, and the delegates in Congress reflected its feeling. It was, therefore, resolved by Congress to place all the colonies in a state of defence, and to prepare for a vigorous prosecution of the war should it be found impossible to avert it. At the same time, as a last means of preserving peace, a new petition was addressed to the king stating the grievances of the colonies, and asking for justice at his majesty's hands. Addresses were also issued to the people of Great Britain, Ireland and Jamaica. To the people of Great Britain they declared, after relating their wrongs, and their failure to obtain redress: "We are reduced to the alternative of choosing an unconditional submission to the tryanny of irritated ministers, or resistance by force. The latter is our choice. We have counted the cost of this contest, and we find nothing so dreadful as voluntary slavery." In the petition to the king Congress denied that it was the intention of the colonies to cast off their allegiance; but asserted their intention to maintain their rights. When this petition was presented to the king in September, he refused to take any notice of it.

The Federal Union.

In view of the altered position of affairs Massachusetts consulted the Congress as to the propriety of establishing a regular system of government, and was advised to make such regulations for that purpose as were necessary, and to continue them as a temporary expedient until it should be known whether the king would allow the colony to resume the government guaranteed to it by its charter. In order to avoid the trouble which would ensue from an interruption of the regular postal communication between the colonies, Congress assumed the power of organizing a general system of mails for the whole country, and appointed Dr. Franklin postmaster-general.

From these acts Congress advanced to others still more important. A "Federal

Union" of the colonies was organized, in which each colony retained the exclusive control of its internal affairs, but delegated to Congress authority to direct all matters pertaining to the general welfare of the colonies, such as the power to declare war, make peace, and negotiate treaties of alliance and friendship with foreign countries. In the exercise of these powers Congress assumed the general government of America. A day of fasting and prayer to God, for his assistance in the struggle for freedom, was enjoined upon all the colonies. All persons were forbidden to furnish provisions under any circumstances.

Who shall Command the Army?

Measures were adopted for the organization and enlistment of an army, and for the purpose of erecting fortifications at suitable points, and procuring arms and ammunition. In order to raise the funds needed for carrying out these objects "Bills of Credit," to the amount of two millions of dollars, were issued, and for their redemption Congress pledged the faith of the "United Colonies." The provincial congress of Massachusetts requested the Congress at Philadelphia to adopt the New England forces before Boston as the "Continental Army," and this request was at once complied with. As General Ward, the commander of these troops, held his commission from Massachusetts, it was necessary for Congress to appoint a commander-in-chief commissioned by itself.

With respect to this appointment the members were divided. Some thought that as the troops were all New England men, the commander should be chosen from the same section. Others favored the appointment of a commander who would inspire the confidence of, and be acceptable to, the entire country. The name of General Ward was suggested by the first party; but a majority of the delegates favored the appointment of Colonel Washington, who was a member of Congress, and chairman of the committee on military affairs, in which capacity he had proposed the plan for the organization of the army, and had suggested the most important measures for defence. He had profoundly impressed the delegates with his great and commanding character, his military ability, and his wisdom as a statesman.

Washington Appointed.

Patrick Henry, on his return home from the first Congress, had been asked who was the greatest man in that body. His reply expressed the views of his colleagues respecting Washington. "If you speak of eloquence," he said, "Mr. Rutledge, of South Carolina, is, by far, the greatest orator; but if you speak of solid information and sound judgment Colonel Washington is unquestionably the greatest man on that floor." Dr. Warren wrote from Massachusetts to Samuel Adams, in Congress, about this time, that the appointment of Colonel Washington as commander-in-chief would give great satisfaction to many leading men in Massachusetts. John Adams was anxious for the appointment, and having satisfied himself of the wishes of the greater part of the delegates, ventured openly to allude to Washington as the proper person for the position, and spoke of him as a gentleman whose "skill and experience as an officer, whose independent fortune, great talents, and excellent universal character, would command the approbation of all America, and unite the cordial exertions of the colonies better than any other person in the Union."

On the 14th of June M. Johnson, of Maryland, formally nominated Washington to the office of commander-in-chief, and he was unanimously chosen by ballot. The next day his election was communicated to

him by the President of Congress. Washington rose in his place, thanked the House for the unexpected honor conferred upon him, assured them of his devotion to the cause, and announced his acceptance of the great trust confided to him. He declared his intention to refuse the pay affixed to the office, which had been placed at five hundred dollars a month, and added: "I will keep an exact account of my expenses. These, I doubt not, they will discharge, and that is all I desire." Congress, on its part, pledged its hearty support to the new commander, and resolved "to maintain and assist, and adhere to him with their lives and fortunes in the defence of American liberty."

GENERAL ISRAEL PUTNAM.

Washington lost no time in proceeding to assume the command conferred upon him. After a few days spent in preparation in Philadelphia he left that city on the twenty-first of June for the headquarters of the army, accompanied by Generals Lee and Schuyler.

A few days after the election of the commander-in-chief Congress appointed four major-generals, one adjutant-general, with the rank of brigadier, and eight brigadier-generals for the subordinate commands in the American army.

Major-Generals.

The major-generals were Artemas Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler and Israel Putnam. The adjutant-general was Horatio Gates. The brigadiers were Seth Pomeroy, Richard Montgomery, David Wooster, William Heath, Joseph Spencer, John Thomas, John Sullivan and Nathaniel Greene.

In the meantime the blockade of Boston had been continued by the provincial army under General Ward. These forces numbered about fifteen thousand men, and had come from their respective towns in independent companies, and were without any regular organization. They had no uniform, but the majority wore their ordinary home-spun working clothes; they were deficient in arms; a few had muskets, but the majority had rifles and fowling-pieces. The artillery consisted of nine pieces of cannon, and was commanded by Colonel Gridley, who had directed the artillery at the siege of Louisburg. The Massachusetts troops were commanded by General Ward; those from New Hampshire by Colonel Stark; the Connecticut troops by Putnam; and the regiment from Rhode Island by Nathaniel Greene, a young blacksmith.

Save for the solemnity of the cause, and the earnestness and determination which animated the whole force, there was little to save this quaint assemblage from the ridicule which the royal officers heaped upon it. It

did to ordinary view seem the height of folly to oppose such an ill-provided and unorganized mass to the splendidly equipped veterans who served King George.

Yet this force "with calico frocks and fowling-pieces" hemmed in within the narrow limits of Boston the splendid army of ten thousand men, commanded by such generals as Howe, Burgoyne and Sir Henry Clinton, which Gage had concentrated in Boston. Burgoyne could not repress his astonishment upon reaching Boston. "What!" he exclaimed, "ten thousand peasants keep five thousand king's troops shut up! Well, let us get in and we'll soon find elbow room." In spite of his immense superiority, however, Gage did not venture to attack the American lines. He contented himself with issuing a proclamation declaring the province under martial law, and offering a free pardon to all rebels who should return to their allegiance, with the exception of Samuel Adams and John Hancock. These rebels were cut off from all hope of the king's mercy, and were given to understand that they could expect nothing but the most summary punishment.

General Gage now determined to extend his lines and to occupy Dorchester Heights, overlooking South Boston, and Bunker Hill, an eminence rising beyond Charlestown, on the north of Boston. The execution of this design was fixed for the eighteenth of June,

GENERAL BURGOYNE.

and in the meantime Gage's intention became known in the American camp. To prevent it, it was resolved, at the instance of the Massachusetts Committee of Safety, to seize and fortify these eminences, beginning with Bunker Hill. The more prudent opposed

this undertaking as too rash; it was certain to bring on a general engagement of the opposing forces, and the Americans were too poorly provided with arms and ammunition to hope for success. Others insisted that no time should be lost in securing the Heights.

A Daring Enterprise.

Putnam was confident they could be held with proper intrenchments, and that thus protected the troops could be relied upon to hold their position. The great scarcity of ammunition rendered the undertaking one of peculiar daring and it was necessary to select for the command an officer whose firmness and discretion could be depended upon. The choice fell upon Colonel William Prescott, of Massachusetts, and a brigade was placed under his orders.

Soon after the sunset on the sixteenth of June a force of about eleven hundred men, armed principally with fowling-pieces, and carrying their scanty stock of powder and ball in their old-fashioned powder horns and pouches, assembled on Cambridge Common. Langdon, the President of Harvard College, one of the chaplains of the army, offered up an impressive prayer, and then the order was given to march, and the column moved off in the darkness. No one knew the object of the expedition, but the presence of several wagons loaded with intrenching tools, made it evident that the movement was one of importance. Charlestown Neck was strongly guarded, but the detachment passed it in safety and reached the summit of Bunker Hill without being observed.

The Committee of Safety had suggested that Bunker Hill should be secured, but Prescott's orders from General Ward were to fortify Breed's Hill, a lower eminence but nearer to Boston, and commanding the harbor more perfectly. It was a more exposed position than the other, but Prescott decided to obey his orders. Colonel Gridley, who was an experienced engineer, marked out a redoubt about eight rods square, and in the clear June starlight the men set to work with a will to construct the fortification before the morning should reveal them to the British. It was midnight when the men began their labors. A strong guard was thrown out along the shore of the harbor to prevent a surprise, and the men could distinctly hear the call of the sentinels on the men-of-war in the harbor. During the night Putnam came over to the hill to encourage the Connecticut troops.

Heavy Guns Open Fire.

The early morning light revealed to the astonished royalists the half-finished redoubt on Breed's Hill and the Americans still busily at work upon it. The sloop-of-war "Lively," lying off the present navy yard, without waiting for orders, opened a steady fire upon the redoubt, and her example was soon followed by the other war vessels and the floating batteries in the harbor. A battery of heavy guns was posted on Copp's Hill in Boston, and opened on the redoubt.

This fire was well calculated to demoralize a raw force such as that within the redoubt, but it produced no effect upon the Americans, who went on with their task quietly and with energy. Gridley soon withdrew from the hill, and Prescott, thus deserted, and without an engineer, prepared to extend his line to the best of his ability. He prolonged it from the east side of the redoubt northward for about twenty rods towards the bottom of the hill; but the men were prevented from completing it by the heavy fire of the British artillery. One man ventured beyond the redoubt early in the day, and was killed by a shell. Prescott ordered him to be instantly buried, lest the sight of his

body might dishearten the men. To inspire the troops with confidence, Prescott sprang upon the parapet and walked slowly up and down the work examining it and issuing his orders.

Boston Aroused by the Cannonading.

In the meantime the firing had aroused the people of Boston, who crowded the house-tops, and every available point from which a view of the action could be obtained. General Gage reconnoitred the American position from Boston, through his glass, and observed Prescott, who was standing on the redoubt inspecting the work. "Who is that officer in command?" he asked of Councillor Willard, who was by his side. "Will he fight?" Willard had recognized Prescott, who was his brother-in-law, and replied: "He is an old soldier, and will fight to the last drop of his blood." Gage thereupon determined to dislodge the Americans from their position without loss of time, and summoned a council of his officers at his headquarters, in which it was decided to cross Charles River, effect a landing at Moulton's Point, and attack the works in front. Generals Clinton and Grant advocated an attack from the direction of Charlestown Neck, which would have resulted in the capture of the whole American force; but Gage refused to place his attacking column between the American army at Cambridge and the detachment on the hill.

The bustle in Boston as the British prepared for the attack could be distinctly seen by the Americans, and urgent messages were sent to General Ward for reinforcements and provisions. Putnam hurried to Ward's headquarters to urge this demand; but Ward, who was greatly oppressed by the scarcity of powder in the camp, hesitated to weaken the main body, and it was not until eleven o'clock on the morning of the seventeenth of June that he gave orders for the regiments of Stark and Reed to advance to Prescott's assistance. The arrival of these troops greatly cheered the little band under Prescott, who had been working all night, and were greatly in need of food.

In the meantime Prescott had posted the Connecticut troops behind a rustic breastwork which he had constructed on the north of the redoubt. A stone fence ran down the side of the hill towards a swamp in this direction. Behind this the Americans placed a post and rail fence which they had torn up, and filled the interval between them with new-mown hay, thus forming a rude shelter. A part of the reinforcements joined Knowlton at this breastwork, and the remainder halted on Bunker Hill to enable Putnam to hold that point, the possession of which he considered essential to the safety of the force on Breed's Hill. About two o'clock General Warren arrived. He held the commission of a major-general, and both Prescott and Putnam offered to relinquish the command to him, but he refused it, saying he had come to serve as a volunteer, and took his place in the ranks at the redoubt.

Reinforcements for the British.

At noon twenty-eight barges filled with regulars, under the command of Generals Howe and Pigott, left Boston, and crossing the harbor, landed at Moulton's Point, under the cover of a heavy fire from the shipping. General Howe now discovered that the American position was stronger than he had supposed, and sent over to General Gage for reinforcements. While awaiting their arrival he refreshed his men with provisions and grog. His reinforcements having arrived, General Howe found himself at the head of over two thousand veteran troops splendidly equipped in every respect. Opposed to him

were about fifteen hundred imperfectly armed Americans. Gage had threatened that if Charlestown Heights were occupied by the provincials he would burn the town of Charlestown. He now proceeded to execute his barbarous threat, and fired the town by means of shells from the battery on Copp's Hill hoping that the flames and smoke would screen the approach of his attacking party under General Howe. A change of wind prevented this, however, and carried the smoke in the opposite direction.

About half-past two o'clock on the afternoon of the seventeenth of June General Howe gave the order to advance. One division, under General Pigott, was ordered to storm the redoubt, while the other was led by General Howe in person against the rail fence, for the purpose of turning the American left flank and cutting off the retreat of the force in the redoubt. Prescott passed along his line as he saw the advance of the enemy, and encouraged his men with his cheering words. "The red coats," he said, "will never reach the redoubt if you will but withhold your fire till I give the order, and be careful not to shoot over their heads." Putnam had come down to the rail fence to encourage the men posted there, and as he saw the advance of the enemy, called out to the troops: "Wait till you see the white of their eyes; aim

BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.

at their waistband; pick off the handsome coats."

The British advanced in splendid style up the side of the hill, firing rapidly as they moved on. The Americans awaited their advance in a deep silence. As Pigott's division came within forty yards of the redoubt, the defenders levelled their guns and took a steady aim. A minute or two later Prescott gave the command, "Fire!" A sheet of flame broke from the rampart and tore great gaps in the English line, which reeled and staggered back down the hill. The officers exerted themselves gallantly to rally the men, and once more the line advanced. This time the Americans suffered them to come nearer, and again drove them back with a fatal fire before which whole ranks went down. They broke in such confusion that Pigott himself ordered a retreat. The division under General Howe was equally unfortunate. It was suffered to advance within thirty yards of the rail fence, and was then driven back by a fire which broke it in confusion. The British retired to the shore from which they had started.

The Whole Line Driven Back.

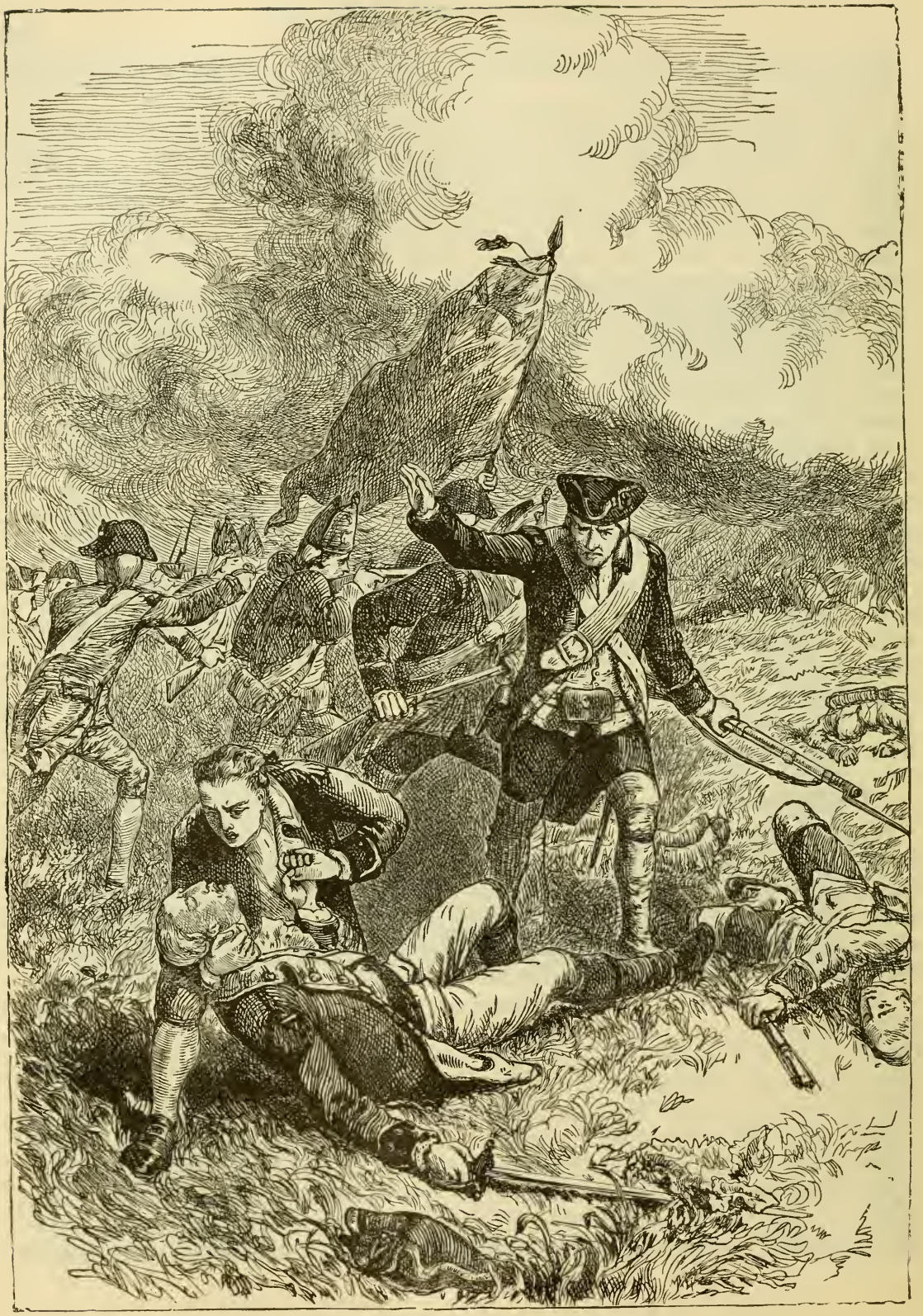
Greatly astonished, but not disheartened by his repulse, General Howe reformed his line, and after an interval of fifteen minutes moved off again against the works, his plan being the same as that of the first assault. This time the Americans reserved their fire as before, and once more sent the whole British line reeling and broken down the hill. Officers on the English side who had been in many engagements subsequently declared that they had never seen such firing in any battle in which they had been engaged. A deafening cheer from the patriot line greeted the repulse of the enemy. "If we can drive them back once more," cried Prescott, "they cannot rally again." A shout from the redoubt answered him. "We are ready for the red coats again!"

General Clinton had witnessed the repulse of the regulars from his position on Copp's Hill, and was filled with astonishment and indignation at the sight. Without waiting for orders he crossed over to Charlestown with reinforcements, and offered his services to General Howe as a volunteer. Many of the English officers were opposed to another attack; but as it was learned that the ammunition of the Americans was very low, Howe resolved to storm the works with the bayonet, and this time to break through the open space between the redoubt and the rail fence breastwork. His men were ordered to lay aside their knapsacks, and many of them threw off their coats also. A raking fire of artillery drove the Americans from the breastwork extending from the redoubt into that work for shelter, and the order was given to the regulars to advance with fixed bayonets.

Hand-to-hand Struggle.

The Americans were nearly out of ammunition, and in the whole command there were not fifty men with bayonets to their guns. They met the advance of the enemy with a sharp fire, but their powder having given out, were not able to check them. Pressing on the British assailed the redoubt on three sides with the bayonet. A desperate hand-to-hand struggle followed; the Americans fighting with clubbed guns and with stones. It was impossible to hold the work, however, and Prescott gave the order to retreat. The men fell back in good order. The aged General Pomeroy, who was serving as a volunteer in the ranks, clubbed his gun and retreated with his face to the regulars, keeping them at bay by his determined action.

The detachment at the rail fence, under Knowlton, Stark and Reed, held their position until their comrades had withdrawn



from the redoubt, and then retreated in good order down the hill, thus preventing the enemy from cutting off the retreat of Prescott's party. One of the last to leave the redoubt was General Warren, who had borne himself with great gallantry in the engagement. He had scarcely left the trenches when he fell shot through the head, thus consecrating the spot with his blood, and leaving to his country a noble memory which she has ever held in grateful honor.

Putman had gone to the rear before the final attack of the enemy to collect men for a reinforcement. On his return he met the retreating provincials passing over Bunker Hill. Without orders from any one, he rallied such as would obey him, and for the first time during the day assumed the command. With these forces, and a detachment which arrived too late to take part in the battle, he withdrew to Prospect Hill, where he began to fortify his position. The British made no effort to pursue him, but contented themselves with occupying Breed's and Bunker Hills.

Heavy Losses on Both Sides.

In this battle the Americans lost four hundred and fifty men, killed, wounded and prisoners. The British, out of a force of less than three thousand, lost one thousand and fifty-four, including eighty-three officers, thirteen of whom were killed. Among the killed was Major Pitcairn, who had ordered his men to fire on the patriots at Lexington. The victory was dearly bought by the British.

In its moral effects the battle was worth as much to the Americans as a success. It taught them that undisciplined provincials could hold their ground against the king's regulars, and inspired them with a confidence in their own ability to maintain the struggle. They had held their ground against twice their number, and were driven from it only when their ammunition failed. General Gage was deeply impressed with this lesson, and made no attempt to assume the offensive. When the news of the battle reached England the ministers were greatly dissatisfied with their victory. Gage was recalled, and General Howe was appointed his successor.

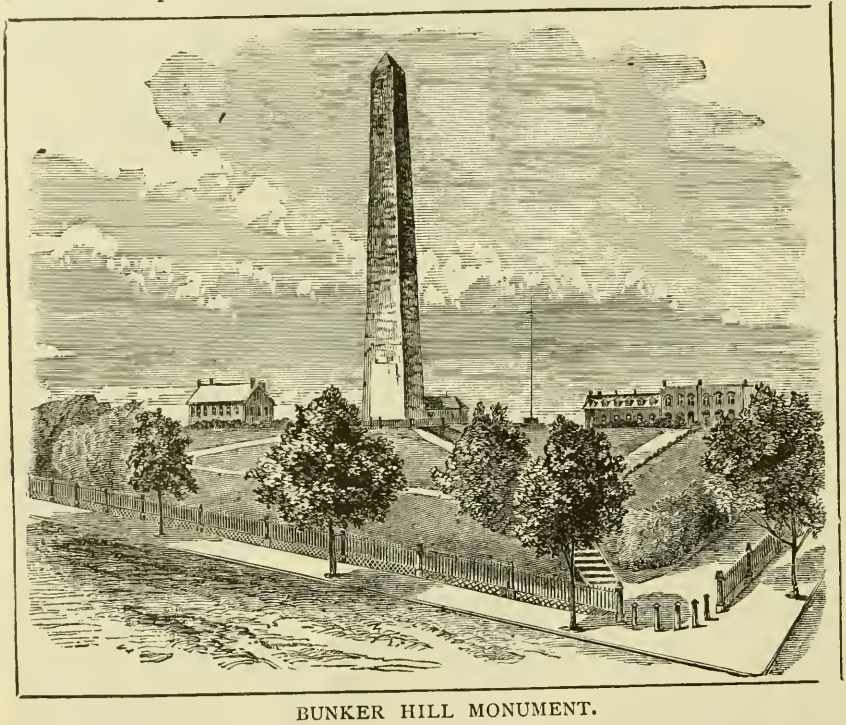
Preparations for the Conflict.

Washington, who had started on his journey to New England before the arrival of the news of the battle, was met on the way by the courier who bore the tidings to Congress. He hastened his journey, and reached Cambridge on the second of July. The next day he formally assumed the command of the army. He was received with enthusiasm which was most gratifying to him, and at once set to work to place the army in a proper condition for the service required of it. He was fully aware of the magnitude of the task he had undertaken, and his letters written at the time indicate a deep reliance upon God for assistance in discharging it.

The army numbered about fourteen thousand men, and was without organization, without uniforms, poorly armed, and imperfectly clothed. It must be disciplined, supplied with arms and clothing, and with ammunition. At the same time the enemy in Boston must be watched and kept in check. To make the army effective its force must be raised to twenty or twenty-five thousand men, and the petty jealousies which divided it must be removed.

It was resolved to maintain the present position of the army before Boston, and to capture or drive out the British force in that city. Washington established his headquarters at Cambridge, which was his centre, and was under the immediate command of General Putnam. The right wing, under General Ward held Roxbury, and the left

under General Charles Lee, was at Prospect Hill. About this time the army was joined by a force of riflemen from Virginia, Maryland, and Pennsylvania, under Daniel Morgan, who was destined to achieve distinction during the war. He was rough and uneducated, but was one of the truest sons of America. He was never found wanting in any position in which he was placed, and was a man upon whose devotion and integrity absolute reliance could be placed by his commanders.



BUNKER HILL MONUMENT.

The winter was passed in the organization of the army. The want of ammunition prevented Washington from assuming the offensive, though he greatly desired to do so. It was necessary to observe the greatest care to prevent this state of affairs from becoming known to the British, and at the same time every effort was made to supply the deficiency. These efforts were partially successful.

It was proposed to attack Canada soon after the capture of the forts at Ticonderoga and Crown Point. This proposal met with little favor in Congress until it was known that the British were assembling a force of regulars and enlisting the Indians in Canada for the invasion of New York. Then, as a measure of self-defence, the proposed invasion of that country was sanctioned, and preparations for it were actively begun. Two expeditions were determined upon; one by way of Lake Champlain, the other across the wilderness, by way of the Kennebec and Chaudiere Rivers. The first was intrusted to General Philip Schuyler, who had been appointed by Washington to the command in New York, and the latter to Colonel Arnold, who was in the camp at Cambridge, eager for some opportunity to distinguish himself.

A force of New York and New England troops was assembled on Lake Champlain under Schuyler, who was ably seconded by Brigadier General Richard Montgomery, who had served under Wolfe in the old French war. Schuyler moved down the lake to the Isle aux Noix, in the Sorel River, and occupied that island. In September he made an attempt to capture St. John's, but finding it much stronger than he had supposed, resumed his former position. Falling seriously ill soon after, he was obliged to withdraw to

Albany, and relinquished the command to Montgomery. Reaching Albany, he succeeded in securing supplies, ammunition and reinforcements, and sent them to Montgomery.

An Important Success.

That energetic officer at once assumed the offensive, and captured St. John's, on the Sorel River, on the third of November, after a spirited resistance, and in spite of the efforts of Sir Guy Carleton to relieve it. On the thirteenth of November Montgomery arrived before Montreal, which surrendered upon his first summons. This capture enabled the American commander to supply his men with woolen clothes, of which they were very much in need. Although it was the beginning of the winter, and his force was reduced to three hundred men, poorly clad and lacking almost every kind of supplies, Montgomery set out without delay to join Arnold before Quebec.

Arnold had left the camp at Cambridge in September with a force of eleven hundred men, including three companies of riflemen under Morgan. He was to ascend the Kennebec and march across the wilderness to Quebec, where he was to unite his force with the army from New York. The march across the unbroken wilderness of Maine and Canada is one of the most memorable in history. It consumed two months of time, and was marked by intense suffering and unceasing and severe labor. The troops had to cut their way through an unbroken wilderness, ford icy streams, climb mountains and brave the rigors of the Canadian winter. Their provisions gave out, and they were reduced to the necessity of eating their dogs and chewing their moccasins.

At length, on the ninth of November, Arnold, with about six hundred and fifty effective men, reached the St. Lawrence, at Point Levi. Could he have crossed over to Quebec at once, that city must have fallen into his hands; but he was unable to do so, as he had no boats; and in a few days Sir Guy Carleton arrived from Montreal, which he had abandoned to Montgomery, and put the city in a state of defence.

Eluding the two armed vessels which held the river, Arnold crossed his command to the opposite side of the St. Lawrence, and climbing the cliffs by the path which Wolfe had ascended, occupied the Heights of Abraham, and endeavored to draw the garrison out of their works to meet him. They declined his challenge, and finding it impossible to besiege the city without artillery, he moved to a point twenty miles up the river, where he met Montgomery, from whom he obtained clothing for his men, who had lost nearly all their clothes in their march through the wilderness.

A Difficult March.

Montgomery now assumed the command of the united forces, which numbered less than a thousand men, and on the fifth of December laid siege to Quebec. Having no materials for the proper construction of a battery, a novel expedient was adopted. Gabions were filled with ice and snow, over which water was poured. The cold soon froze this to a solid mass; but, as the ice was brittle, it afforded no protection against the fire of the enemy's guns. The Americans soon found their artillery too light to make any impression upon the walls of the city, and, as a last resort, it was determined to attempt the capture of the place by an assault, which was ordered for the thirty-first of December. The attack was made with spirit, but was unsuccessful.

Montgomery was shot down while leading the attack on the lower town, and his column was driven back. Arnold was severely

wounded in the assault upon the upper town, and the command passed to Morgan, the next in rank. Morgan succeeded in carrying the two batteries which defended the entrance to Quebec, and in forcing his way into the town; but, being overpowered by numbers, was compelled to surrender. He and his men were treated with especial kindness by Sir Guy Carleton in recognition of their bravery. The attack having proved a failure, Arnold, whose force had been reduced

GENERAL RICHARD MONTGOMERY.

to five hundred men, fell back to a position about three miles above Quebec, and held it all winter, hoping to receive such reinforcements as would enable him to take Quebec.

In April, 1776, General Wooster joined Arnold with reinforcements, and, assuming the command, made another unsuccessful effort to capture Quebec. Wooster was soon recalled, and was succeeded by General Thomas. Sir Guy Carleton, governor of Canada, was heavily reinforced, and Thomas was obliged to abandon the attempt on Quebec and retreat. His movement was so hasty that he left his baggage, artillery and sick in Carleton's hands. The British commander, with a humanity rare among his countrymen during this struggle, treated the sick prisoners with great kindness. Thomas fell back as far as the Sorel, where he died of the small-pox, which was making great ravages among the troops. Sir Guy Carleton continued to advance, and defeated a portion of the army under General Thompson at Three Rivers. Thompson and a number of his officers and men were made prisoners.

The remainder secured their retreat and joined General Sullivan on the Sorel. The wreck of the army now fell back from Canada to Crown Point in a most miserable and disheartened condition. Thus ended the invasion of Canada, the most disastrous expedition attempted by the Americans during the war; yet still one the failures of which were greatly offset by the heroic daring of the troops engaged. Carleton was able to occupy the entrances to Canada with a strong force, and to make any future attempt at invasion impossible.

Norfolk Bombarded.

While these events were transpiring in Canada, Virginia was also the scene of war. Towards the close of the year 1775 Lord Dunmore, the royalist governor of Virginia, who had taken refuge on board a man-of-war, issued a proclamation offering freedom to the negro slaves and indentured white servants of the patriots who would join him in the servile war he meant to inaugurate. With a force collected in this manner, he landed at Norfolk and took possession of the town. Fugitive slaves joined him in considerable numbers, and it seemed likely that he would be able to carry out his threat and

scourge Virginia and North Carolina with a warfare of massacre and servile violence.

Several regiments were raised in Virginia to drive him out of the province. The second of these, under Colonel Woodford, seized the narrow peninsula which connects Norfolk with the mainland, and on the ninth of December was attacked by Dunmore's forces, which were summarily defeated. In revenge, Dunmore returned in January, 1776, and bombarded and burned Norfolk, then the largest and richest town and the principal shipping port of Virginia.

On the fifth of September, 1775, the Continental Congress resumed its sessions. Delegates from Georgia appeared and were admitted to seats in the Congress, and the colonies assumed the style of the *Thirteen United Colonies*. Matters were not very encouraging when Congress met. The army was in need of everything that could contribute to its efficiency, and the New England coast was harassed with the armed vessels of Great Britain, which laid its towns under exaction, or subjected them to bombardment, and committed other gross outrages upon the inhabitants. On the eighteenth of October the town of Falmouth, now Portland, in Maine, was burned by Lieutenant Mowatt of the British navy. The other towns, warned by the fate of Falmouth, proceeded to fortify themselves, and escaped with nothing worse than an occasional engagement with some royal cruiser.

Naval matters very largely occupied the attention of the whole country at this period. The only way in which the needed supplies could be obtained was by purchase abroad or the capture of the enemy's ships. Maryland, Virginia and South Carolina promptly established naval boards for the purpose of fitting out cruisers for this service; and among the first acts of Washington, after assuming the command of the army, was to send out armed vessels to the St. Lawrence and the New England waters to seize the supply ships of the English on their way to Canada and Boston. A number of vessels were captured by these cruisers, and a considerable quantity of arms, ammunition and other stores thus accumulated.

Securing War Supplies.

Congress appointed a secret committee to import powder from the West Indies, and to erect mills in the interior for its manufacture; and foundries for casting cannon. Licenses were issued to privateers, and a naval committee was appointed to superintend the formation of a marine force for the defence of the harbors, and was charged with the building of thirteen frigates. In December a secret committee was appointed to open and conduct a correspondence with foreign nations, or with friends of the cause in Europe.

Parliament, in the meantime, had not been idle, but had enacted stringent measures for the prosecution of the war and the punishment of the colonists. The measures adopted by the British government were cruel and barbarous. The Americans were to be treated as criminals and as deserving of death. They were made subject to the pains and penalties of treason if captured, and could in no case expect the treatment of prisoners of war. The crews of all vessels captured in trading to the colonies were condemned beforehand to serve in the marine corps of the royal navy. It was decided to increase the British army in America to forty thousand men. Twenty-five thousand of these troops were to be raised, and the effort to enlist men was begun in England, but without success. Recruits could not be found in sufficient numbers to repay the effort. The ministry could not hope for better success in Ireland, as they had been

warned by General Howe that the Irish were strong sympathizers with the Americans and could not be relied upon to fight against them.

In this emergency the government resolved to employ German troops for the subjugation of America, and negotiations were opened with Brunswick and Hesse Cassel, two petty German States. The result was that Great Britain hired seventeen thousand troops from these states for the conquest of the English-speaking people of America. These mercenaries were generally known as Hessians, and became the objects of the bitter hatred of the Americans—a hatred which they fully earned by their subsequent cruelties towards the colonists.

These measures were not adopted by the British government without opposition. There was a determined minority in England, consisting of such men as Burke, Barré and the Duke of Grafton, who manfully sought to obtain justice for the colonies up to the last moment at which a settlement was possible. The corporation of London and the mercantile interests of the country generally were opposed to the measures of the government, and sought to procure a just and peaceful settlement; but all efforts were in vain. The king and the ministry were resolved upon the subjugation of America; nothing else would satisfy them.

CHAPTER XXVII.

The Declaration of Independence

The Siege of Boston—Difficulties of the American Army—Activity of the Privateers—Clinton's Expedition—Colonel Knox Arrives from Ticonderoga with Cannon—Seizure of Dorchester Heights by Washington—The British Evacuate Boston—Royalist Plots in New York—Paper Money Issued by Congress—Gates Sent to the North—The British Attack Charleston—Battle of Fort Moultrie—The Howes in New York Bay—Change in the Character of the War—Growing Sentiment in Favor of Independence—Virginia Proposes that the Colonies Assert their Independence—Action of Congress—The Declaration of Independence—Articles of Confederation Adopted by Congress—Lord Howe's Efforts at Conciliation—Addresses a Letter to Washington—Battle of Long Island—Defeat of the Americans—Retreat from Long Island—Evacuation of New York by the Americans—Loss of Fort Washington—Washington Retreats Through New Jersey—He Crosses the Delaware—Darkest Period of the War—Washington's Determination to Continue the War—Lord Howe's Proclamation—Its Effect—Congress at Baltimore—Carleton Invades New York—Defeats Arnold on Lake Champlain—Carleton Retires into Canada—Battle of Trenton—Happy Effects of the Victory—Congress Confers Dictatorial Powers upon Washington—Commissioners Sent to France.

THE winter of 1775–76 was passed by the army before Boston in inaction. There was not ammunition enough in the camp to enable Washington to attack Boston, and the British were well content to remain within their lines without seeking to raise the siege. Washington exerted himself to the utmost to obtain artillery and powder. Henry Knox, a bookseller of Boston, who had entered the military service of the colonies, had attracted the attention of the commander-in-chief by his skill in the use of artillery and in planning the works erected for the defence of the camp. Knox now proposed to go to Ticonderoga and bring away from that place and from Crown Point all the artillery and powder that could be spared, and his plan was at once approved by Washington, who urged Congress to commission him a colonel of artillery.

At the same time he wrote to Schuyler, the commander in New York, to give Knox every assistance in his power in his effort to bring the artillery from Lake Champlain to Boston. Great difficulties were experienced during the winter in inducing the troops to renew their enlistments. It required all the ingenuity and tact of which Washington was master to remove the prejudices and jealousies which had grown up in the camp since the commencement of the blockade of Boston, and which threatened to disband the army. He succeeded in a greater degree than he had expected. At the opening of the year 1776 he had about ten thousand men in camp, many of whom were raw troops newly enlisted and without arms. Still they were a more harmonious and contented force than the first army. Towards the close of 1775 the privateers made extensive captures from the British. Captain Manly, of the schooner "Lee," captured a British brig off Cape Ann, laden with arms, artillery and military stores for the British army at Boston. These were sent at once to Washington, and proved of the greatest service. Among the captures was an immense mortar, which Putnam named the "Congress," and placed in position at Lechmere Point, on the north of Boston.

Matters were gloomy indeed. The people were very anxious that Boston should be attacked, but such a course was impossible. As late as the tenth of February, 1776, Washington wrote: "Without men, without

arms, without ammunition, little is to be done." To increase the discouragement of the patriots news came of the defeat of the attempt to conquer Canada. The British were collecting a fleet for a demonstration against some point on the Atlantic coast, and as it was not certain where the blow would fall, a feeling of general uneasiness prevailed along the entire seaboard.

This expedition sailed from Boston, under Sir Henry Clinton, about the first of February. Washington, who had for some time

GENERAL HENRY KNOX.

suspected that it was designed to capture New York, had already sent General Charles Lee to raise troops to occupy that important city and hold it against the British. Lee executed his task with energy, and on the fourth of February entered New York and encamped in the suburbs, in what is now the City Hall Park. Governor Tryon, who had taken refuge on board a man-of-war, threatened to bombard the city if the American forces should enter it; but Lee informed him that the first shot fired at New York would be the signal for the execution of the leading friends of the royal cause in that city. This decisive answer induced Tryon to delay his barbarous purpose. That afternoon Sir Henry Clinton, with his fleet, entered the harbor. Finding that he had come too late to secure the city, Clinton declared that he had merely called at the harbor to pay a visit to his friend Tryon, and in a few days he sailed away for North Carolina, where the royalist Governor Martin, who, like Tryon, had taken refuge on board a man-of-war, had been endeavoring to stir up an insurrection of the Tories, as the royalists were called. The command of this movement was to be assumed by Clinton. Martin also expected a fleet under Sir Peter Parker from Ireland.

Decisive Defeat of the Tories.

To gain time, and stir up the Tories to prompt action, he commissioned two retired officers of the British army, Scotchmen, named McDonald and McLeod, who had recently settled in North Carolina, to raise troops among the friends of the king in the interior. They succeeded in raising about fifteen hundred men, and set off for the coast to join Martin. The patriots at once rallied in considerable force to oppose their march, and intercepted them at Moore's Creek Bridge, near Wilmington. On the twenty-fifth of February a sharp engagement was fought here, which resulted in the defeat of the Tories. McLeod was killed and McDonald was taken prisoner. Eighteen hundred stand of arms, one hundred and fifty swords, two medicine-chests, and the sum of fifteen thousand pounds sterling in gold fell into the hands of the victors, and went far toward supplying their deficiencies. The contemplated rising of the Tories was put down in the interior counties, and Martin finding his hopes of raising troops in North Carolina destroyed, withdrew with Clinton

.o the Cape Fear to await the arrival of the fleet of Sir Peter Parker.

In the meantime a Union flag had been provided for the army before Boston, and was formally displayed for the first time in the American camp on the first of January, 1776. It retained the English cross in the upper left-hand corner, in token of the relations still existing between the colonies and England, and bore on its broad field thirteen stripes of alternate red and white, representing the thirteen colonies united for the defence of their liberties. Towards the close of February the stock of powder was considerably increased, and a little later Colonel Knox arrived from Ticonderoga with the cannon and ammunition from that post.

He had transported them on sledges across the long stretch of country between Lake Champlain and Boston, and had overcome difficulties in the accomplishment of this task which seemed at first insurmountable. The arrival of these guns gave Washington a fair supply of heavy ordnance and put an end to the long delay which had prevailed in the American camp. The regular army had been increased to fourteen thousand men, and had been reinforced by six thousand militia from Massachusetts.

Ready for Decisive Action.

All now was bustle and activity. The newly arrived cannon were mouuted to command the city, and Washington was at length able to attempt the long desired demonstration against the enemy in Boston. As early as December, 1775, Congress had urged him to undertake the capture of Boston, and had authorized him to destroy the city if he could expel the British in no other way, and John Hancock, who was a large property-owner, regardless of the fate of his possessions, had written to him: "Do it, and may God crown your attempt with success." All through the winter Washington had been held back from such an attempt by the advice of his council of war, which hesitated to assume the offensive with an insufficient supply of ammunition and artillery. Putnam had succeeded in fortifying the neighboring heights on the mainland, but had been obliged to do much of this work at night to avoid the fire of the enemy's shipping. The last obstacle to decisive action was now removed. Washington resolved to seize the eminence on the south of Boston, known as Dorchester Heights. It commanded the town from that quarter and also the shipping in the harbor. Its possession by the Americans would force Sir William Howe either to evacuate the city or risk a general engagement for its recovery.

Heavy Fire of Shot and Shell.

On the evening of the second of March a heavy fire was opened upon the British lines by the American batteries and also upon Boston. A number of houses were set on fire, and the attention of the British was fully occupied in extinguishing the flames. The bombardment was renewed the next night. At dark on the evening of the fourth of March the Americans renewed their fire with redoubled vigor, and were replied to with spirit by the British, and during the whole night the roar of cannon went on, covering the movements of the Americans from observation by the enemy. The force assigned for the seizure of Dorchester Heights was placed under the command of General Thomas, and in case the movement should be discovered, and the enemy should seek to dislodge this detachment from the Heights, General Putnam was ordered to cross Charles River with a column of four thousand picked troops and attack the city from that quarter.

Under the cover of the heavy cannonade the column of General Thomas passed the

narrow isthmus in safety, and reached the Heights by eight o'clock undiscovered by the enemy. They at once set to work, though the ground was frozen to a depth of more than eighteen inches, and by morning had thrown up a series of earthworks which entirely commanded both the city and the harbor. General Howe was greatly astonished as he examined these works through his glass when the mists of the morning cleared away. "The rebels," he said, "have done more work in a night than my whole army would have done in a month." The British admiral declared that his ships could not remain in the harbor, as the possession of the Heights by the Americans placed the fleet entirely at their mercy. It was evident to all the British commanders that the Heights must be recovered or the city abandoned and General Howe determined to storm the American works that night, and made preparations for an attack. This movement was prevented by a severe storm, which put a stop to the coöperation of the fleet, and when the storm had died away the works had been so greatly strengthened as to render an assault hopeless.

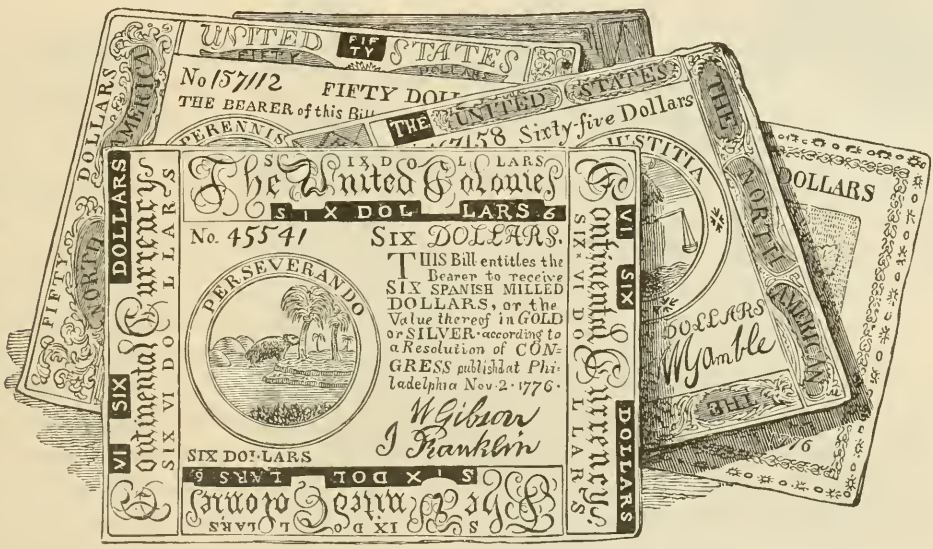
MEDAL STRUCK BY CONGRESS IN HONOR OF THE RECAPTURE OF BOSTON.

A council of war was held, and it was resolved to abandon the town. As such a step required some time, Howe secured the safety of his army by declaring that he would burn the town if his troops were fired on during their embarkation. A deputation of the citizens proceeded to the American camp and informed General Washington of Howe's determination, and in order to save the city from further suffering the British were allowed to depart in peace. They consumed eleven days in their embarkation. They embarked about fifteen hundred Tories with them, and after plundering a number of stores and private houses, and robbing the inhabitants of a considerable supply of provisions, they embarked on the seventeenth of March, and dropping down the bay anchored at Nantasket Roads. They had scarcely left the city when the American army, under Washington, marched in and occupied the place. The long siege of ten months was at an end, and Boston was again free. The patriot army was received with enthusiasm, and matters soon began to resume their accustomed condition.

By the capture of Boston the Americans obtained possession of two hundred and fifty pieces of artillery, four mortars, and a considerable quantity of ammunition, provisions and clothing, which the British could not carry away. After the departure of the British fleet from Nantasket Roads several transports with troops, not aware of the evacuation, entered the harbor, and were captured. Several storeships, laden with military supplies of all kinds, also arrived

from England, and were captured in the same way. These captures were of the highest importance to the patriots. Their supply of ammunition was in this way increased more than sevenfold.

The capture of Boston was justly esteemed the most important success of the war. It freed New England from the presence of the English, and enabled her to contribute men and money to the defence of the middle colonies. On motion of John Adams, Congress adopted a unanimous vote of thanks to Washington and the army, and ordered a gold medal to be struck in commemoration of the deliverance of Boston.



CONTINENTAL BILLS.

The British fleet remained in Nantasket roads for several days after the evacuation of Boston, and then bore away for Halifax. Washington was fearful that its destination was New York, and leaving General Ward with five regiments to hold Boston, hastened southward with the main body of the army. He reached New York on the thirteenth of April, and set to work with vigor to put the city and its approaches in a state of defence. He soon discovered that the Tories in the city were in constant communication with Governor Tryon and the British ships in the harbor. Severe measures were at once adopted to stop this intercourse. A conspiracy for the recovery of the city by Tryon was discovered, and his agents were found tampering with the American soldiers. One Thomas Hickey, a deserter from the British army, was hanged "for mutiny, sedition and treachery," and this vigorous measure at once put a stop to the plots of the Tories.

Congress, in February, 1776, found itself obliged to issue four millions of dollars of additional paper money in order to meet the expenses of the war, which were heavier than had been supposed. For the proper management of the finances, an auditor-general and assistants were appointed to act under the financial committee of Congress, and it was not long before this branch of the public service assumed the form of a treasury department. In April a war office was established by Congress under the supervision of a committee of its members. John

Adams was made chairman of this committee, and resigned his post of chief-justice of Massachusetts to accept it.

The retreat of Sullivan from Canada now became known, and the conduct of that officer was approved by Congress, which passed a vote of thanks to him. At the same time it appointed Major-General Horatio Gates to the command of the army in his place. Gates was an Englishman by birth, and had joined the colonial movement in the hope of winning honors and fame by his services. He had served in the British army during the colonial period, but had failed to receive the rewards he deemed himself entitled to, and had resigned his commission in disgust, and had come to America to reside a few years before the rupture with England. His experience and skill made him a valuable acquisition to the American army, but his ambition and jealousy were destined to cause it considerable trouble. Gates at once claimed that his command embraced not only the troops on Lake Champlain, but also the whole northern army under Schuyler. The matter was referred to Congress, and it was decided that Gates was independent of the control of Schuyler only while in Canada. Elsewhere he was subject to Schuyler's command.

Expedition Against Charleston.

In the meantime Congress had sent General Charles Lee to the south to take command of the troops assembling to oppose Sir Henry Clinton, who was waiting off the mouth of the Cape Fear river for the arrival of the fleet of Sir Peter Parker from Ireland. This fleet joined Clinton in May, and a little later Congress learned by means of intercepted letters that Charleston, in South Carolina, was the object of attack. The command of the strong military force which the fleet brought was to be held by Sir Henry Clinton, to whom the general direction of the expedition was intrusted.

Lee hastened at once to Charleston. He found there a force of about six thousand men, from the Carolinas and Virginia; but the city was not defended by a single fortification. Had Clinton assailed it at once, it must have fallen into his hands, as he arrived in the harbor on the fourth of June, the very day that Lee reached the city; but he delayed his attack until he could fortify his own position, and so gave Lee time to erect works for the defence of the city.

Fort Moultrie Bombarded.

The key to the American position was Fort Moultrie, a small work built of palmetto logs, and situated on the southwest point of Sullivan's Island. It was commanded by Colonel William Moultrie, whose name it bore. In front of it lay the British fleet under Sir Peter Parker. Sir Henry Clinton had taken position with two thousand men on Long Island, which was separated from Sullivan's Island by only a narrow creek, and was building batteries to cover his passage of the creek. His plan was to allow the fleet to breach the walls of Fort Moultrie and then to cross his troops to Sullivan's Island under the cover of his batteries, and carry the fort by storm. Lee, who was ignorant of the capacity of the soft, spongy palmetto wood for resisting the force of cannon shot, regarded the effort to hold Fort Moultrie as madness. He stationed a force under Colonel Thompson on Sullivan's Island opposite Clinton to dispute his passage of the creek, and took position on the mainland with the rest of his force where he could support either Moultrie or Thompson, as might be necessary.

On the twenty-eighth of June the enemy's fleet opened fire on Fort Moultrie, which replied with spirit, and for ten hours the cannonade was maintained with great vigor by

both sides. The enemy's balls buried themselves in the soft, spongy wood of the palmetto logs, and thus did little injury to the fort; but the well-directed fire of the American guns inflicted great damage upon the fleet.

The British were finally compelled to withdraw with heavy loss, and abandoned and set fire to one of their ships. During the engagement the flag of the fort was shot away, and fell outside of the walls. Sergeant Jasper, of the South Carolina forces, at once sprang over the wall and amidst a heavy fire secured the flag, tied it to a pole, and set it up again on the ramparts. This done, he rejoined his comrades at the guns. A few days later Governor Rutledge presented Jasper with his own sword and offered him a lieutenant's commission. Jasper accepted the sword, but declined the commission on the ground that he could neither read nor write.

Clinton made repeated efforts to cross the creek and storm the fort during the battle, but was as often driven back by the batteries under Thompson. At length, the fleet having withdrawn, he embarked his men, and soon after sailed for New York to join the troops assembling near that city.

SERGEANT JASPER AT FORT MOULTRIE.

Washington was correct in supposing that New York was the true destination of Sir William Howe after leaving the Nantasket Roads. That commander sailed first to Halifax, where he landed the civilians and other useless incumbrances he had been obliged to carry away from Boston. Then, refitting his command, he awaited the arrival of his brother, Admiral Lord Howe, who was on

his way from England with reinforcements. In the latter part of June he sailed from Halifax for New York, and arrived within Sandy Hook on the twenty-eighth of June, the very day of the attack on Fort Moultrie, He landed his forces on Staten Island, where he was received with enthusiasm by the Tories.

A little later he was joined by Sir Henry Clinton from Charleston, and about the middle of July Lord Howe arrived with reinforcements, a large part of whom were Hessians, hired, as we have stated, by the King of England from the Duke of Hesse Cassel, in Germany. Their arrival raised the strength of the British army in New York Bay to thirty thousand men. Their attack upon the city was merely a question of time, and under the most favorable circumstances it was scarcely to be hoped that Washington would succeed in maintaining his hold upon New York. In the meantime an event of the highest importance had changed the whole character of the war as regarded the Americans.

England Will Not Relent.

The colonists had taken up arms to resist the aggressions of the King and Government of Great Britain upon their liberties and to compel the mother country to respect the rights guaranteed to them by their charters and by the British Constitution. Thus far the war had been waged for these ends. At the outset of the struggle a few far-seeing persons, such as Samuel Adams and Patrick Henry, had been convinced that an appeal to arms would render the final separation of the colonies from England inevitable, and that such an issue was but the fulfilment of the destiny of their country, and as such to be desired.

The great majority of the people, however, neither thought of nor wished for independence. They would have been satisfied to secure their liberties and privileges as English subjects, and would gladly have continued loyal to the king. The events of the war had made it plain to the most skeptical that England did not intend to do justice to her colonies. Neither the king, the ministry, nor Parliament were disposed to swerve from their purpose of reducing America to absolute submission to their will. They were determined that the colonists should bear every burden of British citizenship, and enjoy none of its privileges save what they should see fit to allow them. Americans were not to enjoy either liberty or property as lawful rights.

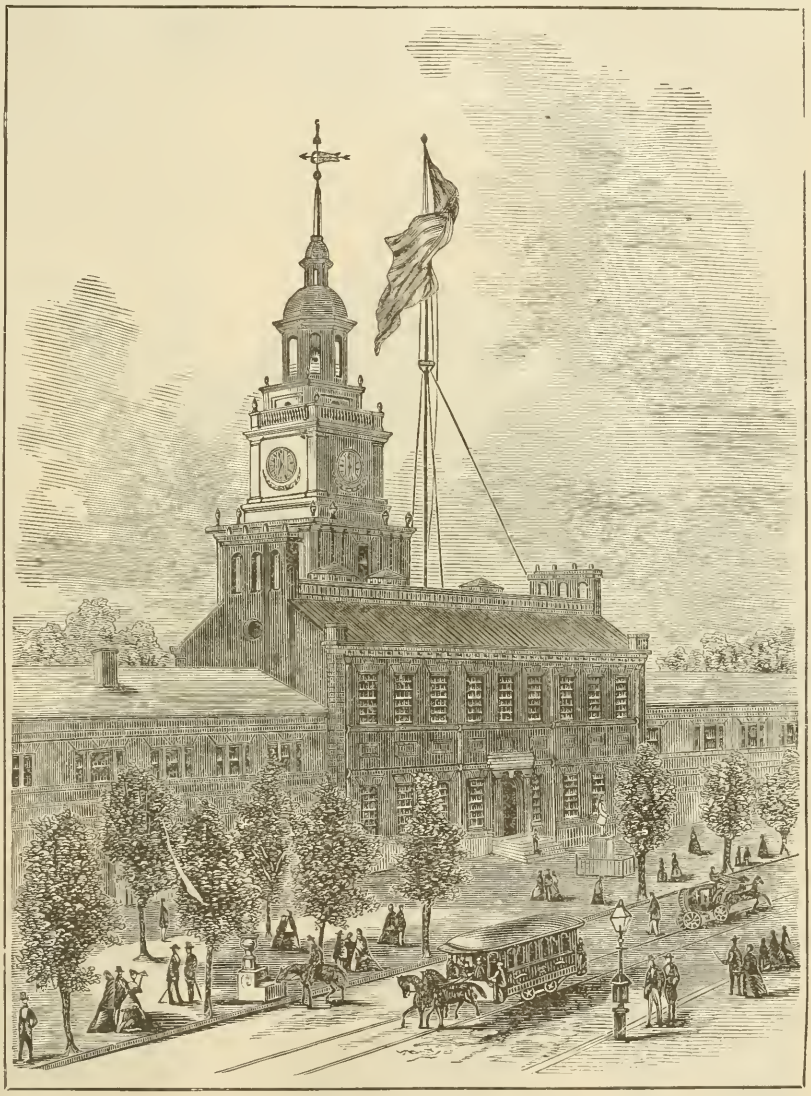
The Feeling Toward Great Britain.

This determination was so clear that none could mistake it. Since the commencement of the struggle public opinion in America had undergone a great change, and the party in favor of a total and final separation from the mother country had increased so rapidly that it now embraced the great majority of the American people. Now that they had become convinced that they could maintain their liberties only by a total and unqualified separation from Great Britain, they did not hesitate to choose that course. Their choice was made without regret. At the commencement of the war a very genuine attachment bound the people of the colonies to England; but the course of the royal government and the severities of the British commanders in the Northern colonies, and the outrages of the royal governors in the South, had entirely alienated the people from their love for England.

Still there were many Tories, or friends of the king, in America, and they were active and bitter in their opposition to the patriots. From the first the Americans regarded the Tories with a feeling of hatred which increased as the struggle went on, and this feeling was

soon extended to all who fought under the royal flag or sought to uphold its cause.

Not only had the people been gradually coming to view independence as desirable and indispensable; the exercise by Congress of the functions of a supreme government had accustomed them to it, and had shown them their capacity for conducting a general government for the whole country. Early in March, 1776, Congress granted letters of marque and reprisal against British commerce, and somewhat later sent Silas Deane as its commissioner to France to seek assistance from that country. In May it had formally recommended the colonies to disregard the royal governments and adopt systems suited to their needs, and in harmony with the changed state of affairs. To all men it was evident that a formal renunciation of allegiance to Great Britain and the assertion of their independence by the colonies was merely a question of time.

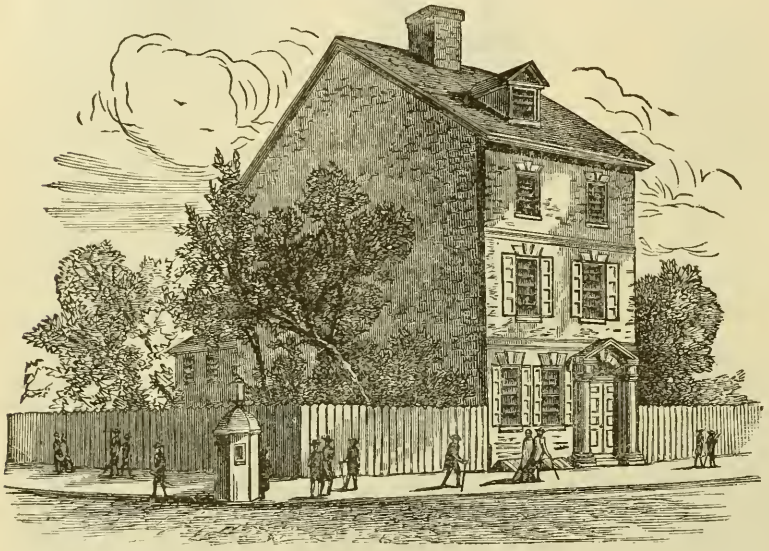


INDEPENDENCE HALL, PHILADELPHIA.

It was, therefore, a surprise to no one when the first definite action looking towards independence was taken. On the fifteenth of May, 1776, the general assembly of Virginia instructed the delegates of that colony in Congress to offer a resolution in favor of the separation of the colonies from England, and the formal declaration of their independence. On the thirtieth of May Massachusetts instructed her delegates to support this resolution. On the seventh of June Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, offered a resolution in Congress, "that the united colonies are, and ought to be, free and independent States, and that their political connection

with Great Britain is, and ought to be, dissolved."

The resolution was seconded by John Adams, of Massachusetts, and was debated with great earnestness. It was adopted by a bare majority of one—seven colonies voting for it, and six against it. In accordance with the resolution, a committee was appointed to draw up a declaration of independence, and, in order that the delegates might have an opportunity to ascertain the wishes of their constituents, the consideration of the subject was postponed until the first of July. Two other committees were also appointed. One of these was charged with the preparation of a plan for uniting the colonies in a single government; the other was to report a plan for securing alliances with foreign nations. The committee charged with the preparation of a declaration of independence consisted of Benjamin Franklin, John Adams, Thomas Jefferson, Roger Sherman and Robert R. Livingston.

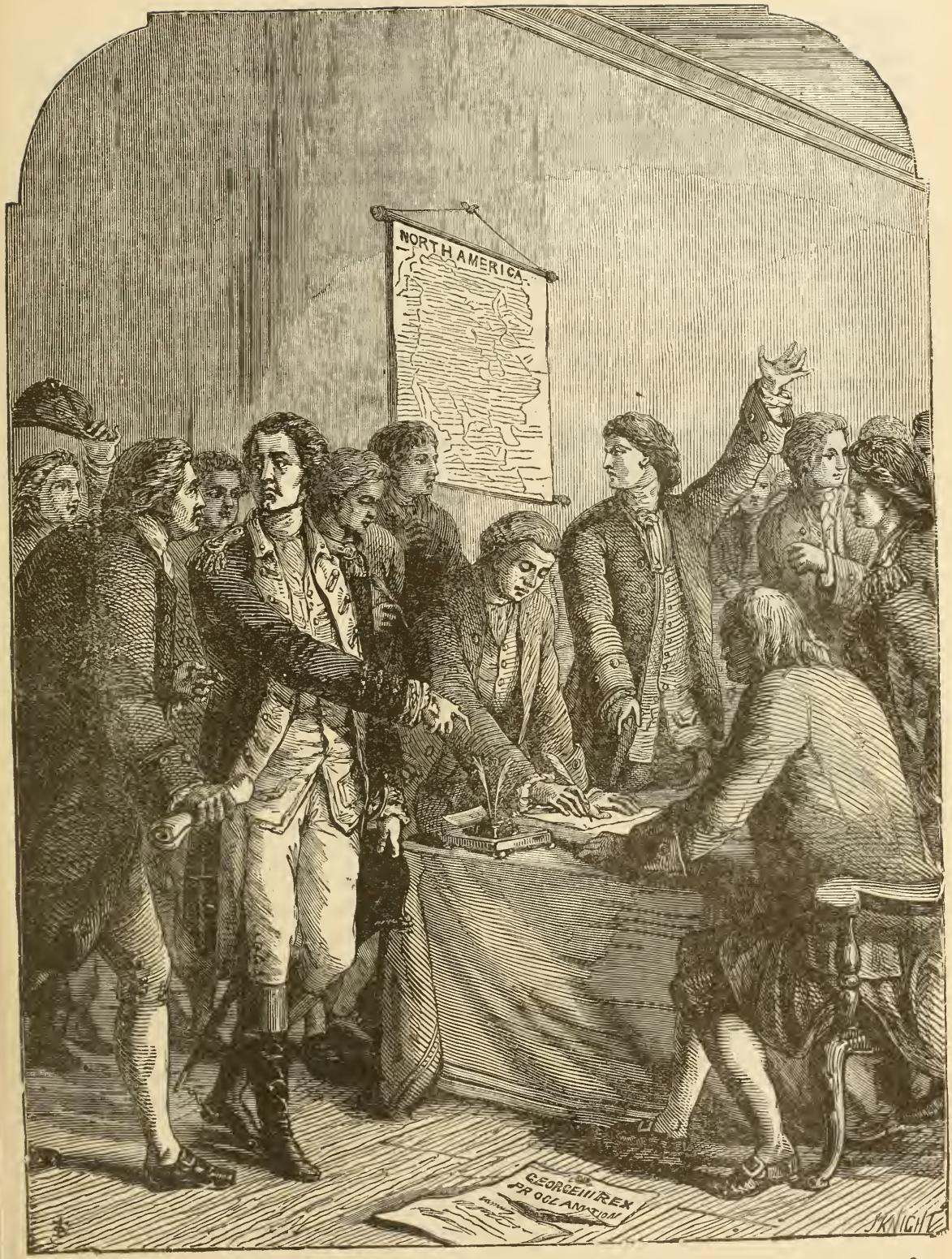


HOUSE IN WHICH THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE WAS WRITTEN, PHILADELPHIA.

On the twenty-eighth of June the committee reported the declaration to Congress. It was written by Thomas Jefferson, and, with a few verbal alterations, was adopted by the committee as it came from his hand. It reviewed in a clear and comprehensive manner the cause which had impelled the colonies to take up arms for the defence of their liberties, and which now induced them to sever the ties that bound them to Great Britain.

The declaration concluded in these memorable words: "We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of all the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace contract alliances, establish commerce and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of a Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor."

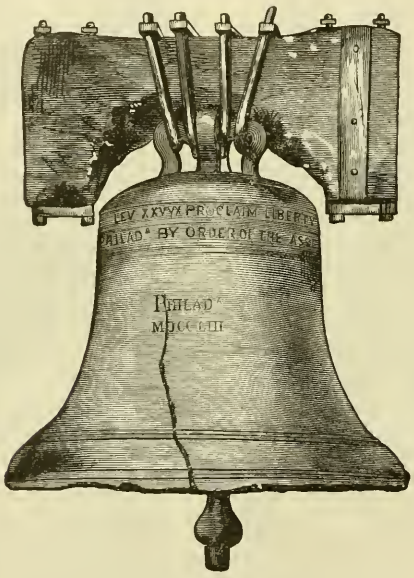
The declaration was debated in Congress, and a few passages, which it was feared might offend the friends of the colonies in Great Britain, were stricken out. The vote



SIGNING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

was then taken by colonies, and though some of the delegates voted against it, the declaration received the votes of all the colonies with the exception of New York, which accepted it a few days later. On the fourth day of July, 1776, the Declaration of Independence was formally adopted by Congress, and was ordered to be published to the world, and to be read at the head of the regiments of the army.

Congress was in session in the hall of the state house in Philadelphia. In the spire of this venerable building hung a bell, inscribed



OLD BELL OF INDEPENDENCE HALL.

with the words of Scripture: "Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof." On the morning of the fourth of July vast crowds assembled around the building, as it was known that Congress would on that day take definite action upon the declaration. The bell-ringer stationed himself in the tower, ready to proclaim the good news the moment it should be announced to him, and had posted his little son at the door of the hall to await the signal of the door-keeper.

When the announcement of the vote was made, the door-keeper gave the signal and the boy ran quickly to the tower. The old man heard him coming, and clutched the bell-rope with a firm grasp. The next instant the glad cry of the boy's voice was heard. "Ring! ring!" he cried, and then the deep, sonorous tones of the bell went rolling out of the tower, and were answered with a mighty shout from the assembled throng without. The declaration was received by all the states and by the army with enthusiasm. Thus the thirteen united colonies became the thirteen United States. It should not be forgotten that the declaration did not make the colonies independent states, or states in any sense. It was simply their announcement to the world that they had, each for itself, by the exercise of its own sovereign power, assumed the independence which rightfully belonged to it.

The Declaration of Independence put an end to all the hopes that had been cherished of an accommodation with Great Britain, and caused those who were still wavering to embrace the cause of their country. It relieved Congress of the disadvantage under which it had hitherto acted, and enabled it to pursue a more vigorous and decisive policy in the prosecution of the war. There was no retreat now; nothing remained but to continue the struggle until Great Britain should be compelled to acknowledge the independence of the states, or they should be reduced to the condition of conquered provinces.

On the twelfth of July the committee appointed to prepare a plan for the union of the states reported one, which is thus summed up:

"1st. The style of the confederacy was to be 'The United States of America.'

"2d. Each state retained its sovereignty, freedom and independence and every power

and right which is not expressly delegated to the United States.

"3d. The object of the confederation was for their mutual defence, the security of their liberties, and their mutual and general welfare, binding themselves to assist each other against all force offered to or attacks made upon them, or any of them, on account of religion, sovereignty, trade, or any other pretence whatever.

"4th. In determining all questions in Congress each State was to have one vote.

"5th. Each State was to maintain its own delegates.

"6th. The free inhabitants of each State, paupers, vagabonds and fugitives from justice excepted, were to be entitled to all privileges and immunities of free citizens in the several States.

"7th. All fugitives from justice from one State into another were to be delivered up on demand.

"8th. Full faith and credit were to be given to the records of each State in all the others.

"9th. Congress was to grant no title of nobility.

"10th. No person holding any office was to receive a present from a foreign power.

"11th. No State was to form any agreement or alliance with a foreign power without the consent of the States in Congress assembled.

"12th. No two or more States were to form any alliance between themselves without the like consent of the States in Congress assembled.

"13th. No State, without the like consent of Congress, was to keep war ships or an army in time of peace; but each was to keep a well-organized and disciplined militia, with munitions of war.

"14th. No State was to lay any duty upon foreign imports which would interfere with any treaty made by Congress.

"15th. No State was to issue letters of marque, or to engage in war, without the consent of the Congress, unless actually invaded or menaced with invasion.

"16th. When Federal land forces were raised, each State was to raise the quota required by Congress, arm and equip them at the expense of all the States, and to appoint all officers of and under the rank of colonel.

"17th. Each State was to levy and raise the quota of tax required by Congress for Federal purposes.

"18th. The faith of all the States was pledged to pay all the bills of credit emitted, or money borrowed on their joint account, by the Congress.

"19th. It was agreed and covenanted that Canada might accede to the union so formed if she chose to do so.

"20th (and lastly). Each State was to abide by the determination of all the States in Congress assembled, on all questions which, by the confederation, were submitted to them. The Articles of Confederation were to be inviolably observed by every State, and the Union was to be perpetual. No article of the confederation was to be altered without the consent of every State.

"The delegations of power by each of the States to all the States, in general Congress assembled, upon a like analysis, may be stated as follows:

"1st. The sole and exclusive power to determine on war and peace, except in case a State should be invaded or menaced with invasion.

"2d. To send and receive ambassadors.

"3d. To make treaties, with a proviso, etc.

"4th. To establish rules for captures.

"5th. To grant letters of marque and reprisal.

"6th. To appoint courts for trial of piracies and other crimes specified.

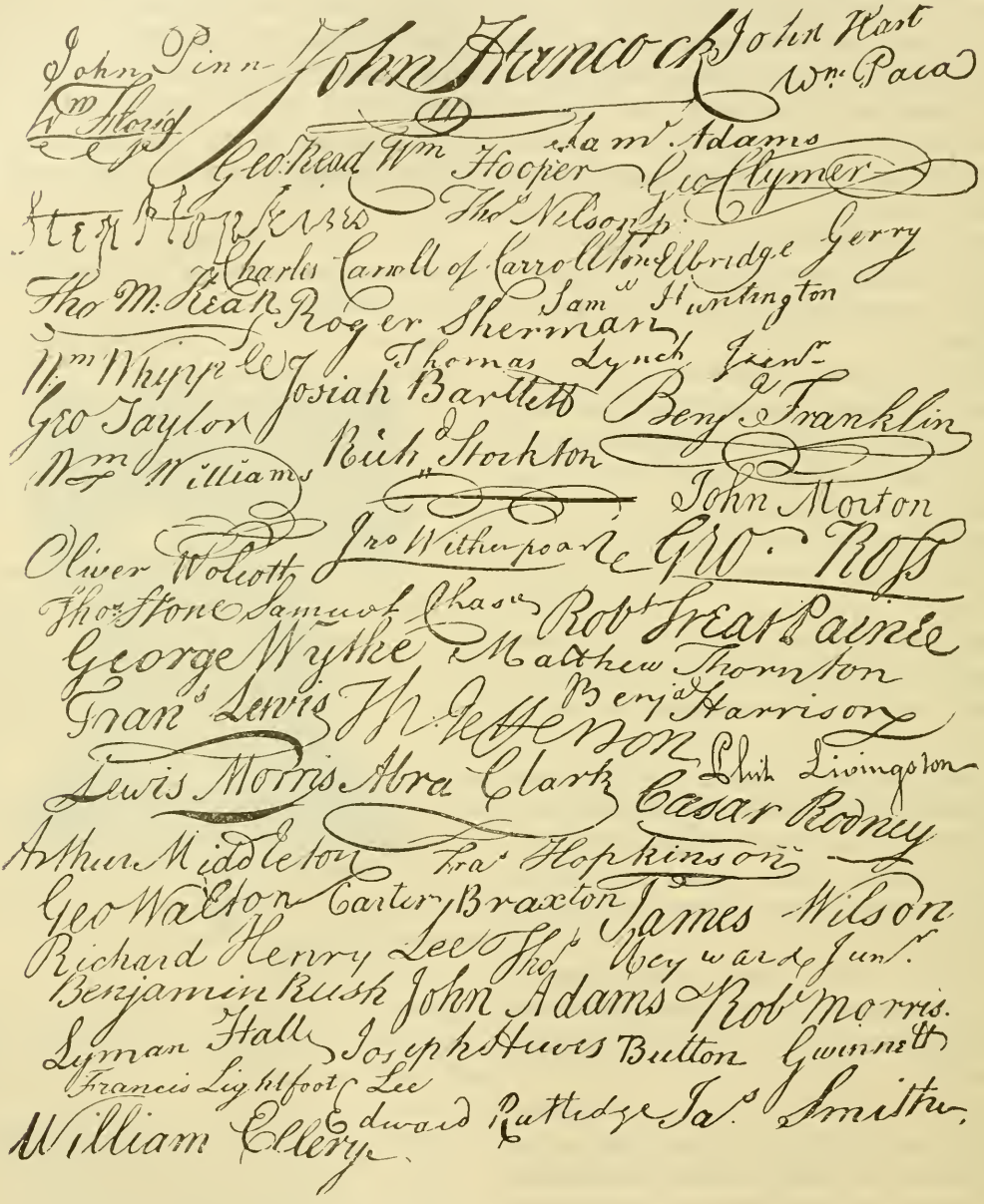
"7th. To decide questions of dispute between two or more States in a prescribed manner.

"8th. The sole and exclusive power to coin money and regulate the value.

"9th. To fix a standard of weights and measures.

"10th. To regulate trade with the Indian tribes.

"11th. To establish post offices.



SIGNATURES OF THE SIGNERS OF THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

"12th. To appoint all officers of the militia land forces, when called out by Congress, except regimental.

"13th. To appoint all officers of the Federal naval forces.

"14th. To make rules and regulations for the government of land and naval forces.

"15th. To appropriate and apply public money for public expenses, the common defence and general welfare.

"16th. To borrow money and emit bills of credit.

"17th. To build and equip a navy.

"18th. To agree upon the number of land forces and make requisitions upon the States for their quotas in proportion to the value of all land within each State.

"The foregoing powers were delegated with this limitation: The war power, the treaty power, the power to coin money, the power to regulate the value thereof, the power of fixing the quotas of money to be raised by the States, the power to emit bills of credit, the power to borrow money, the power to appropriate money, the power to regulate the number of land and naval forces, and the power to appoint a commander-in-chief of the army as well as the navy, were never to be exercised unless nine of the States were assenting to the same.

"These articles form the original basis and first Constitution of the existing Federal Union of the United States of America." *

The States Come Into Line.

These Articles of Confederation were adopted, after discussion, by Congress, voting by States, and were then submitted to the several States for ratification by them. In the meantime Congress continued to exercise the powers conferred by them. By the early part of 1777 all the States save Maryland had ratified and adopted the articles. That State did not give her full assent to them until 1781.

*Hon. Alexander H. Stephens.

Lord Howe arrived in New York Bay about the middle of July, as has been stated. He was vested with full powers by the king to settle the quarrel between America and England if the Americans would agree to submit unconditionally to the king. Failing to accomplish a settlement, he and his brother, Sir William Howe, were charged with the supreme conduct of the war. Lord Howe was a man of amiable disposition, and really desired peace; but as he was fully convinced of the justice of the royal pretensions, he could not understand or appreciate the claims or grievances of the Americans. Moreover, he had come too late. The American people meant that their separation from Great Britain should be final. Lord Howe was greatly deceived upon his arrival as to the actual state of feeling in America. He was received with loyal addresses by the Tories of Long and Staten Islands and the New Jersey shore, and was assured by Governor Tryon that the country was full of friends of the king who might be induced to join him if properly supported.

Washington Insulted.

Lord Howe, therefore, resolved to attempt a peaceful settlement before proceeding to hostilities, and issued a circular addressed to the people of America, offering them the royal pardon if they would cease their rebellion, lay down their arms and trust to the clemency of the king. Congress gave to this circular the widest publicity by causing it to be published in every newspaper in the Union, in order that the people might see that the only settlement that would be accepted by England was their voluntary and absolute submission to her arbitrary will. "They must fight or be slaves."

About the same time Lord Howe addressed a letter to the American commander-in-chief, styling him George Washington, Esquire.

No notice of this communication was taken by Washington, and Howe sent him another letter addressed to George Washington, etc., etc. Washington, rightly considering that the omission of his official title was an insult to his country, refused to receive the letter. Adjutant-General Patterson, of Lord Howe's staff, who bore the communication, expressed his regret that the letter could not be opened. Lord Howe, he said, came vested with great power, and was sincerely anxious for peace. Washington, who had received him with kindly courtesy, replied that he was aware that Lord Howe was intrusted with the power to grant pardons, but that as the Americans were engaged in the defence of their rights, and had committed no crime, they had no need of pardon, and his lordship's good intentions could not be of service to them.

It was now plain to Lord Howe that he had been deceived by Tryon and his friends, and that nothing could be accomplished save by force of arms. His circular had produced no effect, and he could detect no sign of wavering on the part of the Americans.

Measures for Defence.

It had been evident for some time that the next effort of the British would be to get possession of the city of New York. Their fleet already held the harbor, and should they succeed in securing the Hudson they would be able to establish a direct communication with Canada, and to isolate New England and New York from the Middle States and the South. Reinforcements were sent to Washington from Pennsylvania, Maryland, Virginia and Delaware. These gave the American commander a force of about twenty-five thousand men; but scarcely seventeen thousand were fit for duty; the remainder being disabled by sickness.

Washington erected two forts on Manhattan island, one just above Kingsbridge, named Fort Washington, and the other just below it, named Fort Independence. Kingsbridge furnished the only communication between the island of Manhattan and the mainland, and these forts were erected for its defence, as well as to hold the enemy's vessels in check should they attempt to ascend the Hudson. On the New Jersey side of the river, opposite Fort Washington, a third work was erected, and named Fort Lee. Other forts were built higher up the Hudson to hold the river against the enemy and maintain the communication between the Northern and Southern States. One of these, called Fort Montgomery, was located at the entrance to the Highlands, opposite the promontory of Anthony's Nose; another was built six miles higher up the river, and was known as Fort Constitution.

Battle on Long Island.

For the defence of the heights of Brooklyn which commanded the city of New York, Washington caused a line of works to be erected on a range of hills a short distance south of Brooklyn, and established there an intrenched camp. General Nathaniel Greene was placed in command of this position, and exerted himself with vigor to strengthen it. When he had matured his plans he was suddenly taken ill, and was obliged to relinquish the command to General Sullivan.

The British fleet lay in Gravesend Bay, just without the Narrows, and Washington was for a while uncertain whether they would make their first attempt against the force on Long Island, or attack the city of New York. It soon became evident that the capture of the lines on Long Island would be their first care, and Sullivan was reinforced with six battalions, all that could be spared form New York, and on the twenty-fourth of August General Putnam was placed in command of the forces on Long Island.

PATRICK HENRY ADDRESSING THE VIRGINIA CONVENTION

BATTLE OF BENNINGTON

On the night of the twenty-sixth of August the British crossed over from Staten Island to Long Island, and prepared to give battle. Their plan was to engage the attention of the Americans by a direct attack with two divisions, while Sir Henry Clinton, with a third division, was to turn the left flank of the Americans and gain their rear. They hoped, if these movements were successful, to surround and capture the entire force under Putnam. Clinton began his march about nine o'clock on the night of the twenty-sixth, guided by a Long Island Tory. About daylight on the morning of the twenty-seventh of August, the enemy made their attack upon the front of the American position, and engaged their attention in this direction, while Clinton, by a rapid march, gained their rear.

For a while the Americans fought well, but finding themselves almost surrounded, and in danger of being captured, they abandoned the field and retreated within the intrenchments at Brooklyn. The Hessian troops behaved with great barbarity during the engagement, and a number of the Americans were cruelly and wantonly bayoneted by them. A part of the engagement was fought in the beautiful region now occupied by Greenwood cemetery.

Washington hastened to Brooklyn as soon as informed of the battle, and arrived just in time to witness the defeat of his troops. He was powerless to repair the disaster, and could only look on in helpless agony. "My God!" he exclaimed, with tears: "What brave fellows I must lose this day!"

The American loss was very severe in this battle. Out of a force of five thousand men engaged they lost two thousand men, a large number of whom were prisoners. The British had sixteen thousand men engaged, and lost four hundred. Had they followed up their victory by an immediate assault upon the American intrenchments they must have carried them; but General Howe believed that Washington had a much stronger force for their defence than was the case, and encamped in front of the intrenchments, intending to begin operations against them the next day. The twenty-eighth, however, was a day of drenching rain, and the enemy were unable to do more than break ground for a battery. On the twenty-ninth a dense fog hung over the island; but it lifted for a moment, and enabled the Americans to detect an unusual commotion among the British shipping.

GENERAL JOHN SULLIVAN.

It seemed plain that the enemy were preparing to enter the East River with their

fleet, and so separate the force on Long Island from that in New York. Washington at once summoned a council of war, and it was decided to retreat from Long Island without delay. It was a hazardous attempt, for the army under General Howe was so close to the American lines that the conversations of the men could be heard, and the British fleet might at any moment seize the East River. To withdraw a force of nine thousand men across a wide, deep river, in the face of such an army and fleet, was a task which required the greatest skill. It was successfully accomplished, however. Every boat in and around New York and Brooklyn was impressed, and though the orders for the retreat were not issued until noon on the twenty-ninth, everything was in readiness for the retreat by eight o'clock that evening. At midnight the troops took up their silent march from the intrenched line to the ferry, where the boats, manned by Glover's regiment, which was composed of fishermen from Marblehead, awaited them. By eight o'clock the next morning the entire army, with all its cattle, horses and wagons, was safe upon the New York side of the river, and beyond the reach of the enemy.

Important Conference.

Howe was greatly mortified at the escape of the American army, for he had regarded it as a sure prize, and prepared, with the aid of his ships, to seize the upper part of Manhattan Island, and confine the Americans to the city of New York, where their surrender would be inevitable. Before proceeding to the execution of this plan he resolved to make another effort to induce the Americans to abandon their cause, as he rightly believed their defeat on Long Island would be followed by a season of great depression. A few days after the retreat he released General Sullivan, who had been taken prisoner in the battle, on parole, and sent a letter by him to Congress, asking that body to send an informal committee, whom he would receive as private gentlemen, to confer with him on some measure of reconciliation.

Interview with Lord Howe.

Congress, willing to hear what he had to propose, sent Dr. Franklin, John Adams and Edward Rutledge to confer with him. They met Lord Howe at a house on Staten Island, opposite Amboy. The only terms his lordship had to propose were the unconditional submission of the Americans to the royal mercy. He was informed that the Americans would consent to treat with Great Britain only as "a free and independent nation," and that it was useless to propose any other basis for a settlement. Lord Howe thereupon expressed his regret that he should be obliged to distress the Americans. Dr. Franklin thanked him for his good feeling, and remarked: "The Americans will endeavor to lessen the pain you may feel by taking good care of themselves." The report of the interview was made public by Congress, and had a happy effect. It convinced all classes that England had no terms to offer them but such as embraced a shameful surrender of their liberties.

Fearful that Howe would seek to shut him up in New York, Washington left a force within the city to hold it, and encamped with the main body of his army on Harlem Heights, at the northern end of the island, from which he could secure his retreat into Westchester County. The army was reduced to less than twenty thousand men, and was disheartened by the defeat on Long Island. It was seriously debated whether New York should be defended or not; and it was proposed to burn the city to the ground, in order to prevent the enemy from securing comfortable winter-quarters in it. Congress

ordered that the city should not be destroyed, but it was evident that it could not be held.

Washington was anxious to learn the intentions of the enemy, who still remained on Long Island, and Captain Nathan Hale, a talented young officer of the Connecticut line, volunteered to enter their lines and procure the desired information. He proceeded to the British camp, obtained the information wanted, and was returning in safety when he was arrested by a party of the enemy, among whom was a Tory relative, who recognised him. He was taken to Howe's headquarters, and the next morning, September 22d, without any form of trial, was hanged as a spy. He met his death with firmness, saying: "I only regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

"Old Put" Saves His Command.

In the meantime the British had seized the islands at the mouth of the Harlem River, and had erected a battery on one of them. On the fifteenth of September they crossed in force to Manhattan Island, at Kipp's Bay, about three miles above the city. They easily drove back the force stationed there to resist their landing, and secured their position. Washington at once sent General Heath to hold the enemy in check, and ordered Putnam to evacuate the city of New York, and retire to Harlem Heights, without the loss of a moment.

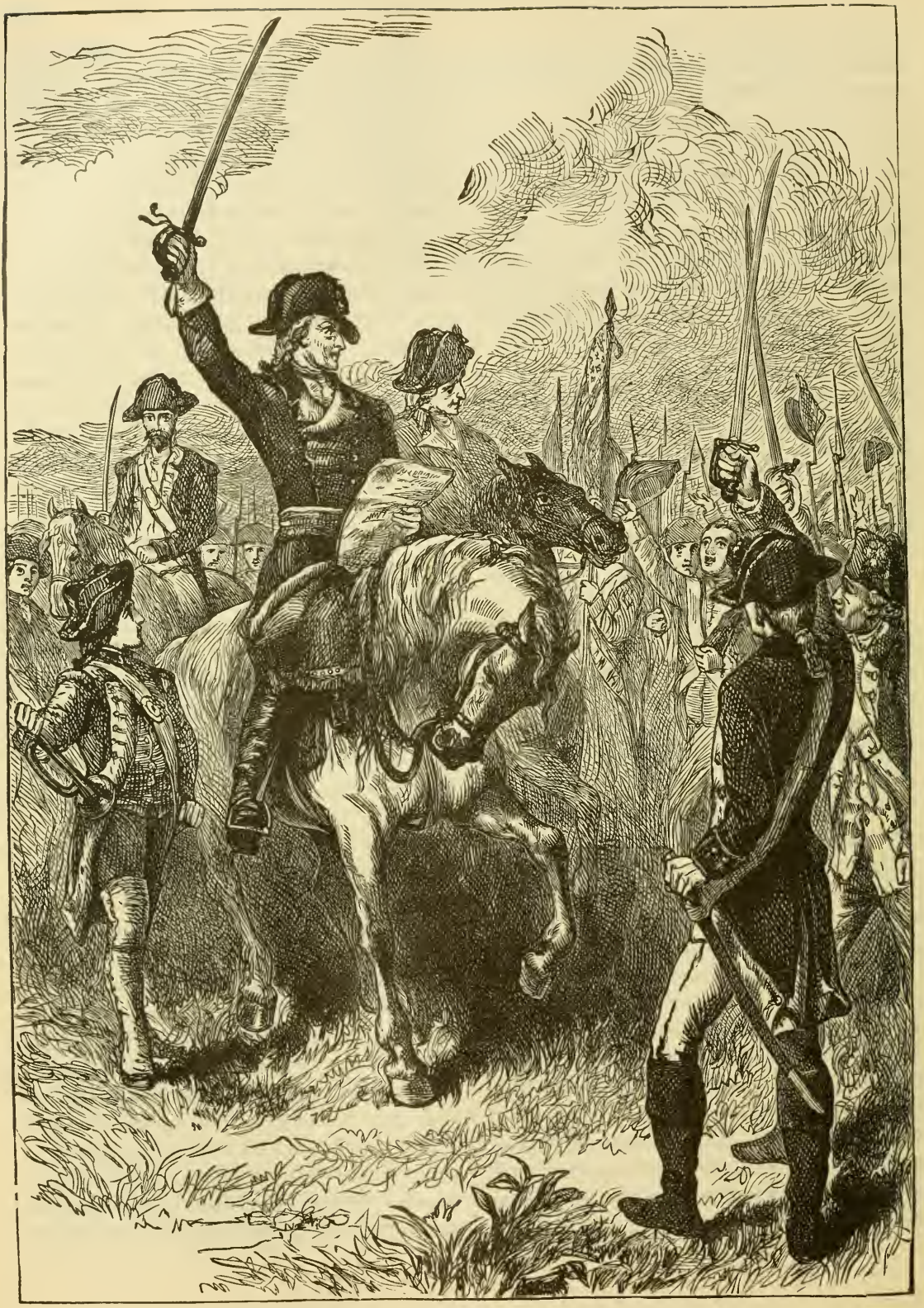
Putnam obeyed his orders promptly, and retreated from the city along the line of the Bloomingdale Road, now the upper part of Broadway. His march was retarded by a crowd of women and children fleeing from the city, and was exposed to the fire of the enemy's ships in the Hudson. By great exertions he managed to save his command, but was obliged to leave his heavy artillery and three hundred men in the hands of the enemy. The British at once took possession of New York, and threw up a line of intrenchments above the city, from the Hudson, at Bloomingdale, to the East River, at Kipp's Bay. The Americans now held the upper part of the island, and erected a double line of earthworks from river to river, about four miles below Kingsbridge.

On the sixteenth of September the enemy made an attack upon the American advanced posts, but were handsomely repulsed by the Virginia and Connecticut troops. Major Leitch, the commander of the Virginians, and Colonel Knowlton, the commander of the Connecticut regiment, and one of the captains at Bunker Hill, were killed. In spite of these losses the spirit of the troops, which had been much depressed by the recent disasters, were greatly cheered.

A lull of several weeks followed, during which the Americans suffered greatly from sickness. They were without proper hospital accommodations, "and they lay about in almost every barn, stable, shed, and even under the fences and bushes."

Washington's Skillful Tactics.

Howe now began to move his army towards Long Island Sound, for the purpose of marching across the mainland to the Hudson and cutting off the retreat of Washington from Manhattan Island, and at the same time sent his fleet up the Hudson. His intention was understood by Washington, who left three thousand men to defend Fort Washington, and with the main body of his army fell back to the line of the Bronx, near the village of White Plains. Here he was attacked on the twenty-eighth of October by General Howe, who was advancing from the direction of New Rochelle, and who was still hopeful of gaining the American rear. A spirited encounter ensued, in which each party lost about four hundred men; and the British



THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE READ TO THE ARMY.

intrenched themselves in front of the American position.

Apprehensive of an effort on the part of the enemy to storm his line, Washington caused the troops to spend the night in strengthening the rude works which covered it. They labored with such diligence that the next morning the British commander decided that the line was too strong to be attacked, and determined to wait for reinforcements. That night Washington silently abandoned his lines at White Plains, and withdrew to the heights of North Castle, five miles distant. Howe, unwilling to follow him further, marched to Dobb's Ferry, on the Hudson, and encamped.

British Successes.

This movement of the British commander caused Washington to fear that he meant to cross over into New Jersey. He accordingly made a new disposition of his forces to meet any emergency. General Charles Lee, who had recently returned from the South, was left at North Castle with a portion of the army to watch Howe; Heath, with another portion, was ordered to occupy Peekskill to defend the passes of the Highlands; and Putnam was stationed, with a third detachment, on the west side of the Hudson to hold that region.

With the remainder of his troops Washington crossed the Hudson and joined General Greene at Fort Lee, arriving there on the thirteenth of November. A force of three thousand Pennsylvania troops had been left to hold Fort Washington, on Manhattan Island. Washington was in favor of withdrawing them at once, but left the matter to the decision of General Greene, and Colonel Magaw, the commander of the fort, who determined to hold it. The result proved their error. Fort Washington was attacked on the sixteenth of November by a force of five thousand Hessians and some English troops, under General Knyphausen, and was taken by storm. The enemy lost nearly one thousand men and took over two thousand prisoners. Washington witnessed the capture from Fort Lee without the ability to aid the garrison.

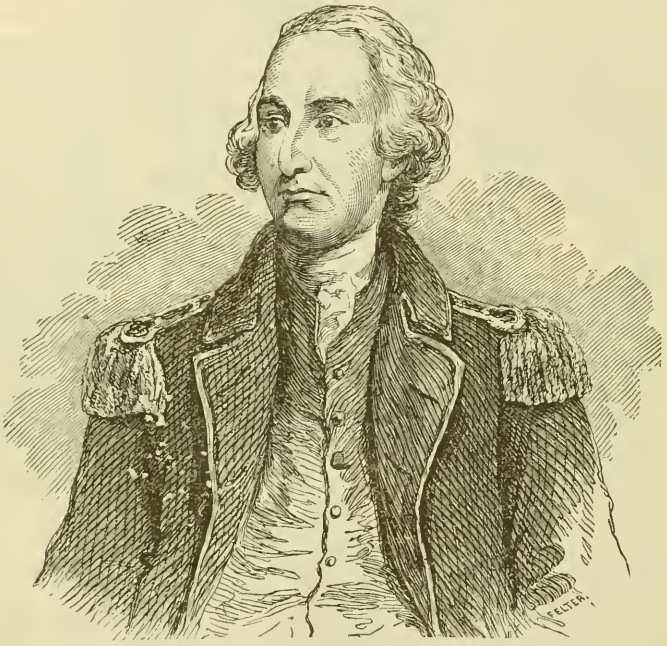
Fort Washington having fallen, Fort Lee was no longer of service, and the commander-in-chief resolved to abandon it before it was too late. The removal of the stores was at once begun, but before it could be completed Lord Cornwallis, with a force of six thousand men, crossed the Hudson below Dobb's Ferry, and by a rapid march across the country endeavored to confine the Americans to the strip of land between the Hudson and the Hackensack. An immediate retreat from Fort Lee became necessary in order to secure the bridge over the Hackensack. All the heavy cannon at Fort Lee, a considerable quantity of provisions and military stores, and three hundred tents were abandoned, and fell into the hands of the British. The passage of the Hackensack was secured, and the army began its memorable retreat across New Jersey, closely followed by the enemy under Cornwallis.

Dark Days for the American Cause.

From the Hackensack Washington fell back behind the Passaic at Newark. As his rear-guard passed out of the town the advance of Cornwallis entered Newark. The Raritan was crossed at New Brunswick, and Washington left a force of twelve hundred men at Princeton, under Lord Stirling, and pushed on to Trenton to secure the passage of the Delaware.

The British hung closely upon him during the whole retreat, the opposing forces being often within cannon-shot of each other. On the eighth of December, with scarcely three thousand men, Washington crossed the

Delaware at Trenton, and went into camp in Pennsylvania. The enemy reached the river soon after, but, as all the boats had been secured by the Americans, were unable to cross over. Lord Cornwallis was very anxious to procure boats, cross the river and push on to Philadelphia, but Howe decided to wait until the river should be frozen, and to pass it on the ice. In the meantime the Hessians were stationed in Trenton, and guarded the river for some distance above and below the town.



GENERAL CHARLES LEE.

The American war had now entered its darkest period for the Americans. New York was lost to them, they had been driven from New Jersey, and their army seemed melting away. During the painful retreat across New Jersey, Washington had exerted himself to the utmost to call in the other detachments of his army. General Schuyler was directed to send him the Pennsylvania and New Jersey troops in his command; but the enlistments of these troops were rapidly expiring, and they could not be induced to renew them. General Charles Lee was ordered to cross the Hudson and join the commander-in-chief with all speed, but he moved with a slowness and carelessness that were criminal. He remained about a fortnight on the east side of the Hudson, and then began his march with such slowness that he did not reach Morristown until the eighth of December.

On the thirteenth, while lying carelessly apart from his troops, at a small inn at Basking ridge, he was captured by a troop of British cavalry. The command passed to General Sullivan, and in a few days he had united his forces with those of the commander-in-chief. General Lee had an abiding confidence in his own ability, and was reluctant to lose his independent command by joining Washington. His natural self-conceit had been greatly increased by his success at the South, and he was firmly convinced that he alone was capable of guiding the American cause through the difficulties which encompassed it. Influenced by this feeling, he disregarded the authority of the commander-in-chief, and subjected him to great inconvenience. He was not untrue to the cause he had embraced, but his patriotism was of a different type from that which animated Washington.

The enlistments of a large part of the troops expired on the first of December, and nothing could induce them to remain in the army. Whole regiments abandoned the service, and the handful of reinforcements which was obtained from Philadelphia fell far short of supplying their place. The people were disheartened, and it seemed

that the cause was hopeless. A force of six militia regiments in Massachusetts and Connecticut was on the point of marching to Washington's assistance, when the fleet of Sir Peter Parker entered Newport Harbor and landed a force on the island of Rhode Island, which took possession of Newport. In view of this invasion, it was deemed best to retain the New England militia at home.

Taking the Oath of Allegiance.

Washington was fully alive to the danger which threatened the cause; but he was calm and cheerful. During the retreat through New Jersey he said to Colonel Reed: "Should we retreat to the back parts of Pennsylvania, will the Pennsylvanians support us?" "If the lower counties are subdued and give up," said the colonel, "the back counties will do the same." Washington passed his hand over his throat, and said, with a smile: "My neck does not feel as though it was made for a halter. We must retire to Augusta County, in Virginia. Numbers will be obliged to repair to us for safety; and we must try what we can do in carrying on a predatory war; and if overpowered, we must cross the Allegheny Mountains."

At this juncture of affairs Lord and General Howe issued a proclamation, by virtue of their authority as commissioners appointed by the crown for the settlement of the war, in which all persons in America in arms against his majesty's government were ordered to disperse and return to their homes, and all civil officers were commanded to discontinue their treasonable practices, and relinquish their usurped authority. A full and free pardon was offered to every one who would, within sixty days, appear before certain designated officials, claim the pardon offered, and take an oath pledging him to obey the laws and submit to the authority of the king.

Large numbers of persons, most of whom were possessed of property which they desired to save, at once came forward, made their submission and took the required oath. Some of these were men who had borne a prominent part in the patriot movement; among them were two delegates from Pennsylvania to the Continental Congress, and the president of the New Jersey convention, which had ratified the Declaration of Independence. Within ten days after the proclamation was issued, between two and three thousand persons submitted and swore allegiance to the king. In Philadelphia great excitement prevailed, and General Putnam, who was in command there, feeling that there was danger that the royalists in the city might succeed in obtaining control of it, advised that, until matters were placed on a more certain footing, Congress should hold its sessions at some safer place. Accordingly it adjourned on the twelfth of December to meet in Baltimore.

A Gallant Fleet.

The only quarter in which the Americans had been able to oppose anything of a successful resistance to the British was the region of Lake Champlain. We have related the retreat of Sullivan and Arnold from Canada, and the appointment of Gates to the command of their forces. The army halted at Forts Ticonderoga and Crown Point, which it strengthened, and awaited the development of the plans of Sir Guy Carleton, the British commander in Canada.

That officer had determined to secure the control of Lakes Champlain and George, and then to push on to the Hudson, open communication with the Howes at New York, and spend the winter at Albany. He would thus entirely sever the communication between New England and New York, and the Middle and Southern States. Sullivan

had wisely destroyed all the boats on Lake Champlain which he did not need for his own purposes, and as there was no road along the shore by which he could advance, Carleton was obliged to construct a fleet before he could attempt to ascend the lake. He exerted himself with such energy that in three months he had a fleet of five large and twenty small vessels and a number of armed boats assembled at the foot of the lake.

Gates was informed of Carleton's design, and ordered Arnold, who was possessed of some nautical knowledge, to construct a flotilla and take command of it for the purpose of contesting Carleton's effort to ascend the lake. Arnold set to work with enthusiasm, and soon had a force of vessels afloat about half as strong as that of the enemy. He chose a favorable position and awaited Carleton's approach. A sharp encounter occurred between the opposing forces early in October near Valcour Island, but was indecisive, and at nightfall Carleton took possession to cut off Arnold's retreat. The night was dark and cloudy, and taking advantage of it, Arnold passed the enemy and sailed for Crown Point. His vessels were in bad condition, however, and two were sunk on the voyage. Only six succeeded in coming within sight of Crown Point, near which they were overtaken by Carleton on the sixth of October.

The Flag-ship Riddled.

Arnold made a gallant fight with his remaining vessels. One was taken with her crew, and Arnold's flag-ship, the "Congress," was cut to pieces, and half of her crew were slain. Resolved not to surrender, Arnold ordered the vessels to be run aground, and set them on fire. He and his men then waded ashore, and by a sharp fire from their rifles kept the enemy from the burning galleys until they were entirely consumed. The Americans then hastened to Crown Point, where they set fire to the fort and the stores, and continued their retreat to Ticonderoga. Gates greatly strengthened the defences of this post, and when Carleton arrived before it, he found it too strong to be attacked. He therefore abandoned his attempt to reach the Hudson, and returned to Canada.

A few weeks later, feeling that the lake country was safe for the winter, Gates, in obedience to orders from Washington, sent him part of his force, and shortly afterwards marched with the remainder of his troops to the assistance of the commander-in-chief.

New Military Movements.

Including these troops, Washington's force now numbered about six thousand men fit for duty. The enlistments of many of them would expire on the last day of December, and it was of the highest importance that something should be done to revive the confidence of the country before these men should be lost to the army. The circumstances in which Washington was placed required a blow to be struck in some quarter. A victory would be productive of the most important moral results; a defeat could do no more than ruin the cause, and a policy of inaction was sure to accomplish that.

An opportunity at once presented itself. The British had ceased their pursuit, and though they held New Jersey in strong force, had scattered their detachments through the state. General Howe was in New York, and Lord Cornwallis was at the same place, and was about to sail for England. Both commanders believed the American army to be too seriously crippled to assume the offensive during the winter. The Hessians, who constituted the advance-guard of the royal forces, were stationed along the Delaware. Colonel Donop had his headquarters at Burlington, and Colonel Rahl

WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE.

was at Trenton with a force of fifteen hundred men. Rahl was a brave and competent officer, but he entertained such a thorough contempt for the Americans that he neglected to protect his position by earthworks or other defences. The Hessians kept the country in terror; they were inveterate thieves, and plundered both patriot and royalist without mercy. They had earned the deep and abiding hatred of the American soldiers by bayoneting the wounded in the battles in which they had been engaged.

Midnight Marches.

Washington now determined to re-cross the Delaware and attack the Hessians at different points. A force of twenty-four hundred picked troops under his own command was to cross the river a few miles above Trenton and attack the enemy at that place; and the same time another detachment under Reed and Cadwallader were to cross over from Bristol and drive the Hessians under Colonel Donop out of Burlington. These attacks were to be simultaneous, and were ordered to be made at five o'clock on the morning of the twenty-sixth of December.

The division of Washington was accompanied by a train of twenty-four field-pieces under Colonel Knox. The river was high and full of floating ice, and the weather was cold and stormy. A detachment of boats had been collected for the service, and was manned by Colonel Glover's regiment of Marblehead fishermen, who had ferried the army over the East River in the retreat from Long Island. The march was begun just after dark on Christmas night, and Washington hoped to reach the New Jersey shore by midnight; but the passage of the river was difficult and tedious by reason of the floating ice and the high wind which repeatedly swept the boats out of their course; and it was four o'clock before the artillery was landed. The march was at once resumed. Washington, with the main body, moved by a wide circuit to gain the north of the town, while a detachment under Sullivan was ordered to advance by the river road and attack the enemy from the west and south sides.

A blinding storm of hail and snow delayed the advance of the troops, but also concealed their movements from the enemy; and it was eight o'clock before Trenton was reached. The attack was at once begun, and was pressed with vigor. The Hessians were completely taken by suprise; they flew to arms promptly, but by this time the Americans had gained the main street, and were sweeping it with a battery of six pieces. Colonel Rahl was mortally wounded while leading his grenadiers to the charge, and his men, seized with a panic, endeavored to retreat. Finding that they were surrounded, about one thousand of them threw down their arms and surrendered. The remainder succeeded in escaping and joining Colonel Donop at Burlington.

The magnanimity of Washington was shown on this occasion by his paying a friendly visit to Colonel Rahl, who was lying at Trenton on his dying bed. Washington expressed his sympathy for the wounded officer, who, upon his death, is believed to have been buried in the graveyard of the First Presbyterian Church, where his supposed remains were found fifty years later.

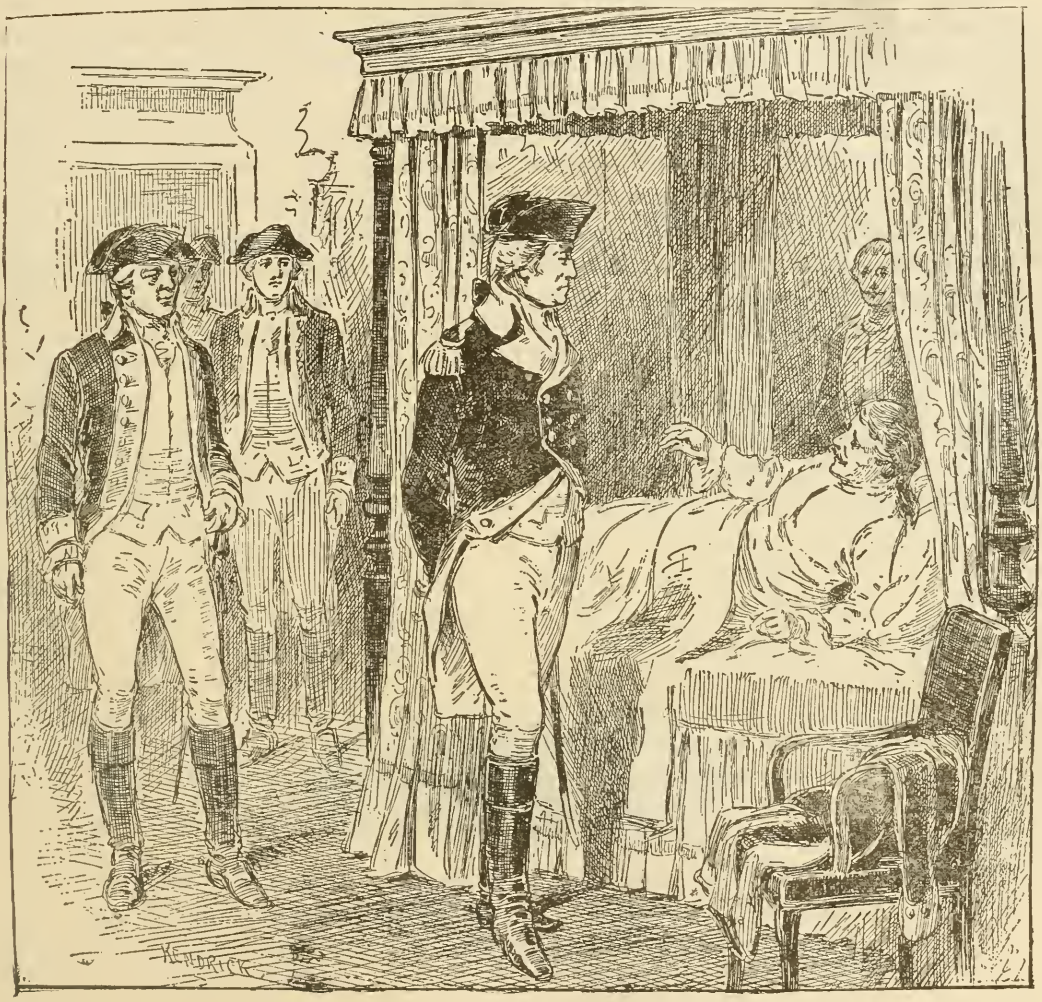
The Victory at Trenton.

The Americans lost two men killed, and two were frozen to death on the march. Several were wounded. They took one thousand prisoners with their arms. Thirty-two of the captives were officers.

Washington now learned that the ice was so thick in front of Bristol that Reed and

Cadwallader had not been able to get their cannon over the river, and had not attacked the enemy at Burlington. He therefore deemed it best to withdraw into Pennsylvania, as Donop's force was still intact at Burlington, and the enemy had another column detachments along the river, and had retreated in haste to New Brunswick and Princeton.

The news of the victory at Trenton was received with delight in all parts of the country, and men began to take hope. Several regiments, whose terms of enlistment



WASHINGTON CALLS ON COLONEL RAHL.

at Princeton, a few miles distant. On the evening of the twenty-sixth he returned to his camp beyond the Delaware. The next day he learned from Reed and Cadwallader, who had crossed the Delaware on the twenty-seventh, that Donop had called in all his expired on the last day of December, were induced to remain six weeks longer. Washington resolved to make an effort to recover New Jersey, and men of influence were sent to rouse the militia of that State to take up arms for the defence of their homes.

Altogether matters assumed a more promising aspect than they had worn at any period of the war. On the thirtieth of December Washington recrossed the Delaware and took position at Trenton.

Honors Conferred on Washington.

About the same time Congress bestowed upon Washington the highest proof of their confidence in his wisdom and integrity that a free people can ever confer upon a leader. On the twenty-seventh of December Congress conferred upon General Washington, by a formal resolution, unlimited military power for six months. The committee, in their letter informing him of this act, wrote; "Happy is it for this country that the general of their forces can safely be entrusted with the most unlimited power, and neither personal security, liberty, nor property be in the least endangered thereby." The confidence of the country was not misplaced. Never was dictatorial power used more wisely or unselfishly, and never did its exercise produce more beneficial results.

It was resolved by Congress to secure assistance from abroad, and on the thirtieth of December Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane and Arthur Lee—the last of whom was appointed in place of Mr. Jefferson who could not go—were sent as commissioners to France to secure the assistance of the government of that country. France was not yet prepared to go to war with England, and the commissioners could do no more than secure aid in money, which was expended in the purchase of supplies and military stores, which were shipped to the United States. It was arranged that this money should be repaid by Congress in the produce of the country, especially in tobacco, which was to be shipped to France through a mercantile house. The assistance thus obtained was of the greatest service to the Americans

CHAPTER XXVIII

The Year 1777

Howe Attempts to Crush Washington—Battle of Princeton—The British Confined to the Seaboard—Recovery of New Jersey—The American Army in Winter Quarters at Morristown—Effects of the American Successes—Difficulty of Procuring Troops—Washington Refuses to Exchange Prisoners—His Course Approved by Congress—Measures of Congress—Naval Affairs—Tryon Burns Danbury—Gallantry of Arnold—Troubles in the Northern Department—Congress Adopts a National Flag—"The Stars and Stripes"—Course of France towards the United States—France Decides to Assist the Americans—Lafayette—His Arrival in America—Capture of the British General Prescott—Howe Threatens Philadelphia—Washington moves Southward—Battle of the Brandywine—Washington Retreats to the Schuylkill—Wayne's Defeat at Paoli—Philadelphia Evacuated by the Americans—It is Occupied by the British—Battle of Germantown—The British Attack the Forts on the Delaware—They are Abandoned by the Americans—Burgoyne's Army in Canada—Advance of Burgoyne into New York—Investment of Ticonderoga—It is Abandoned by the Americans—The Retreat to Fort Edward—Burgoyne reaches the Hudson—Murder of Miss McCrea—Siege of Fort Schuyler—Battle of Bennington—Critical Situation of Burgoyne—Gates in Command of the American Army—Battle of Behmus' Heights and Stillwater—Surrender of Burgoyne's Army—Clinton in the Highlands.

GREAT was the atonishment of General Howe when he learned of the battle at Trenton. He could scarcely believe that a handful of militia had captured a strong force of veteran troops led by such a commander as Colonel Rahl. He at once took prompt measures to repair the disaster. Lord Cornwallis, who was on the eve of sailing to England, was ordered to resume his command in New Jersey, and a force of seven thousand men was rapidly collected and placed under his orders. These troops rendezvoused at Princeton.

Washington was informed of these movements, and ordered Generals Mifflin and Cadwallader to join him without delay. They reached Trenton the first of January, with thirty-five hundred men. This increased the American force to about five thousand men fit for duty. Upon the approach of Cornwallis' army, Washington took position behind the Assunpink, and prepared to dispute the passage of that stream. The fords and bridge over the creek were carefully guarded, and were swept by the fire of the artillery placed to command them. A force under Ceneral Greene and Colonel Hand was thrown forward to hold the enemy in check, and so retarded their movements that the British army did not arrive before Trenton until four o'clock in the afternoon of January 2, 1777. Cornwallis made several determined efforts to force a passage of the creek, but was each time driven back by the well-directed fire of the provincials. Thinking that he could accomplish more the next day, the British commander drew off his men, resolving to renew the attack in the morning when, he boasted, he would "bag the fox." Both armies encamped for the night in sight of each other, reddening the sky with the glow of their camp-fires.

The situation of the American army was now critical in the extreme. A retreat into Pennsylvania was impossible, as the Delaware was full of floating ice, and could not be passed in the face of such an army as that of Cornwallis. The issue of the next day's conflict was, to say the least, doubtful, for the army of Cornwallis was composed mainly of veteran troops, and he was himself a leader

of genuine ability. In this emergency Washington determined upon one of the most brilliant and well-conceived operations of the war. It was known to him that the British had their main depot of supplies at New Brunswick, and he supposed from the presence of so many troops with Cornwallis that this depot had been left unguarded. He therefore resolved to break up his camp, and march by an unfrequented road around the left flank of the enemy to Princeton, capture the force stationed there, and then hasten to New Brunswick and secure the stores at that place. Sending his heavy baggage and stores down the river to Burlington. Washington silently withdrew his army from its position at midnight, leaving the camp-fires burning to deceive the enemy, and a small force to watch the British and destroy the bridges after the army had passed on.

AMERICAN MARKSMAN IN A TREE.

A forced march brought the Americans within three miles of Princeton by daybreak, on the morning of the third of January. The army was divided into two divisions, one under Washington and the other under General Mercer, which approached the town by different routes. Three British regiments on their way to Trenton had passed the previous night at Princeton, and had resumed their march at dawn. The first of these, under Colonel Mawhood, was encountered by the division of General Mercer, about two miles from Princeton. As Mawhood supposed Mercer's force to be a party retreating from Trenton, he at once resolved to attack it. His attack was successful. The Americans were driven back, and General Mercer was

wounded, bayoneted, and left on the field apparently dead. Mercer's troops fell back in confusion, and a body of Pennsylvania militia, which had been sent by Washington to their assistance, was held in check by the fire of the British artillery.

At this moment, Washington, who had been rendered anxious by the obstinate and continued firing, arrived on the field. A glance showed him the broken and shattered regiments of Mercer falling back in confusion, and the Pennsylvania militia wavering under the heavy cannonade directed against them. Not a moment was to be lost, and putting spurs to his horse, he dashed forward in the face of the fire of Mawhood's artillery, and waving his hat, called upon the troops to rally and follow him. The effect was electrical; the fugitives rallied with a loud cheer and reformed their line, and at the same moment a Virginia regiment, which had just arrived, dashed out of a neighboring wood and opened a heavy fire upon the enemy. A little later the American artillery came up, and opened a shower of grape upon the British. Mawhood was driven back, and with great difficulty succeeded in regaining the main road, along which he retreated with all speed to Trenton.

General Mercer Mortally Wounded.

The second British regiment, advancing from Princeton to Mawhood's assistance was attacked by St. Clair's brigade, and was speedily driven across the country towards New Brunswick. The third regiment, seeing the fate of their comrades, became panic-stricken. A portion fled towards New Brunswick, and the remainder took refuge in the college building at Princeton. They surrendered after a few shots from the American artillery.

The Americans lost but a few men in this battle; but General Mercer, a brave and efficient commander, was mortally wounded, and died a few days after the engagement. The British lost about one hundred killed and three hundred prisoners.

Eager to secure the stores at New Brunswick, Washington pushed on with speed in that direction, but after passing a few miles beyond Princeton decided to abandon the attempt. He was sure that Cornwallis would pursue him as soon as his retreat from Trenton was discovered, and his men were too much exhausted to reach New Brunswick before the arrival of the enemy. They had been without rest for a night and a day, and some of them were barefooted. His generals sustained him in the opinion that it was injudicious to continue the movement against New Brunswick, and he reluctantly abandoned it, and withdrew in the direction of Morristown.

New Jersey Saved from the Enemy.

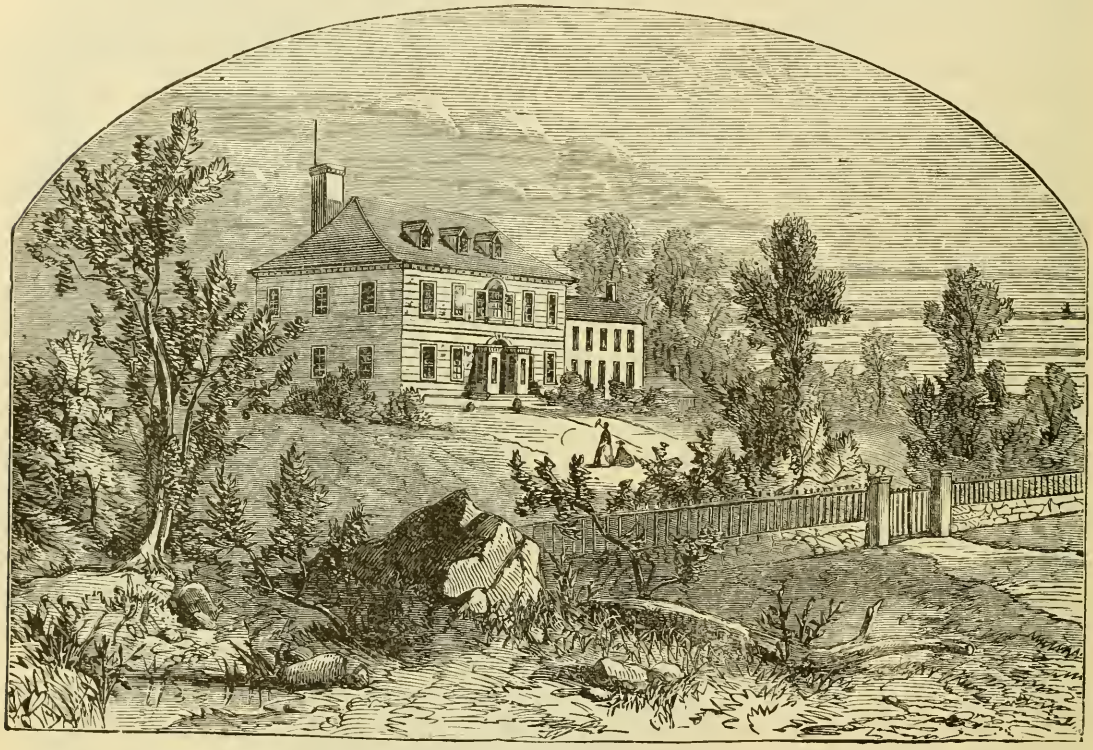
When Cornwallis discovered the withdrawal of the Americans on the morning of the third of January, he was greatly perplexed to know in what direction they had gone. In a little while the sound of the cannonade at Princeton revealed to him the route taken by them, and he at once understood the design of Washington. He must save his stores at any risk, and he broke up his camp and set out for Princeton and New Brunswick. The Americans had obstructed the Princeton road and had broken down the bridge over Stony Creek, a few miles from the town.

Without waiting to rebuild the bridge, the British commander forced his men through the icy waters, which were breast high, and hastened through Princeton with all speed. Believing that Washington had hurried on to New Brunswick, Cornwallis marched direct to that place, and did not notice the deflection of the American army from the

main route. Reaching New Brunswick, he made arrangements to defend the town, which he supposed would be attacked.

In the meantime the American army retreated to a strong position at Morristown, where the troops erected huts in which to pass the winter. Finding that the enemy did not attack him, Washington ventured to extend his line. His right was at Princeton, under General Putnam, and his left, under General Heath, was in the Highlands. His own headquarters were at Morristown. For six months neither party attempted any movement of importance. Washington was not idle, however. Though he had but the skeleton of an army at Morristown, he displayed such activity in cutting off the foraging parties of the British that they were unable to draw any supplies from the country beyond their lines, and rarely ventured without their camps.

By the beginning of spring Cornwallis had abandoned every post in New Jersey save New Brunswick and Perth Amboy. From these points he could communicate with and draw his supplies from New York by water. Thus was New Jersey almost entirely redeemed from the enemy. The militia of the state recovered from their former despondency and warmly seconded the efforts of Washington against the British.



WASHINGTON'S QUARTERS AT MORRISTOWN.

Confidence was returning to the country; and though men felt that the struggle might yet be long and arduous, it was not as hopeless as they had feared.

Washington passed the winter in endeavoring to reorganize the army and fit it for

the work required of it in the spring. The policy of short enlistments adopted by Congress was the source of very great trouble, and the expiration of the enlistments of a large part of the army during this winter caused the commander-in-chief the greatest anxiety. He repeatedly condemned this policy, and endeavored to procure the substitution of a longer term. Great efforts were made to procure recruits, but they came in very slowly. In order to check the ravages of the small-pox in the camp, the recruits were inoculated immediately upon their arrival.

Efforts were now made to bring about an exchange of prisoners. The British objected to an exchange of man for man, on the ground that the Americans were rebels, and such an exchange would be an acknowledgment of their belligerent rights. Somewhat later General Howe, who had about five thousand prisoners in New York, renewed the negotiation. The British had treated the captured Americans with great severity and had confined them in warehouses in New York, and in foul hulks anchored in the bay. They were improperly fed, and were allowed to remain almost naked. Their sufferings were fearful, and they were reduced and emaciated in strength and body, until they were truly said to resemble "walking corpses." British cruelty never exhibited itself in a more inhuman form than in the treatment of these unfortunate captives by the royal officials. More than ten thousand of them died in New York, during the war, from the effects of this treatment.

When General Howe's proposal to exchange these men for the Hessians taken by the Americans was received, it was declined by Washington. The Hessians had been well fed and well treated by the Americans, and were hale and hearty, and Washington was unwilling to liberate them for service in the British army, and to receive in exchange for them half-starved men, who were so weak that they could scarcely reach their homes. It was a stern necessity, but it was recognized by Congress, and Washington's view of the matter was sustained.

The Army Reorganized.

During the winter five more major-generals were commissioned by Congress. They were Stirling, St. Clair, Mifflin, Stephen and Lincoln. Arnold, who was the senior brigadier in the service, justly conceived that his rank and services entitled him to promotion, and was indignant at having been passed over in the new appointments, and complained bitterly of the injustice done him. Eighteen brigadier-generals were also appointed. Among them were George Clinton, of New York; Glover, the commander of the Marblehead regiment; Woodford and Muhlenberg, of Virginia; and Hand and Anthony Wayne, of Pennsylvania.

Congress gave great attention to the reorganization of the army during this session. A quartermaster's department was organized, with General Mifflin at its head. Four regiments of cavalry were ordered to be enlisted. The hospital service was reorganized and placed under the control of Dr. Shippen, of Philadelphia; and Dr. Rush, of Philadelphia, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, was appointed surgeon-general of the army.

Efforts were also made to place the navy upon a better footing, Several of the frigates ordered by Congress to be built had been completed and equipped; but the work on the rest was delayed by the want of funds. Efforts were made to complete them, as they were greatly needed, all the vessels constituting the American fleet being at this time blockaded in the harbor of Providence, Rhode Island, by the enemy.

Since the beginning of the struggle a destructive warfare had been carried on by the privateers of New England against the commerce of Great Britain, especially against the vessels of that country trading to the West Indies. During the first years of the war nearly three hundred of these were captured by the privateers. The cargoes of the captured vessels were valued at the immense sum of five millions of dollars. The American merchantmen also maintained a regular communication with France, Spain and Holland, and a profitable trade was carried on between the United States and those countries. It was attended with great risk, however, and many of the American vessels were captured by the British men-of-war.

Military Stores Destroyed.

Washington remained at Morristown some time after the spring opened, and exerted himself to the utmost to take the field as soon as the enemy should develop their plans. The first months of the season were employed by the British commander in a series of plundering expeditions. One of these was directed against Peekskill, where the Americans had collected a large quantity of stores. General McDougall, commanding the American force at that point, found it impossible to defend the stores, and set fire to them and retreated to the heights overlooking the town. The enemy made no attempt to follow him, and returned down the river. General Heath had been transferred to the command of the forces in Massachusetts, and was succeeded in the command of the Highlands by General Putnam.

In the latter part of April General Tryon, the last royalist governor of New York, was sent by General Howe with a force of two thousand men, to destroy a large quantity of stores collected by the Americans at Danbury, in the western part of Connecticut, about twenty-three miles from the Sound. On the twenty-sixth of April Tryon landed near Norwalk, and marched to Danbury, where he burned the stores and set fire to the town. Thus far he had met with no opposition; but the alarm had spread immediately after his landing, and the Conneticut militia, to the number of six hundred men, assembled under Generals Silliman and Wooster. Arnold chanced to be at New Haven, and collecting a small force of volunteers, hurried to join Silliman and Wooster, and the whole command hastened after the marauders.

Tryon Retreats to New York.

Tryon began his retreat from Danbury before daylight on the morning of the twenty-seventh, and was soon after attacked by the militia. During the twenty-seventh and twenty-eighth the British were harrassed at every step by the little band of Americans, who, though too weak to defeat them in any single encounter, hung upon their march and inflicted upon them a loss of nearly three hundred men. The enemy at last came under the protection of the guns of their ships and the Americans were forced to withdraw. Tryon then re-embarked his exhausted troops and returned to New York.

The American loss was slight. The brave old General Wooster, a veteran of sixty-eight years, was mortally wounded at the head of his men and died a few days later. Arnold behaved with such distinguished gallantry in this affair that Congress rewarded him with the rank of major-general and presented him with a horse handsomely equipped. Even this acknowledgment of his merit was mingled with injustice, for the date of his commission still left him below the rank he was entiled to, and he felt the second slight as another undeserved injury.

The Connecticut militia were very indignant at the burning of Danbury, and resolved to avenge it. In the latter part of May a party of one hundred and seventy men, under Colonel Meigs, crossed the Sound in whaleboats to the east end of Long Island. They carried their boats during the night fifteen miles across the neck, and launching them again, proceeded to Sag Harbor, where they destroyed twelve vessels and a large quantity of stores collected there by the British, and made ninety prisoners. They then returned to Connecticut without the loss of a man.

General Schuyler Vindicated.

Recruits came into the American camp very slowly, and various expedients were adopted by Washington to hasten the enlistments. At his instance Congress declared that all indentured servants who enlisted in the army should receive their freedom at once. Bounties in land were offered to such Hessians as should desert the British service. This last measure did not accomplish much towards crippling the enemy.

In the northern department, Schuyler was left with a mere skeleton of an army. He had but seven hundred men, at the most, at Ticonderoga, and he was fearful that Carleton would learn his weakness, pass Lake Champlain on the ice, capture Ticonderoga, and push on to Albany. He repeatedly urged the commander-in-chief to send him reinforcements and supplies, but his request could not be granted, as there were none to spare from Washington's army. During the winter a persistent effort was made to drive Schuyler from his command, in order that Gates might succeed to it.

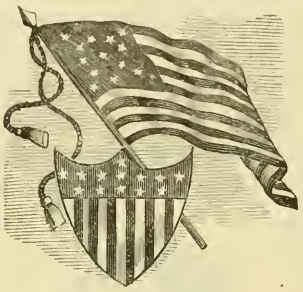
Charges were brought against him with such recklessness that he offered his resignation to Congress. That body refused to accept it; but as the efforts of his enemies were not discontinued, Schuyler went to Philadelphia, in April, 1777, and demanded an investigation into his conduct. Gates succeeded him in his command. Schuyler was fully vindicated by the report of the investigating committee of Congress, and was ordered to resume his command. Gates was greatly surprised by the result, and reluctantly relinquished the command of the northern department to his rival, and repaired to Philadelphia to seek redress at the hands of Congress for what he termed his wrongs.

GENERAL PHILIP SCHUYLER.

Until now the Americans had been without a national flag. Congress, in June, 1777, remedied this very serious want by adopting the old "Union Flag," with its thirteen stripes; but substituted, in place of St. George's Cross, a group of thirteen stars, one for each State. Thus the "Stars and Stripes" became the national ensign of the republic—a star having been added for each additional State that has since joined the original thirteen.

One of the first things that occupied the attention of Congress after the proclamation of the Declaration of Independence was the

preparation of a device for a great seal of the confederation. This was assigned to a committee consisting of Franklin, Jefferson and John Adams. The seal as finally adopted has never been changed.



FLAG AND SHIELD.

The war in America had been watched with the deepest interest in Europe, and especially by France. The French Government had been convinced long before the outbreak of the Revolution that the treatment which the colonies were receiving from Great Britain would ultimately cause their separation from her; and ten years before the war began the Duke de Choiseul, the prime minister of Louis XV., had sent Baron De Kalb to examine and report the state of feelings of the colonists towards Great Britain. De Kalb was a shrewd observer, and furnished his government with ample proofs that England was alienating the Americans by her treatment of them. Choiseul conceived the hope that, by offering the Americans free trade with France, they would be made to resent the course of England even more decidedly.

When the Revolution began the French Government was fully prepared for it, and was ready to avenge the loss of Canada by aiding the new republic in its efforts to throw off the authority of Great Britain. It was merely waiting to see whether the Americans were able to maintain the stand they had taken. The news of the defeat on Long Island, the loss of New York, and the retreat through New Jersey, filled the friends of America with serious alarm, and it was generally believed in Europe that the Americans would not be able to withstand the superior force of the mother country.

In the early spring of 1777 it was known in Europe that the American army, which it was supposed had been driven in hopeless disorder over the Delaware without the means of continuing the war, had suddenly rallied and beaten a force of veteran troops at Trenton, and again at Princeton, and had recovered New Jersey from the enemy. This intelligence produced the most profound astonishment in Europe, and was received in

OBVERSE.

REVERSE.

SEAL OF THE UNITED STATES.

France with genuine satisfaction. The Americans were extolled as a race of heroes, and the prudence and good generalship of Washington were spoken of with the highest praise.

The French Government now felt justified in aiding the patriots, but it proceeded with caution. American privateers were secretly fitted out, with the connivance of the government, and were permitted to sell their prizes in French ports, and the protests of the British ambassador against such acts were unheeded. The government made secret grants of arms and military stores to the Americans, and three shiploads were sent out in the spring of 1777. Two of these vessels were captured by the English, but the third reached America in safety, and its cargo went to supply the deficiencies of the army at Morristown.

In the spring of this year the commissioners sent to France by Congress reached that country. They had full powers to enter into an alliance with the French King. They were granted several private interviews by the Count de Vergennes, the French Prime Minister, and were secretly encouraged to hope for the success of their mission. As yet, however, France was not prepared to declare war against Great Britain.

Though the government delayed its action, there were generous hearts in France who were determined to give all the aid and comfort in their power to the struggling patriots. One of these was the youthful Marquis de Lafayette, the heir of a noble name, the possessor of wealth and a high social position, and the husband of a beautiful and accomplished wife. He had heard at a dinner party given by the French officials at Mayence to the Duke of Gloucester, a brother of the King of England, the story

THE MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE.

of the war then going on in America, and its causes, related by the lips of the royal guest.

His generous heart at once went out in sympathy to the patriots, and he resolved to leave his family and all his advantages at home and go to the aid of the Americans. He revealed his intention to the Count de Broglie, a Marshal of France, who regarded his enterprise as Quixotic and refused to aid him. Finding him determined, the count introduced his young friend to the Baron de Kalb, an officer of experience and merit, who had visited America as Choiseur's agent in the last reign. De Kalb introduced Lafayette to Silas Deane, then the only American Commissioner in France.

A Young Major-General.

The news of the loss of New York and of New Jersey arrived about this time, but did not lessen the ardor of Lafayette; and though the newly-arrived commissioners, Franklin and Lee, candidly told him that they could not encourage him to hope for a successful issue of their cause, he avowed his determination to proceed. He purchased a vessel, which was loaded with arms and supplies by the commissioners. The French government attempted to prevent him from sailing, but he succeeded in getting off, accompanied by De Kalb and several others. He reached Philadelphia, offered his services to Congress without pay and was commissioned as a major-general in the American army, though not yet twenty years old.

Lafayette was not the only foreigner whose services were accepted by Congress. De Kalb, Count Pulaski and Thaddeus Kosciusko, natives of Poland, and Conway, an Irishman who had seen thirty years' service in the French army, and who, in an evil hour for this country, came to America; and later still Baron Steuben, one of Frederick the Great's veterans, and who did good service to the cause by introducing into the American ranks the drill and discipline of the Prussian army, were commissioned and assigned to duty by Congress.

Capture of a British General.

About the middle of May Washington broke up his camp at Morristown and occupied the heights of Middlebrook in order to watch the British to better advantage. Howe made repeated efforts to draw him from this strong position into the open field, where the superior discipline of the royal troops would give him an advantage, but Washington out-generaled him completely, and Howe finding it impossible to bring on an engagement, withdrew his army to Staten Island.

While these movements were in progress the British sustained a serious loss in the capture of General Prescott, one of their principal officers, who had earned the dislike of the Americans by his arbitrary and contemptuous treatment of them. He was commanding the British forces at Newport, and had his headquarters on the outskirts of the town. On a dark night in July a company of picked men, under Colonel Barton, crossed Narragansett Bay in whale boats, and passing silently through the British fleet landed near Prescott's quarters. The sentinel at the door was secured and the astounded general was roused from his bed and hurried away without being allowed time to dress. He was conveyed within the American lines, and was afterwards exchanged for General Charles Lee.

Washington now learned of the invasion of New York by the army of General Burgoyne, to which we shall refer further on. It was evident that Burgoyne was trying to reach the Hudson. Washington's spies in

ARREST OF GENERAL PRESCOTT

New York informed him that Howe was preparing to send off the larger part of his force by water, and the commander-in-chief was perplexed to know whether Howe intended ascending the Hudson to co-operate with Burgoyne, or to transport his army to Philadelphia by water. Toward the last of July Howe sailed with his fleet from New York and stood out to sea.

Philadelphia Fortified.

Ten days later his ships were reported off the mouth of the Delaware. Washington now felt confident that his design was to attack Philadelphia, and crossed the Delaware with his army and marched to Germantown to await the development of the enemy's plans. About the same time the British fleet stood out to sea again. Its destination was uncertain, and Washington held his army in readiness to march at a minute's notice to the threatened point.

While awaiting the movements of Sir William Howe, Washington visited Philadelphia, where Arnold was in command and was engaged in fortifying the city, to consult with Congress and push forward the measures for the defence of the place. While there he met the newly arrived Lafayette. Washington was an acute judge of men, and at his first interview with Lafayette was deeply impressed with the noble and earnest character of the young soldier, and conceived for him a warm regard, which ended only with his life.

In the midst of the uncertainty attending Howe's movements Washington received urgent appeals from Schuyler for assistance. He sent him two brigades from the Highlands, and ordered Colonel Morgan to join him with his riflemen, who were regarded as more than a match for the Indians of Burgoyne's army. Arnold was also sent to assume command of a division in the northern army, as he was familiar with the country. Putnam was ordered to prevent Sir Henry Clinton, who had been left at New York, from ascending the Hudson and forming a junction with Burgoyne, and General Lincoln, commanding the militia of Massachusetts, was directed to march with a portion of his force to Schuyler's assistance.

As nothing had been heard of the British fleet, Washington was about to move from Germantown into New Jersey once more, when news was received that the enemy had ascended the Chesapeake to its head, and had landed their forces at Elkton, in Maryland, about sixty miles from Philadelphia. The Delaware had been obstructed and fortified a short distance below Philadelphia, and Howe had ascended the Chesapeake in order to secure an undisputed landing. He intended to march his army across the country towards Philadelphia, while the fleet should return to the Delaware and aid the army in reducing the forts on that river. He had eighteen thousand men with him, and effected his landing in Elkton without opposition on the twenty-fifth of August, and at once began his advance toward Philadelphia.

Battle of the Brandywine.

Washington had but eleven thousand effective men with him, and was in no way prepared to undertake a campaign in the open country. Nevertheless, he advanced at once to dispute the progress of the enemy, and by forced marches succeeded in reaching the vicinity of Wilmington before the arrival of the British. Upon examining the country he decided to contest the passage of the Brandywine Creek, and stationed his army along its left bank.

The British were advancing by the main road to Philadelphia, which crossed the Brandywine at Chadd's Ford, and as Washington supposed their main effort would be

made at this point, he stationed the greater part of his army to cover it. On the eleventh of September the British army reached the creek. Howe ordered General Knyphausen to make a feint at Chadd's Ford as if he were about to force a passage, while he sent Cornwallis with a strong column to pass the creek higher up and turn the American right flank. This plan was successfully carried out. Washington was deceived by the officer sent to ascertain if the enemy were threatening his right, and was left in ignorance of Cornwallis' movement until it was too late to prevent it. Being outflanked, the American army was compelled to fall back with a loss of twelve hundred men. The troops did not know they had suffered a reverse, but supposing they had merely experienced a check were in high spirits.

LAFAYETTE AND WASHINGTON.

Lafayette was wounded in this battle, and Pulaski so greatly distinguished himself that he was subsequently rewarded by Congress with the rank of brigadier-general and the command of the cavalry.

Sir William Howe did not push his advantage, but remained for two days near the battle-field. Washington in the meantime retreated to Chester, and then to the Schuylkill, which he crossed on the twelfth of September, and proceeded to Germantown, where the army went into camp. The men were in excellent spirits, and a day or two later Washington recrossed the river and moved towards the enemy, whom he encountered about twenty-five miles from Philadelphia on the sixteenth. A violent rain storm prevented the two armies from engaging, and injured the arms and ammunition of the men so much that Washington deemed it best to withdraw to Pott's Grove, on the Schuylkill, about thirty miles from Philadelphia. At the same time he detached General Wayne, with a force of fifteen hundred men, to gain the enemy's rear and cut off their wagon train. A Tory carried information of this movement to the British commander, and Wayne was himself surprised at Paoli tavern, on the twentieth of September, and defeated with a loss of three hundred men.

Philadelphia and the British.

It being impossible to save the city of Philadelphia from capture the military stores were removed, and a contribution was levied upon the people to supply the army with clothing, shoes and other necessaries during the winter. Congress, in view of the great danger which threatened the country, conferred dictatorial powers upon Washington for sixty days, and then extended this time to a period of four months. Congress then adjourned to meet at Lancaster, from which, a few days later, it transferred its sessions to York, beyond the Susquehanna.

Howe crossed the Schuylkill by a night march, and on the twenty-sixth of September entered Philadelphia. The bulk of his army was stationed at Germantown, and a small detachment was left to hold the city.

The Americans, though they had lost Philadelphia, still held the forts on the Delaware, a short distance below the mouth of the Schuylkill. The work on the Pennsylvania side was called Fort Mifflin, and was built on a low mud island. Immediately opposite, at Red Bank, on the New Jersey shore, was Fort Mercer. Both works were armed with heavy guns, and commanded the river perfectly. The channel was obstructed with heavy logs fastened together and sunk in the stream so securely as to render their removal difficult. Above these obstructions were several floating batteries.

A Victory Given Away.

After landing the British army at Elkton, Lord Howe carried his fleet down the Chesapeake, and entering the Delaware took position below the forts to await the co-operation of the army in the attack upon them.

Washington having learned that Howe had withdrawn a part of his force from Germantown to aid in the operations against the fort, resolved to surprise the remainder. A night march of fourteen miles brought the American army to Germantown at sunrise on the morning of the fourth of October. A heavy fog hung over the country and prevented the commander-in-chief from seeing either the position of the enemy or that of his own troops.

The British were taken by surprise, and were driven in disorder. The victory seemed within the grasp of Washington, when the Americans abandoned the pursuit to attack a stone house in which a few of the enemy

had taken refuge. While thus engaged they were seized with an unaccountable panic, which threw them into confusion. The British rallied, and, assailing the Americans in their turn, drove them from the field with a loss of one thousand men. Washington was greatly mortified by this failure. He wrote to Congress: "Every account confirms the opinion I at first entertained, that our troops retreated at the instant when victory was declaring herself in our favor."

Howe now drew in his army nearer to Philadelphia, and prepared for an immediate attack on the forts on the Delaware. These held that river so securely that the British fleet was not able to bring supplies up to the city. The provisions of the army were nearly exhausted, and if the forts could not be reduced it would be necessary to evacuate Philadelphia in order to obtain food. On the twenty-second of October, Count Donop was sent with a force of twelve hundred picked Hessians to storm Fort Mercer, at Red Bank, while the fleet reduced Fort Mifflin. Donop's attack was repulsed with a loss of four hundred men, the Hessian commander himself being among the slain. In the attack on Fort Mifflin the British lost two ships, and the remainder were more or less injured by the fire of the American guns.

Washington at Valley Forge.

Shortly after this repulse, the British erected batteries on a small island in the Delaware, which commanded Fort Mifflin, and on the tenth of November opened a heavy bombardment of the fort from these works and from their fleet. The bombardment was continued until the night of the fifteenth. The works being nearly destroyed, Fort Mifflin was abandoned on the night of the sixteenth, and on the eighteenth the garrison was withdrawn from the fort at Red Bank. The British now removed the obstructions from the river, and their fleet ascended to Philadelphia. General Howe constructed a strongly fortified line from the Schuylkill to the Delaware, above Philadelphia, and went into winter quarters with his army behind these defences.

The season being too late for active operations, Washington withdrew his army to Valley Forge on the Schuylkill, about twenty miles from Philadelphia, and went into winter quarters. From this position he could protect Congress, sitting at York.

Burgoyne's Great "War Feast."

In the northern department the year had been marked by the most important events. Sir Guy Carleton was succeeded in the command of the British forces in Canada by General Burgoyne, an officer of ability and integrity. He was strongly reinforced and soon had under his command a finely equipped army of ten thousand men. Burgoyne gave a great "war feast" to the Indians, who, in answer to his appeal on this occasion, promised to aid him, thinking that with his fine large army he would be able to whip the rebels in a short time.

About eight thousand of Burgoyne's troops were British and Hessian regulars, the remainder Canadians and Indians. The army was plentifully supplied with artillery of the most improved pattern, which was under the immediate command of General Philips, a veteran who had served with great distinction in the seven years' war. The second in command of the army was General Frazer, an officer of acknowledged skill, who was greatly beloved by the troops. Baron Reidesel, the commander of the Hessians, was also an old soldier. Altogether, the force under Burgoyne was the most splendid body of troops Great Britain had yet assembled in America. With this army Burgoyne was to

advance by way of Lake Champlain to the Hudson, while a detachment under General St. Leger was to move eastward by way of Oswego and descend the Mohawk to the Hudson. Having secured the Hudson, Burgoyne was to open communication with Sir Henry Clinton in New York, capture the forts in the Highlands and so cut off New England from the Middle and Southern States.

To oppose his advance General Schuyler had a weak army between Albany and Lake Champlain. General St. Clair, with a detachment of three thousand men held Ticonderoga, and though he seriously feared that his force was too weak to offer much resistance, trusted to the natural strength of his position and hoped to be able to hold Ticonderoga until aid could reach him.

On the second of July Burgoyne's army appeared before Ticonderoga and invested that post. Opposite Fort Ticonderoga, on the right-hand side of the outlet of Lake George, is a lofty hill known as Mount Defiance. The Americans had neglected to fortify this hill, thinking it inaccessible to artillery. General Philips was of a different opinion, and in three days of hard labor succeeded in dragging his guns to the summit of Mount Defiance, from which they commanded the forts on both sides of the lake

GENERAL BURGOYNE ADDRESSING THE INDIANS.

St. Clair now saw that the forts were untenable and that he must evacuate them at once in order to save his army. Sending his baggage and stores in boats up the lake to Skenesborough, now Whitehall, he evacuated Fort Ticonderoga and crossed over to Fort Independence, on the opposite side of the lake.

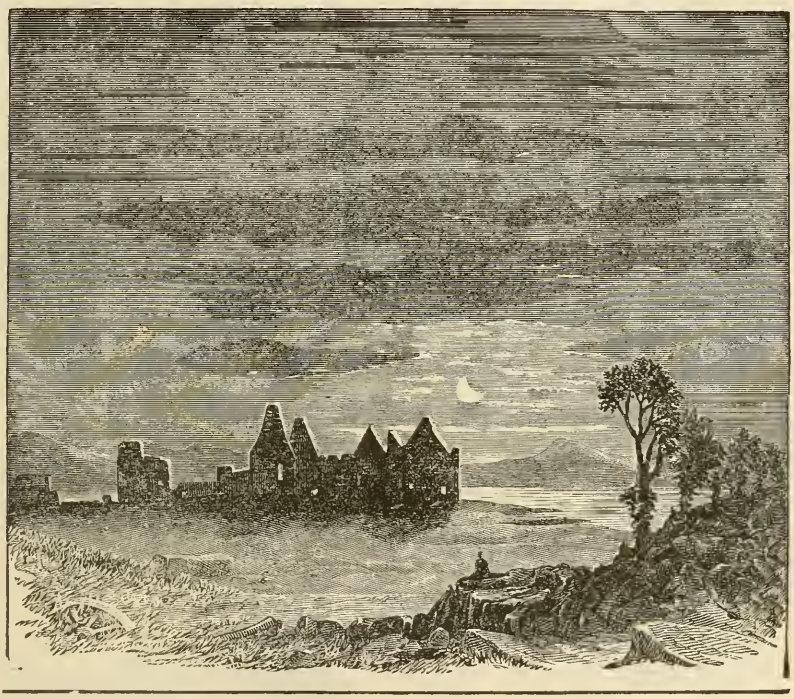
His withdrawal was discovered before it was completed, and the British at once

followed in pursuit. Burgoyne ordered General Frazer to follow St. Clair's command, while he himself passed up the lake and destroyed the stores at Skenesborough. Upon his approach, on the afternoon of the seventh, the American force at Skenesborough set fire to the stores and retreated rapidly to Fort Anne, which was reached the next morning. The British appeared before this fort the same day, but were held in check, and that night the Americans set fire to Fort Anne and retreated to Fort Edward, sixteen miles further.

On the afternoon of the seventh General Frazer came up with St. Clair's rear guard at Hubbardton and defeated it with severe loss. St. Clair continued his retreat through the woods, and a week later reached Fort Edward with his exhausted troops.

General Schuyler had advanced to Fort Edward with a force of five thousand men, nearly all of whom were militia. Many were without arms, and there was a woeful scarcity of ammunition and provisions in his camp. Schuyler was joined here by the remnant of Saint Clair's command, and as Burgoyne had halted for a few days at the head of Lake Champlain, which was twenty-four miles distant from Fort Edward, Schuyler set his men to work to obstruct the road between those two points by felling trees across it and by destroying bridges. So thoroughly was this work done that Burgoyne's army consumed a fortnight in its advance from Skenesborough to the Hudson. It reached the neighborhood of Fort Edward on the twenty-ninth of July. Schuyler at once abandoned the fort, and fell back to Saratoga, from which he moved to Stillwater, near the mouth of the Mohawk.

The loss of Ticonderoga and the northern forts was regarded by Congress as an evidence of the incapacity of Schuyler and his subordinates, and so little allowance was made for the serious disadvantages under which those officers labored, that Congress ordered all the northern generals to be recalled and their conduct investigated. It was not until Washington called the attention of Congress to the fact that a compliance with this order would leave the northern army without officers, that that body consented to suspend its unwise decree.



RUINS OF FORT TICONDEROGA.

The prejudice against Schuyler, though unjust, was deep, and his removal from his command was resolved upon. Washington declined to deprive him of his command, as his confidence in Schuyler was unshaken, and Congress took the matter in its own hands. "The eastern influence prevailed," says Irving, "and Gates received the appointment so long the object of his aspirations, if not intrigues."

Upon reaching Fort Edward, Burgoyne, confident that the game was in his own hands, issued a proclamation calling upon the people to send representatives to a convention to meet at Castleton to provide for the re-establishment of the royal authority. This was met by a proclamation from Schuyler, who declared that he would punish as traitors all who should comply with Burgoyne's call, or in any way give aid and comfort to the enemy. There was not much need for this threat, for the militia of the northern district were rapidly rallying to Schuyler's aid. The people of the whole region were profoundly excited, and they were determined that the British army should never leave their country.

Story of Jenny McCrea.

Much of this feeling was caused by the outrages of the Indians in Burgoyne's army, who prowled about the country, murdering and plundering the people who were exposed to their fury. One of their crimes roused the whole northern region to action. A beautiful young girl, Jenny McCrea by name, was visiting a friend near Fort Edward. She was betrothed to a young Tory who had fled to Canada some time since, and was now serving as a lieutenant in Burgoyne's army. When her friends removed from Fort Edward to Albany, to avoid the danger which threatened them, she lingered behind in spite of their invitation to accompany them, hoping to meet her lover upon the advance of Burgoyne's forces.

The house in which she was staying was attacked by a party of Indians, and she was taken prisoner. Anxious for her safety she promised her captors a liberal reward if they would conduct her to her lover in the British camp. On the way they quarrelled over the promised reward, and in their rage murdered the poor girl and carried her scalp into the British camp. Burgoyne was horror-struck at the atrocious deed, and promptly disavowed it; but the news of the murder roused a stern desire for vengeance throughout the northern department. The terrible scenes of the old French war were not forgotten, and the people were fearful they would now be revived under British influence unless Burgoyne's army were destroyed. Thousands flocked to the American camp, with such arms as they could procure, eager to crush the enemy.

The Brave Herkimer.

In the meantime St. Leger had moved from Oswego into the valley of the Mohawk, and had laid siege to Fort Schuyler or Stanwix, on the site of the present city of Rome. The fort was commanded by Colonel Gansevoort. The siege was begun on the third of August, and a few days later news was received by the little garrison that General Herkimer, with eight hundred militia, was advancing to their assistance. On the sixth of August Herkimer reached a place called Oriskany, where, owing to the impatience of his men, he fell into an ambush of Tories and Indians. The fight which ensued was one of the most desperate of the war; quarter was neither asked nor given by either party.

Herkimer was mortally wounded, but continued to cheer on his men, until a successful sally from the fort compelled St. Leger to

recall the force engaged with Herkimer to defend his own camp. The American militia then retreated, carrying with them their commander, who died a few days later. Fort Schuyler was left in a critical condition, and hastily abandoned his camp, and retreated into Canada with the remainder of his force.

Burgoyne had now reached the Hudson, and had full command of Lakes George and Champlain; but the people of the country

HERKIMER MORTALLY WOUNDED.

Arnold was sent at his own request to its relief. He caused the strength of his force to be greatly exaggerated, and spread a report that Burgoyne had been defeated. The Indians deserted St. Leger rapidly upon hearing these reports, and that commander were hostile to him, and he found it hard to procure either cattle or horses. Though his camp on the Hudson was but eighteen miles from Lake George, this lack of animals made it almost impossible to transport his supplies across the intervening country, and his

army was beginning to run short of provisions.

To obtain horses and provisions, Burgoyne, early in August, sent a force of five hundred Germans and a detachment of Indians and Tories, under Lieutenant-Colonel Baum, to seize the stores collected by the Americans at Bennington, Vermont, and to collect such horses and cattle as they could on the march. He was told that the people

GENERAL JOHN STARK.

of the neighborhood were largely devoted to the king, and that the stores were unguarded.

The news of the approach of this force spread rapidly through the country, and the Green Mountain Boys, as the Vermont militia were termed, flew to arms. Colonel Stark, who had retired from the Continental army on account of having been neglected in the recent promotions, was in the neighborhood, and was offered the command of the gathering forces. He accepted it promptly, and issued a warning to the people along the route of the British to drive off their horses and cattle, and to conceal their grain and wagons to prevent their capture by the enemy. A messenger was sent with all speed to Manchester to Colonel Seth Warner, urging him to march at once with his regiment to Bennington, where he was needed.

Battle of Bennington.

Baum had advanced to within six miles of Bennington when he heard of the approach of the militia under Stark. He halted, intrenched his position, and sent to Burgoyne for reinforcements. Colonel Breyman with five hundred Hessians and two pieces of artillery was despatched to his assistance.

Stark was prevented from making an immediate attack upon Baum by a furious rain-storm, which also delayed the march of Breyman and Warner. During the night of the fifteenth of August Stark was joined by the militia from Berkshire, Massachusetts They were anxious to engage the enemy at once, and were impatient at the delay caused by the storm. One of their number, Parson Allen, approached Stark. "General," said he, "the people of Berkshire have often been called out to no purpose; if you don't give them a chance to fight now they will never turn out again." Stark remarked his earnestness, and said, with a smile, "You would not turn out now, while it is dark and raining, would you?" "Not just now," answered the parson. "Well," said Stark, "if the Lord should once more give us sunshine, and I don't give you fighting enough, I'll never ask you to turn out again."

The morning of the sixteenth came bright and clear, and Stark at once began his advance upon the enemy. Arriving in sight of the British works, he pointed them out to his men. "There are the red coats! We

PUTNAM'S ESCAPE AT HORSE NECK

MASSACRE AT FORT MIMMS

must beat them to-day or Molly Stark sleeps a widow to-night." A spirited attack was made upon the British lines, both in front and in the rear, and after two hours' hard fighting they were carried by storm. Baum fell mortally wounded and his men laid down their arms. The Indians and Tories had escaped to the woods at the opening of the battle.

The fighting had scarcely ended when the force under Colonel Breyman appeared and at once engaged the Americans. At the same moment Warner's regiment, which had pushed forward all night in the rain, reached the field. The battle was continued until nightfall, when Breyman abandoned his artillery and made a hurried retreat to Burgoyne's camp on the Hudson. The Americans had fourteen killed and forty wounded. They took six hundred prisoners, one thousand stand of arms and four pieces of cannon.

Burgoyne in Straits.

Burgoyne now found himself in a most critical condition. He had reached the Hudson, but his troops were short of provisions; his efforts against Fort Schuyler and Bennington had failed, and his force was being reduced by the desertions of the Indians. Burgoyne, who was a man of humanity and true soldierly spirit, had no sympathy with the barbarous policy of his government in employing the savages against the Americans, and had sternly cut short their cruelties. The Indians had taken offence at his course and were leaving his army in great numbers. He made no effort to detain them, preferring to lose their services rather than allow them to continue their atrocities. On the other hand the American army was daily growing stronger. The militia were flocking to it in great numbers, and reinforcements were received from the Highlands. The militia of New Hanpshire and Massachusetts were threatening Ticonderoga, the capture of which post would cut off his communications with Canada. The contrast between the present condition of the British army and that of a few weeks before was marked indeed.

A Jealous General.

Matters were in this state when General Gates arrived, late in August, and assumed the command of the army, which was now six thousand strong, and receiving reinforcements every day. Schuyler, superior to all sense of personal wrong, cheerfully rendered him all the assistance in his power in mastering the question before him; but Gates repaid his generosity with characteristic jealousy. He did not even invite Schuyler to his first council of war held a few days later. He at once left the position at the mouth of the Mohawk, and on the twelfth of September advanced to Behmus' Heights, a spur of hills bordering the Hudson. The army now numbered nine thousand effective men, indifferently armed, but resolved to conquer. "Gates had no fitness for command," says Bancroft, "and wanted personal courage." He intrenched his position, and for the defence of his right and left flanks erected strong batteries.

Burgoyne by great exertion succeeded in bringing up a month's provisions from Lake George for his army, which was now reduced to about six thousand men. He resolved to adhere to his original plan, and endeavored to force his way to Albany, and on the thirteenth of September crossed the Hudson at Schuylerville, and encamped on the plains of Saratoga, intending to decide the campaign by a general engagement.

On the morning of the nineteenth of September he advanced against the American position. Gates wished to await the attack

of the enemy in his intrenched position, but Arnold urged him to throw forward a force to hold them in check, and not permit them to turn the American left, as they evidently intended. After considerable solicitation he obtained the desired permission from Gates,

GENERAL HORATIO GATES.

and moved forward to check the advance of the British. A determined conflict immediately ensued and continued until nightfall. It was one of the most stubbornly contested engagements of the war, and its result was mainly due to the skill and courage of Arnold, who held the enemy in check during the day, and prevented the success of their plan for turning Gates' left flank. The British remained in possession of the field at night, and the Americans rejoined their main body. The latter regarded the battle as a victory, as they had accomplished all they had expected.

Burgoyne's difficulties thickened rapidly. On the seventeenth a detachment of Massachusetts militia seized the posts at the outlet of Lake George and captured a fleet of three hundred boats loaded with supplies for Burgoyne's army, and took three hundred prisoners. This force then united with another and laid siege to Ticonderoga. These successes completely destroyed Burgoyne's communication with Canada, and with it his means of supplying his army. In this emergency he was greatly encouraged by the receipt of a letter from Sir Henry Clinton at New York, informing him that he (Clinton) would in a few days make an effort to ascend the Hudson and open communication with him.

Burgoyne thereupon resolved to endeavor to hold his position until the arrival of Clinton. Three weeks passed away in inaction, and though skirmishes between the advanced

parties were frequent, neither commander cared to attack the other; Burgoyne because he was anxious to defer a decisive engagement, Gates because he was scantily supplied with ammunition.

Arnold Again at the Front.

The success of the battle of Behmus' Heights was generally attributed by the troops to Arnold, who was very popular with them. Gates' jealously was most probably aroused by this belief, and he unceremoniously deprived Arnold of his command. During this delay the American army was increased by the arrival of the Massachusetts militia and other reinforcements, to about eleven thousand men.

Burgoyne's situation was now more critical than ever. His best officers favored a retreat to Fort Edward; but the British commander decided before undertaking that movement to reconnoitre the American position in strong force. If it was found that it could not be attacked, he was willing to retreat to Fort Edward. A force of fifteen hundred picked men and ten pieces of cannon, commanded by the most experienced officers in the army, was sent on the seventh of October to reconnoitre the American position. Gates, by the advice of Morgan, attacked this force on both flanks, and sent Morgan with his riflemen to cut the enemy off from their camp.

The sound of the firing roused Arnold, who was brooding over his wrongs. He mounted his horse and rode at full speed to the battle-field in spite of the efforts of Gates to stop him. He reached the scene of action and was reconized by the troops, who received him with cheers. Without orders or any definite command, he placed himself at the head of the troops and led them against the enemy. The British, led by General Frazer, held their ground manfully, but at length Frazer was mortally wounded by one of Morgan's riflemen, and his line gave way. Burgoyne fearlessly exposed himself in the efforts to rally his men, but was at length obliged to order a retreat to the camp.

This was accomplished with extreme difficulty, and the Americans, following in close pursuit, made a determined attack upon the British intrenchments, which were stubbornly defended. In this attack Arnold displayed great heroism, and was wounded within the enemy's works. Though they failed to capture the whole line, the Americans carried the camp of Colonel Breymen's regiment of Hessians, the key to Burgoyne's position, and took a number of prisoners.

Success of the Federals.

The Americans bivouaced on the field, intending to renew the battle the next day, but during the night Burgoyne abandoned his sick and wounded, and silently withdrew from his intrenchments. The roads being rendered bad by the rains, he halted and took position about two miles from the town of Saratoga. On the night of the ninth, finding that the Americans held the Hudson in such heavy force as to render its passage impracticable, he retreated to Saratoga. He then sent out a detachment to rebuild the bridges on the road to Fort Edward, but found the road in the possession of the Americans, who also held Fort Edward, and had captured all the boats laden with provisions for his army. He was thus left with but three days rations for his men. On the twelfth the American army, which had followed the British closely, invested their position, and opened a heavy fire on their camp. On the thirteenth Burgoyne called a council of his officers, and it was resolved to open negotiation with Gates.

He proposed to Gates to surrender his army on condition that they should be allowed to sail for England from the port of

Boston, first pledging themselves not to serve again in North America during the war. Gates had heard of the successes of Clinton on the Hudson, and was fearful that he would reach Albany. He therefore weakly agreed to Burgoyne's proposal, and consented that the British army should march out of camp with the honors of war; that the troops should be taken to Boston and sent to England, and that they should pledge themselves not to serve again in America during the war. These matters being arranged the British army surrendered on the seventeenth of October, and was fed by the Americans, for its provisions were exhausted. About six thousand prisoners were surrendered, together with nearly five thousand muskets, forty-two brass field-pieces and a large quantity of military stores. Upon the surrender of Burgoyne the British garrison at Ticonderoga evacuated that place and retreated into Canada.

Surrender of Burgoyne.

Congress refused to ratify the terms granted to Burgoyne by Gates. It was plain that if they were sent to England they could release an equal number of troops there, who could be sent to the aid of Sir Henry Clinton in New York. This would deprive the United States of one of the most important results of the surrender. Burgoyne and two attendants were permitted to return to England, but the captive troops were held as prisoners of war, and the next year were marched to Charlottesville, Virginia, and quartered in log huts, where the greater part of them remained until near the close of the war.

Some time before Burgoyne's surrender Sir Henry Clinton, having received reinforcements from England, resolved to undertake the capture of the forts in the Highlands of the Hudson, the garrisons of which had been greatly weakened by the detachments sent from them to Washington and Gates. On the sixth of October he attacked and captured Forts Montgomery and Clinton. General George Clinton, who commanded at these forts, finding he could not hold them, sent to General Putnam for assistance, but his messenger deserted to the enemy and the forts were abandoned. General Tryon was sent to occupy Kingston, which he ordered to be burned. When the enemy heard of Burgoyne's surrender they retreated, setting fire to the house of every patriot along the river. Clinton then dismantled the captured forts and returned to New York, taking with him all the heavy cannon and stores.

The capture of Burgoyne's army was hailed with delight throughout the country. It was the most important success of the war, and put an end to the danger of invasion from Canada. Gates was greatly puffed up by his triumph, and imagined himself the hero of the war. He sent his official report of the surrender to Congress direct, and not through the commander-in-chief, as his duty required, thus offering a grave insult to Washington.

General Schuyler now demanded an investigation of his conduct previons to his relinquishment of his command to Gates. He was thoroughly acquitted of the charges of mismanagement brought against him by his enemies, and was strongly urged by Congress to remain in the army. He declined to do so and resigned his commission; but was soon afterwards returned to Congress from the State of New York.

CHAPTER XXIX

Aid from Abroad

Sufferings of the Army at Valley Forge—Appeals of Washington to Congress—The British in Philadelphia—The Conway Cabal—Its Disgraceful Failure—Efforts to Improve the Army—Worthlessness of Continental Bills—General Lee Exchanged—Effect of Burgoyne's Surrender Upon England—The King is Forced to Agree to Measures of Conciliation—Action of France—Louis XVI. Recognizes the Independence of the United States—Alliance Between the United States and France—Failure of the British Measures of Conciliation—Clinton Evacuates Philadelphia—Battle of Monmouth—General Lee Dismissed from the Army—Attack Upon Newport—Its Failure—Withdrawal of the French Fleet to the West Indies—Outrages of the British on Long Island Sound—Massacre of Wyoming—The Winter of 1779-80—The Army in Winter Quarters—Robert Morris—Condition of Congress—Georgia Subdued by the British—Prevost attempts to Take Charleston—Siege of Savannah—Its Failure—Capture of Stony Point—Capture of Paulus Hook—The Indians Punished—Naval Affairs—Exploits of John Paul Jones—Evacuation of Newport—Settlement of Kentucky—Conquest of the Illinois Country by George Rogers Clarke—Settlement of Tennessee.

THE sufferings of the American army during the long winter at Valley Forge were very great. Many were barefooted, and their marches through the frost and snow could be traced by the blood from their feet. They were without clothing, without food and were utterly unable to keep the field. Yet in spite of these sufferings many persons severely censured the commander-in-chief for going into winter quarters without attacking Philadelphia.

In reply to one of these remonstrances from the Legislature of Pennsylvania, Washington wrote to Congress on the twenty-third of December, 1777: "Men are confined to hospitals or in farmers' houses for want of shoes. We have this day no less than two thousand eight hundred and ninety-eight men in camp unfit for duty because they are barefoot and otherwise naked. Our whole strength in Continental troops amounts to no more than eight thousand two hundred in camp fit for duty. Since the fourth instant our numbers fit for duty from hardships and exposures have decreased nearly two thousand men. Numbers still are obliged to sit all night by fires. Gentlemen reprobate the going into winter quarters as much as if they thought the soldiers were made of stocks and stones. I can assure those gentlemen that it is a much easier and less distressing thing to draw remonstrances in a comfortable room by a good fireside than to occupy a cold, bleak hill, and sleep under frost and snow without clothes or blankets. However, although they seem to have little feeling for the naked and distressed soldiers, I feel superabundantly for them, and from my soul I pity those miseries which it is neither in my power to relieve nor prevent."

Congress did little or nothing to relieve the sufferings of the army. It promised the troops one month's extra pay, but made no effort to provide food or clothing for them. It authorized Washington to impress whatever articles he needed, but he remonstrated against this arbitrary use of power, as he was convinced that it would not supply the wants of the army, but would certainly anger the people of the country. Congress towards the close of the winter manifested so much hostility to the army because of its appeals for food and clothes, that Washington earnestly remonstrated against this feeling

and reminded that body that the troops were "citizens, having all the ties and interests of citizens."

It is not too much to say that the personal influence of Washington went further than anything else in keeping the army together during this trying winter. Under any other commander the troops would have dispersed. Encouraged by the calm and lofty patience of Washington, the troops remained faithful to their cause and bore their sufferings with a heroic fortitude which their descendants will ever bear in grateful honor.

All this while the British army was comfortably quartered in Philadelphia, and the officers were billeted upon the inhabitants. They were amply supplied with every comfort, and their leisure time was given up to pleasure and dissipation on a scale the Quaker City had never dreamed of. "By a proportionate tax on the pay and allowances of each officer a house was opened for daily resort and for weekly balls, with a gaming table which had assiduous votaries, and a room devoted to the game of chess. Thrice a week plays were enacted by amateur performers. . . . The officers, among whom all ranks of the British aristocracy were represented, lived in open licentiousness." The contrast between the pleasures and ease of these well-fed troops and the sufferings and privations of the ragged patriots at Valley Forge was marked indeed; and when it is remembered that the comforts of the British could have been purchased by the patriots at the price of desertion their heroic constancy becomes more striking.

The Conway Plot.

The patriotism of Washington was not appreciated by all parties. A number of discontented members of Congress and officers of the army were anxious that he should be removed or forced to resign in order that their favorite General Gates might be promoted to the chief command of the army. One of the prime movers of the intrigue was an Irish adventurer named Conway, who had been promoted to the rank of brigader-genenal, from which circumstance the plot is known as the "Conway Cabal." The entire truth concerning this plot will never be known for after its failure the actors in it were only too glad to disavow their connection with it. The conspirators did not dare to make an open attack upon the commander-in-chief, but undertook by mean of anonymous letters underhanded appeals to the officers and men of the army, and comparisons between Gates success and what they termed Washington's failure, to destroy the confidence of the troops in their leader, and to disgust him with his command and so drive him to resign it.

A Conspiracy Thwarted.

Generals Mifflin and Gates were very active in this conspiricy, and even Sullivan and Wayne were in favor of making Gates commander-in-chief. Dr. Benjamin Rush wrote a letter, to which he did not dare to sign his name, to Patrick Henry, then governor of Virginia, representing the army of Washington as without a head, and disparaging Washington as no general. "A Gates, a Lee or a Conway," he added, "would in a few weeks render them an irresistible body of men. Some of the contents of this letter ought to be made public in order to awaken, enlighten and alarm our country." Patrick Henry took no notice of this paper save to forward it to Washington. A similar anonymous document was forwarded to Henry Laurens, the president of Congress, who also sent it to Washington. Great efforts were made to win over Lafayette to the plot, but without the least success.

Washington was to a great extent aware of the plot against him but took no public

notice of it. He was deeply pained by the unjust censure to which he was subjected, but he never for a moment harbored the thought of laying down the great work he had assumed. He knew his course would bear the most rigid inspection. He knew that the capture of Burgoyne's army which had made Gates the hero of the hour, was due to no skill on the part of that officer but was the result of the plan of defence Washington had long before arranged with General Schuyler. In his efforts to contend against General Howe he was under many disadvantages, not the least of which was the fact that his army was encamped in a region abounding in Tories who refused him any support and constantly aided the British. His army was imperfectly disciplined; it was inferior in numbers and equipment to the enemy; and was in no condition to meet Howe in the open field, still less to undertake the difficult task of driving him from his intrenchments at Philadelphia.

Conway in Disgrace.

"Had the same spirit pervaded the people of this and the neighboring States, as the States of New York and New England," said Washington, "we might have had General Howe nearly in the same situation as General Burgoyne." Washington knew that the salvation of the country demanded his presence at the head of the army. He trusted to time for his vindication, and was chiefly anxious that the enemy should not learn of the dissensions in the councils and camp of the Americans. He firmly opposed the appointment of Conway to the post of "inspector of the armies of the United States," but Congress, under the influence of the cabal, appointed Canway to that place with the rank of major-general.

In a little while the actions of the conspirators became known and aroused such a storm of indignation from the officers and men of the army, from the legislatures of the States, and from the great mass of the people that Gates and Conway and their associates cowered before it, and Congress became heartily

AN AMERICAN RIFLEMAN.

ashamed of having given the plot any encouragement. The only effect of the conspiricy was to raise Washington higher in the confidence and affection of his countrymen. The members of the conspiricy were ever

afterwards anxious to deny their share in it.

The punishment of Gates came as soon as he was entrusted with an independent command, as we shall see. As for Conway, he was despised by the better part of the officers of the army, and found his position so unenviable that he addressed a note to Congress complaining that he had been badly treated, and intimated his intention to resign because he was not ordered to the northern department. Congress was by this time ashamed of having bestowed upon him such undeserved honors, and gladly interpreted his letter as an actual resignation of his rank, and at once ended the difficulty by accepting it.

Challenged to a Duel.

Conway was profoundly astonished. He was confident that Congress would be terrified by his threat to resign, and urge him to remain in the service, and was utterly unprepared for the action of that body. He hastened to explain his letter but was not listened to. Some time after he ventured to denounce the commander-in-chief, and was challenged to a duel by General Cadwallader who had already charged him with cowardice at the battle of Germantown. Conway was wounded; and beleiving himself near death wrote to Washington, apologizing for his conduct towards him. "You are," he said, "in my eyes the great and good man. May you long enjoy the love, veneration and esteem of these States whose liberties you have asserted by your virtues." His wound was not mortal as he had supposed, and he recovered, and soon left the country.

The winter was passed by Washington in an effort to increase the army, and render it more efficient. Baron Steuben, a Prussian officer, who had served under Frederick the Great, was appointed inspector, with the rank of major-general. He introduced into the army the drill and discipline of the Prussian service, and greatly increased its efficiency. The various States, save Georgia and South Carolina, were called upon by Congress to contribute their quota of troops to the army. In consideration of their large slave population, and the neccessity of retaining their troops for their own defence, those States were excused from compliance with this demand.

Congress and the Army.

Count Pulaski succeeded in raising an independent body of cavalry, and Major Henry Lee organized a regiment of light horse, which under his command subsequently became noted as one of the most efficient corps of the army. Congress proposed to increase the force of the army to sixty thousand men, but was never able to bring it to more than half that number.

The inability of Congress to pay the troops compelled many of the officers to leave the army, in order to provide for their families, who were suffering. Congress called upon the States to raise the money for the public expenses by taxing their people, but some of them neglected to respond to this appeal, and the remainder were too poor to render such assistance. Congress issued new bills of credit but the value of the "Continental Currency," as this money was called, had depreciated so greatly that a pair of shoes could not be bought for less than from five to six hundred dollars in these bills. The Tories and the British depreciated them still further by flooding the country with counterfeits.

A great improvement was made in the supply of provisions furnished the army by the appointment of General Greene, at the request of Washington, to the post of quartermaster-general, which had been held by General Mifflin, who had neglected its duties on all occaisons. At the urgent solicitation of the commander-in-chief, Greene assumed

the distasteful position for one year, and discharged its duties with a skill and precision which kept the army so well supplied with provisions and ammunition that it was never, during his administration, obliggd to abandon a movement because of a lack of these necessities.

A Traitor in the Camp.

In April, 1778, General Prescott was exchanged for General Charles Lee, who at once returned to duty in the army. During his captivity Lee, who was willing to ruin the cause if he could benefit himself, proposed a plan to the British ministry by which they could, in his opinion, bring the war to a successful close. The ministers did not see fit to adopt Lee's plan, but filed it away among the British archives, and the traitor was exchanged and permitted to resume his command in the American army, to become again a source of trouble and loss to it.

In the meantime the American cause had assumed a new phase abroad. The English government had confidently expected that Burgoyne's expedition would be successful, and the result of his operations was watched by France with the deepest anxiety. When news arrived of the defeat of Burgoyne the astonishment of King George and his ministers was equalled only by their mortification. It was resolved to wipe out the humiliation by a more vigorous prosecution of the war. It was rumored that France was about to aid the Americans, and that Holland was on the point of loaning them money.

These rumors aroused the English people to a heartier support of the government than they had yet given it, and many of the principal cities offered to raise troops to supply the places of those who had been surrendered by Burgoyne. At the same time the friends of America were greatly encouraged and resolved to make a new effort to put a stop to the war by offering America such terms as would either induce her to renew her former connection with Great Britain or to become the ally and friend of that country. A considerable sum of money was subscribed by these for the relief of the American prisoners, who were left by the government without even the necessaries of life.

Trouble in Parliament.

When Parliament assembled a strong attack was made upon the policy of the king by the friends of America. The employment of the Hessians, and, above all, of the barbarous Indians of North America, whose cruelties shocked the English people, was severely denounced. The mercantile class was seriously discontented. Its trade with America was destroyed, and the activity of the American cruisers was so great that six hundred English vessels had already been captured; and it was necessary to convoy merchantmen by vessels of war from one port of the kingdom to another. Thus far the war had caused an expenditure of twenty thousand lives and one hundred millions of dollars, and the conquest of America was as far off as at the commencement of hostilities.

Under this pressure the king was constrained to yield, and, in February, 1778, Lord North presented to Parliment two bills by which his majesty hoped to maintain his authority in America, and conciliate his revolted subjects. The first of these renounced all intention on the part of Great Britian to levy taxes in America; the other appointed five commissioners to negotiate with the Americans for the restoration of the authority of England and the close of the war. The consent of the king to these measures was wrung from him by the complaints of a large

part of the English people, and by his fear that France would openly aid the United States. These bills involved a direct surrender of the whole ground of the war; but indicated no change of opinion on the part of the king.

This action on the part of Great Britian aroused the French government to a more energetic course. Louis XVI. was opposed to treating with the United States; but the French ministers were aware that a prompt recognition on their part of the independence of the republic would effectually neutralize the measures of Great Britain, and prevent a reconciliation. France was perfectly willing that America and England should weaken each other by their contest, but she was resolved that Great Britain should never recover her colonies. The capture of Burgoyne's army had demonstrated the ability of America to continue the war, and the French ministers resolved to lose no time in concluding an alliance with her.

LOUIS XVI.

On the seventeenth of December, 1777, the Count de Vergennes caused Franklin and Deane to be informed of the king's intention not only to acknowledge but to support the independence of America, and on the sixth of February a treaty of friendship and commerce, and a second treaty of defensive alliance, were concluded between the United States and France. The latter bound the United States to support France in case Great Britain should declare war against her. The King of France acknowledged the independence of the United States of America, and agreed to assist them with his fleet and army. No peace was to be made without mutual consent, and not until the independence of the United States should be acknowledged by Great Britain. These treaties were ratified by Congress, and were hailed with joy by the Americans, whose confidence was revived by the assurance of the assistance of one of the most powerful states of Europe.

When the news of the treaties was received in England, the friends of America urged the government to abandon the war, and acknowledge the independence of the United States,

as the only way of retaining the good feeling and trade of that country. The government would not even entertain the proprosition. The most it would do was to pass the conciliatory bills of Lord North. If they failed to accomplish the desired end the war must go on. In March France formally communicated to England her treaties with America. This was regarded by England as a declaration of war, and the British ambassador was at once recalled from Paris.

In June the British commissioners, appointed to treat under Lord North's conciliatory measures, arrived in America and opened negotiations. Congress demanded as a prelude to any negotiations, that the independence of the United States should be recognized by England, and her fleets and armies withdrawn from America. The commissioners having no authority to treat upon any such basis returned to England, having first made several ineffectual efforts to detach prominent Americans from the cause by bribery.

The course of Sir William Howe had not pleased the British government, and he was removed from his command on the eleventh of May, 1788, and was replaced by Sir Henry Clinton. About the same time Clinton was informed by his government that a large French fleet might be expected at any moment on the American coast, and was ordered to evacuate Philadelphia and concentrate all his forces at New York.

SIR HENRY CLINTON.

He accordingly sent his sick and wounded and most of his stores, with his fleet around to New York by sea; while, with his army, twelve thousand strong, he left Philadelphia on the eighteenth of June, and, crossing the Delaware, began his march through New

Jersey to New York. As soon as Washington learned of his movement he broke up his camp, on the twenty-fourth of June, and crossed the Delaware in pursuit of the British army. The intense heat of the weather, and the heavy train which the British carried with them, caused them to move very slowly, and Washington soon overtook them. A council of war was called, at which General Charles Lee, who held the second rank in the American army, urged that Washington should confine his efforts to harassing the British on the march. It was resolved, however to attack the enemy and force them to a general engagement. Lee at first declined to take any part in the battle, but at the last moment changed his mind, and solicited a command.

Retreat of Clinton.

Upon the adjournment of the council of war, on the twenty-seventh of June, Washington sent Lafayette, with two thousand men, to occupy the hills near Monmouth Court-house and confine the enemy to the plains. On the morning of the twenty-eighth of June Lee, who had asked for a command, was sent forward by Washington with two brigades to attack the enemy. Upon coming up with Lafayette, who was his junior, Lee assumed the command of the whole advanced force and marched in the direction of the enemy, who had encamped on the previous night near Monmouth Court-house, and had resumed their march early on the morning of the twenty-eighth. As soon as Clinton heard of Lee's advance he determined to drive him back, and for this purpose wheeled about with his whole rear division, and made a sharp attack upon Lee, who fell back to higher ground. A misunderstanding of his order caused one of his subordinate officers to abandon his position and Lee's whole force fell back in some confusion.

In the excitement of the moment Lee forgot to send word to Washington of his movement, and the first the commander-in-chief, who was advancing with the main body, knew of it was the right of Lee's command falling back rapidly and in disorder. Riding up to the fugitives he asked them why they were retreating, and was answered that they did not know, but had been ordered to do so. Suspecting that the retreat had been ordered for the purpose of ruining the plan of battle, Washington hastened forward until he met General Lee and sternly demanded of him: "What is the meaning of all this, sir?" Lee was disconcerted for a moment, and then answered that the retreat was contrary to his orders; and moreover, that he did not wish to encounter the whole British army. "I am sorry," said Washington, "that you undertook the command unless you meant to fight the enemy." Lee answered that he did not think it prudent to bring on a general engagement. Washington replied, sternly: "Whatever your opinion may have been, I expect my orders to be obeyed."

Fugitives Made to Halt.

Washington at once reformed the men on a commanding eminence, and hurried the main body of the Americans forward to their support. The British soon appeared in force and endeavored to dislodge the Americans from their position, and failing in this attempted, but without success, to turn their left flank. The battle lasted till nightfall, and the American army bivouaced on the field, expecting to renew the engagement the next morning; but during the night Clinton skilfully withdrew from his lines and continued his retreat. The weather was so warm that Washington did not deem it prudent to continue the pursuit, and Clinton was allowed to regain New York without

further molestation. The Americans lost about two hundred men in this engagement, a number of whom died from the effects of the extreme heat. The British lost three hundred men. During the retreat two thousand Hessians deserted from the British ranks.

Lee Dismissed from the Army.

As General Lee possessed a large share of the confidence of the commander-in-chief, he might have saved himself from the consequences of his fault, had he sought to explain his conduct in a proper manner. On the day after the battle he addressed an insulting letter to Washington, and met the reply of the commander-in-chief with another letter still more disrespectful in tone, demanding a court of inquiry. The court found him guilty of disobedience of orders, and of disrespect to the commander-in-chief, and sentenced him to be suspended from his rank for one year. Towards the close of his term of punishment he addressed an insolent letter to Congress, in consequence of some fancied neglect, and was dismissed from the army. A few years later he died in Philadelphia.

After the battle of Monmouth Washington halted for a short time to refresh his men, and then marching to the Hudson crossed that stream and took position at White Plains, in New York, to be ready to cooperate with the French fleet, which was daily expected, in an attack upon the city of New York. The French fleet under Count D'Estaing, with four thousand troops on board, had arrived in the Delaware just after Lord Howe had sailed for New York. Failing to find the enemy in the Delaware, D'Estaing sailed for New York, but Lord Howe withdrew his vessels into Raritan Bay, and as the larger French ships could not cross the bar, the contemplated attack upon New York was abandoned, to the great regret of Washington.

The French fleet brought the American commissioners who had negotiated the treaty with France, and also Monsieur Gerard, the first ambassador from the French king to the United States.

In place of the combined attack upon New York it was resolved by Washington, in concert with the French admiral, to attack Newport and drive the British out of Rhode Island. The British had established one of their principal depots of supplies at this point, and had there a force of six thousand men under General Pigot. It was arranged that a force of American troops under General Sullivan should attack the enemy by land, while the French fleet and army should cooperate with Sullivan from the sea. On the twenty-ninth of July D'Estaing reached Narragansett Bay with his fleet, and on the eighth of August entered Newport harbor, in spite of the fire of the British batteries. A whole week had been lost, however, by the failure of the American troops to reach the positions assigned them as promptly as the French fleet. The delay was unavoidable, but it ruined the enterprise.

The Fleet Scattered.

On the ninth Lord Howe arrived off Newport harbor with his fleet to the assistance of General Pigot. On the tenth D'Estaing sailed out to engage the British fleet, but before this could be effected a sudden and terrible storm scattered both fleets. Howe returned to New York, and D'Estaing made his way back to Narragansett bay in a crippled condition. Instead of landing the four thousand French troops he had brought with him, the French admiral sailed to Boston with his whole force to refit.

Sullivan in the meantime had crossed from the mainland to the island of Rhode Island

and had taken position before the British intrenchments in front of Newport. Here he awaited the return of the French fleet, and in the meanwhile kept up a steady fire upon the British works. Upon D'Estaing's return he informed Sullivan of his intention to sail to Boston to refit his ships. Sullivan earnestly begged him to remain two or three days, as the British must certainly surrender by the end of that time. D'Estaing refused to do so. Sullivan then asked that the French troops might be left to coöperate with him and this also was refused. Left alone, Sullivan was obliged to retreat to the mainland, as he learned that aid was on its way from New York to Pigot. He effected this movement with skill and success, on the night of the thirtieth of August. The next day Sir Henry Clinton reached Newport with a squadron of several ships and a reinforcement of four thousand men.

Brutal Warfare.

As he had arrived too late to attack the force under Sullivan, Clinton sent the troops he had brought with him, under Major-General Grey, to ravage the coasts to the eastward. Grey destroyed a large number of vessels along the coasts, and stripped Fair Haven, New Bedford, and the island of Martha's Vineyard of everything that could be carried off, and returned to New York laden with plunder.

Late in October a British fleet which had been dispatched from England under Admiral Byron in pursuit of D'Estaing, arrived off Boston harbor. Byron was unwilling to venture within the harbor, and the French would not leave their place of security, and the English remained off Boston until a storm arose and scattered their fleet. On the first of November the French, taking advantage of the enforced withdrawal of their enemy, stood out to sea and sailed for the West Indies, and on the same day Clinton despatched a force of five thousand British troops from New York to the West Indies.

Brutal as was the conduct of General Grey, it had been already surpassed by the British and their Indian allies in Pennyslvania. The inhabitants of Wyoming valley, a beautiful region on the Susquehanna, had driven away the Tories from that region, and these had resolved upon revenge. Early in July a force of about eleven hundred Tories and Indians under Colonel John Butler and the Indian chief Brandt, entered the Wyoming valley. Nearly all the able-bodied settlers were absent with the American army, and upon hearing of the approach of the enemy a small force had been despatched by Washington under Colonel Zebulon Butler, to the assistance of the settlers.

This force was defeated by the Tories and Indians, who then proceeded to lay waste the valley and murder the inhabitants. They performed their bloody work in the most barbarous manner, and the beautiful valley was made a desolation. In the following month Cherry Valley in New York was ravaged with equal cruelty by a force of Tories and Indians, and the inhabitants were either murdered or carried into captivity. The entire region of the upper Susquehanna and Delaware and the valley of the Mohawk were at the mercy of the savage allies of Great Britain.

Battle of Savannah.

In the latter part of November, Sir Henry Clinton sent a force of two thousand men from New York under Colonel Campbell to attack Savannah, Georgia, which was held by a garrison of one thousand men under General Robert Howe. The British carried the American position after a sharp engagement, and on the twenty-ninth of December, Savannah surrendered to them. General

Prevost, the English commander in Florida, now repaired to Savannah, and assumed the command. On his march across the country he captured Sunbury, a fort of considerable importance. Upon reaching Savannah he sent Colonel Campbell to seize Augusta, which was quickly secured and fortified.

ton established his headquarters at Middlebrook, New Jersey, near the centre of his line. The winter passed away without any event of importance. The British held New York and Newport with too strong a force to make an attack upon either post successfully, and the withdrawal of the French fleet

INDIAN SCALP DANCE.

Georgia was thus entirely subdued by the British by the middle of January, 1779.

After the failure of the attack upon Newport the American Army went into winter quarters, occupying a series of cantonments extending from the eastern end of Long Island sound to the Delaware. This disposition enabled them to oppose a force to the British at every important point. Washington

to the West Indies left Washington without any means of encountering the naval force of the enemy.

The season was not without its trials, however. Washington wrote at the beginning of the year 1779, "Our affairs are in a more distressed, ruinous, and deplorable condition than they have been since the commencement of the war." The currency of the

country grew more worthless every day. During the year 1779 the enormous sum of one hundred and thirty-one million of dollars was issued in continental bills. The magnitude of the volume of the currency only served to depreciate it more and more, and though supplies and articles of trade were plentiful, their owners refused to accept the depreciated bills of Congress, and would sell for gold and silver only. "A wagon load of money," Washington wrote to the president of Congress, "will not purchase a wagon-load of provisions." During the year the currency depreciated from eight dollars for one dollar to forty-one dollars and fifty cents for one dollar. Congress had so little specie that everything must have gone to ruin but for the exertions of Robert Morris, a member of Congress from Pennsylvania, and a leading merchant of Philadelphia, who borrowed large sums of coin on his own credit, and loaned them to the government. This he continued to do throughout the war.

Congress had long before this been deprived of many of its ablest members, who had resigned their seats in order to accept appointments in their own States, or to enter the army. Their places were filled with weaker men, and many dissensions mark the deliberations of the Congress of this period. Many members of Congress and a large part of the people seemed to regard the alliance with France as decisive of the war, and were disposed to relax their efforts.

France and Canada.

During the winter it was proposed to join the French in an expedition for the recovery of Canada for France, and the scheme found favor with a majority of the delegates in Congress. Washington opposed it with firmness. He pointed out to Congress the difficulty of the undertaking, and declared his conviction that it was not to the interest of the United States that a power different in race, language and religion from the people of this republic should have a footing upon this continent. In addition to this he did not desire the people of the United States to increase their obligations to a foreign, even though a friendly, power.

The American forces in the Southern States were commanded by General Benjamin Lincoln. The Tories were very numerous and very active in this region, and the feeling between them and the patriots was one of the bitterest hostility, and often manifested itself in bloody and relentless conflicts. Seven hundred Tories under Colonel Boyd set out in February, 1779, to join Colonel Campbell at Augusta. On the fourteenth they were attacked at Kettle Creek by a force of patriots under Colonel Pickens, and were defeated with heavy loss. Pickens hung five of his prisoners as traitors.

Fighting at Charleston.

General Lincoln now sent General Ashe with two thousand men to drive the British out of Augusta. Upon hearing of his approach Colonel Campbell evacuated Augusta and fell back to Brier Creek, a small stream about halfway to Savannah. Ashe followed him, but without observing proper caution, and on the third of March was surprised and routed by Campbell, with the loss of nearly his entire force. This defeat encouraged General Prevost to attempt the capture of Charleston.

He marched rapidly across the country to Charleston, and demanded its surrender. Lincoln, who had been reinforced, no sooner heard of this movement than he hastened by forced marches to the relief of Charleston and compelled Prevost to retire to St. John's island, opposite the mainland. The British threw up a redoubt at Stone ferry to protect

the crossing to this island. It was attacked on the twentieth of June by the forces of General Lincoln, who were repulsed with heavy loss. A little later Prevost withdrew to Savannah. The intense heat of the weather suspended military operations in the south during the remainder of the summer.

In September, 1779, the French fleet under Count D'Estaing arrived off the coast of Georgia from the West Indies, and the admiral agreed to join Lincoln in an effort to recapture Savannah. The American army began its investment of the city on the twenty-third of September, and everything promised favorably for success; but D'Estaing became impatient of the delay of a regular siege, and declared that he must return to the West Indies to watch the British fleet in those waters. Savannah must either be taken by assault, or he would withdraw from the siege. To please him Lincoln consented to storm the British works, and the assault was made on the ninth of October, but was repulsed with severe loss. D'Estaing himself was wounded, and the chivalrous Count Pulaski was killed. Lincoln now retreated to Charleston, and the French fleet sailed to the West Indies, having a second time failed to render any real assistance to the Americans. This disaster closed the campaign for the year in the south.

In the meantime Sir Henry Clinton had been ordered by his government to harass the American coast, and in accordance with these instructions despatched a number of plundering expeditions from New York against exposed points. One of these was sent in May, under General Mathews, into the Chesapeake. Mathews entered the Elizabeth river, plundered the towns of Norfolk and Portsmouth, and burned one hundred and thirty merchant vessels and several ships of war on the stocks at Gosport, near Portsmouth. He then ascended the James for some distance and ravaged its shores. He destroyed in this expedition two millions of dollars worth of property, and carried off about three thousand hogsheads of tobacco.

Upon the return of this expedition, Clinton ascended the Hudson for the purpose of destroying two forts which the Americans were constructing a short distance below West Point, for the protection of King's Ferry, an important crossing-place between the Eastern and Middle States. One of these, which was being built at Stony Point, was abandoned. The work on Verplanck's Point, on the east side of the Hudson, immediately opposite, was compelled to surrender early in June.

GENERAL BENJAMIN LINCOLN.

Returning to New York, Clinton sent General Tryon with twenty-five hundred men to plunder the coast of Long Island Sound. He plundered New Haven, burned Fairfield and Norwalk, and committed other outrages at Sag Harbor, on Long Island. In

442 GALLANT CHARGE OF COUNT PULASKI.

the course of a few days this inhuman wretch burned two hundred and fifty dwelling-houses, five churches, and one hundred and twenty-five barns and stores. Many of the inhabitants were cruelly murdered, and a number of women were outraged by the British troops. Tryon would have carried his outrages further had he not been recalled to New York by Clinton, who feared that Washington was about to attack him.

The loss of Stony Point was a serious blow to Washington, as it compelled him to establish a new line of communication between the opposite sides of the Hudson by a longer and more tedious route through the Highlands. He resolved, therefore, the recapture of the post from the British at all hazards. The British had greatly strengthened the fort, which the Americans had left unfinished, and the only way in which it could be captured was by a surprise. It was a desperate undertaking, and Washington proposed to General Anthony Wayne to attempt it.

Wayne readily consented, and the two generals made a careful reconnoissance of the position. It was agreed to make the attempt at midnight, and in order to guard against a betrayal of the movement every dog in the vicinity was put to death. A negro who visited the fort regularly to sell fruit, and who had been for some time acting as a spy for the Americans, agreed to guide them to the work.

At midnight on the fifteenth of July the storming party, guided by the negro, approached the fort in two divisions. Not a man was permitted to load his musket, lest the accidental discharge of a gun should ruin the movement. The negro, accompanied by two soldiers who were disguised as farmers, approached the first sentinel and gave the countersign. The sentinel was at once seized and gagged, and the same was done with the second sentinel. The third, however, gave the alarm, and the garrison flew to arms and opened a sharp fire upon the Americans. The latter now dashed forward at a run, scaled the parapet, and in a few moments the two opposite divisions met in the centre of the fort.

The Americans took more than five hundred prisoners and all the supplies and artillery of the fort fell into their hands.

GENERAL ANTHONY WAYNE.

Though they were justly exasperated by the brutal outrages of the British, which we have related, they conducted themselves towards their prisoners with a noble humanity. The British historian, Stedman, declares, "They (the Americans) would have been fully justified in putting the garrison to the sword; not one man of which was put to death but in fair combat." It was one of the most brilliant expeditions of the war. Wayne now proceeded to prepare

for the reduction of the fort at Verplanck's Point, but while he was thus engaged a heavy British force ascended the river to its relief, and he was obliged to forego his attack and also to abandon Stony Point.

On the night of the eighteenth of June Major Henry Lee made a bold dash at the British fort at Paulus Hook, now Jersey City, and captured it, taking one hundred and fifty-nine prisoners. The British made great efforts to intercept him, but he effected his retreat in safety, bringing off his prisoners and losing only two men. For

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL HENRY LEE.

these gallant exploits both Wayne and Lee were each voted a gold medal by Congress.

Towards the close of the summer of 1779 Washington resolved to inflict upon the Indians a severe punishment for their outrages upon the whites, and especially for massacres of Wyoming and Cherry Valley in the previous year. Early in August General Sullivan was sent into Western New York with three thousand men, with orders to ravish the country of the Six Nations. He was joined by General James Clinton with two thousand men, and on the twenty-ninth of August attacked and defeated a force of seventeen hundred Indians and Tories at Newtown, now Elmira. Sullivan followed up his victory by pushing forward into the Indian country and laying it waste with fire and sword. In the course of a few weeks he destroyed more than forty Indian villages and burned all the cornfields and orchards. The beautiful valley of the Genesee was made a desert, and to avoid starvation the Indians and their Tory allies were obliged to emigrate to Canada. They were quieted but for a time by the terrible vengeance of the Americans, and soon renewed their depredations, and continued them to the end of the war.

Congress had made great efforts to increase the force of the navy, and the number of American men-of-war had been materially enlarged. Many of them had been captured, however, by the enemy, and the navy was still weak and unable to render much service to the cause,

American Cruisers.

The privateers were unusually active, and were hunted with unremitting vigilance by the English war vessels. They managed to inflict great loss upon the commerce of Great Britain, however. A number of American cruisers were fitted out in France, and kept the English coast in terror.

John Paul Jones, a native of Scotland, who had been brought to Virginia at an early age, was one of the first naval officers commissioned by Congress. He was given command of the "Ranger," a vessel of eighteen guns, and by his brilliant and daring exploits kept the English coast in a state of terror, and even ventured to attack exposed points on the coast of Scotland. In 1779 he was given command of a small squadron of three ships of war fitted out in France, and sailing from L'Orient, proceeded on a cruise along the coast of Great Britain.

PAUL JONES SEIZING THE SILVER PLATE OF LADY SELKIRK

On the twenty-third of September he fell in with a fleet of merchantmen convoyed by two English frigates, and at once attacked them. The battle began at seven in the evening and was continned for three hours with great fury. Jones lashed his flagship, the "Bon Homme Richard," to the English frigate "Serapis," and the two vessels fought muzzle to muzzle until the Serapis surrendered. The other English vessel was also captured. The battle was one of the most desperate in the annals of naval warfare, and Jones' flagship was so badly injured that it sunk in a few hours after the fighting was over.

JOHN PAUL JONES.

Jones was absent from home for about three years, during which time his exploits were numerous and of the most astonishing character. He was denounced as a pirate by the English, who became so alarmed by his achievements that many people did not feel safe even in London. Some of the timid ones looked out on the Thames, half-expecting to see the terrible fellow lay their city under tribute. At one time he landed on the coast of Scotland, and, appearing at the residence of the Earl of Selkirk, captured a large amount of silver plate and booty. But he treated the Earl's household with great courtesy, and the plate that was seized at the time is now in the possession of the members of the Selkirk family.

Paul Jones returned to Philadelphia February 18, 1781, and received a hearty welcome. Congress gave him an appropriate medal and a vote of thanks.

In October Sir Henry Clinton, in obedience to orders from home, evacuated Newport and concentrated his forces at New York, which place he believed was in danger of an attack by the Americans and French. Until the close of the season Washington cherished the hope that the French fleet would return and assist him in an effort to regain New York, and had called out militia for this purpose. When he learned that D'Estaing had sailed to the West Indies after the failure of the attack upon Savannah he dismissed the militia to their homes and went into winter quarters in New Jersey, with his headquarters at Morristown.

While these events had been transpiring upon the Atlantic seaboard the United States

had been steadily pushing their way westward beyond the mountains. In 1769, before the commencement of the Revolution, the beautiful region now known as Kentucky had been visited and explored by Daniel Boone, a famous Indian hunter. He was charmed with the beauty of the country and the excellence of the climate, and resolved to make it his home. The reports of Boone and his companions aroused a great interest in the new country among the inhabitants of the older settlements in Virginia and North Carolina, more especially as it was in this region that the lands given to the Virginia troops for their services in the French war were located. Surveyors were soon after sent out to lay off these lands, and in 1773 a party under Captain Bullit reached the falls of the Ohio and built a fortified camp there for the purpose of surveying the region.

The Celebrated Daniel Boone.

This was the commencement of the city of Louisville, but the actual settlement of the place was not begun until 1778. In 1774 Harrodsburg was founded by James Harrod, one of Boone's companions; and in 1775 Daniel Boone built a fort on the site of the present town of Boonesborough. The savages made repeated attacks upon his party, but failed to drive them away. The fort was finished by the middle of April, and soon after Boone was joined by his wife and daughters, the first white women in Kentucky.

The region of Kentucky was claimed by Virginia, but the settlers submitted to the authority of that province with impatience. They sent a delegate to the Continental Congress in October, 1775, and claimed representation in that body as an independent colony under the name of Transylvania; but the delegate of the fourteenth colony was not admitted by Congress, as Virginia claimed the territory as her own. In the spring of 1777 the general assembly of Virginia organized the Kentucky region as a county, and established a court of quarter sessions at Harrodsburg. In this condition Kentucky remained during the Revolution.

MEDAL STRUCK IN HONOR OF PAUL JONES.

The population increased rapidly in spite of the war and of the unremitting hostility of the Indians.

During the revolution the Kentucky settlements suffered very much from the hostility of the Indians, who were urged on by the emissaries of Great Britain to a war of

DANIEL BOONE.

extermination. The principal agent of the mother country in this barbarous warfare was Hamilton, the British commander at Detroit. In order to put a stop to his intrigues and deprive the Indians of his aid, Congress resolved to despatch a force to attack Detroit.

While this plan was in contemplation the State of Virginia in 1778, sent Colonel George Rogers Clarke with a force of two hundred men to conquer the territory northwest of the Ohio, which Virginia claimed as a part of her possessions. Clarke was a backwoodsman, but one of nature's heroes. He assembled his men at Pittsburg, and descended the Ohio to the falls in flat-boats. There he established a settlement of thirteen families, the germ of the present city of Louisville. Being joined by some Kentuckians he continued his descent of the river to a short distance below the mouth of the Tennessee.

Landing and concealing his boats, he struck across the country and surprised and captured the town of Kaskaskia, within the limits of the present State of Indiana. A detachment was sent to Kahokia, and received its submission. The people of these towns were of French origin, and were greatly averse to the English rule under

which they had lived since the conquest of Canada.

The alliance between the United States and France made them very willing to acknowledge the authority of the Union, to which they readily swore allegiance. The fort at Vincennes was in a weak condition and was held by a small garrison, and readily submitted to Clarke.

Hamilton no sooner heard of the successes of Clarke than he set out from Detroit on the seventh of October, 1778, with a force of three hundred and fifty warriors, and on the seventeenth of December reoccupied Vincennes. He now prepared to drive the Americans out of the Illinois country, and spent the winter in trying to arouse the savages against them. He offered a significant reward for every American scalp brought in to him, but offered nothing for prisoners. At the same time he proposed to invade Virginia in the spring with with an overwhelming force of Indians.

"To Their Armpits in Water."

Clarke and his party were in very great danger. They were entirely cut off from Virginia, and without hope of reinforements. In this emergency, Clarke, who had learned that Hamilton had greatly weakened the garrison at Vincennes, resolved to stake the fate of the west on a single issue, and attempt the capture of that post. On the seventh of February, 1779, he left Kaskaskia with one hundred and thirty men, and marched across the country towards Vincennes. On the eighteenth they were within nine miles of Vincennes.

The Wabash had overflowed the country along its banks, and in order to reach the object of their march, Clarke and his men were obliged to cross the submerged lands, up to their armpits in water. They were five days in crossing these "drowned lands," and had the weather been less mild, must have perished. On the twenty-third Vincennes was reached, and the town was at once carried. Clarke then laid siege to the fort, assisted in this task by the inhabitants of the town, and in twenty-four hours compelled Hamilton and his men to surrender themselves prisoners of war.

A British Scheme Frustrated.

Clarke was unable to advance against Detroit because of the insufficiency of his force. His successes, however, were among the most important of the war. They not only put an end to the British scheme of a general Indian war along the western frontier of the United States, but established the authority of the Union over the country east of the Mississippi, and prevented Great Britain from asserting a claim to that region at the conclusion of peace, a few years later. Returning to the Ohio, Clarke built a blockhouse at the falls. The conquered territory was claimed by Virginia, and was erected by the legislature of that State into the county of Illinois. By order of Governor Jefferson of Virginia, Clarke established a fort on the Mississippi, about five miles below the mouth of the Ohio, which he named Fort Jefferson, and entered into friendly relations with the Spaniards at St. Louis.

The Tennessee region, which formed a part of the province of North Carolina, had been settled previous to the outbreak of hostilities. Fort Loudon, about thirty miles southwest of Knoxville, was built in 1756, and in 1770 the Cumberland Valley was settled, and Nashville was founded. By the commencement of the revolution the Tennessee country was quickly settled, and the population was increasing at an encouraging rate. In 1776 the Cherokees, incited by the British, waged a formidable war upon the settlers, but were defeated.

CHAPTER XXX

The Close of the War

Severity of the Winter of 1779–80—Sufferings of the American Army—Clinton Sails for the Carolinas—Colonel Tarleton—Capture of Charleston—Conquest of South Carolina—Gates in Command of the Southern Army—Battle of Camden—Exploits of Marion and Sumter—Advance of Cornwallis—Battle of King's Mountain—Gates Succeeded by General Greene—Knyphausen's Expedition into New Jersey—Arrival of the French Fleet and Army—Arnold's Treason—The Plot for the Betrayal of West Point—Arrest of Major André—Flight of Arnold—Execution of André—Mutiny of the Pennsylvania and New Jersey Troops—Measures of Congress—Arnold Captures Richmond, Virginia—Battle of Cowpens—Masterly Retreat of General Greene—Cornwallis Baffled—Battle of Guilford Court House—Cornwallis at Wilmington—Battle of Hobkirk's Hill—Siege of Ninety-six—Execution of Colonel Hayne—Battle of Eutaw Springs—Washington Decides to Attack New York—The French Army on the Hudson—Financial Affairs—Resumption of Specie Payments—Message from the Count De Grasse—Cornwallis at Yorktown—The American Army Moves Southward—Siege of Yorktown—Surrender of Cornwallis—Effect of the News in England—Indian Troubles—Efforts in England for Peace—Negotiations Opened—Treaty of Paris—End of the War—The Army Disbanded—Washington Resigns his Commission.

THE winter of 1779-80 was passed by the American army in huts near Morristown. It was one of the severest seasons ever experienced in America. The harbor of New York was frozen over as far as the Narrows, and the ice was strong enough to bear the heaviest artillery. Communication between New York and the sea was entirely cut off and the British garrison and the citizens suffered from a scarcity of provisions. Knyphausen was afraid the Americans would seek to pass the Hudson on the ice and attack the city, and landed the crews of the shipping in the harbor and added them to the garrison. His precautions were useless, as the American army was too weak and too poorly supplied to undertake the capture of New York.

The troops at Morristown suffered very greatly during the winter. They had scarcely clothing enough to protect them from the cold; and provisions were so scarce that in order to keep his men from starvation Washington was compelled to impress supplies from the people of the surrounding country. The heavy snows made the army entirely dependent upon New Jersey for its subsistence, as transportation from a long distance could not be attempted. The people of New Jersey bore the sacrifices imposed upon them with a noble cheerfulness, and though their state was drained almost to exhaustion, were untiring in their efforts to provide food and clothing for the troops. The Continental currency had fallen so low that one dollar in silver was worth thirty dollars in paper by the beginning of the year 1780; but neither officers nor men could obtain their pay in this depreciated currency. It was almost impossible for the government to purchase anything with its notes.

About the last of December, 1779, Sir Henry Clinton, leaving a strong garrison under General Knyphausen to hold New York, sailed south, with the greater part of his army, in the fleet of Admiral Arbuthnot. He proceeded first to Savannah, and then moved northward for the purpose of besieging Charleston. General Lincoln exerted himself with energy to fortify that city. Four

thousand citizens enrolled themselves to assist the regular garrison in the defence, but only two hundred militia from the interior responded to Lincoln's call for aid. Reinforcements were received from Virginia and North Carolina, and Lincoln was able to muster seven thousand men, of whom but two thousand were regular troops.

In February, 1780, the British landed at St. John's island, about thirty miles below Charleston. Clinton advanced towards the city along the banks of the Ashley, while the fleet sailed around to force an entrance into the harbor. The advance of Clinton was very gradual, and Lincoln was enabled to strengthen his works and prepare for a siege. It was not until early in April that Clinton's army appeared before the American works and began preparations to reduce them. A day or two later the British fleet passed Fort Moultrie with but little loss and took position off the city.

British Successes.

Clinton had lost nearly all his horses on the voyage from New York, and was anxious to replace them from the country north of Charleston. The Americans had stationed bodies of militia at different points north of the city to keep open the communications with Charleston, and to prevent the foraging parties of the British from reaching the interior. Clinton intrusted the task of breaking up these posts and obtaining fresh horses to Lieutenant-Colonel Banastre Tarleton, a young and energetic officer. Tarleton was short of stature, of a dark, swarthy complexion, and broad shouldered and muscular He was insensible to fatigue, unscrupulous as to the means by which he accomplished his objects, merciless in battle, and unflagging in pursuit. He was one of the most efficient officers in the English army, and one of the most cruel.

By purchase from friends and seizures from foes, he soon supplied Clinton with all the horses he needed. He then began his attempt to break up the American posts north of Charleston. On the night of the 14th of April, he surprised a body of fourteen hundred cavalry under General Huger and Colonel William Washington, at Monk's Corner, about thirty miles north of Charleston. The Americans were defeated with a loss of one hundred prisoners and four hundred wagons laden with stores. A little later Fort Moultrie surrendered, and soon after Tarleton cut to pieces another detachment of American cavalry.

Charleston was now completely invested, and the siege was pressed with vigor by Clinton. Lincoln's situation became every day more hopeless. The fire of the British artillery destroyed his defences and dismounted his cannon, and as he was entirely cut off from the country he had no hope of relief from without. On the ninth of May a terrible fire was opened upon the defences and the city of Charleston. The city was set on fire in five places, and the American works were reduced to a mass of ruins.

Surrender of Charleston.

On the twelfth Lincoln surrendered the town and his army to Sir Henry Clinton. The prisoners, including every male adult in the city, numbered about six thousand men. The regulars were held as prisoners of war, but the militia were dismissed to their homes on their promise not to serve again during the war.

Clinton followed up his capture of the city by a series of vigorous measures. Tarleton was despatched into the interior to attack a Virginia regiment under Beaufort, which was advancing to the relief of Charleston. Beaufort began his retreat as soon as he heard of the surrender of Charleston, but was overtaken and surprised by Tarleton at

Waxhaw's, on the boundary of North Carolina. The British had made a forced march of one hundred and five miles in fifty-four hours. They gave no quarters to the Americans, and put to the sword all who were unable to escape. Their barbarous conduct on this occasion was termed by the American's "Tarleton's quarters." A second column was sent by Clinton to Augusta, and a third towards Camden to reduce the country between Charleston and those points. They encountered but little resistance.

Negroes Desert their Masters.

Clinton issued a proclamation threatening to visit the severest punishments upon those who refused to submit to the royal authority, and this was followed a little later by another, offering pardon to all who would return to their allegiance and assist in restoring the authority of the king. The measures of the British commander were entirely successful, and South Carolina was so completely subjugated that early in June Sir Henry Clinton sailed for New York, leaving Lord Cornwallis to complete the conquest of the State. The country abounded in Tories, who exerted themselves actively to assist the British commander in his efforts to hold the Carolinas in subjection. Large numbers of them joined the British army, and "loyal legions" were formed in various parts of the country.

The only resistance kept up by the Americans was maintained by the partisan corps of patriots led by Marion, Sumter, and Pickens. The exploits of these daring bands caused the British commander to feel that he could not hold the Carolinas except by the aid of a strong force, and kept him in a state of constant uneasiness. On the sixteenth of August Sumter defeated a large body of British and Tories at Hanging Rock, east of the Wateree river. Large numbers of negroes deserted their masters and fled to the British.

In order to offer a definite resistance to the British, and to collect a regular army to oppose them, the Baron De Kalb was sent to to take command of the troops in the south, and all the regulars south of Pennsylvania were ordered to join him. De Kalb managed to collect about two regiments, and with these moved slowly southward. A lack of provisions forced him to halt three weeks on Deep river, one of the upper tributaries of the Cape Fear.

Matters were so bad in the south that Congress resolved to send General Gates, the conqueror of Burgoyne, to take command of the army in that quarter. General Charles Lee, who knew that Gates was not the man to retrieve such losses, predicted that "his northern laurels would soon be changed into southern willows." Gates hastened southward, and overtook De Kalb at Deep river, and assumed the command. De Kalb advised him to move into South Carolina by a circuitous route through the county of Mecklenburg, which was true to the patriot cause, and where provisions could be easily obtained.

Total Defeat of General Gates.

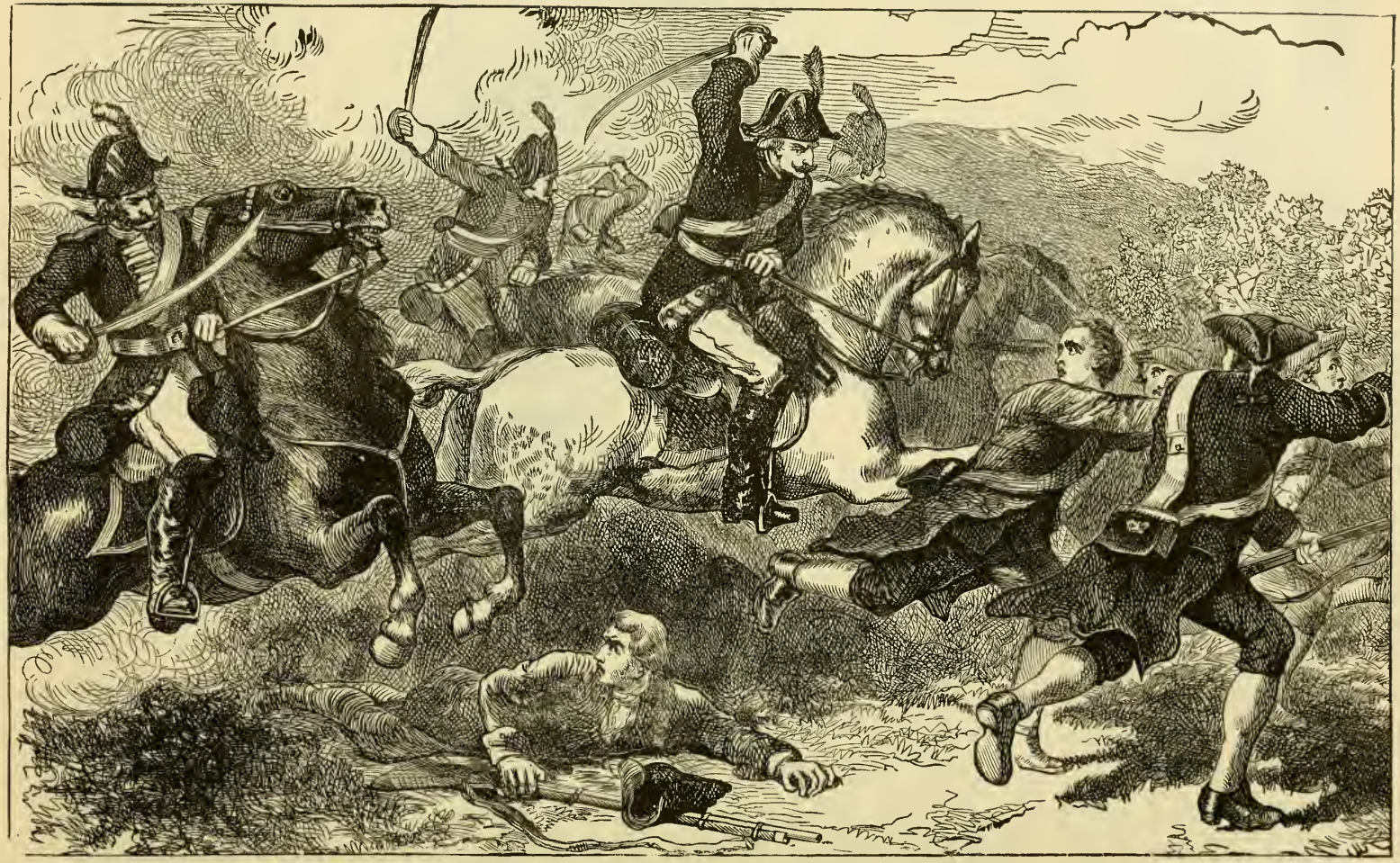
Gates declined to take his advice, and marched towards Camden by the direct route, which led through a barren and almost uninhabited region. He was sure that his wagons from the north laden with provisions would overtake the troops in two days; but he was mistaken; the wagons never made their appearance, and the troops suffered greatly from hunger and disease. His army increased every day by reinforcements from Virginia and North Carolina. On the thirteenth of August, he reached Clermont, about twelve miles from Camden. His force now amounted to nearly four thousand men, nearly two-thirds of whom were Continentals.

Upon the approach of Gates, Lord Rawdon, the British commander in this part of the State, fell back to Camden, where he was joined by Cornwallis, who had just arrived from Charleston, and who assumed the command. On the night of the fifteenth, Gates moved nearer to Camden, and at the same time Cornwallis advanced to attack Gates, whom he hoped to surprise. The advanced guards encountered each other in the woods, and the two armies halted until morning. The battle began with dawn, on the sixteenth of August. The militia fled at the first charge of the British, but the Continentals, under the brave De Kalb, stood firm, though attacked in front and flank. At length De Kalb fell mortally wounded, and the Continentals gave way. The American army was completely routed, and was broken up into small parties and scattered through the country. These continued a disorderly retreat, closely followed for about thirty miles by Tarleton's cavalry, who cut them down without mercy.

LORD CORNWALLIS.

The battle of Camden was the most disastrous defeat incurred by the Americans during the whole war. They lost nearly eighteen hundred men in killed and prisoners, and all their artillery and stores. A few days after the battle, Gates reached Charlotte, North Carolina, with about two hundred men, the remains of the army which his incapacity had ruined.

A few days previous to the battle, Sumter surprised a detachment convoying stores to the British army at Camden, and took two hundred prisoners. As soon as Cornwallis heard of this, he sent Tarleton in pursuit of the "Game Cock," as he styled Sumter. Tarleton pushed forward with such vigor that half of his men and horses were broken down. He overtook Sumter at Fishing



TOTAL ROUT OF THE LOYAL RECRUITS.

Creek, on the west bank of the Catawba, and routed him with the loss of the greater part of his partisan corps, and rescued the prisoners.

Early in December afterwards, an engagement took place between the Whigs and Tories on Long Cane, near Ninety-Six, which resulted disastrously to the patriot cause, and which was of sufficient importance to be noticed. Colonel Benjamin Few, of Georgia, was the senior officer in command of the Whigs, composed of Georgia and South Carolina militia. Colonel Cruger, the British officer in command at Ninety-Six, with a greatly superior force, determined to attack Few in his camp by surprise. His forces were within three miles of Few's camp before the latter was aware of their approach. Colonel Clarke, Lieutenant Colonel McCall, and Major John Lindsay, with one hundred men, were ordered out to meet and skirmish with the enemy until the main body of Few's forces could be brought to their assistance. In this skirmish, Clarke received a wound in the shoulder which was thought to be mortal, and was carried from the field. McCall was wounded in the arm, and his horse being killed under him, narrowly made his escape. Major Lindsay lost his sword-hand by a sabre cut just at the wrist-joint. The advance or skirmishing party were routed, with fourteen killed and seven, chiefly officers, wounded. Colonel Few, then acting as brigadier-general, retreated with the balance of his forces without further loss.

All united and organized resistance to the British in the Carolinas now ceased for a time. The true policy of Cornwallis was to conciliate the people by acts of clemency, but instead of this he exasperated them by his unnecessary severity. Among the prisoners taken at the defeat of Sumter were a number who had given their parole not to serve during the war. Some of these were hanged on the spot; the remainder were subjected to a severe imprisonment. These severities aroused a desire for vengeance among the people, and gave many recruits to Marion, who from the swamps of the lower Pedee maintained a constant and severe partisan warfare against the British.

GENERAL FRANCIS MARION.

At the same time, Sumter by great exertion recruited his command, and resumed his operations in the upper country. These bands were deficient in arms at first, but supplied themselves from the enemy. They made their own gunpowder, cast their own bullets, and provided food for themselves and their horses. By their rapid and secret movements they kept the British in a state of constant alarm. They would make a sudden and unexpected attack upon the enemy

at some exposed point, and before pursuit could be attempted would be miles away, or safe in the labyrinths of the swamps.

Gates continued to retreat slowly to the northward after his defeat. He had now about a thousand men with him. Virginia and Maryland made great exertions to reinforce him, but without success.

The Patriots Aroused.

In September, Cornwallis advanced northward with the main body of his army. Upon reaching Charlotte he despatched Colonel Ferguson, one of his most trusted officers, to rally the Tories among the mountains in the interior. Cornwallis intended to advance from Charlotte by way of Salisbury and Hillsborough into Virginia, and form a junction with a force to be sent to the lower Chesapeake by Sir Henry Clinton. The success of this movement would complete the subjugation of the south. The patriots in the country through which his army passed were very active. His expresses were captured or shot, and his plans made known to the Americans. While Ferguson was on the march, Cornwallis advanced to Salisbury.

The movement of Ferguson roused the patriots of the interior counties to arms, and they assembled rapidly, with the intention of cutting him off from the army under Cornwallis. They came from all directions, from as far as Kentucky and Tennessee. Their weapons were their rifles, to the use of which they had been trained from childhood; they had no baggage; and they moved forward as rapidly as their horses could carry them. These forces had been gathering for several days before the rumors of their march reached Colonel Ferguson. He regarded the reports with distrust at first, but upon receiving more accurate information began a rapid retreat. About the same time the various parties of the Americans effected a junction. They numbered three thousand men. A council of war was held, and it was resolved to send forward a detachment to bring Ferguson to a stand, and to follow with the main body as quickly as possible.

Brilliant Exploits of Colonel Campbell

Nine hundred men, mounted on swift horses, were sent forward, under Colonel Campbell. They rode for thirty-six hours, a large part of the time through a drenching rain, and dismounted but once during this period. Ferguson, alarmed and astounded at this determination to crush him, fell back to a strong position on King's mountain, near the Catawba. He was attacked there on the seventh of October by the Americans, and defeated after a hotly contested fight. Ferguson and about one hundred and fifty of his men were killed, the remainder were compelled to surrender. The prisoners numbered about nine hundred and fifty, of whom about one hundred and fifty were wounded. The Americans lost twenty killed and a somewhat larger number wounded. The North Carolinians selected ten of the Tories who had earned their fate by their cruelties to the Americans, and hanged them on the spot.

The Americans then separated and returned home, after seeing their prisoners safe in the hands of the proper authorities. Their victory raised the drooping spirits of their countrymen, and encouraged them to fresh exertions to resist the British. As soon as Cornwallis heard of it, he abandoned his forward movement, and, falling back into South Carolina, took position between the Broad and Saluda rivers. He remained there until the close of the year.

Marion took advantage of the change of feeling caused by the victory of King's mountain to renew his operations on the Pedee, but Tarleton compelled him to withdraw to his

fastness in the swamps. Sumter was more successful in the northern part of the State, and defeated a detchment sent in pursuit of him.

Tarleton then went after him in person, but was defeated and forced to retreat. Sumter was wounded in this engagement, and was compelled to withdraw from the field for several months. During this period his command, deprived of their leader, disbanded. The contest in the Carolinas degenerated into a savage civil war. The patriots and Tories fought each other wherever they met, and destroyed each other's property throughout the State. The country was thus kept in constant terror.

Upon the retreat of Cornwallis from Salisbury, Gates advanced southward as far as Charlotte. Here he was relieved of his command by General Nathaniel Greene, who had been appointed by Congress, at the urgent solicitation of Washington, to take charge of the southern department. Gates had given great disatisfaction by his failure in the south, and Congress ordered a court of inquiry to examine into his conduct. Greene was placed in charge of the entire south from Delaware to Georgia, "subject to the control of the commander-in-chief." Thus Washington was given the supreme direction of the war. Greene possessed his entire confidence, and the most cordial and affectionate relations existed between them. Greene found the remnants of Gates' army in a half mutinous condition. The men were without pay, without clothing, and suffering for the necessaries of life. Reinforcements were sent him from the north, among which were Morgan's regiment of riflemen, Lee's legion of lighthorse, and several batteries of artillery.

We must now return to the army under Washington. As the spring opened the sufferings of the troops at Morristown increased. Food was so scarce that the troops were driven to desperation. Two regiments of Connecticut troops declared their intention to abandon the army and march home, or wrest provisions from the people of the surrounding country by force. Washington was compelled to exert all his influence and authority to restore order. It was with great difficulty that provisions were procured, and the wants of the troops supplied. The danger caused by this state of affairs was so great that Congress authorized Washington to declare martial law.

GENERAL NATHANIEL GREENE.

The news of these troubles in the American camp induced Knyphausen to undertake an expedition into New Jersey. He landed a

Elizabethtown, with five thousand men, on the sixth of June, and marched towards Springfield. His advance was warmly contested by the militia of the region, but he penetrated as far as the village of Connecticut Farms. Being unable to advance farther he caused the village to be sacked and burned; and Mrs. Caldwell, the wife of the minister of the village, was murdered by some of the British troops. The militia of the region gathered in force, and Knyphausen was obliged to make a hasty retreat to Elizabethtown.

The murder of Mrs. Caldwell aroused the most intense excitement throughout New Jersey. It was denounced as one of the most infamous deeds of the war, and gave rise to a fierce and general spirit of vengeance. Her bushand, an eloquent and highly esteemed minister, animated his contrymen by his stirring sermons, and he soon had the satisfaction of seeing that his labors were not in vain.

After the return of Sir Henry Clinton to New York Washington moved a part of his troops towards the Highlands. Knyphausen again advanced from Elizabethtown towards Springfield, hoping to gain the passes beyond Morristown before his march should be discovered. His advance was detected, however, and General Greene, who was in command of the American forces, prepared to resist

"NOW PUT WATTS INTO THEM, BOYS."

him. A sharp fight ensued, in which Greene succeeded in checking the British advance. The New Jersey regiment, of which Caldwell was chaplain, was engaged in the battle.

The wadding of the men gave out, and Caldwell, mounting his horse, galloped to the Presbyterian church, and returned with an armful of Dr. Watts' hymn books, which he distributed among the troops, with the pious injunction, "Now put Watts into them, boys!" The militia came flocking in to the support of General Greene, and Knyphausen finding it impossible to advance farther, burned Springfield and fell back to Elizabethtown.

Return of Lafayette.

The Americans were greatly encouraged in the spring by the return of Lafayette, who had spent the winter in France. He had been successful in his endeavors to induce the French court to send another fleet and army to the assistance of the patriots; and he now brought the good news that a new expedition was on its way to America. In July a fleet under Count de Tiernay, with an army of seven thousand men, under Count de Rochambeau, reached Newport. The Count de Rochambeau was directed by his government to place himself under the orders of General Warhington in order to avoid disputes that might arise from military etiquette. This expedition was the first division of the army to be sent to America by France.

The second division was to sail from Brest, but was unable to do so, as it was blockaded in that harbor by a British squadron. Thus the supplies of arms and clothing which were to have been sent to the American army were delayed, and the troops under Washington were unable to coöperate with the French in an attack upon New York. An English fleet had followed the French across the Atlantic, and Clinton was anxious to secure its coöperation in an attack upon the French at Newport. He could not agree with Admiral Arbuthnot upon a plan of attack, and the English admiral contented himself with blockading the French in Newport harbor. Washington called out the militia of New England to assist in the defence of Newport in case of an attack. The French fleet was shut up in this port, and to the great disappointment of Washington, was unable to take part in any combined operation.

Some weeks later Washington, anxious to strike a decisive blow at the enemy, invited the French commanders, De Tiernay and Rochambeau, to meet him at Hartford, to arrange a plan for an attack upon New York. The meeting was held, but it was decided to ask the coöperation of the French admiral in the West Indies, as the fleet at Newport was not strong enough to cope with the British fleet at New York. Until the answer of the admiral was received nothing could be done.

A Treasonable Plot.

While absent at Hartford a plot was discovered which involved the fair fame of one of the most brilliant officers of the American army. General Benedict Arnold had been disabled by the wounds he had received at Quebec and Saratoga from undertaking active service, and through the influence of Washington had been placed in command of Philadelphia after its evacuation by Clinton in 1778. There he lived in a style far beyond his means, and became involved in debts, which he was unable to pay. To raise the funds to discharge them he engaged in privateering and mercantile speculations. These were generally unsuccessful, and merely increased his difficulties. His haughty and overbearing manner involved him in a quar-

rel with the authorities of Pennsylvania who accused him before Congress of abusing his official position and misusing the public funds.

He was tried by a court-martial and was sentenced to be reprimanded by the commander-in-chief. Washington performed this disagreeable task as delicately as possible, but did not lose his confidence in Arnold.

BENEDICT ARNOLD.

He knew him as an able officer, but, as his acquaintance with him was limited, was most likely ignorant of the faults of Arnold's character, which were well known to the members of Congress from Connecticut, who had no confidence in him. To them he was known to be naturally dishonest, regardless of the rights of others, and cruel and tyrannical in his dealings with those under his authority. Arnold never forgave the disgrace inflicted upon him by the sentence of the court-martial, and cherished the determination to be revenged upon Washington for the reprimand received from him.

While in Philadelphia, Arnold had married a member of a Tory family, and was thus enabled to communicate readily with the British officers. He opened a correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, signing himself Gustavus. He kept up this correspondence for several months, and then made himself known to the British commander. In the meantime, at his earnest solicitation, he was appointed by Washington, in August, 1780, to the command of West Point, the strongest and most important fortress in America. He did this with the deliberate intention of betraying the post into the hands of the enemy.

The correspondence had been conducted on the part of Sir Henry Clinton by Major John André of the British army, a young man of amiable character and more than ordinary accomplishments. He wrote under the assumed name of John Anderson. He was an especial favorite of Sir Henry Clinton, and was beloved by the whole army in which he served. Soon after the appointment of Arnold to the command of West Point, André volunteered to go up the Hudson and have an interview with him for the purpose of completing the arrangements for the betrayal of that fortress.

His offer was accepted by Clinton, and he ascended the Hudson as far as Haverstraw in the sloop of war "Vulture." He was set ashore and was met near Haverstraw on the west bank of the Hudson by General Arnold,

on the twenty-second of September. The meeting took place about dark, and the night had passed before the arrangements were completed. Much against his will, André was compelled to pass the next day within the American lines. During the twenty-third the "Vulture," having attracted the attention of the Americans, was fired upon and forced to drop down the river. André found the man who had set him ashore unwilling to row him back to the sloop, and he was compelled to return to New York by land. He changed his uniform for a citizen's dress, and, provided with a pass from Arnold, under the name of John Anderson, set out for New York along the east bank of the river, which he deemed safer than the opposite shore.

All went well until André reached the vicinity of Tarrytown. There he was stopped by three young men, John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wart. They asked him his name and destination, and he, supposing them to be Tories, did not use the pass given him by Arnold, but frankly avowed himself a British officer travelling on important business. To his dismay he then learned that his captors were of the patriotic party, and he offered them his watch, purse, and any reward they might name if they would suffer him to proceed. They refused to allow him to stir a step, and searched his person. They found concealed in his boots papers giving the plan of West Point, and an account of its garrison.

André was taken by his captors before Colonel Jamison, the commander of the nearest American post. Jamison recognized the handwriting as that of Arnold, but, unwilling to believe that his commander could be guilty of treason, he detained the prisoner, and wrote to Arnold informing him of the arrest of André and of the papers found upon his person. The papers themselves he forwarded by a special messenger to Washington, who was on his return from Hartford.

Arnold received Colonel Jamison's letter as he sat at breakfast with some of his officers. He concealed his emotion, and excusing himself to his guests, called his wife from the room, told her he must flee for his life, and hastening to his barge, escaped down the river to the "Vulture," and was received on board by the commander of that vessel. From his place of safety he wrote to Washington, asking him to protect his wife, who,

MAJOR ANDRÉ.

he declared, was innocent of any share in his plot.

When he learned that Arnold was safe, André wrote to Washington, and confessed the whole plot. He was at once brought to trial upon the charge of being within the American lines as a spy. The court-martial was presided over by General Greene, and Lafayette and Steuben were among its members. André asserted that he had been induced to enter the American lines by the misrepresentations of Arnold.

The Infamous Plot Confessed.

He denied that he was a spy, and though cautioned not to say anything that might criminate himself, he frankly confessed the whole plot. He was sentenced, upon his own confession, to be hanged. Clinton made great exertions to save him, and Washington, whose sympathy was won by the amiable character of André, was anxious to spare him. The circumstances of the case demanded that the law should be executed, and Andre was hanged at Tappan, near the Hudson, on the second of October, 1780. Congress voted to each of his three captors a pension of two hundred dollars for life and and a silver medal.

The plot of Arnold had been discovered by the merest chance, and the American cause had narrowly escaped a crushing disaster. The loss of West Point would have given the British the entire control of the Hudson, and have enabled them to separate New England from the Middle and Southern States. It might have proved fatal to the cause, and certainly would have reduced Washington to great extremities. Arnold received for his treachery the sum of ten thousand pounds sterling and a commission as brigadier-general in the English service. He was regarded with general contempt by the English officers, who refused to associate with him, and were greatly averse to serving under him.

In the summer of 1780 it seemed likely that England would be involved in war with the whole civilized world. The claim of Great Britain to the right to search the vessels of neutral nations for articles contraband of war was productive of great annoyance to the northern powers, whose commerce was subjected to serious loss by these arbitrary measures. Catharine II. of Russia determined to resist it, and organized with Denmark and Sweden a league known as the "Armed Neutrality," for the purpose of enforcing the principle that neutral ships in time of war are entitled to carry merchandise without being liable to search or seizure by the belligerent powers.

War in Europe.

Holland joined this league, and concluded a secret commercial treaty with the United States. This treaty was discovered by Great Britain almost immediately, and in the following manner: The American minister to Holland, Henry Laurens, was captured at sea by a British frigate. He threw his papers, the treaty among them, into the sea, but they were recovered by an English sailor, who sprang overboard and secured them. They were laid before the British government, which demanded that Holland should disavow the treaty and the correspondence with the United States. The Dutch government returned an evasive answer, and England immediately declared war against Holland. The English fleet at once proceeded to attack the Dutch possessions and commerce in all parts of the world. Holland declared war against Great Britain, and her fleet was added to that of France against England.

Spain now made an alliance with France against England, and sent her fleet to cooperate with the French in the West Indies,

ESCAPE OF BENEDICT ARNOLD. 463

and also laid siege to Gibraltar. The Irish about the same time demanded a reform of the many abuses from which that island had been suffering since the battle of the Boyne, and this demand was sustained by a force of eighty thousand armed Protestant volunteers which had been raised for the defence of Ireland against a threatened attack of the French. They demanded an independent parliament, and even threatened a total separation from Great Britain. In the face of these difficulties the spirit of England rose higher than ever, and that country, with a vigor worthy of her ancient renown, put forth all her energies to find a way out of her difficulties. The whole world was arrayed against her, but in the face of it she held her own. The heroism manifested by England at this trying period is worthy of the highest admiration.

Sufferings of the Patriots.

The American army passed the winter of 1780–81 in cantonments east and west of the Hudson. The Pennsylvania troops were stationed near Morristown, and the New Jersey regiments at Pompton. Though the troops were better provided with food than during the previous winter their sufferings were still very severe. They were neglected by Congress, which was too much occupied with its dissensions to make any serious effort to relieve the wants of the soldiers. The Pennsylvania troops had an especial cause of complaint. Their enlistments were for three years or the war. The three years had expired, but the government refused to discharge them on the ground that the enlistments were for the period of the war no matter how long it should last. The troops on the other hand contended that the words, "for the war," meant that the enlistments should expire if the war closed in less than three years.

On the first of January, 1781, thirteen hundred Pennsylvania troops left the camp at Morristown under arms and set off for Philadelphia to obtain redress from Congress. General Wayne, their commander, placed himself in front of them, and, pistol in hand, attempted to stop their march. In an instant their bayonets were at his breast. "We love, we respect you," they exclaimed, "but you are a dead man if you fire. Do not mistake us; we are not going to the enemy; were they now to come out you would see us fight under your orders with as much resolution and alacrity as ever." They halted at Princeton, where they were met by the agents of Sir Henry Clinton, who endeavored to induce them to join the British service. They promptly seized these men and delivered them up to General Wayne as spies. At a later period it was proposed to reward them for this action, but they refused to accept anything, saying: "We ask no reward for doing our duty to our country."

Mutiny Promptly Quelled.

Congress was greatly alarmed by the approach of these troops, and a committee, accompanied by Reed, the President of Pennsylvania, was sent to meet them. The committee met the leaders of the mutineers and agreed to relieve their immediate wants and to secure them their back pay by means of certificates. Permission was given to all who had served three years to withdraw from the army. Upon these conditions the troops returned to duty. The disaffection was increased by the yielding of Congress. On the twentieth of January the New Jersey troops at Pompton mutinied, but this outbreak was quelled by a detachment sent from West Point by Washington.

The mutiny opened the eyes of the country to the sufferings of the army, and aroused

all parties to the necessity of providing for the troops. It was clearly understood that a failure to sustain the army would result in the defeat of the cause. Urgent appeals were made by Congress to all the States, especially to those of New England, to supply the wants of the army, and Congress endeavored to negotiate a loan abroad. Direct taxation was resorted to to provide money at once.

The British in Virginia.

The year 1781 opened with a military expedition under the command of the traitor Arnold, now a brigadier-general in the British service. Early in January he was sent by Sir Henry Clinton, with sixteen hundred British and Tories, from New York to the Chesapeake to ravage the shores of Virginia, After plundering the plantations along the lower bay and the James, Arnold ascended the river, and landing his troops marched to Richmond. Thomas Jefferson, tnen Governor of Virginia, called out the militia, but only a handful responded. Arnold occupied Richmond, burned the public buildings and some private dwellings, and then re-embarked and dropped down the the river to Portsmouth. Washington was anxious to capture him, and sent Lafayette with a force of twelve hundred men southward by land to prevent Arnold from escaping overland to join Cornwallis in the Carolinas, and at the same time the French fleet sailed from Newport for the Chesapeake to prevent the escape of the traitor by water.

The British Admiral Arbuthnot followed the French fleet and brought it to an engagement off the mouth of the Chesapeake. The French were worsted and obliged to return to Newport, and Admiral Arbuthnot entered the bay and reinforced Arnold with two thousand British troops under General Philips, who assumed the command at Portsmouth and fortified his position there. From his camp he sent out detachments to ravage the country in all directions. Lafayette, in the meantime, upon hearing of the failure of the plan, halted at Annapolis, in Maryland. Arnold, upon being superseded by Philips, returned to New York.

Battle of the "Cowpens."

Early in January Cornwallis, who was at Winnsborough, South Carolina, sent Colonel Tarleton, with a force of one thousand cavalry and light infantry, to cut off Morgan's division from the column under General Greene. Morgan was between the Broad and Catawba Rivers at the time, and upon hearing of Tarleton's approach began to retreat towards the Catawba. Tarleton pushed on with such speed that Morgan saw he must be overtaken. He accordingiy halted and took position at the "Cowpens," ahout thirty miles west of King's Mountain, and rested his men. Tarleton arrived in front of this position on the seventeenth of January and made an impetuous attack upon the Americans. At first he drove the militia before him, but Morgan keeping his Continentals well in hand, suddenly wheeled upon him and drove him from the field. The two forces were about equal. Morgan lost but eighty men, while the loss of the British was over six hundred. Tarleton escaped from the field with only a few of his cavalry.

Cornwallis moved forward as soon as he learned of Tarleton's defeat. He supposed that Morgan would be encumbered with his wounded and prisoners, and would be slow in leaving the scene of his victory, and he hoped by a rapid march to come up with him, crush him, and rescue the prisoners before he could join General Greene. Morgan was much too wary to be caught in such a trap. He felt sure Cornwallis would

seek to avenge Tarleton's defeat, and leaving his wounded under a flag of truce, he resumed his retreat with all speed immediately after the battle, and hurrying towards the Catawba, crossed that river.

Two hours after he had passed it the advance of Cornwallis' army reached the bank of the river, but owing to a sudden rise in the stream were unable to cross it. The British were detained in this manner for two days, during which Morgan rested his men and sent off his prisoners to a place of safety.

GENERAL DANIEL MORGAN.

Two days after the passage of the Catawba Morgan was joined by the troops under General Greene, who had heard of the victory of the Cowpens, and was advancing to the assistance of his lieutenant. Greene was not yet strong enough to meet the British, and he continued the retreat toward the Yadkin. He moved slowly, and his rear guard was still engaged in the passage of the Yadkin when the advance guard of Cornwallis reached that stream, on the third of February. Cornwallis had burned all his heavy baggage, and had reduced his army to the strictest light marching order, in the hope of being able to intercept Greene.

A skirmish ensued on the banks of the Yadkin, and night coming on the British commander deferred the passage of the stream until the next day. During the night a heavy rain swelled the river so high that it could not be forded, and the Americans had secured all the boats on the other side. Greene, profiting by this delay, hurried on to cross the Dan into Virginia, where he could receive reinforcements and supplies. Morgan was left to cover the retreat of the army, but falling ill was obliged to relinquish the command of the rear guard to Colonel Otho H. Williams.

Cornwallis passed the Yadkin as soon as possible and strained every nerve to prevent Greene from crossing the Dan. He supposed the Americans would not be able to cross at the lower ferries, but would be obliged to pass the river higher up, where it could be forded. He therefore urged his army to its utmost exertions to secure these fords before the arrival of the Americans. Perceiving Cornwallis' error, Colonel Williams retreated towards the upper fords and so confirmed the British commander in his delusion. Having led the British sufficiently out of the way, Williams wheeled about, and by a rapid march of forty miles in twenty-four hours down the river, rejoined Greene, who had moved with all speed to the lower ferries, where, in anticipation of his retreat, he had collected a supply of boats. The Dan was passed on the fifteenth of February, and the American army was safe from its pursuers.

An hour or two later Cornwallis, who had discovered his mistake and had marched

with speed from the upper fords, appeared on the opposite bank of the river, only to see his adversary safely beyond his reach. The river was too deep to be forded, and Greene had all the boats in his possession. Cornwallis was deeply mortified at his failure to intercept Greene. He had pursued him for over two hundred miles, and had made great sacrifices to come up with him, but the American commander had managed to elude him and had successfully carried out one of the most brilliant retreats in history. The Americans regarded their escape as providential, and not without cause. Their way across the Carolinas might be tracked by the blood from their feet; and twice, when the enemy had come within gunshot of them, the rising of the waters of the Catawba and the Yadkin, which they had passed in safety, had held back the British and enabled them to escape. After resting his men for a few days on the banks of the Dan, Cornwallis fell back to Hillsborough.

Greene Compelled to Retreat.

Having received reinforcements, General Greene recrossed the Dan, about the last of February, and advanced into the Carolinas to watch Cornwallis and encourage the patriots of that region. Cornwallis, being short of supplies, moved slowly southward. Greene followed him cautiously, too weak to risk a battle, but ready to take advantage of the first error on the part of his adversary. His movements were conducted with the utmost circumspection, and in order to guard against a surprise he never remained in the same place more than one day, and kept secret until the last moment the places he selected for his encampments. In the meantime he was gradually receiving reinforcements from Virginia and Maryland, until his army numbered four thousand men.

Feeling himself strong enough to attack the enemy, Greene left his baggage at a point of safety and advanced to Guilford Court-house, seventeen miles distant, with the intention of bringing Cornwallis to a decisive engagement. Here he was attacked by Cornwallis on the fifteenth of March, and after one of the hardest-fought battles of the war was compelled to retreat. Greene withdrew in good order, and Cornwallis, though victorious on the field, was so sorely crippled that he was unable to make any pursuit, and was obliged to fall back to Wilmington, near the mouth of Cape Fear River. By the time he reached that place his army had been so much weakened by desertions and losses in battle that it amounted to but fourteen hundred men.

Operations in South Carolina.

Greene had lost a thousand militia by desertion during his retreat, but was soon enabled to supply their places. He then moved into South Carolina for the purpose of attacking the British force under Lord Rawdon, which was posted at Camden. He advanced to Hobkirk's Hill, about two miles from Camden, where he was attacked on the twenty-fifth of April by Lord Rawdon. After a sharp engagement Greene was defeated and obliged to retreat. He withdrew his army in good order, having inflicted upon his adversary a loss about equal to his own. Rawdon was unable to derive any advantage from his victory, as he could not bring Greene to another general engagement. The activity of the American partisan corps in his rear alarmed him for the safety of his communications with Charleston, and he abandoned Camden and fell back to Monk's Corner.

In the meantime Lee, Marion, Pickens, and the other partisan leaders had broken up the fortified posts of the British with

such success that by the month of June, 1781, only three positions of importance remained to the British in South Carolina Charleston, Nelson's Ferry and Fort Ninety-six, near the Saluda. The last-named position was of the greatest importance, and was held by a force of Carolina Tories. Lee and Pickens were sent against Augusta, Georgia, and captured it after a close investment of seven days. General Greene himself marched against Ninety-six and laid siege to it. Being informed that Lord Rawdon was marching to relieve it, he determined to carry the fort by assault before Rawdon could arrive. The assault was made on the eighteenth of June, but was repulsed with severe loss. Greene then raised the siege and retreated across the Saluda.

LORD RAWDON, AFTERWARD MARQUIS OF HASTINGS.

Early in July the excessive heat put an end to active operations on the part of the two armies. Greene withdrew to the high hills of the Santee, and the British went into camp on the Congaree. A bitter partisan warfare now sprung up between the patriots and the tories, and continued during the summer. Houses were pillaged and burned, farms were laid waste and no quarter was given by either party. Even women and children were included in these dreadful massacres.

Lord Rawdon now resolved to add to the horrors of this warfare by executing as traitors those who had given their parole not to engage in the war or had received a protection, if they should be taken in arms. Among the prisoners taken by the British at the capture of Charleston, was Colonel Isaac Hayne, a distinguished citizen of that place. His wife

was dying and his children were helpless, and he gave his parole to remain neutral, in order to be able to take care of them, and was promised protection. At a later period, the British commander being in need of reinforcements, Hayne was ordered to take up arms against his country in behalf of the king. He regarded himself as relieved from his parole by this command, and soon after escaped from Charleston and raised a partisan corps, at the head of which he was captured. He was condemned to die as a traitor; and though the inhabitants of Charleston, both patriot and royalist, petitioned for his pardon, it was refused, and he was hanged, by order of Lord Rawdon, on the 5th of August.

Life for Life.

His execution was regarded by the Americans as cruel and unjust, and as contrary to military law. General Greene felt himself obliged to retaliate by executing as deserters all those prisoners who had formerly served in his own army, and so bitter was the feeling of the American troops that they could scarcely be prevented from shooting the British officers who fell into their hands.

Lord Rawdon now sailed for England, and left the command of his army to Colonel Stewart, an officer of ability and experience. At the close of the summer General Greene, whose army had been increased by the commands of Marion and Pickens to twenty-five hundred men, resumed the offensive. He attacked the British at Eutaw Springs on the eighth of September, and after a severely contested battle the left wing of the British was routed. In the moment of victory the American army stopped to plunder the enemy's camp, and the British, taking advantage of the delay, rallied and made a stand in a large stone house, from which they could not be driven. Greene was forced to draw off his troops and leave the field to the British, who lost seven hundred men in the engagement. The American loss was five hundred men. Both sides claimed the victory; but the advantage certainly was not with the British, who lost more than a third of their men.

Colonel Stewart, in view of this loss, fell back to the vicinity of Charleston. Greene followed him as far as Monk's Corner, and then returned to the hills of the Santee. The American commander had abundant reason to be satisfied with the result of his operations in South Carolina. He had rescued the greater part of the State from the British, and had confined them to the region between the Santee and the lower Savannah. He had repeatedly engaged the enemy with the most inadequate means and under the most unfavorable circumstances, and had never failed, even though defeated, to accomplish the object for which he fought. He had baffled the British commanders over again, and, like William of Orange, had managed to derive greater advantages from his reverses than his adversaries were able to draw from their victories.

Plan to Recapture New York.

Washington was well pleased with the achievements, in the South, of his most trusted lieutenant. He was very anxious to attempt something decisive with his own army, if he could secure the aid of a French army and fleet. Two enterprises offered themselves to him—an attack upon New York, which had been greatly weakened by detachments sent from its garrison to the sou h, and an expedition against Cornwallis. That commander had left Wilmington on the twentieth of April, and had advanced, without encountering any serious resistance, to Petersburg, Virginia. He arrived there on the twentieth of May, and was joined by the troops under General Philips, who had been plundering the country along the James river.

While Washington was hesitating which would be the best course to pursue, a French frigate arrived at Newport, with the Count de Barras on board, who had come to take command of the fleet at Newport. He brought the good news that a fleet of twenty ships-of-the-line, under the Count de Grasse, having on board a considerable force of troops, had sailed for America, and might be expected to arrive in the course of a few months. Washington held a conference with the Count de Rochambeau, at Weathersfield, Connecticut, and it was resolved to attack New York. The French army was to march from Newport and form a junction with the Americans on the Hudson. A frigate was despatched to the West Indies to inform the Count de Grasse of this arrangement, and to ask his co-operation in the proposed attack.

Cornwallis Strongly Intrenched.

Sir Henry Clinton, who suspected the designs of Washington, now ordered Lord Cornwallis, who had crosssed the James river, and was at Williamsburg, to send him a reinforcement of troops. Cornwallis prepared to comply with this order, and for that purpose marched towards Portsmouth, followed cautiously by Lafayette and Steuben, who had with them about four thousand American troops. On the march a slight engagement occurred, near Westover, between Lafayette and Cornwallis, in which the Americans narrowly escaped a defeat.

The British army crossed to the south side of the James, and a detachment was embarked for New York. At this moment a second order was received from Sir Henry Clinton, who had received a reinforcement of Hessians from England, directing Cornwallis to retain all his force, choose some central position in Virginia, fortify himself in it, and await the development of the American plans. Cornwallis should have taken position at Portsmouth, from which place his line of retreat to the South would have remained intact. In an evil hour for himself he recrossed the James, and crossing the peninsula between that river and the York, took position at the towns of Gloucester and Yorktown, opposite each other, on the York River. He had with him an army of eight thousand effective troops, and proceeded to fortify his position with strong intrenchments. A number of vessels of war were anchored between Yorktown and Gloucester to maintain the communication between those points and to assist in the defence of the place.

During all this time the financial affairs of the republic were growing worse and more hopeless. The continental currency had become utterly worthless, one dollar in paper being worth only one cent in coin at the opening of the year 1781. In the spring of that year Congress sought to put an end to its financial troubles by taking the control of the finances from a board which had hitherto managed them, and intrusting them to Robert Morris, whose services in behalf of the cause have been mentioned before.

Return to Specie Payments.

Morris was an experienced financier, and had opposed with all his energy the system of making continental money a legal tender. He now made a return to specie payments the condition of his acceptance of the trust imposed upon him by Congress. On the twenty-second of May, 1781, Congress most unwillingly resolved: "That the whole debts already due by the United States be liquidated as soon as may be to their specie value, and funded, if agreeable to the creditors, as a loan upon interest; that the States be severally informed that the calculations of the present campaign are made in solid coin, and, therefore, that the requisitions

from them respectively being grounded on those calculations, must be complied with in such manner as effectually to answer the the purpose designed; that experience having evinced the inefficacy of all attempts to support the credit of paper money by compulsory acts, it is recommended to such States where laws making paper bills a tender yet exist to repeal the same."

On the thirty-first of May continental bills, being no longer a legal tender, ceased to circulate. Henceforth all transactions were to be in hard money. The result amply vindicated Morris' views. He induced Congress to establish the Bank of the United States at Philadelphia, with a capital of two millions of dollars and a charter for ten years. This bank was allowed the privilege of issuing its own notes, which it was required to redeem in specie upon presentation. This requirement gained for the bank the confidence of the people, and capitalists availed themselves of it for the investment of their money. Morris used the bank freely in his public operations, and at the same time used it so wisely that he was able to secure all the aid it was capable of bestowing without subjecting it to too severe a strain. He raised the credit of the government higher than it had ever stood before, and was able to do much towards paying the soldiers and supplying them with food and clothing. As often as the public funds failed he pledged his own credit to supply the deficiency. No man did more to contribute to the success of the cause than Robert Morris; and no man received more ingratitude from the government and people of the Union than he.

In July Washington was joined in the Highlands by the French army under Count de Rochambeau, and preparations were made to attack New York. An intercepted letter informed Sir Henry Clinton of this design, and he exerted himself to put the city in a state of defence. In the midst of his preparations Washington received a letter from the Count de Grasse, stating that he would sail for the Chesapeake instead of Newport. This decision of the French admiral compelled an entire change of plan on the part of the Americans. As De Grasse would not co-operate with them, they must abandon the attack upon New York, and attempt the capture of Cornwallis at Yorktown. No time was to be lost in

SCENE IN THE HIGHLANDS OF THE HUDSON.

making the attempt, for it was now the month of August. By a series of skilful movements Sir Henry Clinton was induced to believe that an attack upon New York would soon be made, and at the same time the American army was marched rapidly across New Jersey, followed by the French. Lafayette, who was in Virginia, was ordered to prevent at all hazards a retreat of Cornwallis' army to North Carolina, and was directed to ask assistance of General Greene if necessary.

Cornwallis Entrapped.

The plan of Washington was to blockade Cornwallis in the York river by means of the French fleet, and at the same time to besiege him in Yorktown with the army. The troops were somewhat unwilling to undertake a southern campaign in August. but their good humor was restored at Philadelphia, where they received a part of their pay in specie, and a supply of clothing, arms and ammunition, which had just arrived from France. From Philadelphia the combined armies proceeded to Elkton, at head of the the Chesapeake, where they found transports, sent by the French admiral and by Lafayette, to convey them to the James river.

The first intimation Sir Henry Clinton had of a change in the American plans was the sudden sailing of the French fleet from Newport on the twenty-eight of August. Supposing that De Barras's object was to unite with another fleet in the Chesapeake, Clinton sent Admiral Graves to prevent the junction. Upon reaching the capes the British admiral was astonished to find the fleet of the Count de Grasse, consisting of twenty ships-of-the line, anchored within the bay. De Grasse at once put to sea as if to engage the enemy, but in reality to draw them off and allow De Barras to enter the Chesapeake. For five days he amused the English by constant skirmishing. De Barras at length appeared and passed within the capes, and De Grasse at once followed him. Admiral Graves was unwilling to attack this combined force and returned to New York.

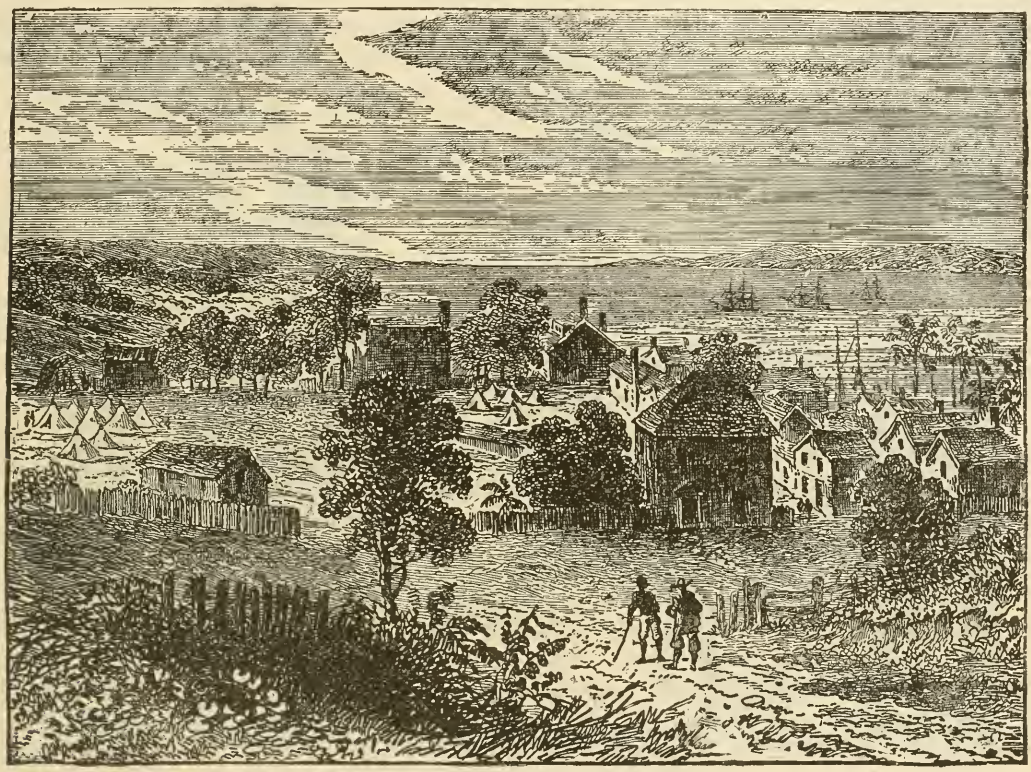
The movement of the American army to the south was known to Clinton, but he supposed it was only a manœuvre to draw him off of Manhattan Island into the open country. When the Americans were beyond the Delaware and the French fleets had effected their junction in the Chesapeake, he recognized his mistake and saw that the object of Washington was the capture of Cornwallis. It was too late to prevent it; but in the hope of compelling Washington to send back a part of his force to defend New England, Clinton sent the traitor Arnold with a large body of troops to attack New London in Connecticut. On the sixth of September Arnold captured that town and burned the shipping and a large part of the town.

A Horrible Massacre.

He then took Fort Griswold, on the opposite side of the Thames, by storm, and basely massacred Colonel Indyard, the commander, and sixty of the garrison after the surrender of the fort. The militia of the State were summoned to take up arms for its defence, and responded in such numbers that Arnold became alarmed for his safety and returned to New York. The object of his expedition failed most signally. Washington left New England to defend herself, and continued his movement against Cornwallis.

Cornwallis was very slow to realize his danger. He believed the small force under Lafayette the only command opposed to him, and on the tenth of September wrote to Clinton that he could spare him twelve hundred men for the defence of New York. He did not perceive his error until the French fleet had

anchored in the Chesapeake and cut off his escape by water. He then attempted to retreat to North Carolina, as Washington had foreseen, but Lafayette, who had been reinforced by three thousand French troops under the Marquis de St. Simon, from the fleet of De Grasse, was too active for him, and finding his retreat impossible, Cornwallis sent urgent appeals to Clinton for assistance, and strengthened his fortifications.



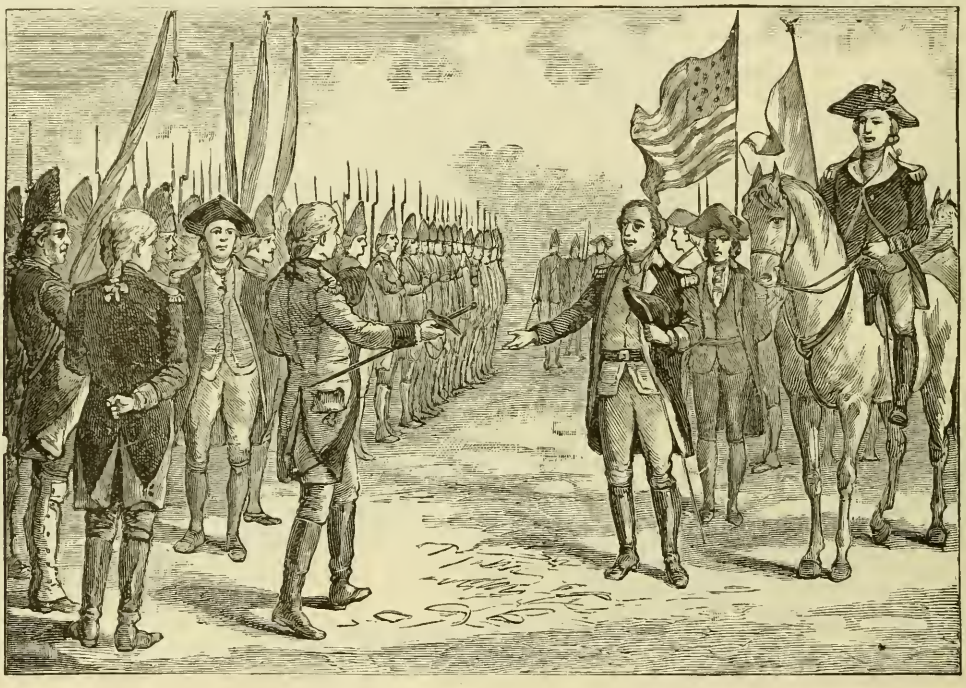
VIEW OF YORKTOWN.

In the meantime the American and French armies descended the Chesapeake, and took position before Yorktown, while the French fleet closed the mouth of York river. The siege was begun on the twenty-eight of September. Sixteen thousand men were present under Washington's orders. Works were erected completely enclosing those of the British, and on the ninth of October the cannonade was begun. It was continued for four days, and the British outworks were greatly damaged, and several of their vessels in the river were burned by means of red-hot shot thrown into them by the French vessels. On the fourteenth two of the advanced redoubts of the enemy were stormed and taken, one by the Americans, the other by the French. From the positions thus gained a very destructive fire was maintained upon the English lines, which were broken in many places, while many of their guns were dismounted and rendered useless. On the fifteenth Cornwallis found himself almost out of ammunition, and unable to maintain his position but for a few days longer.

In this strait the British commander resolved upon the desperate alternative of crossing the York to Gloucester, abandoning his sick and wounded and baggage, and endeavoring to force his way northward by extraordinary marches to New York. It was a hopeless undertaking, but Cornwallis resolved to make the trial. On the night of the sixteenth of October he crossed a part of his army from Yorktown to Gloucester, but a sudden storm delayed the passage of the river by the second division until after daylight, when it was useless to make the attempt.

The first division was with difficulty brought back to Yorktown, as the boats were exposed to the fire of the American batteries while crossing the river. Nothing was left to Cornwallis now but a capitulation, as his works were in no condition to withstand an assault, and simple humanity to his men demanded that the contest should cease. He sent to Washington an offer to surrender, and the terms were soon arranged. On the nineteenth of October Cornwallis surrendered his army of seven thousand men as prisoners of war to Washington, as commander of the allied army, and his shipping seamen and naval stores to the Count de Grasse, as the representative of the king of France.

Washington despatched one of his aids to Philadelphia to communicate the good news to Congress. The officer pushed forward with all speed, and reached Philadelphia at midnight, and delivered his message. Soon the peals of the State-house bell roused the citizens, and the watchmen took up the cry, "Cornwallis is taken! Cornwallis is taken!" The people poured out into the streets in throngs, and no one slept in Philadelphia that night. The next day Congress proceeded in a body to a church and gave thanks for the great victory. A national thanksgiving



SURRENDER OF LORD CORNWALLIS.

was ordered, and throughout the whole land rejoicings went up to God for the success which all men felt was decisive of the war.

On the nineteenth of October, the day of the surrender of Cornwallis, Sir Henry Clinton sailed from New York to his assistance with a force of seven thousand men. Off the capes he learned of the surrender of the British army at Yorktown, and as his fleet was not strong enough to meet that of the French he returned at once to New York.

"It is All Over."

The news of the surrender of Cornwallis was received in England with astonishment and mortification. It was the second time England had lost an entire army by capture, and her efforts to subdue the United States were no nearer success than they had been at the opening of the war. The English people had never regarded the attempt to conquer America with favor, and they now became more open and energetic in their demands for peace. "Lord North, the prime minister," says an English writer, "received the intelligence of the capture of Cornwallis as he would have done a cannon ball in his breast; he paced the room, and throwing his arms wildly about, kept exclaiming, 'O God! it is all over! it is all over!'" The king and the aristocracy, however, had no thought of yielding yet to the popular pressure, and were resolved to carry on the war.

After the surrender at Yorktown, Washington urged the Count de Grasse to coöperate with General Greene in an attack upon Charleston. The French admiral declined to comply with his request, alleging the necessity of his immediate return to the West Indies. The French troops were quartered for the winter at Williamsburg, Virginia, and the American army returned northward and resumed its old position on the Hudson. Washington, though convinced that peaee was close at hand, did not relax his vigilance, and urged upon Congress the necessity of preparing for a vigorous campaign the next year; but so thoroughly was Congress carried away by the prospect of peace that his recommendations were unheeded.

In the south the British and Tories were so disheartened by the surrender of Cornwallis that they ceased active operations and evacuated all their posts but Savannah and Charleston. General Greene at once disposed his army in such a manner as to confine them closely to Charleston. In the Northern States the only place held by the British was New York.

Indian and Tory Outrages.

Though active operations had ceased on the part of the two armies, a cruel and destructive warfare was continued by the Indian allies of the British against the border settlements of Pennsylvania and Virginia, and a similar warfare was maintained by the Tories and Indians along the frontier of New York. These outrages involved the Christian Delaware Indians in the punishment of the guilty savages. The Delawares had become converted to Christianity under the influence of the Moravian missionaries, and had removed from the Susquehanna to the Muskingum.

They were suspected by the Americans of the crimes of their heathen brethren, and in the spring and summer of 1782 their towns were destroyed and numbers of them were slain. The war was carried into the country of the Wyandottes by the whites, but with less success. On the sixth of June a force of Pennsylvanians under Colonel Crawford was defeated by the Wyandottes. In the same summer a band of northern Indians led by Simon Girty, a Tory of infamous

character, invaded Kentucky. They were met by the Kentuckians under Boone, Todd, and other leaders. A severe battle was fought at the Big Blue Lick, and the Kentuckians were defeated with the loss of nearly one-half their force.

Story of Captain Huddy.

Some of the staunchest patriots and some of the most ferocious Tories resided in Monmouth county, New Jersey. The patriots built a block-house of logs at Dover, which was a strongly fortified building. The only method of ingress or egress was by the use of a scaling ladder. Captain John Huddy was commander of this post, and was one of the bravest men who fought for the American cause. His house was once surrounded by his foes, but escaping he jumped into the waters of the bay, and as he swam he shouted, "I am Huddy!" His escape on this occasion was remarkable.

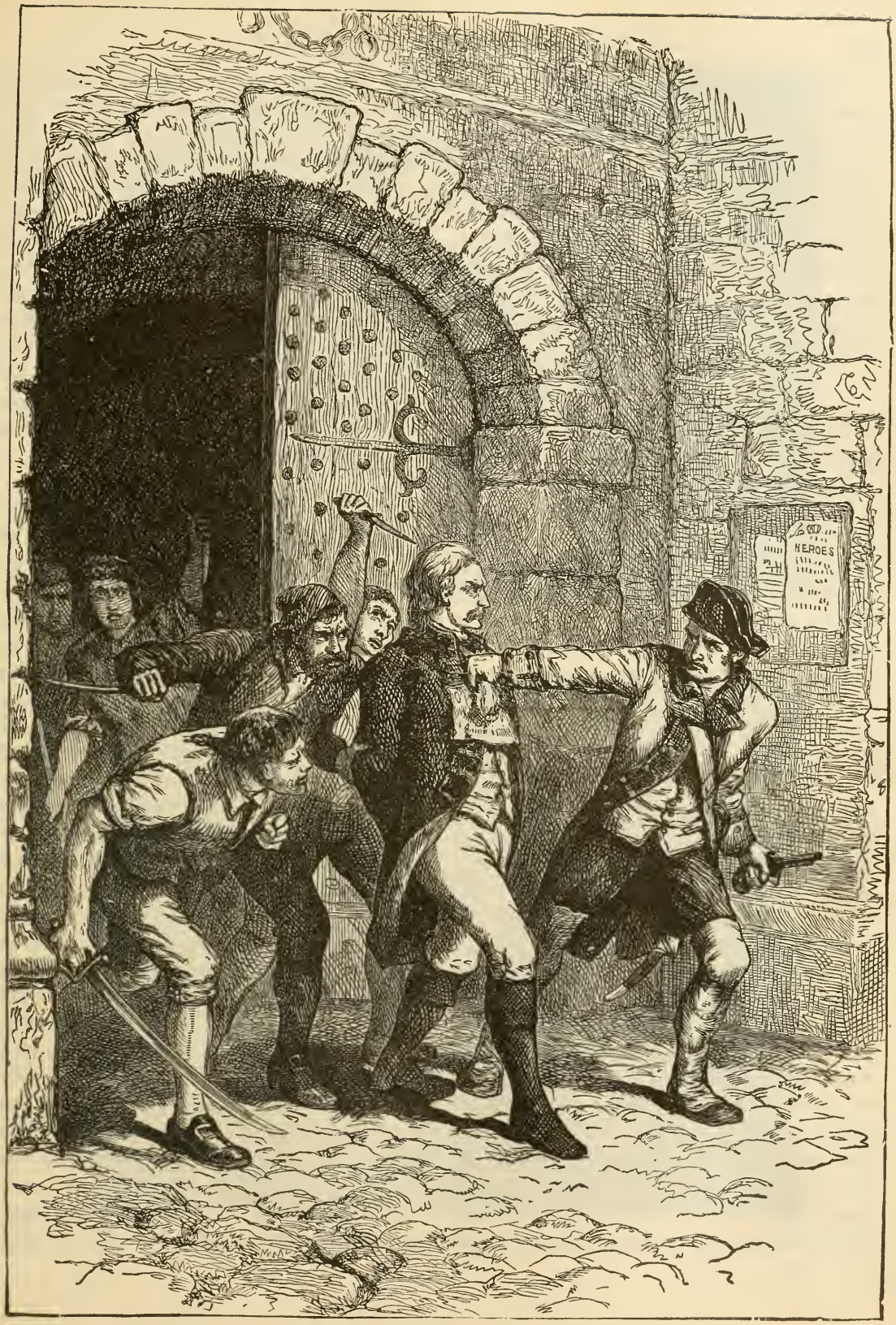
On March 20, 1782, a party of forty Tories and eighty seamen, all fully armed, left New York in whaleboats for the purpose of capturing Captain John Huddy. Their coming was announced by scouts, and preparations were made to receive them. The battle was one of the fiercest of the war. The powder in the fortress at length gave out, and Huddy, with sixteen men, four of whom were wounded, was taken prisoner. Huddy was a prisoner of war, and was entitled to treatment as such, but his enemies conspired to put him to death. He was executed on the morning of April 12, and his last words were, "I shall die innocent, and in a good cause."

Captain Lippincott, who ordered Huddy's execution, cursed his men because they were unwilling to take the life of so brave a foe, and with his own hand helped to pull the rope. Returning to New York he reported to the board of loyalists that he had "exchanged" Captain Huddy for Philip White. The pastor of the Presbyterian church at Freehold preached the funeral sermon from the front porch of the old Freehold hotel, and the body was buried with the honors of war.

The desire of the English people for the close of the war had grown too strong to be resisted, and the king and his ministers were at length forced to yield. The impossibility of conquering America had become so apparent to the continental nations that in the spring of 1782 the Dutch republic recognized the independence of the United States, and received John Adams as envoy from that government. The king of England maintained his obstinate opposition to the wishes of his people to the last moment. On the twenty-second of February, 1782, a resolution was introduced into the House of Commons to put an end to the American war and was supported by the leaders of the Whig party. It was defeated by a majority of one, but on the twenty-seventh of February a similar resolution was introduced and was carried by a majority of nineteen.

England Gives Up the Struggle.

On the twentieth of March Lord North and his colleagues were forced to relinquish their offices, and a new ministry was formed under the Marquis of Rockingham. Sir Henry Clinton was removed from his command in America, and was succeeded by Sir Guy Carleton, whose humane conduct of the war while governor of Canada we have related. Carleton arrived in New York in May, 1782, with full powers to open negotiations for peace. He at once put a stop to the savage warfare of the Tories and Indians on the borders of western New York, and opened a correspondence with Washington proposing a cessation of hostilities until a definite treaty of peace could be arranged.



CAPTAIN HUDDY LED FROM PRISON TO BE HANGED.

Five commissioners were appointed by Congress to conclude a peace with Great Britain. They were John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, John Jay, Henry Laurens, who had just been released from the tower of London, where he had been kept a prisoner for about a year, and Thomas Jefferson. Mr. Jefferson was unable to leave America. Five commissioners were appointed by Great Britain to treat with "certain colonies" named in their instructions.

A Treaty Formed.

The commissioners from the two countries met at Paris, but the American commissioners refused to open negotiations except in the name of the "United States of America." This right was acknowledged by Great Britain, and on the thirtieth of November, 1782, a preliminary treaty was signed, which was ratified by Congress in April, 1783. This treaty could not be final because by the terms of the alliance between the United States and France neither party could make a separate treaty of peace with England. In January, 1783, France and Great Britain agreed upon terms of peace, and on the third of September, 1783, a final treaty of peace was signed by all the nations who had engaged in the war—by the United States, France, Spain and Holland on the one side, and Great Britain on the other.

Great Britain acknowledged the independence of the States of the Union in the following words: "His Britannic Majesty acknowledges the said United States, viz.: New Hampshire, Massachusetts Bay, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia, to be free, sovereign and independent States; that he treats with them as such; and for himself, his heirs and successors, relinquishes all claim to the government, proprietary and territorial rights of the same, and every part thereof." It should be observed that the treaty acknowledged the independence and sovereignty of each of the thirteen States, and not of the United States as a single nation. The independence of the States had already been recognized by several of the European powers: by Sweden, on the fifth of February, 1783; by Denmark, on the twenty-fifth of February, 1783; by Spain, on the twenty-fourth of March; and by Russia in July, 1783. Treaties of friendship and commerce were entered into between the United States and these powers.

Washington and His Army.

During the year 1782 the greater part of the American army was encamped at Newburg, on the Hudson. Washington made his headquarters in an old stone house, which was well adapted for defence and concealment, one of the rooms having seven doors leading to other parts of the house, and but one window. The troops were unpaid and were neglected by Congress and by the various States. Washington warned the government of the danger of further neglect of the army, but his warning was unheeded, and in March the patience of the army was so far exhausted that it was seriously proposed to march to Philadelphia and compel Congress to do justice to the troops. Washington appealed to the officers to remain patient a little longer, and pledged himself to use his influence with Congress to fulfill its neglected promises to the army. His appeal quieted the trouble for a time. Congress shortly after agreed to advance full pay to the soldiers for four months, and to pay in one gross sum the full pay of the officers for five years.

The condition of the country was a subject of the gravest apprehension. It was

WASHINGTON'S HEAD-QUARTERS AT NEWBURGH, NEW YORK.

THE ROOM WITH SEVEN DOORS AND ONE WINDOW.

plain that the articles of confederation were not capable of continuing the Union much longer, and many persons believed that the only hope of preserving a regular government, and a permanent union to the country, lay in the establishment of a monarchy. In May, 1782, Colonel Nicola, of the Pennsylvania line, at the instance of a number of officers, wrote a letter to Washington, proposing the creation of a monarchy, and offering him the crown. Washington indignantly refused to entertain the proposition, and severely rebuked the writer of the letter.

Peace at Last.

In the spring of 1783 the news of the signing of the preliminary treaty of peace was received in America, and was officially communicated to the nation in a proclamation by Congress. On the nineteenth of April, 1783, just eight years from the commencement of the war at Lexington, the close of hostilities was proclaimed, in general orders, to the army at Newburg. A general exchange of prisoners followed, and large numbers of Tories were obliged to leave the country, as they feared to remain after the protection of the British forces was withdrawn. They emigrated chiefly to Canada, Nova Scotia, and the West Indies. The final treaty having been signed, the army was disbanded on the third of November, and the troops, with the exception of a small force, returned to their homes to enjoy their well-earned honors and the thanks of their grateful countrymen. On the twenty-fifth of November the British evacuated New York, which was at once occupied by a small force of Americans, under General Knox. In December Charleston was also evacuated by the British.

On the second of December Washington issued a farewell address to the army, and on the fourth of that month took leave of the officers at New York. He then proceeded to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, and on the twenty-third of December, under circumstances of great solemnity, resigned his commission to that body, and after receiving the thanks of Congress for the able and faithful manner in which he had discharged the task intrusted to him, retired to his home at Mount Vernon, which he had not visited for eight years, except for a few hours, while on his way to attack Cornwallis at Yorktown.

BOOK V

From the Close of the Revolution to the Civil War

CHAPTER XXXI

The Adoption of the Constitution—Washington's Administration

Unsettled Condition of the Country—Failure of the Articles of Confederation—Desire for Reform—Meeting of the Federal Convention at Philadelphia—The Constitution of the United States—Adoption of a Decimal Currency—The Northwest Territory—Washington Elected President—His Journey to New York—Establishment of the New Government—The First Cabinet—Financial Measures—Removal of the Capital Agreed Upon—The Government at Philadelphia—The First Census—The Indians of the Northwest Conquered—Re-election of Washington—Division of Parties—The French Revolution—The United States Neutral—Citizen Genet—Efforts to Commit the United States to the French Alliance—Genet's Recall Demanded—The "Whiskey Insurrection"—Jay's Treaty with England—Opposition to It—Negotiations with Algiers—Political Disputes—Hostility to Washington—His Farewell Address—Its Effect Upon the Country—Election of John Adams to the Presidency—Admission of Vermont, Kentucky and Tennessee—Retirement of Washington—Results of His Administration.

THE long war was over and independence had been achieved; but the condition of the country was such as to excite the gravest apprehensions. The country was exhausted by the sacrifices and burdens of the war, and its debts amounted to the enormous sum of one hundred and seventy millions of dollars, a sum vastly out of proportion to its resources. Two-thirds of these debts had been contracted by Congress; the remainder by the States. The articles of confederation were found inadequate to the task of enforcing the authority of the general government, and the States treated the orders of Congress with neglect. Commerce was sadly deranged for the want of a uniform system.

The States entered into competition with each other for the trade of foreign nations, and articles which were required to pay heavy duties in some of the States were admitted free of duty in others. Many of the States were unable to enforce the collection of taxes within their own limits. The British merchants at the close of the war flooded the American markets with their manufactures at reduced prices. The result was that the domestic manufactures of the States were ruined; the country was drained of its specie, and the merchants and people of the Union were involved in heavy debts. A general poverty ensued in the Eastern States, which gave rise to much discontent.

In Massachusetts, in December, 1786, a body of a thousand men, under Daniel Shays, assembled at Worcester and compelled the Supreme Court to adjourn in order to prevent it from issuing writs for the collection of debts. The militia was called out and "Shay's Rebellion" was put down; but it was evident that the sympathies of

the people were largely with the insurgents. These troubles brought home to the whole country the necessity of a more perfect system of government, and measures were begun for bringing about the changes needed.

In September, 1783, delegates from five of the States met at Annapolis to deliberate upon a plan for the improvement of commerce and the revenue. They recommended the assembling of a convention to revise the articles of confederation; and, accordingly,

Oliver Ellsworth

delegates from all the States met for this purpose at Philadelphia in May, 1787.

Among the more prominent of these may be named Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman and Oliver Ellsworth, of Connecticut; Dunning Bedford and George Read, of Delaware; William Few, George Walton and Abraham Baldwin, of Georgia; Daniel Carroll, James McHenry and Luther Martin, of Maryland; Nathaniel Gorham, Caleb Strong, Elbridge Gerry and Rufus King, of Massachusetts; John Langdon and Nicholas Gilman, of New Hampshire; Jonathan Dayton, William Livingston and William Patterson, of New Jersey; John Lansing, Robert Yates and Alexander Hamilton, of New York; Alexander Martin, Richard D. Spaight and William R. Davie, of North Carolina; Robert Morris, Gouverneur Morris, James Wilson and Benjamin Franklin, of Pennsylvania; John Rutledge, Pierce Butler, Charles Pinckney and Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, of South Carolina; Edmund Randolph, George Mason, James Madison and George Washington, of Virginia. Patrick Henry was opposed to the general objects of the convention, and therefore declined any participation in its action. Mr. Jefferson was Minister to France, and not in the country at the time.

Birth of the Constitution.

George Washington, who was one of the delegates from Virginia, was unanimously chosen president of the convention. The sessions of this body lasted four months, and the convention, instead of revising the articles of confederation, adopted an entirely new constitution. Each article of this constitution was discussed with care and minuteness, and with great feeling. The sessions of the convention were held with closed doors; but its proceedings were so far from harmonious that there were several occasions when it seemed likely the convention would break up in confusion, and leave its work unfinished. At length, however, through the patriotism and forbearance of its members, the convention brought its work to a close, and presented the constitution to Congress. It was submitted by that body to the several States for their approval.

The State governments summoned conventions of their respective people, and submitted the constitution to them for their acceptance or rejection. By the end of 1788

WASHINGTON'S RECEPTION AT TRENTON.

it was ratified by eleven States. North Carolina did not ratify it until November, 1789; and Rhode Island held aloof from the Union until May, 1790. The right of these States to reject the constitution, and to continue their separate existence as independent States, was not questioned by any one.

The new constitution was not entirely satisfactory to any party, and represented the sacrifices made by all to achieve the

great end of a central government, strong enough to carry out the objects of the Union. It was a document of compromises, three of which were of especial importance. The first was a concession to the smaller States, which had feared the loss of their independence; they were placed on the same footing as the larger States by being given an equal representation in the Senate. The second was a concession to the slave-holding States of the south, and guaranteed that in apportioning their representation in Congress three-fifths of the slaves were to be included with the white population. The third was a concession to Georgia and South Carolina, and granted them permission to continue the African slave-trade until 1808. The delegates from those States refused to sign the constitution except upon this condition.

Decimal Currency.

In the meantime Congress had taken a step of the highest importance in adopting the plan, presented by Mr. Jefferson, for a decimal currency. Until now the use of the English currency had been general in all the States. In August, 1786, our present system of dollars and cents was adopted by Congress, and a mint was established somewhat later. The government was so poor, however, that it could only coin a small quantity of copper cents.

The sessions of Congress were held at New York. In the session of 1787 a measure was adopted, which had the most important influence upon the subsequent history of the country. The treaty of Paris fixed the Mississippi river as the western boundary of the United States. This river consequently became the western limit of Virginia, Connecticut, and Massachusetts. In 1784 Virginia ceded to the general government of the United States her claim to the vast region owned by her beyond the Ohio. Massachusetts and Connecticut soon followed her example, and New York also ceded her western territory to the government.

In July, 1787, Congress organized this vast region as the territory of the northwest. It was provided that slavery should never be permitted to exist in this territory, or in any of the States which might afterwards be formed out of it. This wise provision, which

was the basis of the wonderful prosperity of this great region, was due to the foresight of Thomas Jefferson. The northwest being secured to freedom, emigration soon set in, and it began its great career of prosperity which has since known no slackening.

Washington Elected President.

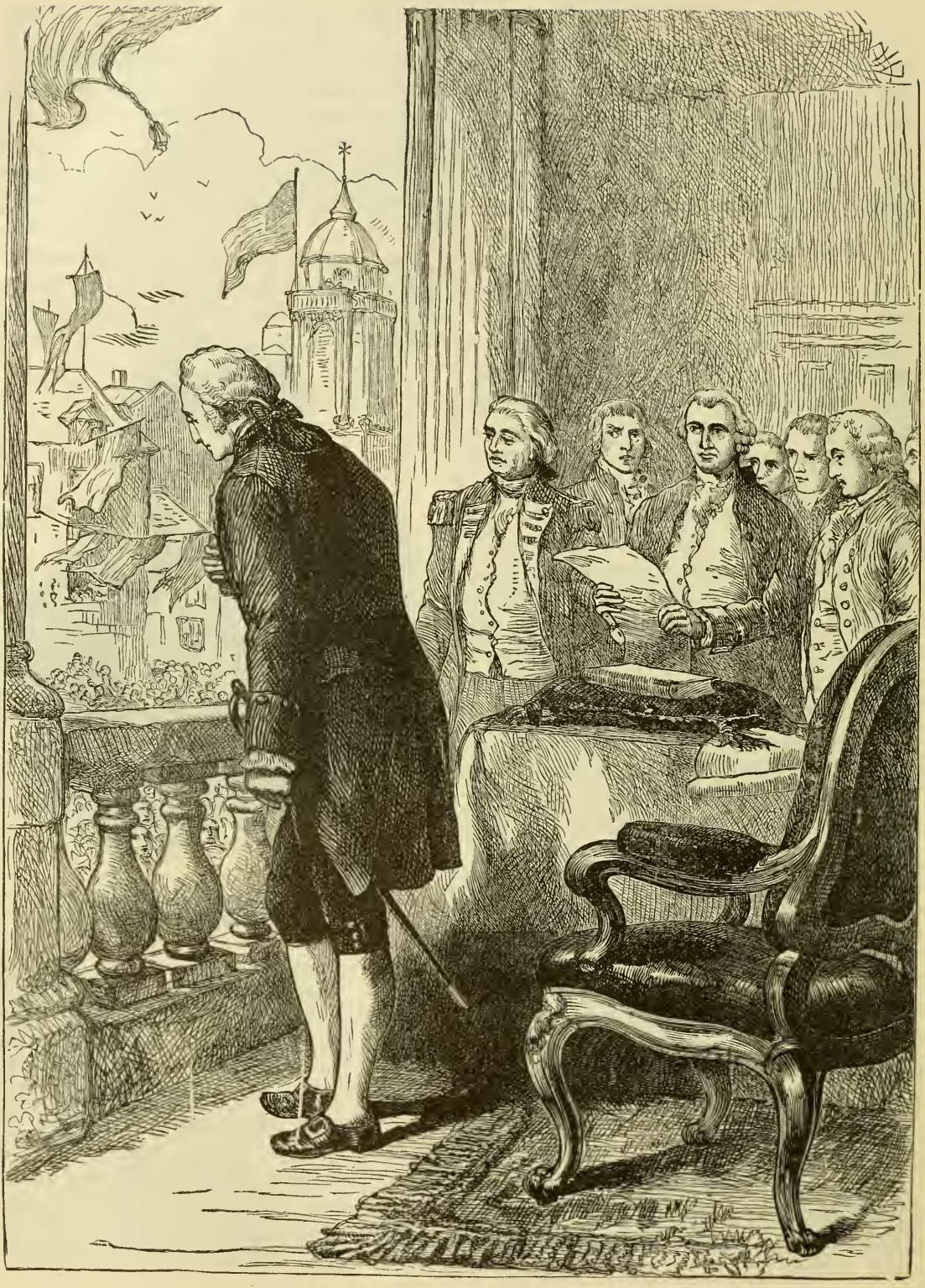
It was provided by the constitution that when it should have been ratified by two-thirds of the States, it should go into operation on the fourth of March, 1789. Eleven of the States having ratified the constitution, elections were held for President and Vice-President of the United States, and for members of Congress. New York was named as the seat of the new government. The fourth of March, 1789, was ushered in with a public demonstration at New York; but a sufficient number of members of Congress to form a quorum for the transaction of business did not arrive until the thirtieth of March. On the sixth of April the electoral votes were counted, and it was found that George Washington had been unanimously chosen first President of the United States, and John Adams Vice-President.

Charles Thompson, the oldest secretary of Congress, was sent to Mount Vernon to notify Washington of his election, and a messenger was despatched to Boston on a similar errand to Mr. Adams. Washington promptly signified his acceptance of the office, and, two days later, started for New York. It was his desire to travel as quietly and unostentatiously as possible, but the people of the States through which he passed would not permit him to do so. His journey was a constant ovation. Crowds greeted him at every town with the most enthusiastic demonstrations of affection and confidence; triumphal arches were erected; his way was strewn with flowers by young girls; and maidens and mothers greeted him with songs composed in his honor. In consequence of these demonstrations his progress was so much retarded that he did not reach New York until the latter part of April.

On the thirtieth of April Washington appeared on the balcony of Federal Hall, New York, on the site of which the United States Treasury now stands, and took the oath of office in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, and a large crowd of citizens assembled in the streets

C. C. Pinckney

below. He then repaired to the Senate chamber, and there delivered an address to both houses of Congress. The organization of the government being now complete, Congress proceeded to arrange the executive department by the creation of the departments of state, the treasury and war. President Washington appointed Thomas Jefferson, secretary of state, Alexander Hamilton, secretary of the treasury, and General Henry Knox, secretary of war. John Jay was made



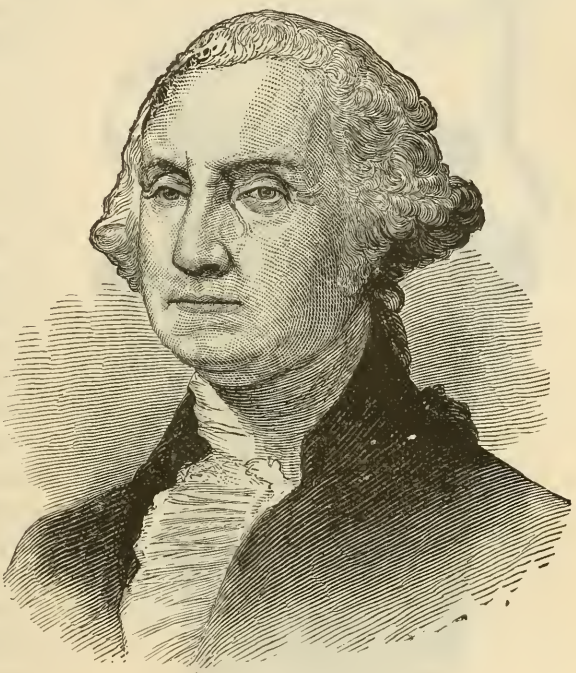
chief justice of the United States, and Edmond Randolph, attorney-general.

The new government found itself face to face with many difficulties, the principal of which was the payment of the national debt. This debt was in the form of notes of the government, or promises to pay for value received. These notes had been issued by the States as well as by Congress during the revolution, and had been given in payment for services rendered the general and State governments, and for supplies. In January, 1790, Alexander Hamilton proposed to pay all these debts in full, and that the general government should assume the war debts of States.

This plan met with considerable opposition at first, but was at length adopted. It was also arranged that the revenue of the country should be divided as follows: As the control of commerce had passed into the hands of Congress the revenue derived from the duties levied upon imported merchandise was to be applied to the uses of the general government. The proceeds of the direct taxes upon real estate and other property, which could be levied only by the respective States, were to be used for the expenses of those States.

It had been for some time considered desirable to remove the seat of federal government to some point more central than New York, and which could be brought under the supreme control of Congress. In 1790 it was resolved that the seat of government be fixed at Philadelphia for ten years, and at the end of that time be removed to a new city to be built on the banks of the Potomac. A federal district, ten miles square, was obtained by cession from Virginia and Maryland, and was placed under the sole control of the United States. The foundations of a new city, named Washington, in honor of the "Father of his country," were laid on the left bank of the Potomac, a short distance below the falls of that river, and buildings for the accommodation of the general government were begun and pushed forward as rapidly as possible.

The general government was removed to Philadelphia in 1791, and in December of that year the second Congress began its sessions in that city. The principal measure of this session was the establishment of the



GEORGE WASHINGTON.

Bank of the United States, in accordance with the recommendations of Alexander Hamilton. The bank was chartered for twenty years, and its capital was ten millions of dollars, of which the government took two millions and private individuals the remainder. The measure was carried in the face of considerable opposition in Congress, but was very beneficial to the government, as well as to the general business of the country. The notes of the bank were

payable in gold and silver upon presentation at its counters.

Commerce now began to show signs of a great revival from the stagnation and loss caused by the war. The duties levied upon foreign goods gave to domestic manufacturers an opportunity to place themselves upon a firmer foundation. Very great improvements were made in the character of American manufactures. In New England

INDIAN CHILD IN CRADLE.

the weaving of cotton and woolen goods was begun, in a feeble way it is true, but the foundation was laid of that great industry which has since been a constant and growing source of wealth to that section.

In 1790 the first census of the United States was taken, and showed the population to be 3,929,827 souls.

The Indians of the northwest had been very troublesome for some time. The British agents in that region incited them to hostility against the United States, and urged them to claim the Ohio as their southern and eastern boundary. They committed innumerable outrages along this river and almost put a stop to the trade upon its waters by attacking and plundering the flat-boats of the emigrants and traders which were constantly descending the river. The general government resolved to put a stop to their outrages, and General Harmer was sent against them in 1790, but was defeated with great loss.

"Little Turtle" Defeats St. Clair.

In 1791 General St. Clair, the governor of the northwest territory, was placed in command of an expedition against the savages. He set out from Fort Washington, now Cincinnati, about the middle of September, with a force of two thousand men, but near the headwaters of the Wabash was surprised and defeated by an Indian force under Little Turtle, a famous chief of the Miamis. The wreck of his army fled to Fort Washington, and the frontier was once more defenceless.

President Washington now placed General Anthony Wayne in command of the forces destined to operate against the Indians. With his usual energy Wayne assembled his army at Fort Washington, and in the summer of 1794 marched into the Indian country, laid it waste and defeated the Indian tribes in the battle of the Maumee on the twentieth of August. In the summer of 1795 the Indians, cowed by their defeat and alarmed by the withdrawal of the British from the frontier posts, met General Wayne at his camp on the Miami and entered into a treaty with the United States by which they ceded all the eastern and southern part of Ohio to the whites and withdrew farther westward.

In the elections of 1792 Washington and Adams were chosen President and Vice-President of the United States for a second term of four years. The disputes which had been begun by the adoption of the constitution had been continued during the first term of Washington's presidency, and had given rise to two political parties—the Federalists, or those who favor a strong national government, and who supported the administration, and the Anti-Federalists, who opposed the policy of the administration. Among the leaders of the Federalist party were Washington, Adams, Hamilton and Jay; among the Anti-Federalist leaders were Jefferson, Madison and Monroe.

Reign of Terror in France.

The differences between Jefferson and Hamilton increased with time, and soon assumed the character of a personal hostility, a circumstance which was productive of great trouble to the president, since it prevented his cabinet from acting harmoniously. As the quarrel deepened, the Anti-Federalist party repudiated that title, and took the name of *Republican*, as it better expressed their principles. The political questions entered largely into the second election, and prevented Mr. Adams from receiving the unanimous vote which was given to Washington.

Shortly after the commencement of Washington's first term of office, the French revolution broke out, and drew upon France the attention of the whole world. The events of this great struggle were watched with the deepest interest in America, for the nation cherished the warmest sentiments of gratitude to France for her aid in the revolution. The Republican party urgently favored an alliance with the French republic, but Washington and the greater part of his cabinet were resolved to maintain a strict neutrality as to all European quarrels.

The excesses of the revolutionists shocked the public sentiment of America, and the events of the reign of terror cooled the zeal of many of the most ardent friends of the French republic. Still party feeling ran high upon the subject, and the disputes were yet very bitter when Mr. Edmond Charles Genet, or "Citizen Genet," as he was generally styled, arrived in the United States, in 1793, as minister from the French republic. He brought the news that France had declared war with Great Britain. He was well

ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

received by the Republicans, who were anxious that the United States should become the ally of France, and thus engage in a new war with Great Britain.

Washington and his cabinet were unmoved by this clamor, and a proclamation was issued declaring the neutrality of the United States in the war between Great Britain and France, and warning the American people to refrain from the commission of acts inconsistent with this neutrality. The firmness of the President in resisting the demand for an

alliance with France saved the country from innumerable losses, perhaps from the destruction of the work of the revolution.

Genet, encouraged by the sympathy of the Republican party, was determined to embroil the United States with Great Britain to such an extent that they would be compelled to make common cause with France. He therefore began to fit out privateers from American ports against the commerce of England. He was warned by the govern-

ment that he was transcending his privileges as a minister of a friendly power, but paid no attention to this rebuke. The Republican party now took a more active stand in favor of the French alliance, and its more ultra members assumed the name of Democrats, and others styled themselves Democratic Republicans. The determination of President Washington not to interfere in the quarrels of Europe was vehemently assailed, and the newspapers of this party went so far as to denounce the President and his supporters as the enemies of France, and the friends and secret supporters of their old oppressor, the king of England.

Genet was greatly deceived by these clamors, which he mistook for the sentiment of the American people. He took a step further, and authorized the French consuls in the American ports to receive and sell vessels captured by French cruisers from the English, with whom the United States were at peace. He also contemplated raising a force in Georgia and the Carolinas for the purpose of seizing Florida, and another in Kentucky for the conquest of Louisiana, both of which regions were then held by Spain, a power friendly to the United States. The patience of the President having been exhausted by Genet's insolent conduct, Washington requested the French government to recall him, which it did in 1794, much to the astonishment of citizen Genet. M. Fauchet was appointed in his place. Genet did not return home, but became a citizen of the United States.

Whiskey Tax Unpopular.

The impunity with which Genet had braved the federal government gave rise to fears that it was not strong enough to enforce its authority. Advantage was taken of this feeling in an unexpected quarter. The fertile region of Western Pennsylvania, watered by by the Monongahela and its tributaries, had been settled by a hardy population, chiefly of Scotch-Irish Presbyterians, who had with great labor and amid constant exposure to the attacks of the Indians, redeemed the land from the wilderness, and covered it with thriving farms and orchards. Grain and apples and peaches were their staple products; the grain was distilled into whiskey, and the fruits were made into brandies.

One of Hamilton's favorite measures for the raising of a revenue was the imposition of an excise or duty upon whiskey. This tax was generally unpopular throughout the country, but especially so in the four western counties of Pennsylvania. The settlers of this region organized themselves in secret societies for the purpose of resisting this tax, and at length, in 1792, rose in rebellion against the government, refused to pay the tax, and drove off the excise officers. The best men in this section were engaged in the rebellion, and it was openly proposed to separate from Pennsylvania and form a new State. Nearly seven thousand armed men assembled, and declared their intention to resist the authority of the State and federal governments.

England Threatens Our Commerce.

Matters remained in this condition for about two years, and at length Washington, finding it necessary to employ force for the suppression of the revolt, sent a strong body of troops to compel the rebels to submit. Upon the appearance of the troops, the leaders of the movement fled, and the "Whiskey Insurrection" suddenly came to an end. This vigorous action of the federal government greatly added to its strength.

The fidelity with which Washington sought to discharge his duty towards England, as a neutral, was but little appreciated by the government of that country, which conducted itself towards the United States in a manner that seemed likely to result in another war. By the treaty of Paris England had agreed to surrender the frontier posts held by her forces within the limits of the United States. These were still retained, and were made by the British agents so many centres for stirring up the Indians to acts of hostility against the Americans. Orders were issued to the British naval officers to seize and detain all vessels laden with French goods, or with provisions for any of the French colonies. As the American ships were largely engaged in trade with France and her colonies, this order threatened the commerce of the States with ruin.

The feeling of indignation against England, caused by these outrages, was increasing throughout the Union, and the country was rapidly drifting into a war with that kingdom. The interests of the United States

demanded peace with all the world, as the country was yet too weak and unsettled to endure another war with safety. This necessity was recognized by Washington and his advisers, and the constant aim of the President was to avoid, as far as possible, all complications which might lead to war. The conduct of Great Britain could not be passed by, and if a settlement of the matter, consistent with the honor and interests of the republic could not be arranged, war was inevitable.

Anxious to exhaust all peaceful means of settlement, President Washington sent John Jay, the chief justice, to England to enter into negotiations with the British government for the settlement of all matters in dispute between the two countries. Mr. Jay was eminently qualified for the task, both by his remarkable abilities and his great and honorable services to the country since the outbreak of the revolution. He was received in England with great respect, and in the

Fisher Ames

course of a few months concluded a treaty, which was submitted to the Senate of the United States for ratification. By the terms of this treaty Great Britain agreed to give up the western posts within two years, to grant to American vessels the privilege of trading with the West Indies upon certain conditions, and to admit American ships free of restrictions to the ports of Great Britain and the English East Indian possessions. On the other hand provision was made by the United States for the collection of debts due British merchants by American citizens.

This treaty did not please any party entirely, not even Mr. Jay himself; but it was the best that could be obtained from Great Britain at the time, and as such was accepted by the administration, which threw all its influence in favor of its adoption. It met with very great opposition in the Senate and subjected the president to a great deal of adverse criticism throughout the country. One of the powerful advocates of the treaty was Fisher Ames, of Massachusetts, who did much by his resistless eloquence to insure the adoption of the measure. After a fortnight's debate in secret session the Senate advised the ratification of the treaty.

The Treaty Secures Peace

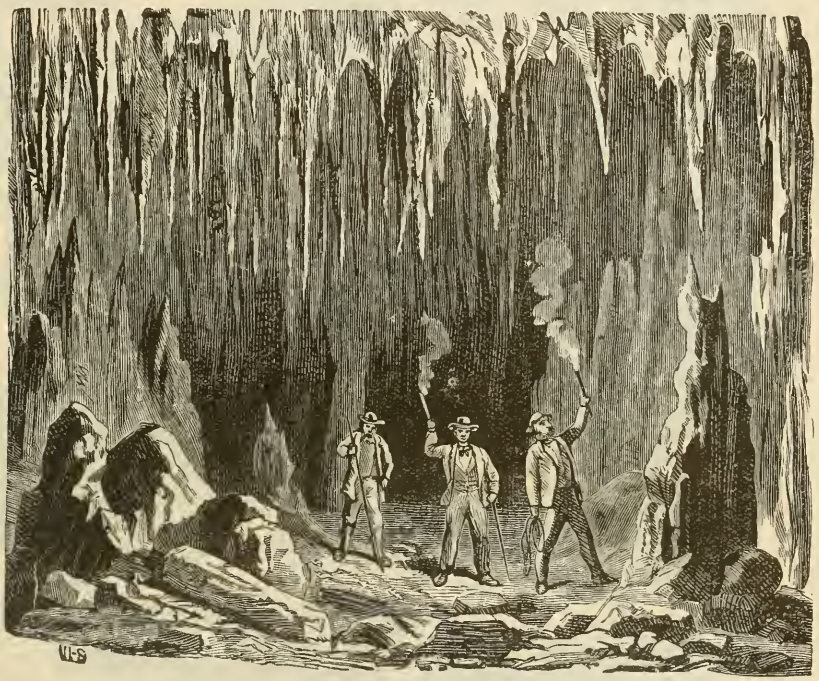
The acceptance of this treaty, imperfect and unsatisfactory as it was, secured peace to the United States for a number of years at this most critical period of its history. In 1795 treaties were also negotiated with Spain, by which the boundaries between the United States and Louisiana and Florida were definitely settled. The navigation of the Mississippi was made free to both parties, and the Americans were granted the privilege of making New Orleans, for three years, the place of deposit for their trade.

The commerce of the United States, which was increasing rapidly, was confined chiefly to the New England States. A lucrative trade with the countries of Europe bordering the Mediterranean had grown up, but was greatly interfered with by the Algerine pirates, who sallied out from their harbors on the African coast and captured many of the vessels engaged in this trade and sold the crews into slavery. The European powers had purchased exemption from these outrages by paying an annual tribute to the Dey of Algiers. The United

States for the present thought it best to follow the universal custom, and ransomed the captive American sailors by the payment of nearly a million of dollars. At the same time the more sensible policy of establishing a navy for the protection of American commerce was resolved upon, and in 1795 a bill was passed by Congress for the construction of six first-class frigates. This was the beginning of the United States navy.

Mr. Jefferson had retired from the cabinet at the close of 1793, and after his withdrawal party quarrels ran higher than ever. The motives and conduct of the President were denounced with great bitterness by his opponents, and he was subjected to considerable annoyance by these attacks. He continued with firmness the course he had marked out for himself, trusting to time and the good sense of his countrymen for his vindication. In September, 1796, he issued a farewell address to the people of the United States, in which he announced his purpose to retire from public life at the close of his second term, and delivered to his countrymen such counsels and admonitions as he deemed suited to their future guidance. It was the warning of a father to his children engaged in a difficult and all-important undertaking.

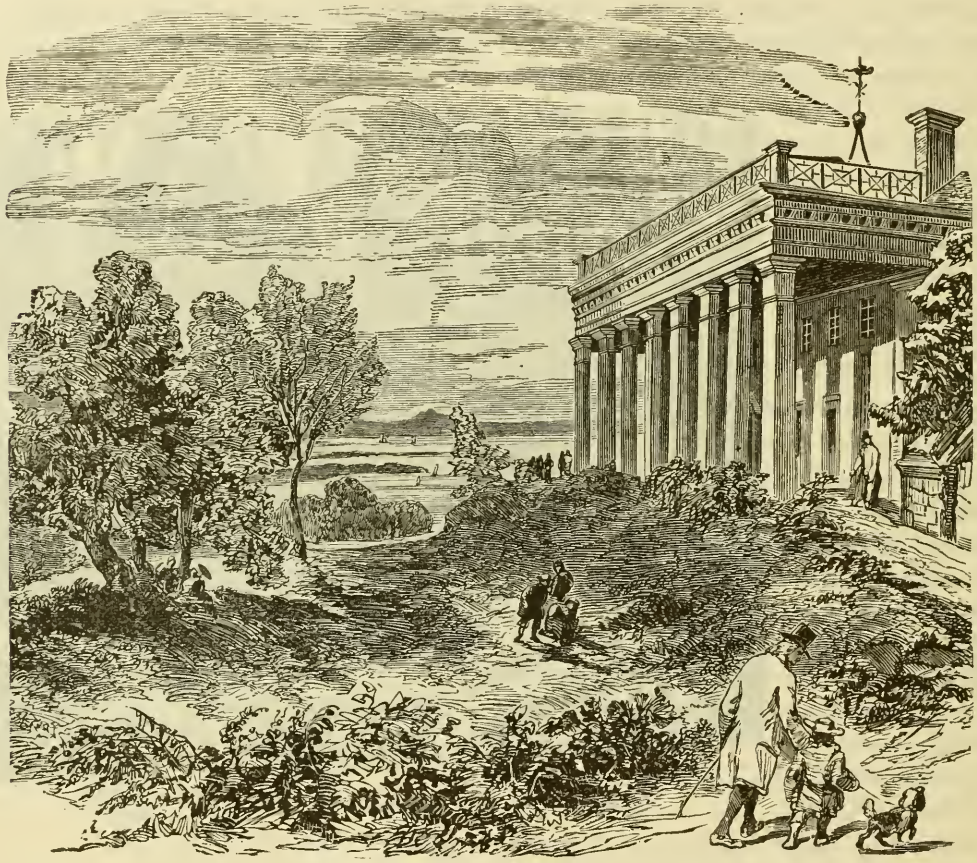
It had a most happy effect. It brought up the memory of the great and unselfish services of Washington, and enabled his countrymen to see him in his true light. The gratitude of the nation, which had been long obscured by party passions, burst forth in a mighty stream, and from every quarter came evidences of the affection and veneration of the American people for their great leader. Congress adopted a reply to the farewell address, expressing the highest confidence in the wisdom and integrity of Washington, and during the winter of 1796–97 nearly all the State legislatures adopted similar resolutions.



SCENE IN THE MAMMOTH CAVE, KENTUCKY.

At the elections held in the fall of 1796 the Federalists put forward John Adams as their candidate, while the Republicans supported Thomas Jefferson. The contest was very bitter, and resulted in the election of Mr. Adams. Mr. Jefferson, receiving the next highest number of votes, was declared Vice President, in accordance with the law as it then stood.

During the administration of President Washington three new States were admitted into the Union, making the whole number of States sixteen. They were Vermont, which was admitted on the fourth of March, 1791, making the first new State under the constitution; Kentucky, which was admitted in 1792; and Tennessee, admitted on the first of June, 1796.



WASHINGTON'S HOME AT MOUNT VERNON.

At the close of his term of office, Washington withdrew to his home at Mount Vernon, to enjoy the repose he had so well earned, and which was so grateful to him. His administration had been eminently successful. When he entered upon the duties of the presidency the government was new and untried, and its best friends doubted its ability to exist long; the finances were in confusion and the country was burdened with debt; the disputes with Great Britain threatened to involve the country in a new war; and the authority of the general government was uncertain and scarcely recognized.

When he left office the state of affairs was changed. The government had been severely tested and had been found equal to any demand made upon it; the finances had been placed upon a safe and healthy footing, and the debt of the country had

been adjusted to the satisfaction of all parties concerned in it. The disputes with England had been arranged, and the country, no longer threatened with war, was free to devote its energies to its improvement. Industry and commerce were growing rapidly. The exports from the United States had risen from nineteen millions to over fifty-six millions of dollars, and the imports had increased in nearly the same proportion. The rule of non-interference in European quarrels, and of cultivating friendly relations with all the world, had become the settled policy of the republic, and its wisdom had been amply vindicated. The progress of the republic during the eight years of Washington's administration was indeed gratifying, and gave promise of a brilliant future.

CHAPTER XXXII

The Administrations of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson

Inauguration of John Adams—Aggressions of France Upon the United States—The American Commissioners Insulted by the French Government—The Alien and Sedition Laws—The United States Prepare for War with France—France Signifies Her Willingness to Treat—New Commissioners Appointed—Settlement of the Dispute—Hostilities at Sea—Capture of the "Insurgente" and "Vengeance"—Death of Washington—Removal of the Capitol to Washington City—The Second Census—Inauguration of Thomas Jefferson—The President's Message—His First Measures—Admission of Ohio—Louisiana Purchased by the United States—War with the Barbary Powers—Burning of the "Philadelphia"—Re-election of Mr. Jefferson—Aaron Burr Kills Alexander Hamilton in a Duel—Burr's Subsequent Career—Fulton's Steamboat—Outrages of England and France Upon American Commerce—American Vessels Searched and American Seamen Impressed by England—Efforts to Settle These Questions—Affair of the "Chesapeake" and "Leopard"—The Embargo—Results of This Measure—Losses of the Eastern States—Election of James Madison to the Presidency—Repeal of the Embargo—Retirement of Mr. Jefferson.

ON the fourth of March, 1797, John Adams was inaugurated President of the United States, and Thomas Jefferson took the oath of office as Vice President. Mr. Adams was in the sixty-second year of his age, and in the full vigor of health and intellect. He made no changes in the cabinet left by President Washington, and the policy of his administration corresponded throughout with that of his great predecessor. He came into office at a time when this policy was to be subjected to the severest test, and was to be triumphantly vindicated by the trial. Mr. Adams began his official career with the declaration of his "determination to maintain peace and inviolate faith with all nations, and neutrality and impartiality with the belligerent powers of Europe."

The relations of the United States with France had been of an unfriendly nature for some time. Jay's treaty had greatly offended the French government, and the insolent conduct of M. Adét, the French minister to the United States, had led to a suspension of diplomatic intercourse between the two republics. The French Directory now proceeded to manifest its disregard of the rights of America by ordering the seizure of all American vessels in its ports laden with English manufactured goods. At the same time the American minister to France, Charles C. Pinckney, was treated with such studied insult that he demanded his passports and withdrew to Holland. Privateers were sent out from French ports, which captured American merchantmen and treated their crews as prisoners of war.

France also exerted her influence with Spain and Holland to induce them to treat the United States with hostility because of the alleged partiality of Jay's treaty with Great Britain. All this while there was a considerable party in the United States which was anxious for the conclusion of an alliance with France, and which either could not, or would not, see the deliberate purpose of that country to treat with the American republic only as a dependent.

In May, 1797, President Adams called a special session of Congress and laid before it a statement of the relations with France.

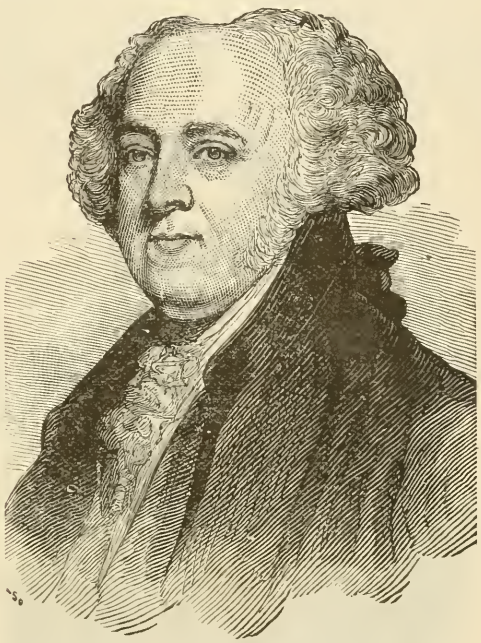
The announcement of the insults received by the American minister at the hands of the Directory, and the increased aggressions upon American commerce, aroused a feeling of deep indignation throughout the country, and drew upon the partisans of France in America a considerable amount of deserved odium.

In the hope that a peaceful and honorable settlement might yet be had, John Marshall and Eldridge Gerry, the former a federalist and the latter a republican, were appointed special commissioners, and were ordered to proceed to Paris and unite with Mr. Pinckney in the negotiation of a treaty which should not conflict with those existing with other nations, and which should place beyond question the right of the United States to maintain their neutrality.

"Not One Cent for Tribute."

Marshall and Gerry joined Pinckney in Paris in October, 1798, and made their business known to the French minister of foreign affairs, the famous Talleyrand. He at first refused to receive the American envoys in an official capacity, and afterwards employed unknown agents to communicate with them, in order that he might be free to disavow any engagement entered into with them. It soon transpired that the object of these secret interviews was to extort money from the commissioners. They were given to understand that if they would pay Talleyrand a certain sum of money for the use of himself and his friends, and would pledge the United States to make a loan to France, negotiations would be begun without delay.

The answer of the American commissioners was well expressed in the indignant words of Pinckney: "Millions for defence, not one cent for tribute." Marshall and Pinckney were ordered to quit France at once, but Mr. Gerry was invited to remain and negotiate a treaty. He was nevertheless unable to accomplish anything. The correspondence between the commissioners and Talleyrand's agents was published in the United States, and aroused such a storm of indignation that the French party disappeared. It never dared to make its appearance again.

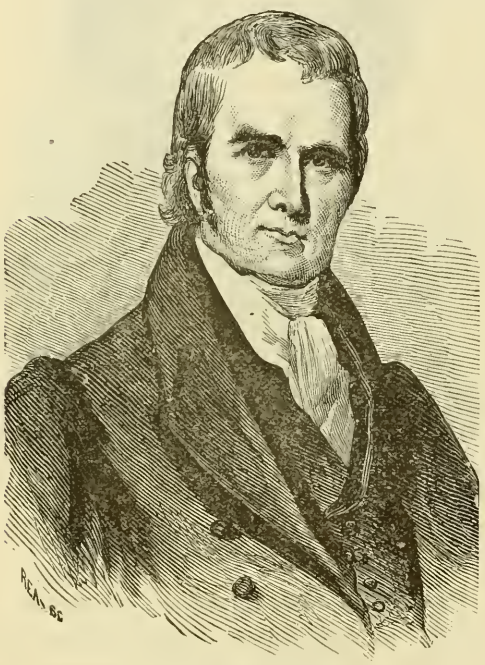


JOHN ADAMS.

About thirty thousand French exiles were residing in the United States at this time, and it was believed by the government that some of these had acted as spies for the Directory. It was known that many had abused the hospitality extended to them by seeking to induce the people of the south and west to join them in an effort to wrest Louisiana and Florida from Spain, and by endeavoring to strengthen the opposition to the efforts of the government to discharge its duty of neutrality towards the European powers.

In the spring of 1798, in order to remedy this trouble, Congress passed the measures

known as the "alien and sedition acts," by the first of which the President was empowered to order out of the country "any foreigner whom he might believe to be dangerous to the peace and safety of the United States." By the sedition act it was made a crime, with a very heavy penalty, for any one to "to write, utter, or publish" any "false, scandalous, and malicious writing" against "either House of the Congress of the United States or the President of the United States,



JOHN MARSHALL.

with intent to defame, or to bring them, or either of them, into contempt and disrepute." These acts met with great opposition throughout the country, and the latter especially was regarded as an effort on the part of the government to destroy the freedom of the press.

The alien act was not executed, but a large number of foreigners left the country soon after its passage. Several persons were prosecuted under the sedition act for their severe criticisms of the government, and the result was invariably to increase the ranks of the Republican party, which steadfastly opposed the laws as unconstitutional and violative of the freedom of the people of the Union.

In the summer of 1798 Mr. Marshall returned from France, and his report confirmed the statements that had been made respecting the hostile intentions of the government of that country. The President submitted to Congress a statement of the disputes between the two republics, and Congress, recognizing the danger of war, began to prepare for it. It was resolved to create a navy, and the three frigates just completed were fitted for sea.

A State of Defence.

The President was authorized to have built, or to purchase or hire twelve ships of war of twenty guns each. An army was ordered to be raised, and the prominent points on the coast were to be placed in a state of defence. Washington was made commander-in-chief of the army, with the rank of Lieutenant-General. He accepted the position, and applied himself with energy to the task of preparing the country for defence. He gave a hearty support to the measures of the President, and used his great influence to secure for them a similar approval on the part of the people. In the winter of 1798-99 Congress appropriated a million of dollars to defray the expense of the military preparations, and authorized the construction of six ships of war of seventy-four guns each, and six sloops of war of eighteen guns each.

The energy and enthusiasm with which the Americans prepared for war opened the eyes of Talleyrand. He had not supposed they would fight, and now that he found they would, he was not willing to add to the difficulties of France by engaging in a new

war. He therefore signified in an informal manner to Mr. Van Murray, the United States minister in Holland, that the French government was willing to renew diplomatic intercourse with the United States. Mr. Adams, upon being informed of this, resolved to make one more effort to secure a peaceful settlement of the quarrel.

A Council of Peace.

He sent Oliver Ellsworth, Chief Justice of the United States; William R. Davie and William Van Murray, minister to Holland, as commissioners to treat with the French republic for a settlement of all difficulties between the two countries. In taking this step he greatly offended many of the leaders of his party, who insisted that overtures for peace should come from France. The most rational and probable solution of Mr. Adams' course, in the absence of direct proof, says the Hon. A. H. Stephens, "is that he acted under the urgent private advice of Washington. Be that as it may, it proved to be one of the wisest and most beneficent deeds of his life." The commissioners were ordered by the president not to enter France unless they were assured they would be received in a "manner befitting the commissioners of an independent nation."

Upon reaching Paris the commissioners found that a great change had taken place in the affairs of France. A revolution had unseated the Directory, and Napoleon Bonaparte was at the head of the government as first consul. Commissioners were appointed to meet the American envoys, and negotiations were begun and carried forward with such success that on the thirtieth of November, 1800, a treaty of peace was signed between the United States and France.

In the meantime, though war was not actually declared, hostilities had begun. More than three hundred merchant vessels were licensed to carry arms for their defence. On the ninth of February, 1799, the American frigate "Constellation" captured the French frigate "L'Insurgente," of about equal force, after a severe engagement of an hour and a quarter, inflicting upon her a severe loss in killed and wounded. Somewhat later the "Constellation" encountered the French frigate "La Vengeance," of superior force, and in an engagement of about five hours' duration silenced her fire and inflicted upon her a loss of one hundred and fifty-six men in killed and wounded. The French vessel succeeded in making her escape. These successes were very gratifying to the Americans, as they showed what their navy could accomplish if given a fair trial. The news of the conclusion of peace put a stop to hostilities. The army was disbanded, but the navy was kept afloat and the coast defences were maintained.

Before the arrival of the new treaty the country was called upon to mourn the loss of its most illustrious citizen, George Washington. He took cold while riding over his estate at Mount Vernon, and was seized with a violent sore throat, from the effects of which he died on the fourteenth of December, 1799, in the sixty-eighth year of his age. He was buried in his family vault at Mount Vernon, where his ashes still lie.

Honors to the Dead Patriot.

The highest honors were paid to his memory by Congress and by the various State governments, and in all parts of the Union a universal mourning was held for the Father of his Country. Not less sincere were the tributes paid in foreign lands to the memory of the illustrious dead. Upon the receipt of the sad news the flags of the Channel fleet of Great Britain were placed at half-mast by order of the Admiral Lord Bridport. Napoleon, then first consul of

France, caused the standards of the French army to be draped in mourning for ten days and announced the news to the army in the orders of the day. The proudest tribute of all to the grandeur and purity of the character of Washington is the unceasing and ever increasing love and veneration with which his memory is cherished by his countrymen.

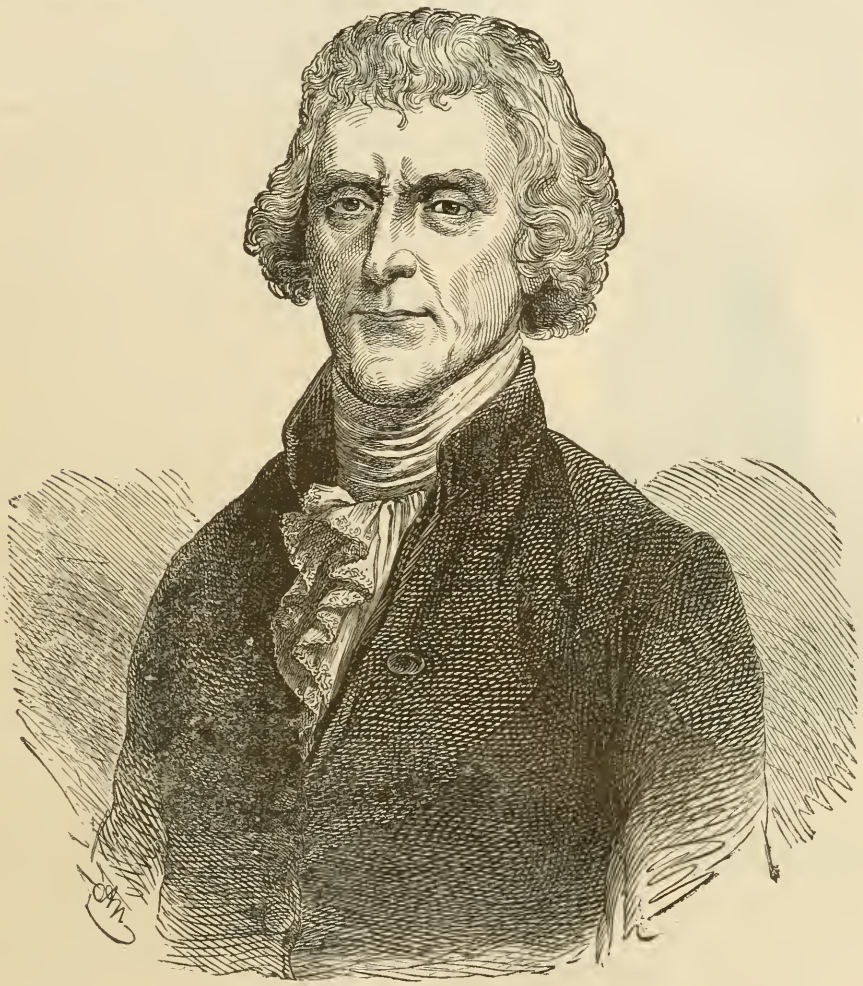
WASHINGTON'S GRAVE, MOUNT VERNON.

During the summer of the year 1800 the seat of the general government was removed from Philadelphia to the new federal city of Washington, in the District of Columbia. On the twenty-second of November the session of Congress was opened in the unfinished capitol of Washington.

The elections for President and Vice-President were held in the autumn of 1800. Mr. Adams was the Federalist candidate for the Presidency, and Charles Cotesworth Pinckney the candidate of that party for Vice-President. The Republican or Democratic party nominated Thomas Jefferson for the Presidency, and Colonel Aaron Burr, of New York, for the Vice-Presidency.

The alien and sedition laws had rendered the Federalist party so unpopular that the electors chosen at the polls failed to make a

choice, and the election was thrown upon the House of Representatives, according to the terms of the Constitution. On the seventeenth of February, 1801, after thirty-six ballots, the House elected Thomas Jefferson President, and Aaron Burr Vice-President, of the United States, for a term of four years, from and after the fourth of March, 1801.



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

The second census of the United States, taken in 1800, showed the population of the country to be 5,319,762 souls.

Thomas Jefferson, the third President of the United States, was inaugurated at the new capitol, in the city of Washington, on the fourth of March, 1801. He was in his fifty-eighth year, and had long been regarded as one of the most illustrious men in America. He was the author of the Declaration of Independence, had represented the country as minister to France, had served in the cabinet of General Washington as Secretary of State, and had filled the high office of Vice-President during the administration of Mr. Adams. He was the founder of the Democratic party, and was regarded by it with an enthusiastic devotion which could see no flaw in his

character. By the Federalists he was denounced with intense bitterness as a Jacobin, and an enemy of organized government. He was unquestionably a believer in the largest freedom possible to man, but he was too deeply versed in the lessons of statesmanship, and was too pure a patriot to entertain for a moment the levelling principles with which his enemies charged him. Under him the government of the republic suffered no diminution of strength, but his administration was a gain to the country.

Mr. Jefferson began his administration by seeking to undo as far as possible the evil

AARON BURR.

effects of the sedition act of 1798. A number of persons were in prison in consequence of sentences under this act at the time of his inauguration. These were at once pardoned by the President and released from prison.

At the meeting of the seventh Congress, in December, 1801, President Jefferson, in pursuance of an announcement made some time before, inaugurated the custom which has since prevailed of sending a written message to each House of Congress, giving his views on public affairs and the situation of the country. Previous to this the President had always met the two houses upon their assembling, and had addreseed them in person. A strong Democratic majority controlled this Congress, and gave a hearty support to the President.

The obnoxious measures of the last adminstration, such as the internal taxes, the taxes on stills, distilled spirits, refined sugars, carriages, stamped paper, etc., were repealed. In accordance with a suggestion of the President a period of naturalization was reduced from fourteen to five years. Measures were also set on foot for the redemption of the public debt, and it was provided that seven millions three hundred thousand dollars should be annually appropriated as a sinking fund for that purpose. Another act, of which the wisdom was not so apparent, was passed for the reduction of the army.

Rapid Settlement of Ohio.

During the interval which had elapsed since the orginzation of the Territory of the Northwest, emigrants had been pouring into the southern and eastern part of it with great rapidity. In one year twenty thousand new settlers were added to the population of the Territory of Ohio. The population had now become so large that the eastern part of the northwest Territory applied for admission into the Union as a separate State. Its request was granted, and on the nineteenth of February it was admitted into the Union, as the State of Ohio, with a population of seventy thousand.

In 1801 France by a secret treaty received back from Spain the Territory of Louisiana. The French did not occupy the country, but left it under Spanish rule. In 1803 the Spanish governor of New Orleans, in violation of the treaty of 1795, closed the port of New Orleans to American commerce. This act aroused the most intense indignation among the people along the tributaries of the Mississippi, who were thus cut of from

the sea, and it was with difficulty that they could be restrained from an attempt to take possession of Louisiana.

Mr. Jefferson had long been anxious to obtain for the United States the country bordering the lower Mississippi, as he was convinced that the power holding the mouth of that river must of necessity control the great valley through which it flows. Accordingly, Robert R. Livingston, the American minister at Paris, was ordered to open negotiations with the French government for the purchase of Louisiana.

Purchase of Louisiana.

He found this an easier task than he had expected, for Napoleon, who was on the eve of a great European war, was much in need of money, and was by no means anxious to add to his troubles by being obliged to defend Louisiana. A bargain was soon concluded by which the United States became the possessors of the whole region of Louisiana, from the Mississippi to the Pacific, embracing over a million of square miles.

The United States paid to France the sum of $15,000,000 for this immense region, and guaranteed to the then inhabitants all the rights of American citizens. "This accession of territory," said Napoleon, upon the completion of the purchase, "strengthens forever the power of the United States, and I have just given to England a maritime rival that will sooner or later humble her pride."

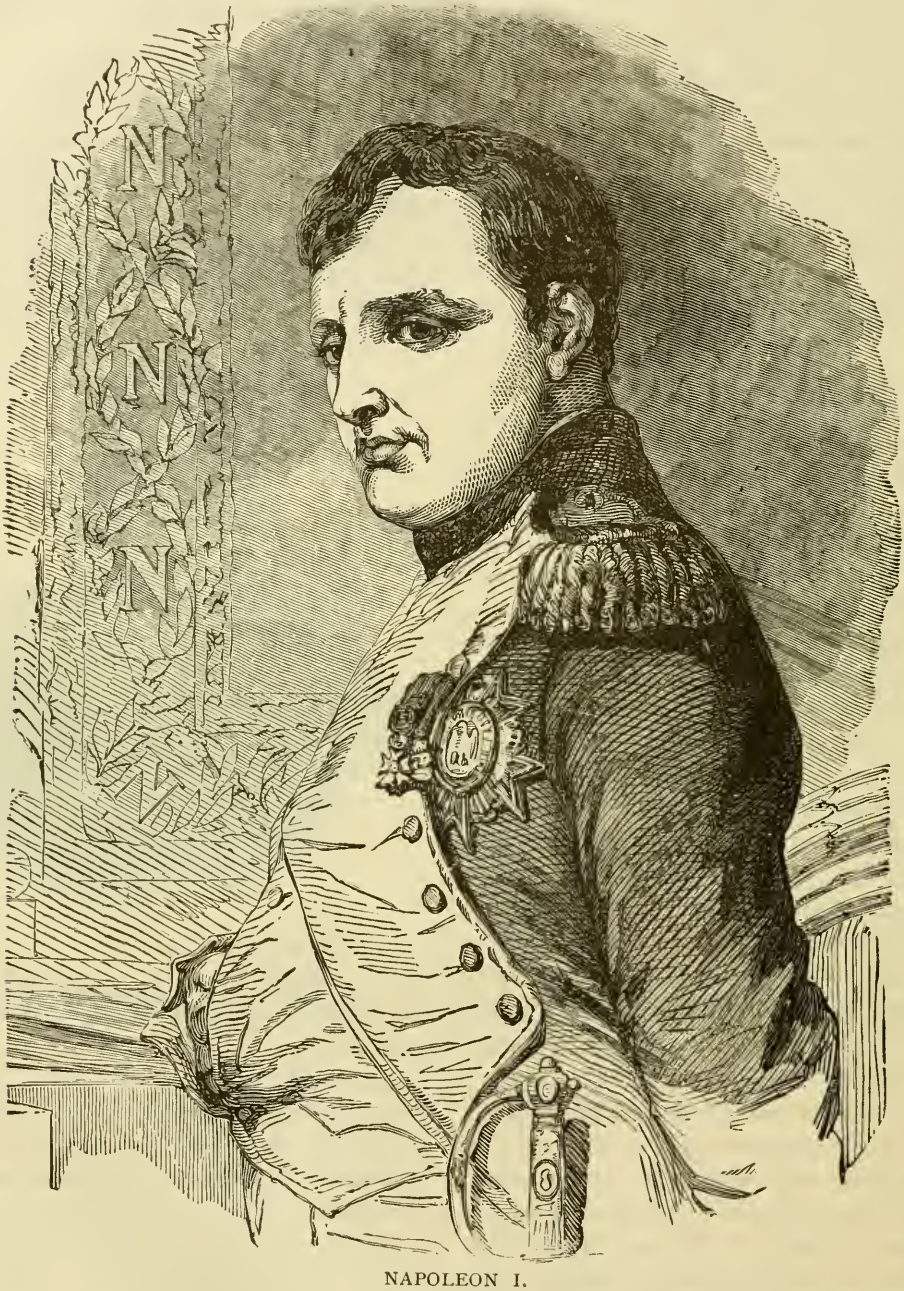
This purchase was of the highest importance. It about doubled the area of the United States, and placed the whole valley of the Mississippi within the territory of the republic. It was naturally a most popular act, and was approved by the entire nation, with the exception of a small number of the old Federalist leaders. Congress divided this great region into two territories—the Territory of Orleans, corresponding to the present State of Louisiana, and the District of Louisiana, comprising the remainder of the purchase.

Mention has been made of the payment of tribute to the dey of Algiers by the United States during the administration of Washington. Previous to 1801 the United States expended nearly two million dollars in purchasing exemption from capture for its merchant vessels in the Mediterranean. These payments were made to all the Barbary

Robt R Livingston

powers, Tunis, Tripoli, Algiers and Morocco. The tribute for 1800 was taken to Algiers by Captain William Bainbridge, in the frigate "George Washington." Nothing could be more distasteful to the gallant Bainbridge, but he had to obey orders. While thus engaged, the dey of Algiers told him to take the tribute of the dey to the Sultan at Constantinople, and to haul down his own flag

and run up that of Algiers. This Bainbridge refused, whereupon the dey insolently said,



NAPOLEON I.

"You are my slaves; for if you are not, why do you pay me tribute? I have the right to order you as I please." As the castle guns in the harbor held Bainbridge at their mercy, he took the advice of the American consul and obeyed the orders of his master, the dey, but the captain expressed the hope that he might deliver the next

tribute from the throats of his cannon. As the American republic lay at the other side of the Atlantic, and its ships of war were not often seen in the Mediterranean, the African pirates did not trouble themselves to comply with their agreements, and continued their outrages upon American ships in spite of the tribute paid them.

In 1801 the bey of Tripoli, dissatisfied with the tribute paid him, declared war against the United States, and a number of American war vessels were sent to the Mediterranean to protect the commerce of their country in that sea. In 1803 Commodore Preble was sent to the Mediterranean with a fleet. The frigate "Philadelphia" was stationed to blockade Tripoli, while Preble, with the remainder of the vessels, sought to punish the emperor of Morocco by an attack on Tangiers. While thus engaged the "Philadelphia" ran ashore in chasing an Algerine cruiser. In this helpless condition she was surrounded by Tripolitan gunboats and captured after a fight which lasted the entire day. Captain Bainbridge, her commander, and three hundred of her crew were made prisoners. The officers were held for ransom, but the seamen were reduced to slavery.

On the fifth of February, 1804, Lieutenant Stephen Decatur, with a picked crew of seventy-six men, entered the harbor of Tripoli in a small schooner named the "Intrepid." Placing his vessel alongside of the "Philadelphia" by night, he boarded the frigate as she lay under the guns of the castle and the

CAPTAIN (AFTERWARD COMMODORE) BAINBRIDGE AND THE DEY OF ALGIERS.

Tripolitan fleet, drove the Turkish crew into the sea, set fire to the frigate in every part, and retreated from the harbor without the loss of a man.

During the year 1804 the American fleet repeatedly bombarded Tripoli, and did considerable damage to it. The war went on until the summer of 1805, when the bey of Tripoli asked for peace, and a treaty was made by which the Tripolitan pirates surrendered their captives on payment of a ransom, and agreed to refrain from aggressions upon the commerce of the United States in future without payment of further tribute. For some years the American vessels were safe from the outrages of the Barbary pirates.

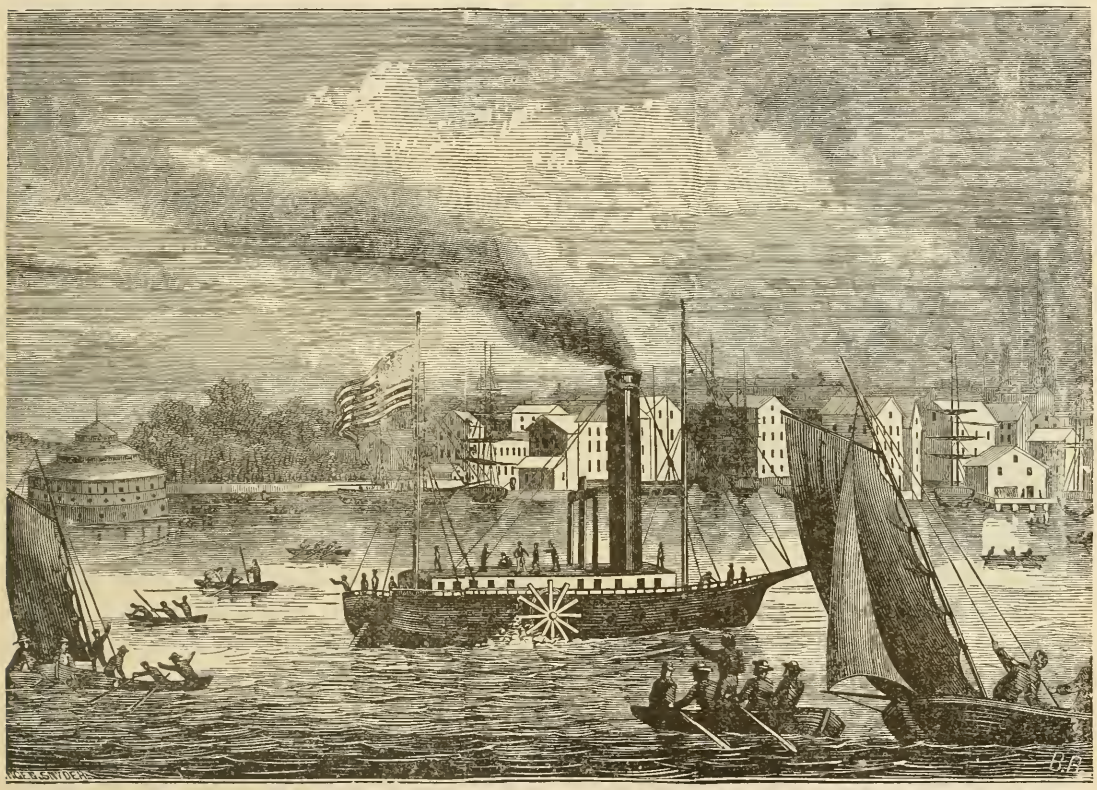
In the fall of 1804 Mr. Jefferson was elected president for a second term, but this time Colonel Burr was dropped by his party, who nominated and elected George Clinton, of New York, vice-president in his place. Burr had at last experienced the reward of his insincerity: both parties had come to distrust him. After his defeat for the vice-presidency he had been nominated by his party as their candidate for governor of New York. He was warmly opposed by Alexander Hamilton, who was mainly instrumental in bringing about his defeat. Burr never forgave Hamilton for his course in this election, and took advantage of the first opportunity to challenge him to a duel. They met at Weehawken, on the banks of

DUEL BETWEEN BURR AND HAMILTON.

the Hudson, opposite New York, on the eleventh of July, 1804.

Hamilton, who had accepted the challenge in opposition to his better judgment, and who had expressed his intention not to fire at Burr, was mortally wounded, and died within twenty-four hours. In him perished one of the brightest intellects and most earnest patriots of the republic. His loss was regarded as second only to that of Washington, and the sad news of his death was received in all parts of the country with profound and unaffected sorrow. A feeling of deep and general indignation was aroused against Burr, who found it expedient to withdraw from New York and retire to Georgia until the excitement had subsided.

The murder of Hamilton, for it was nothing else, closed Burr's political career. His remaining years were passed in restless intrigue. In 1805 he went west, and there undertook the organization of a military movement of some sort, which from the secrecy with which it was conducted, was generally regarded as treasonable and intended for his own aggrandizement. In 1806 he was arrested by the United States, and after a prolonged trial, during which he defended himself with great ability, he was acquitted of the charge of treason. His subsequent career was obscure, and he died in 1836, friendless and alone. He was a man of great ability; but he failed to put his great talents to an honest use.



FULTON'S FIRST STEAMBOAT.

In the year 1807 a great change was made in the system of navigation by Robert Fulton, a native of Pennsylvania, who built and successfully navigated the first steamboat.

He named it the "Clermont," and made the voyage from New York to Albany, a distance of about one hundred and fifty miles, in thirty-six hours. From this time steam navigation rapidly superseded the old system of sailing vessels in the waters of the United states and exercised a powerful influence in the development of the wealth and prosperity of the country.

Since the beginning of the century France and England had been at war with each other, and their quarrels had drawn the whole European world into the struggle. The administration of Mr. Jefferson had continued the neutrality of its predecessors, but in a fit of mistaken economy it exhibited the greatest hostility to the navy, which had been reduced to the most inefficient state possible. The commerce of the Union had grown with remarkable rapidity, and the need of a navy for its protection was now greater than ever. The administration could not be brought to recognize this fact, however, and it regarded the navy as of no other use than to enforce the revenue laws in its home waters.

Seizure of American Vessels.

The general character of the European war had thrown the commerce of the old world into the hands of the few nations which were not engaged in the struggle. The United States obtained the largest share of this trade, but were not left long to enjoy it in peace. The efforts of Great Britain and France to injure each other had caused them to extend their attacks to neutral nations. The British government, by its "orders in council," declared all vessels engaged in conveying West India produce from the United States to Europe legal prizes.

This measure was intended to cripple France, and at the same time to injure the United States, which had become too successful a commercial rival to England. A number of American vessels were seized and condemned upon this pretext. Great indignation was expressed throughout the United States, but the government did nothing to remedy the trouble. In May, 1806, Great Britain declared the European coast, from Brest to the mouth of the river Elbe, in a state of blockade, thus forbidding neutral vessels to trade with any port within these prescribed limits on pain of capture and confiscation. This high-handed measure was a direct blow to the United States.

Mutterings of War.

It was met on the part of France by an act equally unjustifiable. Napoleon issued his famous "Berlin decree," by which he declared the whole coast of Great Britain in a state of blockade, and forbade the introduction of English goods into France, and the admission into French ports of any neutral vessel that should first touch at an English port. In answer to this decree Great Britain forbade all trade with France by neutral nations. Napoleon thereupon issued his "Milan decree," confiscating not only the vessels and cargoes that should violate the "Berlin decree," but also such as submit to be searched by the English. Thus the commerce of the world was placed at the mercy of these two nations. The United States were the chief sufferers by these arbitrary measures. Their ships were captured by both British and French cruisers, and their remonstrances produced no cessation of the outrages.

It was not possible to do anything for the protection of the commerce of the country, as the mistaken policy of the administration had deprived it of an efficient navy. The whole Atlantic seaboard demanded a change in this respect, and petitions poured in upon Congress asking for the construction of more

vessels of war and for protection from the aggressions of the European powers. The only result of these petitions was a recommendation from the president to Congress to build more gunboats. It was not possible to go to war with both England and France, and the American government was left to make a choice as to which power it would undertake to settle the question with. The popular feeling was stronger against England, which, being the most active power at sea, was the principal aggressor, and the events to be related finally turned the scale against England.

Remonstrance Against British Outrages.

The British government maintained the doctrine that no subject could expatriate himself or become a citizen of another country. This was the opposite of the view held by the United States, which welcomed emigrants from other countries, bestowed upon them the rights of citizenship, and in their new character of adopted citizens protected them. The commanders of the British men-of-war were accustomed to stop American vessels on the high seas and search them for deserters.

Under this head they included all persons born within the dominions of Great Britain, whether naturalized American citizens or not. When found on American vessels these persons were removed by force and compelled to serve on board English ships of war. The British officers did not confine these impressments to "deserters," but seized and forced into their service great numbers of native-born Americans, who were thus torn from their homes and consigned to a slavery which was bitter and cruel to them.

The government of the United States addressed urgent remonstrances to that of Great Britain against these outrages, and finally, in the spring of 1806, sent William Pinckney as joint commissioner with James Monroe, then minister to England, for the purpose of negotiating a treaty which should put a stop to the acts complained of. The commissioners appointed by Great Britain expressed the desire of their country not to impress American seaman, and their willingness to redress as promptly as possible any mistake of the kind. They declined to relinquish the right to search for deserters,

as it would be ruinous to the English navy. The truth is Great Britain treated her seamen with such cruelty that they would have deserted by the thousand had they been assured of protection from arrest.

The British commissioners declared that while their country would not relinquish the right of search and impressment, strict orders would be issued to their naval commanders to use the right with caution and moderation. The British government itself was sincerely desirous of conciliating the United

States, but its naval commanders, tempted by the weakness of the American navy, paid no attention to its orders and conducted themselves with haughty insolence towards American vessels, seizing and searching them, and forcing men from their decks with the same activity as before, and rarely missing an occasion to insult the flag of the

OFFICERS OF THE CHESAPEAKE SURRENDERING THEIR SWORDS.

republic. Meanwhile the commissioners concluded a treaty for ten years between the United States and Great Britain. It was on the whole more advantageous than Jay's treaty, but the president was not satisfied with it, and assumed the responsibility of rejecting it, in the spring of 1807, without submitting it to the Senate.

A British naval commander now ventured upon an act which threw the relations between the two countries into a more hopeless state than ever. The United States frigate "Chesapeake," 38, under the command of Commodore Barron, was about to sail for a European station. Strict orders were issued to her officers not to enlist any British subject, knowing him to be such; but it was said that four of her crew were deserters from the British frigate "Melampus." Several British war vessels were lying in the Chesapeake Bay, and one of these, the "Leopard," a fifty-gun frigate, put to sea a few hours before the "Chesapeake" sailed. The latter vessel sailed before she was fully ready for sea, and the work of getting the ship in order was still in progress, when she

was hailed off the capes by the "Leopard," under the pretence of sending despatches to Europe.

A lieutenant of the British frigate came on board and demanded the surrender of the four men we have mentioned. Commodore Barron refused the demand on the ground that there were no such men on board. The lieutenant then returned to his ship, and the "Leopard" opened fire upon the "Chesapeake," and killed three of her men and wounded eighteen others. The "Chesapeake" was utterly unprepared for resistance, and Barron struck his colors after a single gun had been fired. The four men were taken from the "Chesapeake," the "Leopard" sailed for Halifax, and the American frigate returned to Norfolk.

The Embargo Act.

The news of this outrage excited the profoundest indignation throughout the country. On the second of July, 1807, the president issued a proclamation ordering all British vessels of war to depart from American waters, and the people were warned against holding any intercourse with them. A special session of Congress was called, and the American minister at London was ordered to demand satisfaction for the outrage.

The British government had received information of the affair before the arrival of the American demand. The action of the commander of the "Leopard" was disavowed, and a special messenger was sent to the United States to arrange the matter. Great Britain disclaimed the right to search vessels of war, and the excitement was quieted for a time.

In December, 1806, as the outrages upon American commerce were continued, Congress, at the recommendation of the president, passed the "Embargo Act," by which all merchant vessels of the United States were prevented from leaving the ports of this country. This measure entirely put an end to the intercourse between the United States and the European nations.

James Madison Elected President.

In the election of 1808 Mr. Jefferson following the example of Washington, declined to be a candidate for a third term, and the Democratic or administration party supported James Madison for the Presidency, and George Clinton for the Vice-Presidency. They were elected by large majorities; but the effect of the embargo was seen in the casting of the electoral votes of the five New England States against the administration.

The disaffection of the New England States induced Mr. Jefferson, just before the expiration of his term of office, to recommend to Congress the repeal of the embargo act. His opinion was unchanged as to the propriety of the embargo, but he recommended its repeal as a measure of peace and conciliation. The law was repealed on the first of March, 1809, and in the same month Congress passed an act prohibiting trade with France and England.

At the close of his term of office Mr. Jefferson withdrew from public life, and retired to his home at Montecello, in Virginia. The wisdom and success of the general policy of his administration had far outweighed his mistakes, and he retired from office with undiminished popularity, and with the respect and confidence of the nation. Indeed his popularity was greater at the close of his administration than at the beginning—a rare and gratifying reward to a public servant. His great services in the revolution, his draft of the Declaration of Independence, his acquisition of Louisiana, and the purity and grandeur of his character, placed him, in the public estimation, next to Washington.

CHAPTER XXXIII

The Administration of James Madison—The Second War with England

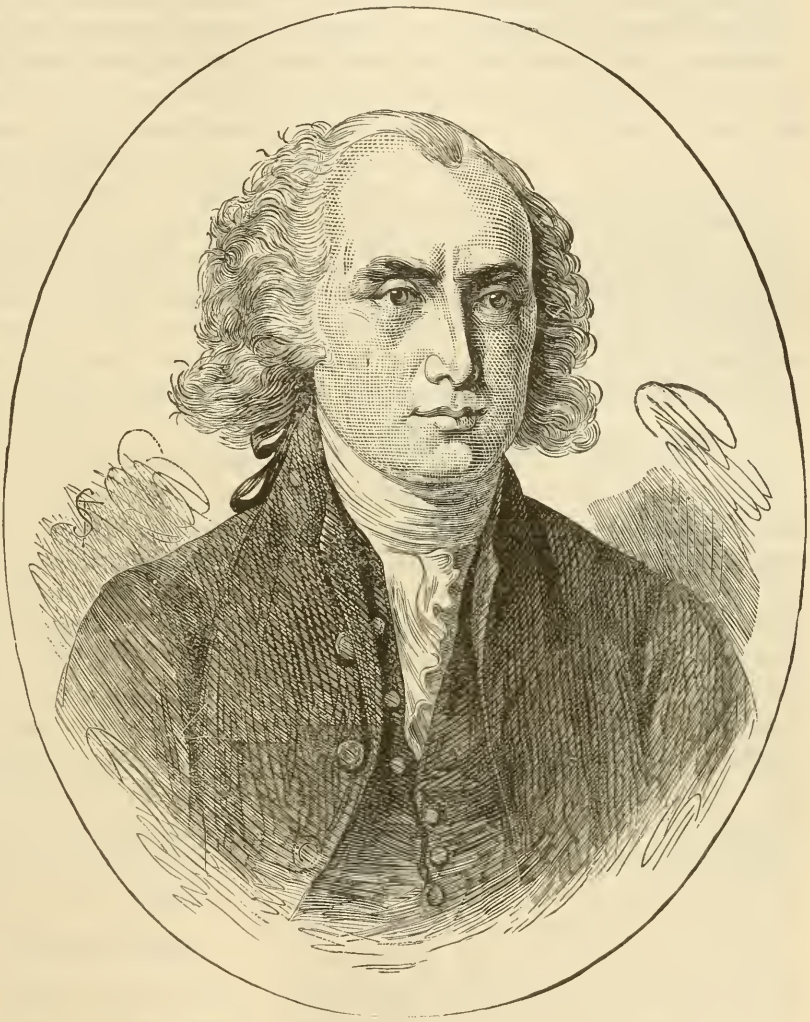
Inauguration of Mr. Madison—Negotiations with Mr. Erskine—Their Failure—Seizure of American Vessels in France—Sufferings of American Ship-Owners—Great Britain Stations Her Ships of War Off American Ports—Affair of the "President" and "Little Belt"—Trouble with the Northwestern Indians—Tecumseh—Battle of Tippecanoe—Meeting of the Twelfth Congress—Measures for Defence—Admission of Louisiana Into the Union—Death of George Clinton—The British Ultimatum—War Declared Against Great Britain—Opposition to the War—The British Offer of Settlement Rejected—The War for "Free Trade and the Sailors' Rights"—Mr. Madison Re-elected—Campaign of 1812—Preparations for the Invasion of Canada—General Hull Surrenders Detroit to the British—Loss or the Northwestern Frontier—Failure of the Attack on Queenstown—Exploits of the Navy—Capture of the "Guerrière" by the "Constitution"—The Privateers—Russia Offers to Mediate Between the United States and England—Financial Affairs—Harrison's Campaign—Massacre at the River Raisin—Defence of Forts Meigs and Stephenson—Perry's Victory on Lake Erie—Battle of the Thames—Death of Tecumseh—Recovery of the Northwest—Capture of York—British Attack on Sackett's Harbor Repulsed—Removal of General Dearborn—Failure of the Campaign on the Lower Lakes—The Creek War—Jackson's Victories—Naval Affairs—The British Outrages in Chesapeake Bay—Negotiations for Peace—Capture of Fort Erie—Battles of Chippewa and Lundy's Lane—Siege of Fort Erie—Successes of the Americans—Advance of Prevost—Battle of Plattsburg—Macdonough's Victory on Lake Champlain—Battle of Bladensburg—Capture of Washington—Destruction of the Public Buildings by the British—Attack on Baltimore—Death of General Ross—"The Star Spangled Banner"—The British Attack on the New England Coast—Opposition of New England to the War—The Hartford Convention—The British in Florida—General Jackson Expels Them—Jackson at New Orleans—Arrival of the British Expedition Off the Coast—Vigorous Measures of Jackson—Battle of New Orleans—Defeat of the British—Naval Affairs—The Treaty of Peace—The Barbary Powers Humbled—The Tariff—The Bank of the United States—Admission of Indiana—James Monroe Elected President.

JAMES MADISON, the fourth president of the United States, was inaugurated at Washington on the fourth of March, 1809. He was in the fifty-eighth year of his age, and had long been one of the most prominent men in the Union. He had borne a distinguished part in the convention of 1787, and was the author of the Virginia resolutions of 1786, which brought about the assembling of this convention. He had entered the convention as one of the most prominent leaders of the national party, which favored the consolidation of the States into one distinct and supreme nation, and had acted with Randolph, Hamilton, Wilson, Morris, and King, in seeking to bring about such a result. When it was found impossible to carry out this plan Mr. Madison gave his cordial support to the system which was finally adopted by the convention; and while the constitution was under discussion by the States, he united with Hamilton and Jay in earnestly recommending the adoption of the constitution by the States, in a series of able articles, to which the general title of the "Federalist" was given.

After the organization of the government Mr. Madison was a member of the House of Representatives, and was regarded as one of the leaders of the Federalist party, and gave to Hamilton his cordial support in the finance measures of that minister. Towards the close of Washington's administration, however, Mr. Madison's political views underwent a great change. He was a near

neighbor and warm friend of Mr. Jefferson, and was greatly influenced by the opinions and the strong personal character of that great statesman. As the political controversies of the times deepened he became more and more inclined towards the Republican or "Strict Construction" party, and in Mr. Adams' administration took his position as one of the leaders of that party.

At the time of his election to the Presidency, Mr. Jefferson having withdrawn from public life, Mr. Madison was the recognized leader of the Democratic party, as the Republican party had come to be called. In 1799 his famous report upon the Virginia resolutions of 1798 stamped him as one of the first statesmen in America, and this report has always been regarded by succeeding generations as the most masterly exposition of the true principles of the constitution ever penned. During the whole of Mr. Jefferson's administration Mr. Madison served as secretary of state, and not only added to his great fame by his eminent services in that capacity, but prepared himself for the difficult duties of the presidency.



JAMES MADISON.

Mr. Madison had opposed the embargo, while sustaining the general foreign policy of Mr. Jefferson, but was in favor of the non-intercourse act, which forbade the country to trade with England and France. This act contained a clause which provided that it should cease to apply to either or both of them as soon as they should repeal their "decrees," or "orders in council," affecting the commerce of the United States.

Mr. Erskine, the British minister to the United States, a man of noble and generous

character, was anxious that the differences between the two countries should be settled amicably, and he entered heartily into negotiations with the American government for this purpose. In accordance with the instructions he had received from England, he believed himself authorized to inform the American government that the "orders in council" of Great Britain would be revoked by that government, as far as they applied to the commerce of the United States, and to offer "a suitable provision for the widows and orphans of those who were killed on board the 'Chesapeake.'" Upon these assurances the President, on the nineteenth of April, 1810, issued a proclamation suspending the non-intercourse act, as to England, after the tenth of June following.

Seizure of American Ships.

The news was received with joy all over the country, and in the course of a few weeks over one thousand vessels sailed from the United States, laden with American products, for foreign ports. They had hardly gotten to sea when the President was informed by the British government that Mr. Erskine had exceeded his powers in promising the withdrawal of the "orders in council." The President immediately issued a second proclamation, withdrawing his first, and matters resumed their old footing. Mr. Erskine was recalled, and a Mr. Jackson was appointed in his place. The failure of the negotiations with Erskine had greatly mortified not only the President and his cabinet, but the whole nation, and Mr. Jackson was coldly received. That gentleman adopted a tone and style in his correspondence with the secretary of state, which were so offensive that the President refused to hold communication with him, and demanded his recall. All the diplomatic intercourse between the two countries thus came to an end.

The outrages upon American commerce continued. Danish privateers almost drove the American merchantmen from the Baltic. The American ship-owners asked permission to arm their vessels for their own defence, as the government had not a navy sufficient to protect them; but their petition was refused by Congress, on the ground that such a state of affairs would be equivalent to war. The sentiment of the people of the country was rapidly settling in favor of war, and they could see little difference between the existing state of affairs and open hostilities. France was equally guilty with Great Britain. In the spring of 1810 Napoleon issued a decree by which any American vessel entering any port of France, or of any country under French control, was made liable to seizure and confiscation. The decree was held back for six weeks after its date, with the deliberate design of involving as many American ships as possible in the ruin intended for them. The first intimation given to the United States of its existence was the seizure of one hundred and thirty-two American ships in the French ports. They were shortly afterwards sold with their cagoes, and added the sum of eight millions of dollars to the French treasury. The government of the United States remonstrated against this high-handed outrage, but to no purpose, until Napoleon's want of money induced him to adopt a more honest course.

Great Britain's Unlawful Acts.

About the middle of the year 1810 the American minister at Paris was informed that the Berlin and Milan decrees were revoked, and would cease to have effect after the first of November of that year. In accordance with this information the President, on the first of November, 1810, issued a proclamation suspending the non-intercourse act with respect to France, and announcing that

the provisions of the act would be continued with respect to Great Britain unless her "orders in council" should be revoked within three months from that date.

The President also called the attention of the British government to the repeal of the French decrees, and as the "orders in council" were based upon these decrees, urged their repeal. Great Britain replied that the evidence of the revocation of the Berlin and Milan decrees was insufficient, and that the non-intercourse acts of Congress and the President's proclamation were partial and unjust. This answer was regarded in the United States as evidence of Great Britain's deliberate intention to continue her outrages upon this country, and very greatly increased the popular desire for war. England persisted in her determination to enforce her "orders in council," and even went to the inexcusable length of stationing her war vessels off the principal harbors of the United States for the purpose of intercepting our merchantmen, and injuring our commerce.

British Sloop Disabled.

While matters were in this unsettled condition, the American frigate "President," on the evening of the sixteenth of May, 1811, encountered a strange vessel off the mouth of the Delaware. As the dusk of the evening was too deep for Commodore Rodgers to distinguish the stranger's nationality, he hailed her, and was insolently answered by a gun from her. He replied with a broadside, and after an action of twenty minutes the stranger was disabled. Rodgers then hailed again, and was answered that the disabled vessel was the British sloop of war "Little Belt." She was greatly damaged, and had thirty-two of her crew killed and wounded. The "President" was scarcely injured, and had but one man slightly wounded.

A different statement of the affair was rendered to his government by each of the commanding officers, and was accepted by each government. In this conflict of testimony, the matter was suffered to pass by. The news of the prompt chastisement of the insolence of the British commander was received with delight in the United States, and the affair was generally regarded as, in some measure, an atonement for the disgrace of the surrender of the "Chesapeake" to the "Leopard."

Furious Attack by the Savages.

The Indians of the northwest were becoming very troublesome, and their aggressions were attributed to the instigation of the British in Canada. Tecumseh, a Shawnee chief of unusual abilities, attempted to unite the Indians of the continent in a grand effort against the Americans, and for this purpose passed from tribe to tribe, from the great lakes to the Gulf of Mexico, and urged them to take up the hatchet. He was assisted by his twin brother, Elskwatawa, generally called "the Prophet," who appealed to the superstitious fears of the savages by his jugglery.

The federal government determined to strike a blow at the savages before their plans for union could be brought to a successful issue. In the autumn of 1811, Major-General William Henry Harrison, then governor of Indiana Territory, was sent to operate against the tribes on the Wabash. He took with him a body of Kentucky and Indiana militia, and one regiment of regular troops. On the sixth of November he arrived at the junction of the Tippecanoe and Wabash rivers near the town of the Prophet, the brother of Tecumseh.

The Prophet sent several of the principal Indian chiefs to meet Harrison with offers of submission. They informed him that the Prophet would come into camp the next

day, and make a treaty with him. Harrison suspected that the purpose of the Indians was simply to gain time, and that they would probably seek to surprise him during the night, and accordingly caused his men to bivouac on their arms that night. His precautions were well taken. About four o'clock on the morning of November seventh the savages made a furious attack on the American camp. They were promptly received,

A PIONEER HERO'S FIGHT WITH THE SAVAGES.

and after a severe conflict of several hours were put to flight. Tecumseh was not present in this engagement. General Harrison followed up his victory by destroying the Prophet's town, and building some forts for the protection of the country. The battle of Tippecanoe quieted the Indians of the northwest for a while, but greatly increased the desire of the people of that region for war with England.

In view of the threatening condition of affairs the President, by his proclamation, convened the twelfth Congress in session a month earlier than usual, and that body met on the fourth of November, 1811. It was remarkable, as was also its successor, the thirteenth Congress, for the number of its members who afterwards took their places among the great men of the republic. The public men of the revolutionary period were dropping out of political life, and new men, with new ideas, were taking their places in the councils of the nation.

Among the new members of Congress were Henry Clay, a native of Virginia, but a representative from Kentucky; John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina; John Randolph, of Virginia; Felix Grundy, of Tennessee; Josiah Quincy, of Massachusetts, and Langdon Cheeves and William Lowndes, of South

Carolina. There was a large administration majority in both Houses, and the prevailing sentiment of Congress was in favor of war with England. In this respect Congress fairly reflected the feeling of the country.

Under the influence of this feeling, Congress during this session voted to increase the regular army to thirty-five thousand men, and authorized the President to accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers, and to call out the militia whenever occasion might require. The vessels of the navy were ordered to be fitted for sea, and new ships were to be constructed. There was need for these measures, as the army at the time consisted of but three thousand men, and the navy of less than twenty frigates and sloops of war in commission, and about one hundred and fifty gunboats for harbor defence. The third census, taken in 1810, showed the population of the country to be 7,239,903.

War Declared Against Great Britain.

During this winter the government detected and laid before Congress an effort of Great Britain to produce disaffection in the New England States, with a view to secure their withdrawal from the Union. The agent of this plot was one John Henry. The committee appointed by Congress to investigate the matter reported that "the transaction disclosed by the President's message presents to the mind of the committee conclusive evidence that the British government, at a period of peace, and during the most friendly professions, have been deliberately and perfidiously pursuing measures to divide these States and to involve our citizens in all the guilt of treason and the horrors of civil war."

Amid these troubles the State of Louisiana was admitted into the Union on the eighth of April, 1812. Shortly afterwards the portion of the Louisiana purchase lying outside of the limits of the State of Louisiana was organized into the Territory of Missouri.

On the twentieth of April, 1805, George Clinton, the Vice-President of the United States, died at Washington, at the age of seventy-three. His place was filled by William H. Crawford, of Georgia, the president *pro tempore* of the Senate.

On the thirtieth of May, 1812, the British minister at Washington delivered to the government of the United States the final

John Randolph

reply of his government to the demands of this country in the questions at issue between them. This *ultimatum* was submitted to Congress by the President on the first of June, accompanied by a message in which he recapitulated the wrongs inflicted by Great Britain upon this country, her violations of the rights of neutrals, her impressment of American seamen, her seizures of American ships and her refusal to enter into any equitable arrangement for the settlement of these questions. The determination of Great

Britain to drive American commerce from the seas was evident, and the question was submitted to Congress whether the United States should continue to submit to these outrages or should resort to war to protect their rights.

After a debate of several days an act declaring war against Great Britain was passed by Congress and was approved by the President on the eighteenth of June, 1812. On the nineteenth the President issued a proclamation declaring that war existed between the United States and Great Britain and her dependencies. Congress authorized the President to enlist twenty-five thousand men for the regular army, to raise a force of fifty thousand volunteers, and to call out one hundred thousand militia for garrison duty. General Henry Dearborn, of Massachusetts, was appointed to the chief command of the army.

Opposition to the War.

The war measures of Congress were not passed without considerable opposition. A large party, composed of some of the ablest and best men in that party, was opposed to the war, and resented the effort to go to war with England alone. They claimed that France had given as good cause for war, but that nothing was said of punishing her. This was true, but this party lost sight of the fact that the United States could not go to war with both powers, and were compelled to direct their efforts against the principal offender, which was clearly England.

The war was regarded as an administration measure, and though it was sustained by a large majority of the American people, there was still a strong and respectable party especially in the New England States, which opposed it, and which claimed that all peaceful means of settlement had not yet been exhausted. John Randolph, of Virginia, opposed the declaration of war in a speech in the House of Representatives remarkable for its boldness and vigor, and declared that he had no hesitation in saying that he should prefer a contest with France to one with England.

Soon after the declaration of war England made an effort to settle the controversy with the United States by negotiation. In September, 1812, Admiral Warren, commanding the British fleet at Halifax, addressed a letter to Mr. Monroe, the secretary of state, informing him that he was authorized by his government to enter into negotiations for a cessation of hostilities upon a basis of revocation of the "orders in council."

The Cause of Hostilities.

Mr. Monroe replied that the President was willing to enter into an armistice provided Admiral Warren had power and was willing to include in the negotiations measures for the discontinuance of the practices of seizing and searching American vessels and impressing American sailors from their decks, as experience had shown that no peace between the two countries could be lasting which did not include a settlement of these questions. As Admiral Warren had no authority to enter into these questions, the President declined to proceed further, and the effort at negotiations came to an end It has been held by many that the rejection by the President of the British overture was a grave error.

John Randolph thought that all the questions at issue, save the right of a British subject to expatriate himself and receive American protection, could be settled by negotiation. That point he did not believe England would ever concede. His opinion was to some extent vindicated by the unconditional revocation of the French decrees, and the immediate repeal of the British "orders

in council" upon the receipt of the news of this revocation. These measures were repealed within a month after the declaration of war by the United States. The only cause of the war remaining unsettled was the impressment question. The war thus became a struggle for the personal freedom of American sailors; and in a better cause no nation ever drew the sword.

Plan of Carrying On the War.

The weakness of the American navy made it impossible for this country to attempt any distant enterprise against Great Britain, and it was not believed by even the most enthusiastic Americans that we could contend with her upon terms of equality at sea. The only means by which she could be crippled by this country was by the invasion and conquest of Canada, and to this end the efforts of the United States were directed during the war. It was also believed that the commerce of England could be seriously injured by the efforts of American privateers, and from the commencement of hostilities great activity was displayed in getting vessels of this class to sea.

In the autumn of 1812 Mr. Madison was reëlected to the presidency by a large majority. Elbridge Gerry, of Connecticut, was chosen Vice-President. Mr. Madison entered upon his second term on the fourth of March, 1813, some months after the war had begun.

At the outset of the war the American forces were stationed along the Canadian frontier as follows: General Dearborn, the commander-in-chief, held the right, or eastern part of the line; the centre was commanded by General Stephen Van Rensselaer; and the left was held by General William Hull, then governor of Michigan Territory. The forces under these commanders were to coöperate with each other in their movements, and were to converge upon Montreal as the objective point of the campaign.

Early in July General Hull, who had seen service in the war of the revolution, collected a force of about two thousand men at Detroit. His position was very much exposed, Detroit being at that time separated from the other settlements by about two hundred miles of unbroken forest. He urged upon the government to increase his force to three thousand men, and to secure the command of Lake Erie before the British

STEPHEN VAN RENSSELAER.

should obtain possession of it. His requests could not be complied with, and he was obliged to depend upon the force at Detroit.

Immediately upon the declaration of war the British commanders in Canada displayed great activity, seizing the most important points along the frontier. In less than a month Fort Mackinaw and other points were in their possession, and Hull's position at Detroit was surrounded and his communications with the States cut off. Hull thereupon fortified his position, and endeavored, but without success, to open communication

with the country in his rear. In the meantime a strong British force assembled at Fort Malden, in Canada, opposite Detroit, under the command of General Brock, the governor of Upper Canada; and the British agents set to work to arouse the Indians of the northwest against the Americans.

In these efforts they were successful. lines they were astounded to see a white flag flying from them. An officer rode up to inquire the cause. The flag was the signal for a parley. Negotiations were begun, and later in the day Detroit, with its garrison and stores, and the whole of Michigan territory, was surrendered to the British by General Hull. The American troops were

MASSACRE BY INDIANS AT FORT DEARBORN.

Brock erected batteries on the Canadian side of the river, in a position to command Detroit, and demanded of Hull the surrender of that place. The demand being refused, Brock crossed his forces to the American shore, about three miles below the position occupied by General Hull, on the sixteenth of August, and advanced to attack him. As the British army drew near the American overcome with astonishment and mortification at this shameful surrender; for the force of the enemy, to whom they were betrayed by their commander, consisted of but seven hundred British and Canadians, and six hundred Indians.

By the surrender of Detroit the whole northwestern frontier was exposed to the British and their Indian allies. Great Britain,

unmindful of the shame she had incurred by her employment of the savages during the revolution, did not hesitate once more to devote the American frontier to the horrors of a savage war. The west was greatly alarmed, and ten thousand volunteers offered their services to the government for the defence of the frontier. They were accepted, and were placed under the command of General Harrison, who was appointed to succeed Hull.

General Hull Guilty of Cowardice.

Two years later, after being exchanged, General Hull was brought to trial by a court-martial for the surrender of Detroit and his army. He was found guilty of cowardice and neglect of duty, and was sentenced to be shot. He was pardoned by the President in consideration of his services during the revolution.

When Detroit surrendered, Fort Dearborn stood on the site of the city of Chicago, and was occupied by Captain Nathan Heald and fifty regulars. Receiving orders from Gen Hull to evacuate the fort and join him at Detroit, he attempted to obey, though warned by several scouts and friendly Indians that it was certain death to make the attempt. Afraid of treachery on the part of the large number of Indians around the fort, Captain Heald destroyed during the night the gunpowder, firearms and liquor which he had promised them. The exasperated savages waited till he was well on his way with the fifty soldiers and several families, and then attacked him. The women fought as bravely as the men. Twenty-six of the regular troops, all the militia, and a number of the men and women were killed. One of the savages leaped into a wagon containing twelve little ones and tomahawked them all. The next day Fort Dearborn was burned to the ground.

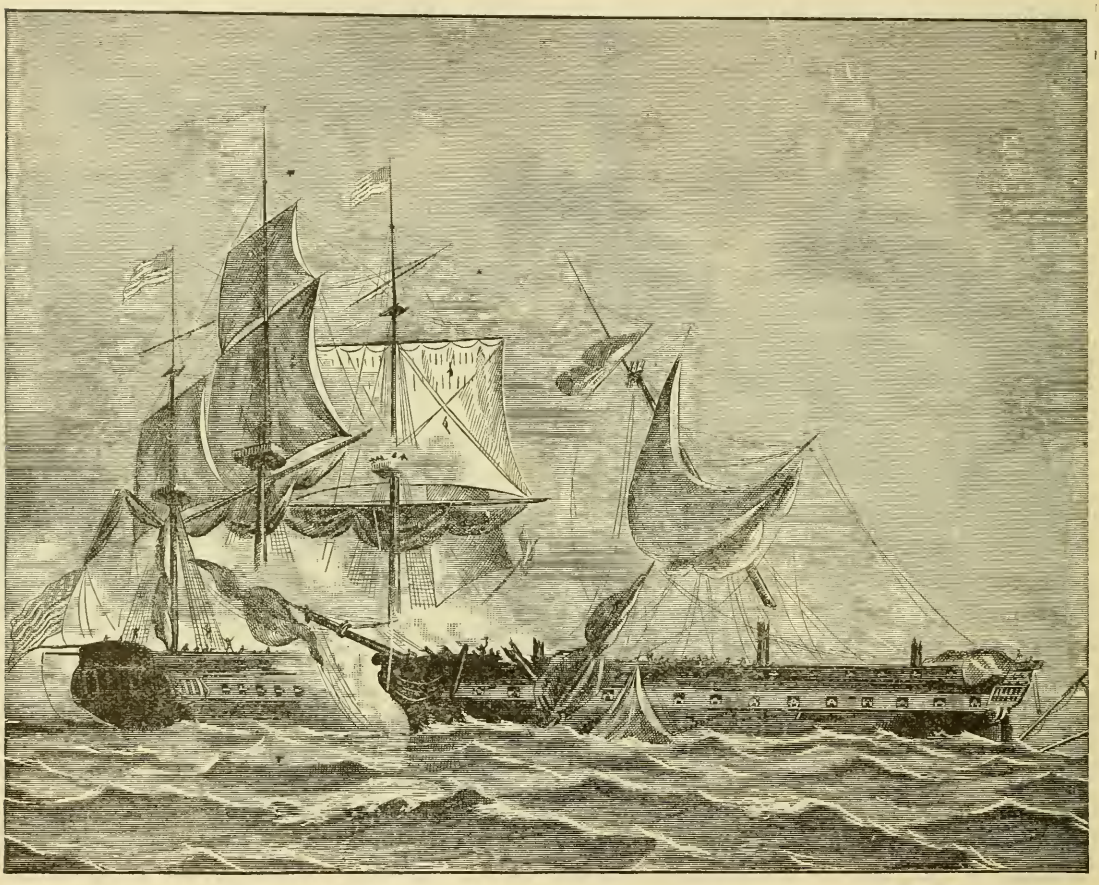
This was a sorry beginning for the war, and was followed by another disaster. General Van Rensselaer, the commander of the centre of the American line, had collected a force, principally New York militia, at Lewiston, on the Niagara river. At Queenstown, on the opposite side of the river, General Brock had stationed himself with a British force. On the thirteenth of October General Van Rensselaer crossed a force, under Colonel Van Rensselaer, and attacked the British fort and captured it. General Brock now arrived with a force of six hundred men, and endeavored to regain the fort, but was defeated and killed. General Van Rensselaer hastened back to the American side to bring over more troops, but his men refused to obey his orders, alleging that they could not be ordered out of their own State without their consent. The British were heavily reinforced, and the Americans were attacked and defeated; all who had crossed to the Canada side being killed or captured.

Brilliant Successes of the Navy.

Among the prisoners was Lieutenant-Colonel Winfield Scott, afterwards commander-in-chief of the American army, then a young man, who had crossed over as a volunteer to aid the force on the Canada side. Utterly disgusted with the conduct of his troops, General Van Rensselaer resigned his command after the battle of Queenstown. General Smyth, of Virginia, was appointed to succeed him. He made one or two efforts to enter Canada, but being each time prevented by his council of war, resigned his command.

Thus closed the year 1812, and the first campaign of the war. Its results were disastrous and disheartening. The attempts to invade Canada had ended with the surrender of Detroit and the defeat at Queenstown. A large part of the frontier was lost, and over

twenty-five hundred men had been captured by the enemy. These failures had aroused the discontent of a considerable portion of the people of the Union, and the opposition of the New England States to the war was greatly increased. Matters would have seemed hopeless had not the navy, which had been the most neglected branch of the public service, redeemed the national honor by a series of brilliant successes.



CAPTURE OF THE "GUERRIÈRE" BY THE "CONSTITUTION."

It was the intention of the government at the outset of the war to retain the vessels of the navy in the ports of the country to assist in the defence of the harbors of the United States. The fear was openly expressed that if these vessels should venture to put to sea they would certainly be captured by the British cruisers. The officers of the navy were indignant at these insinuations, and as soon as the news of the declaration of war was received at New York, several of the vessels of war in that port put to sea at once to avoid the orders which their commanders feared were on the way to detain them in port, and also for the purpose of making a dash at the Jamaica fleet, which was on its way to England. They followed this fleet to the entrance to the British channel, but without overtaking it.

A British squadron sailed from Halifax to cruise off the port of New York. The American frigate "Constitution," Captain Hull,

while endeavoring to enter New York harbor, fell in with this squadron, and was chased by it for four days. Her escape was due entirely to the superior skill of her officers and the energy of her crew. The chase was one of the most remarkable in history, and the escape of the American frigate won great credit for Captain Hull. Failing to reach New York, Hull sailed for Boston, and reached that port in safety. Remaining there a few days, he put to sea again, just in time to avoid orders from Washington to remain in port.

In July the American frigate "Essex" captured a transport filled with British soldiers, and a few days later encountered the British sloop of war "Alert," which mistook her for a merchantman. The "Essex" suffered her to approach, and then opened a rapid fire upon her, which soon disabled her, and forced her to surrender.

The "Constitution" sailed from Boston to the northeast. On the nineteenth of August, while cruising off the mouth of the St. Lawrence, she fell in with the British frigate "Guerrière," Captain Dacres, one of the vessels that had chased her during the previous month. The "Guerrière" immediately stood towards her, and both vessels prepared for action. The English commander opened his fire at long range, but Captain Hull refused to reply until he had gotten his ship into a favorable position, and for an hour and a half he manœuvred in silence, under a heavy fire from the British frigate.

At length, having got within pistol shot of her adversary, the "Constitution" opened a terrible fire upon her, and poured in her broadsides with such effect that the "Guerrière" struck her colors in thirty minutes. The "Guerrière" lost seventy-nine men killed and wounded, while the loss of the "Constitution" was but seven men. The "Guerrière" was so much injured in the fight that she could not be carried into port, and Hull had her burned.

The "Constitution" then returned to Boston with her prisoners, and was received with an ovation. It was the first time in half a century that a British frigate had struck her flag in a fair fight, and the victory was hailed with delight in all parts of the country.

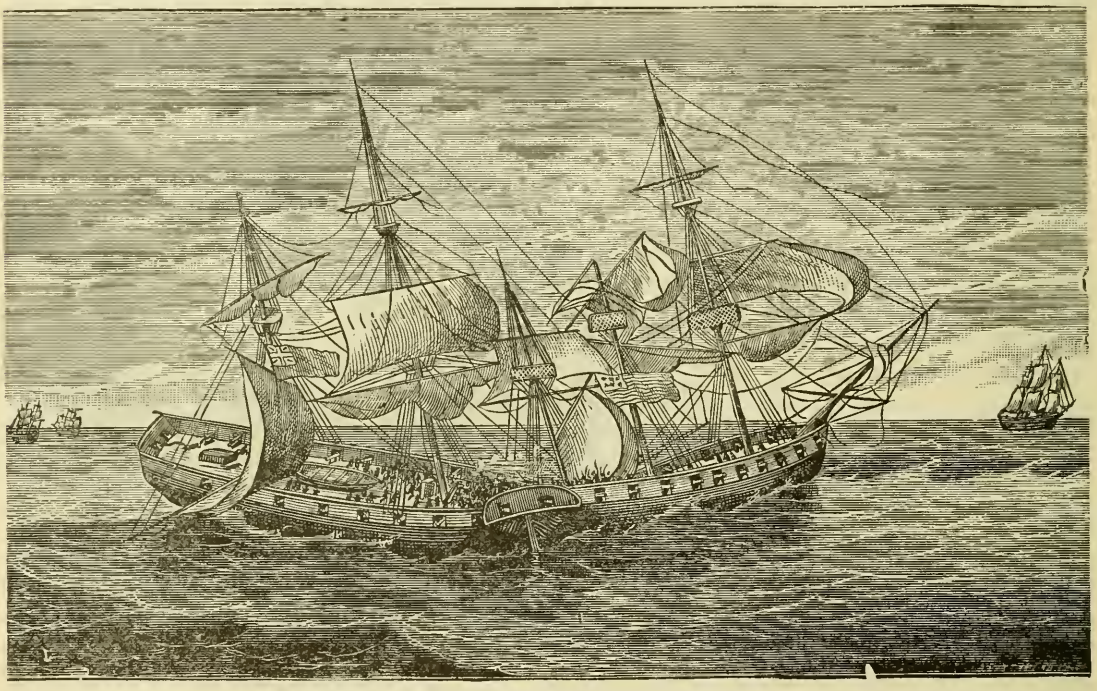
COMMODORE HULL.

On the eighteenth of October the American sloop-of-war "Wasp," eighteen, Captain Jones, met the British brig "Frolic," twenty-two, convoying six merchantmen. In order to give her convoy a chance to escape, the "Frolic" shortened sail and awaited the approach of the "Wasp." The "Wasp" poured a raking fire into her antagonist and

then boarded her. The boarders found the deck of the "Frolic" covered with the dead. Only one man remained unhurt, and he stood gallantly at his post at the wheel. Before the prize could be secured the British frigate "Poictiers," 74, hove in sight and captured both vessels. The "Wasp" lost eight men in the engagement; the "Frolic" eighty.

On the twenty-fifth of October the frigate "United States," 44, Captain Decatur, encountered the British frigate "Macedonian," 49, off the Azores, and after a running fight of an hour and a half forced her to strike her colors. The "United States" lost seven killed and five wounded; the "Macedonian," thirty-six killed and sixty-eighty wounded out of a crew of three hundred men. Decatur succeeded in bringing his prize into New York.

On the twenty-ninth of December the "Constitution," now under the command of Captain Bainbridge, captured the British frigate "Java," 38, off the coast of Brazil, after an action of three hours. The "Java" was reduced to a wreck, and as he was not able to get her into a friendly port, Captain Bainbridge caused her to be burned. The "Java" lost one hundred and sixty-one men out of a crew of four hundred; the "Constitution" lost thirty-four in killed and wounded. Among the wounded was Captain Bainbridge.



THE "WASP" BOARDING THE "FROLIC."

These victories aroused the greatest enthusiasm in the United States. The great disparity in the losses sustained by the respective combatants made it evident to both nations that the American ships had been better handled in every engagement. The British endeavored to account for the American successes by declaring that the United States vessels were seventy-fours in disguise, or that they carried heavier guns than their adversaries; but the thinking men

of both countries saw that they had been won by the superior skill of the American officers, and that they were the plain announcement of the fact that England had found a rival capable of contesting her supremacy on the ocean.

British Commerce Damaged.

The American privateers inflicted great damage upon the commerce of Great Britain. During the year 1812 these vessels captured about five hundred British merchantmen and made prisoners of three thousand British seamen. The cargoes of the captured vessels amounted to an enormous sum.

On the eighth of March, 1813, the Russian minister at Washington communicated to President Madison an offer from the Emperor Alexander of his mediation between the United States and Great Britain for the purpose of bringing about a peace between them. The President at once accepted the Russian offer, and sent Albert Gallatin and James A. Bayard to St. Petersburg to join John Quincy Adams, then Minister to Russia, as ministers to negotiate a treaty. The British government declined the Russian mediation and the matter was dropped.

The thirteenth Congress met on the twenty-fourth of May, 1813, and entered upon the task of providing the means of carrying on the war. The principal measure resorted to was the imposition of direct taxes and internal duties. The financial situation of the government was disheartening. The expenses of the war had greatly exceeded the estimates, and a heavy deficit had to be provided for. To meet the necessities of the occasion new loans were authorized, but they were generally paid in the depreciated treasury notes which had been issued according to act of Congress, and did not yield much to the government.

The business of the country was in a state of confusion. All the banks, save a few in New England, had suspended specie payments, and the war spirit was dying out in many parts of the Union. New England had entered into the war with great reluctance and was a heavy loser by it. Her opposition to it was increasing daily.

Discontent and Disagreement.

The government opened the campaign of 1813 with the determination to make another effort to conquer Canada. The army of the west, under General Harrison, was stationed at the upper end of Lake Erie; that of the centre, under General Dearborn, the commander-in-chief, was posted along the Niagara river; and that of the east, under General Wade Hampton, was at Lake Champlain. Simultaneous movements were to be made from these points against the British in Canada. To oppose these forces the British stationed their armies along their frontier as follows: General Proctor was stationed with a considerable force near Detroit; General Sheaf with another force covered Montreal and the approaches from the United States by way of Lake Champlain and the Sorel river; and Sir George Prevost, the commander-in-chief, held the line of the Niagara river.

General Harrison was charged with the duty of recovering the territory lost by General Hull. Volunteers flocked to him from all parts of the west, and especially from Kentucky. A part of his force, under General Winchester, held a fort on the Maumee. In January, 1813, the British made a demonstration against Frenchtown, on the river Raisin, and Winchester sent a detachment to its relief, which compelled the British to retreat. A little later Winchester followed with the rest of his troops and took position in the open country. His

whole force amounted to scarcely one thousand men.

Hearing of Winchester's exposed position, General Proctor marched from Fort Malden, opposite Detroit, with fifteen hundred British and Indians, and, crossing the lake on the ice, attacked Winchester on the twenty-second of January, and after a desperate encounter forced him to surrender; Proctor promised Winchester that his men should be treated as prisoners of war, but in violation of his pledge set out at once on his retreat to Malden, leaving the wounded Americans behind. The Indians of Proctor's command fell upon the helpless wounded men, massacred the majority of them, and carried the remainder to Detroit. Some of these they offered to release on payment of heavy ransoms; the others they held for torture. Proctor made no effort to save his reputation by protecting his prisoners, and his inhuman conduct in leaving them to the fury of the savages, in violation of his pledge, met, as it deserved, the unqualified denunciation of every honorable man. It roused a fierce spirit of revenge througout the west.

Harrison was on his march to Winchester's assistance when he learned of his surrender. He halted at the rapids of Maumee, and built a fort which he named Fort Meigs, in honor of the governor of Ohio. Proctor advanced in the spring to attack this fort, and on the first of May opened his batteries upon it. A force of twelve hundred Kentuckians, under General Green Clay, of Kentucky, advanced to the relief of the fort, and the British and Indians were obliged to raise the siege and retreat.

INDIANS TORTURING PRISONERS.

General Clay was placed in command of Fort Meigs. In July Proctor again advanced and made siege to it, but was unable to capture it. Hearing that Fort Stephenson, on the Sandusky, had a small garrison, Proctor withdrew from Fort Meigs and attacked Fort Stephenson. This fort had a garrison of one hundred and sixty men, and was commanded by Major George Croghan, a young man in his twenty-second year. He was summoned to surrender, but answered that he should hold the fort to the last man. On the second of August Proctor made a determined assault upon the fort, and his regulars gained the ditch, into which they crowded preparatory to attempting to scale the parapet. At this moment the only cannon in the fort, which had been doubly charged with musket-balls, opened upon them from a masked port-hole. The British were cut down by the score, and retreated in confusion. That night, fearing that Harrison would come to Croghan's relief, Proctor abandoned the siege, and retreated towards Malden.

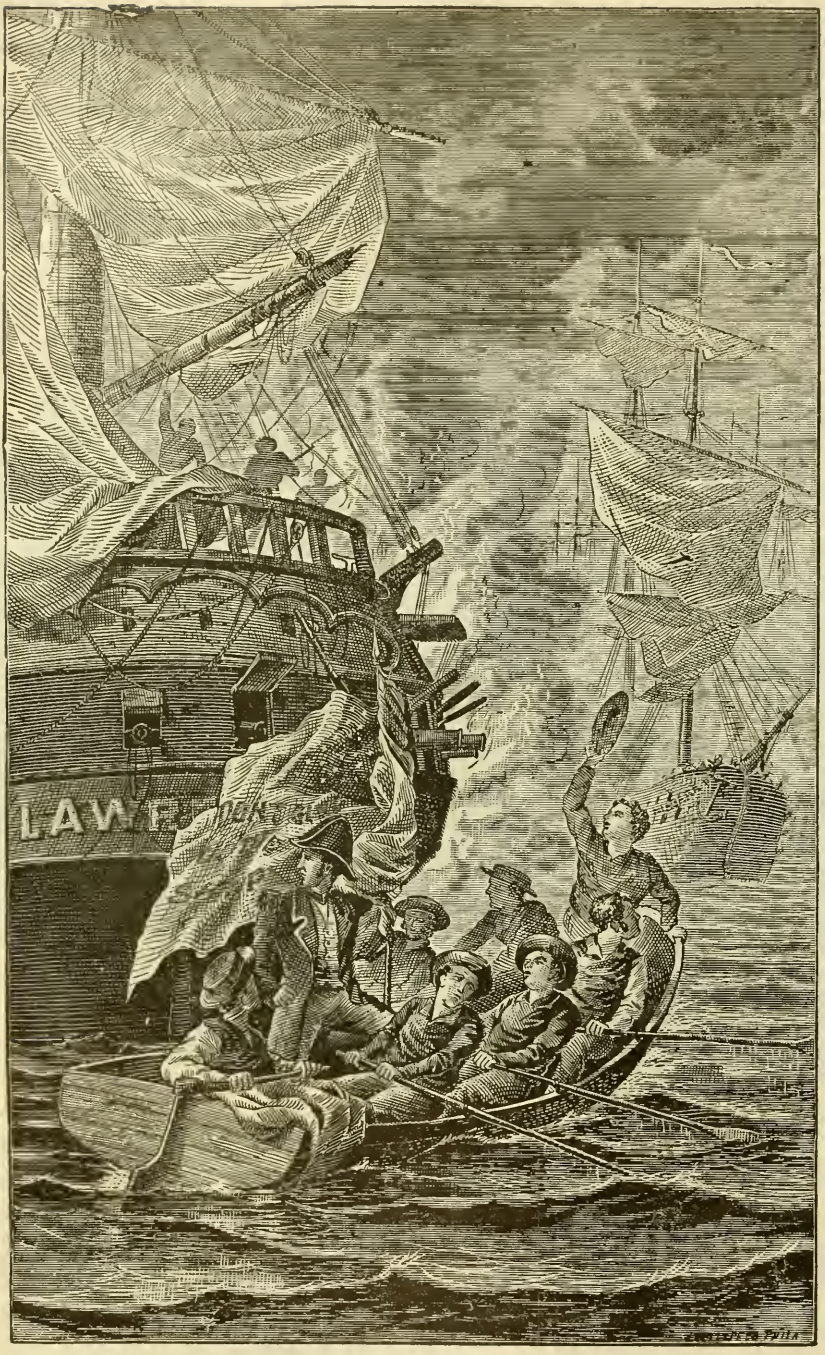
Battle of Lake Erie.

It was clear that nothing of importance could be accomplished in this quarter as long as the British held Lake Erie. Oliver Hazard Perry, a young lieutenant of the United States navy, volunteered to win back the lake from the enemy, who held it with a small squadron under Captain Barclay. By extraordinary exertions Perry built and equipped a fleet at Presque Isle, now Erie. It consisted of nine vessels of various sizes, from one which carried twenty-five guns down to one which carried one gun. Its total armament amounted to fifty-five guns. It was manned by a small force of sailors from the east, and by a large number of volunteers from General Harrison's army. As soon as his fleet was in proper condition Perry stood out into the lake to seek the enemy. The British squadron consisted of six vessels, carrying sixty-three guns. Each fleet carried about five hundred men.

The two squadrons soon encountered each other, and on the tenth of September a severe battle was fought between them at the western end of the lake. Perry at the opening of the fight displayed a flag from his vessel bearing the words of the brave Lawrence, "Don't give up the ship." It was greeted with cheers from the men. During the battle the American flag-ship, the "Lawrence," was disabled, and Perry passed in an open boat, under a heavy fire, to the "Niagara," the next largest ship, and tranferred his flag to her. The result was that the British fleet was defeated and forced to surrender. Perry announced his victory to General Harrison in the following characteristic message: "We have met the enemy and they are ours. Two ships, one brig, a a schooner, and a sloop."

COMMODORE PERRY.

This victory was of the highest importance to the Americans. It gave them the command of Lake Erie, and opened the way to



PERRY'S VICTORY ON LAKE ERIE.

Canada. Harrison hastened to profit by it, and advanced rapidly towards Detroit and Malden. Proctor abandoned those places and retreated with his own forces and Tecumseh and his Indians into Canada. At Detroit Harrison was joined by thirty-five hundred mounted Kentuckians, under the aged Governor Shelby, one of the heroes of King's Mountain, and Colonel Richard M. Johnson. He at once entered Canada in pursuit of Proctor, and by a forced march of sixty miles came up with him on the banks of the Thames, on the fifth of October. A short but desperate battle ensued, in which Tecumseh was killed and his Indians put to flight. The British were routed, and Proctor saved himself only by the speed of his horse.

By these successes the Americans won back Michigan Territory, and for the present gave peace and security to the northwestern frontier. The Kentuckians returned home, and Colonel Lewis Cass, who was soon after appointed governor o. Michigan, was left to garrison Detroit with his brigade. With fifteen

hundred regulars Harrison embarked on Lake Erie and sailed for Buffalo to assist in the invasion of Canada from that quarter

A small fleet of armed vessels was maintained in Lake Ontario by each of the combatants. The American fleet was commanded by Commodore Chauncey. In April General Dearborn embarked a force of seventeen hundred picked men in these vessels and sailed across Lake Ontario to attack York, now Toronto, the capital of Upper Canada. The Americans landed a short distance below the town, and advanced upon it. On the the twenty-seventh of April the place was carried by assault. The British fired the magazine of one of the works from which they were driven, and General Pike, the commander of the storming party, and one or two hundred of his troops were killed by the explosion. A large amount of military stores fell into the hands of the captors. They were transferred to Sackett's Harbor.

As it was not part of the plan of General Dearborn to hold York, the place was evacuated. Just before the withdrawal of the Americans a small building, known as the Parliament House, was burned. The British attributed this act to the Americans, who disclaimed it. The American officers believed that the house was set on fire by the disaffected Canadians, who had threatened to burn it. The burning of this building was made by the British the pretext for the destruction of the capitol and other public buildings at Washington, the next year.

BATTLE OF THE THAMES—DEATH OF TECUMSEH.

From York General Dearborn sailed to the Niagara to attack Fort George. The commander of this work, on the approach of the Americans, blew up his magazines and retreated to Burlington Heights, near the

western end of the lake. Dearborn followed them in pursuit, but was attacked and driven back by the British on the night of the sixth of June. Two American generals, Winder and Chanler, were made prisoners in this engagement. Dearborn fell back in haste to Fort George.

In the meantime General Prevost, having learned of Dearborn's absence from Sackett's Harbor, attacked that place, on the twenty-ninth of May, with one thousand men. He was repulsed with such vigor by the garrison, under General Brown, that he retreated to his ships, leaving his wounded behind.

Failure of a Canadian Expedition.

Soon after this General Dearborn suffered another reverse at Fort George, and allowed a detachment of six hundred men of his army to be cut off by the British. In consequence of these failures General Dearborn was removed by the President, who appointed General Wilkinson, the commander of the troops at New Orleans, as his successor.

It was proposed that General Wilkinson should enter Canada with his troops and advance upon Montreal, and that General Hampton, commanding the forces on Lake Champlain, should join him on the St. Lawrence. Wilkinson and Hampton were not on friendly terms, and neither of them were possessed of sufficient patriotism to overlook their personal differences for the good of their country. Wilkinson advanced as far as the rapids of the St. Lawrence, and sent a body of troops, under General Brown, to cover the descent of the rapids by the army.

An engagement occurred at Chrysler's Farm, on the eleventh of November; the British were driven back; but the Americans lost more than three hundred men. Wilkinson now sent word to Hampton to move forward to his support, but the latter answered that he had abandoned the expedition, and was going into winter quarters. Under these circumstances Wilkinson fell back to French Mills, about nine miles from St. Regis, where he went into winter quarters. Hampton prepared to pass the winter at Plattsburg on Lake Champlain. Thus the expedition was ruined by the quarrels of its commanders.

British Depredations.

In December the Americans abandoned Fort George, and retreated across the Niagara river. Before doing so General McClure, the commanding officer, burned the village of Newark, in order to prevent the enemy from using it as quarters for their troops during the winter. There was no necessity and no excuse for the destruction of this village, and it was speedily avenged by the enemy. About the middle of December the British crossed the Niagara river, surprised Fort Niagara, and put the garrison to the sword. In retaliation for the burning of Newark they burned every town and house that could be reached on the American side of the river, including Lewistown, Youngstown, Manchester, Black Rock, and Buffalo.

The war was not confined to the northern frontier. In the spring of 1813 Tecumseh had visited the Creek tribes in the southwest and aroused their war spirit. In August seven hundred Creeks attacked and captured Fort Mims, on the west bank of the Alabama river, near the mouth of the Tombigbee. Between three and four hundred settlers, who had taken refuge in the fort, were massacred.

The south was soon aroused by the news of this massacre, and in a short while a force of seven thousand volunteers was marching into the Indian country in four divisions. One division, under General Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, moved southward from

Nashville; another from East Tennessee, under General Cocke; a third from Georgia, under General Floyd, and a fourth from Mississippi Territory. In addition to these forces the lower Creeks took up arms against their brethren, and the Cherokees and Choctaws joined the Americans. The principal villages of the hostile Creeks lay on and near the Coosa and Tallapoosa Rivers, and their hunting-grounds extended much farther north.

The Tennessee forces, under General Jackson, were the first to enter the Indian country, and a number of unimportant encounters occurred. On the third of November the Indians were defeated in a bloody battle at Tallasehatche, and on the eighth of the same month at Talladega. These were hard-won victories for the Americans, and terrible blows to the savages. On the twenty-ninth of November the Georgia volunteers, under General Floyd, attacked the Creek town of Autossee, and killed two hundred warriors.

The Creeks were badly armed, but their spirit was unbroken by their reverses. Early in the year 1814 they assumed the offensive, and on the twenty-second of January attacked General Jackson at Emucfau. Jackson succeeded in repulsing them, but in spite of his victory deemed it best to fall back to Fort Strother. On the twenty-fifth the Indians again attacked him and were again defeated. Soon after this Jackson, being largely reinforced, advanced into the Indian country with an army of four thousand Tennesseeans.

CAPTAIN (AFTERWARD SIR PHILIP) BROKE.

At the Horse-Shoe Bend of the Tallaposa the Creeks had their principal settlement, an intrenched camp, in which they had collected

their women and children, under the protection of one thousand warriors. They were attacked here on the twenty-seventh of March, 1814, by Jackson's army, and their camp was carried, after a desperate fight, in which six hundred warriors were killed and two hundred and fifty women and children were made prisoners. This terrible blow put an end to the resistance of the Creeks. They sought peace, and were compelled to purchase it by the surrender of more than two-thirds of their hunting-grounds.

Hot Naval Engagements.

The year 1813 was eventful and important in the naval history of the republic, and once more the navy sustained the spirits of the country, which had been cast down by the failure of the army. On the twenty-fifth of February the American sloop-of-war "Hornet," Captain Lawrence, captured the British brig "Peacock," off the mouth of Demerara River, after an action of fifteen minutes. The "Peacock" was so terribly cut up by her adversary's fire that she sank in a few minutes after she struck her flag. Captain Lawrence returned to the United States and was promoted to the command of the frigate "Chesapeake, which was lying in Boston harbor preparing for sea.

While there Lawrence was challenged by Captain Broke, of the British frigate "Shannon," which was cruising off Boston harbor. Although his ship was badly manned and his crew undisciplined, Lawrence accepted the challenge and put to sea on the first of June to meet the "Shannon." The action was begun about thirty miles east of Boston Light and lasted but fifteen minutes. The "Shannon" was in every way superior to the "Chesapeake," and the latter ship was forced to strike her flag, with a loss of one hundred and forty-six of her crew. Captain Lawrence was mortally wounded. As he was being carried below his last words were, "Don't give up the ship!"—words which have since become the watchword of the service of which he was one of the brightest ornaments.

Two Commanders Fall.

The rejoicings in England over the capture of the "Chesapeake" were very great. Although not gratifying to the Americans, yet the little navy of the Union gained new courage, for its splendid services had won the respect of the "mistress of the seas."

In the summer of 1813 the "United States," "Macedonian" and "Hornet," while attempting to get to sea from New York through Long Island sound, were driven into the harbor of New London, and blockaded there by a British squadron. In August the American sloop of war "Argus" was captured while cruising in the English channel by the "Pelican." In September the American brig "Enterprise," twelve guns, Captain Burrows, captured the British brig "Boxer," Captain Blythe, off the coast of Maine. Both commanders fell in the engagement, and were buried with equal honors.

During the summer of 1813 the British fleet of Sir George Cockburn entered the Chesapeake repeatedly and ravaged its shores. All the shipping that could be reached by the enemy was destroyed, and the towns of Frenchtown, Georgetown, Havre de Grace and Fredericktown were plundered and burned. An attack was made on Norfolk, but was repulsed with heavy loss. Cockburn then plundered the town of Hampton, and sailed to the southward. The barbarities committed by this fleet along the Chesapeake and its tributaries were horrible. Neither age nor sex were spared by the British sailors and marines, and women were ravished, and old men and little children murdered, with the knowledge

FIGHT BETWEEN THE "CHESAPEAKE" AND THE "SHANNON."

of the admiral, who made no effort to stop the outrages.

During the winter of 1813–14 a communication was received from the British government, stating that although Great Britain had declined the Russian mediation, she was willing to enter into direct negotiations with the United States, either at London or Gottenburg, in Sweden. The President at once accepted the English offer, and Henry Clay and Jonathan Russell were added to the commissioners already in Europe. Gottenburg was at first selected as the place of meeting, which was afterwards changed to Ghent.

Great Britain Ready for Peace

At this time the opposition to the war was very great in many parts of the Union. The New England States continued bitterly hostile to it, and the legislature of Massachusetts, in a remonstrance addressed to Congress, denounced the war as unreasonable, and urged the conclusion of a peace. Congress itself was more divided upon the support of the war than it had ever been. It contained many new men, some of them destined to play prominent parts in the future history of the country. Pre-eminent among those was Daniel Webster, of New Hampshire, who from the first took a high position as one of the most gifted men in Congress.

Hostilities were resumed by the Americans on the Niagara frontier with the beginning of the spring of 1814. Early in May General Brown, whose force had been increased to five thousand men, crossed the Niagara. Fort Erie surrendered to him without a blow on the third of July. On the fourth General Scott, with the advanced guard of the army, moved towards the British, who had taken position, under General Riall, at Chippewa, fifteen miles distant. Scott was joined by General Brown, with the rest of the army, on the night of the fourth, and the next day a severe engagement occurred, in which the British were defeated, with the loss of five hundred men. The loss of the Americans was three hundred.

Victory at Lundy's Lane.

After his defeat at Chippewa General Riall fell back to Burlington Heights, and the Americans advanced to Queenstown, but soon after withdrew to Chippewa. Being strongly reinforced by a body of troops, under General Drummond, Riall advanced from Burlington Heights to attack the Americans, followed by General Drummond's command; and at the same time General Brown, who had heard of Drummond's arrival, set out from Chippewa to attack the British. The advanced forces of the Americans were commanded by General Scott. The two armies unexpectedly met at Bridgewater, or Lundy's Lane, immediately opposite Niagara Falls, at sunset, on the twenty-fifth of July. The British occupied a strong position, and notwithstanding the lateness of the hour, Scott resolved to attack them. The main body of the Americans, under General Brown, soon arrived, and the battle became general. The British had posted a battery on a hill which commanded the field, and were doing great execution in the American ranks. It was captured by the regiment of Colonel James Miller, and General Drummond, who had arrived on the field and had taken command in place of General Riall, who had been wounded and captured by the Americans, advanced to recover it.

Drummond made three determined efforts to retake the battery, but was driven back each time. It was now midnight, and about eight hundred men had fallen on each side. The Americans had exhausted their ammunition and were dependent now upon the cartridges they obtained from the boxes of

the fallen British. Finding all their efforts vain the British sullenly withdrew and left the field to the Americans. The latter were so exhausted by their hard march of fifteen miles and five hours of constant fighting that they made no effort at pursuit, and soon withdrew from the hill to their camp. As they had no means of hauling off the captured guns they were obliged to leave them on the field. General's Brown and Scott were both wounded during the battle, as were nearly all of the field officers.

Repulse at Fort Erie.

The victory of Lundy's Lane was particularly gratifying to the Americans. It was won, not over Canadian militia, but over veteran troops who had served under Wellington in the wars with Napoleon. It broke the long series of defeats sustained by the Americans since the opening of the war, and showed what could be accomplished by American soldiers under competent and determined commanders and in anything like a fair fight.

General Browne withdrew to Fort Erie after the battle, and being disabled by his wounds, relinquished the command to General Gaines. General Drummond moved forward and on the fourth of August laid siege to Fort Erie. On the fifteenth he attempted to carry the fort by an assault at midnight, but was repulsed with a loss of one thousand men. In spite of this reverse he pressed the siege with vigor, and in the meantime General Brown recovered from his wounds and resumed the command of the fort. On the seventeenth of September the Americans made a sortie against the batteries of the Brittish, which were two miles in advance of their camp. By a sudden dash from the fort they stormed and carried the batteries, spiked the guns, set fire to the magazines, inflicted a loss of six hundred in killed and wounded upon the enemy, and retreated into the fort, carrying with them four hundred prisoners. The American loss in this brilliant sally was three hundred men. Drummond immediately raised the siege and retreated across the Chippewa.

Around Lake Champlain.

In October a reinforcement of four thousand men arrived from Lake Champlain under General Izard, who assumed the command of the American Army on the Niagara, He was one of the old-style commanders, and at once proceeded to neutralize the gallant achievements of Brown and Scott. He did nothing until November, when, fearing that Drummond would be reinforced, he blew up Fort Erie and retreated across the Niagara, leaving the entire Canadian shore in the possession of the British.

General Izard had succeeded General Hampton in command of the army on Lake Champlain. Upon his withdrawal to the Niagara, General Macomb took command of the troops that remained on Lake Champlain, and held Plattsburg with a force of about three thousand men. Hearing that General Prevost was advancing to attack him, Macomb called on the militia of New York and Vermont to come to his aid, and about three thousand of them joined him, bringing his force to six thousand men. General Prevost having been reinforced from England, advanced against Plattsburg with a force of twelve thousand veteran troops, for the purpose of invading the State of New York.

Upon the approach of this force Macomb fell back behind the Saranac, a deep and rapid stream which empties into the lake at Plattsburg, and the small American squadron, under Commodore Macdonough, was moored across the entrance of Plattsburg bay. This squadron carried eighty-six guns, and was

manned by eight hundred and fifty-six men. The British army was accompanied by a squadron superior in strength to that of the Americans, and upon which they depended for the control of Lake Champlain. It was commanded by Captain Downie, mounted ninety-five guns, was manned by one thousand men, and had plenty of ammunition.

SCENE OF THE BATTLE OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN.

Prevost arrived before Plattsburg on the seventh of September, and proceeded to erect batteries to cover his passage of the Saranac. On the eleventh of September he made a combined attack by land and water upon the American position. The British squadron advanced to force an entrance into Plattsburg bay, and the British army at the same time attempted to force a passage of the Saranac. As the enemy's fleet advanced, Macdonough called the crew of his flag-ship around him, and kneeling on the quarter-deck of his vessel, prayed God to crown the American arms with victory that day.

After a severe engagement of two hours and a quarter, the British fleet was defeated and forced to surrender, with the exception of a few gunboats, which escaped. While this battle was going on, Prevost tried repeatedly to cross the Saranac, but was each time driven back with heavy loss. During the night the British army retreated in disorder, abandoning their sick and wounded and a large quantity of military stores, having lost twenty-five hundred men in the engagement.

The country had ample cause to regret the weakness of its navy during this war. The exploits of those vessels which had managed to get to sea had shown what could be accomplished by this branch of the public service, and our deficiency in this respect enabled the enemy to blockade the ports of the Union, and to use the Chesapeake bay with as much freedom as if it were one of their own harbors. In the summer of 1814 a fleet of sixty British ships under Admirals Cockburn and Cochrane, having on board a land-force of five thousand men under General Ross, assembled in the Chesapeake.

GEN HARRISON AND TECUMSEH.

DECATUR'S CONFLICT WITH THE ALGERINE AT TRIPOLI.

Admiral Cochrane endeavored to induce the slaves of Virginia and Maryland to desert their masters, and offered them free transportation to the West Indies and Canada. As it was not known at what point General Ross would land his troops, General Winder of Maryland was ordered to collect a force of fifteen thousand militia from the neighboring States. He proposed to occupy a central position from which he could cover Washington City, Annapolis, and Baltimore, and was anxious to call out the militia at once; but General Armstrong, the secretary of war, decided that it would be time enough to call out the militia when the British had revealed their designs more plainly. He did not believe the British had any idea of advancing upon Washington, and thought Baltimore could defend itself. Mr. Madison submitted to the decision of the secretary of war, and the national capital was left defenceless.

Attack on Washington.

In the meantime, the British commanders, learning the exposed condition of the city of Washington, determined to attack it. They divided their fleet for this purpose, one portion ascending the Potomac, and another the Patuxent. The latter division conveyed the troops of General Ross, and landed them at Benedict, on the Patuxent, about fifty miles from Washington. General Ross at once set out for Washington, advancing slowly and meeting with no resistance. As he had no horses, his troops were obliged to drag their three or four cannon by hand, and the British made but about ten miles a day. A few determined troops might have driven them back, and the roads might at least have been obstructed and the progress of the enemy impeded.

General Winder gathered a small force of militia, and took position at Bladensburg, on the east branch of the Potomac, about three miles from Washington. He was joined here by Commodore Barney with five hundred sailors and marines from the gunboat flotilla in the Patuxent, which Barney, unable to offer any resistance, had burned upon the approach of the British fleet. On the twenty-fourth of August the British reached Bladensburg, and attacked the force under General Winder. The militia fled at the first fire, but Barney and his sailors and marines stood their ground, and served their guns

COMMODORE MACDONOUGH.

with vigor until their position was turned on both flanks by the superior force of the enemy, when they retreated, leaving their guns and wounded in the hands of the victors. The so-called battle of Bladensburg was little more than a skirmish.

General Ross halted to rest his men, who were worn out with the heat, and towards sunset resumed his march, and entered Washington a little before dark. The government had abandoned the city some hours before, and had removed the greater part of its paper and archives, and such public property

as could be carried away, and only a few frightened citizens remained in the town. Admiral Cochrane had some time before announced that the British forces were ordered "to destroy and lay waste all towns and districts of the United States found accessible to the attacks of British armaments," and the army of General Ross now proceeded to carry out these infamous instructions. They burned the capitol, and with it the library of Congress, the buildings occupied by the treasury and state departments, and plundered the President's mansion and set it on fire. A number of stores and private dwellings were also pillaged and set on fire. The navy yard, with all its contents and several vessels on the stocks, was entirely destroyed.

Capture of American Vessels.

The British afterwards attempted to excuse their shameful conduct in Washington by alleging that it was in retaliation for the burning of the parliament house at York in Canada, an act which had been disclaimed by the Americans, and which the British had not been able to prove was their work. General Ross occupied Washington during the night of the twenty-fourth, and until dark on the twenty-fifth. Then, fearing lest the Americans would assemble in such force as to intercept him, he retreated stealthily from Washington on the night of the twenty-fifth, and on the twenty-ninth reached Benedict and re-embarked his troops. The English vessels sent up the Potomac succeeded in passing Fort Washington, which made little or no effort to stop them, and on the twenth-eighth anchored off Alexandria. Twenty-one vessels were captured, and the town saved itself from bombardment by paying a ransom of sixteen thousand barrels of flour and one thousand hogsheads of tobacco.

After resting his men, General Ross ascended the Chesapeake to the Patapsco, for the purpose of attacking Baltimore, which was defended by Fort McHenry at the mouth of the harbor, and a force of Maryland militia and some volunteers from Pennsylvania. A force of eight thousand men was landed at the mouth of the Patapsco, under General Ross, and on the twelfth of September advanced towards the city, while the fleet ascended the river to capture Fort McHenry and force its way into the harbor. A small party of Americans contested the advance of the British army, and a skirmish ensued in which General Ross was killed.

Gallant Defence of Fort McHenry.

A sharp encounter followed, each side losing about two hundred and fifty men. The American militia retired in good order, and on the morning of the thirteenth the British resumed their march towards Baltimore. The Americans were discovered in considerable force, occupying a line of intrenchments defended by artillery, and commanded by General Samuel Smith, an officer of the revolution. The British commander now deemed it best to await the result of the engagement between the fleet and Fort McHenry, which was in progress at the time. The British fleet maintained a heavy fire upon the fort, which replied with vigor, and soon made it apparent to the enemy that they could not silence it or pass it. The attack on the fort proving a failure, the British withdrew to North Point on the night of the thirteenth and reëmbarked on their ships.

During this cannonade Francis S. Key, of Baltimore, who had visited the British fleet to obtain the release of certain prisoners, and who was detained by the admiral during the bombardment, wrote the famous song of "The Star-Spangled Banner," which has

since become the national song of America.

The Chesapeake was not the only part of the coast that suffered from the ravages of the British. The shores of Maine were ravaged with great barbarity. Stonington, Connecticut, was subjected to a four days' bombardment by a British fleet, but the militia repulsed every attempt of the enemy to land. The foreign commerce of the country was completely destroyed. The superior naval strength of the British enabled them to blockade the Atlantic ports so thoroughly that the government ordered the lights along the coasts to be destroyed, as they only served as guides to British cruisers.

The opposition of the New England States to the war, which had caused them such severe loss, increased daily, and at length the legislature of Massachusetts recommended a convention of delegates from the seaboard States to devise amendments to the Constitution for the purpose of securing them from a recurrence of such evils as they were suffering from. The convention met at Hartford, Connecticut, on the fourteenth of December, 1814, and was composed of delegates from the New England States. The convention was bitterly opposed by the advocates of the war, who charged it with the intention to make a separate peace with Great Britain, which would have been a practical secession from the Union. The convention continued in session for twenty days, and adopted an address to the country very moderate in its tone. It proposed to amend the Constitution by making the representation in the lower House of Congress equal by basing it upon the free population only by forbidding embargo and non-intercourse laws; and by making the President ineligible for a second term. One of the strong opponents of the embargo was the eminent jurist and scholar, Joseph Story, whose influence was widely felt at this time The convention was for many years exposed to the bitterest denunciation of the great mass of the American people. One of the results of the opposition to the war was the complete destruction of the old Federalist party which had opposed the war.

A NEW ENGLAND FARM HOUSE.

Previous to the assembling of the convention the President, in hope of relieving the embarrassments occasioned by the opposition of New England to the war, advised the repeal of the embargo and non-intercourse acts, and the abandonment of the entire restrictive system. His recommendations were carried out by Congress.

In the meantime stirring events were transpiring in the south. At this time Florida was a possession of Spain, which

was supposed to be a neutral power. Great Britain had laid Spain under heavy obligations in her struggle against Napoleon, and the British had now no difficulty in entering Florida, and using it as a base of operations against the south. Their fleet entered Pensacola harbor and obtained possession of the forts. From this point they began to stir up the Creek Indians to make war on the Americans, and fitted out an expedition against Fort Bowyer, commanded by Major Lawrence, who defended the harbor of Mobile. On the fifteenth of September an attack was made upon this fort, and was repulsed with the loss to the enemy of a vessel and a number of men.

Jackson and New Orleans.

General Jackson, having collected a force of three thousand Tennesseeans, marched to Pensacola, entered the town on the seventh of November, demanded that the British should leave the place at once, and notified the Spanish Governor that he should hold him responsible for the occupation of the town or the forts by the British for purposes of hostility towards the United States. The British immediately blew up a fort which they had erected seven miles below the town and embarked in their ships.

Confident that New Orleans would be the next object of attack by the British, and knowing that the city was poorly prepared to resist, General Jackson at once sent General Coffee with the mounted Tennesseeans to that city, and followed with the rest of his troops as rapidly as possible. New Orleans was at this time a city of about twenty thousand inhabitants, less than one-half of whom were whites. The whites were principally of French birth or parentage, and cared little for the United States. They could not be relied upon to hold the city against the British. The defences were in a miserable state, and the people were demoralized and insubordinate. Jackson set to work with vigor. He proclaimed martial law, and put down the opposition to his measures for the safety of the city with a firm hand. He called for volunteers to defend the city, and urged the free men of color to come forward and enroll themselves. They responded in considerable numbers. The prisons were emptied, and the prisoners enrolled in the ranks of the army. The services of Lafitte, a noted smuggler chief of Barataria bay, and

of his band, were accepted. The British had endeavored to secure the aid of this band as pilots, as they knew the coast thoroughly, but Lafitte and his men had refused to hold any communication with them.

While Jackson was thus engaged, the British fleet arrived on the coast of Louisiana, and cast anchor off the mouth of Lake Borgne, the shortest passage by water to New Orleans. It had on board a force of twelve thousand veteran troops, just released from the wars against Napoleon, and four thousand marines and sailors. The British army was commanded by Sir Edward Pakenham, the brother-in-law of the Duke of Wellington, and an officer of tried ability, and under him were Generals Gibbs, Keene, and Lambert, veterans of the peninsular war.

The Americans had a small flotilla in Lake Borgne, and by extraordinary exertions, Jackson managed to collect a force of five thousand troops, only one thousand of whom were regulars. On the fourteenth of December the British sent their boats into Lake Borgne, and after a severe engagement captured the American flotilla, and opened the way to the city. On the twenty-second of December the British landed twenty-four hundred men under General Keene, who advanced to a point on the bank of the Mississippi, about nine miles below New Orleans. Jackson attacked this party on the night of the twenty-third with the regulars and Coffee's Tennesseeans dismounted, and drove them to take shelter behind a levee. The success of the Americans in this engagement greatly encouraged them to hope for a similar issue to the final conflict.

THE PLAIN OF CHALMETTE—SCENE OF THE BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

The next day Jackson took position on solid ground behind a broad and deep trench that extended across the plain of Chalmette from the Mississippi to an impassable swamp, and covered his position with a line of intrenchments. The British, believing Jackson's force to be much stronger than it really was, made no attempt to interfere with him for several days, and

he employed this delay in strengthening his line with bales of cotton. The British on the twenty-eighth of December opened a heavy cannonade upon the American line. Jackson replied with energy with his five pieces of artillery, and the firing was continued without accomplishing anything definite for several hours. On the first of January, 1815, they attempted a second cannonade, but the American guns soon silenced their fire. On the fourth of January a body of twenty-two hundred Kentucky riflemen, who had descended the Mississippi to his assistance, reached Jackson's camp. Only one-half of them were armed. Jackson could not supply the remainder with arms, but set them to work to construct a second line of intrenchments in the rear of his first.

Brilliant American Victory.

Having finished their preparations, the British erected a battery of six eighteen-pounders on the night of the seventh of January, and on the morning of the eighth advanced to carry the American line by storm. Their centre was led by General Pakenham in person, and other columns under Generals Gibbs and Keene moved against the right and left wings of the Americans. The open space over which the enemy were obliged to pass was nearly a mile in width, and was completely commanded by Jackson's guns. The British advanced in splendid style, and were soon within range of the American artillery, which opened on them with terrible effect. They never wavered, but closing up their ranks firmly pressed on. As they came within musket shot the Kentucky and Tennessee riflemen opened a fatal fire upon them which literally mowed them down They wavered and broke. General Pakenham attempted to rally them, and was shot down. Generals Gibbs and Keene were wounded while engaged in the same attempt, the latter mortally. The command devolved upon General Lambert, who made two more attempts to carry the line by storm. Each time the fatal fire of the American riflemen drove back the tried veterans of Wellington's campaigns, and at last they broke and fled in confusion. General Lambert continued the retreat to the shore of the gulf, where the British fleet lay, and about a fortnight later embarked his troops and withdrew.

Close of the War.

The American loss in the battle of New Orleans was seven killed and six wounded. The British lost two thousand in killed and wounded.

The victory was of the highest importance. It saved not only New Orleans but the mouth of the Mississippi from British control. Had the army of General Pakenham been successful, there is good reason to believe that England would have refused to relinquish the Mississippi, and the war would have gone on, or peace would have been made with the mouth of the great river under the control of England. The victory closed the war, and was won as we shall see three weeks after the treaty of peace was signed.

At sea the war was carried on by the few American cruisers that managed to elude the blockade of our coast. The frigate "Essex," Commodore Porter, went to sea in 1813, and made a number of captures in the Atlantic. Learning that the British whalers, which had been armed for the purpose of capturing American vessels, engaged in the same trade, were doing considerable damage in the Pacific, Commodore Porter sailed around Cape Horn and entered that ocean. He captured twelve armed British whalers in the course of a few months, and then learning that the British frigate

PAKENHAM LEADING THE ATTACK OF NEW ORLEANS

"Phœbe" had been sent in pursuit of him, Porter sailed to Valparaiso to look for her. While he lay there the "Phœbe," accompanied by the English sloop of war "Cherub," arrived off the harbor.

The "Phœbe" was herself a full match for the "Essex," but Porter resolved to fight both vessels. As he was leaving the harbor a sudden squall carried away his maintopmast, and left him at the mercy of his enemies, which at once attacked him. His defence was one of the most gallant and

COMMODORE DECATUR.

desperate in history, but he was forced to surrender, but not until he had lost fifty-eight of his crew killed, and sixty-six wounded.

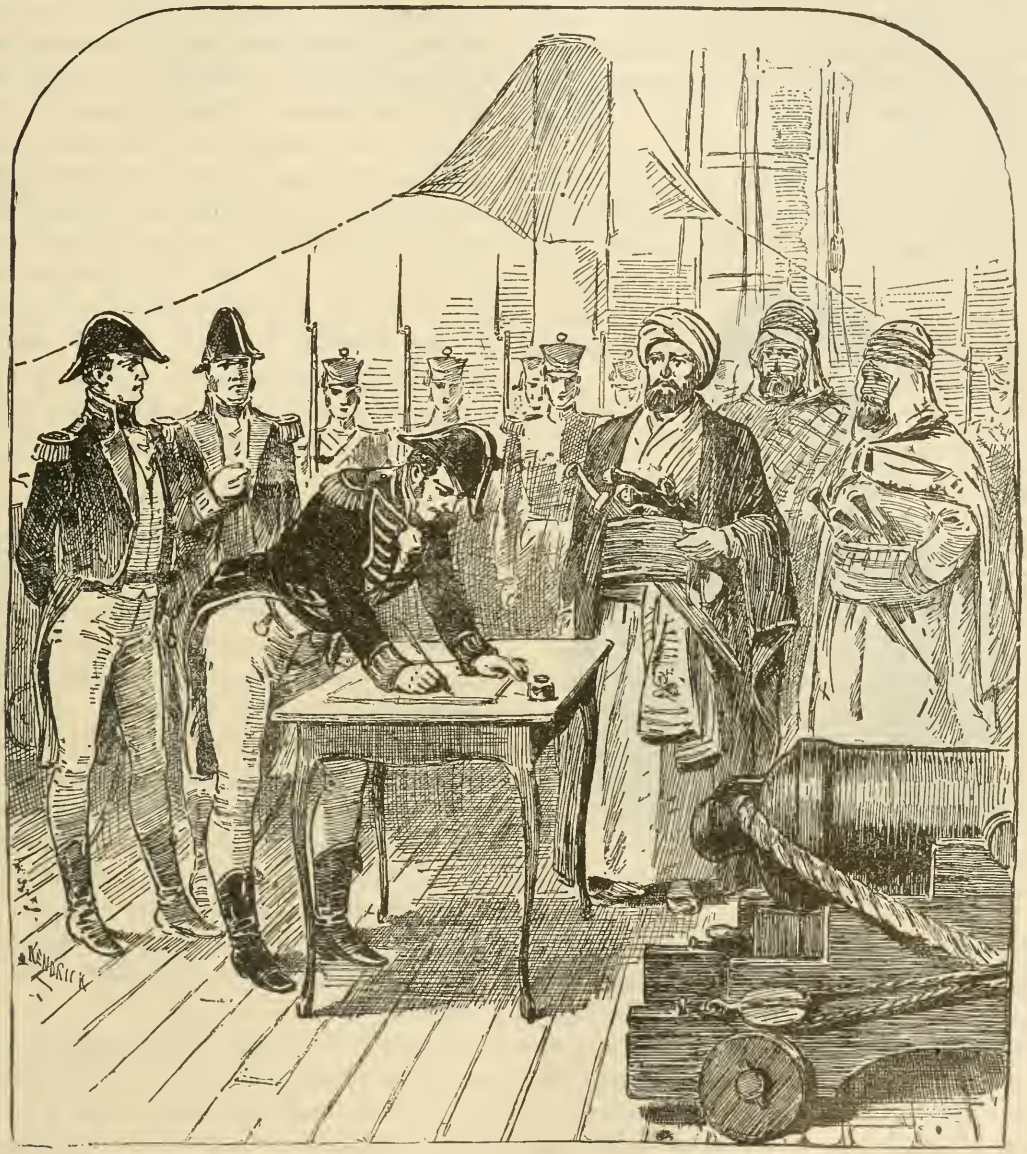
In January, 1815, the frigate "President," Commodore Decatur, managed to elude the blockade of New York, and get to sea. She was chased by a British squadron of five vessels, and a running fight ensued. Being entirely disabled, the "President" was forced to surrender.

In February, 1815, while cruising off the port of Lisbon, one fine moonlight night, the "Constitution," Captain Stewart, encountered two British sloops of war, the "Cyane," 24, and the "Levant," 18, and captured both of them after a short engagement. These vessels were captured after peace was signed, and were restored to the British. On the twenty-third of March, the "Hornet," Captain Biddle, captured the British brig "Penguin" of the Cape of Good Hope. The "Penguin" was so much injured that Biddle was forced to destroy her. On the thirtieth of June the "Peacock," Captain Warrington, ignorant of the close of the war, captured the "Nautilus" in the East Indies. The latter vessel was restored to the British. Thus the war, which opened so gloomily for the Americans, closed with a series of brilliant successes for them.

In the meantime negotiations for peace had been conducted between the American and British commissioners at Ghent, in Belgium. The American commissioners had been instructed to demand the settlement of the impressment question, and at the same time to give assurance that upon the relinquishment of that claim by England Congress would enact a law forbidding the enlistment of English sailors in either the navy or merchant service of the United States. On the fourteenth of December, 1814, the labors of the commissioners were brought to a close, and a treaty of peace between the United States and Great Britain was signed.

The treaty provided that all places captured by either party during the war should be restored to their rightful possessors.

Arrangements were made for determining the northwest boundary of the United States, and for settling matters of minor importance. The treaty was silent on the subject of impressments, the cause of the war. Nevertheless Great Britain ceased to exercise her claim to this right as regarded the United States, and has not since attempted to revive it, so that the object of the war, the protection of American sailors from impressment by England, was attained after all. The treaty was unanimously ratified by the Senate, and on the eighteenth of February peace was proclaimed by the President. A few days later the President recommended to Congress the passage of a law forbidding



DECATUR AND THE DEY OF ALGIERS.

the enlistment of foreign seamen in American vessels.

The proclamation of peace was hailed with delight in all parts of the country, especially in the Atlantic cities which had suffered heavily by the war, and the national rejoicings were intensified by the news which arrived a few days later of the brilliant victory of New Orleans.

Soon after the conclusion of peace with Great Britain, the United States were called upon to punish the insolence of the dey

WILLIAM C. C. CLAIBORNE.

of Algiers. That ruler, thinking that the United States was too much crippled by their recent conflict with Great Britain to punish his insolence, suddenly made war upon them. He threatened to reduce Mr. Lear, the American consul, to slavery, and compelled him to purchase his liberty and that of his family by the payment of a large ransom. Several American merchantmen were captured by the Algerine pirates, and their crews reduced to slavery. The excuse offered by the dey for these outrages was that the presents of the American government were not satisfactory.

The government of the United States determined to compel the Barbary powers to make a definite settlement of the questions at issue between them and this country, and in May, 1815, Commodore Decatur was despatched to the Mediterranean with a fleet of ten vessels, three of which were frigates. He was ordered to compel the dey to make satisfaction for his past outrages, and to give a guarantee for his future good conduct. On the voyage out Decatur fell in with the largest frigate in the Algerine service, near Gibraltar, on the seventeenth of June, and captured her after a fight of thirty minutes. On the nineteenth another Algerine cruiser was taken.

Decatur at Tunis and Tripoli.

The fleet then proceeded to Algiers, but upon its arrival found the dey in a very humble frame of mind. The loss of his two best ships, and the determined aspect of the Americans, terrified him into submission, and he humbly sued for peace. He was required to come on board of Decatur's flagship, and there sign a humiliating treaty with the United States, by which he bound himself to indemnify the Americans from whom he had extorted ransoms, to surrender all his prisoners unconditionally, to renounce all claim to tribute from the American government, and to cease from molesting American vessels in future.

The difficulty with Algiers having been satisfactorily settled, Decatur sailed to Tunis and Tripoli, and demanded of the government of each of those countries indemnity for some American vessels which had been captured by the British in their harbors with their connivance. The demand was coupled in each case with a threat of bombardment, and was complied with.

About the middle of the summer Commodore Bainbridge joined Decatur with the "Independence," seventy-four, the "Congress," and several other vessels, but the energetic Decatur had settled all difficulties, and had so humbled the Barbary powers that they never again renewed their aggressions upon American commerce. The American fleet then visited the principal ports of the Mediterranean. The brilliant record made by the navy during the war with England secured it a flattering reception everywhere.

Indian Tribes at Peace.

In the autumn of 1815 the Indian tribes, deprived of the support of Great Britain, made peace with each other and with the United States. The northwestern frontier was thus secured against the further hostility of the savages.

The finances of the country were in a wretched condition at the close of the war. All the banks but those of New England had suspended specie payments, and none were now in a condition to return to a specie basis. The public debt was over $100,000,000 and there was a general lack of confidence throughout the country. Mr. A. J. Dallas, the secretary of the treasury, in view of the general distress, proposed to abolish a number of the internal taxes which had been levied for the support of the war. In their place he advised the imposition upon imports from foreign countries of duties sufficiently high not only to afford a revenue, but also to protect the manufactures which had sprung up during the war, and which were threatened with ruin by the competition of European goods. The President, in his annual message, warmly recommended such a course. Another important measure was also enacted. The charter of the first Bank of the United States expired in 1811. Efforts had been made, without success, to obtain its renewal, and Mr. Madison in January, 1814 had vetoed a bill for this purpose which had passed both Houses of Congress. In the spring of 1816 a bill was passed by Congress chartering a new Bank of the United States for twenty years, with a capital of $35,000,000, and received the President's signature on the tenth of April. It was located in Philadelphia, but had branches in other States. It gave the people a uniform currency, good in all parts of the country, and redeemable on demand in gold and silver, and thus did much to remedy the financial difficulties of the times. Somewhat later a law was passed requiring that all sums of money due the United States should be paid in gold or silver coin, "in treasury notes, in notes of the Bank of the United States, or in notes of banks payable and paid on demand in specie."

On the nineteenth of April, 1816, the Territory of Indiana was admitted into the Union as a State, making the nineteenth member of the Confederacy. William C. C. Claiborne, a distinguished lawyer and statesman and former governor of the Territory, was one of the senators-elect of the new State, and became a famous member of that body.

The Presidential election took place in the fall of 1816. Mr. Madison having declined to be a candidate for a third term, the Democratic party nominated James Monroe, of Virginia, for President, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, for Vice-President, and elected them by large majorities over the Federal candidates, who were: For President, Rufus King, of New York; for Vice-President, John Howard, of Maryland.

CHAPTER XXXIV

The Administrations of James Monroe and John Quincy Adams

Inauguration of Mr. Monroe—His Tour through the Eastern States—Admission of Mississippi into the Union—Trouble with the Indians—General Jackson's Vigorous Measures against the Spaniards in Florida—Purchase of Florida by the United States—Illinois becomes a State—The First Steamship—Maine admitted into the Union—The Slavery Question—The Missouri Compromise—Admission of Missouri as a State—The Fourth Census—Re-election of Mr Monroe—The Tariff—Protective Policy of the Government—Recognition of the Spanish Republics—The Monroe Doctrine—Visit of Lafayette to the United States—Retirement of Mr. Monroe—John Quincy Adams elected President—His Inauguration—Rapid Improvement of the Country—Increase of Wealth and Prosperity—Internal Improvements—The Creek Lands in Georgia Ceded to the United States—Death of Thomas Jefferson and John Adams—The Anti-Masons—The Tariff of 1828—Andrew Jackson elected President of the United States.

JAMES MONROE was inaugurated President of the United States, at Washington, on the fourth of March, 1817. He had served during the revolution in the army of the United States, and had entered Congress soon after the formation of the government as a representative from Virginia, and had won great credit by his services in that body. He had been secretary of state during the eight years of Mr. Madison's administration, and had greatly increased his fame by his discharge of the difficult and delicate duties of this position. He was a man of amiable and conciliatory character, and was popular with both parties.

In his inaugural address he declared his intention to administer the government in accordance with the principles of Washington, and the sentiments of this document were warmly applauded throughout the country by Federalists as well as Democrats. The administration of Mr. Monroe covered a period generally known in our political history as "the era of good feeling." Party lines were almost blotted out, and the people of the country were more united than at any previous or subsequent period in the support of national measures.

A few months after his inauguration President Monroe made a tour through the Eastern States. He was received with marked attention everywhere, and the Federalist city of Boston entertained him with the cordial hospitality which is one of her characteristics.

On the tenth of December, 1817, the western portion of the Territory of Mississippi was admitted into the Union as the State of Mississippi. The eastern portion of the former Territory became the Territory of Alabama, for which a government was provided by Congress.

Towards the close of the year 1817 the Seminole Indians, whose lands lay within the Spanish province of Florida, began to commit depredations along the borders of Georgia and Alabama Territory. They were joined by the Creeks, and their operations soon became so important as to demand the immediate action of the federal government. General Gaines, commanding the federal troops in Alabama, attempted to check the Indians, but his forces were inadequate to the

task, and he was compelled to ask assistance of the government. General Jackson, commanding the southern department, was ordered to call out the militia and take the field against the Indians. He collected a force of one thousand mounted Tennesseeans, and in March, 1818, invaded the Indian country, and in a few weeks laid it waste, the villages and cornfields were burned, and the cattle captured or killed.

Being satisfied that the Spaniards in Florida had incited the Indians to make war on the United States, General Jackson, as soon as he had punished the Indians, marched into Florida and seized St. Marks, on Appalachee bay, the only fortified town of the Spaniards in that part of Florida. An armed American vessel, cruising off the Florida coast, hoisted the British colors, and two prominent hostile Creek chiefs were decoyed on board, and were summarily hanged by order of Jackson.

In one of his forays against the Indians Jackson captured two British traders, Robert C. Ambrister, or Ambuster, and Alexander Arbuthnot. They were accused of aiding the Indians, were tried and found guilty by a court-martial, and were promptly hanged. The Spanish governor indignantly protested against the invasion of Florida, but Jackson, unmoved by this protest, advanced in May to Pensacola, the seat of the Spanish provincial government, which place was immediately surrendered to him. The Spanish governor fled to Fort Barrancas, below the town. Jackson attacked the fort and compelled it to surrender after a brief resistance, whereupon the governor continued his flight to Havana. The invasion of Florida by Jackson drew forth an indignant protest from the Spanish government, but his conduct was sustained by a decisive majority in both

JAMES MONROE.

Houses of Congress. The Spanish government did not press the matter, as negotiations were soon entered upon which brought about an amicable settlement of the difficulty.

The Spanish kingdom was indebted to certain citizens of the United States in sums amounting in the aggregate to five million dollars. Spain instructed her minister at Washington to conclude a treaty with the United States ceding Florida to them as an equivalent for these claims. The treaty was arranged in 1819. Spain ceded to the United States all her claims to East and West Florida, and to the territory claimed by her on the Pacific coast north of forty-two degrees of north latitude, and the federal government assumed the Spanish debt to the citizens of this country. Two years later this treaty was ratified by Spain, and on the twenty-second of April, 1821, the President formally announced the acquisition of Florida by the United States.

Oregon and Illinois.

This purchase also included the territory in Oregon claimed by Spain, and embraced an area of 367,320 square miles. Florida was at once organized as a Territory, and General Jackson was appointed its first governor.

On the third of December, 1818, the Territory of Illinois was admitted into the Union as a State.

The year 1819 was marked by an event of great importance in the history of the world. Steam had been used for some time in the inland navigation of the Union, but it was not generally believed it could be applied to sea-going vessels. The steamship "Savannah," built in New York, but owned in the city from which she was named, made a successful voyage from New York to Savannah in the early part of 1819. In May of that year she sailed from Savannah for Liverpool, and reached that port in safety From Liverpool she subsequently made a voyage to St. Petersburg. She was the first steam vessel that ever crossed the Atlantic, and, wherever she went, was an object of the greatest interest. The question of steam navigation on the ocean was thus satisfactorily settled by America.

On the fourteenth of December, 1819, Alabama was admitted into the Union as a State, making the total number of States twenty-two.

North and South.

On the fifteenth of March, 1820, Maine, which had formed a part of Massachusetts, but had been ceded by that State to the general government, was admitted into the Union as a State. The object of the erection of this new State was to offset the growing power of the Southern States by the creation of a new member of the Union in New England. The number of the New England States was thus increased to six.

For some years past the question of African slavery in the States had been assuming an important and alarming position in the public mind. The States of the north and west had gotten rid of such negro slaves as they had originnlly possessed, and had forbidden their citizens to own or bring within their limits for purposes of labor any persons of this class. The Southern States, on the other hand, comprised a region in which slave labor was particularly profitable, and it was believed by the people of this region that the industry of many parts of the south could not be properly developed by white men, as the climate was more unsuited to them than the negroes. The production of cotton, rice, sugar, and tobacco depended on the labor of the negro, and in the States where those great staples were raised slavery was regarded as a necessity.

At the period we are now considering slavery existed in the States of Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North and South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Louisiana, Mississippi, Tennessee, and Kentucky. Being regarded by these States as necessary to their prosperity, they considered any and all plans for its removal as attacks upon their chief source of wealth.

In the non-slaveholding States the feeling that slavery was sinful had been gradually gaining ground, and there were many persons in the south who held the same views. Certain religious bodies in the country had distinctly expressed their belief that it was contrary to the teachings of Christianity to own slaves, and memorials had been presented to the legislatures of some of the States, and to the Congress of the United States, praying for the abolition of slavery

The law for the organization of the Northwest Territory forbade the admission of slavery into the States to be formed out of that Territory, and thus secured them for free labor. Though Congress did not hesitate to legislate upon the subject of slavery in this case, it steadily refused to comply with the demands of the petitions presented to it praying it to take measures for the abolition of slavery throughout the nation. The existence of slavery within the individual States was recognized and protected by the Constitution, and Congress held that it had no right to interfere with the domestic relations of those States in which slavery, thus recognized and protected, was established.

In February, 1819, the Territory of Missouri, which was formed out of a part of the Louisiana purchase, asked permission to form a constitution preparatory to being admitted into the Union as a State. When the bill for this purpose was presented to the House of Representatives on the thirteenth of February, Mr. Tallmadge, of New York, proposed to insert a clause providing "that the further introduction of slavery, or involuntary servitude, be prohibited, except for the punishment of crimes whereof the party shall have been duly convicted; and that all children born in said State, after the admis-

OLD WAY OF PICKING COTTON.

sion thereof into the Union, shall be free at the age of twenty-five years.

The announcement of this amendment produced a great sensation in the House, and throughout the country. It was believed by the advocates of slavery that the resolutions of the House of Representatives of 1790, in reply to the first petition presented to it for the abolition of slavery, had settled the question of the powers of the federal government respecting slavery. No effort had been made to revive the subject in the admission of Kentucky, Tennessee, Louisiana, Mississippi, or Alabama, in each of which States negro slavery existed. Many of the most determined opponents of slavery believed that, under the constitution and the Louisiana treaty with France, Congress had no right to adopt the proposed restriction upon the admission of Missouri as a State.

Free and Slave Labor.

Among these were Mr. Jefferson, then living in retirement at Monticello, and John Quincy Adams, the secretary of state in Mr. Monroe's cabinet. Both of these gentlemen were sincerely desirous of the abolition of slavery. Mr. Jefferson believed that the States alone had power to legislate upon the subject within their respective limits. The opponents of slavery, on the other hand, contended that while Congress had no power to interfere with slavery in the thirteen original States, it had full power to legislate concerning it in the Territories, which were the common property of the States north and south. The advocates of slavery contended that, as the treaty under which the Louisiana purchase was made contained a pledge to the inhabitants of that Territory that they should enjoy "all the privileges of citizens of the United States," such a restriction as that proposed by Mr. Tallmadge would be a violation of this pledge.

They claimed also that as slaves were property, and the Territories the common possession of the States, the citizens of the slaveholding States had the right to carry their property into the Territories; and that the probibition of slavery in the Territories would be to deprive the south of her share in their enjoyment. The anti-slavery advocates replied to this, that slave and free labor could not coexist on the same soil, and that to allow slavery in the Territories would be to drive free labor out of them; and that it would be a great wrong to allow the introduction of a few hundred thousand slaves at the cost of driving millions of free men from the Territories.

The National Controversy.

The discussion of this question produced intense feeling between the Northern and Southern States, and the sectional division of the country was drawn too deep to be effaced while the cause of it remained. It was very clear to thinking men that the feelings aroused by this controversy could not be quieted until the institution of slavery should be abolished throughout the country, or should be introduced into every new State formed out of the Territories remaining to the republic. The excitement deepened daily, and at one time became so intense as to threaten the existence of the Union. Good men of all parties gave their best efforts to the task of effecting a settlement of the difficulty, but amid the storm of passion which was aroused by the debate in Congress it was hard to accomplish anything.

The bill allowing the people of Missouri to form a State constitution passed the House of Representatives with Mr. Tallmadge's amendment by a small majority. It was defeated in the Senate. When Congress met again in December, 1819, the debate was renewed upon the Missouri

question. The House again passed the bill forbidding the existence of slavery in Missouri. The Senate struck out Mr. Tallmadge's amendment, and added to the House bill, as a substitute for it, a proviso offered by Mr. Thomas, of Illinois, that slavery should not exist in any part of the Louisiana Territory north of thirty-six degrees and thirty minutes north latitude, and west of the proposed State of Missouri, or in any State to be formed out of this Territory. The House refused to accept the Senate's amendment, and in order to adjust their differences a committee of conference was appointed by the two Houses.

Maine, whose admission we have related, was an applicant for admission into the Union at this time, and it was contended by the south that it was unjust to admit her without any restriction as to her domestic institutions, and yet to impose upon Missouri a restriction which would deprive a large part of her population of their property, and close the State against emigration from the south. The result of the committee on conference was that after long and exciting debates the amendment offered by Mr. Thomas, of Illinois, was accepted. Maine was admitted as a free State. It was enacted by Congress that slavery should never exist north of the line of thirty-six degrees thirty minutes north latitude; and that Missouri should be admitted into the Union as a slave State upon the adoption of a constitution by her people.

This was regarded as an equitable settlement of the difficulty, and the measure is known as the Missouri Compromise. The act for the admission of Maine received the President's approval on the third of March, 1820, and the State was admitted into the Union under it on the fifteenth of March. The separate act in relation to Missouri was approved by the President on the eighth of March, 1820. Its title shows its object. It was "An act to authorize the people of Missouri Territory to form a constitution and State government, and for the admission of such State into the Union on an equal footing with the original States, and to prohibit slavery in certain Territories." As we shall see, the State of Missouri was not admitted into the Union under the famous Missouri Compromise.

HENRY CLAY.

When Congress met in December, 1820, the constitution adopted by Missouri was presented to that body. It contained a clause which prevented free people of color from settling in the State. "This clause," says Colonel Benton, "was adopted for the sake of peace—for the sake of internal tranquility—and to prevent the agitation of the slave question."* It was objected to in Congress

* *Benton's Thirty Years' View*, vol. i., p. 8.

by the party that had previously opposed the admission of Missouri as a slave State. This party argued that the constitution required that the citizens of one State should be entitled to the privileges of citizens in the other States; and that as some of the States recognized free people of color as citizens, this provision of the Missouri constitution was in open hostility to the constitution of the United States, since it deprived the citizens of some of the States of their rights.

The friends of the compromise measure were astounded, as they had supposed that it had removed all obstacles to the admission of Missouri, which had already exercised the privileges of a State in electing senators and representatives to Congress, and in taking part in the presidential election of 1820. The subject was reopened in Congress in all its bitterness, and the country again plunged into profound agitation.

The Struggle Renewed.

At this juncture Henry Clay exerted himself with great energy to bring about a settlement of the dispute. He induced the House to commit the matter to a committee of thirteen, of which he was made chairman. This committee advised the admission of Missouri upon the condition that the obnoxious clause in her constitution should be withdrawn and that her legislature should pass no law violative of the rights of citizens of other States. Mr. Clay supposed that as this recommendation amply met the objection to the admission of Missouri, it would remove the last obstacle to the accomplishment of that object. To his astonishment it was defeated by a vote of eighty for it and eighty-three against it.

The struggle now became more bitter than ever. The anti-slavery party, which had by this time obtained a definite existence, were determined that the right of the general government to control the slavery question should be acknowledged. The pro-slavery party were determined to resist the exercise of that claim. Threats were freely indulged to destroy the Union by the withdrawal of the States. Mr. Clay, undaunted by his failure, renewed his patriotic efforts to bring about a settlement of the dispute, and at length secured the passage of measures substantially the same as those advised by his first committee. The act of Congress for this purpose was approved by the President on the second of March, 1821. The Missouri legislature on the twenty-sixth of June expunged the obnoxious article from the constitution of the State, and on the tenth of August the President issued his proclamation admitting Missouri into the Union.*

The slavery question was quieted for a time by the admission of Missouri, but it was not settled. We shall encounter it again and again in the remaining chapters of this work.

In 1820 the fourth census of the United States placed the population of the republic at 9,638,191 souls.

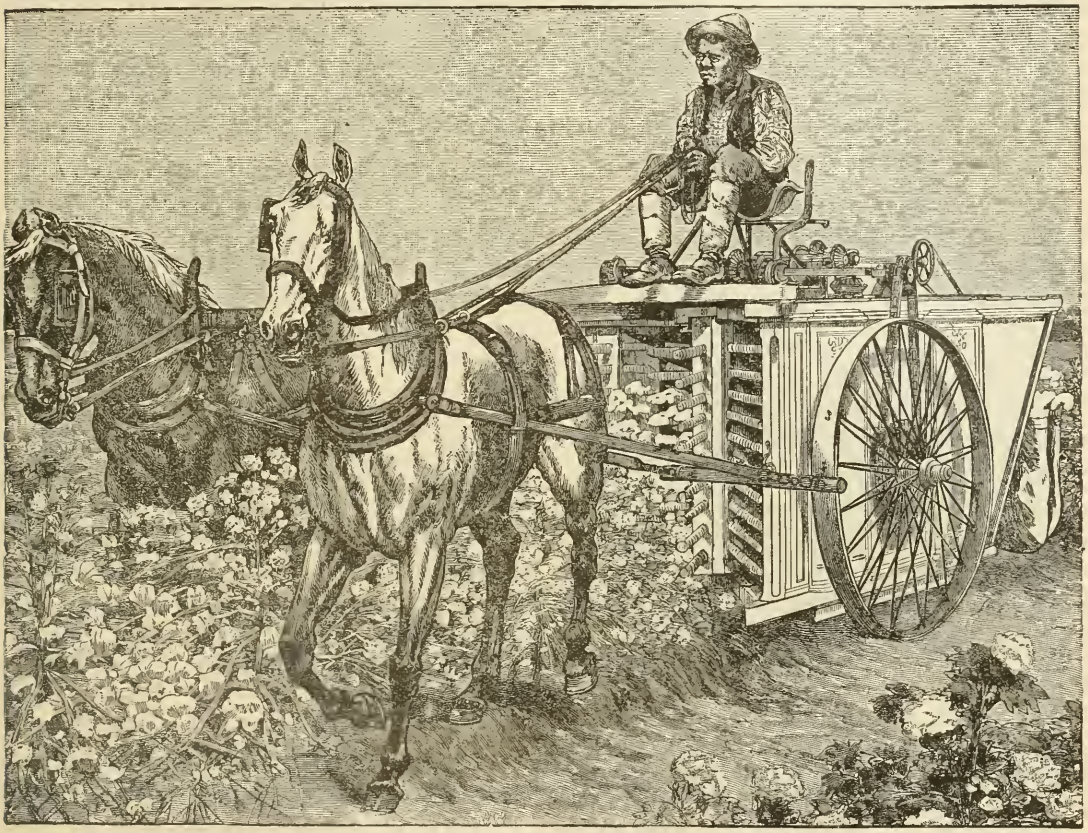
In the fall of 1820 Mr. Monroe and Governor Tompkins were re-elected President and Vice-President of the United States. Mr.

* "A general idea prevails very extensively that Missouri was admitted as a slave State in 1820, under an agreement with the Restrictionists, or Centralists, proposed by Mr. Clay, that she should be so admitted upon condition that negro slavery should be forever prohibited in the public domain north of 36 degrees 30 minutes north latitude. No greater error in any important historical event ever existed. The truth is, Mr. Clay was not the author of the territorial line of 36 degrees 30 minutes, incorporated in the act of 1820, nor was Missouri admitted under the provisions of that act. On the contrary, she was admitted on the tenth of August, 1821, by presidential proclamation, upon the 'Fundamental Conditions,' in substance, that the State government, in all its departments, should be subject to the constitution of the United States, as all the State governments were, and are."—*A Compendium of the History of the United States.* By Hon. Alexander H. Stephens, p. 329.

Monroe received at the polls a majority of the votes of every State in the Union, and every electoral vote but one, which was one in the college of New Hampshire, and was cast for John Quincy Adams. Mr. Monroe entered upon his second term on the fourth of March, 1821.

Next in importance to the slavery question was that of the tariff, or the imposition of a protective duty in favor of home manufactures. In his inaugural address the President had recommended the imposition of such a system of duties. During the war the non-intercourse laws of Congress, and the rigid blockade maintained by the British fleet, entirely cut the United States off from commercial intercourse with the rest of the world, and compelled the States to depend upon their own exertions for the supply of their wants. During this period numerous manufacturing enterprises had sprung up, especially in New England, where capital was idle and labor abundant.

At the close of the war the country was flooded with European goods, which were sold at reduced prices for the especial purpose of ruining American manufactures. In their weak and helpless condition the American enterprises could not endure this competition, and the tariff was proposed as the only means of saving them from ruin. The first measure of this kind was passed by Congress in 1816, and was opposed by the New England States, which were then largely



UNIQUE COTTON HARVESTER.

engaged in commerce, and was supported by the south. In 1820 the tariff was revised. The New England States, which had directed the chief efforts to manufactures since 1816, had felt the beneficial effects of protective duties, and now became the warm supporters of the tariff. The south being an agricultural section had found that its interests demanded free trade, had changed its position and resolutely opposed the tariff. In spite of the opposition to the measure, however, the duties were increased in the tariff of 1820.

Mexico and South America.

For some years past Mexico and the States of South America formerly held by Spain as provinces had been struggling to achieve their independence of the mother country. Henry Clay had exerted himself with enthusiasm to obtain from Congress a recognition of their independence, but such a step had been considered premature. In March, 1822, however, his efforts were crowned with success, and a bill was passed by Congress in accordance with the recommendation of the President, recognizing the independence of Mexico and the South American republics, and providing for the establishment of diplomatic relations with them.

The next year President Monroe declared in a message to Congress that, "as a principle, the American continents, by the free and independent position they have assumed and maintained, are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power." This claim that America belongs to republicanism, and is not to be the scene of European schemes for territorial aggrandizement, has since been known as the "Monroe doctrine," and been regarded as one of the cardinal points of the policy of the government of the United States.

The last year of Mr. Monroe's administration was marked by an advent of the deepest interest to the whole country. In 1824 the venerable Marquis de Lafayette came to the United States at the express invitation of Congress to visit the nation whose freedom he had helped to achieve. He reached New York on the thirteenth of August, and was received with enthusiasm. He travelled through all the States, and was everywhere received with demonstrations of respect and affection, and he was given abundant evidence in all parts of the country that the nation cherished with love and pride the memory of the generous stranger who came to its aid in its darkest hour of trial Returning to Washington during the session of Congress, Lafayette spent several weeks there. Congress, as a token of the gratitude of the nation for his services, voted him a a township of land and the sum of two hundred thousand dollars. The frigate "Brandywine," just finished, was appointed to convey him back to France, a delicate compliment, as the vessel was named after the stream on whose banks Lafayette fought his first battle and was wounded in the cause of American independence. At the time of his visit to the United States Lafayette was nearly seventy years old.

Election of John Quincy Adams.

In the fall of 1824 the Presidential election was held amid great political excitement. The "era of good feeling" was at an end, and party spirit ran high. There were four candidates in the field, Mr. Monroe having declined a third term: Andrew Jackson, John Quincy Adams, William H. Crawford and Henry Clay.

None of these received a popular majority and the election was thrown into the House of Representatives in Congress, and resulted in the choice of John Quincy Adams, of

Massachusetts, as President of the United States. John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, had been chosen Vice-President by the popular vote.

On the fourth of March, 1825, John Quincy Adams was inaugurated President of the United States. He was the son of John Adams, the second President of the republic, and was in his fifty-eighth year. He was a man of great natural ability, of strong personal character, and of unbending integrity. He had been carefully educated, and was one of the most learned men in the Union.

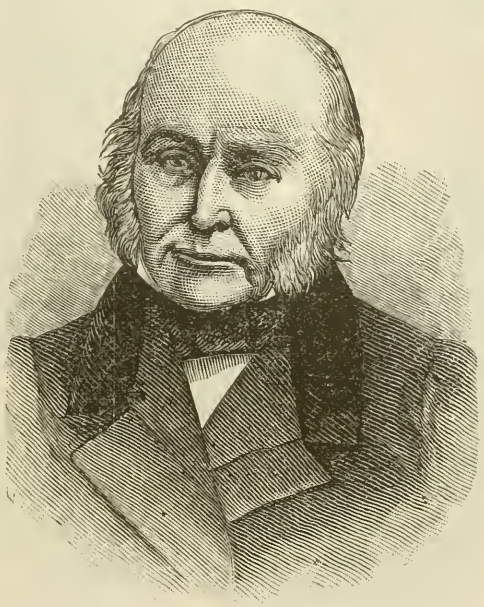
Apart from his general education he had received a special training in statesmanship. He had served as minister to the Netherlands, and in the same capacity at the courts of Portugal, Prussia, Russia and England, where he had maintained a high reputation. He had represented the State of Massachusetts in the Federal Senate, and had been secretary of state in the cabinet of Mr. Monroe during the last administration. He was therefore thoroughly qualified for the duties of the high office upon which he now entered.

"King Cotton."

He called to his cabinet men of marked ability, at the head of which was Henry Clay, who became secretary of state. The administration of Mr. Adams was one of remarkable prosperity. The country was growing wealthier by the rapid increase of its agriculture, manufactures and commerce, and abroad it commanded the respect of the world. Still party spirit raged with great violence during the whole of this period.

The invention of the cotton gin by Eli Whitney, in 1793, by which the seed was separated from the cotton, had so cheapened the cost of producing that great staple, that it had become the principal article of export from the United States, and a source of great and growing wealth to the whole country.

Several important undertakings were prosecuted with vigor, or were completed during Mr. Adams' term of office. The National Road, a splendidly constructed highway, built by the general government, from Cumberland, Maryland, across the mountains, was completed to Wheeling, on the Ohio, in 1820, and was carried beyond that stream during Mr. Adams' administration, the design being to extend it to the Mississippi. It furnished a broad and well-built thoroughfare between the seaboard and the west, and exerted a marked influence upon the internal trade of the country. The road from Cumberland to Wheeling cost $1,700,000.

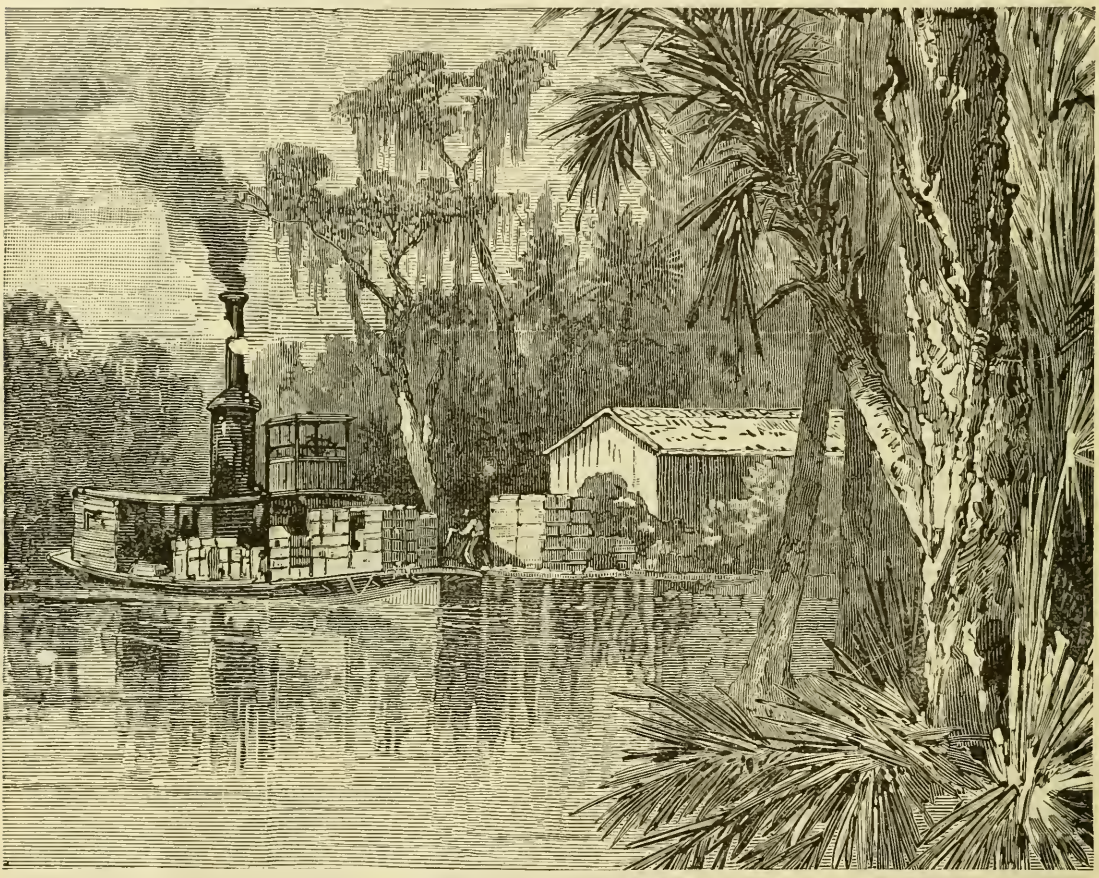


JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

The Erie canal, extending from Buffalo on Lake Erie to the Hudson at Albany, was projected by De Witt Clinton. The plan was at first pronounced impracticable, but Clinton succeeded in inducing the State of

New York to undertake the scheme, and in 1825 the great work was completed and the waters of the lakes and the Hudson were united. The completion of this canal secured to the city of New York the control of the western trade, and added to its wealth and importance in a marked degree.

Mauch Chunk railway, from the coal mines to the Lehigh river, in Pennsylvania, in 1827. These were merely local works, and of but little importance, except in so far as they helped to demonstrate to the public mind the possibility and the usefulness of such enterprises upon a larger scale.



STEAMBOAT LOADING WITH COTTON.

Steam had been for some years in use as the motive power in the navigation of the rivers of the Union, and it now began to be applied to purposes of land transportation. The first railroad in this country was a mere tramway, for the transportation of granite from the quarries at Quincy to the Neponsett river, in Massachusetts, and was constructed in the year 1826. This was followed by the

Charters for roads of more importance were soon obtained in several of the States. In 1828 work was begun on the Baltimore and Ohio railroad, and in 1829 on the South Carolina railroad, In the year 1827 there were three miles of railroad in operation in the United States. In 1875 the number of miles in operation is a little over seventy thousand.

For some time previous to the entrance of Mr. Adams upon office, Georgia had been involved in a dispute with the general government and with the Creek Indians concerning the lands of the latter, which the United States had agreed to purchase for the benefit of Georgia. Twenty-five years passed after the promise was made, and the lands remained unpurchased because the Indians would not sell them. A treaty was finally made in 1825 by which some of the chiefs ceded to the general government the lands in question.

The majority of the Indians declared the chiefs had no authority to enter into this treaty, and called upon the United States to repudiate it. It was cancelled by the general government, but the State of Georgia determined to enforce it. The general government took the side of the Indians, and for a while it seemed that an open conflict would ensue between the State and federal authorities. The matter was settled by the Creeks consenting to sell their lands and to accept new homes in the west. The Indian lands were purchased by the United States, and the Creeks emigrated beyond the Mississippi.

On the fourth of July, 1826, died, within a few hours of each other, two ex-presidents of the republic—John Adams and Thomas Jefferson—the latter the author of the Declaration of Independence, and the former its most efficient supporter. Mr. Adams died at his home at Quincy, Massachusetts, at the ripe old age of ninety years; Mr. Jefferson, at Monticello, his beautiful Virginian home, at the age of eighty-two. Both had filled the highest stations in the republic, and both had lived to see the country they loved take rank among the first nations of the globe. They died on the fiftieth anniversary of American independence.

STATUE OF JEFFERSON AT WASHINGTON.

In the year 1826 a new party made its appearance in our politics. A man named William Morgan, residing in the western part of New York, published a book purporting to reveal the secrets of the order of Freemasons. He suddenly disappeared, and it was charged that he had been seized and murdered by the Freemasons in revenge for his exposures. The affair caused great excitement in the Northern and some of the Western States, and gave rise to a political party known as the Anti-Masons, whose avowed object was the exclusion of Masons from office. It acquired considerable strength in some of the States, but in a few years died out.

DANIEL WEBSTER.

The tariff question now engaged the attention of the country once more. The manufacturing interests were still struggling against foreign competition, and it was the opinion of the Eastern and Middle States that the general government should protect them by the imposition of high duties upon products of foreign countries imported into the Union. The south was almost a unit in its opposition to a high tariff. Being, as we have said, an agricultural section, its interests demanded a free market, and it wished to avail itself of the privilege of purchasing where it could buy cheapest. The south and the west were the markets of the east, and the interests of that section demanded the exclusion of foreign competition in supplying these markets.

In July, 1827, a convention of manufacturers was held at Harrisburg, Pennsylvania, and a memorial was adopted praying Congress to increase the duties on foreign goods to an extent which would protect American industry. When Congress met in December, 1827, the protective policy was the most important topic of the day. It was warmly discussed in Congress and throughout the country. The interests of New England were championed by the matchless eloquence of Daniel Webster, who claimed that as the adoption of the protective policy by the government had forced New England to turn her energies to manufacturers, the government was bound to protect her against competition.

After a very able and exhaustive discussion, the tariff bill was passed by the House on the fifteenth of April, 1828, and was approved by the President a little later. It was termed by its opponents the "Bill of Abominations."

In the midst of this excitement the Presidential election occurred. Mr. Adams was a candidate for re-election, but was overwhelmingly defeated by Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee. John C. Calhoun was chosen Vice-President. The election of Jackson was regarded as a popular condemnation of the protective policy of the government.

CHAPTER XXXV

The Administrations of Andrew Jackson and Martin Van Buren

Character of Andrew Jackson—Indian Policy of this Administration—The President Vetoes the Bill to Renew the Charter of the United States Bank—Debate Between Hayne and Webster—Jackson's Quarrel With Calhoun—Death of ex-President Monroe—The Cholera—Black Hawk's War—Re-election of President Jackson—The Tariff—Action of South Carolina—The Nullification Ordinance—Firmness of the President—The Matter Settled by Compromise—Patriotism of Henry Clay—The Removal of the Deposits—The Seminole War Begun—Great Fire at New York—Settlement of the French Claims—Arkansas Admitted Into the Union—The National Debt Paid—Death of ex-President Madison—Martin Van Buren Elected President—Michigan Admitted Into the Union—The Panic of 1837—Causes of It—Suspension of Specie Payments—Great Distress Throughout the Union—The Sub-Treasury—Repudiation of State Debts—The Canadian Rebellion—The President's Course—The Seminole War Ended—The Anti-Slavery Party—Resolutions of Congress Respecting Slavery—William Henry Harrison Elected President—The Sixth Census.

ANDREW JACKSON, the seventh President of the United States, was inaugurated at Washington, on the fourth of March, 1829.

President Jackson was in many respects one of the most remarkable men of his day. He was of Scotch-Irish descent, and was born in North Carolina during the controversy between the colonies and Great Britain, which preceded the revolution. He was left fatherless at an early age, and his youth was passed amid the stirring scenes of the war for independence. At the age of thirteen he began his career by taking part in the fight at Hanging Rock, under General Sumter. The home of the Jacksons was broken up and pillaged by the Tories, and the mother and her two sons became wanderers. The sons were shortly after made prisoners by the Tories, and the day after his capture Andrew Jackson was ordered by a British officer to clean his boots. He indignantly refused, and the officer struck him with the flat of his sword. The boys were at length exchanged through the exertions of their mother. Both had contracted the small-pox during their captivity, and the elder son soon died of his disease.

Not long afterwards Mrs. Jackson, with some other ladies, went to Charleston to minister to the wants of the American prisoners of war confined there by the British. A fever was raging among these unfortunates at the time, and Mrs. Jackson was soon numbered among its victims. Thus, at the age of fifteen, Andrew Jackson was left alone in the world without a relative. Though young in years, he had been greatly matured in character by his trials. Even at this early age he was generous to a fault to his friends, and immovable in his resolutions when once formed.

A few years later he removed to Tennessee, then a Territory, and upon the admission of the State into the Union was elected as her first representative in Congress. His services during the war of 1812-15 have been related. His brilliant victory over the British at New Orleans made him one of the most noted men of the day, and his prompt and decisive measures against the Spaniards in Florida during Mr. Monroe's administration greatly added to his reputation.

During the administration of John Adams General Jackson occupied a seat in the United States Senate, and gave a cordial support to

the principles of Mr. Jefferson. Resigning his seat in the Senate before the close of his term, he was elected one of the judges of the Supreme Court of Tennessee.

The election of General Jackson to the Presidency was regarded with some anxiety, for though his merits as a soldier were conceded, it was feared by many that his known imperiousness of will and his inflexibility of purpose would seriously disqualify him for the delicate duties of the Presidency. Nature had made him a ruler, however, and his administration was marked by the fearless energy that characterized every act of his life, and was on the whole successful and satisfactory to the great majority of his countrymen.

ANDREW JACKSON.

General Jackson began his administration by appointing a new cabinet, at the head of which he placed Martin Van Buren, of New York, as secretary of state. Until now the Postmaster-General had not been regarded as a cabinet officer. General Jackson now invited that officer to a seat in his cabinet and a share in its deliberations, and his course has since been pursued by each and all of his successors.

The first important act of the new President was to recommend to Congress the removal of all the Indian tribes remaining east of the Mississippi to new homes west of that stream. Such a measure, he contended, would give to them a broader range, and one more suited to their wants, and would relieve the States east of the Mississippi from all further apprehension of Indian wars. This removal involved considerable loss and hardship to the Creeks in Georgia, who had made an encouraging advance in civilization. A

bill was passed by the Twenty-first Congress in May, 1830, for the purpose of carrying this policy into effect; but the removal of the Indians was not completed for some years afterwards.

In his first annual message to Congress, in 1829, the President took strong ground against the renewal of the charter of the Bank of the United States, which was about to expire. This was a bold step, as the bank was the most powerful institution in the United States, and had warm friends in every part of the country. The stockholders of the bank applied to the Twenty-second Congress during its first session, which began in December, 1831, for a renewal of their charter, and in the late spring of 1832 a bill renewing this charter was passed by both Houses of Congress. The President refused to sign the bill, and returned it to Congress with his objections. He held that Congress had no constitutional power to charter such a bank, and regarded it as inexpedient to continue its existence. An effort was made by the friends of the bill to pass it over the President's veto, but it failed to obtain the necessary two-thirds vote, and consequently did not become a law. The bank was therefore obliged to suspend its operations at the expiration of its charter in 1836.

A Historic Debate.

In 1830 Senator Foot, of Connecticut, submitted a resolution of inquiry to the Senate concerning the disposal of the public lands. The debate upon the resolution extended far beyond the subject embraced in that document, and in the course of it Senator Robert Y. Hayne, of South Carolina, a brilliant orator, declared that any State had the right, in the exercise of its sovereign power, to declare null and void any act of Congress which it should consider unconstitutional. This was a plain statement of the doctrine that the Union was simply a compact between the States, from which any of the States could secede at pleasure, and it was the first time such a sentiment had been expressed on the floor of Congress. Mr. Webster, of Massachusetts, replied to Mr. Hayne, in an oration of superb eloquence. He denied the doctrine that the Union was a compact of sovereign, independent States, from which any one of them could withdraw at pleasure; and argued that the constitution was the work of the people themselves, not as separate States

ROBERT Y. HAYNE.

but as members of a great nation, and was designed to make the Union perpetual; that the controversies between the States and the general government were to be decided by the supreme court, the tribunal created for that purpose by the constitution, and not by the States themselves; and that any attempt on the part of the people of a State to withdraw from the Union was treason.

The debate added greatly to the fame of both senators, and the sentiments of Mr. Webster were unanimously re-echoed by the

north, and by a large majority at the south. The effect of the debate was to direct the attention of the people to a study of the principles of the constitution. Different views were maintained. The Northern and Western States regarded the Union as indissoluble, while the Southern States held that it was a compact of sovereign States, and that any State could withdraw from the Union for just cause.

A LUMBERMAN'S CAMP IN THE WOODS OF MAINE.

During the session of the Twenty-first Congress a breach occurred between President Jackson and Mr. Calhoun, the vice-president. The former was told for the first time that Mr. Calhoun, while a member of Mr. Monroe's cabinet, had endeavored to prevent the government from sustaining him in his invasion of Florida in 1818. General Jackson deeply resented this, and the breach between himself and Mr. Calhoun widened daily. Shortly afterwards Mr. Calhoun resigned the vice-presidency, and was elected to the Senate by the legislature of South Carolina in 1831. In the same year Mr. Clay was elected to the Senate from Kentucky, and Edward Livingston was made secretary of state.

On the fourth of July, 1831, ex-President Monroe died in New York, in the seventy-fourth year of his age.

In June, 1832, the Asiatic cholera made its first appearance in the United States, and swept with fearful rapidity over the whole country. Thousands of persons of all ages and conditions died of it within a few months, and a feeling of general terror pervaded the country. Its principal ravages occurred in the Northern States and in the valley of the Mississippi.

In the spring of 1832 the Sacs and Foxes, and some other tribes of Indians, inhabiting the region now known as Wisconsin, made incursions against the frontier settlements of Illinois. General Atkinson was sent by the general government with a force of troops to crush them, and, with the assistance of the militia, after a series of skirmishes, drove them beyond the Mississippi. Black Hawk,

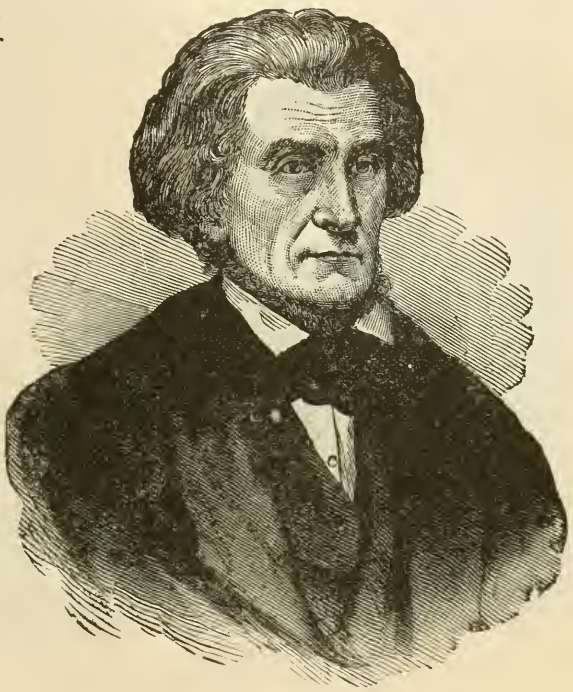
a chief of the Sac nation, and the leader of the movement, was taken prisoner. He was kindly treated, and to impress him with the folly of attacking a great nation, he was taken to Washington, and then to the principal eastern cities, that he might see for himself the power of the whites.

Jackson Re-elected.

Early in 1831 General Jackson was nominated for re-election to the Presidency by the legislature of Pennsylvania. The Presidential election took place in the fall of 1832. General Jackson was supported by the Democratic party, and Mr. Clay by the Whigs, for the Presidency. The contest was marked by intense bitterness, for Jackson's veto of the charter of the Bank of the United States, his other vetoes of public improvement bills, and his attitude in the "Nullification" controversy between the United States and South Carolina had created a powerful opposition to him in all parts of the country. In spite of this opposition he was re-elected by a triumphant majority, and Martin Van Buren, of New York, the Democratic nominee, was chosen vice-president.

In the meantime serious trouble had arisen between the general government and the State of South Carolina. During the year 1832 the tariff was revised by Congress, and that body, instead of diminishing the duties, increased many of them. This action gave great offence to the Southern States, which regarded the denial of free trade as a great wrong to them. They were willing to submit to a tariff sufficient for a revenue, but were utterly opposed to a protective tariff for the reasons we have already stated. The States of Virginia, Georgia and South Carolina were the most energetic in their opposition to the measure, but the first two, upon its passage, submitted to it, hoping to carry out their wishes by constitutional means at some future time.

The State of South Carolina, holding the views advocated by Mr. Hayne in the Senate, in his debate with Mr. Webster, resolved to "nullify" the law within its own limits. A convention of the people of the State was held, which adopted a measure known as the "Nullification Ordinance." This ordinance declared that the tariff act of 1832, being based upon the principle of protection, and not upon the principle of raising revenue, was unconstitutional, and was therefore null and void. Provision was made by another clause for testing the constitutionality of the law before the courts of the State.



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

The State assumed the right to forbid the collection of the duties imposed by the tariff within its limits; and if the general government should resist the course of the State by force, the State of South Carolina was declared to be no longer a member of the

Union. This ordinance was to take effect on the twelfth of February, 1833, unless in the meantime the general government should abandon its policy of protection and return to a tariff for revenue only.

Matters had reached this state when the Presidential election occurred in the fall of 1832. The country at large was utterly opposed to the course of South Carolina, and denied its right to nullify a law of Congress or to withdraw from the Union in support of this right. Intense excitement

EDWARD LIVINGSTON.

prevailed, and the course of the President was watched with the gravest anxiety. He was known to be opposed to the protective policy; but it was generally believed that he was firm in his intention to enforce the laws, however he might disapprove of them.

Congress met in December, 1832, and in his annual message President Jackson urged upon that body a reduction of the tariff. The message gave great satisfaction to the opponents of the tariff. A few days later the President issued a proclamation against nullification, moderate in language, but firm in tone. He expressed his opinion that the course of South Carolina was unlawful and wrong, and intimated that he would exert the power intrusted to him to compel obedience to the constitution and laws of the Union. He appealed to the people of South Carolina not to persist in the enforcement of their ordinance, as such a course on their part must inevitably bring them in collision with the forces of the federal government; and told them plainly that any citizen of any of the States who should take up arms against the United States in such a conflict would be guilty of treason against the United States.

Referring to the action of the convention, he said: "This ordinance is founded, not on the indefeasible right of resisting acts which are plainly unconstitutional, and too oppressive to be endured; but on the strange position that any one State may not only declare an act of Congress void, but prohibit its execution; that they may do this consistently with the constitution; that the true construction of the instrument permits a State to retain its place in the Union, and yet be bound by no other of its laws than those it may choose to consider as constitutional."

Trouble in South Carolina.

The leaders of the South Carolina movement were Governor Hayne and John C. Calhoun, then a senator of the United States from South Carolina. Governor Hayne replied to the President with a counter proclamation, in which he warned the people of the State against "the dangerous and pernicious doctrines" of the President's proclamation, and called upon them to disregard "those vain menaces" of military force, and "to be fully prepared to sustain the dignity and protect the liberties of the State, if need

be, with their lives and fortunes." The State prepared to maintain its position by force. Troops were organized and arms and military stores were collected.

The President, on his part, took measures promptly to enforce the law. He ordered a large body of troops to assemble at Charleston under General Scott, and a ship of war was sent to that port to assist the federal officers in collecting the duties on imports. Civil war seemed for a time inevitable. The Virginia sent Benjamin Watkins Leigh, a distinguished citizen, as commissioner to South Carolina, to urge her to suspend the execution of her ordinance until March 4th, as there was a probability that a peaceful settlement of the difficulty would be arranged before that time. South Carolina consented to be guided by this appeal.

Henry Clay, with his usual patriotic self-sacrifice, now came forward in the Senate with a compromise which he hoped would

THE UNITED STATES TREASURY AT WASHINGTON, D. C.

President was firmly resolved to compel the submission of South Carolina and to cause the arrest of Mr. Calhoun and the other leading nullifiers and bring them to trial for treason. The issue of such a conflict could not be doubtful.

Fortunately a peaceful settlement of the trouble was effected. Mr. Verplanck, of New York, a supporter of the administration, introduced a bill into Congress for a reduction of the tariff, and the State of Virput an end to the trouble. He was an ardent advocate of the protective system, but he was prepared to sacrifice it to the welfare of the country. He introduced a bill providing for the gradual reduction in ten years of all duties then above the revenue standard. "One-tenth of one-half of all the duties for protection above that standard was to be taken off annually for ten years, at the end of which period the whole of the other half was to be taken off, and thereafter all duties

were to be levied mainly with a view to revenue and not for protection." This measure with some modifications was adopted by both Houses of Congress, and was approved by the President on the second of March, 1833. The people of South Carolina rescinded their "Nullification Ordinance," and the trouble was brought to an end.*

It was generally believed that the Union had escaped from a grave peril. The firmness of the President received the approval of the nation, except in South Carolina. The action of that State was generally condemned, and the result was looked upon as a decided triumph of the national authority.

Renewed Excitement.

On the fourth of March, 1833, General Jackson entered upon his second term of office. The troubles which had disquieted the country had been satisfactorily settled, and the President took advantage of the peaceful condition of affairs to visit New York and the New England States. He was received everywhere with enthusiasm.

Upon his return to the capital the President took a step which plunged the country into great excitement once more. The charter of the Bank of the United States made that institution the legal depository of the funds of the United States. The secretary of the treasury, with the sanction of Congress, alone had authority to remove them. The President was of the opinion that the public funds were not safe in the keeping of the bank, and announced his intention to remove them from the Bank of the United States and deposit them with certain State banks. The majority of the cabinet were opposed to the measure, and the secretary of the treasury, William J. Duane, when ordered by the President to withdraw the funds, refused to obey him as he considered the President's course "unnecessary, unwise, arbitrary and unjust." He was at once removed from his position by President Jackson, who appointed Roger B. Taney, of Maryland, in his place. Mr. Taney issued an order to the collectors, forbidding them to deposit the public moneys paid to them in the Bank of the United States. As for the funds already in the possession of the bank it was decided to withdraw them as they were needed for the payment of the current expenses of the government. This measure was productive of great financial distress throughout the Union, which continued for some time.

President Jackson Censured.

The President's course also produced open war between himself and the Senate, in which body he was opposed by Clay, Calhoun and Webster, its foremost members. He was defended by Benton, of Missouri, and Forsyth, of Georgia, but in spite of their efforts a resolution declaring the President's course unconstitutional and severely censuring him for it was adopted by the Senate. The President remained firm, however. He submitted an able protest against the action of the Senate, and by the help of the House of Representatives defeated the bank on every point. The Senate subsequently recognized the propriety of the President's

* "Mr. Clay, on this occasion," says Hon. Alexander H. Stephens, "had to break with his old political friends, while he was offering up the darling system of his heart upon the altar of his country. Whatever else may be said of him, no one can deny that Henry Clay was a patriot—every inch of him—a patriot of the highest standard. It was said that when he was importuned not to take the course he had resolved upon, for the reason amongst others that it would lessen his chances for the presidency, his reply was, 'I would rather be right than be president.' This showed the material he was made of. It was worthy a Marcellus or Cato."—*The War Between the States*, vol. i., p. 438.

action, and of its own motion expunged the resolution of censure from its journal.

In pursuance of its policy towards the Indians, the government attempted in 1835 to remove the Seminoles from Florida beyond the Mississippi. They were unwilling to relinquish their lands; and under the leadership of their great chief, Osceola, opposed a determined resistance to the efforts of the general government. Major Dade, with one hundred and seventeen men, was sent from Tampa Bay to the assistance of General Clinch at Fort Drane, which was threatened by the Indians. He was attacked on the

OSCEOLA, CHIEF OF THE SEMINOLES.

twenty-eighth of December, 1835, while on the march, and he and all but four of his men were massacred. On the same day another blow was struck at Fort King, many miles away from the scene of this massacre. Mr. Thompson, the Indian commissioner, and a party of his friends, while dining outside of the walls of the fort, were attacked by a band of Seminoles led by Osceola in person, and killed and scalped. General Clinch at once took the field against the savages, and on the thirty-first of December defeated them at Withlacooche, ninety miles north of Tampa Bay. In February, 1836, General Gaines won an important victory over the savages near the same place.

The Seminole War.

The Creeks joined the Seminoles in May, 1836, and the war spread into Georgia. The former were soon crushed by the United States troops, and were sent west of the Mississippi. The Seminoles continued the war, and as often as they were defeated in the open field would take refuge in the swamps and everglades, where it was difficult for the whites to follow them, and from which they maintained a constant and effective warfare upon their enemies. Osceola was always ready to make a treaty, and never hesitated to break it. At last he was conquered by his own weapon of deceit. In October, 1837, he came into the American camp under a flag of truce. He was at once seized, with all his followers, by General Jessup, the American commander. Osceola was sent as a prisoner to Fort Moultrie, in South Carolina, where he died of a fever. The war went on for several years longer.

The winter of 1834–5 was one of the coldest ever known in America. The Chesapeake Bay was frozen from its head to the Capes, and on the eighth of February, 1835, the mercury stood at eight degrees below zero as far south as Charleston. On the fourth of January the mercury congealed at Lebanon, New York. On the night of December 16, 1835, a fire broke out in the city of New York, and in fourteen hours consumed the greater part of the business portion of the city, and destroyed over seventeen million dollars worth of property.

Dispute with France Settled.

In the last years of his administration President Jackson brought to a successful close a vexatious dispute with France, which had long been a source of annoyance to the country. American merchants held claims to the amount of five million dollars against France, for the "unlawful seizures, captures, and destruction of vessels and cargoes" during the wars of Napoleon. The government of Louis Philippe acknowledged the justice of these claims, and in 1831 a treaty was negotiated between the United States and France for their payment.

The Chamber of Deputies refused three times during as many years to appropriate the money for the payment of these claims, and in 1834 President Jackson ordered the United States minister at Paris to demand his passports, and advised Congress to make reprisals on French vessels. This vigorous course brought France to her senses, and at this juncture Great Britain offered her mediation for the settlement of the difficulty. The Chamber of Deputies appropriated the necessary sum, and the American claims were paid and the matter settled to the satisfaction of all parties.

Claims for similar seizures were brought against Spain, Naples, and Denmark, and were satisfactorily settled through the firmness of the President. Treaties of friendship and commerce were negotiated with Russia and Turkey.

On the fifteenth of June, 1836, Arkansas was admitted into the Union as a State.

One of the most important acts of General Jackson's administration was the payment of the national debt. He not only left the nation free from debt, but handed over to his successor a surplus of forty millions of dollars in the national treasury.

On the twenty-eighth of June, 1836, ex-President James Madison died at Montpelier, his home, in Virginia, in the eighty-sixth year of his age.

The Presidential election was held in the fall of 1836. General Jackson having declined to be a candidate for a third term, the Democratic party supported Martin Van Buren for President and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, for Vice-President. Mr. Van Buren was elected by a large majority; but the electors having failed to make a choice of a candidate for Vice-President, that task devolved upon the Senate, which elected Colonel Richard M. Johnson by a majority of seventeen votes.

On the twenty-sixth of January, 1837, Michigan was admitted into the Union as a State, making the twenty-sixth member of the Confederacy. The original thirteen States had been doubled in number, and the Union was strong at home, and respected abroad.

At the close of his term General Jackson retired from public life, and passed the remainder of his days at his beautiful home, near Nashville, in Tennessee, which he had named the "Hermitage." He had conducted one of the most remarkable administrations in our history, and one of the most successful, and had shown himself to be an earnest, incorruptible, and self-sacrificing patriot, and

MARTIN VAN BUREN.

a man of unbending honesty and of extraordinary energy and inflexibility of purpose.

Martin Van Buren, the new President, entered upon the duties of his office on the fourth of March, 1837. He was in his fifty-fifth year, and had occupied many distinguished positions in public life. He had represented the State of New York in the Senate of the United States, and had been governor of that State. He had been minister to England, had been made secretary of state at the commencement of General Jackson's first term, and had been elected Vice-President of the United States at the period of Jackson's re-election.

Wild Speculation.

The extraordinary prosperity which had prevailed throughout the nation during the last year of Jackson's term came to a sudden end almost immediately after the inauguration of Mr. Van Buren. For some time past a reckless spirit of speculation had engrossed the nation, and had led to excessive banking and the issuing of paper money to an extent far beyond the necessities of the country. The State banks, with which the public funds had been deposited by President Jackson, supposed they would be able to control these funds for an indefinite period, as the revenue of the government was largely in excess of its expenses; and they made loans freely, and upon not the best securities, in all cases. Few of the new banks which sprang into existence had enough gold and silver in their vaults to redeem the notes with which they flooded the country. Fictitious values prevailed in every department of trade, and the banks vied with each other in affording the means for the wildest speculations.

In the midst of this excitement two acts of the general government brought matters to a crisis. The speculation mania had extended to the public lands, and in order to restrain it within manageable bounds President Jackson caused the secretary of the treasury to issue an order to the collectors at the local offices to receive only gold and silver in payments for land. This order was generally known as the "Specie Circular." In the summer of 1836 a law was passed by Congress requiring the President to distribute among the States the funds on deposit in the banks. This was an unexpected measure to the banks, and forced them to call in their loans to meet the withdrawal of the government funds. The operations of the "Specie Circular" at the same time sent large quantities of their notes back to them to be redeemed in coin.

This complication of difficulties brought them at once to the end of their resources, and they were rendered powerless to extend their usual facilities to their customers. The result was that the business of the country was thrown into a state of hopeless confusion, and by the spring of 1837 the failures in New York alone amounted to one hundred million dollars. All parts of the country were affected by the financial troubles, and in New Orleans the failures amounted to twenty-seven million dollars.

Suspension of Specie Payments.

Petitions were addressed to the President from all parts of the Union, praying him to take some steps to relieve the general distress, and in May a deputation of merchants and bankers from New York waited upon President Van Buren, and urged him to postpone the immediate collection of duties for which merchants had given bonds, to withdraw the treasury orders requiring sums due the United States to be paid in gold and silver, and to convene Congress in extra session for the purpose of devising measures of relief.

The President complied with their request to suspend the collection of duties for which

bonds had been given, but declined to take the other steps asked of him. Within a few days after his answer was known the banks of New York suspended specie payments, and their example was followed by the rest of the banks throughout the Union.

The Country in Distress.

The distress of the country was very great. Hundreds of thousands of laborers were thrown out of employment, and business of all kinds was at a standstill. The government, which a few months before had been out of debt and in possession of a surplus of forty millions, now found itself unable to provide funds for its ordinary expenses. The President was compelled to summon an extra session of Congress, which met on the fourth of September, 1837. The President in his message attributed the embarrassed condition of the country to the excessive issues of bank notes, the great fire in New York in 1835, and the reckless speculations of the people for several years past. He suggested no special legislation for the relief of these troubles, as he regarded such a course as beyond the constitutional authority of the general government.

Indeed, the government could do but little to restore public confidence; that was the task of the people themselves, and it was not accomplished for several years. To meet the necessities of the government and provide a legal currency Congress, at the recommendation of the President, issued treasury notes to the amount of ten millions of dollars. Another recommendation of the President did not give such general satisfaction. The President advised the creation of an independent treasury for the public funds, as a means of avoiding the risks assumed by the government in depositing its funds in the banks. These treasuries were to be located at certain central points, and the subtreasurers were to be appointed by the President, and were to give bonds for the proper fulfilment of their duties. The President believed that the adoption of this measure would withdraw large sums of money from active circulation and so put a stop to speculation.

The bill for the creation of the independent treasury was warmly opposed in and out of Congress, as it was feared by many that the withdrawal of so much gold and silver from circulation would seriously injure the business of the country. Mr. Calhoun supported the measure with all his great abilities, and Mr. Clay and Mr. Webster opposed it. The measure failed at the extra session, but became a law in 1840. In 1841 it was repealed, and in 1846 it was reenacted. It is still in force, and its wisdom and usefulness are now generally admitted.

Great Increase of Debt.

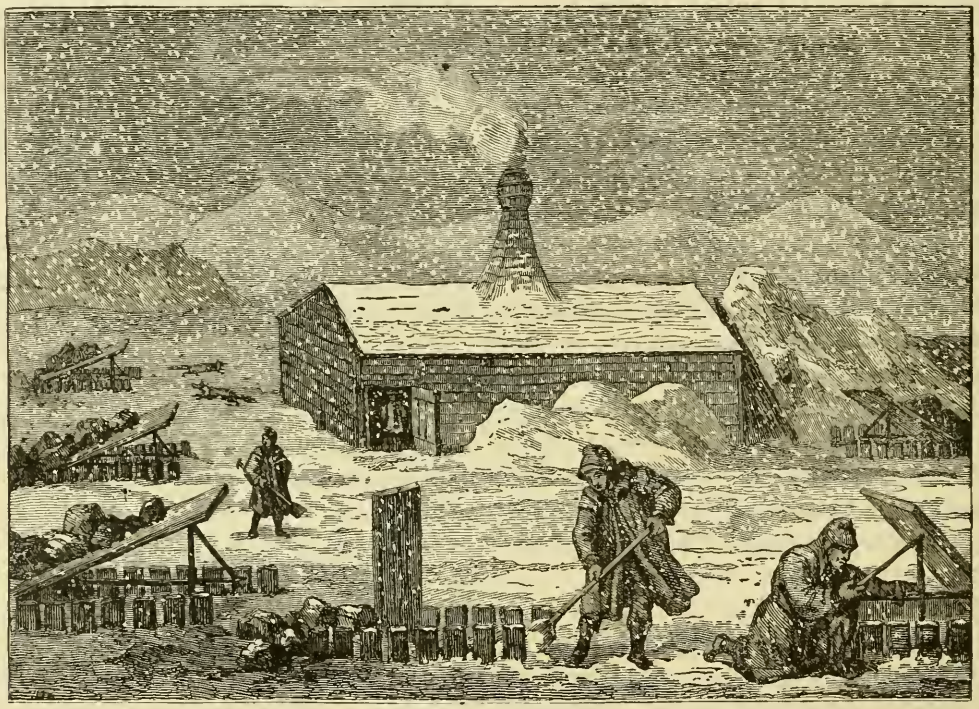
The spirit of speculation had extended to the State governments as well as to private individuals, and State bonds had been issued to the amount of one hundred million dollars. The pretext for this excessive increase of debt was the necessity of raising funds to carry out their system of internal improvements. The panic involved the States in its effects, and eight of them found themselves unable in 1838 to pay the interest on their bonds. In course of time they made good their obligations, but the State of Mississippi and the Territory of Florida not only refused to pay the interest on their bonds, but repudiated their debts. The sale of their bonds had been made principally in Europe, and their repudiation of their debts aroused great indignation on the other side of the Atlantic, and brought disgrace upon the whole nation. The effects of this were seen a few years later, when the United States sought to negotiate a national loan in Europe. Not a

bond could be sold or a dollar obtained there.

In 1837 a movement was made by the people of Canada to throw off their connection with Great Britain and to establish their independence. It aroused the sympathies of a large number of the people of the United States, and in northern New York associations called "Hunters' Lodges" were formed for the purpose of aiding the Canadian patriots. The President of the United States and the Governor of New York endeavored to suppress these illegal associations, but without success.

A body of seven hundred Canadians and American sympathizers took possession of Navy Island in the Niagara River. The island is a part of Canada, and lies near the shore of that country. The force on the island employed the steamboat "Caroline" to convey men and provisions from the town of Schlosser on the American shore to the island. The British authorities in Canada determined to destroy the boat. One dark night in December, 1837, a detachment from Canada was sent to Navy Island for this purpose.

Not finding the "Caroline" they went over to Schlosser, where she was moored at her dock. The boat was captured after a short struggle, in which one American was killed, and was carried out into the stream and set on fire. She drifted down to the falls and plunged over them in a blaze. The British minister at Washington at once declared the responsibility of his government for the capture of the boat, and justified it on the ground of self-defence.



CANADIAN TRAPPERS.

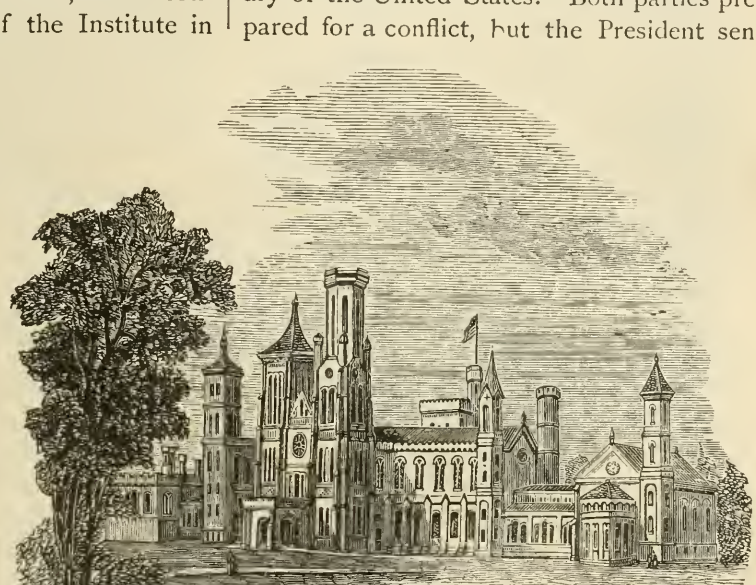
In the meantime the President had sent General Wool with a strong force to the Canadian border with orders to prevent any expedition from leaving this country to aid

the Canadians. He compelled the force on Navy Island to surrender, but the border war continued until the close of 1838, when it was put down.

On the first of September of this year (1838) the United States, by their agent, received the liberal donation which was bequeathed to them in trust for the "general diffusion of knowledge among men," by James Smithson, an Englishman, which constitutes the endowment of the Institute in Washington city that bears his name. The amount of the legacy received, in American coin, was $575,169.

In 1840 the question of the "Carolina" revived. Alexander McLeod, a British subject residing in Canada, boasted that he had been engaged in the capture of the "Caroline," and had killed the American who fell in the conflict. Shortly afterwards he visited the New York side of the river and was at once arrested upon a charge of murder by the authorities of that State. The British government demanded his unconditional release on the ground that he had simply obeyed the orders of his government, which was alone responsible for his act. The general government of the United States also demanded the surrender of McLeod to the Federal authorities. The State of New York, however, held that the offence with which McLeod was charged had been committed on her soil, and brought the prisoner to trial. As he succeeded in proving that he was not engaged in or present at the attack, he was acquitted. This conflict between the Federal and State authority led to the passage by Congress of a law requiring similar offences to be tried before the United States courts.

In the midst of the Canadian controversy a quarrel sprang up between the State of Maine and the British provinces of New Brunswick, concerning the northeast boundary of the United States. Both parties prepared for a conflict, but the President sent General Scott to the scene of danger, and he, by his moderation and firmness, succeeded in maintaining peace until the matter could be settled by treaty.



THE SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION, WASHINGTON, D. C.

The war with the Seminole Indians in Florida continued through the whole of this administration. The capture and death of Osceola, which we have related, though a severe blow to his followers, did not dishearten them. On the twenty-fifth of December, 1838, Colonel Zachary Taylor

inflicted a severe defeat upon the Indians at Lake Okeechobee. The war was at length brought to an end in 1842, but not until it had lasted seven years and had cost many valuable lives and the enormous sum of nearly forty million dollars. The Seminoles were subdued and were removed from Florida to new homes beyond the Mississipi.

The Missouri Compromise did not quiet the agitation of the slavery question. It gave to the country only a momentary respite. The Anti-slavery or Abolition party had now become one of the recognized political organizations of the country. Its avowed object was the abolition of slavery in every State in which it existed. It was argued in opposition to their principles that the constitution recognized and protected slavery in the States in which it existed; but they met this assertion by the bold declaration that they would continue their agitation until they had destroyed either slavery or the Union. They did not wish to live under a constitution which protected slavery, and which one of their principal leaders denounced as "a covenant with death and an agreement with hell." The body embraced the extreme Anti-slavery men of the north.

Opposition to the Abolitionists.

Among its adversaries were some of the sincerest opponents of slavery, who hoped to accomplish their ends by constitutional means and by the influences of a better and more enlightened public opinion, and who deprecated and opposed the violence of the extreme Abolitionists. The leader of the ultra party in Congress was John Quincy Adams, who had been returned to the House of Representatives from Massachusetts in 1831. Memorials were presented to Congress praying the abolition of slavery in the District of Columbia, and gave rise to exciting debates in that body, which affected the whole country profoundly, and did much to widen the breach between the Northern and Southern States. This agitation continued through the whole of Mr. Van Buren's term of office.

Congress Must Not Interfere.

Early in the session of 1838–39, Mr. Atherton, of New Hampshire, offered a series of resolutions expressing the relations of the general government towards the States, and declaring the inability of Congress to interfere with slavery in those States in which it already existed, or in the District of Columbia, or the Territories. These resolutions were adopted by the House by decisive majorities, and were regarded by Mr. Clay and by the leading public men of the country as effectually disposing of the troublesome question as far as the general government was concerned. The resolutions were as follows:

"*Resolved*, That this government is a government of limited powers, and that by the constitution of the United States Congress has no jurisdiction whatever over the institution of slavery in the several States of the confederacy."

The vote upon this resolution stood: 196 for it, and 6 against it.

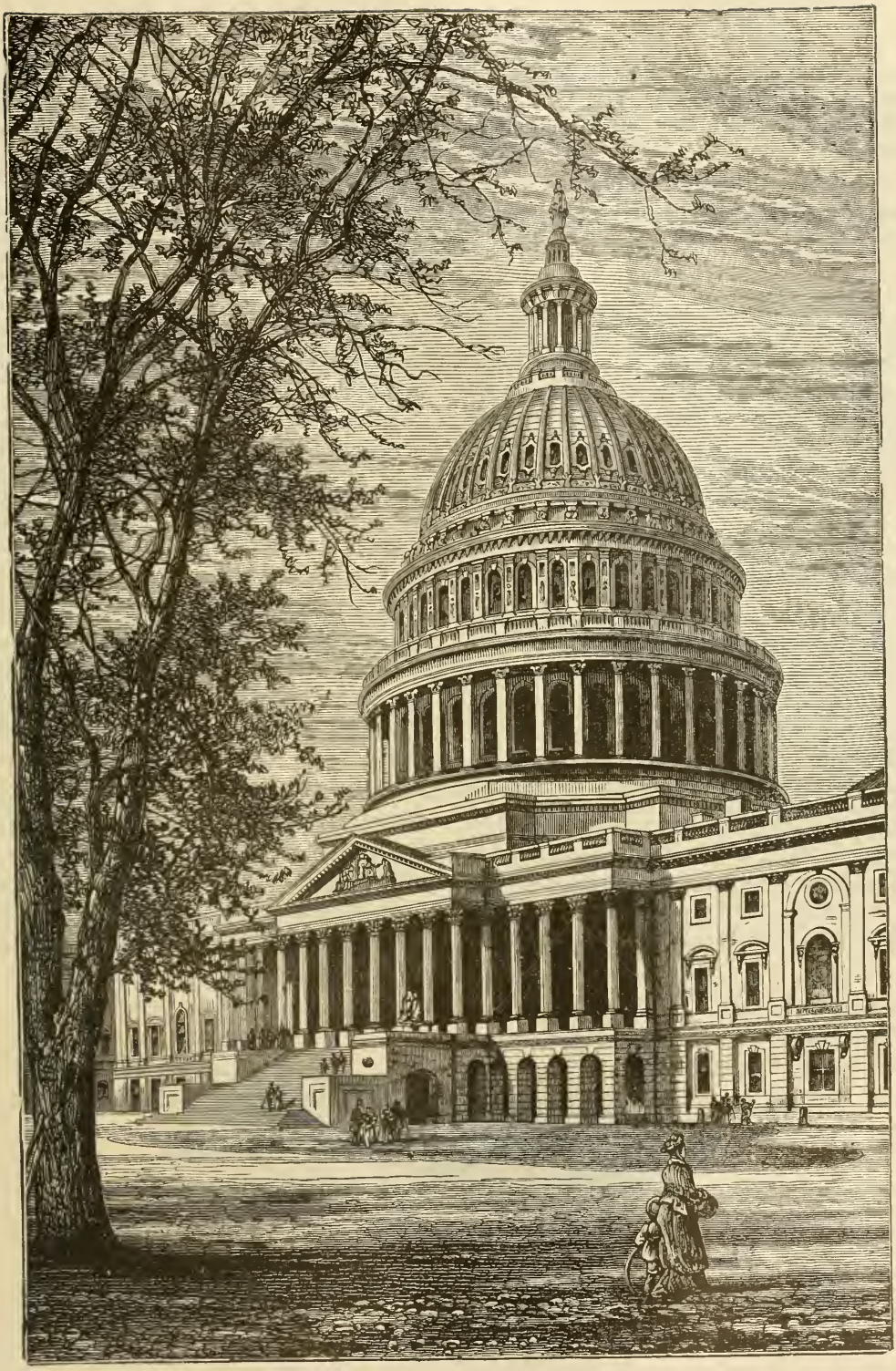
The second resolution was in these words:

"*Resolved*, That petitions for the abolition of slavery in the District of Columbia and the Territories of the United States, and against the removal of slaves from one State to another, are a part of a plan of operations set on foot to affect the institution of slavery in the Southern States, and thus indirectly to destroy that institution within their limits.'

On this resolution the vote stood: 136 for it, and 65 against it.

The third resolution was in these words:

"*Resolved*, That Congress has no right to do that indirectly which it cannot do directly; and that the agitation of the subject of slavery in the District of Columbia, or the Territories, as a means, and with a view, of disturbing or overthrowing that institution in the several States, is against the true spirit and



37 VIEW OF THE NATIONAL CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON. 577

meaning of the constitution, an infringement of the rights of the States affected, and a breach of the public faith upon which they entered into the confederacy."

The vote on this resolution was: 164 in favor of it, and 40 against it.

The fourth of this series was in these words:

"*Resolved*, The constitution rests on the broad principle of equality among the members of this confederacy, and that Congress, in the exercise of its acknowledged powers, has no right to discriminate between the institutions of one portion of the States and another, with a view of abolishing the one and promoting the other."

The vote on this resolution was: 174 in favor of it, and 24 against it.

Resolution Against Slavery Agitation.

The fifth and last of Mr. Atherton's resolutions was in these words:

"*Resolved*, That all attempts on the part of Congress to abolish slavery in the District of Columbia, or the Territories, or to prohibit the removal of slaves from State to State, or to discriminate between the institutions of one portion of the confederacy and another, with the view aforesaid, are in violation of the constitution, destructive of the fundamental principle on which the union of these States rests, and beyond the jurisdiction of Congress; and that every petition, memorial, resolution, proposition, or paper, touching or relating in any way, or to any extent whatever to slavery, as aforesaid, or the abolition thereof, shall on the presentation thereof, without any further action thereon, be laid upon the table, without being debated, printed, or referred."

The vote on the first branch of this resolution was, 146 in favor, and 52 against it; on the second branch of the resolution the vote stood, 126 for it, and 78 against it.

As we shall see, this declaration of Congress was far from quieting the agitation upon this troublesome question. The slavery conflict had in reality just begun.

In the fall of 1840 the Presidential election was held. Mr. Van Buren and Vice-President Johnson were nominated for re-election by the Democratic party, and the Whigs supported General William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, for President, and John Tyler, of Virginia, for Vice-President. The financial distress of the country had been but slightly relieved, and was generally attributed by the people to the interference of the government with the currency. This feeling made the Democratic nominees exceedingly unpopular, and the political campaign, which was one of the most exciting ever conducted in this country, resulted in the election of Harrison and Tyler by overwhelming majorities.

In 1840 the sixth census showed the population of the United States to be 17,069,453.

CHAPTER XXXVI

The Administrations of William Henry Harrison and John Tyler

An Extra Session of Congress Summoned—Death of President Harrison—John Tyler becomes President of the United States—Meeting of Congress—The Bankrupt Law—President Tyler Vetoes the Bills to Revive the United States Bank—His Quarrel with His Party—The "Tyler Whigs"—The Tariff of 1842—The Treaty of Washington—The United States will not Tolerate the Exercise of the Right of Search—Dorr's Rebellion—The Mormons—Invention of the Electric Telegraph—Explosion on the "Princeton"—Efforts to Secure the Annexation of Texas—Early History of Texas—The Texan War of Independence—Battle of San Jacinto—Texan Independence Established—Texas Applies for Admission into the Union—Opposition to the Measure—Significance of the Vote at the Presidential Election—James K. Polk Elected President—Texas Admitted into the Union—Iowa and Florida become States.

ON THE fourth of March, 1841, William Henry Harrison was inaugurated President of the United States at Washington in the presence of an immense concourse of citizens from all parts of the Union. He was in his sixty-ninth year, and had spent forty years of his life in the public service. His services during the Indian hostilities which preceded the war of 1812-15, and his exploits during that war, have been related. He had served as governor of Indiana Territory, and had been both a member of Congress and a senator of the United States.

He was a man of pure life and earnest character, and the certainty of a change of policy in the measures of the federal government had caused the people of the country to look forward to his administration with hope and confidence. He began by calling to seats in his cabinet men of prominence and ability. At the head of the cabinet he placed Daniel Webster, as secretary of state. The President issued a proclamation convening Congress in special session on the thirty-first of May, 1841. He was not destined to fulfil the hopes of his friends, however. He was suddenly seized with pneumonia, and died on the fourth of April, 1841—just one month after his inauguration.

It was the first time that a president of the United States had died in office, and a gloom was cast over the nation by the sad event. The mourning of the people was sincere, for in General Harrison the nation lost a faithful, upright and able citizen. He had spent forty years in prominent public positions, and had discharged every duty confided to him with ability and integrity, and went to his grave a poor man.

"Brave old Cincinnatus! he left but his plow."

Upon the assembling of Congress, that body, "out of consideration of his expenses in removing to the seat of government, and the limited means he had left behind," appropriated the equivalent of one year's presidential salary—twenty-five thousand dollars—to Mrs. Harrison.

According to the terms of the constitution, upon the death of General Harrison, the office of president of the United States devolved upon the vice-president, John Tyler, of Virginia. Mr. Tyler was not in the city of Washington at the time of the death of his predecessor, but repaired to that city without

loss of time, upon being notified of the need of his presence, and on the sixth of April took the oath of office before Judge Cranch, chief justice of the District of Columbia. Mr. Tyler was in his fifty-second year, and had served as governor of Virginia, and as representative and senator in Congress from that State. On the ninth of April President Tyler issued an address to the people of the United States, in which there was no indication of a departure from the policy announced in the inaugural of General Harrison. He

WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.

retained the cabinet ministers of his predecessor in their respective positions.

On the thirty-first of May the Twenty-seventh Congress convened in extra session. It was known as the "Whig Congress," as a large majority of its members were of that party. Had this party remained united they could have controlled the action of Congress to suit themselves, but as we shall see, the policy of the executive soon divided them. The first act of this Congress was to repeal the sub-treasury bill which had been passed in 1840. The effects of the commercial crisis had involved thousands of merchants in hopeless bankruptcy, and under the old laws they had no means of recovering their lost position, as they were crushed down by their debts Neither their creditors nor the country at large derived any benefit from this state of affairs, and Congress at once passed a general bankrupt law for the relief of persons thus situated. It was highly beneficial to the country, and was repealed in 1843, when the necessity for it had ceased to exist.

Important Veto by President Tyler.

Efforts were made to revive the Bank of the United States, and a bill was passed establishing an institution known as the "Fiscal Bank of the United States." Mr. Tyler, who was a member of the strict constructionist school, now found himself at variance with a majority of his party in both Houses of Congress. As he did not believe that Congress could constitutionally charter such an institution, he vetoed this bill. The advocates of the measure could not command the requisite two-thirds majority for the passage of the bill over the president's veto, and his action was sustained. Another bill was passed by Congress of a similar character, establishing "The Fiscal Corporation of the United States," but this also was vetoed by the president for the same reasons. His veto was sustained by Congress in this instance also. The vetoes of these measures were generally approved by the strict constructionists throughout the Union, without regard to party; but they were bitterly denounced by the majority of the Whigs, who charged the president with having violated the implied pledges upon which he was elected, and with having betrayed his party.

The Whigs were for the time forgetful of the fact that at the time of his nomination to the vice-presidency Mr. Tyler was known

to be opposed to the Bank of the United States. The members of the cabinet, with the single exception of the secretary of state, resigned their positions in consequence of Mr. Tyler's course. Mr. Webster retained his position in order to complete the important negotiations he was at the time conducting with England. The places of the other members of the cabinet were filled by the President with prominent members of the strict constructionist school of the Whig party, who sustained the President.

The second session of the Twenty-seventh Congress met in December, 1841, and continued its sittings until August, 1842. It was noted as the longest session ever held up to this time. It found the Whig party divided, and the opposing factions bitterly hostile to each other. The majority, led by Mr. Clay, opposed the administration. The minority, because of their support of the President, received the name of "Tyler Whigs." The principal question agitated during this session was the tariff. According to the compromise act of 1833, the duties this year were to be regulated according to a revenue standard.

The majority in Congress, however, paid no regard to the pledge given in this compromise, and a new tariff bill was passed by both Houses of Congress, regulating the duties on a strongly protective basis, and with the avowed object of reviving the protective policy. It was vetoed by the President. Another measure of a similar though slightly modified character was passed, and this was vetoed also. Congress then passed the tariff of 1842, in which the principles of the compromise of 1833 were altogether set aside, and the duties made strictly protective.

JOHN TYLER.

It required a sharp struggle in Congress to secure the passage of this bill, which received the executive signature on the thirtieth of August.

Settlement of Disputes.

In the meantime Mr. Webster succeeded in bringing the negotiations with Great Britain to a successful close. These negotiations had grown out of the revolutionary disturbances in Canada, and the controversy respecting the northeast boundary of the United States during the administration of Mr. Van Buren, which we have related. The boundary question was of older origin than the former controversy, and had been pending between the United States and England for fifty years. Mr. Webster, immediately upon his entrance upon the office of secretary of state, had, with the approval of the President, signified the desire of this country to terminate the controversy, and Lord Ashburton had been sent by the British government as special minister to the United States, with full power to settle all the controversies between the two countries. The treaty of Washington was concluded in 1842, and was accepted by both countries as a settlement of the questions at issue between them.

By the terms of this treaty the northeastern boundary was arranged as it exists at present; the United States obtained the free navigation of the St. John's river to the sea; and gained possession of the important military position of Rouse's Point, at the outlet of Lake Champlain. The two countries mutually agreed to surrender upon proper demand all fugitives from justice escaping from the territory of one into that of the other; and to maintain a certain number of ships of war on the African coast to aid in suppressing the slave trade.

When the treaty was completed two subjects presented themselves to the negotiators. One of these was the right claimed by Great Britain for her cruisers to stop and if necessary to search merchant vessels belonging to other nations on the high seas; the other was the impressment of seamen from American merchant vessels by British cruisers. Mr. Webster, in a paper of great ability, addressed to the American minister at London, but intended for the British foreign minister, denied the right of search, and sustained his position by arguments that were simply irrefutable.

In a letter to Lord Ashburton Mr. Webster refused to consider the impressment question, as the United States could in no case admit such a claim on the part of Great Britain, and declared that every case of impressment would be considered an act of hostility and would be repelled as such. He declared as the unalterable policy of this country the doctrine that "Every merchant vessel on the high seas is rightfully considered as a part of the territory to which it belongs;" that "in every regularly documented American merchant vessel the crew who navigate it will find their protection in the flag which is over them;" and that "the American government, then, is prepared to say that the practice of impressing seamen from American vessels cannot hereafter be allowed to take place." The tone of the secretary of state, though firm, was courteous and conciliatory, and the negotiations were conducted in the same spirit of conciliation by the British minister.

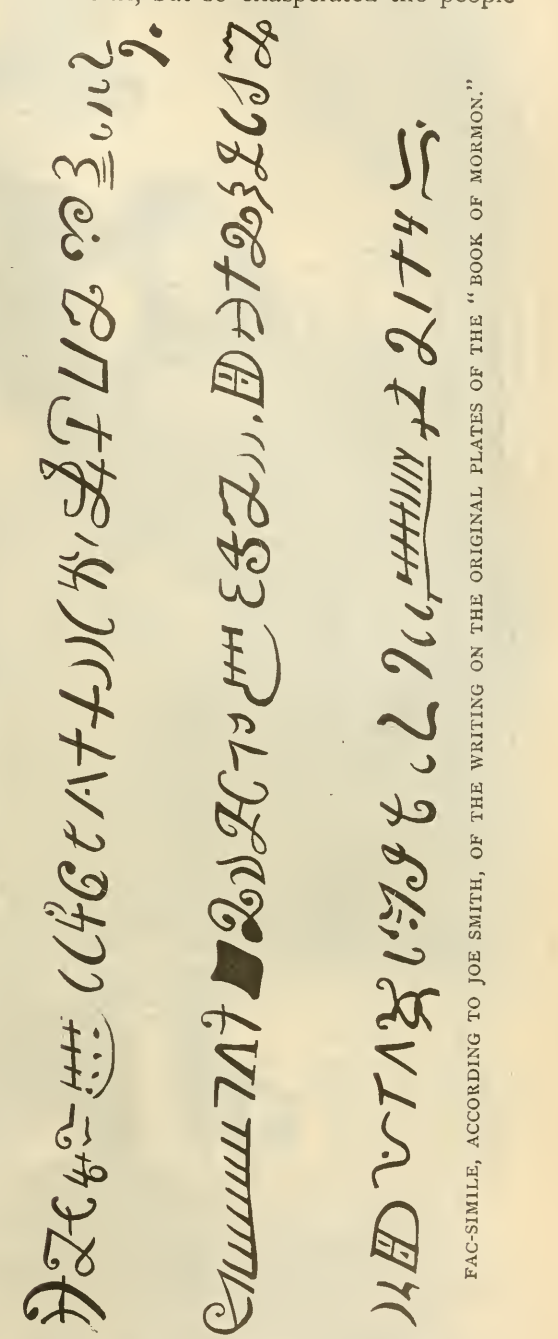
Insurrection in Rhode Island.

With this treaty the United States formally took their position as one of the great powers of the world. The negotiations being completed, Mr. Webster resigned his place in the cabinet in May, 1843, and was succeeded by Abel P. Upshur, of Virginia.

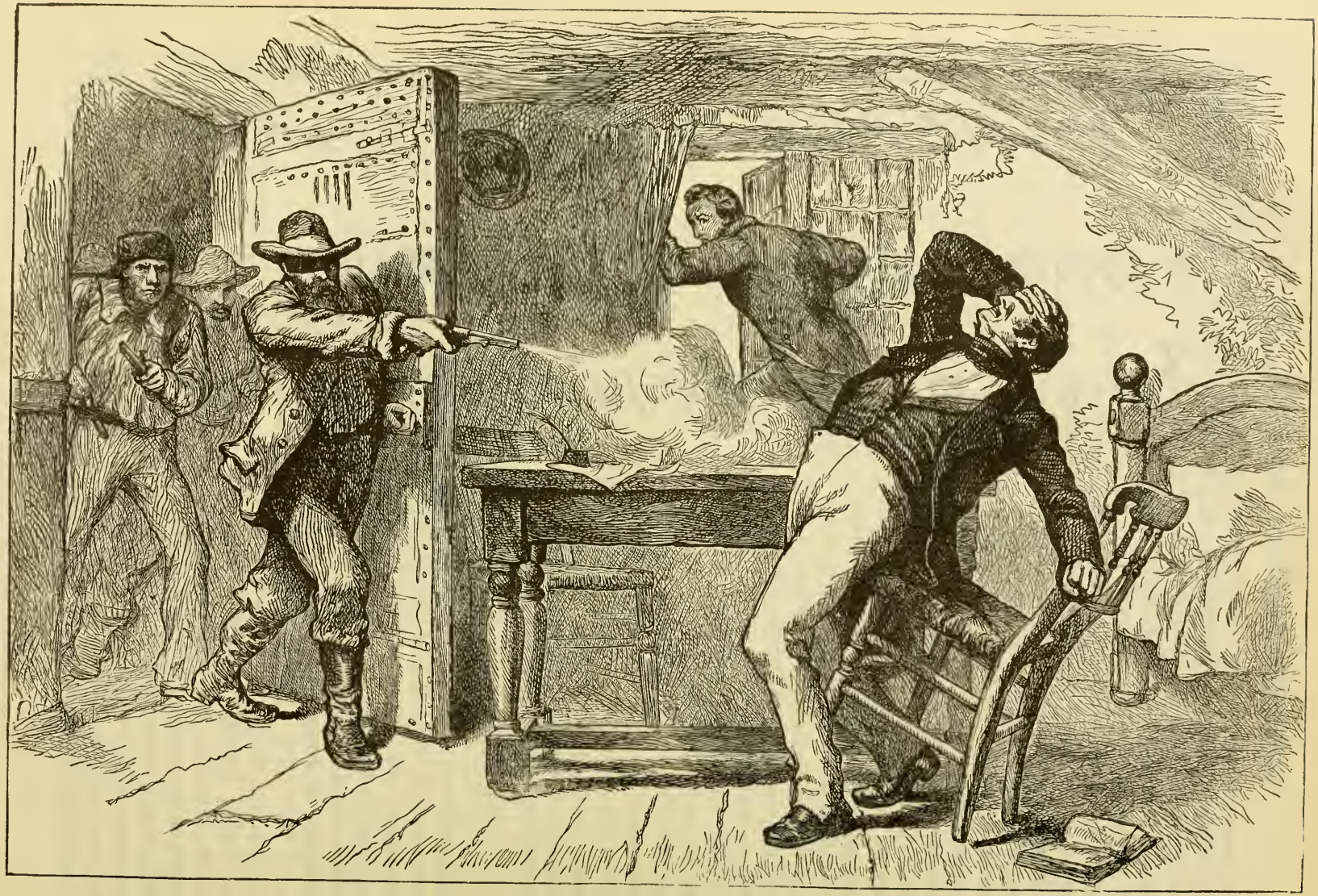
In 1842 an insurrection broke out in the State of Rhode Island, which required the intervention of the United States for its suppression. It is known as the Dorr rebellion. The old charter of the colony, granted by Charles II., in 1663, had up to this time served as the constitution of the State. It was found to be unsuited to the requirements of the people in their more prosperous condition, and an effort was made to change it. Two parties were formed, one in favor of the proposed changes, the other opposed to them. Each party nominated its candidate for the office of governor and elected him. The "suffrage party," which favored the changes, elected Thomas W. Dorr governor, took up arms, and attacked the State arsenal for the purpose of arming their followers. They were repulsed by the State militia assisted by the United States troops. Dorr was arrested, tried for treason, and sentenced to imprisonment for life. He was released in 1845. The opponents of the "suffrage party" deemed it best to yield to the popular wish, however, and in November, 1842, a new constitution, embracing the desired changes, was adopted by the legislature.

Mormons Found a City.

About the same time a series of disturbances occurred in the State of Illinois, which were but the forerunners of a more serious embarrassment to the general government at a later period. A new religious sect had sprung up some years before in the western part of New York. They called themselves Mormons, and were founded by a remarkable man named Joseph Smith, who professed to have received a new revelation from God, written on plates of gold. Among the articles of the Mormon faith is one which teaches the doctrine of a plurality of wives. Feeling that the east was not favorable to their growth, the Mormons at an early day removed to the west. They settled at first in Missouri, but so exasperated the people of that State by their conduct, that they were soon driven out of Missouri.



FAC-SIMILE, ACCORDING TO JOE SMITH, OF THE WRITING ON THE ORIGINAL PLATES OF THE "BOOK OF MORMON."



MURDER OF THE SMITHS.

Crossing the Mississippi, they settled in Illinois, and founded a city which they called Nauvoo, and built a temple. Their numbers increased rapidly from emigration from nearly every country in Europe. The newcomers were mainly persons of low position and without education. Conscious of their strength they raised troops, and set the authority of the State of Illinois at defiance. The State endeavored to reduce them to obedience, and their conduct, as in Missouri, westward, and after a long and painful journey across the plains, reached the valley of Salt Lake, and established a settlement there. Out of this settlement grew the Territory of Utah.

In 1844 occurred one of the most important events in the history of the world. In 1832 Samuel F. B. Morse, a native of Massachusetts, invented the electric telegraph. He spent some years in perfecting his invention, and in 1838 applied to Congress

THE MORMON HAND-CART COMPANY CROSSING THE PLAINS.

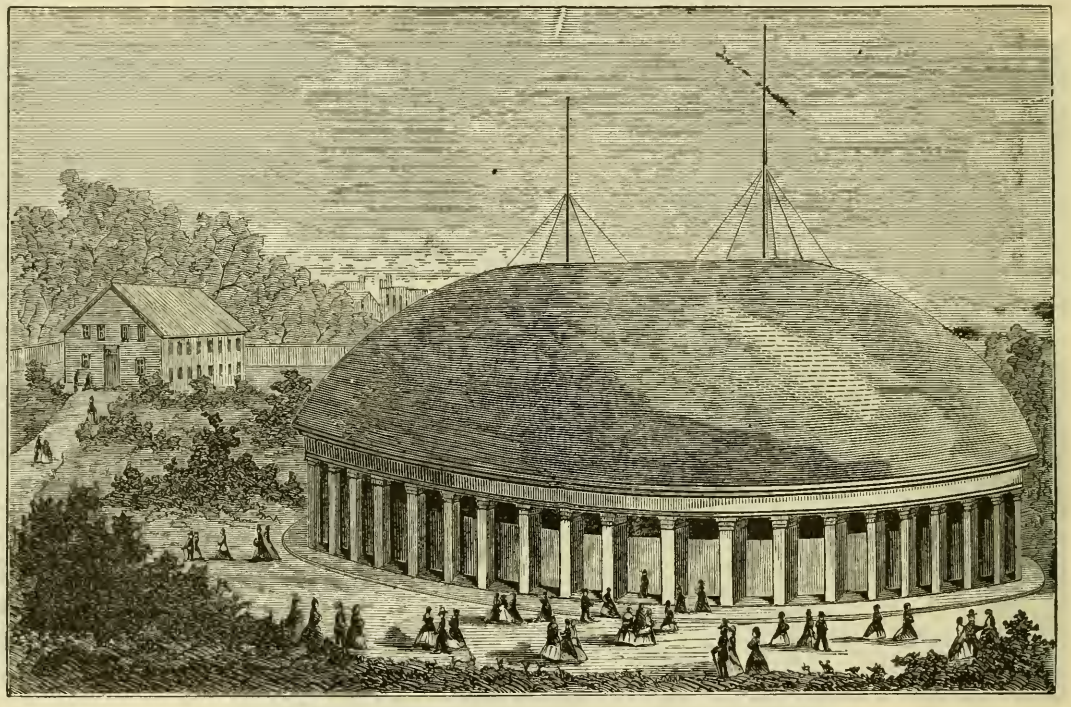
turned the people against them. Several conflicts ensued between the Mormons and the authorities. In one of these Joe Smith, the prophet, and his brother were seized and put in jail, and while lying there were murdered by the mob in July, 1844. This brought matters to a crisis, and the people of Illinois determined to drive the Mormons across the Mississippi. Nauvoo was attacked in 1845, and the Mormons were compelled to leave the State. In 1846 they bent their steps

for a small appropriation to assist him in building a line of wire to demonstrate the usefulness of his discovery. He was obliged to wait five years for a favorable answer, and it was not until he had given up all hope of receiving aid from Congress that that body, on the last day of the session of 1843, appropriated the sum of thirty thousand dollars to construct a telegraph line between Washington City and Baltimore, a distance of forty miles. The line was completed in 1844, and

was successfully operated by Professor Morse. This was the first line established in the world. In the number of years which have elapsed since then the use of the telegraph has become general throughout the civilized world, and in the United States alone hundreds of thousands of miles of telegraph lines are in operation at the present time.

On the twenty-eighth of February, 1844, the President, accompanied by the members of his cabinet and a number of distinguished citizens, officers of the army and navy, and ladies, went on board the new steam frigate "Princeton," lying in the Potomac, to witness the experimental firings of a new cannon of unusual size on board that ship, to which the name of "The Peacemaker" had been given. At one of the discharges the gun exploded, causing the instant death of Messrs. Upshur and Gilmer, the secretaries of state and of the navy, and several other spectators. This sad event was greatly lamented throughout the country. Judge Upshur was succeeded as secretary of state by John C. Calhoun, then a senator from South Carolina.

The last years of Mr. Tyler's administration were devoted to the effort to secure the annexation of the republic of Texas to the United States. The territory embraced within the limits of Texas constituted a part of the Spanish-American possessions, and was generally regarded as a part of Mexico. During the last century a number of forts had been erected in Texas by the Spaniards as a means of holding the province against the French, and each fort was made a missionary station, from which efforts were made to convert the Indians, but without success. The United States were, in the early part of the present century, inclined to regard Texas as rightfully a part of the



MORMON TABERNACLE AT SALT LAKE, UTAH.

Louisiana purchase, but this claim was waived when Florida was purchased.

Early in the present century pioneers from the United States began to find their way to Texas which was then a wild country, inhabited only by roving Indians and the garrisons of the few Spanish forts within its limits. One of these emigrants, Moses Austin, of Durham, Connecticut, conceived the plan of colonizing Texas with settlers from the United States.

For this purpose he obtained from the Spanish government, in 1820, the grant of an extensive tract of land; but before he could put his plans in execution he died. His son, Stephen F. Austin, inherited the rights of his father under this grant, and went to Texas with a number of emigrants from this country, and explored that region for the purpose of locating his grant. He selected as the most desirable site for his colony the country between the Brazos and Colorado rivers, and founded a city, which he named Austin, in honor of the originator of the colony, to whom Texas owes its existence as an American commonwealth. Having seen the settlers established in their new homes, Mr. Austin returned to the United States to collect other emigrants for his colony.

During his absence Mexico and the other Spanish provinces rose in revolt against Spain, and succeeded in establishing their independence. Texas, being regarded as a part of the Mexican territory, shared the fortunes of that country. Upon his return to Texas, Austin, in consideration of the altered state of affairs, went to the city of Mexico and obtained from the Mexican government a confirmation of the grant made to his father. Such a confirmation was necessary in order to enable him to give the settlers valid titles to the lands of his colony. Mexico at first exercised but a nominal authority over the new settlements, and the colonists were allowed to live under their own laws, subject to the rules drawn up by Austin. In order to encourage settlements in Texas, the Mexican Congress on the second of May, 1824, enacted the following law, declaring, "That Texas is to be annexed to the Mexican province of Cohahuila, until it is of sufficient importance to form a separate State, when it is to become an independent State of the Mexican republic, equal to the other States of which the same is composed, free, sovereign, and independent in whatever exclusively relates to its internal government and administration."

PROFESSOR MORSE.

Encouraged by this decree, large numbers of Americans emigrated to Texas, and to these were added emigrants from all the countries of Europe. The population grew rapidly, new towns sprang up, and Austin's colony prospered in a marked degree, until 1830, when Bustamente having made himself by violence and intrigue president of the so-called Mexican republic, prohibited the

emigration of foreigners to the Mexican territory, and issued a number of decrees very oppressive to the people, and in violation of the constitution of 1824. In order to enforce these measures in Texas, he occupied that province with his troops, and placed Texas under military rule. The Texans resented this interference with their rights, and finally compelled the Mexican troops to withdraw from the province. In 1832 Stephen F. Austin was sent to the city of Mexico to present the petition of Texas for this purpose. He was refused an answer to this petition for over a year, and at last wrote to the authorities of Texas, advising them to organize a State government without waiting for the action of the Mexican Congress.

For this recommendation, which the Mexican government regarded as treasonable, Santa Anna caused the arrest of Austin, and kept him in prison for over a year. Texas now began to manifest the most determined opposition to the usurpation of Santa Anna, and measures were taken to maintain the rights of the province under the constitution of 1824. Troops were organized, and preparations made to resist the force which it was certain Mexico would send against them.

A VILLAGE IN TEXAS.

Santa Anna did not allow them to remain long in suspense, but at once despatched a force under General Cos, to disarm the Texans. On the second of October, 1835, Cos attacked the town of Gonzalez, which was held by a Texan force, but was repulsed with heavy loss. A week later, on the ninth of October, the Texans captured the town of Goliad, and a little later gained possession of the mission house of the Alamo. Both places were garrisoned, and the Texan army, which was under the command of Austin, in the course of a few months succeeded in driving the Mexicans out of Texas.

On the twelfth of November, 1835, a convention of the people of Texas met at the

another revolution in Mexico drove Bustamente from power, and placed Santa Anna at the head of affairs as president or dictator.

Texas took no part in the disturbances of Mexico, but after the accession of Santa Anna to power, formed a constitution, and applied for admission into the Mexican republic as a State, in accordance with the constitution of 1824, and the act of the Mexican Congress which we have quoted.

city of Austin, and organized a regular State government. Prominent among the members was General Sam Houston, a settler from the United States. Soon after the meeting of the convention General Austin resigned the command of the army, and was sent to the United States as the commissioner of that State to this government, and was succeeded as commander-in-chief by General Sam Houston. Henry Smith was elected governor of Texas by the people.

Orders to Shoot Prisoners.

As soon as Santa Anna learned that his troops had been driven out of Texas, and that the Texans had set up a State government, he set out for that country with an army of seventy-five hundred men. He issued orders to his troops to shoot every prisoner taken, and intended to make the struggle a war of extermination. He arrived before the Alamo late in February, 1836. This fort was very strong, and was held by a force of one hundred and forty Texans under Colonel Travis. It was besieged by the whole Mexican army, and was subjected to a bombardment of eleven days. At last, on the sixth of March, the garrison being worn out with fatigue, the fort was carried by assault, and the whole garrison was put to the sword. Among the heroes who fell at the Texan Thermopylæ was the eccentric but chivalrous Colonel Davy Crockett, of Tennessee, who had generously come to aid the Texans in their struggle for liberty. The capture of the Alamo cost the Mexicans a loss of sixteen hundred men, or over eleven men for every one of its defenders.

On the 17th of March, 1836, the convention adopted a constitution for an independent republic, and formally proclaimed the independence of Texas. David G. Burnett was elected president of the republic.

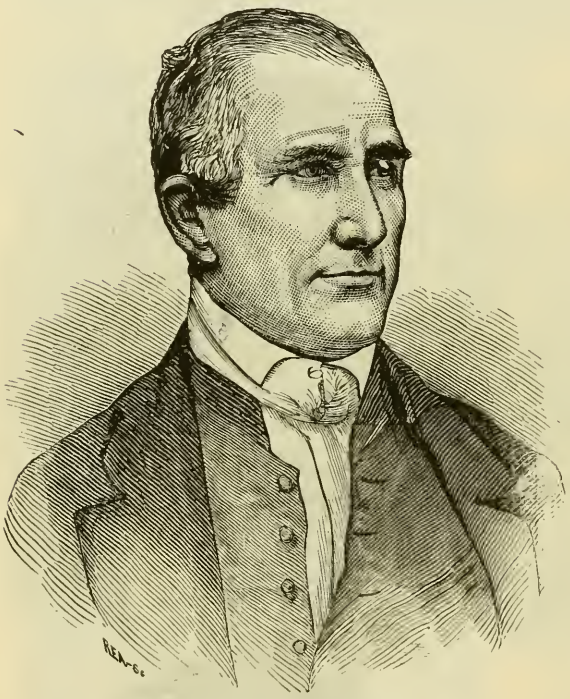
The fort at Goliad was held by a force of three hundred and thirty Texans, under Colonel Fanning, a native of Georgia. On the twenty-seventh of March it was attacked by the Mexican army. The garrison maintained a gallant defence, but their resources being exhausted, and the Mexicans being reinforced during the night, Fanning decided to surrender his force, if he could obtain honorable terms. He proposed to Santa

SANTA ANNA

Anna to lay down his arms and surrender the post on condition that he and his men should be allowed and assisted to return to the United States. The proposition was accepted by Santa Anna, and the terms of the surrender were formally drawn up and were signed by each commander. As soon as the surrender was made, however, and the arms of the Texans were delivered, Santa

Anna, in base violation of his pledge, caused Fanning and the survivors of the garrison, to the number of three hundred men, to be put to death.

The massacres of the Alamo and Goliad, and the steady advance of the Mexican army under Santa Anna caused a feeling of profound alarm throughout the new republic. The government was removed temporarily to Galveston, and General Houston retreated



GENERAL HOUSTON.

behind the San Jacinto. Santa Anna pursued the Texan forces, and at length came up with them on the banks of that stream. Houston had but seven hundred and fifty men with him, and these were imperfectly armed and without discipline.

With this force he surprised the Mexican camp, on the twenty-first of April, and routed the Mexican army, inflicting upon it a loss of over six hundred killed, and taking more than eight hundred prisoners. Santa Anna himself was among the prisoners. Houston at once entered into negotiations with him for the withdrawal of the Mexican forces from Texas. This was done at once, and the independence of Texas was achieved. Santa Anna also recognized the independence of the new republic, but the Mexican Congress refused to confirm this act.

Houston was now the idol of the Texan people as the deliverer of their country from the hated Mexicans. At the next general election he was chosen President of the republic, and was inaugurated on the twenty-second of October, 1836. General Mirabeau B. Lamar was the third President of the republic of Texas, and entered upon his office in 1838. He was succeeded in 1844 by Anson Jones, the fourth President. The territory of the republic was sufficiently large to make five States the size of New York, and its climate and soil were among the most delightful and fertile in the world. It contained a population of about two hundred thousand, and was increasing rapidly in inhabitants and in prosperity.

On the third of March, 1837, the independence of the republic of Texas was acknowledged by the United States, and in 1839 by France and England. Being young and feeble, and being settled almost entirely by Americans, the people of Texas at an early day came to the conclusion that their best interests required them to seek a union with the United States, and as early as August, 1837, a proposition was submitted to Mr. Van Buren looking to such a union. It was declined by him, but the question was taken up by the press and people of the Union, and was discussed with the greatest interest and activity.

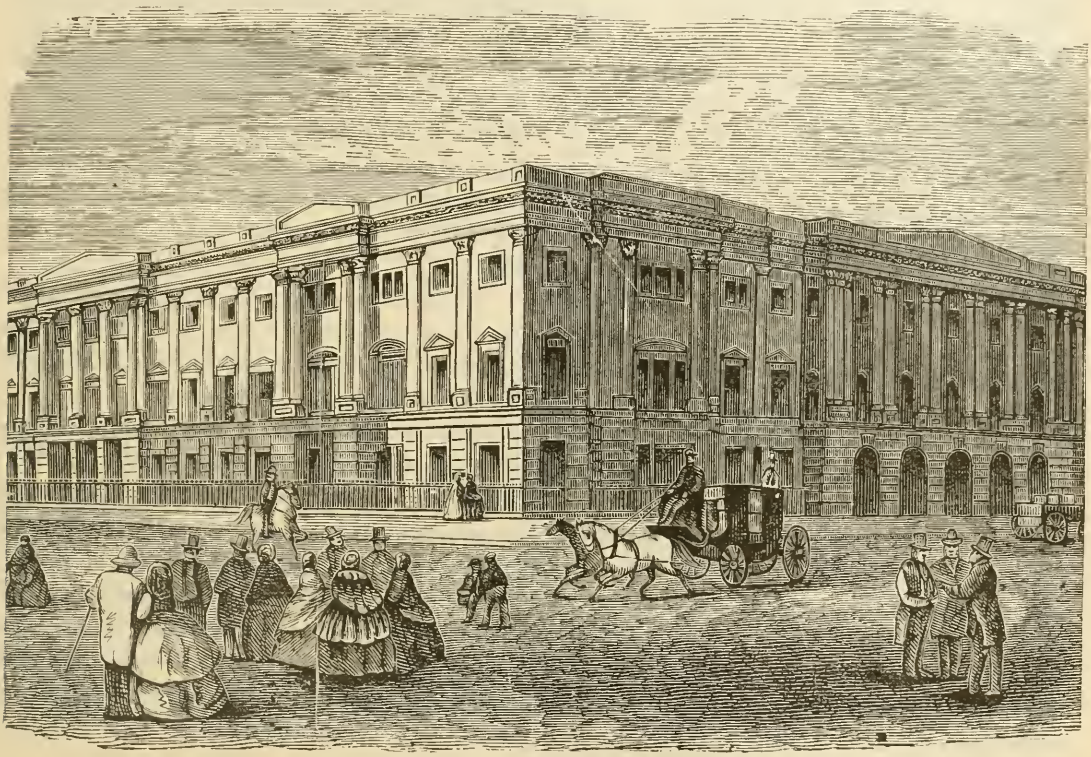
The south was unanimously in favor of the annexation of Texas, as it was a region in which slave labor would be particularly

profitable; and a strong party in the north opposed the annexation for the reason that it would inevitably extend the area of slavery. An additional argument against annexation was that it would involve a war with Mexico, which had never acknowledged the independence of Texas.

In April, 1844, Texas formally applied for admission into the United States, and a treaty for that purpose was negotiated with her by the government of this country. It was rejected by the Senate.

In the fall of 1844 the Presidential election took place. The leading political question of the day was the annexation of Texas. It was advocated by the administration of President Tyler and by the Democratic party. This party also made the claim of the United States to Oregon one of the leading issues of the campaign. Its candidates were James K. Polk, of Tennessee, and George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania. The Whig party supported Henry Clay, of Kentucky, and Theodore Frelinghuysen, of New Jersey, and opposed the annexation of Texas.

During this campaign, which was one of unusual excitement, the Anti-slavery party made its appearance for the first time as a distinct political organization, and nominated James G. Birney as its candidate for the Presidency.



GENERAL POST OFFICE WASHINGTON.

The result of the campaign was a decisive victory for the Democrats. This success was generally regarded as an emphatic expression of the popular will respecting the Texas and Oregon questions. Mr. Birney did not receive a single electoral

vote, and of the popular vote only sixty-four thousand six hundred and fifty-three ballots were cast for him.

When Congress met in December, 1844, the efforts for the annexation of Texas were renewed. A proposition was made to receive Texas into the Union by a joint resolution of Congress. A bill for this purpose passed the House of Representatives, but the Senate added an amendment appointing commissioners to negotiate with Mexico for the annexation of Texas, which she still claimed as a part of her territory. The President was authorized by a clause in these resolutions to adopt either the House or the Senate plan of annexation, and on the second of March, 1845, the resolutions were adopted. Senator Benton, of Missouri, the author of the Senate plan, was of the opinion that the matter would be left to Mr. Polk, the President-elect, to be conducted by him; and that gentleman had expressed his intention to carry out the Senate plan, as he hoped an amicable arrangement could be made with Mexico. Mr. Tyler, however, determined not to leave the annexation of Texas to his successor, and at once adopted the plan proposed in the House resolutions, and on the night of Sunday March 3d, a messenger was despatched with all speed to Texas to lay the proposition before the authorities of that State. It was accepted by them, and on the fourth of July, 1845, Texas became one of the United States.

The area thus added to the territory of the Union comprised two hundred and thirty-seven thousand five hundred and four square miles. It was provided by the act of admission that four additional States might be formed out of the territory of Texas, when the population should increase to an extent which should make such a step desirable. Those States lying north of the Missouri Compromise line—36° 30′ north latitude—were to be free States; those south of that line were to be free or slaveholding, "as the people of each State asking admission may desire." To Texas was reserved the right to refuse to allow the division of her territory.

On the third of March, 1845, the President approved an act of Congress admitting the Territories of Iowa and Florida into the Union as States.

No President has ever been more unpopular during his administration than Mr. Tyler. His administration speaks for itself, however, and bears out the truth of his memorable words: "I appeal from the vituperation of the present day to the pen of impartial history, in the full confidence that neither my motives nor my acts will bear the interpretation which has, for sinister purposes, been placed upon them."

CHAPTER XXXVII

The Administration of James K. Polk—The War With Mexico.

The Oregon Question—Position of President Polk respecting it—The Question Settled—Treaty for Settlement of Claims against Mexico—Mexico Resents the Annexation of Texas—General Taylor Ordered to Texas—He Advances to the Rio Grande—Battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma—The War with Mexico Begun—Invasion of Mexico—Occupation of Matamoras—Action of the United States Government—Taylor Advances into the Interior—The Storming and Capture of Monterey—The Armistice—Return of Santa Anna to Mexico—President Polk Duped—Santa Anna Seizes the Mexican Government—General Wool Joins General Taylor—Troops Taken from Taylor's Army—Advance of the Mexicans—Battle of Buena Vista—Conquest of California by Fremont and Stockton—Occupation of Santa Fé—New Mexico Conquered—Doniphan's March—Occupation of Chihuahua—Sailing of Scott's Expedition—Reduction of Vera Cruz—Santa Anna Collects a New Army—Battle of Cerro Gordo—Occupation of Puebla by Scott—Trouble with Mr. Trist—Vigorous Measures of Santa Anna—Scott Advances upon the City of Mexico—El Peñon Turned—Battles of Contreras and Churubusco—Capture of Molino del Rey—Storming of Chapultepec—Capture of the City of Mexico—Siege of Puebla Raised—Flight of Santa Anna—Treaty of Peace Negotiated—Close of the War—Acquisition of California and New Mexico—Discovery of Gold in California—Rapid Emigration to the Pacific—Death of John Quincy Adams—The Wilmot Proviso—Revival of the Slavery Question—General Taylor Elected President.

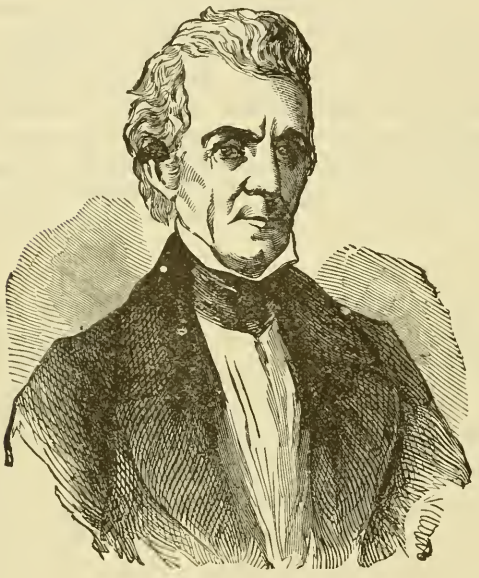
THE inauguration of James K. Polk, as President of the United States, took place on the fourth of March, 1845. He had served the country as governor of the State of Tennessee, and for fourteen years had been a member of the House of Representatives in Congress from that State, and had been several times chosen speaker of that body. His cabinet was selected from the first men of his party. James Buchanan was secretary of state; Robert J. Walker was secretary of the treasury; William L. Marcy, secretary of war, and George Bancroft, the historian, secretary of the navy.

Two important questions presented themselves to the new administration for settlement: the troubles with Mexico growing out of the annexation of Texas, and the arrangement of the northwestern boundary of the United States.

The question of the northwestern boundary had been left unsettled by the treaty of Washington in 1842. Great Britain was anxious to arrange the matter, and late in the year 1842 Mr. Fox, the British minister at Washington, proposed to Mr. Webster, then secretary of state, to open negotiations. The British proposition was accepted, but nothing further was done until February, 1844, when Sir Richard Packenham, the British minister at Washington, proposed to take up the question of the Oregon boundary and settle it. Mr. Upshur, the secretary of state, accepted the offer, but was killed a few days later by the explosion on board the "Princeton." Six months later, Sir Richard Packenham renewed the proposal to Mr. Calhoun, who had become secretary of state, and negotiations were entered upon in earnest.

The territory of Oregon lay between the forty-second and fifty-fourth parallels of north latitude, and extended from the Rocky mountains on the east to the Pacific ocean on the west. This region was originally claimed by Spain, by whose subjects it was first

discovered. At the cession of Florida, Spain ceded to the United States all her territory north of the forty-second parallel of north latitude, from the head waters of the Arkansas to the Pacific. Mexico, upon achieving her independence, had acknowledged by a treaty with the United States the validity of this boundary. The line of fifty-four degrees forty minutes north latitude was established by treaty between the United States, Great Britain and Russia as the southern boundary of the Russian possessions in America.



JAMES K. POLK.

The United States claimed the entire region of Oregon in virtue of the cession of Spain in the Florida treaty; the discoveries of Captain Gray of Boston, who circumnavigated the globe, and in 1792 discovered to a certain extent and explored the Columbia river; the explorations of Lewis and Clarke in 1805 and 1806 of the southern main branch of the Columbia, and of the river itself from the mouth of that branch to the sea; and the settlement of Astoria, planted at the mouth of the Columbia in 1811 by John Jacob Astor of New York. Oregon was also claimed by England, who also rested her pretensions on discovery, and on the settlement made by the Northwest Company on Fraser's river in 1806, and on another near the head waters of the north branch of the Columbia.

"All of Oregon, or None."

In 1818 the United States and Great Britain had agreed upon the forty-ninth degree of north latitude, as the boundary between the United States and British America from the Lake of the Woods to the summit of the Rocky mountains. Mr. Calhoun now opened the negotiations by proposing to continue this line to the Pacific. The British minister would not consent to this, but proposed to extend the forty-ninth parallel from the mountains to the north branch of the Columbia, and then to make the boundary follow that stream from this point of intersection to the sea. Mr. Calhoun at once declined to accept this boundary, and the further consideration of the subject was postponed until Packenham could receive additional instructions from his government.

During the Presidential campaign of 1844 the Democratic party adopted as its watchword, "all of Oregon or none," and the excitement upon the question ran high. The election of Mr. Polk showed that the American people were resolved to insist upon their claim to Oregon, and when the new President in his inaugural address took the bold ground that the American title to "Oregon territory" "was dear and indisputable," and declared his intention to maintain it at the cost of war with England, the matter assumed a serious aspect, and for a while it seemed that party passion would involve the two countries in hostilities. President Polk, upon a calmer consideration of the subject, caused the secretary of state to reopen the negotiations by proposing to Great Britain the forty-

ninth parallel of latitude as a boundary. The British minister declined the proposition, and the matter was dropped.

According to the treaties of 1818 and 1828, the joint occupation of Oregon could be terminated by either party by giving the other twelve months' notice. The President now proposed to give the required notice, which was done by a resolution of Congress. This put an end to the old arrangement, and compelled the two countries to make a new settlement of the difficulty; and this was the object of the President in terminating the joint occupation.

The subject was brought to the notice of the British Parliament by Sir Robert Peel who expressed his regret that the last offer of the United States had been declined. The British ministry decided at length to reopen negotiations, and Sir Richard Packenham shortly after communicated to Mr. Buchanan the willingness of his government to accept the forty-ninth parallel as a boundary.

The time at which the joint occupation would terminate was rapidly drawing to a close, and the President was anxious to settle the matter, but at the same time was not willing to assume the responsibility of accepting a boundary which fell so far short of the popular expectations. At the suggestion of Senator Benton, of Missouri, he asked the advice of the Senate as to the propriety of accepting the British offer, and pledged himself to be guided by its decision. The Senate advised him to accept it, and when the treaty was sent to it, ratified it after a warm debate

A BASIN ON THE COLUMBIA RIVER, OREGON—AND MOUNTAIN-PEAK IN THE DISTANCE.

extending over two days. Thus the matter was brought to a close.

By the treaty, which was concluded in 1846, the forty-ninth parallel of north latitude was made the boundary between the United States and the British possessions, from the summit of the Rocky Mountains to the middle of the channel between Vancouver's Island and the mainland, and thence southerly through the middle of the Straits of San Juan de Fuca to the Pacific. The navigation of the Columbia river and its main northern branch was made free to both parties.

Trouble with Mexico.

In the meantime the Mexican difficulty had been found much harder of settlement. Mexico had never acknowledged the independence of Texas, and since the defeat at San Jacinto had repeatedly threatened to restore her authority over the Texans by force of arms. She warmly resented the annexation of Texas by the United States, and a few days after that event was completed, General Almonte, the Mexican minister at Washington, entered a formal protest against the course of the United States, demanded his passports and left the country.

Some years before this a number of American ships trading with Mexican ports had been seized and plundered by the Mexican authorities, who also confiscated the property of a number of American residents in that country. The sufferers by these outrages appealed for redress to the government of the United States, which had repeatedly tried to negotiate with Mexico for the collection of these claims, which amounted to six millions of dollars. Mexico made several promises of settlement, but failed to comply with them. In 1840, however, a new treaty was made between that country and the United States, and Mexico pledged herself to pay the American claims in twenty annual instalments of three hundred thousand dollars each. Three of these instalments had been paid at the time of the annexation of Texas; but Mexico now refused to make any further payment.

Troops Sent to Texas.

Mexico claimed that the limits of Texas properly ended at the Neuces river, while the Texans insisted that their boundary was the Rio Grande. Thus the region between these two rivers became a debatable land, claimed by both parties, and a source of great and immediate danger. It was evident that Mexico was about to occupy this region with her troops, and the legislature of Texas, alarmed by the threatening attitude of that country, called upon the United States government to protect its territory. The President at once sent General Zachary Taylor with a force of fifteen hundred regular troops, called the "army of occupation," to "take position in the country between the Neuces and the Rio Grande, and to repel any invasion of the Texan territory."

General Taylor accordingly took position at Corpus Christi, at the mouth of the Neuces, in September, 1845, and remained there until the spring of 1846. At the same time a squadron of war vessels under Commodore Conner was despatched to the Gulf to coöperate with General Taylor. Both of these officers "were ordered to commit no act of hostility against Mexico unless she declared war, or was herself the aggressor by striking the first blow."

At the commencement of the dispute between the two countries, Herrera was President of Mexico. Although diplomatic communications had ceased between the United States and Mexico, he was anxious to settle the quarrel by negotiation, but at the Presidential election held about this time

Herrera was defeated, and Paredes, who was bitterly hostile to the United States, was chosen President of the Mexican republic. Paredes openly avowed his determination to drive the Americans beyond the Neuces.

In February, 1846, General Taylor was ordered by President Polk to advance from the Neuces to a point on the Rio Grande, opposite the Mexican town of Matamoras, and establish there a fortified post, in order to check the Mexican forces which were assembling there in large numbers for the purpose of invading Texas. Taylor at once set out, and leaving the greater part of his stores at Point Isabel, on the Gulf, advanced to the Rio Grande, and built a fort and established a camp opposite and within cannon shot of Matamoras. General Ampudia, commanding the Mexican forces at Matamoras, immediately notified General Taylor that this was an act of war upon Mexican soil, and demanded that he should "break up his camp and retire beyond the Neuces" within twenty-four hours.

First Blood Shed.

Taylor replied that he was acting in accordance with the orders of his government, which was alone responsible for his conduct, and that he should maintain the position he had chosen. He pushed forward the work on his fortifications with energy, and kept a close watch upon the Mexicans. Neither commander was willing to take the responsibility of beginning the war, and Ampudia, notwithstanding his threat, remained inactive. His course did not satisfy his govment, and he was removed and General Arista appointed in his place. Arista at once began hostilities by interposing detachments of his army between Taylor's force and his depot of supplies at Point Isabel. On the twenty-sixth of April Taylor sent a party of sixty dragoons under Captain Thornton to reconnoitre the Mexican lines. The dragoons were surprised with a loss of sixteen killed. The remainder were made prisoners, and Thornton alone escaped. This was the first blood shed in the war with Mexico, the beginning of the struggle.

Gallant Major Brown.

A day or two later, being informed by Captain Walker, who, with his Texan Rangers was guarding the line of communication with Point Isabel, that the Mexicans were threatening the latter place in heavy force, General Taylor left Major Brown with three hundred men to hold the fort, and marched to Point Isabel to relieve that place. He agreed with Major Brown that if the fort should be attacked or hard pressed, the latter should notify him of his danger by firing heavy signal guns at certain intervals. He reached Point Isabel, twenty miles distant, on the second of May without meeting any opposition on the march.

General Arista, attributing Taylor's withdrawal to fear, determined to capture the fortification on the opposite side of the river. On the third of May he opened fire upon it from a heavy battery at Matamoras, and sent a large force across the Rio Grande, which took position in the rear of the fort and intrenched themselves there. In the face of this double attack the little garrison defended themselves bravely, but at length Major Brown fell mortally wounded. The command devolved upon Captain Hawkins, who now felt himself justified in warning Taylor of his danger, and began to fire the signal guns agreed upon.

Taylor was joined at Point Isabel by a small detachment, and his force was increased to twenty-three hundred men. He listened anxiously for the booming of the signal guns from the fort on the Rio Grande, and at length they were heard. He knew that the

need of assistance must be great, as the little band in the fort had held out so long without calling for help, and he at once set out to join them. He left Point Isabel on the seventh of May, taking with him a heavy supply train. The steady firing of the signal guns from Fort Brown (for so the work was afterwards named in honor of its gallant commander) urged the army to its greatest exertions.

Ringgold's light battery on the right, Duncan's battery on the left, and a battery of eighteen-pounders in the centre. The artillery was thrown well in front of the infantry, and the order was given to advance. The Mexicans at once opened fire with their batteries, but the distance was too great to accomplish anything. The American batteries did not reply until they had gotten within easy range, when they opened a fire

BATTLE OF PALO ALTO.

On the eighth of May the Mexican army, six thousand strong, was discovered holding a strong position in front of a chaparral, near the small stream called the Palo Alto, intending to dispute the advance of the Americans. Taylor promptly made his dispositions to attack them. His troops were ordered to drink from the little stream and to fill their canteens. The train was closed up, and the line was formed with Major

the accuracy and rapidity of which astonished the Mexicans.

Their lines were broken and they fell back, and the Americans advanced steadily through the chaparral, which had been set on fire by the discharge of cannon, until a new position within close range was reached. Paying no attention to the Mexican artillery, the American guns directed their fire upon the enemy's infantry and cavalry, and broke

them again and again. The battle lasted five hours and ceased at nightfall. It was fought entirely by the artillery of the two armies, and was won by the superior handling and precision of the American guns.

The loss of the Mexicans was four hundred killed and wounded; that of the Americans nine killed and forty-four wounded. Early in the battle Major Ringgold was mortally wounded and died a little later. He was regarded as one of the most gifted officers of the army, and to him was chiefly due the precision and rapidity of movement acquired by the "flying artillery" of the American army, which were so successfully tested during this war.

The American army encamped on the battle-field, and the next morning, May 9th, as the Mexicans had retreated, leaving their dead unburied, resumed its advance. In the afternoon the Mexicans were discovered occupying a much stronger position than they had held at Palo Alto. Their line was formed behind a ravine, called Resaca de la Palma, or the Dry River of Palms. Their flanks were protected by the thick chaparral, and their artillery was thrown forward beyond the ravine and protected by an intrenchment, and swept the road by which the Americans must advance. During the night fresh troops had joined the Mexican army, and had increased their force to seven thousand men.

MAJOR RINGGOLD MORTALLY WOUNDED.

Taylor formed his line with his artillery in the centre. The artillery was ordered to advance along the road commanded by the Mexican battery, and the infantry were directed to move as rapidly as possible through the chaparral, and drive out the Mexican sharpshooters. The infantry executed this order in handsome style, but the chaparral was so dense that each man was

obliged to act for himself as he forced his way throught it. The Mexican battery was handled with great skill and coolness, and held the centre in check until some time after the infantry had forced their way close to the edge of the ravine.

At this juncture Captain May was ordered to charge the Mexican guns, and started down the road at a trot. As he reached the position of the American artillery, Lieutenant Ridgely suggested that May should halt and allow him to draw the Mexican fire. Ridgely opened a rapid fire on the Mexican guns, which answered immediately. At the same moment May dashed at the Mexican battery with his dragoons, and reached it before the cannoneers could reload their pieces. They were sabred at their guns, and the battery was carried. Captain May himself made a prisoner of General La Vega, as the latter was in the act of discharging one of the guns. Leaving the battery to the American infantry which now hurried forward to secure it, the dragoons charged the Mexican centre and broke it. The whole American line then advanced rapidly; the Mexicans gave way, and were soon flying in utter confusion towards the Rio Grande, which they crossed in such haste that many of them were drowned in the attempt to reach the Mexican shore.

CHARGE OF THE DRAGOONS.

General Arista, the Mexican commander, fled alone from the field, leaving all his private and official papers behind him. The Americans lost one hundred and twenty-two men killed and wounded; the Mexicans twelve hundred. All the Mexican artillery, two thousand stand of arms, and six hundred mules were captured by the Americans.

General Taylor advanced from the battle-field to Fort Brown, the garrison of which had heard the distant roar of the battle, and

had seen the flight of the Mexicans across the Rio Grande.

The defeat of the Mexicans at Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma had greatly disheartened them. They not only abandoned their intention to invade Texas, but gave up all hope of holding the Rio Grande frontier. On the night of the seventeenth of May their army evacuated Matamoras, and retreated upon Monterey. On the eighteenth the American army crossed the Rio Grande, and occupied Matamoras. General Taylor scrupulously respected the municipal laws of the town, and protected the citizens in the exercise of their civil and religious privileges. All supplies needed by the troops were purchased at a liberal price, and no plundering or disorder was allowed or attempted.

In the meantime the news of the attack upon the dragoons under Captain Thornton had reached the United States, and with it the rumor that the American army was confronted on the Texan side of the Rio Grande by a vastly superior force of Mexicans, and that its destruction was almost certain. The President sent a special message to Congress on the eleventh of May, in which he informed that body that "war existed by the act of Mexico," and called upon Congress to recognize the state of war, and to provide for its support by appropriating the necessary funds, and to authorize him to call for volunteers.

Under the impression that the perilous situation of Taylor's army made instant action necessary, Congress appropriated ten millions of dollars for the prosecution of the war, and authorized the President to accept the services of fifty thousand volunteers. One-half of this force was to be mustered into the service; the remainder held as a reserve. The President's call was responded to with enthusiasm all over the land, and in the course of a few weeks two hundred thousand volunteers offered their services. General Wool was ordered to muster the volunteers accepted by the President into the service.

Preparations were made by the American government to prosecute the war with vigor At the suggestion of General Scott a comprehensive plan of operations was adopted. Two separate expeditions were to be organized. One, called the "Army of the West," was to assemble at Fort Leavenworth, on the Missouri, to cross the plains and the Rocky mountains, and to invade and conquer the northern provinces of Mexico. A powerful fleet was to be sent around Cape Horn to attack the Mexican ports on the Pacific and coöperate with the Army of the West. A second force, called the "Army of the Centre," was to advance from Texas to the city of Mexico, and, if it was thought best, was to coöperate with the "Army of

GENERAL WINFIELD SCOTT.

Occupation" under General Taylor. As we shall see, the plan was afterwards modified, and the advance upon the Mexican capital was made from Vera Cruz on the Gulf of Mexico.

Towards the last of May the news of the brilliant victories on the Rio Grande was received at Washington, and was hailed with rejoicings throughout the Union. On the thirtieth of May Congress conferred upon General Taylor the rank of major-general by brevet as a reward for his victories.

On the twenty-third of May the Mexican Congress formally declared war against the United States, and the call of the Mexican government for volunteers for the defence of that country was responded to with enthusiasm.

Thanks to the energy of General Wool, twelve thousand volunteers were mustered into the service of the United States in six weeks. Nine thousand of these were sent forward rapidly to reinforce General Taylor, and with the remainder Wool marched to San Antonio, in Texas, to await further orders, and be ready for action.

Strong Intrenchments.

General Taylor had been delayed at Matamoras for three months by the weakness of his force; but, as soon as reinforcements reached him, he prepared to advance into the interior. His first movement was directed against the city of Monterey, the capital of the State of New Leon, where the Mexicans had collected an army. His army numbered about nine thousand men of all arms, and of these a little over twenty-three hundred men were detached for garrisons, leaving an active force of six thousand six hundred and seventy men. On the twentieth of August General Worth's division marched from Matamoras, and a fortnight later General Taylor set out from the Rio Grande with the main army. On the ninth of September the American forces encamped within three miles of Monterey.

Monterey is an old Spanish city, nearly three hundred years old. It lies in a beautiful valley, and is about two miles in length, by one mile in breadth. The mountains approach close to it, and protect it on all sides but two. On one of these sides it is approached from the northeast by the road from Matamoras, and on the other by a rocky gorge through which runs the road connecting the city with Saltillo. The city has three large plazas or public squares, and is built like the towns of old Spain, with narrow streets, and houses of stone one story in height, with strong walls of masonry rising about three feet above the flat roofs. The city itself is enclosed with strong walls, intended for artillery.

Battle of Monterey.

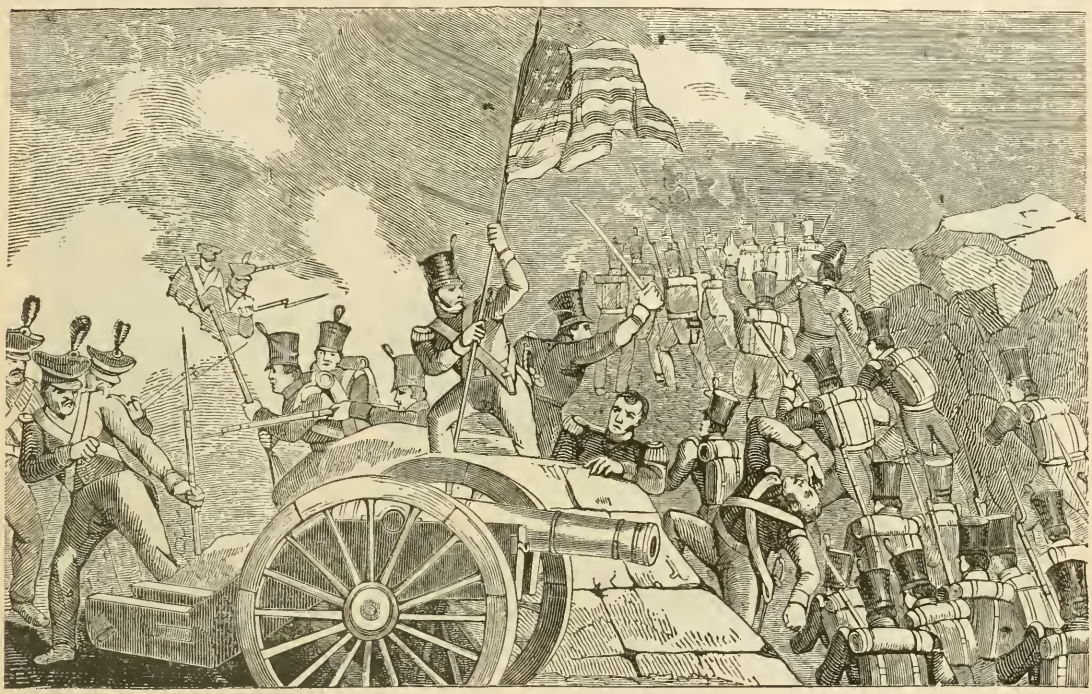
Every means of defence had been exhausted by the Mexicans. Forty-two heavy cannon were mounted on the city walls, the streets were barricaded, and the flat roofs and stone walls of the houses were arranged for infantry. Each house was a separate fortress. A strongly fortified building of heavy stone, called the Bishop's palace, stood on the side of a hill without the city walls, and on the opposite side of the city were redoubts held by infantry and artillery. The command of Monterey and its defences was held by General Ampudia, and the garrison consisted of ten thousand veteran troops.

Ten days were passed by the American army in reconnoitering the town, its peculiar situation rendering such movements very difficult. On the afternoon of the twentieth of September General Worth was ordered to turn the hill on which stood the Bishop's palace, gain the Saltillo road, and carry the works in that direction. This movement was

successfully accomplished; but in order to gain the desired position Worth was obliged to cut a new road across the mountain. His troops bivouacked for the night just out of range of the enemy's guns. During the night the Americans built a battery to command the Mexican citadel.

On the morning of the twenty-first of September the American artillery opened fire on Monterey, and the infantry advanced to carry the Mexican works. The brigade of General Quitman carried a strong work in the lower part of the town, and at the same time General Butler, with a part of his division, forced his way into the town on the right. While these operations were in progress General Worth's division seized the Saltillo road, and secured the enemy's line of retreat. Several fortified positions along the heights were also carried, and their guns turned upon the Bishop's palace

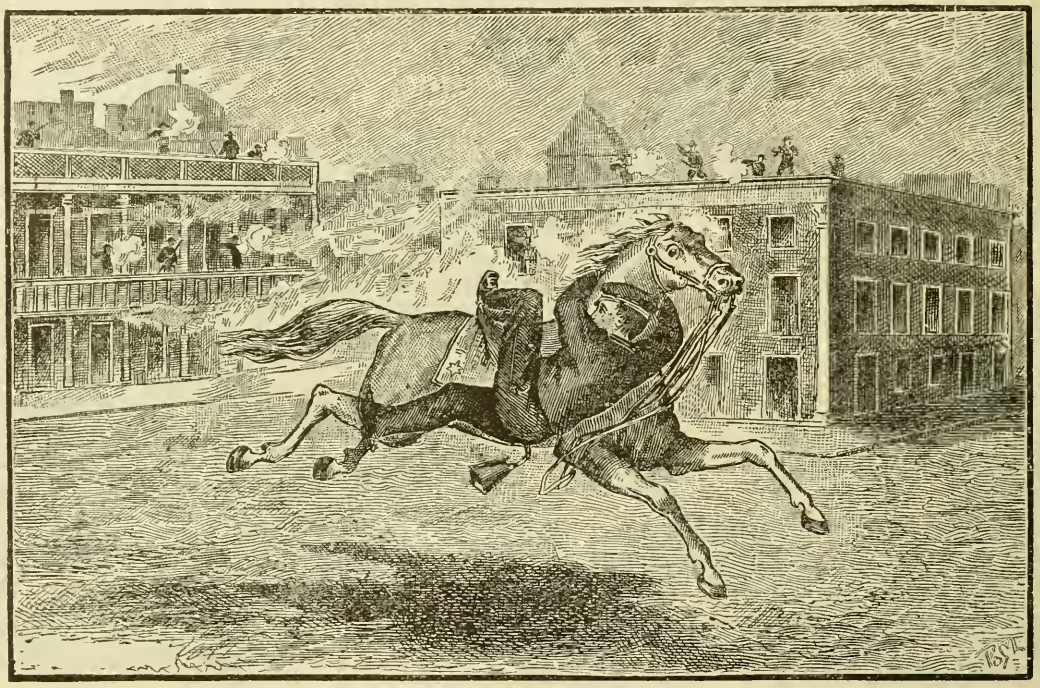
During the night of the twenty-first the Mexicans evacuated the lower part of the city, but kept their hold upon the citadel and the upper town, from which they maintained a vigorous fire upon the American positions. At daybreak, on the twenty-second, Worth's division, advancing in the midst of a fog and rain, carried the crest commanding the Bishop's palace, and by noon had captured the palace itself. The guns of the captured works were now directed upon the enemy in the city below.



CAPTURE OF A BATTERY AT MONTEREY.

The enemy had fortified the city so thoroughly that the Americans were not only forced to carry the various barricades in succession, but were compelled to break through the walls of the fortified houses, and advance from house to house in this way. One or two field pieces were drawn up to the flat roofs, and the Mexicans were driven from point to point during the twenty-second and

twenty-third, until they were confined to the citadel and plaza. On the night of the twenty-third General Ampudia opened negotiations, and on the morning of the twenty-fourth surrendered the town and garrison to General Taylor. The Mexican soldiers were allowed to march out with the honors of war. General Taylor was induced to grant this concession by his generous desire to spare the people of the city the sufferings



LIEUTENANT GRANT GOING FOR AMMUNITION AT MONTEREY.

which would have been caused by a prolonged defence.

The Mexican commander represented to General Taylor that the Mexican government was sincerely anxious for peace, and that it would respond favorably to any fair propositions upon this subject that might be laid before it. In order to afford an opportunity for such an arrangement of the war, and influenced by the scarcity of provisions—the American army having at the time but ten days' rations—Taylor agreed to a cessation of hostilities for eight weeks, subject to the consent of his government. The Mexican army withdrew from Monterey, and an American garrison, under General Worth, as governor, occupied the city. The main body of Taylor's army then went into camp at Walnut Springs, three miles distant from Monterey. The Americans lost four hundred and eighty-eight men, killed and wounded, in the storming of Monterey. The Mexican loss was much greater.

General Grant, then an unknown young lieutenant, was in the battle of Monterey, and distinguished himself on account of "gallant and meritorious services." Several times during the battle he demonstrated his superior judgment and courage, not more in the fierce charge than in volunteering to make a dangerous ride under fire, in search of ammunition.

In the meantime the government of the United States had been led into a terrible blunder by its desire to bring the war to a speedy close. Santa Anna, who had been driven out of Mexico by one of the numerous revolutions in that country, was living in exile at Havana. He declared that if he were allowed to return to Mexico he would use his influence in favor of peace, and would secure a treaty for the accomplishment of that end. He was sure he could carry out this scheme, and only needed to be sustained by the United States government with the sum of three or four millions of dollars to enable him to get control of the Mexican government. President Polk was completely duped by the "illustrious exile," and not only urged Congress to appropriate the sum of two millions of dollars to assist Santa Anna, but issued an order to Commodore Conner, commanding the American fleet in the Gulf, to permit Santa Anna to pass through his lines and return to Mexico. Santa Anna at once availed himself of this order, and landing at Vera Cruz hastened into the interior.

Manifesto by Santa Anna.

Once in Mexico, Santa Anna thought no more of his promises to President Polk. He set to work to gain possession of the government, but not with a view to making peace. He issued a manifesto, in which he called on his countrymen to rally under his banner for the defence of their homes and country. He assured them of his undying hatred of the "perfidious Yankees," pointed to the reverses of the government of Paredes, and declared that he alone could save the country. His appeals were successful. The Mexican people rose at his call, deposed Paredes, and elected Santa Anna President. The repeated defeats of their armies were forgotten in the new enthusiasm which Santa Anna's presence and proclamations aroused, and in the course of a few months that leader found himself at the head of a well-equipped army of twenty thousand men, which was being steadily increased by the arrival of fresh recruits.

Justice to the Enemy.

In the meantime General Wool, with a reinforcement of three thousand troops, had marched from San Antonio to join General Taylor. He had reached Monclova, about seventy miles from Monterey, when he heard of the capture of the latter place by Taylor. His route had lain across an uninhabited and desert region, in which the troops suffered greatly for want of water. He was directed by General Taylor to take position in a fertile district in the province of Durango, where he could obtain supplies for his own command as well as for the army at Monterey. General Wool conciliated the people of the region occupied by him by protecting them in their liberties and property, and paying fair prices for all the supplies furnished by them. The Mexicans were far better treated by the conquering army than they had been by their own rulers.

In accordance with orders received from Washington General Taylor put an end to the armistice on the thirteenth of November. On the fifteenth General Worth, with seven hundred men, occupied Saltillo, the capital of the State of Coahuila. Leaving a garrison in Monterey, under General Butler, Taylor moved towards the coast to attack Tampico. Upon reaching Victoria, the capital of the State of Tamaulipas, he learned that Tampico had surrendered to the United States squadron, under Commodore Conner, on the fourteenth of November. Victoria was occupied on the twenty-ninth of December. The troops under General Wool were now ordered to join General Worth at Saltillo,

and General Taylor prepared to resume his forward movement into the heart of Mexico. At this juncture his offensive operations were suddenly brought to a close.

Massing the Forces.

The plan of the invasion adopted by the government of the United States had been so far modified that the "Army of the Centre," under General Winfield Scott, was ordered to capture Vera Cruz, the principal Mexican port on the Gulf, and advance upon the city of Mexico from that point. Troops in sufficient numbers could not be drawn from the United States, and General Scott, as commander-in-chief, decided to draw the desired number of men from Taylor's army. The order for the withdrawal of these troops reached General Taylor just as he was about to resume active operations. Taylor was keenly disappointed at being thus condemned to inactivity, but like the true soldier that he was, at once obeyed the orders sent him.

Generals Worth and Quitman, with their divisions, and the greater portion of the volunteers who had come out with General Wool, were at once despatched to the Gulf coast to join the expedition against Vera Cruz. The withdrawal of these troops left General Taylor with a very small force. During the month of January and the early part of February, 1847, reinforcements from the United States increased his army to about six thousand men. A portion of these was placed in garrison at Monterey and Saltillo, leaving General Taylor about forty-seven hundred effective troops, of whom but six hundred were regulars.

Early in January, 1847, General Scott sent Lieutenant Richey with an escort of cavalry to convey a despatch to General Taylor. Lieutenant Richey was killed by the Mexicans on the way, and his despatches were forwarded to Santa Anna, who learned from them the American plan for the invasion of Mexico. He at once resolved upon his own course. Relying upon the strength of Vera Cruz to hold Scott's army in check, he determined to attack General Taylor at once, and crush him. By the most energetic and despotic measures he silenced the opposition which prevailed in the city of Mexico, and obtained both men and money for his attempt. On the twenty-sixth of January he began his march upon Saltillo with twenty-three thousand well-armed and equipped men, and twenty pieces of artillery.

Rapid Marches.

The Mexican army had reached San Louis Potosi, about sixty miles south of Saltillo, when General Wool, commanding at the latter place, learned of their approach. He at once notified General Taylor, who advanced with his whole effective force from Monterey to Saltillo. As the enemy continued to approach, Taylor left his stores at Saltillo, and moved rapidly to Agua Nueva, eighteen miles beyond Saltillo, on the road to San Louis Potosi. His design was to secure the southern end of the pass through the Sierra Nevada. With this pass in possession of the Americans the Mexican army would be compelled to fight at once, as the country in their rear was incapable of supplying them with provisions. The reports of the reconnoitering parties made it evident that the Mexican force was vastly superior to that of the Americans, and General Taylor also learned that a strong body of Mexican cavalry, under General Minon, was some distance to the left of his position, which could be turned. A daring reconnoissance was made by Major M'Culloch, of the Texan Rangers. He entered the Mexican camp, passed through it, and obtained accurate information of their numbers, and regained his own lines in safety.

Upon receipt of M'Culloch's intelligence, and the report of the effort of the Mexican cavalry to turn his left, General Taylor fell back from Agua Nueva to a new position, eleven miles higher up the valley on the twenty-first of February.

The withdrawal of the American army was made in good time. Santa Anna had sent Minon with the cavalry to gain the rear of Taylor's army, and at the same time endeavored, by a forced march of fifty miles, to surprise General Taylor at Agua Nueva. Upon arriving in front of that place he found to his astonishment and disappointment that Taylor had abandoned his position. Interpreting this movement as a flight, the Mexican commander pushed on in pursuit of his adversary, and came up with him on the morning of the twenty-second of February.

MEXICAN CART AND OXEN.

The position chosen by General Taylor was at the north end of the valley known as Las Angosturas, or the Narrows, and near the hacienda or plantation known as Buena Vista, from which latter place the battle took its name. It was one of great strength. Its flanks were protected by the mountains which arose abruptly from the defile, and the ground in front was broken by numerous ravines and gullies. The American forces were disposed so as to secure every advantage afforded by the nature of the ground and the road through the pass—the key to the whole position—was swept by the fire of the artillery. The troops were in high spirits. It was Washington's birthday, and this incident was generally commented upon as a good omen.

About noon a Mexican officer brought a note to General Taylor, in which Santa Anna demanded the surrender of the American army. This demand was refused, and skirmishing at once began. During the afternoon Santa Anna sent a force under General Ampudia to ascend the mountains and turn the American left. This brought on severe skirmishing in this quarter, but nothing definite was accomplished during the afternoon. Late in the afternoon the Mexican cavalry under General Minon, which had passed the mountains, appeared in the plains north of Saltillo. Minon was ordered to halt in the position he had gained and await the result of the battle of the next day at Buena Vista. His appearance caused great anxiety to General Taylor, who hastened to Saltillo with reinforcements after nightfall, as he feared Minon would seek to capture that place.

During the night of the twenty-second Santa Anna reinforced the column under Ampudia, and opened the battle at daybreak on the twenty-third of February, by endeavoring to turn the American left. A little later he opened fire from his artillery, and moved forward three powerful columns of attack against the American centre. The movement of the column of Ampudia was successful, the left of the American line was completely turned, but the attack upon the centre was repulsed by the splendid fire of the American batteries.

A Blast of Deadly Fire.

At this moment General Taylor arrived upon the field from Saltillo, bringing with him May's dragoons, several companies of Mississippi riflemen, and a portion of the Arkansas cavalry, embracing every man that could be spared from Saltillo. He had come at a critical moment, for the turning of his left flank by Ampudia had neutralized the natural advantage of the position. Many of the troops were in full retreat upon Buena Vista, and nothing but the courage and constancy of those who yet remained firm could save the day. By great exertions Colonel Jefferson Davis rallied the greater part of his own regiment—the Mississippi rifles—and a part of the Second Indiana, and by a rapid advance drove back a strong Mexican column in his front. He had scarcely accomplished this when he was assailed by a body of one thousand splendid Mexican lancers. Davis quickly formed his own men and the Second and Third Indiana in the shape of the letter V, with the opening towards the enemy, and posted Sherman's battery on his left. The line thus formed awaited in silence the approach of the Mexican cavalry, which came on at a gallop.

As they drew near the opening of this terrible V the Mexicans, who had expected the Americans to fire, when they intended to dash in upon them before the men could reload, were astonished at the silence with which they were received, and slackened their pace until they came to a walk within eighty yards of the opening of the angle. In an instant Davis gave the command, and his men took deliberate aim. Then a volley flashed from the rifles and swept away the head of the Mexican column. The next moment Sherman's guns opened upon the cavalry with grape and canister. Under this combined fire horses and lancers fell in great numbers, forming a barricade over which the enemy could not pass, and the Mexicans, seized with a panic, wheeled about and fled in confusion.

While this attack was in progress the Mexicans sent a body of cavalry under Torrejon to seize the plantation of Buena Vista. Torrejon made his attack with vigor, but was driven back by the Kentucky and Arkansas volunteers, assisted by Colonel May's dragoons. Colonel Yell, of the Arkansas regiment, was killed and Torrejon was wounded in this part of the engagement.

Splendid Valor of the Americans.

During all this while a steady cannonade had been in progress along the centre of the American line. The Mexicans endeavored to silence the American batteries, but without success.

Santa Anna now sent a strong force to pass around the American left and gain the rear of Taylor's line, and this force was joined by a part of Torrejon's command, which was retreating from Buena Vista. The movement was detected by Colonel May, who met it with his cavalry and several companies of Illinois and Indiana volunteers. General Taylor sent to his assistance all the cavalry he could spare and Bragg's battery.

The retreat of the Mexicans, who had passed beyond the American left, was cut off, and they were driven in confusion to the base of the mountain, while Bragg's guns showered canister upon them and increased the panic which had set in among them. It seemed that the whole Mexican column, numbering five thousand men, must surrender or be exterminated. In this emergency the Mexican commander raised the

BATTLE OF BUENA VISTA.

white flag and asked for a parley, professing to have a message from Santa Anna to General Taylor, and the American guns ceased firing. Before the trick was discovered the Mexican right escaped under the cover of the flag of truce by passing along the base of the mountain to a point from which they rejoined their main army.

Bragg's Flying Artillery.

Santa Anna now brought up his reserves, and late in the afternoon made a determined attack upon the American right, which had been greatly weakened to assist the troops engaged in repelling the attack on the left. The Mexican column, twelve thousand strong, easily drove back the few scattered volunteers that disputed their advance, and captured O'Brien's battery, which was without infantry support, but not until every man had been killed or wounded. Washington's guns now opened upon the enemy, and succeeded in holding their cavalry in check for a moment. The Mexican infantry pushed on, firing as they advanced, and it was evident that the crisis of the battle was at hand.

The battle had been going on for eight hours, and the American troops were greatly exhausted by the unusual exertions they had been subjected to; while the Mexican column, consisting mainly of their reserves, was fresh, and four times as strong as the whole American army. Keenly alive to his danger, Taylor exerted himself in every possible way to bring up his scattered regiments in time to save the position. The flying artillery of Captain Bragg was the first to reach the field. There was not an infantry soldier near to support him, and the salvation of the army depended upon Bragg's efforts. He unlimbered his guns within a few yards of the rapidly advancing Mexicans, and poured in discharge after discharge with a rapidity which seemed wonderful. The Mexican advance was checked, and Sherman now came up and opened fire from his guns upon them. Washington's battery a little later joined in the fire. The Mississippi and Indiana volunteers now reached the field, and made a spirited attack upon the enemy's right flank. Under this terrible fire the Mexicans wavered for a few moments, and then broke in confusion and fled from the field.

The Mexicans made no further attack during the day, and that night Santa Anna, abandoning his wounded, and leaving his dead unburied, retreated rapidly towards Agua Nueva. The American loss in the battle of Buena Vista was two hundred and sixty-seven killed and four hundred and fifty-six wounded. That of the Mexicans was over two thousand killed and wounded, including many officers of high rank. Taylor followed the Mexican army on the twenty-fourth, as far as Agua Nueva, and collecting their wounded, removed them to Saltillo, where they were attended by the American surgeons.

Honors to General Taylor.

The victory of Buena Vista was decisive of the war. It saved the valley of the Rio Grande from invasion by a victorious Mexican army, and enabled the expedition of General Scott against Vera Cruz to proceed without delay to the accomplishment of its objects. It also greatly disheartened the Mexican people, and during the remainder of the year Taylor's army had nothing to do but to hold the country it occupied.

General Taylor remained at Agua Nueva until he was satisfied that no further trouble was to be apprehended from the Mexican army, and then returned by easy stages to his camp at Walnut Springs, near Monterey, which he reached by the last of March. In

the summer of 1847, leaving General Wool in command of the army, General Taylor returned to the United States, where he was received with distinguished honor.

While these events were going on in Mexico Captain John C. Fremont, of the United States army, had been engaged in prosecuting the discoveries in the Rocky mountain region, which he had begun in 1843, in which year he had explored the valley known as the Great Basin, the region of the Great Salt Lake, and the valleys of the Sacramento and San Joaquin, on the Pacific coast. In May, 1845, Fremont set out on his third expedition, and passed the winter in the valley of the San Joaquin, then Mexican territory. In May, 1846, he received orders from Washington to move into California and counteract any foreign scheme for securing that Territory, and to conciliate the goodwill of the inhabitants toward the United States. Fremont had but sixty men with him, but he at once moved into the valley of the Sacramento.

The Mexican inhabitants were seriously considering at this time whether they should massacre the American settlers, or whether, in the event of a war between Mexico and the United States, they should place California under the protection of Great Britain. Fremont was informed of these plots, and, though no war existed as yet between the two republics, he also learned that the Mexican General De Castro was advancing to drive him out of California. The American settlers flocked to Fremont's camp, with their arms and horses, and he soon found himself at the head of a considerable force.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE YOSEMITE VALLEY.

He was thus enabled to repulse De Castro's attack, and, after a few conflicts, to drive him from Upper California. By July, 1846, the Mexican authority was entirely overthrown in upper California, and the flag of independence was raised by the settlers.

Pursued by a British Squadron.

The American squadron in the Pacific was commanded by Commodore Sloat, who was ordered by the secretary of the navy to seize the port of San Francisco as soon as he was reliably informed of the existence of war between the two countries, and to occupy or blockade such other Mexican ports as his force would permit. In the early summer of 1846 the American squadron was lying at Mazatlan. A British squadron under Admiral Seymour also lay in the harbor, and the American commodore became convinced that the British admiral was watching him for the purpose of interfering with his designs upon California.

He therefore resolved to get rid of him, and put to sea and sailed to the westward, as if making for the Sandwich islands. The British fleet followed him promptly, but in the night the commodore tacked and sailed up the coast to Monterey, while the British continued their course to the islands. Sloat was coldly received at Monterey by the authorities. Hearing of the action of Fremont and the American settlers, the commodore a few days later took possession of the town, and sent a courier to Fremont, who at once joined him with his mounted men. California was now taken possession of in the name of the United States.

About the middle of July Commodore Stockton arrived in the harbor, and succeeded Commodore Sloat, who returned home, in the command of the squadron. The next day Admiral Seymour arrived at Monterey. He saw he was too late, and quietly submitted to what he could not prevent, though he was greatly astonished to find the town in possession of the American forces. On the seventeenth of August Fremont and Stockton occupied Los Angeles, the capital of Upper California.

In June, 1846, General Kearney, with the "Army of the West," numbering eighteen hundred men, marched from Fort Leavenworth, on the Missouri, across the plains to Santa Fé, the capital of the Mexican province of New Mexico. After a march of nearly one thousand miles, he occupied Santa Fé on the eighteenth of August. Leaving a garrison at Santa Fé, Kearney pushed on towards California, intending to conquer that province also; but upon reaching the Gila river, he was met by the famous hunter, Kit Carson, who informed him of the conquest of California by Fremont and Stockton. Kearney thereupon sent two companies of dragoons under Major Sumner back to Santa Fé, and with the remainder continued his march to the Pacific coast.

Revolt in New Mexico.

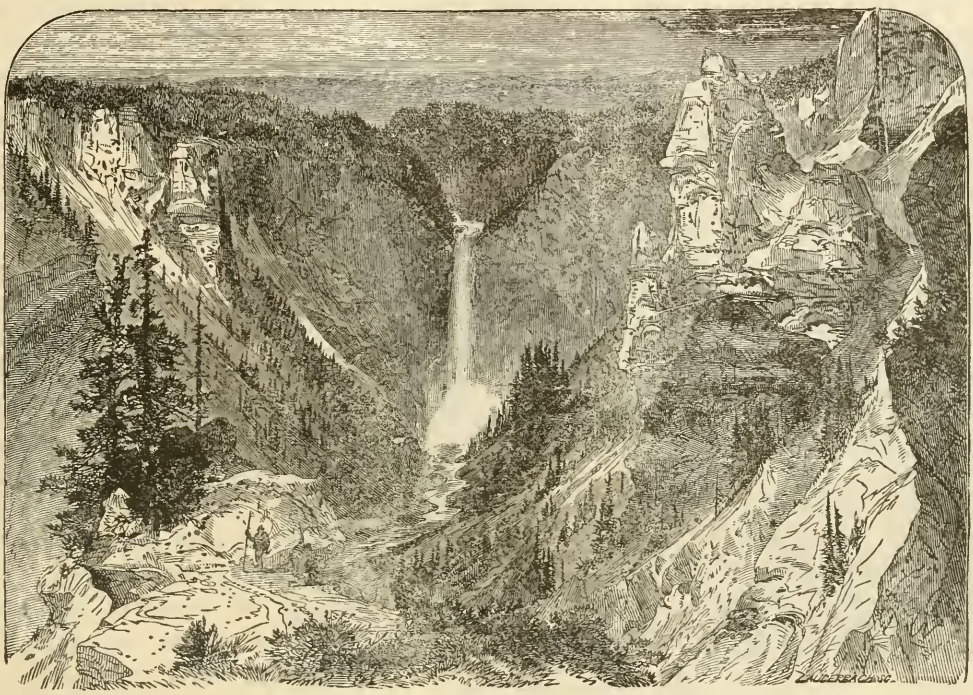
Upon leaving Santa Fé, Kearney had instructed Colonel Doniphan to invade the country of the Navajoe Indians and compel them to make peace with the Americans. Doniphan set out in November, 1846, and crossing the mountains, succeeded in making a treaty with the Navajoes, by which they agreed to refrain from hostilities against the people of New Mexico. He then marched to the southeast to meet General Wool at Chihuahua.

The inhabitants of New Mexico, encouraged by the absence of Doniphan with so large a force, rose in revolt against the American forces, and murdered the American governor of the territory and several other officials on the fourteenth of January, 1847. Colonel Sterling Price, commanding the troops at

Santa Fé, at once marched against the insurgents, defeated them in two engagements, though they greatly outnumbered his force, and suppressed the rebellion. The insurgents obtained peace only by surrendering their leaders several of whom were hanged by the Americans.

Colonel Doniphan, in the meantime, had continued his march. His route lay through a barren region destitute of water or grass, the twenty-eighth he occupied El Paso, and there waited until his artillery could join him from Santa Fé. It arrived in the course of a month, and on the eighth of February he resumed his march to Chihuahua.

On the twenty-eighth he encountered and defeated a Mexican force of over fifteen hundred men with ten pieces of artillery, at a pass of the Sacramento river, a tributary of the Rio Grande. The Mexicans lost over three hun-



THE GREAT CAÑON AND LOWER FALLS, YELLOWSTONE.

called the Jornado del Muerto—"The Journey of Death." He pressed forward with firmness through this terrible region, his men and animals suffering greatly on the march, and in the latter part of December entered the valley of the Rio Grande. With a force of eight hundred and fifty-six men he defeated over twelve hundred Mexicans at Brazito, on the twenty-sixth of December, 1846, and inflicted upon them a loss of nearly two hundred men, losing only seven men himself. On dred killed and a number wounded. The Americans lost two killed and several wounded. The Mexicans were completely routed, and left their artillery and all their train in the hands of the Americans.

On the first of March, 1847, Doniphan entered Chihuahua, and raising the American flag on the citadel, took possession of the province in the name of the United States. Chihuahua was one of the largest cities in Mexico, and contained nearly thirty thousand

inhabitants. Doniphan's force was less than one thousand men. He had expected to find General Wool here, and failing to meet him was in utter ignorance of the positions of the American forces. His own position, in the midst of a hostile population, was perilous indeed, but by his firm and just measures he conciliated the inhabitants. He remained at Chihuahua for six weeks, vainly expecting the arrival of General Wool, and on the twenty-seventh of April evacuated

EAST SIDE OF PLAZA—SANTA FÉ.

that place, and set out for Saltillo, three hundred and fifty miles distant. He reached that place on the twenty-second of May. Remaining there but three days, he continued his march to Monterey, from which he proceeded to Matamoras. The enlistments of his men being over, they were transported to New Orleans, and there mustered out of the service.

Thus ended the most remarkable expedition on record. In less than one year a corps of volunteers, unused to the hardships of war, had marched over snow-covered mountains and across burning deserts, a distance of over five thousand miles, over three thousand of which lay through an unknown and hostile country, abounding in enemies who might have crushed them at any moment had they rallied in sufficient force.

In the meantime there had been new troubles in California. In August, 1847, Commodore Stockton appointed Captain Fremont military commandant of California, and soon after sailed from San Francisco to Monterey, from which place he continued his voyage to San Diego. Soon after the departure of the fleet Fremont learned of a conspiracy to overthrow his government. By a forced march of one hundred and fifty miles he surprised and captured the insurgent leader, Don J. Pico. A court-martial sentenced him to death, but Fremont wisely spared his life, and Pico, in gratitude for this clemency, gave him his powerful aid in his efforts to tranquilize the country.

General Kearney had continued his march from New Mexico, encountering great difficulties along the route, and suffering considerably from the repeated attacks of superior parties of the enemy. In December, 1847, he reached San Pasqual, where he was obliged to halt. His situation was desperate indeed; his provisions were exhausted; his horses had died on the march; his mules were disabled; a large number of his men were sick; and his camp was surrounded by the enemy, who held every road by which he could escape. In this situation three

men—Kit Carson, Lieutenant Beales of the navy, and an Indian, whose name is unfortunately unknown—volunteered to make their way through the enemy's lines to San Diego, thirty miles distant, and inform Commodore Stockton of Kearney's need of assistance. They succeeded in reaching San Diego, and the commodore promptly sent reinforcements to Kearney, which enabled him to drive off the enemy and reach San Diego in safety.

General Scott's Expedition.

Commodore Stockton now directed his attention to suppressing the insurrection of the Mexican inhabitants of California, who had gotten possession of Los Angeles. Driven to extremities, they surrendered the town on the condition that the Americans should respect the rights and property of the citizens.

Commodore Stockton having been relieved of his civil functions by orders from Washington, General Kearney claimed the governorship of the territory by virtue of his rank. Fremont refused to recognize his authority, and was brought to trial before a court-martial, which found him guilty of disobedience of orders and mutiny, and sentenced him to be dismissed from the service. The sentence was remitted by the President on account of Fremont's meritorious and valuable services, but Fremont refused to accept the clemency of the President and thus admit the justice of the sentence of the court, and resigned his commission. General Kearney remained in California as governor of that territory.

The expedition under General Scott sailed from New Orleans late in November, 1846, and rendezvoused at the island of Lobos, about one hundred and twenty-five miles north of Vera Cruz. The plan of operations for this army was very simple—to capture Vera Cruz and march to the city of Mexico by the most direct route. At length everything being in readiness, the expedition sailed from Lobos Island, and on the morning of the ninth of March, 1847, the army, thirteen thousand strong, landed without opposition at a point selected by General Scott and Commodore Conner a few days before. The city and vicinity had been thoroughly reconnoitred, and the troops were at once marched to the positions assigned them by the commander-in-chief.

Vera Cruz is the principal seaport of Mexico, and contained at the time of the siege about fifteen thousand inhabitants. It was strongly fortified on the land side, and towards the Gulf was defended by the Castle of San Juan de Ulloa, the strongest fortress in America, with the exception of Quebec.

Attack Upon Vera Cruz.

On the tenth of March the investment of the city was begun by General Worth, and the American lines were definitely established around the city for a distance of six miles. During the day, and for several days thereafter, bodies of Mexicans attempted to harass the besiegers, and a steady fire was maintained upon them by the guns of the castle and the city as they worked at their batteries. The American works being completed, and their guns in position, General Scott summoned the city of Vera Cruz to surrender, stipulating that no batteries should be placed in the city to attack the castle unless the city should be fired upon by that work.

The demand was refused by General Morales, who commanded both the city and the castle, and at 4 o'clock on the afternoon of the twenty-second of March, the American batteries opened fire upon the town. The bombardment was continued for five days, and the fleet joined in the attack upon the

castle. The city suffered terribly; a number of the inhabitants were killed, and many buildings were set on fire by the shells.

On the twenty-seventh the city and castle surrendered, and were promptly occupied by the Americans. Over five thousand prisoners and five hundred pieces of artillery fell into the hands of the victors. The garrison

BOMBARDMENT OF VERA CRUZ.

were required to march out, lay down their arms, and were then dismissed upon their parole. The inhabitants were protected in their civil and religious rights. The surrender was completed on the morning of the twenty-ninth.

Having secured the city and the castle, General Scott placed a strong garrison in each, and appointed General Worth governor of Vera Cruz. He then prepared to march upon the city of Mexico, and on the eighth of April the advance division, under General Twiggs, set out from Vera Cruz towards Jalapa. Deducting the force left to garrison Vera Cruz, Scott's whole army amounted to but eighty-five hundred men.

Santa Anna had not found the consequences to himself of the battle of Buena Vista as bad as he had expected. He had succeeded in pursuading his countrymen that he had not been defeated in that battle, but had simply retreated for want of provisions, and they had agreed to give him another trial. He had pledged himself to prevent the advance of the Americans to the capital, in the event of the fall of Vera Cruz, and with the aid of those of his countrymen who were willing to support him had quelled an insurrection at the capital, and had strengthened his power to a greater degree than ever. With a force of twelve thousand men he had taken position at Cerro Gordo, a mountain pass at the eastern edge of the Cordilleras, to hold the American army in check, and had fortified his position with great skill and care.

General Twiggs halted before the Mexican position to await the arrival of General Scott, who soon joined him with the main army. The Mexican lines were carefully reconnoitered, and on the eighteenth of April General

GEN. SCOTT AT THE BATTLE OF CERRO GORDO

GENL. W. T. SHERMAN.

Scott, avoiding a direct attack, turned the enemy's left, seized the heights commanding their position, and drove them from their works with a loss of three thousand prisoners and forty-three pieces of artillery. Santa Anna mounted a mule, taken from his carriage, and fled, leaving the carriage and his private papers in the hands of the Americans. Besides their prisoners, the Mexicans lost over one thousand men in killed andwounded.

BATTLE OF CERRO GORDO.

Scott's loss was four hundred and thirty-one killed and wounded.

The brilliant victory of Cerro Gordo opened the way for the American army to Jalapa, which was occupied on the nineteenth of April. Continuing his advance, General Scott captured the strong fortress of Perote, situated on a peak of the Eastern Cordilleras, which was abandoned almost without a blow by its defenders, on the twenty-second of April. On the fifteenth of May, Puebla, the second city of Mexico, containing eighty thousand inhabitants, was occupied. General Scott established his headquarters at Puebla, and awaited reinforcements. The terms of the volunteers would expire in June, and they refused to re-enlist, as they were afraid to encounter the yellow fever, the scourge of the Mexican climate, the season for which was close at hand. They were returned to the United States and General Scott was forced to spend three months at Puebla in inactivity. The force he had with him was greatly weakened by sickness, and eighteen hundred men were in the hospitals of Puebla alone.

While at Puebla General Scott was ordered by the secretary of war to collect duties on merchandise entering the Mexican ports, and to apply the money thus obtained to the needs of the army. He was also ordered to levy contributions upon the Mexican people

for the use of the troops. He refused to obey this order, declaring that the country through which he was moving was too poor to warrant impressments, and that such a measure would exasperate the Mexicans and cause them to refuse to supply the army at all. "Not a ration for man or horse," he said, "would be brought in except by the bayonet, which would oblige the troops to spread themselves out many leagues to the right and left in search of subsistence, and stop all military operations." He continued to buy provisions for his army at the regular prices of the country, and by so doing greatly allayed the bitterness of feeling with which the Mexicans regarded the Americans.

Attempt to Suspend Hostilities.

Another annoyance to which the commander-in-chief was subjected arose from the ill-advised action of Mr. N. P. Trist, who had been sent out to Mexico in the quality of peace commissioner. Soon after the capture of Vera Cruz, General Scott had suggested to the President the propriety of sending out commissioners to his headquarters, who should be empowered to treat for peace when a suitable occasion should offer itself. The President selected for this purpose Mr. N. P. Trist, who had been United States consul at Havana, and who was acquainted with the Spanish language—a singular selection.

Mr. Trist was furnished with the draft of a treaty carefully prepared in the state department at Washington, and was intrusted with a despatch from Mr. Buchanan, the secretary of state, to the Mexican minister of foreign relations. He was instructed to communicate confidentially to General Scott and Commodore Perry both the treaty and his instructions. General Scott was informed of Trist's mission by the secretary of war, and was directed to suspend military operations until further orders, unless attacked.

Mr. Trist reached Vera Cruz in due time, but instead of explaining his mission, as directed, to General Scott, he sent a note to the commander-in-chief from Vera Cruz, enclosing the letter of the secretary of war, and the sealed despatch to the Mexican minister, which he requested the general to forward to its destination. The letter of the secretary of war could not be understood by General Scott without the explanations Mr. Trist was directed to give, but failed to make.

General Scott very properly resented the conduct of Trist as an attempt to degrade him by making him subordinate to that personage, and in his reply to him declared that the suspension of hostilities belonged to the commander in the field and not to the secretary of war a thousand miles away. Trist thereupon wrote to General Scott, giving a full explanation of his mission, but did so in disrespectful terms. In conclusion he claimed to be the aid-de-camp of the President, and as such to possess the right to issue orders to the commander in-chief. Scott referred the matter to the government at Washington, maintaining in the meantime his independence of action as commanding general. In due time explanations came from Washington satisfactory to the general, and Mr. Trist was sharply reprimanded by the secretary of state "for his presuming to command the general-in-chief."

Santa Anna in Disgrace.

After his defeat at Cerro Gordo, Santa Anna repaired to Orizaba, where he organized a number of guerrilla bands to attack the American trains on the road between Vera Cruz and Scott's army. He then returned to the city of Mexico, where he was coldly received by the people. The affairs of the Mexican nation were in the

most hopeless confusion, and the people were utterly disheartened. Their army on which they had depended for the defence of the road to the capital had been routed at Cerro Gordo, and there was no force in existence with which to stay the advance of the victorious Americans. Had General Scott been able to advance upon Mexico immediately after his occupation of Puebla, the city would have fallen at once, and the war have been brought to an immediate close. A number of leaders contested the supremacy at the capital, and the quarrels of these factions paralyzed the efforts of the government.

The most capable of these leaders was Santa Anna, and his strong qualities naturally attracted to him the largest following By his extraordinary energy he suppressed the opposition to him, secured the money he needed by forced loans from the people, and raised an army of twenty-five thousand men and sixty pieces of artillery, and fortified the city of Mexico. The three months' enforced delay of General Scott's army at Puebla gave him time to carry out these measures, and he endeavored to gain still further advantages by opening negotiations secretly with Mr. Trist, and pretending to be anxious for peace. He declared that he needed money to enable him to act with freedom in arranging a treaty, and succeeded in getting about ten thousand dollars from the secret service fund at the disposal of General Scott; but his designs were soon detected by the American commander, and the supply of money was discontinued.

The American Army Advances.

Reinforcements from the United States arrived at Puebla in July, and on the seventh of August General Scott resumed his advance on the city of Mexico, with a force increased to ten thousand men. The route lay through a beautiful upland country, abounding in water, and rich in the most picturesque scenery. The troops pressed on with enthusiasm, and on the tenth of August the summit of the Cordilleras was passed, and then almost from the very spot from which, more than three centuries before, the followers of Cortez looked down upon the halls of the Montezumas, the American army beheld the beautiful valley of Mexico stretching out for miles before them, with the city of Mexico lying in the midst, encircled by the strong works that had been erected for its defence.

Another Important Conquest.

The passes on the direct road to the city had been well fortified and garrisoned by the Mexicans, but the country upon the flanks had been left unprotected, because Santa Anna deemed it utterly impossible for any troops to pass over it, and turn his position. El Peñon, the most formidable of these defences, was reconnoitered by the engineers, who reported that it would cost at least three thousand lives to carry it. Scott thereupon determined to turn El Peñon, instead of attacking it. The city and its defences were carefully reconnoitered, and it was discovered that the works on the south and west were weaker than those at any other points. General Scott now moved to the left, passed El Peñon on the south, and by the aid of a corps of skillful engineers moved his army across ravines and chasms which the Mexican commander had pronounced impassable, and had left unguarded. General Twiggs led the advance, and halted and encamped at Chalco, on the lake of the same name. Worth followed, and passing Twiggs, encamped at the town of San Augustin, eight miles from the capital.

As soon as Santa Anna found that the Americans had turned El Peñon, and had advanced to the south side of the city, he left

that fortress and took position in the strong fort of San Antonio, which lay directly in front of Worth's new position. Northwest of San Antonio, and four miles from the city, lay the little village of Churubusco, which had been strongly fortified by the Mexicans. A little to the west of San Augustin was the fortified camp of Contreras, with a garrison of about six thousand men. In the rear, between the camp and the city, was a reserve force of twelve thousand men. The whole number of Mexicans manning these defences was about thirty-five thousand, with at least one hundred pieces of artillery of various sizes.

Driven Like Chaff.

General Scott lost no time in moving against the enemy's works. General Persifer F. Smith was ordered to attack the entrenched camp at Contreras, while Shields and Pierce should move between the camp and Santa Anna at San Antonio, and prevent him from going to the assistance of the force at Contreras. At three o'clock on the morning of August 20th, in the midst of a cold rain, Smith began his march, his men holding on to each other, to avoid being separated in the darkness. He made his attack at sunrise, and in fifteen minutes had possession of the camp. He took three thousand prisoners and thirty three pieces of cannon.

The camp at Contreras having fallen, General Scott attacked the fortified village of Churubusco an hour or two later, and carried it after a desperate struggle of several hours. General Worth's division stormed and carried the strong fort of San Antonio, and General Twiggs captured another important work. The Mexicans outnumbered their assailants three to one, and fought bravely. Their efforts were in vain, however, and late in the afternoon they were driven from their defences, and pursued by the American cavalry to the gates of the city.

These two victories had been won over a force of thirty thousand Mexicans by less than ten thousand Americans, and a loss of four thousand killed and wounded and three thousand prisoners had been inflicted upon the Mexican army. The American loss was eleven hundred men.

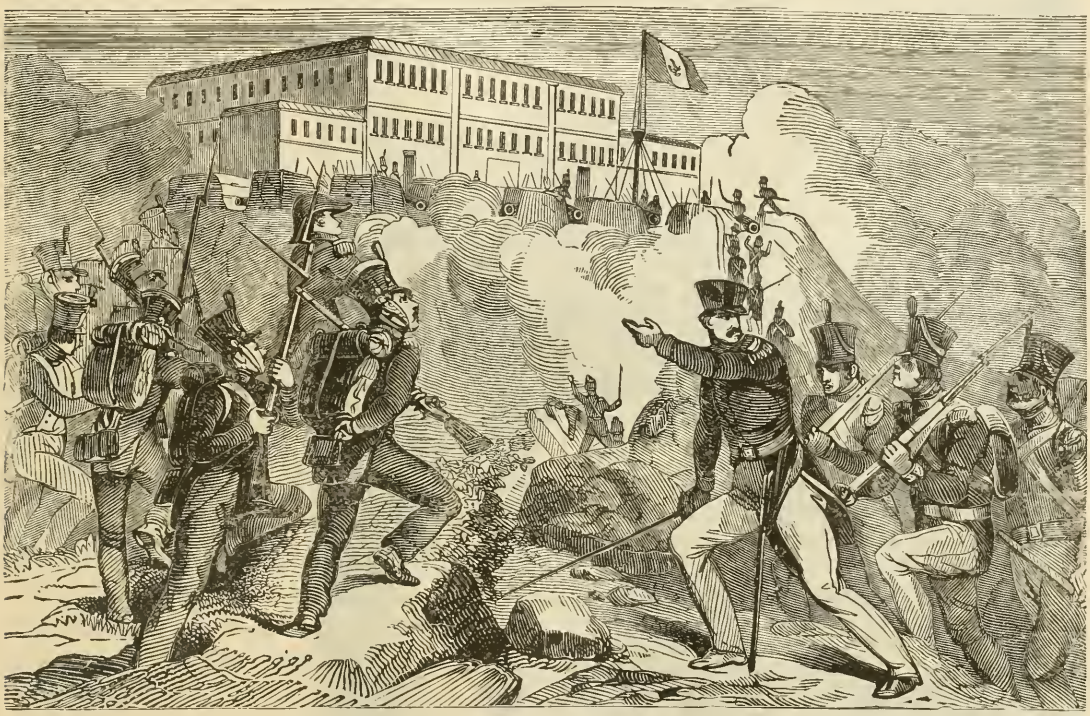
Santa Anna retreated within the city, and on the twenty-first of August the American army advanced to within three miles of the city of Mexico. On the same day Santa Anna sent a flag of truce to General Scott, asking for a suspension of hostilities, in order to arrange the terms of a peace. The request was granted, and Mr. Trist was despatched to the city, and began negotiations with the Mexican commissioners. After protracted delays, designed to gain time, the Mexican commissioners declined the American conditions, and proposed others which they knew would not be accepted. Thoroughly disgusted, Mr. Trist returned to the American camp, and brought with him the intelligence that Santa Anna had violated the armistice by using the time accorded him by it in strengthening his defences. Indignant at such treachery, General Scott at once resumed his advance upon the city.

A Hard-fought Battle.

The Mexican capital was still defended by two powerful works. One of these was Molino del Rey, "The King's Mill," a foundry, where it was said the church bells were being cast into cannon; the other was the strong castle of Chapultepec. General Scott resolved to make his first attack upon Molino del Rey, which was held by fourteen thousand Mexicans. It was stormed and carried on the eighth of September, after a severe contest by Worth's division, four thousand strong. This was regarded as the hardest

won victory of the war. The Mexicans were nearly four times as numerous as the Americans, and their position was one of very great strength. The Americans fought principally with their rifles and muskets, their artillery being of but little use to them, owing to the nature of the position. Their loss was seven hundred and eighty-seven killed and wounded—nearly one-fourth of the force engaged.

to the city by the causeway leading to the Belen gate, closely followed by Quitman's division. Worth's division was moved forward to attack the San Cosmo gate, while Quitman assailed the Belen gate. The defences of the causeways were taken in succession, and by nightfall the Belen and San Cosmo gates were in possession of the Americans after a hard fight for them. The troops slept on the ground they had won.



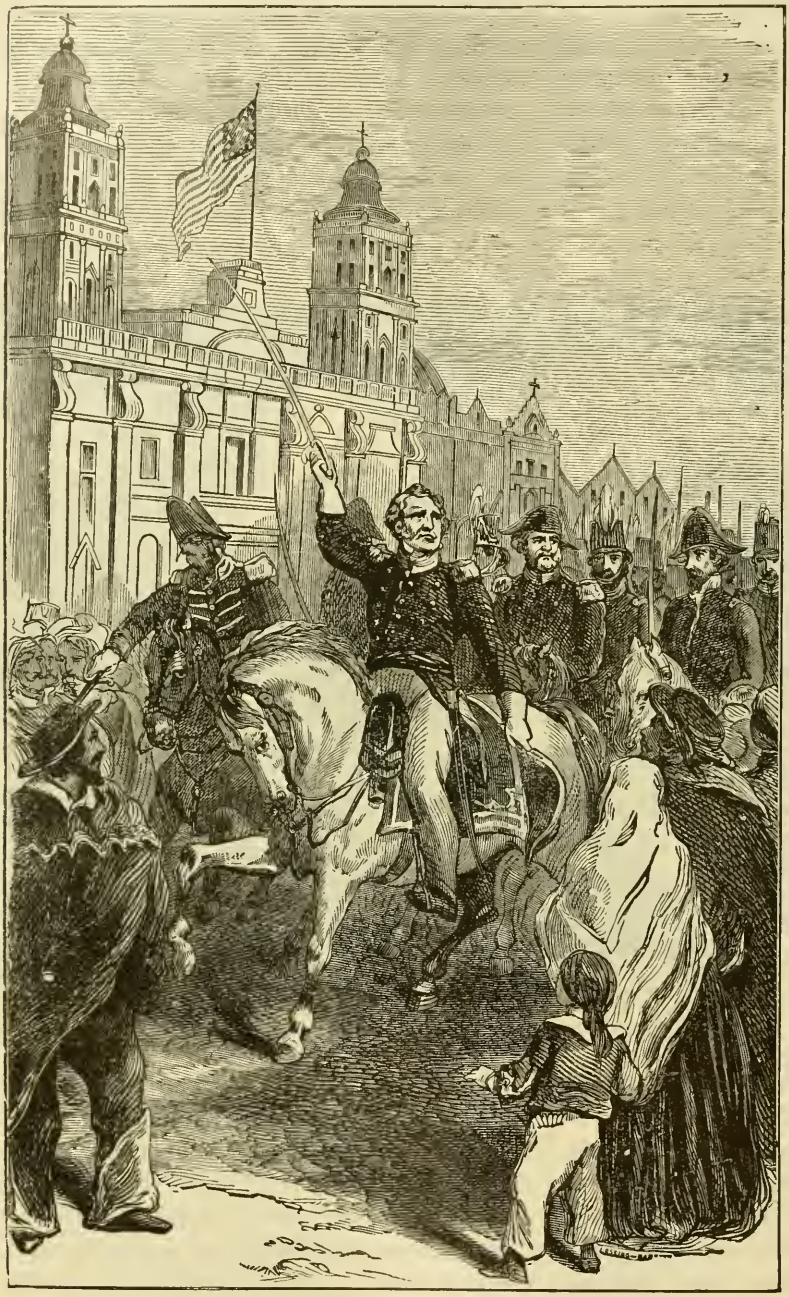
STORMING OF CHAPULTEPEC.

The castle of Chapultepec stood on a steep and lofty hill, and could not be turned. If won at all, it must be by a direct assault. On the twelfth of September the American artillery opened fire upon it, and reduced it almost to ruins. On the morning of the thirteenth a determined assault was made by the Americans, and the castle was carried after a sharp struggle.

The fugitives from Chapultepec retreated

During the night of the thirteenth Santa Anna, with the remains of his army, retreated from the city, leaving the authorities to make the best terms they could with the conquerors. The city officials presented themselves before General Scott before daybreak, and proposed terms of capitulation. The general replied that the city was already in his power, and that he would enter it on his own terms. The next day, September 14, 1847, the

American army entered the city of Mexico, occupied the grand square, and hoisted the stars and stripes over the government buildings. Santa Anna retreated with four or five thousand men from the capital to the vicinity of Puebla, which was besieged by a Mexican force. The city contained eighteen hundred sick Americans, and was held by a garrison of five hundred men under Colonel Childs. This little force held out bravely until the arrival of a brigade from Vera Cruz, under General Lane, on its way to reinforce General Scott. Lane drove off Santa Anna's army, and relieved Puebla on the eighth of October. Ten days later Santa Anna was reported to be collecting another force at Alixo. Lane set out immediately for that place, reached it by a forced march, and dispersed the Mexicans beyond all hope of reunion.



GENERAL SCOTT ENTERING THE CITY OF MEXICO.

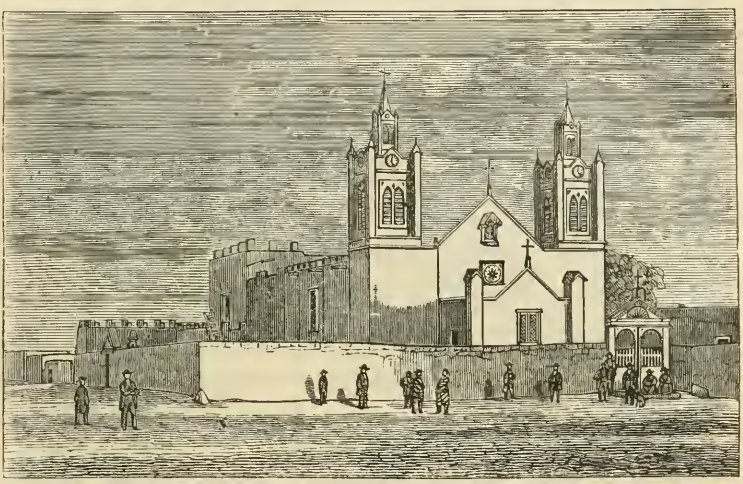
Immediately after the capture of the city of Mexico Santa Anna resigned the presidency of the republic in favor of Senor Peña y Peña, president of the Supreme Court of Justice, but retained his position as commander-in-chief of the army. The fall of the city was followed by the inauguration of a new government, one of the first acts of which was to dismiss Santa Anna from the command of the army. He at once left the country, and fled to the West Indies.

The Mexican government was removed to the city of Queretaro, and a new congress was elected, which began its sessions in that city. Negotiations for peace had been opened in the meantime, and the meetings of the Mexican commissioners and Mr. Trist were held at the town of Guadaloupe Hidalgo, where, on the second of February, 1848, a treaty of peace was signed by Nicholas P. Trist, on the part of the United States, and Senors Couto, Atristain and Cuevas, on the part of Mexico. Though Mr. Trist's powers had been withdrawn by President Polk some time before, he ventured to continue his authority on the ground that the opportunity for bringing the war to a close was too favorable to be lost. The commissioners appointed by the President to supersede him reached Mexico a little later, but found the treaty signed and sealed. It was forwarded to Washington, and was laid by the President before the Senate, which body after a brief discussion ratified it. On the Fourth of July, 1848, President Polk issued a proclamation announcing the return of peace.

By the terms of the treaty the Rio Grande was accepted by Mexico as the western boundary of the United States and of Texas, and that republic ceded to the United States the provinces of New Mexico and Upper California. For this immense territory the government of the United States agreed to pay to Mexico the sum of fifteen millions of dollars, and to assume the debts due by Mexico to citizens of the United States, amounting to the sum of three and a half millions of dollars.

The treaty having been ratified, the American forces were promptly withdrawn from Mexico.

By the cession of California and New Mexico, regions as yet unknown, a territory four times as large as France, was added to the dominions of the United States. California bordered the Pacific coast for about six hundred and fifty miles, and extended inland for about the same distance. It embraced an area of about four hundred and fifty thousand square miles, comprising what is now known as California, Nevada, Arizona, Utah, and parts of Colorado and New Mexico. At the close of the war it contained about fifteen thousand inhabitants.



A MEXICAN CATHEDRAL.

In February, 1848, occurred an event destined to change the whole history of the Pacific coast. A laborer on the plantation of Captain Sutter, situated in Coloma county, California, on a branch of the Sacramento river, while working on a mill-race, discovered gold in the sands of the little stream. The precious metal was soon found to be in abundance in the neighborhood, and the news spread rapidly. It reached the United States about the time of the ratification of

the treaty, and produced the most intense excitement.

In the course of a few months thousands of emigrants were on their way to California to dig gold. Some went in steamers and sailing vessels around Cape Horn; some crossed the Isthmus of Panama, and worked their way up the Pacific coast; and others, and by far the greater number, undertook the long and dangerous journey across the plains and the Rocky Mountains, traveling generally in caravans. In a short time multitudes came flocking from every country in Europe to join the throng in search of the precious metal. San Francisco was the central point of this vast emigration, and that place soon grew from a village of a few miserable huts to a city of over fifteen thousand inhabitants. Within two years after the discovery of gold the population of California had increased to nearly a hundred thousand; two years later, in 1852, it numbered two hundred and sixty-four thousand.

HYDRAULIC MINING.

The influence of the discovery of gold in California was not limited to this country. It gave an impetus to the commerce and industry of the whole world.

On the twenty-first of February, 1848, ex President John Quincy Adams, then a member of the House of Representatives in Congress, was stricken with paralysis in his seat in the House. He was carried into the speaker's room, where he died two days later, at the age of eighty.

On the twenty-ninth of May, 1848, Wisconsin was admitted into the Union as a State, making the thirtieth member of the confederacy.

Before the return of peace with Mexico the slavery question had been revived in the United States, and had been the cause of an agitation full of trouble to both sections. On the eighth of August, 1846, President Polk sent a message to Congress asking an appropriation of three millions of dollars to enable him to negotiate a treaty of peace with Mexico, based upon the policy of obtaining a cession of territory outside the existing limits of Texas. During the debate upon a bill to grant this appropriation, Mr. David Wilmot, a representative from Pennsylvania, made the following amendment, known as the "Wilmot Proviso:" "*Provided*, That there shall be neither slavery nor involuntary servitude in any territory which shall hereafter be acquired, or be annexed to the United States, otherwise than in the punishment of crimes, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted; *Provided always*, That any person escaping into the

same, from whom labor or service is lawfully claimed in any one of the United States, such fugitive may be lawfully reclaimed and conveyed out of said territory to the person claiming his or her labor or service."

The Country Profoundly Excited.

This amendment took no notice of the Missouri Compromise line, and was opposed with great warmth by the southern members, who declared it an attempt to rob the Southern States in advance of their fair share of the territory that might be won by the joint efforts of the States. The bill failed in the Senate; but the announcement of the Wilmot Proviso re-opened the slavery question in all its bitterness, and plunged the country into a state of profound excitement.

The agitation was renewed in January, 1847, when a bill for the organization of a territorial government for Oregon was reported to the House with the Wilmot Proviso incorporated in it. Mr. Burt, of South Carolina, moved to amend the bill by inserting before the restrictive clause the words: "Inasmuch as the whole of said territory lies north of 36° 30′ north latitude." This was an effort to apply to the Oregon bill the principles of the Missouri Compromise; but the friends of the restriction rejected the amendment. The bill passed the House, but was defeated in the Senate. During the next session the measure was revived, and a territorial government was organized for Oregon with an unqualified restriction upon slavery.

In the fall of 1848 the Presidential election occurred. The Democratic party supported Senator Lewis Cass, of Michigan, for the Presidency, and General William O. Butler, of Kentucky, for the Vice-Presidency. The Whig party nominated General Zachary Taylor, of Louisiana, for the Presidency, and Millard Fillmore, of New York, for the Vice Presidency. The Anti-slavery or Free Soil party put in nomination for the Presidency Martin Van Buren, of New York, and for the Vice-Presidency Charles Francis Adams, of Massachusetts. In the election which followed the political campaign, the candidates of the Whig party were elected by decisive majorities. The Free Soil party failed to receive a single electoral vote, but out of the popular vote of nearly three millions, nearly three hundred thousand ballots were cast for its candidates, showing a remarkable gain in strength in the past four years.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

The Administrations of Zachary Taylor and Millard Fillmore

Character of General Taylor—Department of the Interior—Death of ex-President Polk—The Slavery Agitation—Views of Clay and Webster—California Asks Admission Into the Union—Message of President Taylor—The Omnibus Bill—Efforts of Henry Clay—A Memorable Debate—Webster's "Great Union Speech"—Death of John C. Calhoun—Death of President Taylor—Millard Fillmore Becomes President—Passage of the Compromise Measures of 1850—Death of Henry Clay—Dissatisfaction With the Compromise—The Fugitive Slave Law Nullified by the Northern States—The Nashville Convention—Organization of Utah Territory—The Seventh Census—The Expedition of Lopez Against Cuba—The Search for Sir John Franklin—The Grinnel Expedition—Dr. Kane's Voyages—Inauguration of Cheap Postage—Laying the Corner-stone of the New Capitol—Death of Daniel Webster—Arrival of Kossuth—The President Rejects the Tripartite Treaty—Franklin Pierce Elected President—Death of William R. King.

THE fourth of March, 1849, fell on Sunday, and the inauguration of General Taylor as President of the United States took place on Monday, March fifth.

The new President was a native of Virginia, but had removed with his parents to Kentucky at an early age, and had grown up to manhood on the frontiers of that State. In 1808, at the age of twenty-four, he was commissioned a lieutenant in the army by President Jefferson, and had spent forty years in the military service of the country. His exploits in the Florida war and the war with Mexico have been related. His brillant victories in Mexico had made him the most popular man in the United States, and had won him the high office of the presidency at the hands of his grateful fellow-citizens. He was without political experience, but he was a man of pure and stainless integrity, of great firmness, a sincere patriot, and possessed of strong good sense. He had received a majority of the electoral votes of both the Northern and Southern States, and was free from party or sectional ties of any kind.

His inaugural address was brief, and was confined to a statement of general principles. His cabinet was composed of the leaders of the Whig party, with John M. Clayton, of Delaware, as secretary of state. The last Congress had created a new executive department—that of the interior—to relieve the secretary of the treasury of a part of his duties, and President Taylor was called upon to appoint the first secretary of the interior, which he did in the person of Thomas Ewing, of Ohio. The new department was charged with the management of the public lands, the Indian tribes, and the issuing of patents to inventors.

A few months after the opening of President Taylor's administration, ex-President Polk died at his home in Nashville, Tennessee, on the fifteenth of June, 1849, in the fifty-fourth year of his age.

Since the announcement of the Wilmot Proviso, the agitation of the slavery question had been incessant, and had increased instead of diminishing with each succeeding year. It was one of the chief topics of discussion in the newspaper press of the country, and entered largely into every political controversy, however local or insignificant in its nature. The opponents of slavery regarded the annexation of Texas and the Mexican

war as efforts to extend that institution, and were resolved to put an end to its existence at any cost. The advocates of slavery claimed that the Southern States had an equal right to the common property of the States, and were entitled to protection for their slaves in any of the Territories then owned by the States or that might afterwards be acquired by them.

The Missouri Compromise forbade the existence of slavery north of the line of 36° 30′ north latitude, and left the inhabitants south of that line free to decide upon their own institutions. The Anti-slavery party was resolved that slavery should be excluded from the territory acquired from Mexico, and in the Wilmot Proviso struck their first blow for the accomplishment of this purpose. We have seen that they succeded in prohibiting slavery, by a special act of Congress, in Oregon, although the terms of the Missouri Compromise would have excluded the institution from that Territory.

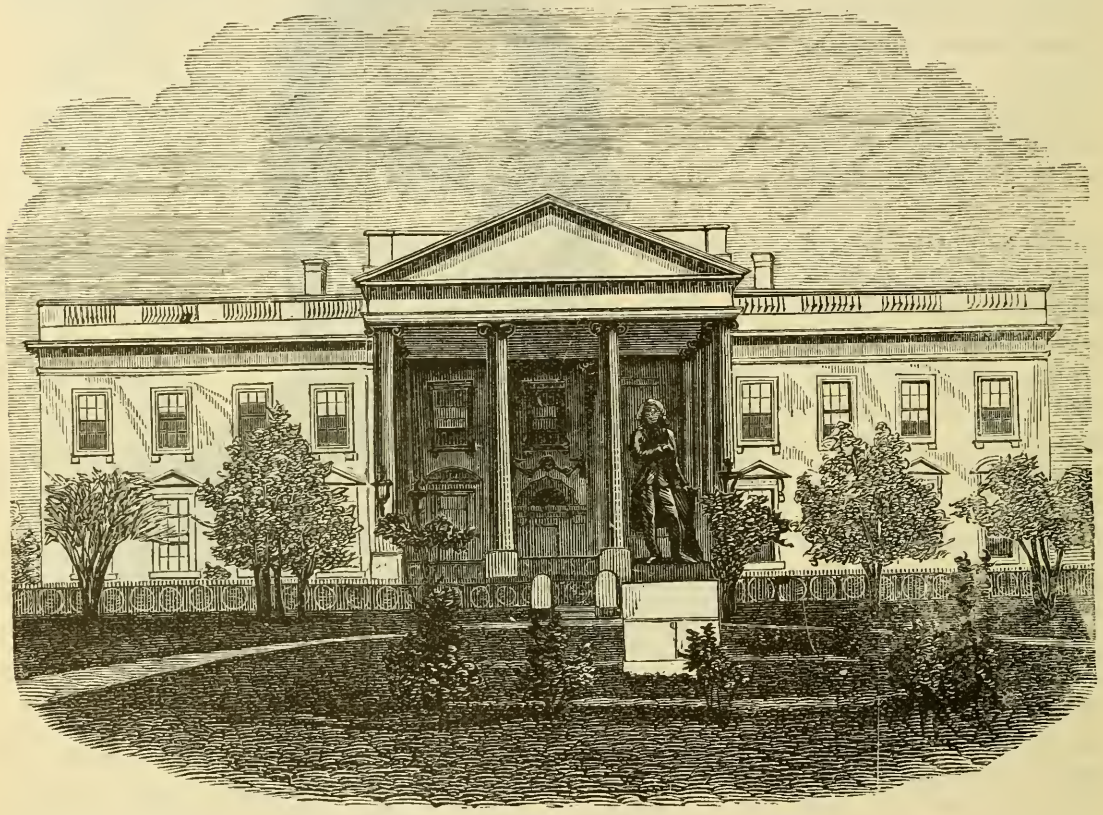
ZACHARY TAYLOR.

Their object was fully understood by the southern people, and was bitterly resented by them. The agitation of the subject aroused a storm of passion throughout the country, and produced a very bitter feeling between the Northern and Southern States. In his last message to Congress, President Polk had recommended that the line of 36° 30′ north latitude be extended to the Pacific, and thus leave it to the people south of that line to decide whether they would have slavery or not. This proposition was acceptable to the South; but it was rejected by the Anti-slavery party. The Missouri Compromise line had been limited to the Louisiana purchase, which was entirely slaveholding, and had made more than one-half of it free. To

extend the line to the Pacific would be to give the South a chance to establish slavery in territory which was free at the time of its acquisition by the United States. The North would not listen to such a proposition.

During the last session of Congress in Mr. Polk's administration, an effort had been made to establish territorial governments for Utah and New Mexico, but had failed in consequence of the inability of Congress to agree upon the question of slavery in these Territories. In the debate in the Senate upon these measures, Mr. Calhoun and Mr. Webster took an active part, and each presented in a masterly manner the views of the section he represented upon this great question. Mr. Calhoun, speaking for the south, argued that the constitution recognized slavery; that as it was the supreme law of the land, it was superior to any territorial law or act of Congress abolishing slavery; and that the constitution clearly and unequivocally established and protected slavery in the Territories.

Mr. Webster, speaking for the north, declared that the constitution was designed for the government of the States, and not for the Territories. Congress, he said, had the right to govern the Territories independently of the constitution, and he maintained that it often exercised this right contrary to the constitution, as it did things in the Territories which it could not do in the States. He added: "When new territory has been acquired it has always been subject to the laws of Congress—to such laws as Congress thought proper to pass for its immediate



THE WHITE HOUSE, WASHINGTON, D. C.

government and preparatory state in which it was to remain until it was ready to come into the Union as one of the family of States." He quoted in support of his position the clause of the constitution which declares that the "constitution and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, ... shall be the supreme law of the land."

Congress having failed to make any provision for territorial governments for Utah and New Mexico, those Territories were left in a condition of anarchy. One of the first duties devolving upon the new administration was the alleviation of this evil until it could be definitely settled by Congress. President Taylor instructed the federal officers in those Territories to encourage the people to organize temporary governments for themselves.

A New Accession to the Union.

California in the meantime had grown with such rapidity, and had experienced so much trouble from its sudden increase of population and the lack of a definite government, that its leading citizens determined to seek admission into the Union. In the autumn of 1849 a convention of the people was held, a constitution formed, and a State government organized. The action of the convention was promptly ratified by the people. Upon the assembling of the Thirty-first Congress in the winter of 1849, California applied for admission into the Union as a State, with a constitution forbidding slavery within her limits.

The organization of the Thirty-first Congress was delayed for three weeks. Parties were about evenly divided, and sixty ballots were taken before a speaker could be chosen. One of the leaders on the Democratic side was Robert Toombs, of Georgia. The choice at last fell upon Howell Cobb, of Georgia, who was elected by a plurality. Partisan bitterness ran high during this struggle.

Upon the organization of the House, President Taylor sent in his first and only message. He recognized the danger with which the sectional controversy threatened the country, expressed his views of the situation in moderate terms, and intimated that he should faithfully discharge his duties to the whole country. He recommended the admission of California with the constitution she had chosen; and advised that Utah and New

ROBERT TOOMBS.

Mexico should be organized as Territories, with liberty to decide the question of slavery for themselves when they were ready to enter the Union as States. A dispute having arisen between Texas and New Mexico concerning the proper boundary between them, the President recommended that it should be settled by the courts of the United States.

The other questions which demanded immediate settlement were slavery in the District of Columbia, and the demand of the Southern States for a more faithful execution

of the provision of the constitution which required the arrest and return of fugitive slaves.

The South opposed the admission of California with a free constitution, and the North demanded the abolition of the slave trade in the District of Columbia, and the Northern States were unwilling to allow their officers to execute the Fugitive Slave Law within their limits. The excitement became intense, and threats to dissolve the Union of the States were freely indulged in by the extremists of both the North and the South.

Opposing Views in the Senate.

On the twenty-ninth of January, 1850, Henry Clay introduced into the Senate a series of resolutions designed to settle all the points in dispute by a general compromise. The resolutions were referred to a commitee of thirteen, of which Mr. Clay was made chairman. In due time the committee reported a bill known as the "Omnibus Bill" from its embracing in one measure all Mr. Clay's propositions. It provided for the admission of California as a free State; the organization of the Territories of Utah and New Mexico, without reference to slavery; the adjustment of the boundary between Texas and New Mexico by paying to the former ten millions of dollars; the abolition of the slave trade in the District of Columbia; and the enactment by Congress of a more stringent and effective law for the rendition of fugitive slaves.

The Omnibus bill was warmly opposed in Congress and in the country at large. The debate in the Senate brought out the views of the leading statesmen of the country. Senator Jefferson Davis declared the bill in no sense a compromise, because it was unequal in its provisions. The South, he declared, gained nothing by the measure, as the constitution already required the rendition of fugitive slaves. He proposed, therefore, that the Missouri Compromise line should be extended to the Pacific, "with the specific recognition of the right to hold slaves in the territory below that line."

Mr. Clay replied to this that "no earthly power could induce him to vote for a specific measure for the introduction of slavery where it had not existed, either north or south of that line. I am unwilling that the posterity of the present inhabitants of California and of New Mexico should reproach us for doing just what we reproach Great Britain for doing to us. If the citizens of those Territories come here with constitutions establishing slavery, I am for admitting them into the Union; but then it will be their own work and not ours, and their posterity will have to reproach them and not us."

Webster's Union Speech.

Mr. Calhoun was too ill to take part in the debate in person, but he prepared a speech of great ability, which was read for him in the Senate by Senator Mason of Virginia. He declared that the Union could be preserved only by maintaining an equal number of free and slave States, in order that the representation of the two sections of the country might be equal in the Senate.

Mr. Webster also took part in the debate, and on this occasion delivered what is known as his "great Union speech of the seventh of March," which occupied three days in its delivery. He expressed substantially the same views as those advocated by Mr. Clay. He opposed restriction of slavery in the Territories, and declared he would vote against the Wilmot Proviso. His speech created a profound sensation throughout the country, and did much to secure the final acceptance of the compromise measures.

In the midst of this discussion John C. Calhoun died, on the thirty-first of March,

1850. He had entered Congress in 1811, and had been in public life from that time until the day of his death. He had filled many high offices, both State and national, and had discharged the duties of each and all with disinterested fidelity and admitted ability. He was one of the first statesmen this country has ever produced, and was the acknowledged leader of the South in the sectional controversy with the North. His character was above reproach, and he was a sincere and disinterested patriot. His death was generally lamented throughout the country, and his political adversaries joined heartily in the tributes of the nation to his many virtues and great abilities.

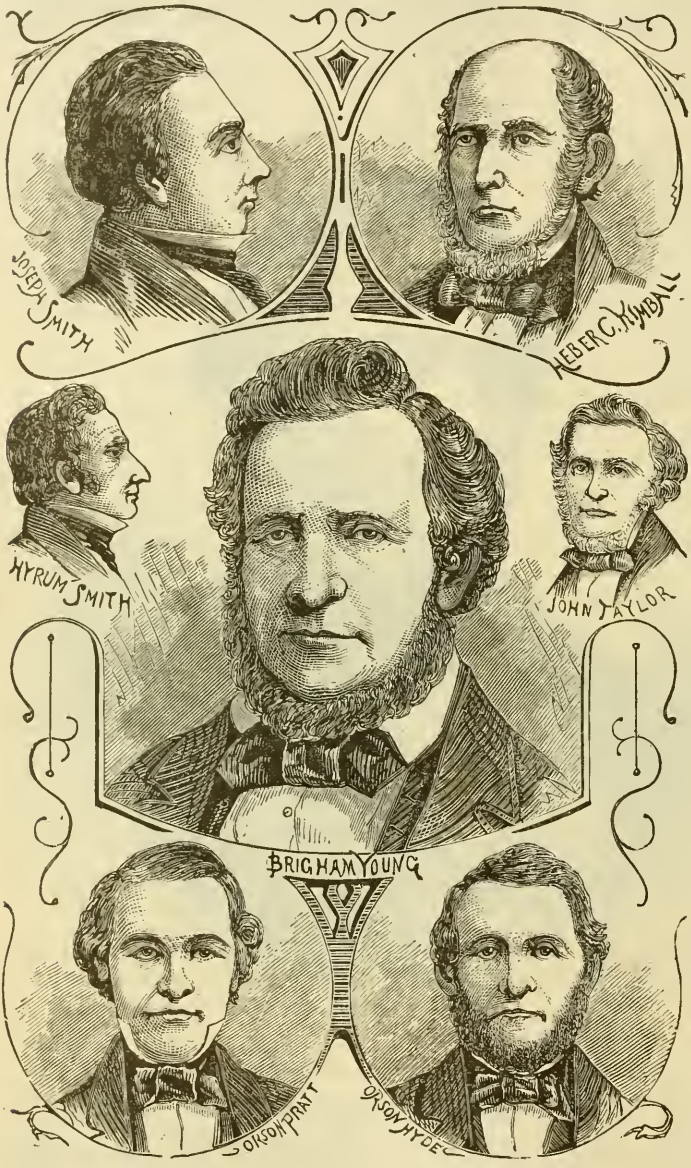
A few months later President Taylor was suddenly stricken down with a fever, which in a few days terminated fatally. He died on the ninth of July, 1850, amid the grief of the whole country, which felt that it had lost a faithful and upright chief magistrate. Though the successful candidate of one political party, his administration had received the earnest support of the best men of the country without regard to party, and his death was a national calamity. He had held office only sixteen months, but had shown himself equal to his difficult and delicate position. He was sixty-six years old at the time of his death.

By the terms of the constitution the office of President devolved upon Millard Fillmore, Vice-President of the United States. On the tenth of July he took the oath of office before Chief Justice Cranch of the District of Columbia, and at once entered upon the duties of his new position.

MILLARD FILLMORE.

Mr. Fillmore was a native of New York, and was born in that State in the year 1800.

He had served his State in Congress, and as governor, and was personally one of the most popular of the Presidents. The cabinet of General Taylor resigned their offices immediately after his death, and the new President filled their places by appointing a new cabinet with Daniel Webster at its head as secretary of state. Mr. Fillmore was in active sympathy with Mr. Clay in his efforts to secure the passage of the compromise measures, as he deemed them the best adjustment of the trouble possible under the circumstances.



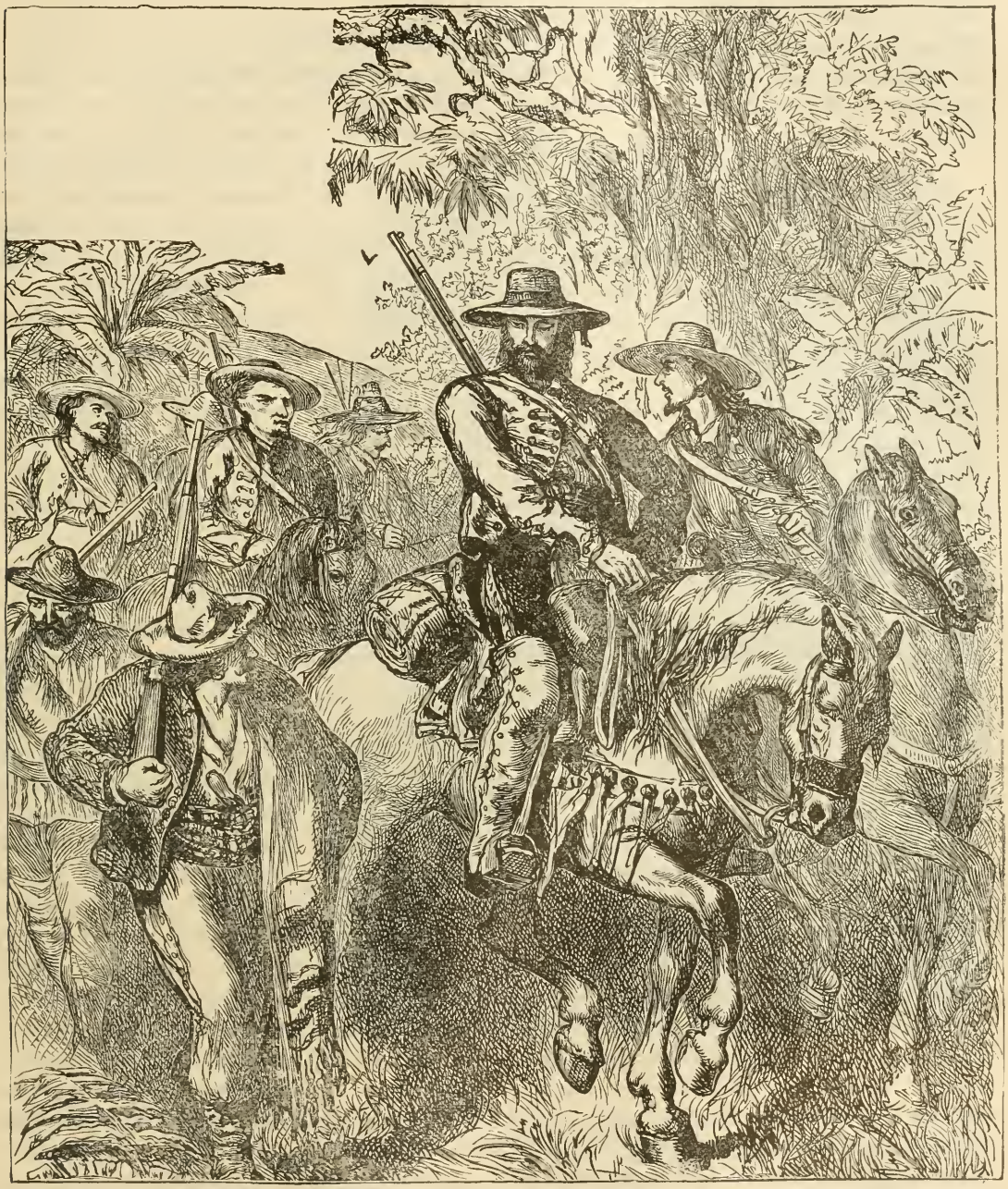
PORTRAITS OF LEADING MORMONS.

The compromise measures were warmly debated in Congress, the sessions of which extended through the summer into the latter part of September. The bill was then taken up and passed, article by article, by the House of Representatives, it having previously passed the Senate. The bill at once received the executive approval, and became a law.

The clause admitting California into the Union as a State was adopted on the ninth of September, 1850.

The course of Mr. Clay in securing the passage of the compromise measures of 1850 was justly regarded as the crowning glory of his life. It won for him the love and confidence of the whole country without regard to party, and the man who "had rather be right than be President" had the proud satisfaction of seeing all the faults and mistakes of his earlier years forgotten in the confidence and gratitude with which his countrymen regarded him. He ceased now to take an active part in the questions of the day, for it was fitting that his life should close with this great service to his country. His health failed rapidly, but he continued to hold his seat in the Senate until the twenty-ninth of June, 1852, when he died at the age of seventy-five years. Honors were showered upon his memory in

all parts of the Union, and he was laid to his rest amid a nation's unaffected mourning.



CUBAN FILLIBUSTERS ON THE MARCH.

There were still many extremists both North and South, to whom the compromise measures failed to give satisfaction. The Fugitive Slave Law was bitterly denounced by the Anti-slavery party in the North. As the Supreme Court of the United States had

decided that the justices of the peace in the respective States could not be called upon to execute the law for the rendition of fugitive slaves, a clause was inserted in the Fugitive Slave Law of 1850, providing for the appointment of United States commissioners, before whom such cases could be tried.

The Fugitive Slave Law.

The Northern States successively enacted laws for the nullification of the provisions of this law. All their jails and other State buildings were refused to the federal officers for the securing of fugitive slaves, and all State, county, and city officers were forbidden to arrest or assist in arresting or detaining any fugitive slave. In many of the States severe punishments were denounced against masters coming within their limits to claim their slaves, and such fugitives entering these States were declared free. These laws were denounced by the slaveholding States as violative of the constitution of the United States, and gave rise to great bitterness of feeling toward the North. It was maintained that these laws were direct evidence of the intention of the northern people to rob the South of its property in negro slaves.

The extremists of the South were equally dissatisfied with the compromise. They declared that the South had sacrificed everything and gained nothing by it, and boldly avowed their intention to bring about the secession of the Southern States from the Union. In the summer of 1850 a southern convention was held at Nashville, Tennessee. Its real end was the dissolution of the Union, and for that purpose it urged the Southern States to appoint delegates to a "Southern Congress." The legislatures of South Carolina and Mississippi alone responded to this invitation, but the great mass of the southern people turned a deaf ear to the appeals of the disunionists, and the convention failed to accomplish its object.

In the inauguration of a territorial government for Utah, the Mormons, whose settlement in that Territory while it was yet a possession of Mexico we have related, endeavored to frame their own government, and gave to the Territory the name of Deseret, which they declared was a word of their peculiar language meaning "The Land of the Honey Bee." President Fillmore set aside this name and carried out the act of Congress by which the Territory received its present name. Brigham Young, the Mormon leader or prophet, was appointed governor of the Territory.

In 1850 the seventh census showed the population of the United States to be 23,191,876 souls.

Capture of General Lopez.

In the early part of President Taylor's administration, General Lopez, a Spaniard, began to enlist men in the United States ostensibly for the purpose of aiding the people of the island of Cuba to throw off their allegiance to Spain and establish their independence, but really for the purpose of driving out the Spaniards and securing the annexation of Cuba to the United States. He succeeded in inducing a number of adventurous persons to join him.

President Taylor, upon learning of the movement, issued a proclamation forbidding citizens of the United States to engage in it. In spite of this warning, Lopez collected a force of six hundred men, and eluding the vigilance of the United States officers, sailed for Cuba. He landed at Cardenas, but received so little encouragement that the party sailed for Key West. In 1851, Lopez again entered Cuba, this time at the head of four hundred and fifty men. His party was

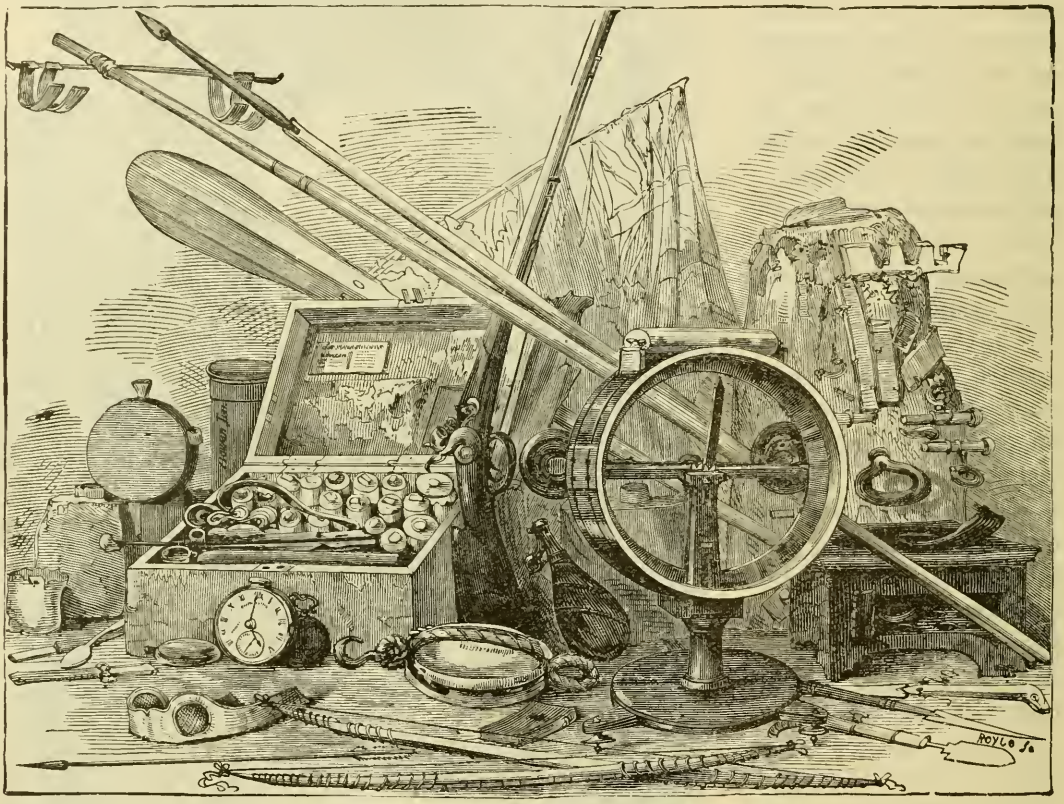
captured almost immediately, and he and a number of his men were put to death by the Spanish authorities at Havana.

In May, 1850, an expedition of a different character sailed from the United States. The fate of Sir John Franklin, who sailed from England in 1845, in search of the northwest passage, had long enlisted the sympathies of humane and generous souls. It was thought that the daring navigator might be confined to the Arctic regions by the loss of his ships, and that a well-executed search might either result in the discovery and relief of Franklin or settle the question as to his fate. Mr. Henry Grinnell, a wealthy merchant of New York, fitted out an expedition at his own expense, and placing it under the command of Lieutenant De Haven, of the United States navy, despatched it to the Arctic regions to search for Franklin and his men, in May, 1850. De Haven was accompanied by Dr. E. K. Kane, in the capacity of surgeon and naturalist. After a year's absence the vessels returned, the search having been unsuccessful. The general government despatched another expedition in 1851, on the same errand, and placed it under command of Dr. Kane. This expedition was absent four years, and the government, becoming apprehensive of its fate, sent two vessels to search for Kane and his companions. They were found at the isle of Disco, in Greenland, having been forced to abandon their vessel in the ice. Nothing was learned by Dr. Kane concerning the fate of Sir John Franklin; but the expedition resulted in the discovery of the open Polar sea. Nothing definite was learned of the fate of Sir John Franklin until 1859, when the steamer "Fox," despatched by Lady Franklin, made the melancholy discovery that Sir John Franklin died on the eleventh of June, 1847, and in 1848 the "Erebus" and "Terror"

SIR JOHN FRANKLIN.

were abandoned in the ice. The survivors of these disasters, one hundred and five in number, died one by one from cold and exhaustion on King William's Island.

In the early part of 1851 Congress reduced the postage on prepaid letters to three cents to all parts of the United States, prepayment being made by means of stamps provided by the government. The result was a rapid and immense increase of the postal revenue of the country.



RELICS OF FRANKLIN'S POLAR VOYAGE.

On the fourth of July, 1851, the corner-stone of the extension of the capitol at Washington was laid by President Fillmore with appropriate ceremonies. The orator of the day was Daniel Webster. His address was one of his best efforts, but was delivered under great disadvantages. His health had been failing for some time past, and his weakness was so great that he could speak only with difficulty.

This oration was one of the last public acts of the great statesman. On the twenty-fourth of October, 1852, he died at his home at Marshfield, Massachusetts, aged seventy years, and in him perished the first statesman of America. He was large and stout in frame, of swarthy complexion, and slow and heavy in movement—a man of noble and commanding appearance. His intellect was cast in the same gigantic mould as his body. His language was simple and chaste, and his arguments irresistible. His patriotism knew no sectional limits. "I am as ready," he once said, "to fight and to fall for the

constitutional rights of Virginia as I am for those of Massachusetts."

Alexander H. Stephens has said of him: "He was too great a man and had too great an intellect not to see the truth when it was presented, and he was too honest and too patriotic a man not to proclaim the truth when he saw it, even to an unwilling people. rdeal, and that he passed it with unflinching firmness is one of the grandest features in the general grandeur of his character. Even his detractors have been constrained to render him unwilling homage in this respect." * His memory was honored by appropriate demonstrations in all parts of the country, and it is said that the popular

DR. E. K KANE AND HIS COMPANIONS.

In this quality of moral greatness I often thought Mr. Webster had the advantage of his great contemporaries, Messrs. Clay and Calhoun. Not that I would be understood as saying that they were not men of great moral courage, for both of them showed this high quality in many instances, but they never gave the world such striking exhibitions of it as he did. Webster often passed this tributes on this occasion were equalled only by those of the nation at the death of Washington.

In December, 1851, Louis Kossuth, the chief of the Hungarian insurrection of 1848, visited the United States. His avowed object was to promote the cause of his

* *The War Between the States*, vol. i., pp. 405, 406.

countrymen, and he made frequent addresses in various parts of the Union, which were listened to by vast multitudes who were charmed with his eloquence. He visited Washington, and was granted a public reception by Congress. The Austrian minister at Washington, the Chevalier Hulseman, protested against this reception, and his protest being unheeded, he withdrew from Washington for a while.

Protection for Cuba.

The attempt of Lopez upon Cuba had greatly alarmed Spain for the safety of that island. England and France, sympathizing with her, and anxious to render the acquisition of Cuba by the United States impossible, proposed to the American government to join them in a "tripartite treaty," in which each should disclaim any intention to seize that island, and should guarantee Spain in her possession of it. In December, 1852, Edward Everett, who had succeeded Mr. Webster as secretary of state, by direction of the President, replied to the proposition of England and France, declining to accept it.

"The President," he said, "does not covet the acquisition of Cuba for the United States," but "could not see with indifference that island fall into the possession of any European government than Spain." He stated that the situation of the island rendered it peculiarly interesting to this country by reason of its proximity to our coast, and its commanding the approach to the Gulf of Mexico and the mouth of the Mississippi. The European powers were thus given to understand that the United States would not tolerate their interference in a question purely American.

The year 1852 was marked by intense excitement consequent on the political campaign which terminated in the fall in the Presidential election. The Democratic party made a strong and successful effort to recover its lost power, and nominated Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, for President, and William R. King, of Alabama, for Vice-President. The Whig party nominated General Winfield Scott for President, and William A. Graham, of North Carolina, for Vice-President. The Anti-slavery party put in nomination John P. Hale, of New Hampshire, and George W. Julian, of Indiana. The election resulted in the choice of the candidates of the Democratic party by an overwhelming majority. The Anti-slavery party on this occasion polled but 155,825 votes, or a little more than half of the strength it had shown at the previous election.

Mr. King, the Vice-President-elect, did not long survive his triumph. His health had been delicate for many years, and he was obliged to pass the winter succeeding the election in Cuba. Being unable to return home, he took the oath of office before the American consul, at Havana, on the fourth of March, 1853. He then returned to the United States, and died at his home in Alabama on the eighteenth of April, 1853.

CHAPTER XXXIX

The Administration of Franklin Pierce.

Dispute with Mexico—The Gadsden Purchase—Surveys for a Pacific Railway—The Japan Expedition—Treaty with Japan—The Koszta Affair—The "Black Warrior" Seized by the Cuban Officials—The "Ostend Conference"—Dismissal of the British Minister—The Kansas-Nebraska Bill—History of the Bill—Its Passage by Congress—History of the Struggle in Kansas—Conflict Between the Pro-Slavery and Free-Soil Settlers—Lawrence Sacked—Civil War—The Presidential Campaign of 1856—James Buchanan Elected President of the United States—Rapid Increase of the Republican Party.

PRESIDENT PIERCE took the oath of office at the capitol at Washington on the fourth of March, 1853, in the presence of an immense throng. He was in his forty-ninth year, and had won an enviable name by his previous services to the country. He was a native of New Hampshire, and had represented that State for four years in the lower House of Congress, and for nearly a full term in the Senate of the United States. He had also served with distinction during the Mexican war as brigadier-general. He placed William L. Marcy, of New York, at the head of his cabinet as secretary of state.

The first question of importance the new President was called upon to settle grew out of a dispute with Mexico concerning the boundary between that country and the Territory of New Mexico. At the time of the treaty of Guadaloupe Hidalgo the maps were so imperfect that the boundary line had not been drawn with sufficient exactness. Both countries claimed the Mesilla valley, which was said to be very fertile, but which was more important to the United States as affording what was generally regarded as the most practicable route to California.

Santa Anna was now President of the Mexican republic again, and sent a force of Mexican troops to occupy the region in dispute. The matter was settled by negotiation, however, and the United States obtained the Mesilla valley and the free navigation of the Gulf of California and of the Colorado to the American frontier. For these concessions the federal government paid Mexico the sum of ten millions of dollars. The district thus acquired was known as the "Gadsden Purchase," and was subsequently erected into the Territory of Arizona.

The necessity of more rapid and certain communication with California had brought the nation to regard a railway between the Mississippi and the Pacific as a necessity, and as such an undertaking was considered beyond the resources of a private corporation, it was believed that it should be built by the general government, or at least that the general government should bear a part of the expense. The year 1853 witnessed the first steps towards the construction of this great work. Two expeditions were despatched under the orders of the war department to explore the best routes for a Pacific railway.

The acquisition of California brought the United States into new relations with the nations of the eastern world, as it secured for them a base upon the Pacific from which a direct trade could be conducted with China

and Japan. The empire of Japan, however, was closed to foreigners, and it was very desirable to open commercial relations with it. Towards the close of Mr. Fillmore's term of office, Commodore Perry, a brother of the hero of Lake Erie, was despatched to China with a fleet of seven war steamers to negotiate a treaty with the Japanese government. He arrived in the bay of Jeddo in the summer of 1853. The natives were greatly astonished at the appearance of his steamers, the first that had ever been seen in those

FRANKLIN PIERCE.

waters, and at his boldness in venturing into their harbors. The Japanese officials ordered him to depart, but he refused, and insisted on seeing the emperor, and making known to him the object of his friendly visit.

They at length decided to lay the matter before the emperor, who consented to grant an interview to the commodore, and named the fourteenth of July for that purpose. On the day appointed the commodore landed, accompanied by a strong body of marines. He was received with great ceremony by the Japanese, and delivered the President's letter, to which an answer was promised. The answer of the emperor was submitted to him several months later, and was favorable. A treaty was concluded between the United States and Japan, by which the former were allowed to trade in two specified ports—Simodi and Hokadadi. American citizens were permitted to reside at these ports, and consuls were accepted for them. Thus the United States had the honor of being the first to open the rich markets of the island empire to the commerce of the civilized world. Since then the relations between the two countries have steadily grown more cordial, and Japan has shown a remarkable rapidity and facility for adopting the civilization of the west.

In July, 1853, occurred an event which did much to increase the respect for our navy among the powers of the world. Martin Koszta, a Hungarian, who had taken the preliminary steps to be naturalized in the United States, happening to be in Smyrna, in Asia Minor, on business, was seized as a rebel and a refugee by order of the Austrian consul-general, and taken on board an Austrian brig. The United States sloop-of-war "St. Louis," Captain Ingraham, was lying in the harbor at the time, and Ingraham was appealed to for protection for Koszta.

Ingraham Threatens to Fire.

He at once demanded his release as an American citizen. The demand was refused by the authorities, and Ingraham at once called his crew to quarters and threatened to fire upon the Austrian ship if Koszta was not immediately released. The Austrians at once surrendered their prisoner, and he was placed in custody of the French consul to await the action of the government of the United States. The matter was settled by negotiation between this country and Austria, and Koszta was released. Austria addressed

to the government at Washington a remonstrance against the conduct of Captain Ingraham, but his course was warmly applauded by his countrymen and by disinterested persons in Europe.

In February, 1854, the American merchant steamer "Black Warrior" was seized by the Spanish authorities at Havana, on the pretext that she had evaded or violated some uncertain revenue law, and the ship and her cargo were declared confiscated. This action of the Havana officials was regarded in the United States as unjust, and aroused a great deal of feeling against the Spaniards, and gave a sudden impetus to the national sentiment in favor of the acquisition of Cuba. The affair of the "Black Warrior" was satisfactorily settled by the Spanish government.

While the feeling aroused by the affair was at its height a conference of some of the American ministers in Europe, including Mr. Buchanan, minister to England, Mr. Mason, minister to France, and Mr. Soulé, minister to Spain, and some others, was held at Ostend, in Belgium, and a circular was adopted recommending the acquisition of Cuba by the United States. This measure attracted much attention, and elicited considerable European criticism of the alleged ambitious designs of the United States. Mr. Soulé, on his return to Madrid, was stopped at Calais by order of the emperor of the French, who had personal reasons for disliking him. The emperor, however, reconsidered his action, and allowed Soulé to pass through France to the Spanish frontier.

British Minister Dismissed.

In 1855 Great Britain, France, Sardinia and Turkey, being engaged in a war with Russia, the agents of the British government undertook to enlist recruits for their army within the limits of the United States in defiance of the neutrality laws of this country. The matter being brought to the attention of the United States government, it was found that the British minister at Washington and the British consuls in some of the principal cities of the Union had encouraged, if they had not authorized, these enlistments. The government of the United States thereupon called the attention of Great Britain to the conduct of her minister, and requested her to recall him. The queen declined to comply with this request, and the minister and the consuls were promptly dismissed by the President. The matter caused considerable irritation in England for a while, but the good sense of the English people at length perceived the propriety of the course of the American government, and cordial relations were re-established between the two countries.

Territory of Nebraska.

The most important measure of Mr. Pierce's administration was the bill to organize the Territories of Kansas and Nebraska. The region embraced in these Territories formed a part of the Louisiana purchase, and extended from the borders of Missouri, Iowa and Minnesota to the summit of the Rocky mountains, and from the parallel of 36° 30' north latitude to the border of British America. The whole region by the terms of the Missouri Compromise had been secured to free labor by the exclusion of slavery.

Until the year 1850 this vast area was called by the general and somewhat indefinite name of the "Platte Country," from the Platte river, which flows through it. Little was known concerning it save that it was a region of great fertility. It was mainly occupied by the reservations of the Indian tribes, which had been removed from the other States to make way for the whites. Across it swept the grand trails of the over-

land route to Utah and the Pacific. The people of the New England States were very anxious that the Indian reservations which covered the eastern part should be bought up by the general government and the country thrown open to emigration. Petitions to this effect were presented to the Thirty-second Congress, but no action was taken upon them until December, 1852, when Mr. Hall, of Missouri, introduced a bill into the House to organize the "Territory of Platte."

STEPHEN A. DOUGLAS.

It was referred to the Committee on Territories, which in February, 1853, reported a bill organizing the "Territory of Nebraska." The bill was opposed in the House of Representatives by the full strength of the South, and in the Senate the only southern senators who voted for it were those from Missouri. The Missouri Compromise, as has been stated, secured the entire Nebraska region to free labor; but notwithstanding this the southern members of Congress were resolved to oppose the organization of a new free Territory, and to endeavor to obtain a footing for slavery, in at least a part of it.

The matter was revived in the Senate on the sixteenth of January, 1854, by Senator Dixon, of Kentucky, who gave notice that whenever the Nebraska bill should be called up he would move the following amendment: "That so much of the eighth section of an act approved March 6, 1820, entitled 'An act to authorize the people of the Missouri Territory to form a constitution and State government, for the admission of such State into the Union on an equal footing with the original States, and to prohibit slavery in certain Territories,' as declares 'That, in all the territory ceded by France to the United States, under the name of Louisiana, which lies north of 36° 30′ north latitude, slavery and involuntary servitude, otherwise than in the punishment of crimes whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall be for ever prohibited,' shall not be so construed as to apply to the Territory contemplated by this act, or to any other Territory of the United States; but that the citizens of the several States or Territories shall be at liberty to take and hold their slaves within any of the Territories or States to be formed therefrom, as if the said act, entitled as aforesaid, had never been passed."

More Slavery Agitation.

The announcement of this amendment startled the country as much as the Wilmot Proviso had done years before, and produced much angry excitement. It was a clear repudiation of the Missouri Compromise, which it did not even seek to repeal.

Senator Douglas, of Illinois, chairman of the Committee on Territories, on the twenty-third of January, 1854, reported a bill which provided for the organization of the Platte country into *two* Territories. The

southern portion, which lay directly west of Missouri, stretching to the Rock Mountains on the west, and extending from the thirty-seventh to the fortieth parallel of north latitude, was to be organized into a distinct Territory, to be called Kansas. The remainder was to be called Nebraska, having the line of 43° 30′ for its northern boundary. Senator Douglas, in an evil hour for the country, incorporated in the bill the main features of Mr. Dixon's amendment. The bill contained the following provisions:

"SECTION 21. *And be it further enacted*, That, in order to avoid misconstruction, it is hereby declared to be the true intent and meaning of this act, so far as the question of slavery is concerned, to carry into practical operation the following propositions and principles, established by the compromise measures of 1850, to wit:

"*First.*—That all questions pertaining to slavery in the Territories, and in the new States to be formed therefrom, are to be left to the decision of the people residing therein, through their appropriate representatives.

"*Second.*—That all cases involving title to slaves, and questions of personal freedom, are referred to the adjudication of the local tribunals, with the right of appeal to the Supreme Court of the United States.

"*Third.*—That the provisions of the constitution and laws of the United States, in respect to fugitives from service, are to be carried into faithful execution in all the 'organized Territories,' the same as in the States."

A Blow at the Missouri Compromise.

The section of the bill which prescribed the qualifications and mode of election of a delegate from each of the Territories was as follows: "The constitution, and all laws of the United States which are not locally inapplicable, shall have the same force and effect within the said Territory as elsewhere in the United States, except the section of the act preparatory to the admission of Missouri into the Union, approved March 6, 1820, which was superseded by the principles of the legislation of 1850, commonly called the compromise measures, and is declared inoperative."

Mr. Dixon declared that the bill, as reported by Senator Douglas, met with his hearty approval, and that he would support it with all his ability. The debate on the bill began in the Senate on the twenty-fourth of January, and continued through several weeks. It was conducted with great ability on both sides, and engaged the earnest attention of the whole country. The Free Soil senators unanimously opposed the bill, which they denounced as a violation of the Missouri Compromise, by which the faith of the nation was pledged to the settlement then effected. The southern senators supported it with equal unanimity, as they held that the Missouri Compromise had been superseded by the compromise of 1850.

Motion to Strike Out.

On the sixth of February Mr. Chase, of Ohio, moved to strike out so much of the bill as declared the Missouri Compromise "superseded" by the compromise of 1850, but the motion was defeated. Whereupon Mr. Douglas, on the fifteenth of February, moved to strike out the clause objected to by Mr. Chase, and insert the following:

"Which being inconsistent with the principle of non-intervention by Congress with slavery in the States and Territories, as recognized by the legislation of 1850 (commonly called the compromise measures), is hereby declared inoperative and void; it being the true intent and meaning of this act not to legislate slavery into any Territory or State, nor to exclude it therefrom, but to

leave the people thereof perfectly free to form and regulate their domestic institutions in their own way, subject only to the constitution of the United States."

Mr. Douglas' amendment was at once adopted, and seemed fair enough on its face. Mr. Chase exposed the hollowness of it by proposing to add to it the following clause, which was promptly voted down: "Under which the people of the Territories, through their appropriate representatives, may, if they see fit, prohibit the existence of slavery therein."

SALMON P. CHASE.

The bill was adopted by the Senate by a vote of thirty-seven yeas to fourteen nays, and by the House by a vote of one hundred and thirteen yeas to one hundred nays, and on the thirty-first of May, 1854, received the approval of the President and became a law.

The whole country engaged warmly in the discussion aroused by the re-opening of the question of slavery in the Territories. The North resented the repeal of the Missouri Compromise and in the South a large and respectable party sincerely regretted the repeal of that settlement. By the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska bill the Thirty-third Congress assumed a grave responsibility, and opened the door to a bloody and bitter conflict in the Territories between slavery and free labor. The events now to be related were the logical consequences of the repeal of the Missouri Compromise.

A few months before the final vote upon the Kansas-Nebraska bill the general government succeeded in purchasing the Indian reservations in those Territories, and removed the Indian tribes to new homes farther west. This action at once threw Kansas and Nebraska open to white settlers, and measures were set on foot in the New England States to encourage emigration thither. Kansas being a more fertile country than Nebraska naturally attracted the greater number of settlers. Before anything could be done by the Free Soil men, the people living on the border of Missouri passed over into Kansas, and selecting the best lands, put their mark upon them, hoping in this way to establish a pre-emption claim to them. Their object was to organize and hold the Territory in the interest of slavery, but very few of them removed to Kansas, or had any wish to do so.

In the meantime societies had been formed in the New England States for the promotion of emigration to Kansas. As the Pro-slavery settlers had come into the Territory so slowly, and in such small numbers, it seemed certain that the northern people could secure Kansas to free labor by sending out settlers to occupy the Territory in good faith. The Pro-slavery party in Missouri determined to prevent this. In July, 1854, a meeting was

held at Westport in that State, at which it was resolved that the persons taking part in the meeting would, "whenever called upon by any of the citizens of Kansas Territory, hold 'themselves' in readiness together to resist and remove any and all emigrants who go there under the auspices of the Northern Emigrant Aid Societies."

The first party sent out by the New England Aid Societies reached a point on the Kaw river, in Kansas, about the middle of July. There they pitched their tents and began the building of a town, which they named Lawrence, in honor of Amos A. Lawrence, of Boston. By the last of the month they were joined by seventy more emigrants and the work of founding their town was pushed forward with energy. There was not a drone in the little community. They were all honest, intelligent, God-fearing men and women, and they meant to succeed in the undertaking they had begun. They were in legal and peaceable possession of their settlement, and thus far had molested or wronged no one.

SCENE ON THE ALLEGHENY RIVER.

They were not to live in peace, however. Before they had finished building their houses, they were startled by the announcement that two hundred and fifty armed Missourians had encamped within a short distance of them for the purpose of driving them out of the Territory. The next morning the Missourians sent them a formal notice that "the Abolitionists must leave the Territory, never more to return to it." They declared their desire to avoid bloodshed; but notified the settlers that they must be ready to leave the Territory, with all their effects, at one o'clock that day. This the settlers refused to do, and prepared to defend their homes. The messengers of the Missourians found them

drilling behind their tents and reported this fact to their leaders.

The firm but quiet attitude of the people of Lawrence had a happy effect. The Missourians made no effort to carry out their threat, but broke up their camp that night, and withdrew across the border, leaving the settlers in peace. Meanwhile the town of Lawrence grew and prospered, and the New England Societies continuing to send other emigrants into the Territory, other towns were founded. Settlers from the Southern States came into the Territory very slowly.

The general government threw its influence as far as possible in favor of the Pro-slavery party, in the organization of the Territory, by appointing a majority of the territorial officers from the slaveholding States. A. H. Reeder was appointed governor by President Pierce. He endeavored to execute the laws faithfully, and ordered an election for members of a territorial legislature, to be held on the thirtieth of March, 1855. On that day large numbers of armed Missourians crossed the border, and, taking possession of the polling-places in Kansas, succeeded in returning a Pro-slavery legislature.

Oppressive Laws.

Six districts at once forwarded protests to the governor against the elections, showing beyond all reasonable doubt that they had been controlled by citizens of Missouri. The governor, who was anxious to do justice to all parties, ordered a new election in these districts, each of which, with the exception of Lecompton, returned a Free Soil delegate. The new delegates, however, were refused their seats upon the assembling of the legislature, and the successful candidates at the original election were admitted.

The governor had summoned the legislature to meet at Pawnee City, on the Kansas river, a town nearly one hundred miles distant from the border, and supposed to be far enough away to be free from intimidation by the Missourians; but the legislature, immediately upon assembling, adjourned to Shawnee Mission, on the Missouri border. The resolution for this purpose was vetoed by the governor, but was passed over his veto, and was at once carried into effect. Upon reassembling at Shawnee Mission, the Legislature proceeded to adopt the laws of Missouri as the laws of Kansas, and to frame a series of statutes designedly cruel and oppressive. These laws were vetoed by Governor Reeder, who was removed by the President. Wilson Shannon, of Ohio, was then appointed governor of Kansas.

Bold Acts of Pro-Slavery Men.

In the meantime the Free Soil settlers had increased so rapidly that they at length largely outnumbered the Pro-slavery settlers. They now felt themselves strong enough to resist the outrages of the Missourians, and accordingly, on the fifth of September, 1855, held a convention, in which they distinctly repudiated the government that had been forced upon them by men who were not residents of the Territory. They announced their intention not to take part in the election of a delegate to Congress, which the territorial authorities had ordered to be held on the first of October, and called upon the actual residents of the Territory to send delegates to a convention to meet at Topeka on the nineteenth of September. This convention organized an executive committee for the Territory, and ordered an election to be held for the purpose of choosing a delegate to Congress. Governor Reeder was nominated and elected to Congress. On the twenty-third of October the convention adopted a Free State constitution, and forwarded it to Congress with a petition for the admission of Kansas into the Union as a State.

The struggle for the possession of the Territory now passed out of the area of politics. As we have said, the repeal of the Missouri Compromise opened the way for, and was the direct cause of, the conflict between the Free and Pro-slavery settlers of Kansas. The outrages of the Pro-slavery men had forced the Free-Soilers into an attitude of direct and uncompromising resistance; and after the action of the latter, at Topeka, the struggle which had hitherto been comparatively bloodless changed its character and became an open and sanguinary war between the two parties.

In this struggle the Pro-slavery men were the aggressors. Bands of young men, armed and regularly organized into companies and regiments, came into the Territory from South Carolina, Georgia and the extreme Southern States, with the avowed design of making Kansas a slaveholding State at all hazards. On the morning of May 21st, 1856, under the pretext of aiding the United States marshal to serve certain processes upon citizens of Lawrence, they captured that town, sacked it, burned several houses and inflicted a loss upon it amounting to $150,000. From this time the war went on in a series of desultory but bloody encounters, some of which assumed the proportions of battles.

During this month an event occurred which aroused universal indignation throughout the Northern States. Senator Charles Sumner, of Massachusetts, made an eloquent speech in the Senate at Washington on the Kansas question, some parts of which excited the anger of Preston S. Brooks, a southern member of Congress. On the twenty-second of May Brooks assaulted Mr. Sumner while he was sitting in the Senate chamber, and beat him on the head with a cane until he became insensible. Mr. Sumner was disabled for the public service for several years, but afterward was re-elected almost unanimously and resumed his seat. This cowardly assault was universally condemned.

In the summer of 1856 Governor Shannon, of Kansas, was removed, and John W. Geary, of Pennsylvania, was appointed in his place. He exerted himself honestly to restore peace and execute the laws, and ordered "all bodies of men combined, armed and equipped with munitions of war, without authority of the government, instantly to disband and quit the Territory." In obedience to this order the Free Soil companies nearly all disbanded, but the Pro-slavery party paid scarcely any attention to it. They concentrated a force of two thousand men and advanced upon Lawrence to attack it. Governor Geary at once placed himself at the head of the United States dragoons stationed in the Territory, and by a rapid march threw himself with these

CHARLES SUMNER.

troops between the town of Lawrence and the hostile force and prevented another conflict.

Matters had reached this stage when the Presidential campaign opened in 1856. The struggle in the Territories had greatly weakened the Democratic party, and had given rise to a new party which called itself Republican, and which was based upon an avowed hostility to the extension of slavery. A third party, called the American, or Know Nothing, also took part in the campaign, and was based upon the doctrine that the political offices of the country should be held only by persons of American birth. The Democratic party nominated James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, for the Presidency, and John C. Breckenridge, of Kentucky, for the Vice-Presidency. The Republican nominee for the Presidency was John C. Fremont, of California; for the Vice-Presidency William L. Dayton, of New Jersey. The American party supported Millard Fillmore, of New York, for the Presidency, and Andrew J. Donelson, of Tennessee, for the Vice-Presidency. The Whig party had been broken to pieces by its defeat in 1852, and had now entirely disappeared.

The canvass was unusually excited. Slavery was the principal question in dispute. Party ties had little influence upon men. The sentiment of the nation at large had been outraged by the repeal of the Missouri Compromise, and thousands of Democrats, desiring to rebuke their party for its course in bringing about this repeal, united with the Republican party, which declared as its leading principle that it was "both the right and the duty of Congress to prohibit in the Territories those twin relics of barbarism—polygamy and slavery."

The elections resulted in the triumph of James Buchanan, the candidate of the Democratic party. Mr. Buchanan received 174 electoral votes to 114 cast for Fremont. Though a majority of the American people sustained the action of the Democratic party, the significant fact remained that 1,341,264 of the voters of the country had recorded their condemnation of it by casting their votes for Fremont and Dayton.

CHAPTER XI

The Administration of James Buchanan.

Inauguration of Mr. Buchanan—The Mormon Rebellion—The Financial Crisis of 1857—Laying of the Atlantic Telegraphic Cable—Minnesota Admitted Into the Union—The San Juan Affair—Admission of Oregon Into the Union—The Kansas Question—The Lecompton Constitution—Its Defeat—The Wyandotte Constitution—Admission of Kansas Into the Union—The John Brown Raid—Prompt Action of the Government—Brown and His Companions Surrendered to the State of Virginia—Their Trial and Execution—Presidential Campaign of 1860—Rupture of the Democratic Party—Abraham Lincoln Elected President of the United States—Secession of South Carolina—Reasons for this Act—Secession of the Other Cotton States—Major Anderson Occupies Fort Sumter—Trying Position of the General Government—Course of Mr. Buchanan—The "Star of the West" Fired Upon by the South Carolina Batteries Organization of the Confederate States of America—Jefferson Davis Elected President of the Southern Republic—The Peace Congress—Its Failure.

JAMES BUCHANAN, the fifteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated at Washington on the fourth of March, 1857. He was in his sixty-sixth year, and was a statesman of great accomplishments and ripe experience. He was born in Pennsylvania in 1791, and was by profession a lawyer. He had served his State in Congress as a representative and a senator, had been minister to Russia under President Jackson, and had been a member of the cabinet of President Polk as secretary of state. During the four years previous to his election to the Presidency he had resided abroad as the minister of the United States to Great Britain, and in that capacity had greatly added to his reputation as a statesman.

He avowed the object of his administration to be "to destroy any sectional party, whether North or South, and to restore, if possible, that national fraternal feeling between the different States that had existed during the early days of the republic." The intense sectional feeling which the discussion of the slavery question had aroused had alarmed patriotic men in all parts of the Union, and it was earnestly hoped that Mr. Buchanan's administration would be able to effect a peaceful settlement of the quarrel. Mr. Buchanan selected his cabinet from the leading men of the Democratic party, and placed at its head as secretary of state Lewis Cass, of Michigan.

We have in a previous portion of this work noticed the rise and growth of the Mormon sect, and their settlement in the region of the Great Salt lake, then a part of the Mexican republic. They were not at all pleased with their transfer to the United States by the cession of the territory occupied by them by the treaty of Guadaloupe Hidalgo. Their object in emigrating to Utah had been to place themselves beyond the limits of the United States, where they could enjoy without molestation their religious practices, and maintain among themselves the institution of polygamy, to which they were attached as the foundation of their faith. They were not disturbed by the Mexican government, which was indeed scarcely aware of their existence, and thus unnoticed devoted their energies to building up the country they had occupied.

Their missionaries were sent into the various countries of Europe, and converts were made with extraordinary success and rapidity. They built up a thriving town on the

borders of the great lake, to which they gave the name of Salt Lake City, and founded other towns in various parts of the Territory. By the year 1850 the population of the Territory had increased to 11,380. Being on the highway to California, the greater part of the overland traffic and travel to the Pacific passed through Salt Lake City, and was a source of considerable profit to the Mormons.

JAMES BUCHANAN.

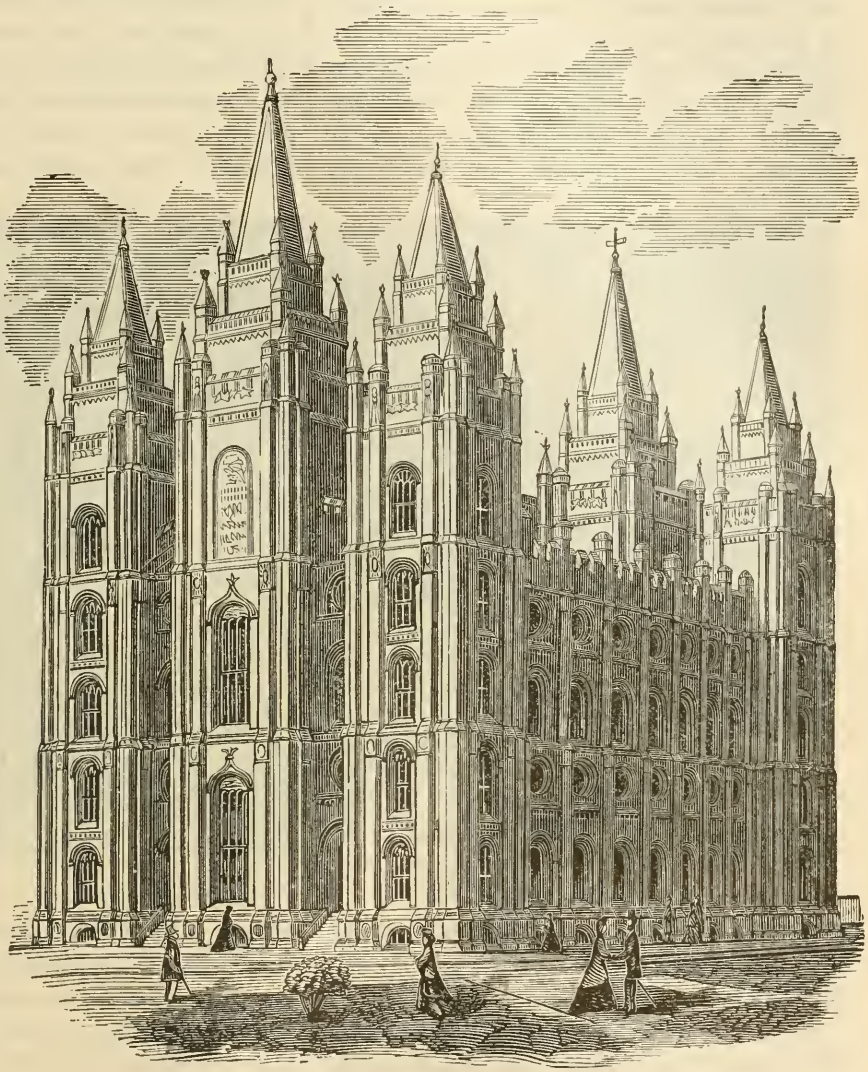
In 1850 the Territory of Utah was organized, and Brigham Young, who had succeeded Joe Smith as the prophet or leader of the Mormons, was appointed by President Fillmore governor of the Territory. His appointment was renewed by President Pierce, and the Mormons were left during these two administrations to manage their affairs very much in their own way. Relying upon the immense distance which separated them from the States, they paid but little regard to the authority of the United States, and finally ventured openly to resist the officers of the general government, and expelled the federal judge from the Territory.

President Buchanan thereupon removed Brigham Young from his office of governor, and appointed a Mr. Cumming his successor. The Mormons having declared that the new governor should not enter the Territory, General Harney was ordered to accompany him with a large body of troops and compel the submission of the people of Utah to the authority of the federal government.

Under the leadership of Brigham Young the Mormons took up arms and prepared to dispute the entrance of the troops into the Territory. They declared that their settlement and civilization of Utah had given them

the sole right to the Territory, and that they owed no allegiance to the United States. Their resistance was so formidable that the force under General Harney was largely increased, and the command was conferred upon Brigadier-General Albert Sidney Johnston, who was considered the most efficient officer in the service. General Johnston joined his troops at Fort Bridger, about one hundred miles from Salt Lake City, in September, 1857. The Mormons in heavy force occupied the passes leading to the valley of the Great Salt lake. The season was so far advanced at the time of his arrival that General Johnston concluded to pass the winter at Fort Bridger. The Mormons were very active during the winter in cutting off the trains of the federal troops.

It was General Johnston's intention to move upon Salt Lake City immediately upon the opening of the spring, but before that season arrived the matter was settled through the efforts of a Mr. Kane, of Philadelphia. He was sent out to Salt Lake City by the government, and succeeded in inducing the Mormons to lay down their arms and submit. Governor Cumming and the federal officers then entered Salt Lake City and assumed the offices to which they had been appointed, and a force of federal troops was encamped near the city to render them such assistance as should be found necessary. President Buchanan then issued a proclamation granting a free pardon "to all, for the seditions and treasons by them committed."



THE MORMON TEMPLE, SALT LAKE CITY, UTAH.

Subsequently it transpired that a horrible atrocity of the most cruel and bloody description had been committed. On the eighteenth of September, 1857, one hundred and thirty-six emigrants, who were said to have offended the Mormons, were massacred in cold blood at Mountain Meadow, Utah. Many years later Bishop Lee, of the Mormon Church, was accused of having ordered this wholesale murder. Brigham Young was exonerated in 1875. Bishop Lee was convicted, sentenced to death, and shot March 23, 1877, nearly twenty years after the dastardly crime was committed.

MOUNTAIN MEADOW MASSACRE.

In the fall of 1857 the general business of the country was thrown into confusion by a sudden financial panic, which seriously embarrassed all commercial and industrial enterprises and caused general distress. On the twenty-sixth of September the banks of Philadelphia suspended specie payments; and their example was followed by the banks of New York on the thirteenth of October, and by those of Boston on the fourteenth. The failures in the United States for the year ending December 6, 1857, are said to have reached the enormous aggregate of $291,750,000.

The Western States suffered in a marked degree from the effects of this "crisis;" but the South was comparatively unharmed by it. Various causes were assigned for the panic, the principal of which were the large speculations in western lands and a heavy fall in the value of railway stocks. The New York banks resumed specie payments on the twelfth of December, 1857; the Boston banks on the fourteenth of December of that year; and those of Philadelphia in April, 1858. Specie payments were gradually resumed in other parts of the country, but the depression of business continued until during the course of the year 1859.

In 1858 occurred an event second only in importance to the invention of the

electric telegraph. For some years it had been believed possible to connect the shores of Europe with those of America by means of a submarine telegraphic cable across the Atlantic. In 1857 an unsuccessful effort was made by a company of American and English capitalists to accomplish this object. The attempt was renewed in 1858. Two war steamers were furnished for the work of laying the cable—the "Niagara" by the United States, and the "Agamemnon" by Great Britain. The two vessels met in mid ocean, and sailed each to its own country, paying out the cable as they proceeded on their way. On the fifth of August, 1858, the "Niagara" entered Trinity bay, in Newfoundland, and made fast her end of the cable to the shore, and on the same day the "Agamemnon" reached Valentia bay, in Ireland, having successfully accomplished her part of the work.

The First Ocean Cable.

The great work was thus ended, and on the sixteenth of August a message was received through the wires from the Queen of Great Britain and Ireland, addressed to the President of the United States, who at once returned a suitable reply. Other messages were exchanged between the two continents, and the practicability of the scheme was fully demonstrated. On the first of September the laying of the cable was celebrated with imposing ceremonies in New York, and rejoicings were held in other cities.

The hopes aroused by the successful accomplishment of the great enterprise were soon disappointed, for after a short time the wires ceased to work, and no effort could re-establish the communication between the two ends of the line. The feasibility of the undertaking had been practically demonstrated, however, and the determined men who had carried it through to success were convinced that a new effort would be attended with more satisfactory results.

On the eleventh of May, 1858, the Territory of Minnesota was admitted into the Union as a State.

In the autumn of 1859 a dispute arose between the United States and Great Britain as to the ownership of the large island of San Juan, lying in the strait which separates Vancouver's island from the territory of the United States. General Harney, commanding the American troops in the northwest, took possession of the island. Governor Douglas, of British Columbia, protested against this occupation, and for a while there was danger that the two parties would come to blows. The general government despatched General Scott to the scene of the controversy, and he succeeded in bringing about an adjustment of the quarrel.

On the fourteenth of February, 1859, Oregon was admitted into the Union as a State, the Territory of Washington being separated from it.

A New Governor for Kansas.

During the whole of Mr. Buchanan's administration the question of slavery in the Territories continued to engross the attention of the people. The struggle in Kansas went on with increased bitterness. In the summer of 1857 an election was ordered by the legislature of Kansas for delegates to a convention for the purpose of framing a constitution, and care was taken to arrange the matter so that a majority of Pro-slavery delegates should be chosen. For this reason, and others of equal force, the Free Soil men refused to take any part in the election, which consequently resulted in the choice of a Pro-slavery convention. The Free Soil party thereupon issued an address to the people of the United States, relating the wrongs they had suffered and were still enduring.

Governor Geary now resigned his position and President Buchanan appointed, as governor of Kansas, Robert J. Walker, a man of great eminence and ability, who was in sentiment opposed to slavery. Mr. Walker sincerely desired to effect a settlement of the quarrel, and succeeded in inducing the Free Soil party to vote at the coming election for members of the territorial legislature and a delegate to Congress. They did so, and a fair election was held, which resulted in the choice of the Free Soil candidates by overwhelming majorities.

Intense Feeling in Congress.

In the autumn of 1857 the convention elected, as we have seen, assembled at Lecompton, and framed a State constitution. This instrument contained a clause adopting slavery, and the convention submitted this clause only to the people of the Territory for ratification or rejection at the polls. The remainder of the constitution was withheld from the popular vote. The convention also ordered that all whose votes were challenged at the polls should be required "to take an oath to support the constitution if adopted," before being allowed to deposit their ballot. The Free State men refused to take part in the vote on the ratification of this constitution, and consequently all the votes cast were in favor of it. It was declared adopted, and was sent to Congress for the approval of that body.

The discussion of the Lecompton constitution in Congress was marked by great bitterness. It was supported by the Democratic party and the administration, and was opposed with determination by the Republicans. The latter took the strong ground that the Lecompton constitution was not the work of the people of Kansas, but of a mere faction, and was distasteful to the majority of the citizens of that Territory, who were opposed to slavery.

Finally, on the thirtieth of April, 1858, a bill was passed to submit the Lecompton constitution to the people of Kansas. This bill declared that if they ratified the constitution, they should be given certain public lands for State purposes; but that if they failed to ratify it, Kansas should not be permitted to enter the Union until it had a population of ninety-three thousand. With these strange conditions, the constitution was submitted to the people of Kansas on the second of August, 1858, and was rejected by them by a vote of eleven thousand three hundred against it, to seventeen hundred and eighty-eight votes in its favor.

In January, 1859, the civil strife having subsided in the Territory, and the Free Soil men having a majority in the legislature, a convention was summoned at Wyandotte. It met in July, and adopted a free State constitution, which was submitted to the people and ratified by a large majority. The "Wyandotte Constitution" was then laid before Congress, and a bill admitting Kansas into the Union as a State was passed by the lower House early in 1860.

Kansas Admitted Into the Union.

The Senate, however, failed to act upon the bill. At the next session the measure was revived, and on the thirtieth of January, 1861, the opposition of the South having ceased by reason of the withdrawal of a large number of the southern representatives and senators from Congress, Kansas was admitted into the Union as a free State.

Two notable events of this year should not escape special mention. They are, however, of a very different character. One was the death of the great American writer and author, Washington Irving, who may be considered as the father of American literature. He was bred a lawyer, but his tastes and aptitudes led him into other fields for the

acquisition of both fame and wealth. He commenced writing for the press at the early age of nineteen. His first sketches were under the *nom de plume* of Jonathan Oldstyle; then came his "Knickerbocker's History of New York;" but it was the "Sketch Book" which "laid the foundation of the fortune, and the permanent fame of Irving; the legends of 'Sleepy Hollow' and 'Rip Van Winkle' at once took rank as modern classics, while the pictures of English life and customs were so genial, artistic, and withal so faithful, that they fairly took the reading world by storm." This work was brought out in England in good style by the publisher, Murray, in 1820, upon the recommendation of Sir Walter Scott.

A writer in "Johnson's Cyclopædia" says, that after this publication, "a new phenomenon had appeared in the world of letters—the first American author had gained an honorable name in Albemarle street and Paternoster Row. Henceforth the path of Irving was smooth, and his subsequent writings appeared with rapidity." This great author was born in New York City, on the third of April, 1783, and died at his residence, Sunnyside, Tarrytown, on the Hudson, on the twenty-eighth of November, 1859, in the seventy-seventh year of his age. The house in which he lived is a quaint old edifice. It has become one of the shrines of American pilgrimage.

The other notable event of this year which made a deep impression on the popular mind, North and South, and which was attended with political results of the greatest importance, was the raid of John Brown upon Harper's Ferry.

On the night of the sixteenth of October, 1859, John Brown, who had acquired a considerable notoriety as the leader of a Free Soil company during the war in Kansas, entered the State of Virginia, at Harper's Ferry, with a party of twenty-one companions, and seized the United States arsenal at that place. He then sent out parties to arrest the leading citizens of the vicinity, as hostages, and to induce the negro slaves to join him, his avowed object being to put an end to slavery in Virginia by exciting an insurrection of the slaves. Several citizens were kidnapped by these parties, but the slaves refused to join Brown, or to take any part in the insurrection. At daylight on the

WASHINGTON IRVING.

seventeenth of October the alarm was given, and during the morning the militia of the surrounding country was ordered under arms to put down the outbreak. Brown's force was unknown, and was greatly exaggerated.

The news of the seizure of the arsenal was telegraphed to Washington, and the government decided to recover it at once and confine the trouble to the spot on which it had originated. General Scott was absent from the capital at the time, and the President and

secretary of war summoned Colonel Robert E. Lee, a distinguished officer of the army, to consult with them as to the best course to pursue. The interview resulted in the despatching of a battalion of marines to Harper's Ferry, under the command of Colonel Lee. Orders were telegraphed to that point to suspend all operations there until Colonel Lee's arrival. He reached Harper's Ferry on the night of the seventeenth.

In the meantime, upon the appearance of the militia, Brown and his companions retreated to the fire-engine house in the arsenal yard. This was a strong stone building, and they barricaded the doors, and during the day maintained a desultory fire upon the town. They had taken Colonel Washington, Mr. Dangerfield, and the other citizens kidnapped by them, into the engine-house with them, where they held them, in the hope that the presence of these gentlemen would prevent the troops from firing upon them.

Capture of the Insurrectionists.

As soon as Colonel Lee arrived at Harper's Ferry, he proceeded to surround the engine-house with the marines to prevent the escape of Brown and his men, and deferred his attack upon them until the next morning, lest in a night assault some of the captive citizens might be injured. At daylight on the eighteenth, wishing, if possible, to accomplish the object in view without bloodshed, Colonel Lee sent his aid, Lieutenant J. E. B. Stuart, to demand the surrender of the insurgents, promising to protect them from violence at the hands of the citizens, and to hold them subject to the orders of the President.

Brown refused the terms offered, and demanded to be permitted to march out with his men and prisoners, with the arms of the former, to be allowed to proceed, without being followed, to a point at a certain distance from Harper's Ferry, where he would free his prisoners. He was then willing that the troops should pursue him, and to fight if he could not escape. This proposition was inadmissible, but as a last resort, Colonel Lee directed Lieutenant Stuart to remonstrate with the insurgents upon the folly of their course. This duty Stuart performed, remaining before the engine-house until his personal danger compelled him to withdraw.

Finding that nothing but force would avail, Colonel Lee gave the order for the assault, and the marines made a dash at the engine-house, broke in the doors, and captured its inmates. Several of the insurgents were killed and wounded, Brown himself being desperately hurt. The marines lost one man killed and one wounded. Fortunately none of the citizens captured by Brown were injured.

Execution of John Brown.

Colonel Lee took care to protect his prisoners, and there is little doubt that but for his precautions in their behalf they would have been shot down by the excited civilians. He telegraphed to Washington for instructions, and was directed to deliver the prisoners to Mr. Ould, the attorney for the District of Columbia, who was ordered by the government to take charge of them and bring them to trial. As soon as Mr. Ould arrived Colonel Lee turned over the prisoners to him, and being satisfied that the danger was over, went back to Washington.

As Brown and his companions had committed their chief crime against the United States, by seizing the federal arsenal and resisting the troops sent to reduce them to submission, it seemed proper that they should be tried for their offences by the general government. The attempt to incite an insurrection of the slaves, however, was a crime against the laws of the State of Virginia, and

the governor of that State demanded of the federal authorities the surrender of Brown and his fellow prisoners for trial by the State courts.

The demand was complied with, and the prisoners were arraigned in the court of the county of Jefferson, the county in which their offence was committed. They were given a fair trial, and were defended by able counsel from the free States, who came to Charlestown for that purpose. Brown frankly confessed that his object was to produce an insurrection among the slaves, and then carry them off to the free States. The prisoners were found guilty of treason, murder, and an attempt to incite insurrection, and were sentenced to be hanged. Brown was executed at Charlestown on the second of December, 1859, and six of his companions met the same fate a few weeks later.

Proofs of a Conspiracy.

During his trial Brown steadily denied that he had been aided or encouraged by any persons in the North. His denial was generally doubted at the time, and it is now known that he was assisted with money and advice by some of the most respectable leaders of the extreme Anti-slavery party, and that several persons high in position knew of the designs of Brown, but failed to warn either the general government or the State of Virginia of the intended attack.*

The execution of Brown and his companions drew upon the South a storm of furious denunciation from the Anti-slavery men. Brown was regarded as a martyr to the cause of freedom, and the day of his execution was observed in many of the towns of the Northern States by the tolling of bells, prayer in the churches, the firing of minute-guns, and other public demonstrations of sorrow and respect. The conservative class in the North, however, and in this number were included some of the firmest opponents of slavery, sincerely deplored Brown's course, and acknowledged his punishment as merited.

"The Irrepressible Conflict."

Brown was a man of many good qualities, but the undertaking in which he met his fate was criminal in the extreme. Not even the intention of rescuing the slaves of Virginia from their bondage can excuse him for seeking to excite a servile war, in which murder and violence would have been inevitable, and in which the aged and the helpless, the defenceless women and children, would have been the chief sufferers.

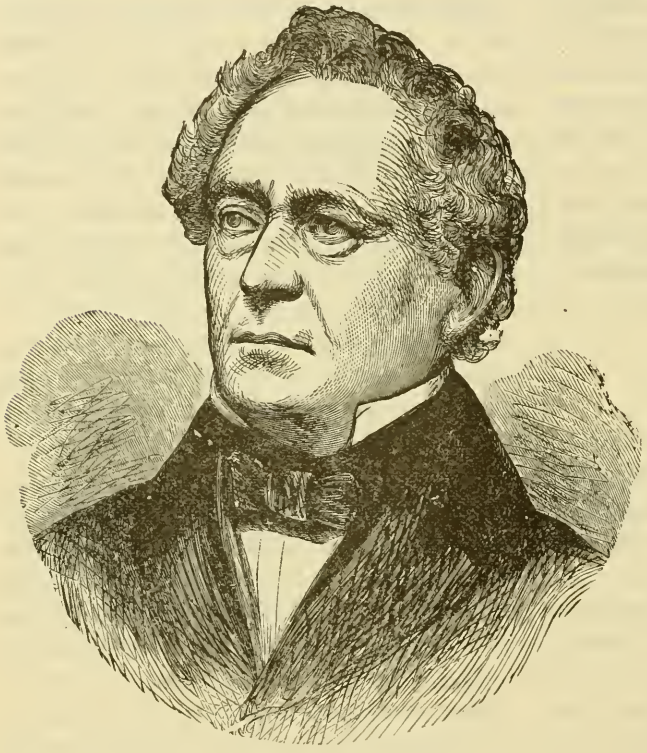
The effect of Brown's attempt upon the southern people was most unfortunate. They regarded it as unanswerable evidence of the intention of the people of the North to make war upon them under the cover of the Union. Regarding this view of the case as true, they came to listen with more favor to the arguments of the extreme class which openly favored a dissolution of the Union, and which asserted that the only safety of the South lay in pursuing such a course.

The John Brown raid was the most powerful argument that had ever been placed in the hands of the disunionists, and in the alarm and excitement produced by that event the southern people lost sight of the fact that the great mass of the northern people sincerely deplored and condemned the action of Brown and his supporters. The voice of reason was drowned in the storm of passionate excitement which swept

* Mr. F. B. Sanborn, one of Brown's confederates, in a series of papers published in *The Atlantic Monthly* (vol. xxxv.) gives the details of this conspiracy, together with many interesting incidents connected with it, which sustain the view of the case presented above.

over the land, and the extremists on both sides were able to prosecute their unpatriotic work to great advantage.

While the excitement was at its height the Presidential campaign opened in the Spring of 1860. The slavery question was the chief issue in this struggle. The convention of the Democratic party met at Charleston, in April, but being unable to effect an organi-



EDWARD EVERETT.

zation adjourned to Baltimore, and reassembled in that city in June. The extreme southern delegates were resolved that the convention should be committed to the protection of slavery in the Territories by Congress, and failing to control it withdrew from it in a body, and organized a separate convention, which they declared represented the Democratic party, but which, in reality, as the vote subsequently proved, represented but a minority of that party. The new convention was joined by a number of delegates from the Northern and Western States.

The convention, after the withdrawal of these delegates, nominated for the Presidency Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, and for the Vice-Presidency Herschell V. Johnson, of Georgia. It then proceeded to adopt the platform put forward by the entire party four years before at Cincinnati, upon the nomination of Mr. Buchanan, with this additional declaration: "That as differences of opinion exist in the Democratic party as to the nature and extent of the powers of a territorial legislature, and as to the powers and duties of Congress under the constitution of the United States over the institution of slavery within the Territories . . . the party will abide by the decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States on the questions of constitutional law."

The "Seceders' Convention," as it was commonly called, also adopted the Cincinnati platform, and pledged themselves to non-interference by Congress with slavery in the Territories or the District of Columbia. This party held to the doctrine that the constitution recognized slavery as existing in the Territories, and sanctioned and protected it there, and that neither Congress nor the people of the Territories could frame any law against slavery until the admission of such Territories into the Union as States. The regular convention held that Congress had no right to interfere with slavery in the Territories, to legislate either for or against it; that the regulation of that question belonged entirely to the people of the respective Territories acting through their Legislatures.

This doctrine was popularly known as "Squatter Sovereignty," and was credited to Mr. Douglas. The "Seceders' Convention" put forward as its candidate for the Presidency John C. Breckenridge, of Kentucky, and for the Vice-Presidency Joseph Lane, of Oregon.

Republican Nominations.

The Republican party took issue with both wings of the Democratic party. Its convention was held at Chicago, Illinois, and its candidates were, for President Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, and for Vice-President Hannibal Hamlin, of Maine. The platform of principles adopted by the Chicago Convention declared that "the maintenance of the principles promulgated in the Declaration of Independence and embodied in the Federal Constitution is essential to the preservation of our republican institutions. . . . That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights. . . . That the Federal Constitution, the rights of the States and the union of the States must and shall be preserved."

The platform also declared that the rights of the States should be maintained inviolate, "especially the right of each State to order and control its own domestic institutions according to its own judgment exclusively." It asserted "that the normal condition of all the territory of the United States is that of freedom," and denied the right or "authority of Congress, of a Territorial Legislature, or of individuals, to give legal existence to slavery in any Territory of the United States."

A fourth party, known as the "Constitutional Union Party," proclaimed as its platform the following vague sentence: "The constitution of the country, the union of the States and the enforcement of the laws." The convention of this party met at Baltimore, and nominated for the Presidency John Bell, of Tennessee, and for the Vice-Presidency Edward Everett, of Massachusetts.

The contest between these parties was bitter beyond all precedent. When the election took place in November the result was as follows:

Popular vote for	Lincoln.	1,866,452
" "	Douglas,	1,375,157
" "	Breckenridge,	847,953
" "	Bell,	590,631

The electoral vote stood as follows: For Lincoln, 180; for Breckenridge, 72; for Bell, 39; for Douglas, 12.

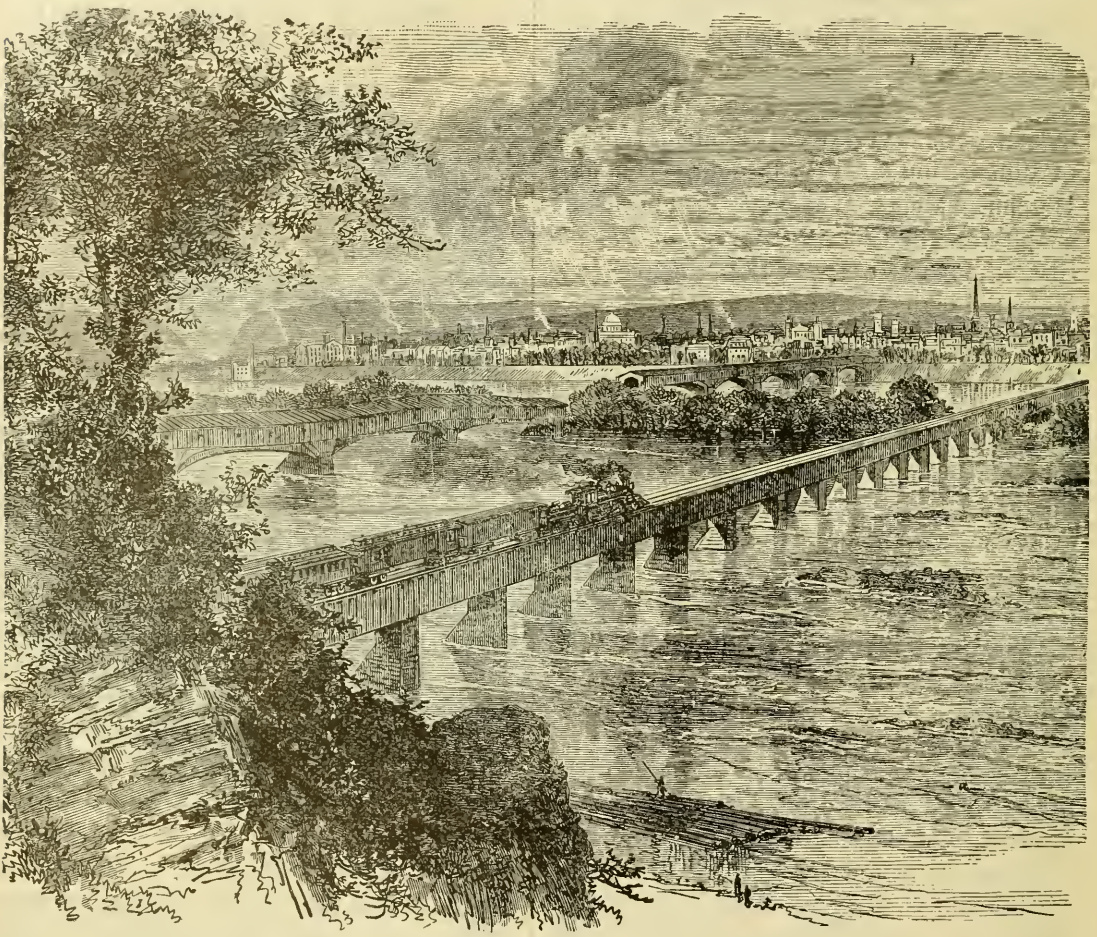
Election of Abraham Lincoln.

Mr. Lincoln was thus elected by a plurality of the popular vote, which secured for him the electoral votes of eighteen States. These States were entirely north of the sectional line, and he received not a single electoral vote from a Southern State. The States, which cast their electoral votes for Breckenridge, Bell and Douglas, were entirely slaveholding. The division thus made was alarming. It was the first time in the history of the Republic that a President had been elected by the votes of a single section of the Union.

The state in which the Presidential election left the country, was alarming. The excitement was higher than it had been before the struggle at the polls. The Gulf States had declared at an early period of the political campaign that they would withdraw from the Union in the event of the election of a Republican President. The people of the South generally regarded the result of the election as an evidence of the determination of the Northern States to use the power of the federal government to destroy the institution of slavery. The disunion leaders exerted themselves to deepen this conviction, and to arouse the fears of the South.

On the other hand, the Republican leaders took little pains to allay the excitement by declaring their intentions to execute faithfully the constitution and laws of the Union. Their declarations of fidelity to the Union were abundant, and were generally accompanied by equally plain assertions of their determination to oppose by force the withdrawal of the Southern States—declarations which were ill-suited to calm the fears of the South, or to encourage the party in that section, which desired a perpetuation of the Union. A statesman of the Henry Clay school was needed at this crisis of our country's history as he had never been needed before; but, alas! statesmanship of any kind was painfully wanting.

As soon as the election of Mr. Lincoln was definitely ascertained, the legislature of South Carolina summoned a sovereign convention of the people of that State, which met on the seventeenth of December, 1860. This convention adopted an ordinance of secession on the twentieth of December, and declared the State no longer a member of the Union. The reasons assigned for this action were thus stated by the convention:



BRIDGE CROSSING THE SUSQUEHANNA RIVER AT HARRISBURG.

"An increasing hostility on the part of the non-slaveholding States to the institution of slavery has led to a disregard of their obligations, and the laws of the general government have ceased to effect the objects of the constitution. The States of Maine, New Hampshire, Vermont, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New York, Pennsylvania, Illinois, Indiana, Michigan, Wisconsin, and Iowa, have enacted laws which either nullify the acts of Congress or render useless any attempt to execute them.

Strong Affirmations.

"In many of these States the fugitive is discharged from the service or labor claimed, and in none of them has the State government complied with the stipulations made in the constitution. . . . Thus the constitutional compact has been deliberately broken and disregarded by these non-slaveholding States, and the consequence follows that South Carolina is released from her obligation.

. . . . . .

"We affirm that these ends for which this government was instituted have been defeated, and the government itself has been made destructive of them by the action of non-slaveholding States. Those States have assumed the right of deciding upon the propriety of our domestic institutions; and have denied the rights of property established in fifteen of the States and recognized by the constitution; they have denounced as sinful the institution of slavery; they have permitted the open establishment among them of societies whose avowed object is to disturb the peace and to eloigne the property of citizens of other States. They have encouraged and assisted thousands of our slaves to leave their homes; and those who remain have been incited by emissaries, books, and pictures to servile insurrection.

"For twenty-five years this agitation has been steadily increasing, until it has now secured to its aid the power of the common government. Observing the *forms* of the constitution, a sectional party has found within that article establishing the executive department the means of subverting the constitution itself. A geographical line has been drawn across the Union, and all the States north of that line have united in the election of a man to the high office of President of the United States whose opinions and purposes are hostile to slavery.

Charges Against Certain States.

"He is to be intrusted with the administration of the common government because he has declared that that 'government cannot endure permanently half slave, half free,' and that the public mind must rest in the belief that slavery is in the course of ultimate extinction.

"This sectional combination for the subversion of the constitution has been aided in some of the States by elevating to citizenship persons who, by the supreme law of the land, are incapable of becoming citizens; and their votes have been used to inaugurate a new policy, hostile to the South, and destructive of its peace and safety.

"On the fourth of March next this party will take possession of the government. It has announced that the South shall be excluded from the common territory; that the judicial tribunals shall be made sectional, and that a war must be waged against slavery until it shall cease throughout the United States.

"The guarantees of the constitution will then no longer exist; the equal rights of the States will be lost. The slaveholding States will no longer have the power of self-government or self-protection, and the federal government will become their enemy."

These reasons were substantially the same as those avowed by the other Southern States in support of their action, and therefore we have quoted them at length.

The example of South Carolina was followed by the other States of the far South, which summoned conventions and adopted ordinances of secession. Mississippi withdrew from the Union on the ninth of January, 1861; Florida on the tenth of January; Alabama on the eleventh of January; Georgia on the nineteenth of January; Louisiana on the twenty-sixth of January, and Texas on the first of February. The forts, arsenals and other public property of the United States within the limits of these States were seized by the authorities of the States in which they were situated, and were held by their troops, with the exception of Forts Moultrie and Sumter, in Charleston harbor, and Fort Pickens, at Pensacola.

Critical State of Affairs.

Fort Moultrie was occupied by Major Robert Anderson, of the United States army, with a garrison of eighty men. Becoming alarmed at the rapid concentration of troops in Charleston, Major Anderson evacuated the fort on the night of December 25, 1860, and threw himself with his command into Fort Sumter, which was built in the bay at some distance from either shore. The State troops at once occupied Fort Moultrie, and began to erect batteries of heavy guns at different points along the harbor for the reduction of Fort Sumter.

Fort Pickens was held by a garrison under Lieutenant Slemmer. The State of Florida occupied the navy yard at Pensacola and the other forts in that harbor with her troops.

The property of the general government seized by the seceded States amounted to over twenty millions of dollars in value.

The position of the general government was one of great difficulty. The President was called upon either to recognize the lawfulness of the acts of the seceded States, and thus to join in the work of dissolving the Union, or to maintain the authority of the federal government, and compel the submission of the Southern States to the constitution and laws of the land. The government was almost powerless to enforce its authority. The army, but sixteen thousand strong, was stationed upon the remote frontier, and the available vessels of the navy were nearly all absent on foreign service. Many of the most prominent federal officials, including several of the cabinet ministers, were in open sympathy with the seceded States. The President's position was unquestionably embarrassing, but he made no use of the means at his command. General Scott, the veteran commander of the army, believed that prompt action on the part of the general government would confine the evil to the six cotton States, and urged the President to act with vigor.

Mr. Buchanan was sorely perplexed, and seemed chiefly anxious to postpone all definite action until the inauguration of his successor. He was in favor of conceding everything but separate independence to the South, failing to perceive that the leaders of the secession movement would accept nothing but separation; and by his timidity lost the advantages which the government would have gained by a bold, firm course.

Attempt to Aid Major Anderson.

As Major Anderson was short of supplies and needed reinforcements, the steamship "Star of the West" was despatched by the government to Charleston with provisions and a detachment of two hundred and fifty men to his assistance. She reached Charleston on the ninth of January, 1861, and

attempted to enter the harbor, but was fired upon by the South Carolina batteries, and turned back.

The President was urged by the friends of the South to order Major Anderson to evacuate Fort Sumter and return to Fort Moultrie, but refused to do so. South Carolina then offered to purchase Fort Sumter from the general government, for its full value, but the President refused to make the sale.

Immediately upon their withdrawal from the Union the six seceded States began to concert measures for their common protection. Delegates were elected to a convention which met at Montgomery, Alabama, on the fourth of February, 1861, to devise a plan for this purpose. The convention at once proceeded to organize a new republic, for which they adopted the name of *The Confederate States of America*. On the eighth of February, a provisional constitution having been adopted, the convention elected Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, Vice-president of the Confederate States. The action of the convention was sustained by all the States comprising the new confederacy, and the provisional government at once entered upon its duties. Mr. Davis was inaugurated President of the Confederate States at Montgomery, Alabama, February 18, 1861.

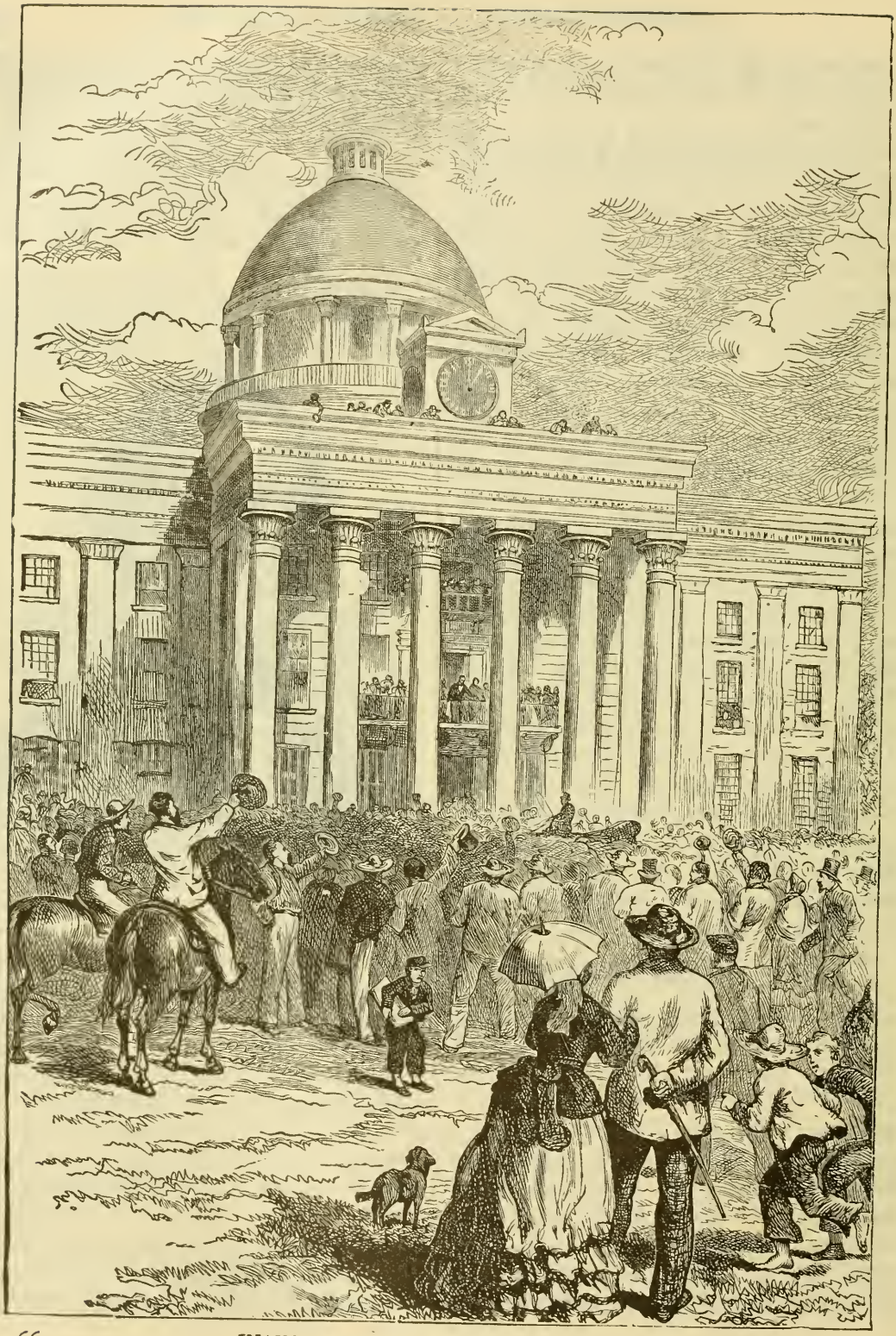
Sketch of Jefferson Davis.

Jefferson Davis was a native of Kentucky, and was born on the third of June, 1808. His father had removed to Mississippi during his early childhood, and he had grown up to manhood in that State. He was educated at the West Point Military Academy, from which he was graduated in 1828, and passed the next seven years of his life in the army. He served with distinction during the Black Hawk war and against the Indian tribes on the frontier. Entering into politics after his withdrawal from the army, he was soon sent to represent his State in Congress, in which body he served until the commencement of the Mexican war. During that struggle he commanded the Mississippi Rifles, and distinguished himself greatly in the battles of General Taylor's army, and especially at Buena Vista.

Upon his return home he was chosen to represent Mississippi in the Senate of the United States. Upon the inauguration of

JEFFERSON DAVIS.

President Pierce, he accepted a seat in the cabinet as secretary of war. Returning to the Senate after the close of Mr. Pierce's administration, he remained in that body until the secession of Mississippi, when he resigned his seat and returned home. He was now in his fifty-third year, and was regarded as one of the most brilliant public men in America. His election was generally looked upon in the South as a concession to the more conservative portion of the southern people, for he had not been considered



664 INAUGURATION OF JEFFERSON DAVIS.

as one of the original or most ultra secession leaders.

The conservative elements of both sections made great efforts to bring about a reconciliation. The State of Virginia called upon all the States to send delegates to an informal peace congress to meet in Washington. This body assembled in February. Twenty States were represented in it—thirteen northern and seven southern—and the venerable ex-President Tyler was chosen to preside over its deliberations. Various plans of settlement were proposed, and a committee, consisting of one member from each State, was appointed to prepare a plan upon which the congress could unite. In due time it made its report to the congress, and after a careful and elaborate discussion the resolutions were adopted, and were ordered to be laid before the rival governments.

The congress then adjourned. The plan proposed by this body pleased neither side. The Southern States were not satisfied with the guarantees it offered for the protection of their rights in the matter of slavery; and the Northern States were unwilling to sanction a more rigid enforcement of the constitutional provision for the rendition of fugitive slaves. The effort to close the breach between the States only served to widen it.

Matters were in this unhappy and excited condition when the administration of Mr. Buchanan came to a close. After the inauguration of his successor, he retired to his home at Wheatland, near Lancaster, Pennsylvania, where he died in June, 1868.

BOOK VI

The Civil War

CHAPTER XLI

The Administration of Abraham Lincoln

Inauguration of President Lincoln—His History—The Confederate Commissioners at Washington—Attack upon Fort Sumter by the Confederates—The President Calls for Troops—Response of the North and West—Secession of the Border States—Opening Events of the War in Virginia—Withdrawal of West Virginia—Admitted into the Union as a Separate State—Meeting of Congress—The West Virginia Campaign—Battle of Bull Run—The War in Missouri—Kentucky Occupied—The Blockade—Capture of Port Royal—The "Trent" Affair—Insurrection in East Tennessee—State of Affairs at the Opening of the Year 1862—Edwin M. Stanton made Secretary of War—Capture of Forts Henry and Donelson—The Confederates Fall Back from Kentucky—Battle of Shiloh—Capture of Island No. 10—Evacuation of Corinth—Capture of Memphis—Bragg's Kentucky Campaign—His Retreat into Tennessee—Battles of Iuka and Corinth—Battle of Murfreesboro', or Stone River—Grant's Campaign against Vicksburg—Its Failure—The War Beyond the Mississippi—Battle of Pea Ridge—Capture of Roanoke Island—Capture of New Orleans—Surrender of Fort Pulaski—The War in Virginia—Johnston's Retreat from Centreville—Battle between the "Monitor" and "Virginia"—The Move to the Peninsula—Johnston Retreats to the Chickahominy—Battle of Seven Pines—Jackson's Successes in the Valley of Virginia—The Seven Days' Battles Before Richmond—Battle of Cedar Mountain—Defeat of General Pope's Army—Lee Invades Maryland—Capture of Harper's Ferry—Battles of South Mountain and Antietam—Retreat of Lee into Virginia—McClellan Removed—Battle of Fredericksburg.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, the sixteenth President of the United States, was inaugurated at Washington on the fourth of March, 1861. As it was feared that an attempt would be made to prevent the inauguration, the city was held by a strong body of regular troops under General Scott, and the President-elect was escorted from his hotel to the Capitol by a military force. No effort was made to interfere with the ceremonies, and the inauguration passed off quietly.

The new President was in his fifty-third year, and was a native of Kentucky. When he was but eight years old his father removed to Indiana, and the boyhood of the future President was spent in hard labor upon the farm. Until he reached manhood he continued to lead this life, and during this entire period attended school for only a year. At the age of twenty-one he removed to Illinois,

ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

where he began life as a storekeeper. Being anxious to rise above his humble position, he determined to study law. He was too poor to buy the necessary books, and so borrowed them from a neighboring lawyer, read them at night and returned them in the morning. His genial character, great good nature and love of humor won him the friendship of the people among whom he resided, and they elected him to the lower house of the Legislature of Illinois.

He now abandoned his mercantile pursuits, and began the practice of the law, and was subsequently elected a representative to Congress from the Springfield District. He took an active part in the politics of his State, and in 1858 was the candidate of the Republican Party for United States Senator. In this capacity he engaged in a series of debates in various parts of the State with Senator Douglas, the Democratic candidate for re-election to the same position. This debate was remarkable for its brilliancy and intellectual vigor, and brought him prominently before the whole country, and opened the way to his nomination for the Presidency.

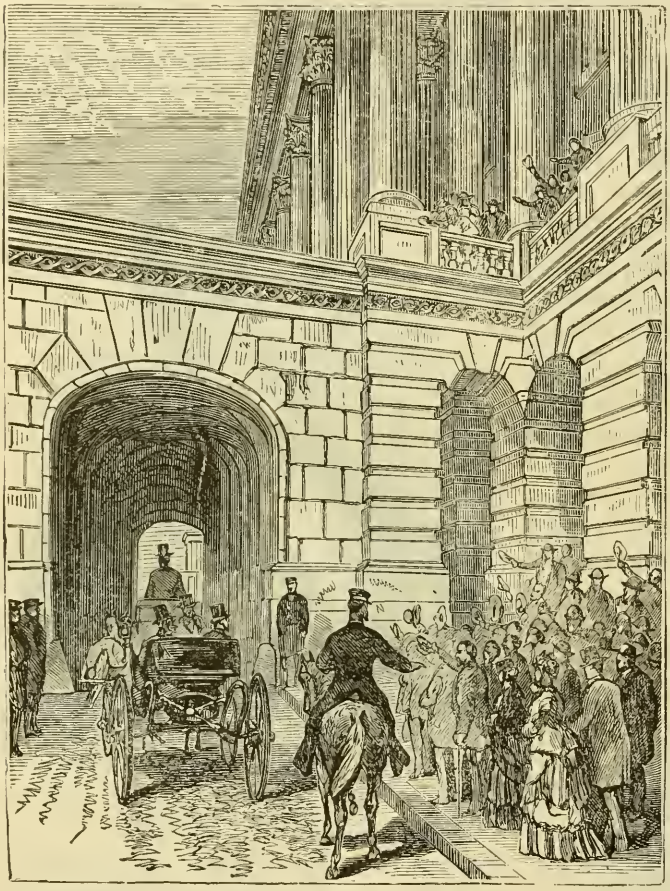
The Inaugural Address.

In person he was tall and ungainly, and in manner he was rough and awkward, little versed in the refinements of society. He was a man, however, of great natural vigor of intellect, and was possessed of a fund of strong common sense, which enabled him to see at a glance through the shams by which he was surrounded, and to pursue his own aims with singleness of heart and directness of purpose. He had sprung from the ranks of the people, and he was never false to them. He was a simple, unaffected, kind-hearted man; anxious to do his duty to the whole country; domestic in his tastes and habits; and incorruptible in every relation of life. He was fond of humor, and overflowed with it; finding in his "little stories" the only relaxation he ever sought from the heavy cares of the trying position upon which he was now entering. He selected his cabinet from the leading men of the Republican party, and placed William H. Seward, of New York, at its head as Secretary of State.

Mr. Lincoln was sincerely anxious to avoid everything which might precipitate the civil strife; but at the same time was determined to maintain the authority of the general government over the seceded States. In his inaugural address he declared his purpose to collect the public revenues at the ports of the seceded States, and to "hold, occupy and possess" the forts, arsenals and other public property seized by those States. At the time of his entrance upon the duties of his office Fort Sumter and Fort Pickens were still held by the Federal forces.

WILLIAM H. SEWARD.

The Confederate government was convinced that war was inevitable; and since its inauguration, had been preparing for the coming struggle. Nearly all the officers of the army and navy of the United States, who were natives of the seceded States, resigned their commissions in the old service, and were given similar positions in the army of the Confederate States. The forces collected at Charleston and Pensacola were reinforced by troops from other States, and the command at the former place was conferred upon General Pierre G. T. Beauregard, and at the latter upon General Braxton Bragg, both of whom had been distinguished officers of the old army.



ARRIVAL OF PRESIDENT LINCOLN AT THE CAPITOL.

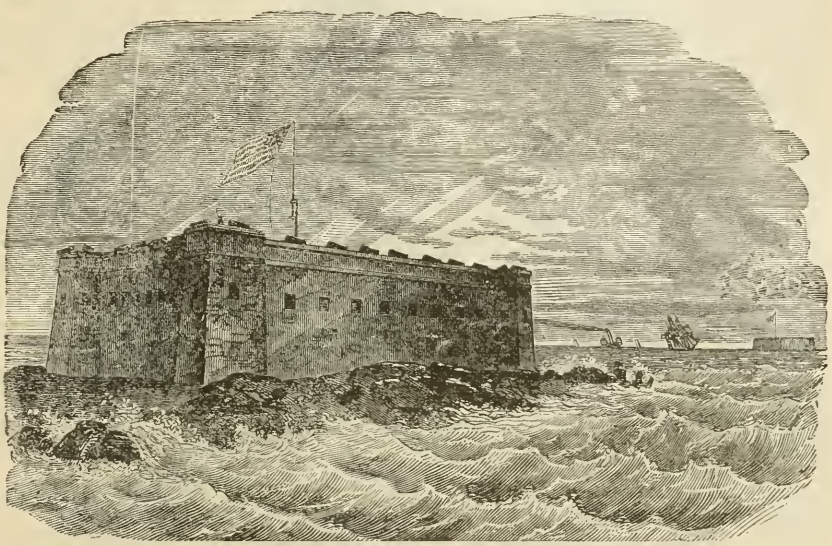
Just before the close of Mr. Buchanan's term of office, the Confederate government despatched John Forsyth, of Alabama, Martin J. Crawford, of Georgia, and A. B. Roman, of Louisiana, to Washington as commissioners to endeavor to effect a peaceable adjustment of the matters at issue between the two governments, and to treat for an equitable division of the public property of the United States. Mr. Buchanan refused to receive the commissioners in their official capacity, and after the inauguration of the new administration they addressed a note to Mr. Seward, the new Secretary of State, setting forth the objects of their mission, and soliciting an official interview with the President.

Mr. Seward declined to receive them in their official capacity, but answered them verbally through Mr. Justice John A. Campbell, of the Supreme Court of the United States, that he was in favor of a peaceful settlement of the difficulty, and that the troops would be withdrawn from Fort Sumter in less than ten days. Mr. Seward's object appears to have been to deceive the commissioners, and lull their suspicions, in order to gain time for the preparations which had been determined upon for the relief of Fort Sumter.

In the meantime, the government having resolved to reinforce and provision Fort Sumter at all hazards, every nerve was strained to carry out this design before it should become known to the Confederates. An expedition consisting of seven ships, carrying two hundred and eighty-five guns and twenty-four hundred men, was prepared at New York

and Norfolk. The southern commissioners, whose suspicions had been allayed by Mr. Seward's message, were alarmed by the rumors of these preparations, which they suspected were for the relief of Fort Sumter. They waited upon Judge Campbell to ask an explanation, and that gentleman, on the seventh of April, addressed a note to Mr. Seward asking if the assurances he had given were well or ill founded. Mr. Seward replied as follows: "Faith as to Sumter fully kept; wait and see."

In the meantime the expedition had sailed from New York and Norfolk, and was on its way to Charleston harbor. On the eighth of April, 1861, Governor Pickens, of South Carolina, was notified by the general government of its intention to relieve Fort Sumter at all hazards, and of the sailing of the fleet for that purpose. Governor Pickens at once informed General Beauregard of this notification, and the news was telegraphed by him to the Confederate government at Montgomery.



FORT PICKENS.

The Confederate Secretary of War thereupon ordered General Beauregard to demand the immediate surrender of Fort Sumter; "and if this should be refused to proceed to reduce it." On the eleventh of April General Beauregard demanded of Major Anderson the surrender of the fort. The demand was refused in writing; but Major Anderson added verbally to the messenger, "I will await the first shot, and if you do not batter us to pieces, we will be starved out in a few days."

Beauregard telegraphed this remark with Anderson's reply to his government, and was answered, "Do not desire needlessly to bombard Fort Sumter. If Major Anderson will state the time at which, as indicated by himself, he will evacuate, and agree that, in the meantime, he will not use his guns against us unless ours should be employed against Fort Sumter, you are authorized thus to avoid the effusion of blood. If this or its equivalent be refused, reduce the fort, as your judgment decides most practicable." The Federal fleet was on its way to Charleston, and if the attack of the Confederates was to be made at all, no time was to be lost. General Beauregard, therefore, gave Major Anderson warning that he should open fire upon Fort Sumter at half-past four o'clock the next morning.

At the designated hour on the morning of April 12th, the Confederate batteries opened fire upon Fort Sumter, which replied to them with spirit. The bombardment lasted over thirty-two hours, and the fort was greatly

damaged, and many of the guns were dismounted. The fleet arrived off the harbor during the bombardment, but remained in the offing, and took no part in the engagement. Not a single life was lost in this memorable battle. Late in the afternoon of the thirteenth, Major Anderson agreed to capitulate, and the firing ceased. The victors granted liberal terms to Anderson and his men, whose heroism had aroused their warmest admiration; and on the morning of Sunday, April 14th, the fort was surrendered to the Confederate forces, and Major Anderson and the garrison embarked in one of the vessels of the fleet, which at once sailed for New York.

MAJOR ANDERSON.

The attack upon Fort Sumter put an end to the last hope of peace, and aroused the most intense excitement in both sections of the country. On the fifteenth of April, President Lincoln issued a proclamation calling upon the States to furnish seventy-five thousand troops for the suppression of the rebellion, and convening Congress in extra session on the Fourth of July. The Northern and Western States responded with enthusiasm to the President's call for troops, and at once began to forward their quotas to the points designated by the war department.

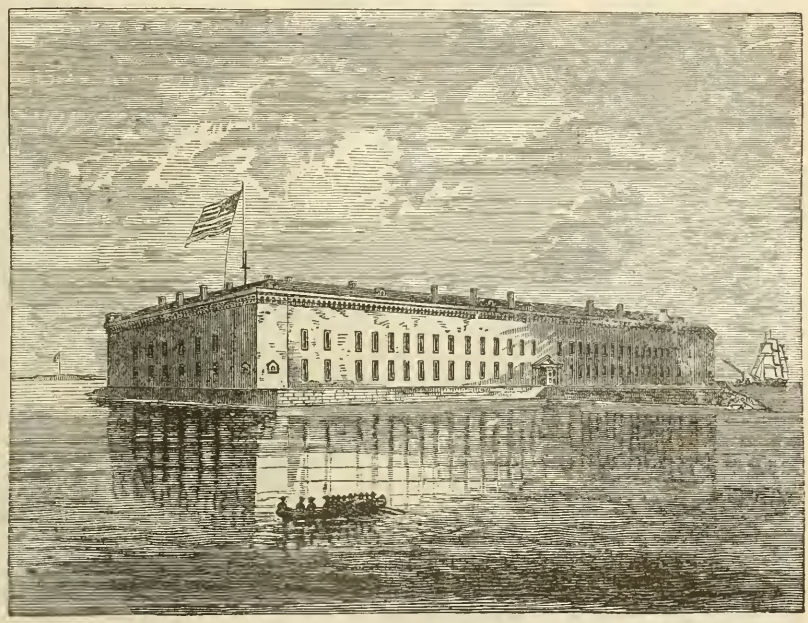
The enthusiasm in the South was fully equal to that of the North. The Confederate government issued a call for volunteers to repel the threatened invasion of the federal forces, and it was responded to with alacrity.

Until now the States of Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, Kentucky, Arkansas and Missouri, generally known as the Border States, had remained in the Union, hoping to be able to effect a peaceable settlement of the quarrel. Their sympathies were with the Southern States, and it was generally believed that in the event of war they would cast their lots with those States. Each of these States was included in the call of President Lincoln for troops. The governors of most of them replied by refusing to furnish the quotas required of them, and by denouncing the President's demand as illegal.

Conventions of the people were held, and all but Maryland, Kentucky and Missouri withdrew from the Union. The secession of Virginia took place on the seventeenth of April; that of Arkansas on the sixth of May; that of North Carolina on the twentieth of May; and that of Tennessee on the eighth of June. These States subsequently ratified the constitution of the Confederate States, and became members of the new republic. Kentucky and Missouri remained neutral.

The passage of the act of secession by the Virginia convention was kept secret for a day or two in order to give the authorities of that State an opportunity to seize the United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry, and the navy yard at Portsmouth. The officer in command of the arsenal, upon hearing of the approach of a force of Virginia troops, destroyed a number of the muskets stored there, set fire to the buildings, and retreated into Pennsylvania. The Virginians extinguished the flames and secured a large quantity of arms and equipments and the valuable machinery for the manufacture of arms. The commandant of the navy yard at Portsmouth, upon the approach of the Virginians, made no attempt to defend his post, but spiked the cannon, burned or sunk the war vessels lying in the harbor, set fire to the buildings, and retreated with two war steamers.

The navy yard was at once occupied by the Virginians, who secured nearly two thousand pieces of cannon, and an immense quantity of stores and munitions of all kinds. The governors of the seceded Border States issued calls for volunteers immediately upon the withdrawal of their States. Men came forward in such large numbers that arms could not be provided for all of them. The prominent points of danger in Virginia were occupied and fortified by the State troops; but the control of the military affairs in all the Border States soon passed into the hands of the Confederate government.

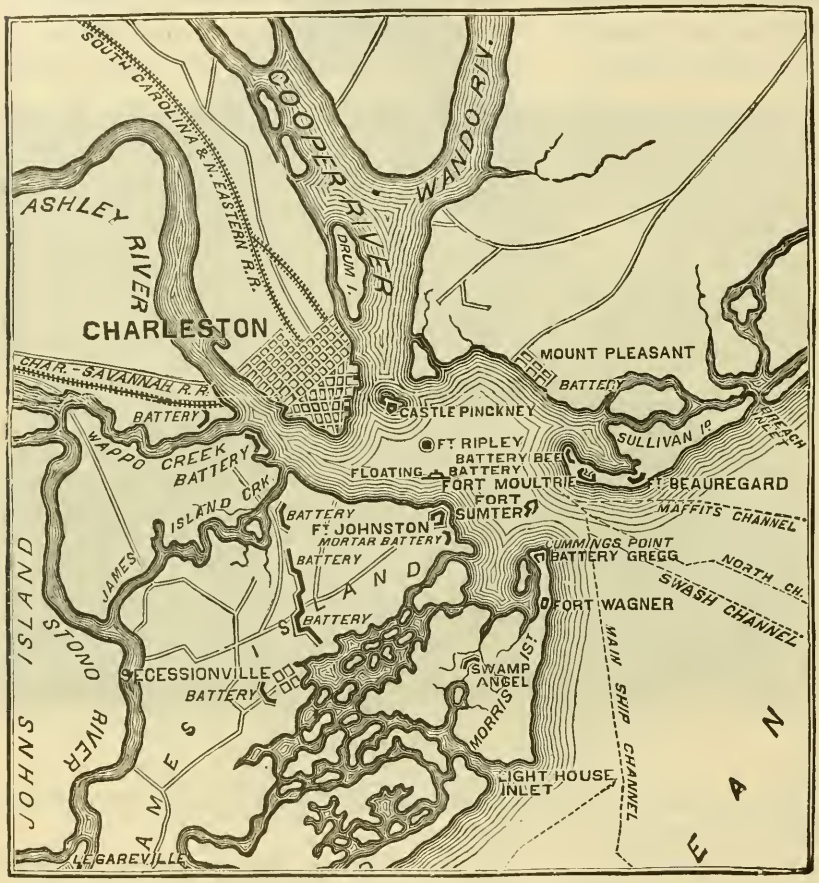


FORT SUMTER IN 1861.

As it was certain that the first operations of the war would take place upon the borders of Virginia, the city of Richmond was made the capital of the Confederate States, and on the twenty-first of May the Confederate government was removed to that city.

The western part of the State of Virginia refused to join the remainder of the State in its withdrawal from the Union. On the eleventh of June, 1861, the people of the

western counties met in convention at Wheeling, declared their independence of the old State, organized a State government, and proclaimed their intention to remain faithful to the Union. The action of this convention was sustained by the Federal government, and on the twenty-sixth of November, 1861, another convention met at Wheeling, and adopted a constitution for the new State of West Virginia. This constitution was ratified by the people at the polls on the third of May, 1862, and application was made for the admission of West Virginia into the Union as a State, which was accomplished by act of Congress on the twentieth of June, 1863.



FORTS SUMTER AND MOULTRIE.

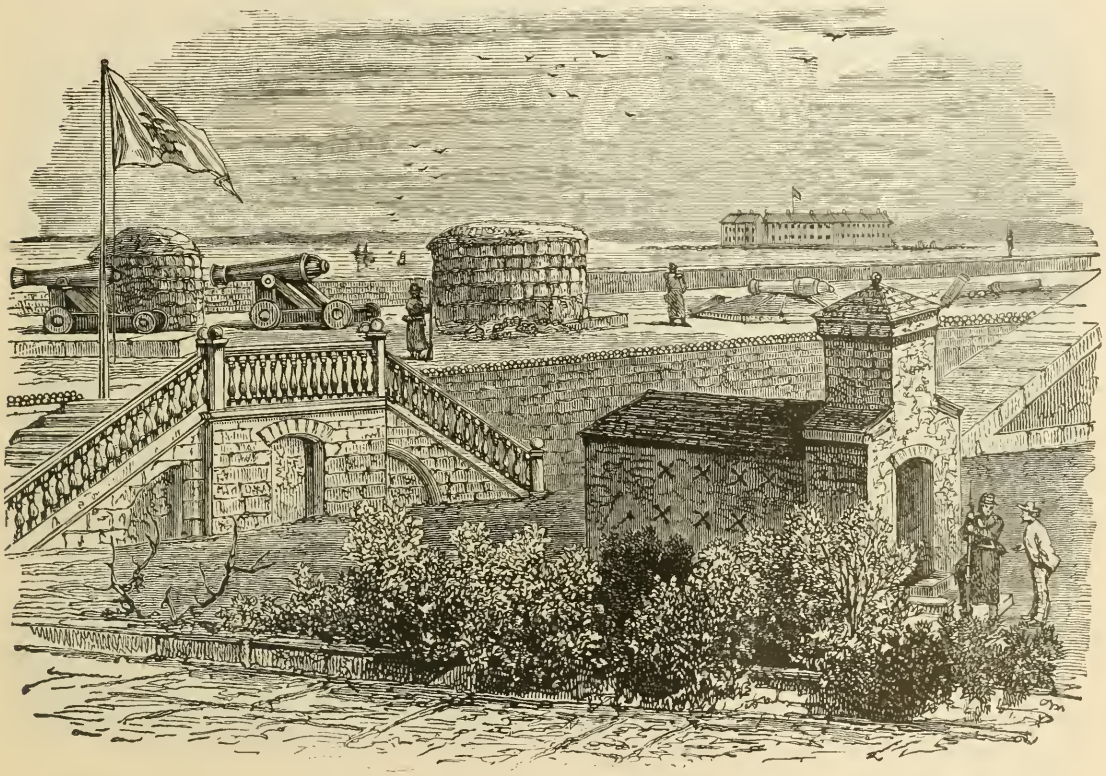
In the meantime the Federal government set to work with energy to prepare for the struggle before it. The call of President Lincoln for troops had been answered by three hundred thousand volunteers. On the seventeenth of April, two days after the President's proclamation, the Sixth Massachusetts regiment left Boston for Washington. In passing through Baltimore it was attacked by a crowd of citizens who sympathized with the South, and three soldiers were killed and eight wounded. Several citizens were killed and wounded. The regiment reached Washington the same day.

In a short time the force at the capital was sufficient to put an end to all fears for its safety. Alexandria and the Virginia shore opposite Washington were seized and fortified. Baltimore was occupied by a force under General Butler, and the communications of Washington with the North and West were made sure. On the nineteenth of April the President issued a proclamation declaring all the southern ports in a state of blockade; and on the third of May he put forth another proclamation ordering the regular army of the United States to be increased to sixty-four thousand seven hundred and forty-eight men, and the navy to eighteen thousand seamen. On the tenth of May he

issued a fourth proclamation, suspending the writ of *habeas corpus* in certain localities, and authority to suspend this privilege was conferred upon the commanders of military departments soon afterward.

Under the instructions of the government these commanders now proceeded to arrest great numbers of persons in various parts of the country who were suspected of sympathizing with the South. They were imprisoned at the military posts, and were denied trial by the civil courts. John Merryman, a citizen of Maryland, was one of the persons so arrested. His friends applied for redress to the Chief Justice of the United States, who held the suspension of the *habeas corpus* act by the President to be unconstitutional, and ordered the discharge of the prisoner. The government paid no attention to this decision, and held the prisoner in confinement. A little later the Legislature of Maryland, which was strongly Southern in its sympathies, was prevented from meeting by the sudden arrest and imprisonment of a large number of its members by order of the secretary of war.

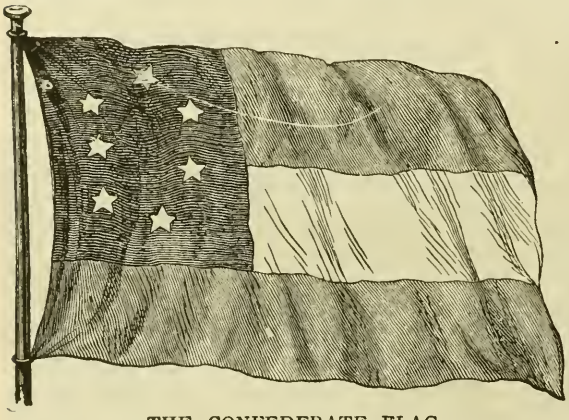
On the fourth of July, 1861, Congress convened in extra session at Washington, in accordance with the President's proclamation. This body proceeded to give to the government a prompt and effectual support. Resolutions were introduced to legalize the extraordinary acts of the President in setting aside the writ of *habeas corpus*, in ordering the arbitrary arrest and confinement of citizens, and in assuming certain other powers



FORT MOULTRIE, CHARLESTON HARBOR.

which belonged to Congress. Congress refused to throw over these acts, however necessary, the sanction of the law; but in view of the necessity of prompt and vigorous action on the part of the President, excused his acts on the distinct ground of the "necessities of war." Measures were adopted without delay for putting in the field an army of five hundred and twenty-five thousand men, and for equipping a powerful navy; and the sum of five hundred millions of dollars was appropriated for the prosecution of the war.

During this session Congress also adopted a solemn resolution declaring "that this war is not prosecuted on our part in any spirit of oppression, nor for any purpose of conquest or subjugation, nor for the purpose of overthrowing or interfering with the rights or established institutions of those [the seceded] States; but to defend and maintain the supremacy of the constitution and all laws made in pursuance thereof, and to preserve the Union with all the dignity, equality and rights of the several States unimpaired; that as soon as these objects are accomplished the war ought to cease."



THE CONFEDERATE FLAG.

In the meantime the Confederates had collected troops at important points to resist the advance of the Federal troops into Virginia. A force under Brigadier-General Garnett was stationed in West Virginia to cover the approaches from that direction; Harper's Ferry, which commanded the entrance into the valley of Virginia, was held by an army of seven thousand or eight thousand men, under General Joseph E. Johnston; a much larger force, under General Beauregard, took position near Manassas Junction, about thirty miles from Washington, and a column of several thousand men, under General John B. Magruder, was stationed at Yorktown, on the peninsula between the York and James rivers, to cover Richmond from the direction of Fortress Monroe at the mouth of Hampton Roads, which was still held by the Federal troops. Norfolk was also held by a strong force. With the exception of that occupied by General Garnett's command, all these positions were carefully fortified.

Bethel Church and Rich Mountain.

The Union army at Fortress Monroe numbered about twelve thousand men, and was commanded by General B. F. Butler. Early in June, Magruder moved a force of eighteen hundred men and several pieces of artillery from Yorktown, and took position at Bethel Church, about half way between Yorktown and Hampton. On the tenth of June he was attacked by a force of four thousand troops under General Pierce, of Massachusetts, but succeeded in repulsing the attack and maintaining his position.

In the opposite quarter of the State, the Union forces were more successful. In order to prevent the Confederates from overrunning West Virginia, a strong body of Ohio and Indiana troops, under General George B. McClellan, was sent into that region. McClellan set to work at once to drive the Confederates out of West Virginia, and on the third of June a portion of his command, under General Kelly, defeated General Garnett at Philippi. McClellan now advanced

against the main body of Garnett's forces. On the eleventh of July, he attacked the command of Colonel Pegram at Rich Mountain, and defeated it. This defeat compelled General Garnett to fall back towards the valley of Virginia. He was pursued by McClellan and overtaken at Carrick's ford, on the Cheat river. In the battle which ensued here, Garnett was killed, and the remnant of his command was driven beyond the mountains.

THE SIXTH MASSACHUSETTS REGIMENT PASSING THROUGH BALTIMORE.

The United States had assembled a considerable army of volunteers and regulars at Washington under Major-General Irwin McDowell. On the twenty-fourth of May, Alexandria, on the Virginia side of the Potomac, nine miles below Washington, was seized by a detachment from this army. Its commander, Colonel Ellsworth, was killed by a citizen. Strong defences were erected on the Virginia shore between Washington and Alexandria, and the army was encamped within these lines. Two months were passed in organizing and disciplining this force, and in the meantime the people of the Northern and Western States became impatient of the delay, and demanded an immediate advance upon the southern army and Richmond.

Preparatory to his own advance, General McDowell sent General Patterson with twenty thousand men to cross the Potomac at Williamsport, and prevent General Johnston from leaving the valley and joining Beauregard at Manassas. Upon the arrival of Patterson on the upper Potomac, General Johnston

evacuated Harper's Ferry and took position at Winchester. Patterson made a considerable show of force in the valley, but refrained from attacking Johnston, although the latter sought to induce him to do so. He took position about nine miles from Winchester, and remained inactive there.

In the meantime the preparations for the advance of McDowell's army were completed, and on the seventeenth of July he began his march from the Potomac towards Bull Run, on the banks of which the Confederates were posted. His army numbered over fifty thousand men, and forty-nine pieces of artillery. As soon as the advance of this army was known to him, General Beauregard informed General Johnston of it, and begged him to come to his assistance. Johnston skilfully eluded Patterson's army, and hastened to Bull Run, arriving there with a part of his command in time to take part in the battle.

The Confederate army had taken position behind Bull Run, and in advance of Manassas Junction. Including the force brought by General Johnston, who assumed the chief command by virtue of his rank, it consisted of thirty-one thousand four hundred and thirty-one men and fifty-five guns.

FORTIFICATIONS IN AND AROUND WASHINGTON.

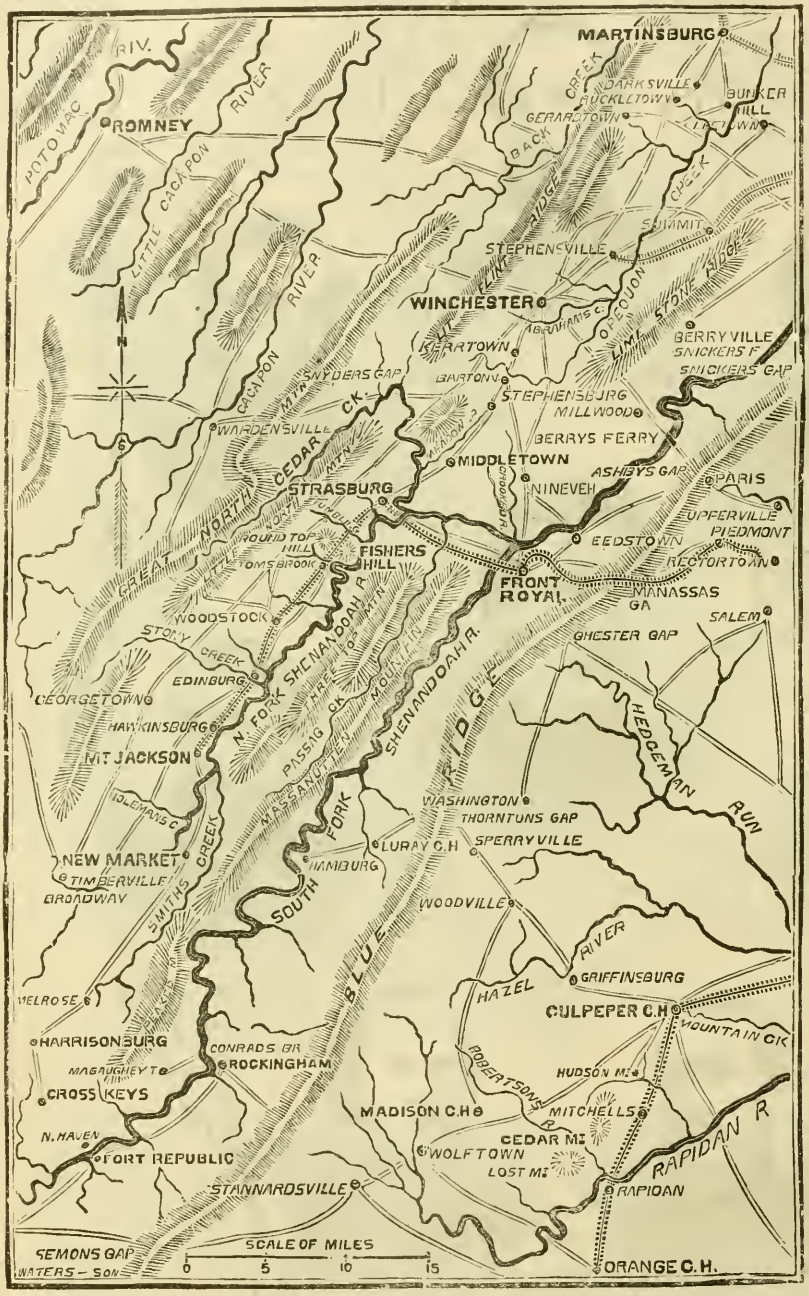
On the eighteenth of July General McDowell attempted to force a passage of Bull Run at Blackburn's ford, but was repulsed. On the morning of the twenty-first, the Union army advanced in force, and endeavored to turn the left of the Southern line. An obstinately-contested battle ensued, which lasted from sunrise until nearly sunset. It resulted in the total defeat of the Federal army, which was driven back in utter rout upon Alexandria and Washington, with a loss of between four and five thousand men in killed, wounded and prisoners, and twenty-eight pieces of artillery.

For a while the effects of this disaster upon the Federal army were so great that Washington was almost defenceless; but the Confederates made no effort to follow up their victory. They were almost as badly demoralized by their success as the Union army by its defeat.

Recovering from the dismay of its first great reverse, the government went to work

PORTRAITS OF PROMINENT FEDERAL GENERALS.

with vigor to repair the disaster. The levy of five hundred thousand men ordered by Congress was raised promptly and without difficulty, so eager was the desire of the people to wipe out the disgrace of Bull Run. At his own request General Scott, whose bodily infirmities were so great as to render him unable to discharge the duties of his position, was relieved of the command of the army. Major-General Geo. B. McClellan was given the chief command of the armies of the Union, and ordered to take charge of the force assembling before Washington, which was named the Army of the Potomac. He devoted himself with success to the task of organizing and disciplining the recruits, which came pouring in during the fall and winter.



MAP SHOWING THE SHENANDOAH VALLEY.

The remainder of the year 1861 passed away quietly on the Potomac, with the single exception of the battle of Leesburg. Colonel Baker, with a force of two thousand men, was sent by General Stone to cross the Potomac at Edward's ferry, and drive back the Confederate force under General Evans from its position near Leesburg. He made his attack on the twenty-first of October, but was

repulsed with the loss of eight hundred killed and wounded, being himself among the slain. The Confederate army held its position at Centreville through the fall and winter, and at one time its outposts were pushed forward within view of the city of Washington.

In the fall of 1861 an army of ten thousand men was sent by the Confederate government into the valley of Virginia to prevent its occupation by the federal forces. The command of these troops was conferred upon General T. J. Jackson, whose conspicuous gallantry at Bull Run had won him the sobriquet of "Stonewall Jackson," by which he was afterwards known by both armies. He established his headquarters at Winchester.

Prompt Action in Missouri.

In the meantime the war had been going on in Western Virginia. After the transfer of General McClellan to Washington, the command of the Union forces passed to Brigadier-General Rosecranz, an able officer. He had several indecisive encounters with the commands of Generals Floyd and Wise, in the region of the Gauley and New rivers. General Robert E. Lee was sent by the Confederate government to assume the chief command in the west. He attacked the brigade of General Reynolds at Cheat mountain on the fourteenth of September, but was repulsed and obliged to retreat. On the fourth of October, General Reynolds attacked a Confederate force under General Henry R. Jackson on the Greenbrier river, but was repulsed.

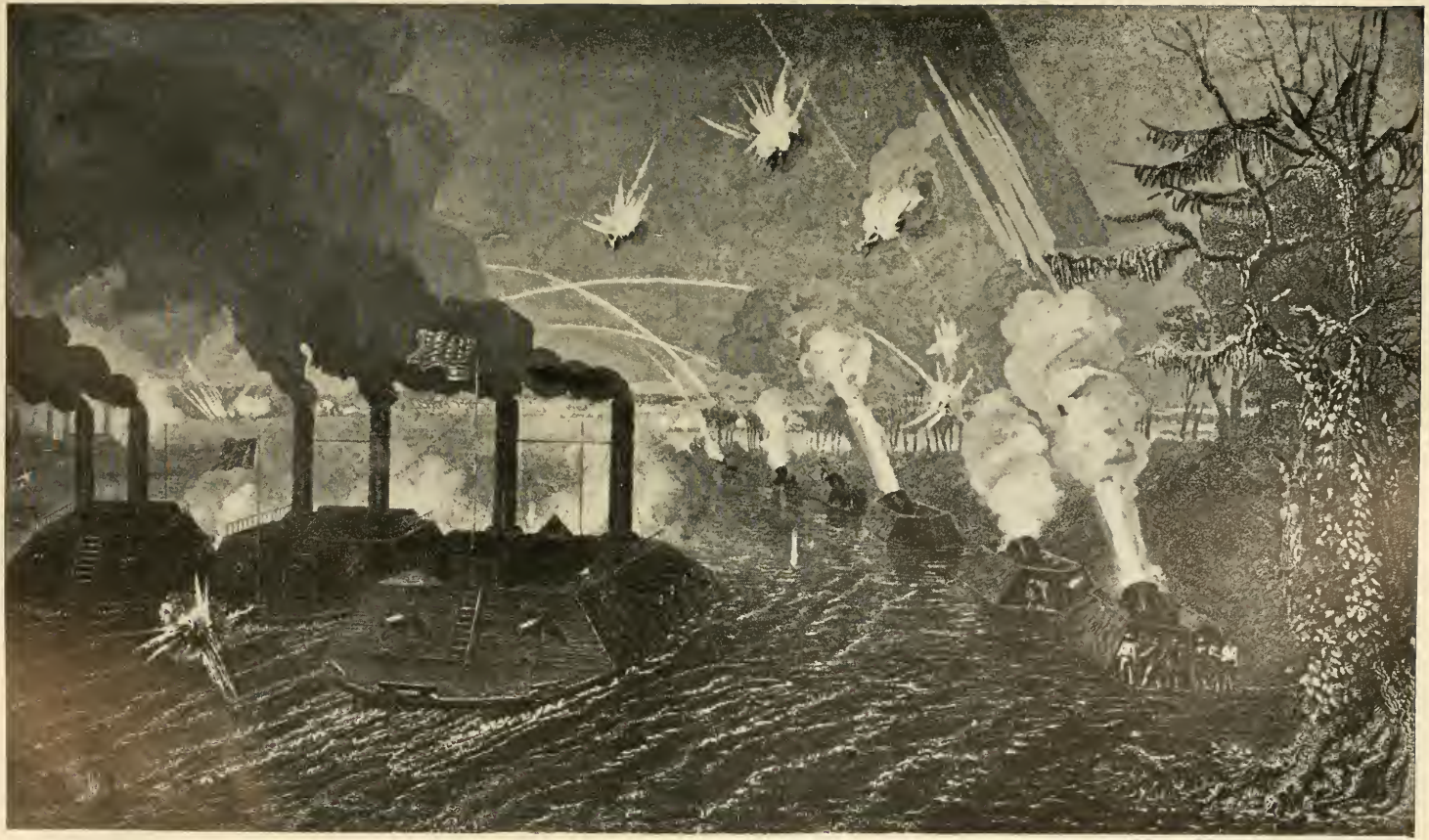
The State of Missouri took no part in the secession movements of the spring of 1861. Her people were divided; a large party sympathized with the South; but still a larger party was determined that the State should remain in the Union. These parties soon came in conflict. The governor and leading officials of the State were in favor of secession, and used all their influence to bring about the withdrawal of Missouri from the Union. A camp of the State militia was formed near St. Louis, and was called Camp Jackson in honor of the governor. It was known that the force assembled at this camp was intended to serve as a nucleus around which an army hostile to the federal government might assemble. By extraordinary exertions Colonel Frances P. Blair, Jr., a member of Congress from St. Louis, and Captain Nathaniel Lyon, commanding the troops at the Jefferson barracks, near St. Louis, succeeded in collecting a force of five regiments of Union volunteers.

On the tenth of May, 1861, Lyon with these five regiments suddenly surrounded Camp Jackson, and compelled General Frost, the commanding officer, to surrender his whole force, camp and equipments. By this prompt action the State forces were prevented from carrying out their plan for seizing the United States arsenal at St. Louis, which contained sixty thousand stand of arms of the latest patterns, and a number of cannon, and a large quantity of ammunition. For this decisive action Captain Lyon was commissioned a brigadier-general by the President.

Movements of General Lyon's Army.

Satisfied that the desire of the southern party in Missouri to remain neutral was but a pretext to gain time to arm the State for a union with the Confederates, President Lincoln determined to compel all the State forces not in the federal service to disband. An interview was held at St. Louis on the eleventh of June between Governor Jackson and General Lyon, now commanding the federal troops in Missouri. Governor Jackson demanded that no United States forces should be quartered in or marched through Missouri. General Lyon refused to comply with this demand, and insisted that the State forces

THE BATTLE OF MANASSAS, OR BULL RUN



BOMBARDMENT OF ISLAND No. 10

GUN AND MORTAR BOATS ON THE MISSISSIPPI, ENGAGING THE FORTS AND BATTERIES ON THE ISLAND AND MAINLAND

CAPTURE OF NEW ORLEANS — FLEET PASSING FORTS ON THE MISSISSIPPI

FORT ST PHILIP Brooklyn *(abreast of Fort St Philip)* *FORT JACKSON.* Louisiana *(iron plated battery exploding)*

Varuna. *(fighting through iron clad gunboats)* Hartford. *(flag ship)* Pensacola Mississippi Manassas *(Ram)*
Aircraft alongside.

MORTAR VESSELS IN THE DISTANCE SHELLING THE FORTS.

should be disbanded, pledging himself to respect the rights and privileges of the State.

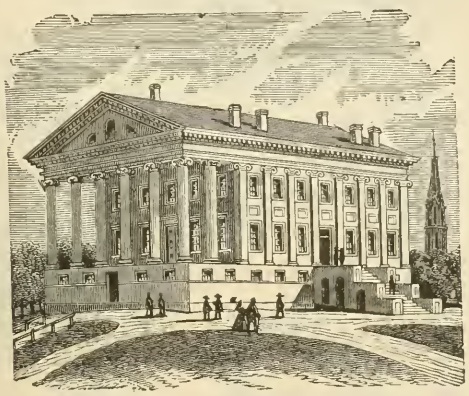
At the close of the interview the Governor returned to Jefferson City, the capital of the State, and the next day, the twelfth, issued his proclamation calling 50,000 of the State militia into active service for the purpose of driving the Federal troops from the State, and protecting the "lives, liberty and property of the citizens." General Lyon at once marched upon Jefferson City, and occupied it on the fifteenth, the Governor and his supporters having retired to the interior of the State. On the seventeenth Lyon proceeded to Booneville and defeated the State troops stationed there under General Price.

The southwestern part of Missouri is rich in deposits of lead, and valuable mines of this mineral are worked there. The State authorities were anxious to hold this region, as it was of the highest importance to them to obtain the use of these mines to supply their army with lead. A column of Federal troops under General Sigel was sent by General Lyon to intercept the retreat of the State troops. On the fifth of July, Sigel attacked the State troops under Governor Jackson at Carthage, but was repulsed.

Battle of Wilson's Creek.

The next day, July 6th, Governor Jackson was joined at Carthage by General Sterling Price, of the Missouri State Guard, and General Ben McCulloch, of the Confederate army, with several thousand men. The command of the whole force was conferred upon General McCulloch, who had been ordered by his government to advance into Missouri. The Southern army, according to General McCulloch's statement, numbered 5,300 infantry, 6,000 mounted men and fifteen pieces of artillery. It advanced rapidly into the interior of the State, and on the ninth of August reached Wilson's Creek, near Springfield. General Lyon had taken position there with a force somewhat smaller than that of the Confederates. On the morning of the tenth he attacked the Southern army. The battle lasted six hours, and was hotly contested. General Lyon was killed at the head of his troops while endeavoring to turn the left flank of the Confederates, and his army was forced back. His body was left in the hands of the Confederates, who treated it with becoming respect.

Springfield was occupied by the Confederates the day after the battle; but McCulloch and Price being unable to agree upon the plan of the campaign, they soon withdrew



CAPITOL AT RICHMOND, VIRGINIA.

to the Arkansas border. The Union army after the battle withdrew to Rolla, near the centre of the State.

A few weeks later General Price with a force of over five thousand Confederates laid siege to Lexington, on the Missouri river, which was held by about three thousand men under Colonel Mulligan. After a gallant defence Mulligan was forced to surrender on the twentieth of September.

Major-General John C. Fremont was now appointed by President Lincoln to take command of the western army. He forced Price's command back into the southwestern part of the State. Arriving near Springfield,

HALLECK.
CASEY.
FRANKLIN.
SCOTT.
SHIELDS.
BUELL
DIX

Fremont prepared to bring the Confederates to a decisive engagement, but on the second of November was removed from his command. He was succeeded by General Hunter, who abandoned the pursuit, and fell back to St. Louis. On the eighteenth of November Hunter was superseded by Major-General Halleck, who by a rapid advance drove Price once more towards the Arkansas border. This movement closed the campaign of 1861 in Missouri. The Union army had not only saved the State to the Union, but had confined the Confederates to the Arkansas border.

Southern Party in Kentucky.

In the meantime Governor Jackson had summoned the legislature of Missouri to meet at Neosho. It assembled at that place in October, passed an ordinance of secession, and elected delegates and senators to the Confederate Congress. Though this action was merely formal, and received the support of but a small part of the people of Missouri, it was recognized as valid by the Confederate government, and Missouri was proclaimed one of the Confederate States.

The governor and State authorities of Kentucky attempted at the outset of the war to hold the position of armed neutrality between the parties to the contest; but as in the case of Missouri, this effort failed. Neither the Federal government nor that of the Southern Confederacy could, in the nature of things, respect this neutrality.

The Federal troops were poured into Kentucky, and the Confederates seized Columbus, on the Mississippi, Bowling Green, in the centre of the State, and other positions in the western part. The Southern party in Kentucky, within the protection of the Confederate lines, organized a provisional government for the State, sent senators and representatives to the Congress at Richmond, which formally recognized Kentucky as one of the Confederate States.

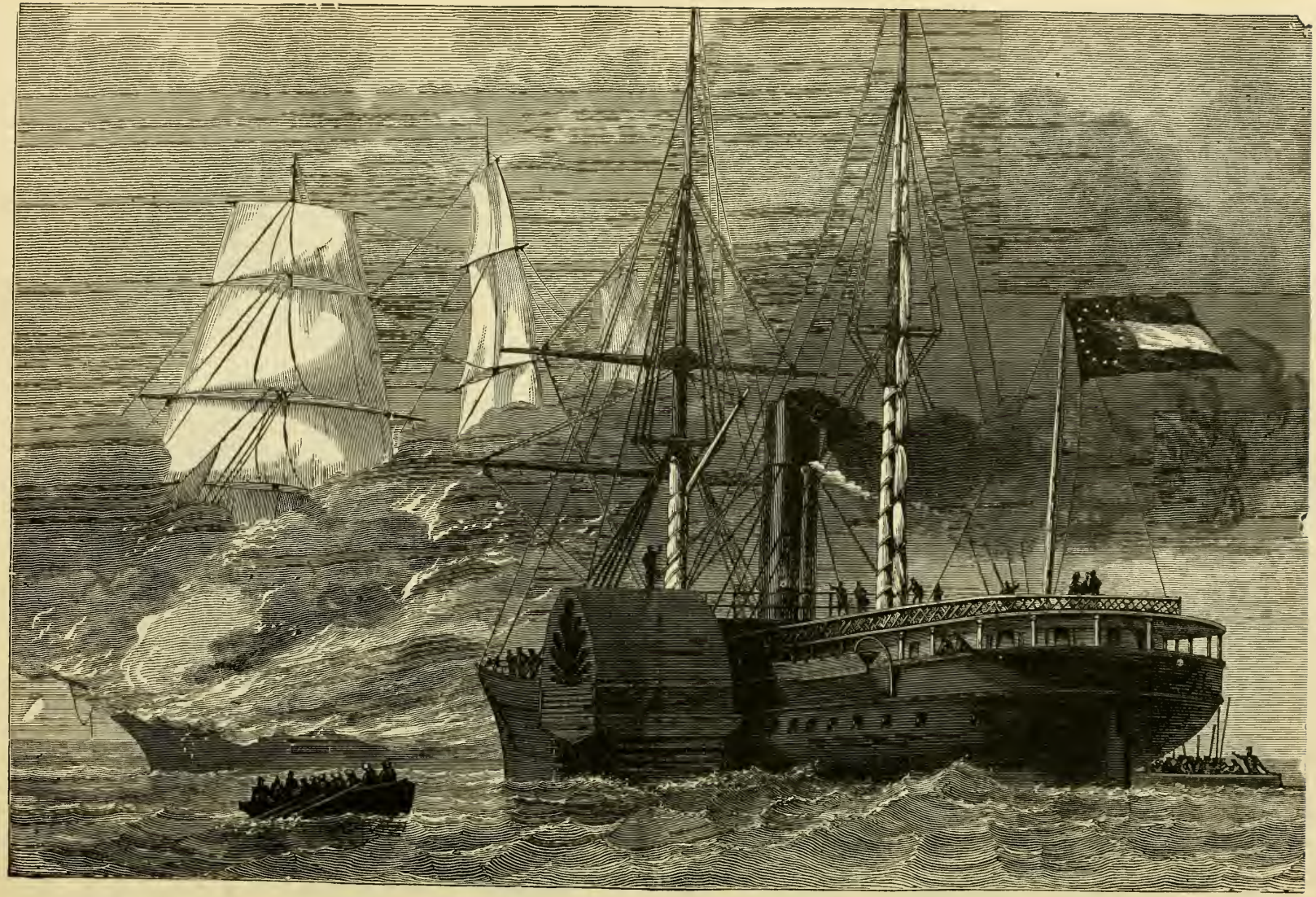
The force at Columbus was commanded by General Polk of the Confederate army. At Belmont, on the Missouri shore of the river, immediately opposite Columbus, a body of Confederate troops was stationed. On the seventh of November, General U. S. Grant having descended the Mississippi from Cairo, attacked the force at Belmont with his command of three thousand men. After a sharp struggle he was repulsed, and forced to retreat to Cairo.

On October 11th, the privateer "Nashville," which had been fitted out by the Confederates to capture Federal vessels, escaped from Charleston harbor and began to commit depredations upon the commerce of the North. The bold operations of the "Nashville" and other privateers produced a reign of terror on the high seas.

Naval and Military Expedition.

At the outset of the war the Confederates occupied the principal ports of the South, and a number of prominent points on the Atlantic coast. These were fortified by them as well as the means at hand would permit. The general government resolved to capture these as rapidly as possible, as their reduction was necessary in order to render the blockade of the southern coast effectual. The first expedition was despatched from Fortress Monroe in August, 1861, under Commodore Stringham aud General Butler, and was directed against the Confederate works at Hatteras Inlet, which commanded the entrance to Albemarle and Pamlico sounds. These works were captured on the twenty-ninth of August.

The great extent of the coast to be blockaded by the navy made it necessary that a good harbor at some central point should be secured, where supplies could be stored for



THE "NASHVILLE" DESTROYING A FEDERAL MERCHANTMAN.

the fleet, and where vessels could refill without returning to the northern ports. Port Royal harbor, in South Carolina, was selected as the best place for this purpose. It was defended by Fort Walker on Hilton Head and Fort Beauregard on the opposite side of the harbor. A powerful naval and military expedition under Commodore Dupont and General Thomas W. Sherman attacked these works on the seventh of November, and reduced them after terrible bombardment by the fleet. Port Royal was at once occupied by the expedition, and during the war was the principal depot on the southern coast for the fleets and armies of the Union.

It was not possible, however, to render the blockade effective. Great efforts were made to increase the number of vessels employed in this duty, but the Confederates succeeded in eluding the Union cruisers almost at pleasure, and a steady communication was maintained between the southern ports and England by way of the West Indies. A number of armed vessels in the service of the Confederacy succeeded in getting to sea. By the close of the year they had inflicted severe damage upon the commerce of the Northern States, and had almost driven the foreign trade of the United States from the ocean.

Affair of the "Trent."

During the early part of the war the Southern government was encouraged to hope that the governments of England and France would recognize the independence of the Confederate States, and in the fall of 1861, James M. Mason, of Virginia, and John Slidell, of Louisiana, were ordered to proceed to Europe, as commissioners from the Confederate States, to secure this recognition. They sailed from Charleston on the twelfth of October, and reached Cuba in safety. There they took passage for England on board the British mail-steamer "Trent." Hearing of this, Captain Wilkes, of the United States war-steamer "San Jacinto," overhauled the "Trent" upon the high seas boarded her, and seized the two commissioners and their secretaries and sailed with them to Boston harbor, where they were imprisoned in one of the forts.

The "Trent" in the meantime proceeded on her voyage, and upon reaching England her commander informed the British government of the outrage that had been committed upon its flag. The English government at once demanded of President Lincoln the immediate and unconditional release of the

LIEUTENANT-GENERAL POLK.

Confederate commissioners and satisfaction for the insult to its flag. It was understood that France was prepared to sustain England in her demands. The Federal government disavowed the action of Captain Wilkes in seizing the commissioners, and those gentlemen were released and allowed to continue their voyage. They reached England in due time. Mr. Mason proceeded to London and Mr. Slidell to France. Neither the English nor the French governments would receive the commissioners officially. It was understood that the United States would regard the interference of either in the American quarrel as a cause of war, and neither power cared to join in the struggle.

Tennessee seceded from the Union, as we have related, in the spring of 1861. The

western and central portions of the State were unanimously in favor of joining the Southern States and gave a hearty support to the Confederacy during the war, but East Tennessee, inhabited by a race of hardy mountaineers, was devoted to the Union, and was unwilling to leave it. In the autumn of 1861, the East Tennesseans took up arms against the Confederate Government, and began to destroy the railway bridges in that part of the State.

This movement was full of danger to the Confederacy, as the principal line of communication between Virginia and the Mississippi passed through East Tennessee. A considerable force of Confederate troops was sent

JAMES M. MASON.

into East Tennessee to hold the people in subjection and protect the railroads, but throughout the war, the hostility of the people of this region was a constant source of danger and weakness to the Confederates.

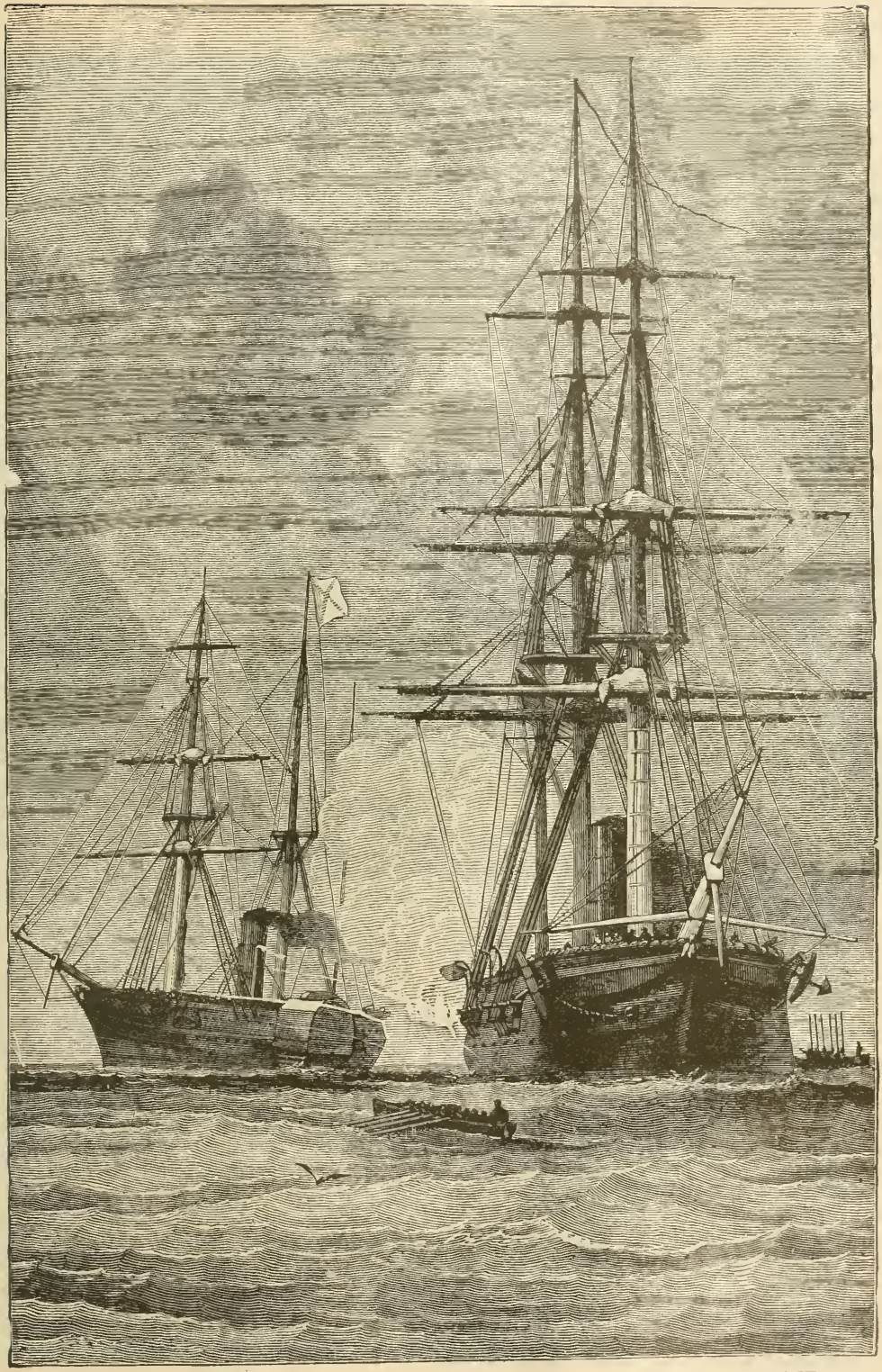
When the year 1862 opened, the war had assumed colossal proportions. The military operations extended almost across the continent, and engaged a number of powerful armies, and a formidable navy. The call of President Lincoln for troops had been cheerfully responded to, and the opening of the year found the United States provided with a force of over half a million of men, splendidly armed and equipped, and supplied with everything necessary for the successful prosecution of the war. The North had profited by its first reverses, and was resolved that its next effort, which was to be made at the opening of the season for active operations, should find it thoroughly prepared for the task it had undertaken.

A cordial support was given to the measures of the government by the people. Its wants were supplied by means of a heavy loan which was readily negotiated with the capitalists of the Eastern States. From the moment that the despondency caused by the reverse at Bull Run had subsided sufficiently to enable the people of the loyal States to face the situation calmly, everyone saw that the work of preparation must all be done over

JOHN SLIDELL.

from the beginning, and it was done bravely and thoroughly. During the fall and winter the army was rapidly increased; vessels were purchased and built for the navy.

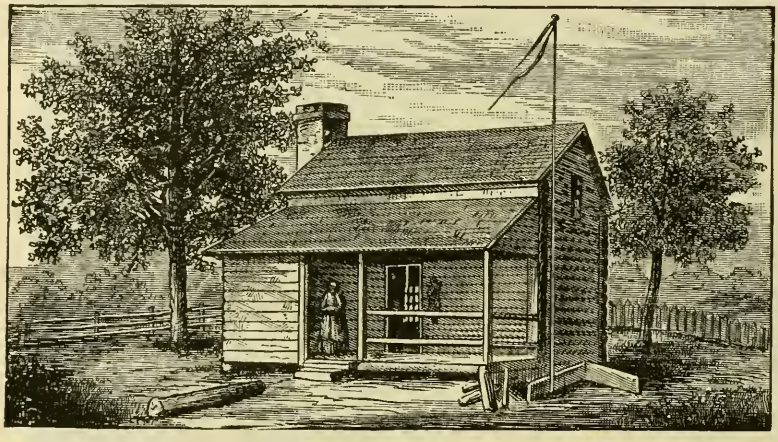
The Southern armies, on the other hand, had grown steadily weaker. The first successes of the Confederate troops had greatly demoralized the Southern people. Volunteering soon ceased almost entirely. Even the heaviest bounties failed to bring recruits. There was a widespread delusion throughout the South that the war was practically ended. The measures of the Confederate Congress steadily thinned, instead of filling up the ranks of the Southern armies, and when the new year dawned there was grave reason to



THE ARREST OF MASON AND SLIDELL ON THE BRITISH STEAMER "TRENT."

fear that the spring campaign would find the South without an adequate army unless more vigorous measures were resorted to. It was exceedingly doubtful whether the troops already in the service would renew their enlistments, which expired in the spring of 1862.

During the winter the Southern Congress adopted a law granting a furlough and a heavy bounty to every soldier who would re-enlist for the war. The furlough was to be granted during the winter; the bounty to be paid at a later period. Many of those who went home on these furloughs did so with the intention of remaining there; and the practical effect of the measure was to diminish the strength of the Confederate armies. At length the Confederate Congress was driven by the necessities of the situation to adopt a most stringent and sweeping measure. On the sixteenth of April, 1862, a conscription act was passed, giving to the President of the Confederacy the power to call into the military service the entire male population of the various States between the ages of eighteen and thirty-five years. In September, 1862, a second act was passed extending the conscript age to forty-five years.



GRANT'S HEAD-QUARTERS NEAR FORT DONELSON.

The measure was acquiesced in by the Southern people, but was never popular with them. It served the purpose for which it was intended, however, and enabled the Confederate Government to collect a force of several hundred thousand men in the spring of 1862, and thus to fill up the ranks of its armies in the field, and to retain the regiments already in the service.

When the spring opened, General Halleck, whose headquarters were at St. Louis, held Missouri against the Confederates with a powerful army. General Buell, with a considerable force, was stationed in Central Kentucky. In his front an inferior force of Confederates, under General Albert Sidney Johnston, held Bowling Green and covered Nashville and the Tennessee and the Cumberland Rivers. They also held Columbus and other prominent points on the Mississippi. The Army of the Potomac, under General McClellan, lay along the Potomac, confronting the Confederate army of Northern Virginia, which held Centreville. A considerable force was collected at Fortress Monroe, and an army of about 10,000 Confederates, under Magruder, held a strongly fortified line, extending from Yorktown across the Peninsula to the James River.

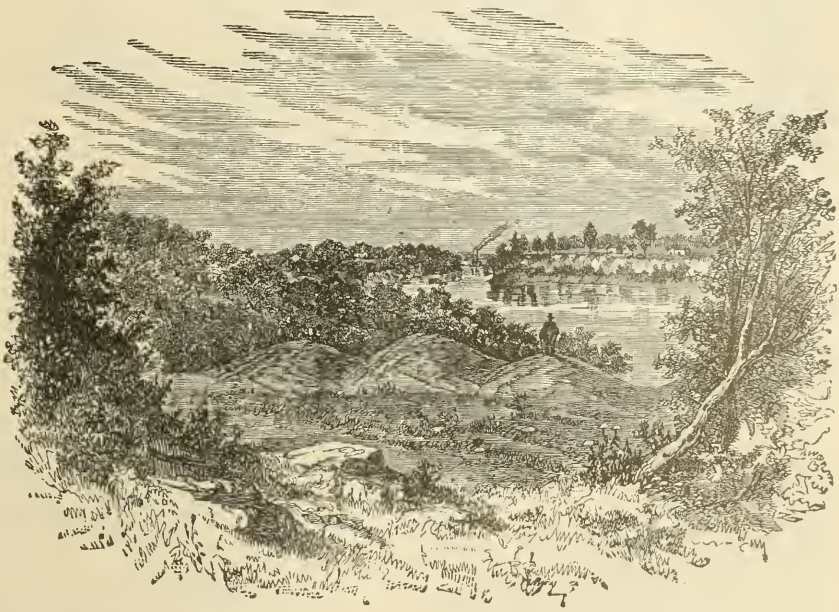
In addition to these forces, the Federal Government had collected a powerful flotilla of steamers and gunboats at Cairo, the junction of the Ohio and Mississippi rivers, to assist in the operations of the Western armies. The capture of New Orleans had been resolved upon, and a combined naval and military expedition under Commodore Farragut and General Butler was assembled for that purpose; and another expedition

CAPTURE OF ROANOKE ISLAND

CAPTURE OF FORT DONELSON, TENN.

was organized in the Chesapeake for the reduction of Roanoke Island and the forts on the North Carolina coast.

Soon after the opening of the new year, Mr. Cameron, whose administration of the war department had failed to give satisfaction to the country, was removed by President Lincoln, and sent to Russia as minister from the United States. The President on the thirteenth of January appointed Edwin M. Stanton, of Ohio, Secretary of War. The new secretary was confessedly one of the ablest men in America, and his accession to the control of the war department infused new life into the military preparations of the government. During the remainder of the war he occupied this position, and it is not too much to say that his vigorous administration of his department was one of the chief causes of the final success of the Union arms.



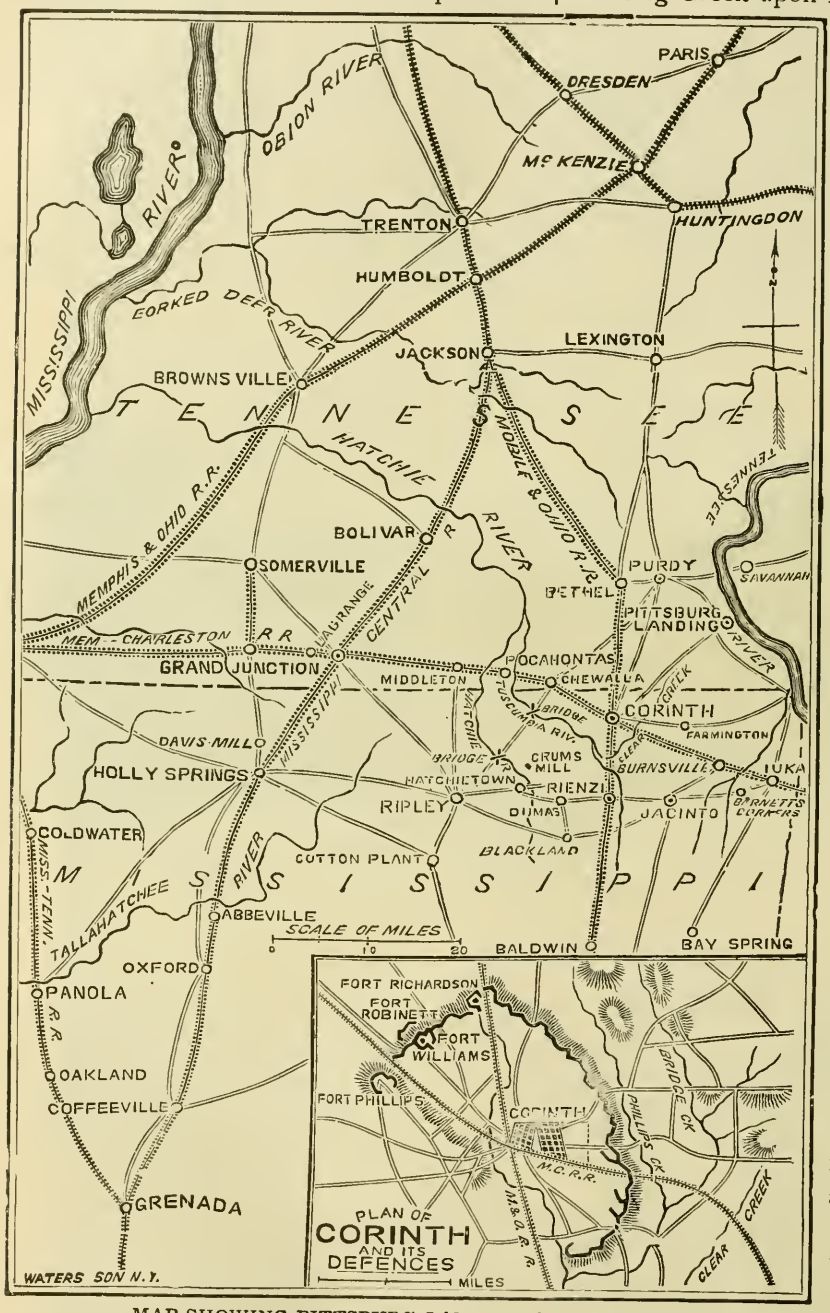
A VIEW OF THE COUNTRY, SHOWING FORT DONELSON IN THE DISTANCE.

Active operations were resumed earlier in the west than in the east. On the nineteenth of January, General George H. Thomas drove the Confederates under General Zollicoffer from Mill Spring in Kentucky. The defeated force had held the right of the Confederate line in Kentucky, the centre of which was at Bowling Green, and the left at Columbus, and its reverse was a serious disaster to the Confederates.

The department of General Halleck embraced Kentucky in addition to the country west of the Mississippi. In order to hold the Cumberland and Tennessee rivers, which afforded water communication far back into the country in the rear of their line, the Confederates had built a work, known as Fort Henry, on the Tennessee, a little south of the Kentucky border, and another and a stronger work, known as Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland and a little below Nashville.

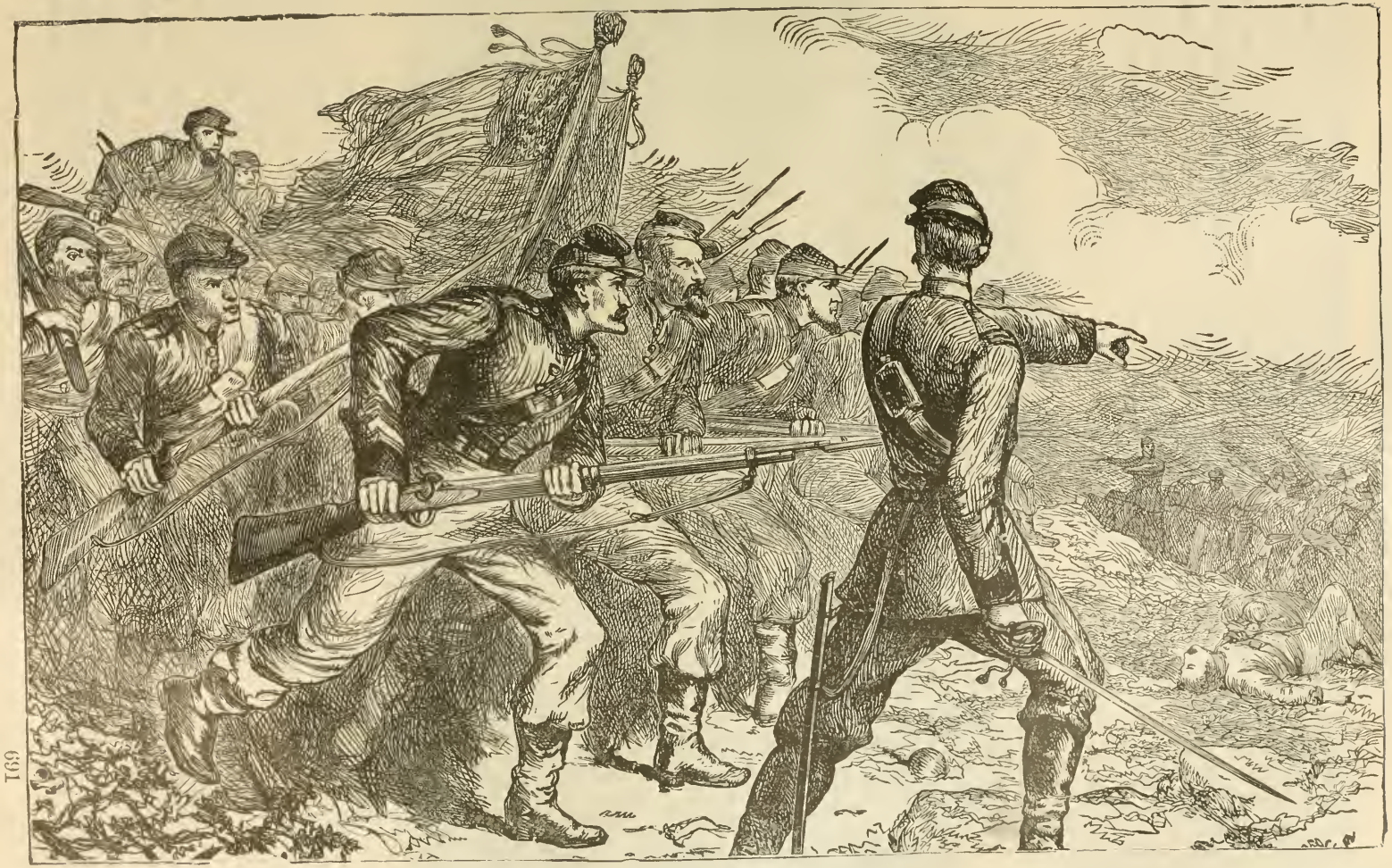
At the solicitation of Brigadier-General U. S. Grant, commanding at Cairo, General Halleck determined to capture these forts, and so break the Confederate line, and compel their army to fall back from Kentucky. Fort Henry was to be first attacked. The fleet of gunboats under Commodore Foote and Grant's troops from Cairo were sent against Fort Henry, which was captured on the sixth of February after a severe bombardment by the gunboats which had ascended the Tennessee. The garrison escaped to Fort Donelson, twelve miles distant across the country.

The loss of Fort Henry compelled the Confederates to evacuate all their positions in Kentucky. General Beauregard fell back from Columbus to Corinth, Mississippi, and General Sidney Johnston slowly retired from Bowling Green upon Nashville, followed by General Buell. After the capture of Fort Henry the gunboats returned to Cairo, and, taking on board supplies and reinforcements for the army, ascended the Ohio and entered the Cumberland, up which they passed to Fort Donelson. Grant, in the meantime, marched across the country from Fort Henry to Fort Donelson, and invested the latter work. The roads were so difficult that although the distance between the two forts was but twelve miles, Grant spent six days in marching it. This delay gave General Johnston an opportunity to reinforce Fort Donelson. He halted at Nashville with his main army to await the result of Grant's attack on the fort. The gunboats did not join Grant until the fourteenth of February, and the investment was not begun until their arrival.



MAP SHOWING PITTSBURG LANDING AND CORINTH.

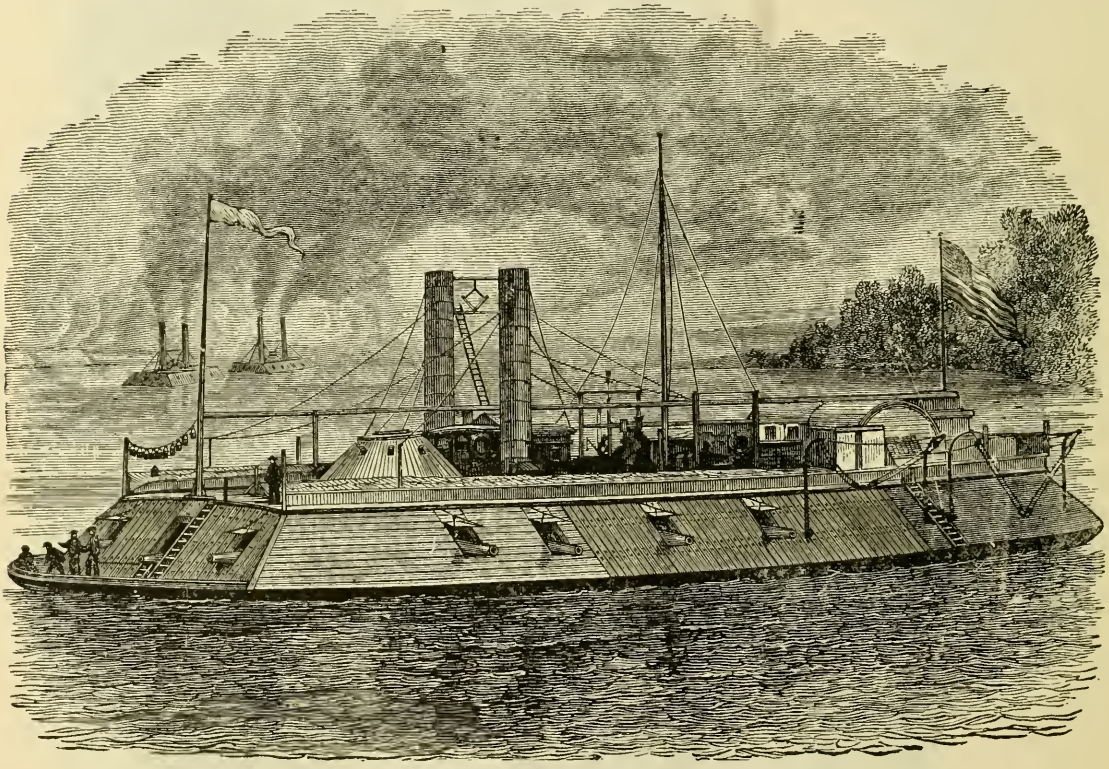
The following graphic description of the capture of Fort Henry is from the pen of the historian, John Laird Wilson:



CHARGE OF THE FEDERALS AT CORINTH.

"Immediately on receiving permission from Halleck to proceed with his proposed plan, Grant made arrangements for the attack on Fort Henry. He had at his disposal some seventeen thousand men. It was arranged that Commodore Foote, with a flotilla of seven gunboats, should move along the Ohio, steer up the Tennessee, and open the attack, while Grant, on the land side, should to move slowly and shell the woods, in order to discover whether there were any concealed batteries.

"On the morning of the sixth it was understood that everything was in readiness for the attack, which was to be made simultaneously on land and water. A heavy thunder-storm had raged the previous night; and, as a consequence, the roads were heavy and the



IRON-CLAD GUNBOAT.

render what assistance was necessary and cut off all retreat. On Monday, the second of February, Foote left Cairo, and on the morning of Tuesday he was a few miles below Fort Henry. Grant, in the meantime, with the divisions of McClernand and C. F. Smith, had embarked in transports which were convoyed by the flotilla. These landed a few miles below the fort; and Foote proceeded up the river, having orders from Grant streams so swollen that bridges had to be built for the passage of artillery. The land forces, thus encountering unlooked-for obstacles, were considerably delayed. Shortly after twelve o'clock Foote opened fire upon the fort. Beginning at a thousand yards distance, he gradually ran his vessels to within six hundred yards of the enemy. The firing for a time was vigorously returned; but Foote pressed forth with irresistible

bravery, and his men worked with a will and as if they meant to win. It was evident to Tilghman from the first that it was next to impossible for him to hold the fort. He nevertheless exerted himself to the utmost, encouraging his men alike by word and example, going so far as to work one of the guns himself.

Serious Accidents.

"A series of accidents meanwhile occurred inside the fort. A rifled twenty-four pounder burst, killing and wounding a number of the men. A forty-two pounder burst prematurely and killed three of the gunners. In a short time the well-directed fire from the gunboats had dismounted seven of the guns and made them useless; the flagstaff also was shot away. The garrison became completely demoralized. It was in vain that Tilghman attempted to replace the exhausted gunners. The troops in the camp outside the fort made good their escape, some by the Dover road, leading to Fort Donelson, others on board a steamer which was lying a little above Fort Henry.

"Foote had promised to reduce the fort within an hour. When he made that promise he counted on assistance from the forces on the land side. Without any such aid—for the land forces had not yet arrived on the scene—he made good his word; for the hour had scarcely expired when the white flag was raised. There was no unnecessary delay. The main body of his troops having made good their escape, Tilghman, with his staff and some sixty artillerists, surrendered to the victorious Foote. In killed and wounded the Confederate loss was twenty-one men. The only serious damage sustained by the fleet in the river was on board the ironclad Essex. A shot from the enemy had penetrated her boiler; and some twenty-nine officers and men, including Commander Porter, were seriously scalded."

The capture of Fort Henry was felt by the South to be a damaging blow; and it led to bitter murmuring and even loud complaints against the authorities at Richmond. It was justly regarded by the North as a victory of great importance. It was full of instruction, inasmnch as it proved the value of gunboats on the narrow rivers of the West, especially when acting in conjunction with land forces. It inspired hope, inasmuch as it reclaimed lost territory, and restored the old flag. "Fort Henry is ours!" said Halleck in his despatch to McClellan. "The flag of the Union is re-established on the soil of Tennessee. It will never be removed." Foote was formally thanked by the Secretary of the Navy. "The country," he was told, "appreciates your gallant deeds, and this Department desires to convey to you and your brave associates its profound thanks for the service you have rendered."

Important Union Success.

Fort Donelson was a stronger work than Fort Henry, and was held by a force of about thirteen thousand men, commanded by General John B. Floyd. On the fourteenth of February the gunboats opened fire upon the fort, and at the same time the army of General Grant, reinforced to about thirty thousand men, began to occupy the positions assigned it in the investment. The operations of the fourteenth ended with the repulse of the fleet, Commodore Foote being severely wounded in the engagement. Satisfied of his inability to hold the fort against the overwhelming force of the Federal army, General Floyd resolved to cut his way through, and retreat upon Nashville.

On the fifteenth he made a gallant attempt to break Grant's lines, but was driven back, and a portion of the Southern intrenchments remained in the hands of the Union army. On the night of the fifteenth a council of

war was held by the Confederate commanders. It was evident that escape was impossible and a surrender inevitable. General Floyd refused to surrender, and retreated from the fort with a considerable force of infantry and cavalry, with which he succeeded in reaching Nashville. General Pillow, who was left by Floyd in command, turned over the command to General Buckner, the next in rank, and joined Floyd in his flight. Being unable to offer further resistance, General Buckner, on the morning of the sixteenth, surrendered the fort and his troops unconditionally to the Federal army.

ISLAND NO. 10.

The capture at Fort Donelson was by far the most important success that had yet been won by the Union armies, and was hailed with rejoicings throughout the north and west. By this capture over five thousand prisoners, besides the Confederate wounded, fell into the hands of the Union forces. The Federals also lost heavily in killed and wounded.

General Johnston, upon learning of the fall of Fort Donelson, fell back from Nashville to Murfreesboro', from which place he subsequently continued his retreat across the State, and eventually joined General Beauregard, who had taken position at Corinth, at the junction of two important railway lines on the northern border of Mississippi. Beauregard, in falling back from Columbus, had left a force at Island No. 10, which had been strongly fortified, to hold the Mississippi against the efforts of the Federal fleet and army to obtain the control of the river.

Nashville was occupied by the army of General Buell, and Grant's army was moved up the Tennessee as far as Pittsburgh Landing. General Buell was ordered to march across the country from Nashville to the Tennessee, to unite his forces with Grant's and attack the Confederates at Corinth.

General Johnston, the Confederate commander, had feared this concentration, which would make the Federal power in this quarter irresistible, and had determined to attack Grant's army and crush it before Buell could arrive, after which he would be free to engage Buell. His plan was ably conceived but his march was delayed by the fearful state of the roads, and he did not arrive opposite the Federal position until two days after the time fixed for his attack. Grant was encamped at Shiloh Church, near Pittsburgh Landing, with the Tennessee river in his rear. On the morning of Sunday, April sixth, his army was suddenly attacked by Johnston, and was driven steadily from its original position to the banks of the Tennessee, where it was sheltered by the fire of the gunboats. The battle was stubbornly contested, and the losses on both sides were very heavy.

Late in the afternoon General Johnston was mortally wounded, and died soon afterwards. The command passed to General

Beauregard, who failed to follow up his advantage. During the night the army of General Buell arrived, and reinforced Grant. On the morning of the seventh Grant attacked the Confederates, and after a sharp fight drove them back. They retreated slowly and returned to Corinth.

While these operations were in progress, the gunboats under Commodore Foote and a strong force of Western troops under Pope laid siege to Island No. 10, on the Mississippi. After a bombardment of twenty-three days, the Confederate works were captured, together with five thousand prisoners, on the seventh of April, the day on which Beauregard was driven back from Shiloh.

The Confederates still held Fort Pillow, a strong work a short distance above Memphis. If this could be captured, the Federal forces would obtain the control of the river as far south as Vicksburg. General Pope was anxious to move against it at once, but his army was ordered to join General Halleck. Commodore Foot being disabled by his wound received at Fort Donelson, was succeeded by Captain Davis, who descended the river and took position above Fort Pillow.

General Halleck now repaired to the Tennessee, and took command of the Union armies there, amounting to more than one hundred thousand men. He moved forward leisurely towards Corinth, and laid siege to that place. Beauregard, seeing that it was impossible to hold Corinth against this greatly superior force, evacuated it on the night of the twenty-ninth of May, and retreated to Tupelo, Mississippi. The next day General Halleck occupied Corinth. The loss of Corinth compelled the evacuation of Fort Pillow, which was abandoned by the Confederates on the fourth of June. On the sixth the Union gunboats descended the river to Memphis, and defeated the Confederate flotilla above that city. Memphis at once surrendered, and was occupied by the Union forces. All West Kentucky and West Tennessee were now under the control of the Union armies, which now occupied a line extending from Memphis, through Corinth, almost to Chattanooga.

Early in July news came to the East of another massacre in the Mormon territory. A fanatic by the name of Morris, who claimed to be the true successor of Joseph Smith, and had gathered several hundred followers, was accused of having committed various depredations, and a small force was sent by order of the chief Mormons to arrest

BURNING HORSES AT SHILOH.

him. The force was under command of one Burton, sheriff of Salt Lake county. Morris refused to surrender, a conflict ensued, the camp of the Morrisites was riddled with cannon balls, and Morris was shot by Burton. Two Brighamites and ten Morrisites were killed, and a large number were wounded. The attacking party appears to have practiced unnecessary cruelty.

Returning to the story of the war, the Confederates still held East Tennessee in heavy force. Shortly after the evacuation of Corinth General Beauregard was removed from his command, and was succeeded by General Braxton Bragg Bragg was strongly

reinforced, and it was determined to make a bold effort to drive back the Federal advance and regain West Tennessee and, if possible, Kentucky. Bragg's army was concentrated at Chattanooga, and Geneneral Kirby Smith at Knoxville was strongly reinforced. Smith was to move from Knoxville, while Bragg was to advance from Chattanooga, and the two armies were to unite in the centre of the State of Kentucky. Their combined forces amounted to over fifty thousand men, and it was hoped that this movement would compel the Federal army to abandon its advance, and fall back into Kentucky to protect that State and Ohio from the Confederates. Then, by a decisive victory, Bragg expected to be able to overrun and hold Kentucky and even to invade Ohio.

The division of General Smith moved forward about the middle of August, and on the thirtieth of August defeated a Union force under General Manson at Richmond, Kentucky, inflicting upon it a loss of 6,000 men. Smith then occupied Lexington and Frankfort, and advanced towards Cincinnati; but ascertaining that a strong force was assembling at that city, under General Lewis Wallace, he fell back to Frankfort, where he joined General Bragg on the fourth of October.

Bragg had begun his march as soon as Kirby Smith had gotten fairly started. His objective point was Louisville, and he hoped to be able to elude the army of General Buell, which was at Nashville, and by a rapid advance seize Louisville before Buell's arrival. By the seventeenth of September he was at Munfordsville, Kentucky, which he captured after several slight encounters, taking forty-five hundred prisoners. Buell in the meantime had divined Bragg's purpose, and had set out from Nashville for the Ohio by forced marches. He reached Louisville before the arrival of the Confederates, and being heavily reinforced advanced to attack Bragg, who had turned aside and occupied Frankfort on the fourth of October.

MASSACRE OF THE MORRISITES.

PORTRAITS OF PROMINENT CONFEDERATE GENERALS.

Bragg fell back slowly, ravaging the country along his route, and was followed by Buell with equal deliberation. On the eighth of October an indecisive battle was fought between the two armies at Perryville. After this conflict, in which both sides lost heavily, Buell refrained from attacking Bragg again, and the latter continued his retreat leisurely into Tennessee, taking with him a wagon train forty miles in length, loaded with plunder captured in Kentucky.

Grant Strikes Decisive Blows.

During this campaign the Federal army under General Grant had held its line in West Tennessee, extending from Corinth to Memphis. A Confederate army under Generals Price and Van Dorn was assembled in Mississippi in front of the Union position. Grant, who was now in command of the Federal forces in West Tennessee (Halleck having been summond to Washington as Commanding General), ordered General Rosecrans to his assistance. Upon the arrival of this commander with his troops, Grant advanced upon Price at Iuka, and defeated him on the nineteenth of September. He then repaired to Jackson, Tennessee, leaving Rosecrans with nineteen thousand men to hold Corinth against the Confederates.

After his defeat at Iuka Price was joined by Van Dorn, whose troops brought the strength of the Confederate army to eighteen thousand men. They at once advanced upon Corinth, and on the fourth of October attacked that place. The battle which ensued was noted for the obstinacy with which it was contested by both sides. The Confederates were defeated with a loss of about three thousand killed and wounded, and were pursued for about thirty miles southward. The Union loss was about five hundred and eighteen killed, wounded and missing.

The Federal Government was greatly dissatisfied with Buell's failure to intercept Bragg, and upon his arrival at Nashville he was removed from the command of his army, which was conferred upon General Rosecrans, as a reward for his victory at Corinth. Bragg had taken position near Murfreesboro', about thirty miles distant from Nashville, and Rosecrans, towards the last of December, moved upon that place to attack him. Bragg had at the same time completed his preparations to resume the offensive, and had begun his advance upon Nashville, and the two armies encountered each other at Stone River, near Murfreesboro', on the thirty-first of December. They were about equal in strength, each numbering about forty thousand men.

Bragg Repulsed by Rosecrans.

The battle was fiercely disputed, but at nightfall Rosecrans was driven back with heavy loss, and Bragg telegraphed to Richmond news of a great victory. Rosecrans, however, had merely fallen back to a new and stronger position. On the second of January, 1863, Bragg renewed his attack, but was repulsed with terrible slaughter. On the third a heavy rain fell and prevented all military operations, and that night Bragg retreated from the field. He retired in good order to Tullahoma, about thirty miles from Murfreesboro'. The losses on both sides in this battle were heavy, ranging from ten thousand to twelve thousand men in each army.

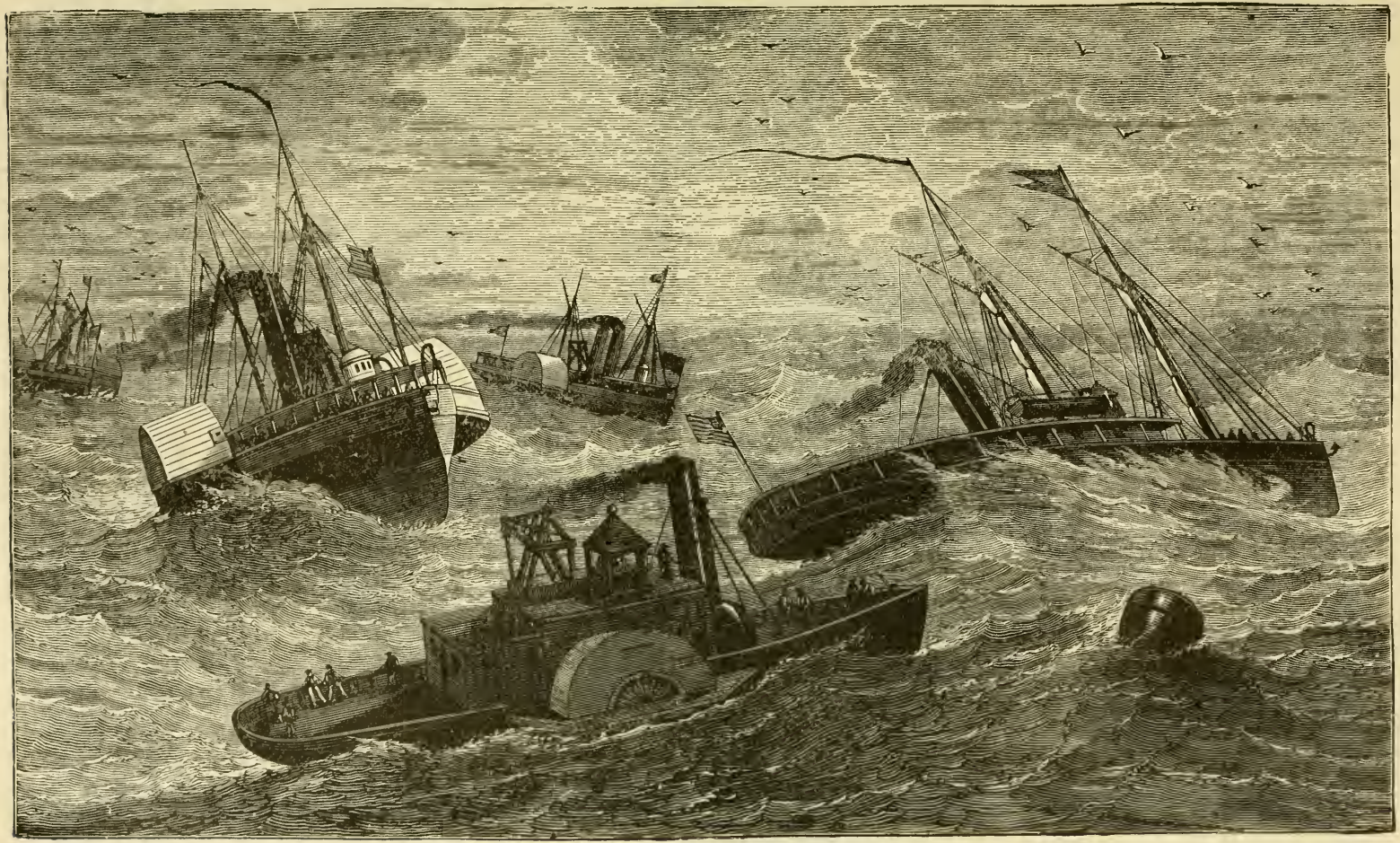
The Confederates, having lost the upper and lower Mississippi, had fortified Vicksburg and Port Hudson, in order to maintain their hold upon that stream, and to keep open their communications with the country west of the Mississippi. Vicksburg had been made a post of extraordinary strength, and was garrisoned by a considerable force of Confederate troops. Towards the last of the year

General Grant determined to undertake an expedition against it. He sent General Sherman with forty thousand men, and a fleet of gunboats, under Commodore Porter, to descend the Mississippi and attack the southern works above the city; and advanced southward from Corinth with the main army by land. Grant had accomplished fully half the distance when a strong body of Confederate cavalry, under General Van Dorn, made a dash into his rear, and on the twentieth of December captured Holly Springs, Grant's principal depot of supplies.

This movement compelled Grant to abandon his advance upon Vicksburg, and to fall back and re-establish his communications with his base. Sherman, ignorant of this disaster, left Memphis on the twentieth of December, and a few days later landed his troops on the banks of the Yazoo, from which he advanced upon the Confederate works at Chickasaw bayou, on the north of Vicksburg. On the twenty-ninth of December he made a spirited attack upon them, but was repulsed. He withdrew his troops to the boats, and retired to Young's Point, on the Louisiana shore, a short distance above Vicksburg.

GENERAL SHERMAN AT THE OUTBREAK OF THE WAR.

The Confederates were driven out of Missouri at the close of 1861, and retired into Arkansas. General Van Dorn was now sent by the Confederate government to take command of the forces of Price and McCulloch, which numbered about sixteen thousand men. He reached the head-quarters of this force on the third of March, 1862. The Federal army, under General Curtis, with General Sigel as his second in command, had taken position on the heights of Pe-



BURNSIDE'S EXPEDITION CROSSING HATTERAS BAR.

Ridge, around Sugar creek, in the northwestern part of Arkansas. It numbered about eleven thousand men. On the seventh of March Van Dorn attacked the Union army in this position, and after a bloody fight, which lasted for about seven or eight hours, drove it back. Curtis took up a new position during the night, and the next morning the Confederates renewed the attack, and were repulsed.

After the battle of Shiloh, the troops of Price and Van Dorn were withdrawn across the Mississippi to reinforce General Beauregard at Corinth. We have seen them bearing the brunt of the campaign in northern Mississippi against Grant's army. Towards the close of the summer, it being necessary to make a vigorous effort to hold the trans-Mississippi region against the efforts of the Union forces, the Confederate government sent Lieutenant-General Holmes to take command of it. The operations in this region during the remainder of the year were of an unimportant character.

General Burnside's Expedition.

The plan of the Federal government for seizing the prominent points on the coast was carried forward with great energy during the year 1862. Between Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds, on the coast of North Carolina, lies Roanoke Island, famous as the scene of Sir Walter Raleigh's unfortunate attempts to colonize America, and commanding the entrance to Albemarle Sound. The possession of this island by the Federal forces would give them the command of the rivers entering into the sounds, place the rear defences of Norfolk at their mercy, and afford them a safe base from which to attack the towns on the North Carolina coast. The Federal government having determined to obtain possession of Roanoke Island, a powerful expedition against it was fitted out early in the year, under the command of Major-General Ambrose E. Burnside.

The expedition sailed from Hampton Roads on the eleventh of January, 1862, and after narrowly escaping being scattered by a severe storm, passed through Hatteras inlet, and anchored in Pamlico Sound on the twenty-eighth. On the sixth of February the fleet took position off Roanoke Island, and on the seventh opened fire upon the Confederate works. Under the cover of this fire a force of over ten thousand troops was landed upon the island. On the eighth, General Burnside attacked the Confederate intrenchments and carried them after a sharp contest. The entire Confederate force, numbering about twenty-five hundred men, fell into his hands as prisoners of war. On the tenth, the Confederate squadron in Albemarle Sound was attacked and destroyed, or captured.

Having established himself firmly on Roanoke Island, General Burnside prepared to reduce the towns along the coast of North Carolina. On the fourteenth of March, Newberne surrendered to him, and on the twenty-fifth of April, Fort Macon, at the entrance of Beaufort Harbor, one of the strongest works on the coast, capitulated.

Successes on the Florida Coast.

Some important successes were won on the Coast of Florida during the spring of this year. An expedition from Port Royal captured Fernandina and Fort Clinch, on the twenty-eighth of February, and a little later Jacksonville, on the St. John's River, and St. Augustine passed into the hands of the Federal troops. Brunswick and Darien, important places on the coast of Georgia, were captured about the same time.

The most important naval expedition of the year was that which resulted in the capture of New Orleans. The Federal

 PORTRAITS OF THE PRINCIPAL NAVAL COMMANDERS DURING THE WAR.

Government had recognized from the first the importance of regaining possession of the Mississippi, and, as we have seen, a large fleet of gunboats had been prepared on the upper waters of that stream to co-operate with the army in its efforts to capture the fortified posts along the river. All these efforts, however, were useless as long as the Confederates retained possession of the lower river or of the important city of New Orleans, the commercial metropolis of the South. It was resolved at an early period of the struggle to wrest New Orleans from the Confederates, and a fleet of forty-five vessels of war and mortar-boats was assembled for this purpose, and placed under command of Commodore Farragut, an able and experienced officer. To the fleet was added a force of fifteen thousand troops, under General B. F. Butler. The expedition rendezvoused at Ship Island, near the mouth of the Mississippi, in the early part of March.

Tactics of Admiral Farragut.

About twenty miles above the head of the passes of the Mississippi, and about seventy miles below New Orleans, the entrance to the river is defended by two strong works—Fort Jackson on the right bank of the stream, and Fort St. Philip on the left—both built before the war. The Confederates had further strengthened their position by stretching six heavy chains, supported on a series of dismasted schooners, across the river, from shore to shore, to prevent the passage of ships. Early in April the fleet sailed from Ship Island, leaving the troops there to await the result of its operations, and entering the Mississippi took position below the forts.

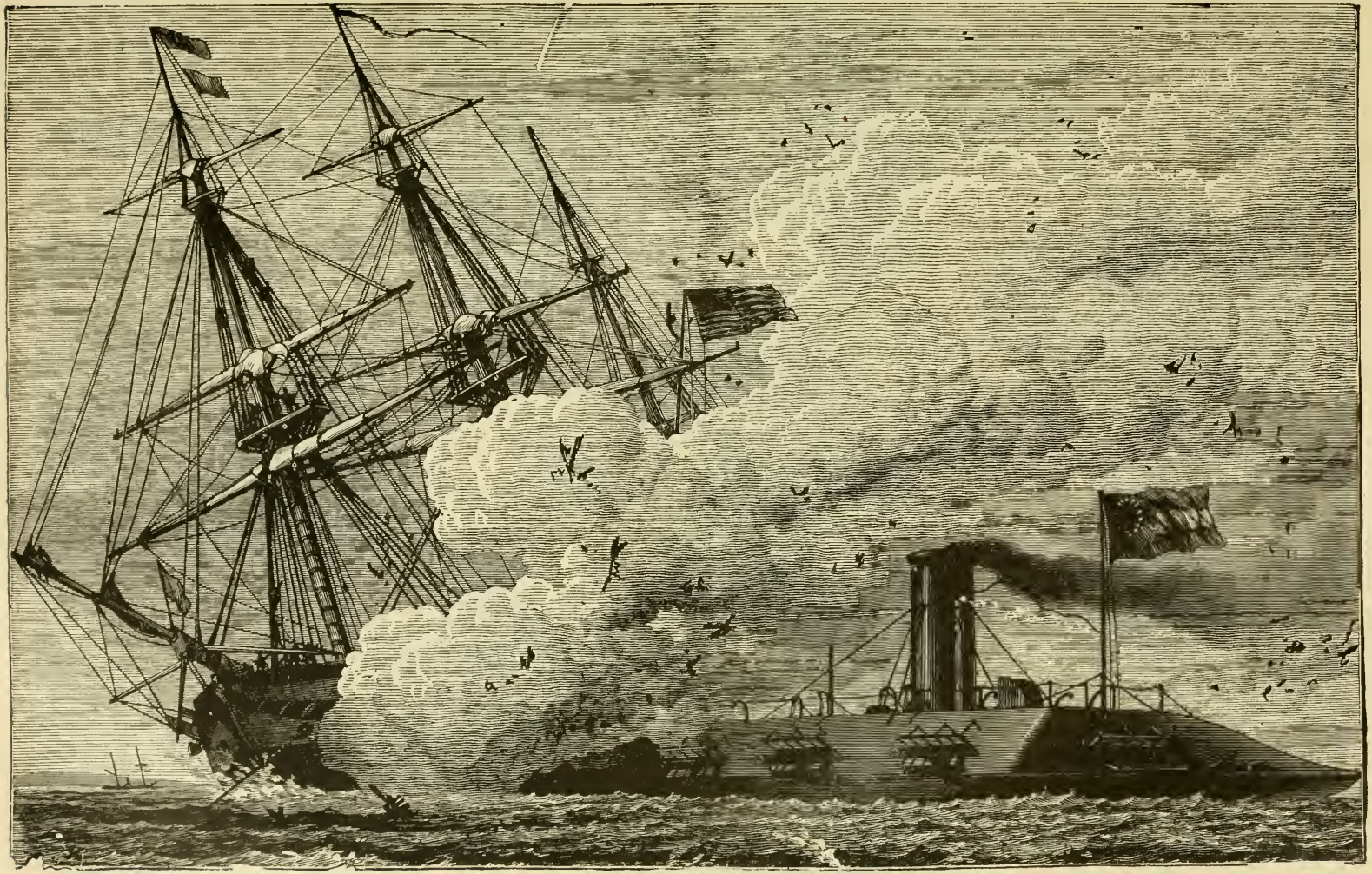
On the eighteenth the bombardment of the forts was begun by the ships and the mortar-boats, and was continued with great vigor until the twenty-fourth. The results of this bombardment was most discouraging, and Farragut became convinced that the forts could not be reduced by the fire of the fleet. He therefore determined to pass them with his vessels and so neutralize them.

The chain and raft barricade across the river had been broken by a severe storm, and Farragut sent a party to enlarge the gap made in it, so as to admit the passage of the fleet. This task was accomplished with great gallantry. At three o'clock, on the morning of the twenty-fourth of April, the fleet got under headway and began to ascend the river, the commodore in his flag-ship, the "Hartford," leading the way. The fleet consisted of seventeen vessels, carrying two hundred and ninety-four guns.

Desperate Naval Battle.

As the vessels came abreast of the forts the Confederates opened a heavy fire upon them, to which they responded with vigor. The forts were passed in safety at length and a short distance above them Farragut encountered the Confederate fleet, consisting of sixteen vessels, but eight of which were armed. Two of these were iron-clads, however. A desperate battle ensued, which resulted in the total destruction of the southern fleet. When the sun rose on the morning of the twenty-fourth the forts had been passed, and the resistance of the Confederate vessels had been overcome.

There was nothing now between the Federal fleet and New Orleans, and Farragut, ascending the river slowly and cautiously, anchored in the stream, in front of the city, on the morning of the twenty-fifth. He at once demanded the capitulation of New Orleans, which had been evacuated by the Confederate troops on the previous day, and the city was surrendered to him by the municipal authorities. On the twenty-eighth Forts Jackson and St. Philip surrendered to



THE "MERRIMAC" SINKING THE "CUMBERLAND."

Captain Porter, the commander of the mortar fleet. New Orleans being taken, word was sent to General Butler, at Ship Island, to hasten forward with his troops to occupy it. He arrived on the first of May, and at once took possession of the city. Baton Rouge, the capital of Louisiana, was occupied by the Federal forces, and Farragut pushed on up the river, and, passing the Confederate batteries at Grand Gulf and Vicksburg, joined the fleet of Commodore Davis at Memphis.

The capture of New Orleans was a terrible blow to the South. It deprived the Confederacy of the largest and wealthiest city within its limits, and wrested from it the whole of the lower Mississippi.

Fort Pulaski Surrenders.

Another success was gained by the Union arms on the Southern coast. An expedition from Port Royal, under General Hunter, laid siege to Fort Pulaski, near the mouth of the Savannah River. This fort was constructed by the Federal government previous to the war, and constituted one of the principal defences of the city of Savannah. On the eleventh of April, after a bombardment of fifteen days, it surrendered to General Hunter. Its capture closed the Savannah River to the entrance of the class of vessels known as blockade runners, and deprived the South of the use of one of its principal ports.

The events of this year in Virginia were of the highest importance. The Army of the Potomac, nearly two hundred thousand strong, was ready for active operations with the early spring. General McClellan was anxious to avail himself of the superior naval strength of the United States to transport his army to a point on the Chesapeake Bay, from which it could easily interpose between the Confederate army, under General Johnston, and Richmond.

Suspecting such a design on the part of McClellan, Johnston abandoned his position at Centreville, on the eighth of March, and fell back to the Rappahannock, and a little later moved back still farther to the line of the Rapidan. McClellan advanced to Centreville as soon as informed of Johnston's withdrawal, but was too late to interfere with the movements of the Confederate army.

Exploits of the "Merrimac."

Simultaneous with Johnston's withdrawal from Centreville occurred an incident which forms one of the most striking episodes of the war, and led to results of world-wide importance. Upon the evacuation of the Norfolk navy yard by the Federal forces, at the outset of the war, the splendid steam frigate "Merrimac" was scuttled and sunk This vessel was subsequently raised by the Confederates, and rebuilt by them. Her upper deck was removed, and she was covered with a slanting roof. Both the roof and her sides were heavily plated with iron, and a long, stout bow was fitted to her to enable her to act as a ram. She was then armed with ten heavy guns, and named the "Virginia." Thus prepared, she was the most powerful vessel afloat.

As soon as the "Virginia" was ready for service the Confederate authorities determined to test her efficiency by attempting to destroy the Federal fleet to Hampton Roads On the eighth of March the "Virginia," accompanied by two small vessels, left Norfolk and steamed down the Elizabeth River into Hampton Roads. Her appearance took the Federal fleet by surprise, and a heavy fire was concentrated upon her from the fleet and the batteries on shore at Newport News, at the mouth of the James River. Shot and shell flew harmlessly from her iron sides, and, firing slowly as she advanced, she aimed straight for the sloop of war "Cumberland" —the most formidable vessel of her class in

the navy—and sunk her with a blow of her iron prow.

The frigate "Congress," lying near by, was chased into shoal water and compelled to surrender, after which she was set on fire.

GENERAL GEORGE B. M'CLELLAN.

The ram then endeavored to inflict a similar fate upon the frigate "Minnesota," but that vessel escaped into water too shallow for the iron-clad to venture into. At sunset the "Virginia" drew off, and returned to the Elizabeth River. She had destroyed two of the finest vessels in the Federal navy, and inflicted upon her adversaries a loss of two hundred and fifty officers and men. She was herself uninjured, and had but two men killed and eight wounded.

The success of the "Virginia" struck terror to the fleet in Hampton Roads, and it was by no means certain that the victorious vessel would not the next day either attack Fort Monroe, or pass by it and ascend the Chesapeake, in which case both Washington and Baltimore would be at her mercy. During the night, however, a most unlooked-for assistance arrived. The "Monitor," an iron-clad vessel of a new plan, invented by Captain John Ericsson, entered Hampton Roads on her trial trip from New York. Upon learning the state of affairs her commander, Lieutenant Worden, determined to engage the "Virginia" the next day. On the morning of the ninth the "Virginia" again steamed out of the Elizabeth River into Hampton Roads. The "Monitor," though her inferior in size, and carrying but a single gun, at once moved forward to meet her.

An engagement of several hours' duration ensued, in which both vessels were fought

with great gallantry; and at the end of this time the "Virginia" drew off, and returned to Norfolk severely injured. The arrival of the "Monitor" was most fortunate. It saved the Federal fleet in Hampton Roads from total destruction, and prevented the "Virginia" from extending her ravages to the ports of the Union. The battle between the "Monitor" and the "Virginia" will ever be famous as the first engagement between iron-clad vessels. It inaugurated a new era in naval warfare. In spite of the result of the battle, however, the presence of the "Virginia" at Norfolk deterred the Federal forces from risking an attack on that place, and prevented them from making any effort to ascend the James River with their fleet.

In the meantime the army of General McClellan had returned to its position near Alexandria, after the retreat of the Confederates to the Rapidan. General McClellan now proposed to move the bulk of his army to Fortress Monroe, and to advance from that point upon Richmond by way of the peninsula between the York and James Rivers. About seventy-five thousand men were left on the Potomac to cover Washington, and the remainder, about one hundred and twenty thousand in number, were transported by water to Fortress Monroe. This movement was accomplished by the second of April.

Johnston's Successful Retreat.

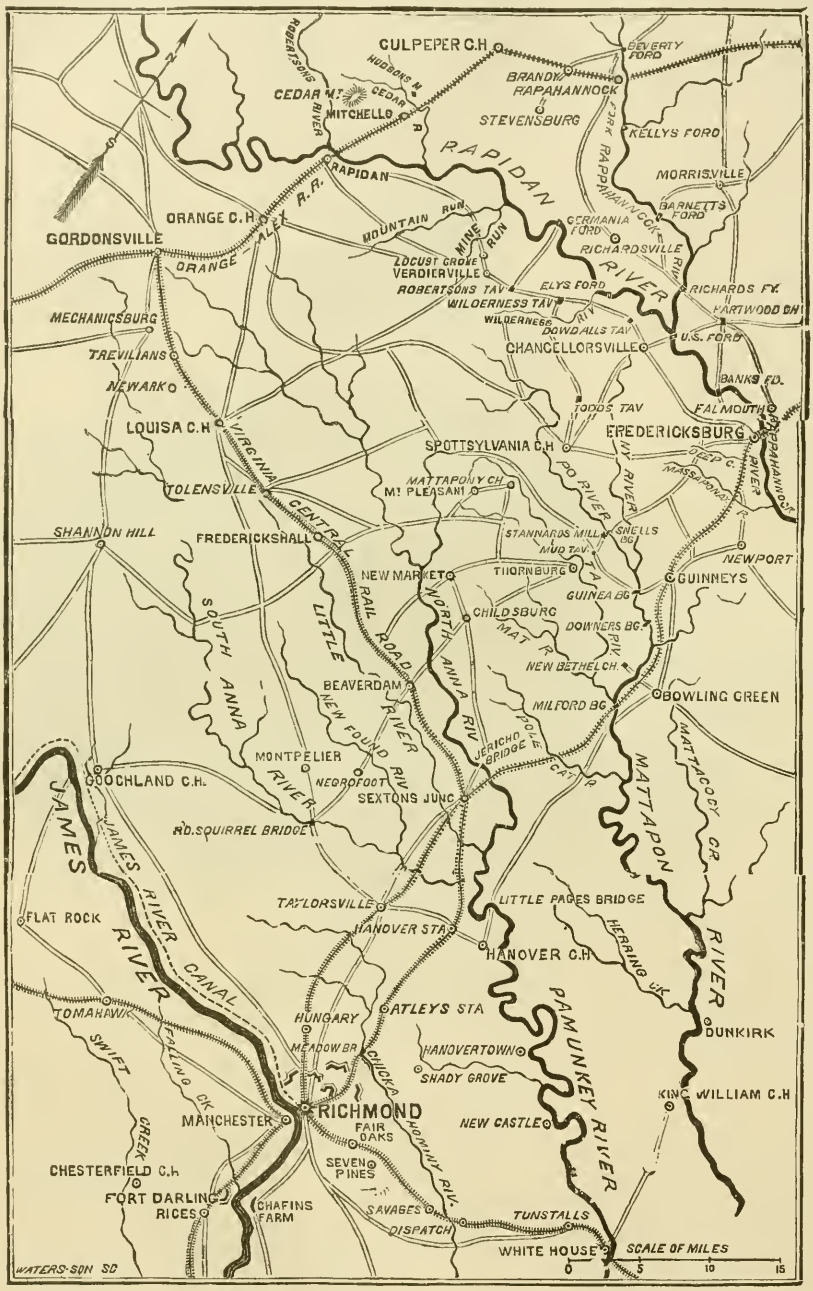
On the fourth the Army of the Potomac began its march towards the lines of Yorktown, which were held by about eleven thousand five hundred men, under General Magruder. The Confederate commander had passed the first year of the war in fortifying his position, and had constructed a series of powerful works which enabled him, with his small force, to hold McClellan's whole army in check. On the fifth and sixth of April McClellan made repeated attempts to force the southern lines, and failing in these decided to lay siege to them. The time thus gained by Magruder enabled General Johnston to move his army from the Rapidan to the peninsula. It was in position on the lines of Yorktown by the seventeenth of April, making the force opposed to McClellan about fifty-eight thousand strong.

The Confederates did not expect to hold their position on the peninsula, but from the first intended to move back nearer to Richmond, and occupy the line of the Chickahominy. When their preparations were completed they fell back from the lines of Yorktown, on the night of the third of May, just as McClellan was about to begin his bombardment of their position.

VIEW OF THE CHICKAHOMINY NEAR MECHANICSVILLE.

The Federal army discovered the retreat on the morning of the fourth of May, and moved forward promptly in the hope of intercepting the Southern army. On the morning of the fifth the advanced forces attacked the

rear-guard of Johnston's army at Williamsburg. The Confederate commander held his ground until his trains had gotten off in safety, and then resumed his retreat, and reached the Chickahominy about the tenth of May without further molestation from the Union forces. General McClellan, following leisurely, took position on the left bank of the Chickahominy with the river between the two armies.



MAP OF NORTHERN VIRGINIA.

In accordance with General McClellan's urgent request, President Lincoln decided to order the force left to cover Washington to join the Army of the Potomac. before Richmond, by the way of Fredericksburg. With his force thus augmented the Union commander had no doubt of his ability to capture Richmond. Alive to this danger General Johnston directed General Jackson, who had been left to hold the valley of Virginia, to manœuvre his army so as to threaten Washington, and compel the Federal government to retain the force intended for McClellan for the defence of Washington. While awaiting the arrival of this force McClellan threw his left wing across the Chickahominy, and lodged it in a position nearer to Richmond. The Federal lines now extended

from Bottom's Bridge, on the Chickahominy, to Mechanicsville, north of that stream.

The evacuation of the peninsula compelled the Confederates to abandon Norfolk also. They withdrew their troops from that city on the ninth of May, and sent them to reinforce General Johnston. On the tenth Norfolk and Portsmouth were occupied by the Federal forces under General Wool. Before leaving the Confederates had set fire to the navy yard, which was destroyed. The ironclad steamer "Virginia" was taken into the James River, and on the eleventh was abandoned and blown up. The loss of this steamer, which could have held the James against the whole Union fleet, left the river open to within eight miles of Richmond.

The gunboats, including the "Monitor," were sent up to try to force their way to Richmond, but on the fifteenth of May were driven back by a battery of heavy guns located on the heights at Drewry's bluff, eight miles below Richmond. They were badly injured by the plunging fire of the Confederates. The river was securely obstructed at this point to prevent a passage of the batteries by the Federal fleet.

Having been heavily reinforced, General Johnston determined to attack McClellan's exposed left wing, and on the thirty-first of May fell upon it at Seven Pines, and drove it back with heavy loss. General Johnston was severely wounded towards the close of the day, and was unable to carry out the plan upon which he had begun the battle. The next day there was heavy skirmishing until about ten o'clock in the morning, but nothing of a more serious nature was

LIEUTENANT-GENERAL T. J. JACKSON.

attempted by either side. General McClellan, warned by the narrow escape of his left wing, now proceeded to fortify his position on the south bank of the Chickahominy.

While these events were in progress on the Chickahominy, General Jackson carried out with brilliant success the movements assigned him in the valley of Virginia. His task required the exercise of the greatest skill and determination. He was to neutralize the forces of Fremont, Banks and McDowell, and prevent them from rendering any assistance to McClellan. Jackson's army fell back from Winchester on the eleventh of March, and retired as far as Mount Jackson. Then rapidly retracing its steps it attacked Banks' forces at Kernstown, near Winchester. Though repulsed in this engagement, it succeeded in alarming the Federal government for the safety of Washington. Banks' command was therefore retained in the valley to watch Jackson, and the force under McDowell was not allowed to go to McClellan's assistance on the peninsula, lest by so doing it should uncover Washington. After the battle of Kernstown Jackson retired up the valley, and a season of comparative quietude ensued. The Federal government even believed that his troops had been sent to Richmond.

Jackson's Brilliant Achievements.

Fremont's army was ordered to move from western Virginia into the valley; Banks was directed to march to Manassas and cover Washington; while McDowell, with forty thousand men, was ordered to move from Fredericksburg, from which he was to march across the country and unite with McClellan's left wing, which was thrown out far to the north of Richmond to meet him. These orders were in process of execution when Jackson, who had been reinforced by a division under General Ewell, destroyed the whole Federal plan of campaign.

Knowing that he could not possibly resist the combined forces of Fremont and Banks, Jackson determined to beat them in detail. Marching rapidly westward, he crossed the mountains, fell upon the advance guard of Fremont's army at McDowell, on the eighth of May, defeated it, and drove it back into western Virginia. Then retracing his steps with remarkable speed, he returned to the valley, and on the twenty-third of May attacked Banks' outlying force at Front Royal, and drove it in upon the main body at Strasburg.

Banks at once broke up his camp and fell back down the valley, pursued by Jackson, who dealt him a terrible blow at Winchester on the twenty-fifth. By extraordinary exertions Banks succeeded in escaping across the Potomac, but left about three thousand prisoners, several pieces of artillery, nine thousand stand of arms, and the greater part of his stores in the hands of the Confederates.

Richmond Saved from Capture.

This bold advance greatly alarmed the government at Washington, and the President ordered Fremont to move with speed into the valley, and directed General McDowell to suspend his movement to the assistance of McClellan, and send a force of twenty thousand men to gain Jackson's rear and prevent his return up the valley. McDowell sent the required force under General Shields, and Fremont hurried on to gain the upper valley in advance of Jackson. These movements entirely prevented McClellan from receiving the assistance of McDowell's corps, and saved Richmond from capture.

Jackson was too good a general to be caught in a trap so skillfully laid for him. He retired up the valley with the greatest speed, and having interposed his army

PORTRAITS OF PROMINENT CONFEDERATE GENERALS.

between Fremont and Shields, turned upon the former, and with a part of his force attacked him at Cross Keys on the eighth of June, and checked his advance. Then reuniting his forces he fell upon Shields at Port Republic on the ninth of June, and drove him back with heavy loss after one of the hardest fought battles of the war. Having thus put an end to the pursuit of his antagonists, Jackson withdrew to a safe position, from which he could hold them in check or go to the aid of the army defending Richmond.

The latter move being decided upon, he eluded the Federal forces in the valley, and marched rapidly to the Chickahominy. Before his absence from the valley was suspected, he had joined General Lee. His campaign in the valley is justly regarded as one of the most brilliant of the war. With less than twenty thousand men he had neutralized a force of sixty thousand Union troops, and prevented the execution of McClellan's carefully laid plans for the capture of Richmond.

General Lee Takes Command.

Upon the fall of General Johnston the command of the Confederate army before Richmond was conferred upon General Robert E. Lee, whom subsequent events proved to be the ablest of the Southern leaders. Troops were drawn from every possible point to reinforce General Lee's army, and by the middle of June his forces, including Jackson's army, amounted to ninety thousand men. The Federal army was one hundred and fifteen thousand strong. Both armies were in fine condition. General McClellan, finding it impossible to obtain the assistance of McDowell's corps, and fearing for the safety of his communications with his base of supplies, which was at West Point, at the head of the York River, prepared to move his army to the south side of the Chickahominy, and establish a new and more secure base upon the James River.

Before he could put this design in operation he was attacked by General Lee, who, on the twenty-fifth of June, fell upon the right of the Union line at Mechanicsville, and forced it back upon the centre at Cold Harbor. On the twenty-sixth the position at Cold Harbor was attacked and carried by the Confederates after a desperate struggle. With great difficulty McClellan secured his retreat to the south side of the Chickahominy, and destroyed the bridges in his rear.

Having decided to retreat to the James River rather than attempt to retain his communication with West Point, McClellan destroyed his stores, and on the twenty-eighth began his retreat from the Chickahominy by way of White Oak Swamp. As soon as his movement was discovered pursuit was made by the Confederates, who attacked his rear guard under General Sumner at Savage Station late in the afternoon of the twenty-ninth. Sumner held his ground until the darkness put an end to the action, and during the night of the twenty-ninth withdrew across White Oak Swamp, destroying all the bridges after him.

End of the "Seven Days' Battles."

On the thirtieth General Lee made a last effort to prevent McClellan from reaching the James, and towards the close of the afternoon the bloody battle of Frazier's Farm was fought. It was continued until nine o'clock. The Federal force at Frazier's Farm held its ground until the remainder of McClellan's army had safely traversed White Oak Swamp. The object of the battle having been accomplished, McClellan resumed his retreat to the James River, and took position upon Malvern Hill, within a short distance of that stream. Here he massed his

BATTLE OF ANTIETAM.

BATTLE OF GETTYSBURG

artillery, and the gunboats in the James River moved up to a point from which they could throw their shells into the Confederate lines.

On the afternoon of the first of July the Confederates made a gallant attempt to carry Malvern Hill, but were repulsed with severe loss. The next morning the Federal army withdrew to Harrison's Landing on the James River. Thus ended the "Seven Days' Battles," during which the Federal army lost about twenty thousand men in killed, wounded and prisoners, fifty-two pieces of artillery, thirty-five thousand stand of arms, and an enormous quantity of stores of all kinds. The Confederate loss was nineteen thousand five hundred and thirty-three killed, wounded and missing.

The retreat of McClellan's army threw the North into the deepest despondency. On the second of July President Lincoln issued a call for three hundred thousand fresh troops. The necessities of the struggle, however, made this force insufficient, and on the fourth of August the President ordered that a draft of three hundred thousand militia should be made and placed in the service of the United States for a period of nine months unless sooner discharged. The States complied with the requisitions upon them, and in the brief period of three months the enormous mass of six hundred thousand fresh troops was raised, armed and placed in the field.

Battle of Cedar Mountain.

For the protection of Washington the Federal government now collected the commands of Banks, Fremont and McDowell in one army, and placed it under command of Major-General John Pope, whose capture of Island No. 10 and other points in the west had given him a fair reputation. He assumed his new command with a profusion of boasts, and promised to succeed where McClellan had failed. According to General Pope the capture of Richmond was the easiest undertaking in the world. His army towards the latter part of July advanced to the Rapidan.

To watch this force General Lee, late in July, sent General Jackson's corps to the Rapidan. On the ninth of August Jackson attacked the advanced corps of Pope's army at Cedar Mountain, and defeated it. This defeat suspended General Pope's forward movement. General McClellan now received orders from Washington to evacuate Harrison's Landing and to reinforce General Pope with his army. He at once put this order in execution. The withdrawal of his troops was detected by General Lee, who rapidly reinforced Jackson, and finally moved with his whole army to the Rapidan.

Daring Flank Movement.

About the same time Burnside's corps, which had been withdrawn from the southern coast, and was awaiting orders in Hampton Roads, was directed to move into the Potomac and reinforce Pope. General Pope had now under his command a force of over one hundred thousand men. The Confederate army, which was concentrated upon the Rapidan by the eighteenth of August, numbered about seventy thousand men. Its strength was greatly overestimated by General Pope, who deemed it most prudent to retire behind the Rappahannock, which he did on the eighteenth and nineteenth of August. His new position was well chosen. His right was at Rappahannock Station, and his left at Kelley's ford, some distance lower down the river.

General Lee now resolved to attack Pope before he could be joined by McClellan's troops. He divided his army into two columns, and sent Jackson's corps by a circuitous route, by way of Thoroughfare Gap, to gain the rear of the Federal army This

daring flank march was accomplished by Jackson, and on the twenty-sixth of August trains loaded with supplies. Upon learning of this movement Pope at once fell back

PORTRAITS OF PROMINENT FEDERAL GENERALS.

he captured Manassas Junction, Pope's main depot of supplies, with an enormous quantity of stores of all kinds, and several railroad from the Rappahannock, intending to crush the isolated corps of Jackson, and at the same time Lee set off rapidly by way of

Thoroughfare Gap to join his endangered lieutenant.

Pope's army had been reinforced by the corps of Porter and Heintzelman, and Reynolds' division of McClellan's army, and was at least one hundred and twenty thousand strong. He moved back rapidly to attack Jackson, and encountered Ewell's division near Manassas Junction on the twenty-seventh. Ewell held his ground, and at night rejoined Jackson, who moved swiftly from Manassas to a new position near the old Bull Run battle-field. This brought him nearer to Lee, and secured his retreat in case of a defeat. Ewell's resistance deceived General Pope, who had posted McDowell's and Porter's corps to hold the road from Thoroughfare Gap, by which Lee must advance to Jackson's assistance.

Supposing that Jackson meant to make a stand at Manassas, Pope ordered these troops to move from the positions they had taken and to advance upon Manassas Junction. Manassas was reached at noon on the twenty-eighth, and then General Pope saw for the first time how he had been deceived by Jackson, and how he had blundered in leaving the road from Thoroughfare Gap open to Lee.

His command was in a critical position, and he was so situated that he could not make the best use of the forces which were at his disposal

Repulse of the Union Forces.

He endeavored to repair his error by attacking Jackson at once. He did attack that general in his new position late in the afternoon of the twenty-eighth, but was repulsed with severe loss. On the same afternoon General Lee with Longstreet's corps forced the passage of Thoroughfare Gap, and bivouacked that night in the open country beyond it. On the morning of the twenty-ninth he pushed forward with speed, and by noon his advanced division reached Jackson's position. By four o'clock in the afternoon the Confederate army was reunited under the command of General Lee. About three o'clock in the afternoon General Pope determined to attack upon Lee's position, but was repulsed.

On the thirtieth, having reunited all the corps of his army, General Pope determined to risk the fate of the campaign upon a decisive engagement. The Confederates held a large part of the old battlefield of Bull Run, and the conflict which ensued is usually

MAJOR-GENERAL PHILIP KEARNEY.

known as the second battle of Bull Run. It resulted in the defeat of General Pope, who was driven back to the heights of Centreville with heavy loss. On the thirty-first Jackson attacked the Federal rear-guard at Chantilly. A spirited encounter took place, and the Federal troops were slowly forced back, losing General Phil Kearney, one of the most accomplished officers in the service. General Pope now withdrew his army within the lines of Washington.

He had lost since the opening of the campaign over thirty thousand men, including eight generals killed, thirty pieces of artillery, over twenty thousand stand of

arms, and an enormous quantity of stores. The Confederate loss was nine thousand one hundred and twelve, including five generals.

The defeat of the Union army and the presence of the Confederates on the Potomac placed the city of Washington in great danger. The government acted with vigor and decision in this emergency. The losses of Pope's army were made up by reinforcements. General Pope was relieved of command, and General McClellan was restored to the command of the army of the Potomac. He set to work with energy to reorganize the broken masses of Pope's army into an effective force.

McClellan at South Mountain.

General Lee now crossed the Potomac and invaded Maryland, hoping to be able not only to remove the war from the soil of Virginia, but also to obtain large reinforcements from the southern sympathizers in Maryland. In this he was disappointed, as scarcely any one joined him. On the fifth of September he crossed the Potomac, and on the sixth occupied Frederick City. Harper's Ferry was held by a force of eleven thousand men under Colonel Miles, and it was necessary to reduce this post in order to preserve the communications of the Confederate army with its own country. General Jackson was despatched with his corps to capture Harper's Ferry. He promptly carried the heights overlooking the town, and on the fifteenth of September the town and garrison surrendered to him after a feeble resistance.

General Lee in the meantime had taken position at South Mountain to await the issue of Jackson's attack upon Harper's Ferry. McClellan, advancing slowly from Washington, reached Frederick on the twelfth of September. There he found a copy of General Lee's confidential order to his corps commanders, which had been lost by some one. This document gave the Confederate plan of operations, and enabled McClellan to act with certainty in directing his own movements. Hastening forward he attacked General Lee at South Mountain on the fourteenth of September, and after a stubborn fight Lee fell back behind Antietam Creek, and on the morning of the seventeenth was joined there by the troops of Jackson, who had made a forced march from Harper's Ferry.

The Confederate army numbered about forty thousand men, having been terribly reduced by the straggling of the men on the march through Virginia. The Federal army numbered over eighty thousand men, and was eager for a contest. The prolonged resistance of Harper's Ferry, and the losses of his army by straggling, had defeated Lee's plan of campaign. He was now compelled to retire across the Potomac, and he halted on the Antietam only to secure the reunion of Jackson's corps with his army and a safe passage of the Potomac.

Battle of Antietam.

On the morning of the seventeenth of September General McClellan attacked the Confederate army in force, but it held its ground during the day, both armies at nightfall occupying about the same positions they had held in the morning. The Federal loss was twelve thousand four hundred and sixty-nine, including thirteen generals wounded, one mortally; that of the Confederates eight thousand seven hundred and ninety, including three generals killed, five wounded. The eighteenth passed quietly away, and that night Lee silently withdrew from his position and retreated across the Potomac. He retired up the valley to Winchester. The Federal army moved to the vicinity of Harper's Ferry, and did not cross the Potomac until the second of November.

M'CLELLAN AT THE BATTLE OF ANTIETAM.

Upon entering Virginia General McClellan moved towards the Rappahannock, with the design of interposing his army between Lee and Richmond. General Lee at once left the valley where he had been detained by the necessity of watching McClellan, and by a rapid march to Warrenton, placed his army between Richmond and McClellan. The Federal army continuing to advance, he fell back to Culpepper Court-house, and McClellan moved forward to the vicinity of Warrenton. On the seventh of November, when about to resume his advance, McClellan, whose conduct of the campaign had not pleased either President Lincoln or the people of the North, was removed from the command of the Army of the Potomac, which was conferred upon General Ambrose E. Burnside.

VIEW OF ANTIETAM BATTLE GROUND.

Burnside at once advanced to the banks of the Rappahannock opposite Fredericksburg, intending to pass the river at that place and move upon Richmond. Upon his arrival at Falmouth, opposite Fredericksburg, he found the Confederate army strongly posted on the heights in the rear of the latter place, prepared to dispute his advance.

He crossed the Rappahannock on the eleventh and twelfth of December, and on the thirteenth attacked the Confederate position, which had been strongly entrenched. He was repulsed with a loss of eleven thousand men, and compelled to retreat across the Rappahannock. This terrible reverse greatly disheartened the Army of the Potomac, and destroyed its faith in its commander; and so the year closed gloomily for the Union cause in the east.

In the fall of 1862 President Lincoln took the bold step of issuing a proclamation announcing that if the seceded States did not return to their allegiance to the Union, he would declare all the negro slaves within their limits free from the first of January next. This proclamation was issued on the twenty-second of September, immediately after the battle of Antietam. The army and navy of the United States were to enforce the terms of this proclamation, and from the new year there was to be no more slavery within the limits of the Union. The proclamation was avowedly a war measure, but it was sustained by Congress by appropriate legislation during the ensuing winter.

CHAPTER XLII

The Administration of Abraham Lincoln—The Civil War—Concluded.

The Emancipation Proclamation—Battle of Chancellorsville—Death of Stonewall Jackson—Invasion of the North by Lee's Army—Battle of Gettysburg—Retreat of Lee into Virginia—Grant's Army Crosses the Mississippi—Battle of Champion Hills—Investment of Vicksburg—Surrender of Vicksburg and Port Hudson—Battle of Chickamauga—Rosecrans Shut Up in Chattanooga—Grant in Command of the Western Armies—Battles of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge—Defeat of Bragg's Army—The Campaign in East Tennessee—Retreat of Longstreet—Capture of Galveston—Attack on Charleston—Capture of Fort Wagner—Charleston Bombarded—State of Affairs in the Spring of 1864—The Red River Expedition—Grant Made Lieutenant-General—Advance of the Army of the Potomac—Battle of the Wilderness, Spottsylvania and Cold Harbor—Sheridan's Raid—Death of General J. E. B. Stuart—Battle of New Market—Early Sent into the Valley of Virginia—Butler's Army at Bermuda Hundreds—Grant Crosses the James River—The Siege of Petersburg Begun—Early's Raid upon Washington—Sheridan Defeats Early at Winchester and Fisher'sHill—Battle of Cedar Creek—The Final Defeat of Early's Army—Sherman's Advance to Atlanta—Johnston Removed—Defeat of Hood Before Atlanta—Evacuation of Atlanta—Hood's Invasion of Tennessee—Battle of Franklin—Siege of Nashville—Hood Defeated at Nashville—His Retreat—Sherman's "March to Sea"—Capture of Savannah—Battle of Mobile Bay—Attack on Fort Fisher—The Confederate Cruisers—Sinking of the "Alabama" by the "Kearsarge"—Re-election of President Lincoln—Admission of Nevada into the Union—The Hampton Roads Peace Conference—Capture of Fort Fisher—Occupation of Wilmington—Sherman Advances through South Carolina—Evacuation of Charleston—Battles of Averasboro' and Bentonville—Sherman at Goldsboro'—Critical Situation of Lee's Army—Attack on Fort Steadman—Sheridan Joins Grant—Advance of Grant's Army—Battle of Five Forks—Attack on Petersburg—Evacuation of Richmond and Petersburg—Retreat of Lee's Army—Richmond Occupied—Surrender of General Lee's Army—Rejoicings in the North—Assassination of President Lincoln—Death of Booth—Execution of the Conspirators—Johnston Surrenders—Surrender of the Other Confederate Forces—Capture of Jefferson Davis—Close of the War.

IN accordance with his proclamation of September 22, 1862, President Lincoln, on the first of January, 1863, issued his proclamation of emancipation, in which he declared all the slaves within the limits of the Confederate States free from that day.

The plan of campaign adopted by the Federal government for 1863 was very much like that of the previous year. In the east the Army of the Potomac was to push forward towards Richmond; and in the west the army of General Grant was to capture Vicksburg, and thus open the Mississippi, after which it was to march eastward, unite with the forces of General Rosecrans and occupy East Tennessee, thus cutting the communication between the Border and the Gulf States. In addition to these operations an expedition against Charleston, South Carolina, was to be attempted.

The Army of the Potomac was greatly disheartened by its defeat at Fredericksburg, and had lost confidence in General Burnside. That commander, at his own request, was removed from the command, and was succeeded by General Joseph Hooker on the twenty-fifth of January. Hooker at once began the reorganization of his army, and soon brought it to a splendid state of efficiency. By the opening of the spring it numbered one hundred and twenty thousand men and four hundred pieces of artillery. General Lee had remained in his position back of Fredericksburg all winter, and his

720 PORTRAITS OF SOME OF THE GENERALS OF THE ARMY OF THE POTOMAC.

BATTLE OF LOOKOUT MOUNTAIN

BATTLE OF CHICAMAUGA — Lt VAN PELT DEFENDING HIS BATTERY.

army had been weakened by the withdrawal of General Longstreet's corps, twenty-four thousand strong, by the Confederate government, leaving him about fifty thousand men.

General Hooker, upon learning of Lee's weakened condition, determined to attack him. He divided his army into two columns, One of these, consisting of the Second, Fifth, Eleventh, and Twelfth army corps, under his own command, was to cross the Rappahannock above Fredericksburg and turn the Confederate position. The other column, consisting of the First, Third, and Sixth corps, under General Sedgwick, was to cross the river at Fredericksburg and attack the heights. Between these forces it was believed that Lee's army would be crushed.

On the twenty-seventh of April Hooker moved off with the first column, crossed the river on the twenty-eighth and twenty-ninth at Kelley's Ford, and on the thirtieth took position at Chancellorsville, on the left and in the rear of Lee's fortified line. On the twenty-ninth General Sedgwick crossed his column about three miles below Fredericksburg, and during that day and the thirtieth made demonstrations as though he intended to assault the southern position in the rear of the town.

General Lee's situation was now critical, and demanded the most extraordinary exertions of him. Leaving a small force to hold the heights in the rear of Fredericksburg, he moved with his main body towards Chancellorsville, where Hooker had intrenched himself with about eighty thousand men. His only hope of safety lay in defeating this force before Sedgwick's column could arrive to its assistance. On the second of May he sent Jackson's corps to turn the Federal right, and with the remainder of his force, deceived Hooker into the belief that he meant to storm the intrenched position of the Federal army. Jackson performed his flank march with success, and on the afternoon of the second of May made a fierce attack upon the Federal right, and drove it in upon its centre. In this attack he received a mortal wound, of which he died on the tenth of May.

GENERAL JOHN SEDGWICK.

The next day, the third, having reunited Jackson's corps with his main force, Lee attacked Hooker at Chancellorsville, and drove him back to the junction of the Rappahannock and Rapidan rivers. He was preparing to storm this new position when he learned that Sedgwick had defeated the force left to hold the heights of Fredericksburg on the third of May, and was marching against him. His danger was now greater

than ever. Leaving a part of his army to hold Hooker in check, he marched rapidly to meet Sedgwick. He encountered him at Salem Heights on the fourth of May, and compelled him to recross the Rappahannock

GENERAL GEORGE G. MEADE.

at Banks' Ford. Then moving back towards Hooker's position Lee prepared to storm it. General Hooker, however, disheartened by Sedgwick's defeat, withdrew his army across the Rappahannock on the night of the fifth, and returned to his old position on the north side of that stream, having lost twelve thousand men and fourteen pieces of artillery in the battle of Chancellorsville.

The Confederate loss was also heavy. Out of an army of about fifty thousand men, ten thousand two hundred and eighty-one were killed, wounded and captured. The victory was dearly bought by the Confederates by the death of Stonewall Jackson, who was worth fully fifty thousand men to their cause. At the moment of his success against the Federal right, he was shot down by his own men, who mistook his escort for a party of Federal cavalry.

The success of the Confederates in Virginia was more than counterbalanced by their reverses in the West and Southwest. The Southern government, anxious to change the course of the war by a bold stroke, decided to follow up the victory at Chancellorsville by an invasion of the North by Lee's army. This army was reinforced heavily and by the last of May numbered seventy thousand infantry and artillery, and ten thousand cavalry. General Hooker's army, on the other hand, had been reduced by desertions and expirations of enlistments, to about eighty thousand men, making the two forces about equal.

On the third of June, 1863, Lee began his forward movement, and marching through the valley of Virginia, captured Winchester, which was held by General Milroy's command, on the fourteenth, taking four thousand prisoners and twenty-nine pieces of cannon. On the twenty-second of June the Potomac was crossed at Williamsport, and the Confederate army moved towards Hagerstown, Maryland. General Hooker had followed Lee from the Rappahannock, and had manœuvred his army so as to interpose it between the Confederates and Washington.

Invasion of the North.

On the twenty-third the advanced corps of Lee's army, under General Ewell, occupied Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, and on the twenty-fifth and twenty-sixth, General Hooker crossed the Potomac at Edward's Ferry, and marched to Frederick, Maryland. He was anxious to withdraw the garrison of Harper's Ferry, which had retired from that place to the Maryland heights, opposite the town, but the war department refused to allow him to do so. Hooker thereupon relinquished the command of the army, and was succeeded by Major-General George G. Meade, the senior corps commander, and a soldier of genuine ability. General Lee now moved his army east of the mountains, and directed his advance towards Gettysburg. In ignorance of his adversary's design, General Meade hastened forward to occupy the same point.

The invasion of Pennsylvania by the Confederate army aroused the most intense excitement in the North. President Lincoln called out one hundred thousand militia to serve for six months, unless sooner discharged, and as far north as New York, preparations were made to receive the Confederate army with a stubborn resistance should it succeed in penetrating so far. Every effort was made to raise troops and forward them to General Meade in time to be of service to him.

On the morning of the first of July, the left wing of the army of the Potomac, under General Reynolds, and the advanced corps of Lee's army, under Generals A. P. Hill and Ewell, encountered each other at Gettysburg. General Reynolds was forced back and killed. General Hancock was at once sent by General Meade to assume the command of the left wing, and upon his arrival he at once recognized the importance of the position at Gettysburg, and occupied it. He was promptly reinforced by General Meade, and by the afternoon of the second of July, the army of the Potomac was securely posted on the heights known as Cemetery Ridge. The Confederate army took position on the opposite hills known as Seminary Ridge. Between the two armies lay the battle-field on which the engagement of the first of July was fought. Heavy skirmishing prevailed throughout the day on the second, the advantage being with the Confederates.

Great Battle at Gettysburg.

On the third of July General Lee made a general attack upon the Federal position on Cemetery Ridge, which, very strong by nature, had been rendered impregnable by entrenchments. His attack was made with determination, and was a splendid exhibition of American courage, which won for his troops the generous admiration of their adversaries; but it was unsuccessful. The grand charge of the Confederates was made in the afternoon, and was repulsed with terrible slaughter. Still Lee's position was so strong, and the morale of his army so unimpaired, that General Meade deemed it best to remain satisfied with his victory, and not to risk its fruits by an attack upon the Confederate lines.

The stirring events on the third and last day of the battle are vividly described by John Laird Wilson, the eminent war correspondent and historian. Mr. Wilson's account is as follows:

"As early as three o'clock on the morning of the third, there were signs of activity in the enemy's front. It was evident that an attack was intended; and Geary, having been informed by General Kane, who commanded his first brigade, of what was going on, resolved to seize whatever advantage might be gained by opening the battle himself. His men were aroused; and at twenty minutes before four o'clock, he gave the signal for attack by discharging his pistol. The battle at once became general. A fearful struggle ensued. A heavy artillery fire was opened at once on the enemy's position. But, as the ground was rugged and broken and also covered with trees, and as every advantage was taken of places of shelter and concealment, the fight partook very much of the character of sharpshooting on a grand scale.

GENERAL PICKETT'S FAMOUS CHARGE AT GETTYSBURG

"As the battle progressed the contestants got intermingled, and it became more and more difficult to use the artillery. The Confederates not only held their position, but charged again and again, in heavy masses, on the National lines, only, however, to be

repulsed with tremendous loss. The slaughter was terrible. The sun arose; the day advanced; the air became clouded with dust and smoke; the heat became almost intolerable; but still the battle raged. At last there is a lull in the long-continued tempest. Then, suddenly, there is a fierce yell from thousands of throats; and Ewell's men, having gathered up their strength for a final effort, are seen rushing forward with tremendous fury. They are allowed to come within easy musket range, when the men in blue, springing to their feet, pour in upon them a deliberate volley. It was the last charge on this part of the line. Discomfited and discouraged, torn and bleeding, their dead and wounded companions piled in heaps on the ground where they fell, the survivors drew back through the woods towards Rock Creek, fighting as they retired, with a courage which commanded the admiration of their foes.

The Victors Exultant.

"Shouts of victory now filled the air. 'Men,' says one who was present and shared in the triumph, 'cheered themselves hoarse, laughed, rolled themselves on the ground, and threw their caps high in the air, while others shook hands with comrades, and thanked God that the Star Corps had again triumphed.' Geary, not disposed to allow the Confederates to re-form, as soon as this charge was repelled, made a vigorous counter-charge; and the enemy, yielding easily, the breastworks were reoccupied, and the right flank secured. Thus ended the fighting on the right.

"Ewell had been completely baffled in his plan. He had flung away his opportunity the night before; and to reclaim it he had now done his best, and failed. He could not find fault with his men; for never, even under Jackson, had they fought more bravely. 'It cannot be denied,' says General Kane, who, with his glorious first brigade, of Geary's division, bore the burden of that morning's fight, 'that they fought most courageously.' But they were pitted against men of equal bravery, of equal determination with themselves—men who were now on their own soil, and fighting for the sanctity of their own homes.

"Never, perhaps, before, since the war commenced, had the fighting been more determined and severe than it was during those long, dreary morning hours. The ground, after the battle, red with gore, and thickly covered with the bodies of the slain, gave evidence of the terrible character of the struggle. The grey and the blue uniforms were sometimes found in one common heap. Some poor fellows, after hours of suffering, and having almost bled to death, were found writhing in mortal agony. The wood in which the battle raged was 'torn and rent with shells and solid shot, and pierced with innumerable minie balls.' In the following summer, the trees were leafless, as if the mute but stalwart giants of the forest had yielded up their lives with those who fell beneath their shade.

An Ominous Silence.

"It was now shortly after ten o'clock. The last sounds of battle had died away. There was silence over the whole battle field. It was evident, however, that preparations were being made inside the Confederate lines for another gigantic and possibly crowning effort. The morning sky had been obscured by broken clouds. As the forenoon advanced, the clouds dispersed; and a hot July sun poured down his rays with a tropical intensity. Pickett's division, of Longstreet's corps, which had not come up on the previous day, had now arrived on the field Stuart, also, after his long detour, had joine

Lee with his cavalry. It soon began to be manifest that the point of attack was to be the National left centre—the depressed part of the ridge immediately north of Little Round Top. By noon, the guns were got into position on the ridge occupied by Longstreet and Hill. Meade had an abundant supply of the same instruments of war; but owing to the peculiarity of the ground, he could only, out of the three hundred guns, make use of eighty, against those of the enemy.

Loud Thunder of Guns.

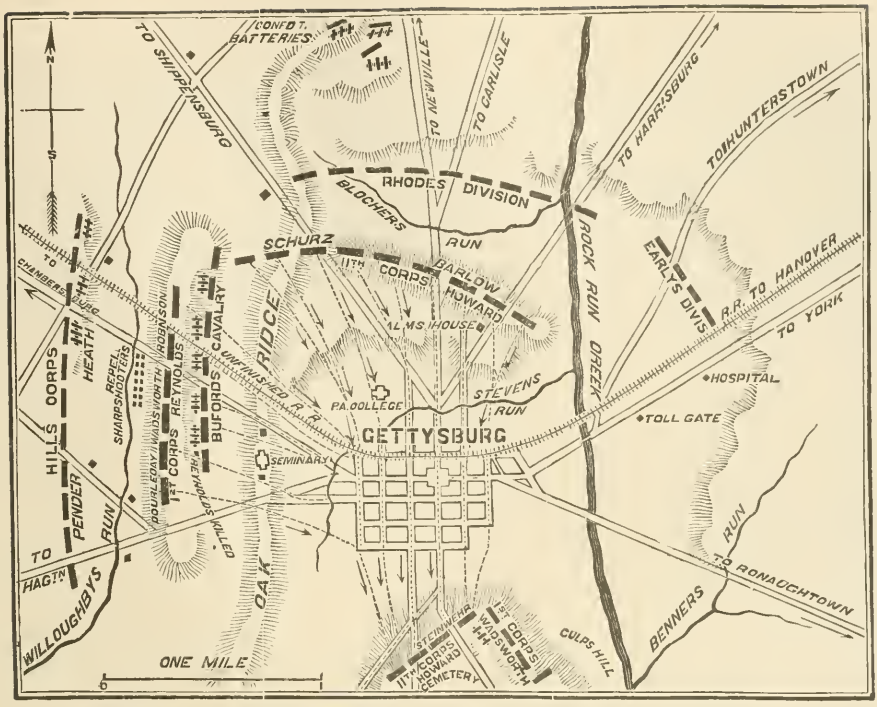
"About one o'clock, the report of a Whitworth gun was heard. It was the signal for attack. Seminary Hill seemed as if swept with a tongue of flame. Then came the loud, thundering roar of artillery; and one hundred and forty five guns, from their angry mouths, poured death and destruction on the National lines. The National commanders ordered their men to lie flat on the earth, and to take every advantage of objects of protection. All this was done; but, notwithstanding every precaution, the destruction of life and property was terrible. Solid shot, chain-shot, shrapnel, shells, fell with deadly effect inside the National lines. Men and horses were dreadfully cut up; caissons filled with ammunition were exploded; and gun-carriages and other pieces of war material were shattered to pieces. The shot and shell and canister fell thick and fast in and around General Meade's headquarters, killing men and horses, ripping up the roof and knocking away the pillars of the cottage.

"General Hunt, Meade's chief of artillery, was in no haste to reply. Waiting until the first hostile outbreak spent itself, he then ordered the batteries to open fire. Instantly, the whole ridge, from Cemetery Hill to the Round Tops, seemed ablaze. The din was terrific, the thunder of artillery rivalling, in fierce grandeur, the most magnificent displays of nature. For two hours this artillery duel lasted; and, during that time, war was exhibited in its sublimer and more imposing aspects.

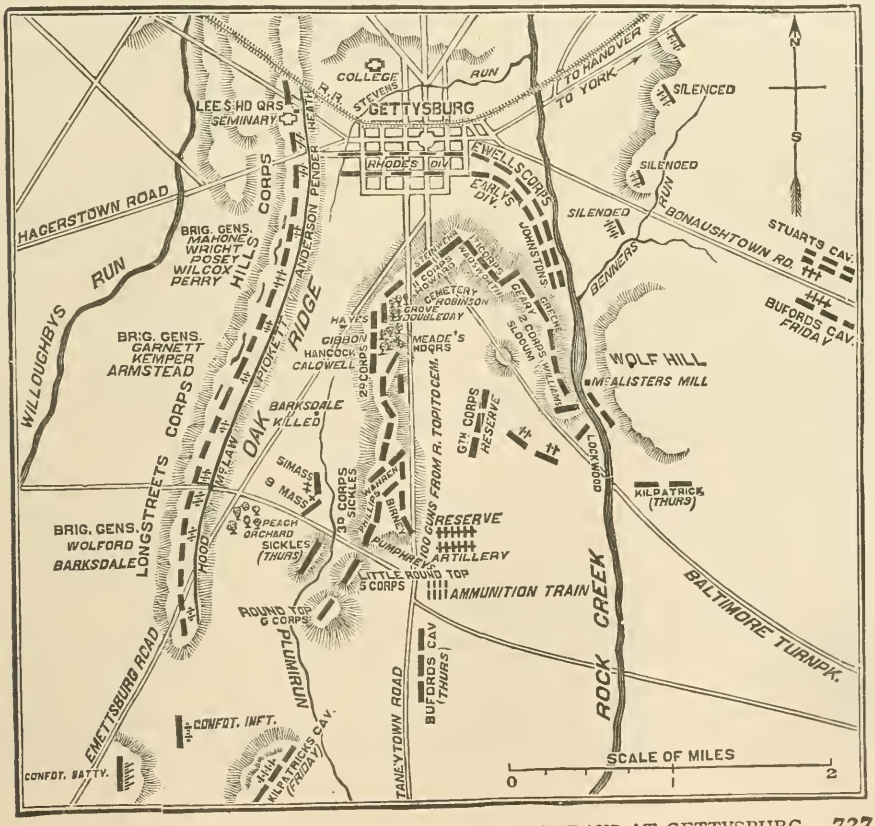
"At the expiration of two hours, there was a lull in the cannonade. Hunt, dreading the possible exhaustion of his ammunitions and not willing to bring up loads of it from the rear, lest it should be exploded, had ordered a gradual slackening of the fire. The Confederates were deceived. It was Lee's belief that he had silenced all the enemy's guns, except a few which still kept firing from a clump of woods. Now came the more serious business of war. The fire of the Confederate guns also slackened; and the columns of attack were seen forming on the edge of the woods which crown the summit of Seminary Ridge. It was just three o'clock. When formed, the front was about a mile in extent; and, as it emerged from the woods, and began to move steadily and firmly down the slope of Seminary Ridge, a thrill of admiration passed through the National ranks. It was a splendid sight, and well fitted to call forth admiration, even in the breast of an enemy. The fresh division of Pickett, composed mostly of veteran Virginians, was singled out and appointed to lead the van. Pickett's men were formed and arranged in double line of battle. The attacking force numbered about eighteen thousand men.

Ammunition Exhausted.

"The distance between the two lines of battle was about a mile. For the attacking party there was a hill to descend and a hill to climb, and a valley between. It was matter of observation that, as the columns advanced, the Confederate guns were silent. 'Why?' was the question put by the men who were rushing into the jaws of death. 'Why?'



POSITIONS DURING THE FIRST DAY'S FIGHT AT GETTYSBURG.



POSITIONS DURING THE SECOND AND THIRD DAYS AT GETTYSBURG. 727

said the men on the heights behind. 'Why?' said the Nationals on the heights in front. The reason was not known till afterwards. It was not then known to Lee himself. His ammunition was already exhausted. The silence of the guns in their rear did not affect the firm and steady step of the advancing columns. It did not encourage the Nationals to slacken their artillery fire. On came Longstreet's men, in face of the withering tempest of bullet and canister and shell which, at each successive step, decimated their front. On, on they came; and it was already a question in the National ranks whether their own thin line of defense could resist the fierce onset of those firm and compact battalions who seemed to fear no fire, to dread no foe.

The Green Mountain Troops.

"The Nationals, however, were not ill prepared for the attack. Doubleday was on the left, with Stannard's brigade of Vermont troops well advanced in a little grove on his own right, and at an angle with the main line. Hancock was more to the right with his two divisions of Gibbon and Hays in front. From the direction in which the assaulting columns were moving, it seemed for a time as if the first heavy blow would fall upon Doubleday. Such, however, was the severity of the artillery fire from Little Round Top that they were forced to bend more to their own left. Still they moved on, their line of march now bringing them more directly in front of Hancock's position.

"Now came the opportunity for Stannard's brave Vermonters. They were in no haste to waste their ammunition. The Confederate columns were allowed to come so well forward that their right flank was fully exposed. Then, at the signal given, the Vermont men pour forth a well-directed and most destructive fire. Volley succeeds volley in rapid succession; and the now trembling lines, already torn and tattered, are under the oblique fire of eight batteries in charge of Major McGilvray. Not a few of Pickett's men, unable to endure this terrific fire, were compelled to surrender. The main body, however, presses on, and, inclining still more to his own left, Pickett is moving straight on the divisions of Gibbon and Hays. 'Hold your fire, boys! they are not near enough yet,' was Gibbon's injunction as he moved calmly and composedly along the ranks. The rifled guns of the National artillery, having fired away all their canister, were now withdrawn to await the issue of the struggle between the opposing infantry. The hostile lines are now within two and three hundred yards of the National front. Gibbon and Hays simultaneously open upon the advancing columns a most destructive fire. The response is swift and well directed, the Confederates using their muskets for the first time since they began to face this terrific storm of artillery and musketry. All at once the battle becomes general.

Terror and Confusion.

"The swing made by the advancing columns to their own left, after the terrific blow received by them from Stannard, had the effect of flinging Pettigrew, who commanded Heth's division, of Hill's corps, well towards Hays' right. Pettigrew's men were, for the most part, North Carolina troops, and were comparatively raw and unused to battle. They had been deceived into the belief that they would meet only the Pennsylvania militia. They were quickly undeceived. Hays' men were admirably posted. His right was well advanced; and the nature of the ground was such as to enable him to open a simultaneous fire on Pettigrew's troops, not only with his right and front, but also with several lines in his rear. Woodruff's battery

was also in position; and the destructive effects of a very tempest of bullets were to be aggravated by showers of grape and canister.

"All at once, this tremendous fire fell upon the already torn and decimated lines on Pickett's left; and they knew they were in the presence of the Army of the Potomac. There was no more fight in them. Terror-stricken, Pettigrew's men broke in utter confusion, large numbers of them flinging down their arms, and accepting mercy at the hands of their antagonists. General Pettigrew himself was wounded; but, being able to retain command, he vainly strove to rally his men. Fifteen colors, and two thousand prisoners rewarded the skill and activity with which Hays met the threatened attack.

"While disaster was thus befalling the Confederate columns on the right and left, Pickett's brave Virginians were pressing forward vigorously towards Gibbon's front, and were about to fall with all their weight on Owen's brigade, now temporarily commanded by General Webb.

The Final Struggle.

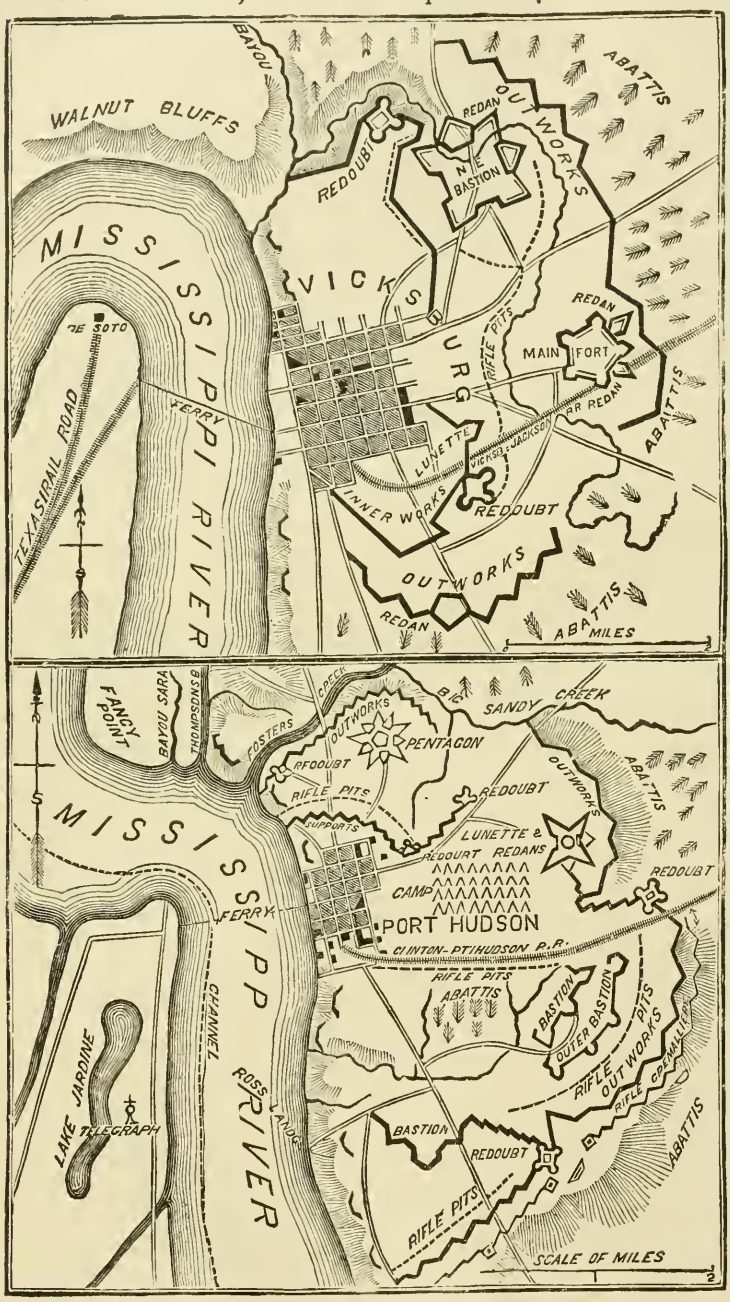
"In spite of the dreadful fire of artillery and musketry which was mowing down their ranks, Pickett's men rush bravely on. They are now close to the stone wall. The two National regiments in front, yield and fall back to the regiment in the rear. Webb and his officers are at hand; the retreating regiments are quickly rallied and re-formed; and the second line is held. But the Confederates have pushed themselves over the breastworks, and planted their battle flags on the wall. The struggle now becomes fierce and terrific in the extreme. It is a hand-to-hand conflict, man facing man, and fighting with the energy of despair. The clothes of the men are actually being burned by the powder of the exploding cartridges; and the National cannoneers, refusing to retire, are clubbed and bayoneted at their guns.

"Pickett, however, is now left entirely alone. The forces which were intended to cover his left have been defeated, captured or driven from the field. Wilcox, whose duty it was to come up and cover his right, has failed to advance. The right of his own division has been badly cut up and destroyed. Hancock, who this day revealed all the qualities of a great commander in actual conflict, now massed his men on the point which was in danger. Hall and Harrow, who had now no longer an enemy in their front, were brought over with their brigades to reinforce the centre. The Nineteenth Massachusetts, Colonel Devereux, and Mallou's Forty-Second New York, both of Gate's brigade, of Doubleday's division, of the First corps, were moved in the same direction.

"Stannard, at the same time, moved forward two of his Vermont regiments to strike the enemy on the right flank. The situation, Hancock tells us, 'had now become very peculiar. The men of all the brigades had, in some measure, lost their regimental organization, but individually, they were firm. The ambition of individual commanders to cover the point penetrated by the enemy, the smoke of the battle and the intensity of the engagement caused this confusion. The point, however, was covered. In regular formation, our line would have stood four ranks deep.' Pickett's men were now pressed on all sides

"The colors of the different National regiments were well advanced. Cheered by the words, and fired by the example of their officers, the men pressed bravely forward. It is the climax of the fight; but the end is at hand. Pickett's men had done their best and their utmost—they had fought like true heroes; but now, utterly overpowered, and reduced to the last stage of desperation, they give up the fight. Flinging their arms from

them, many of them raise their hands in token of surrender; others fall upon the ground to escape the destructive fire; the remainder seek safety in precipitate flight.



MAP SHOWING VICKSBURG AND ITS APPROACHES.

"In this last struggle, Gibbon's division took twelve colors and two thousand five hundred prisoners. So far, Hancock had captured twenty-seven battle flags and four thousand five hundred prisoners. It was a magnificent trophy. The losses on both sides were very heavy. The face of the hill and the low ground was literally covered with the dead and wounded. In no previous battle had the officers suffered so severely. On the National side large numbers had been struck down, Generals Gibbon and Hancock being among the wounded. The Confederates left on the field fourteen of their field-officers, only one of that rank escaping unhurt; and, of the three brigade commanders, of Pickett's division, Garnett was killed, Armitage fell within the National lines, fatally wounded, and Kemper was carried off the field, dangerously hurt."

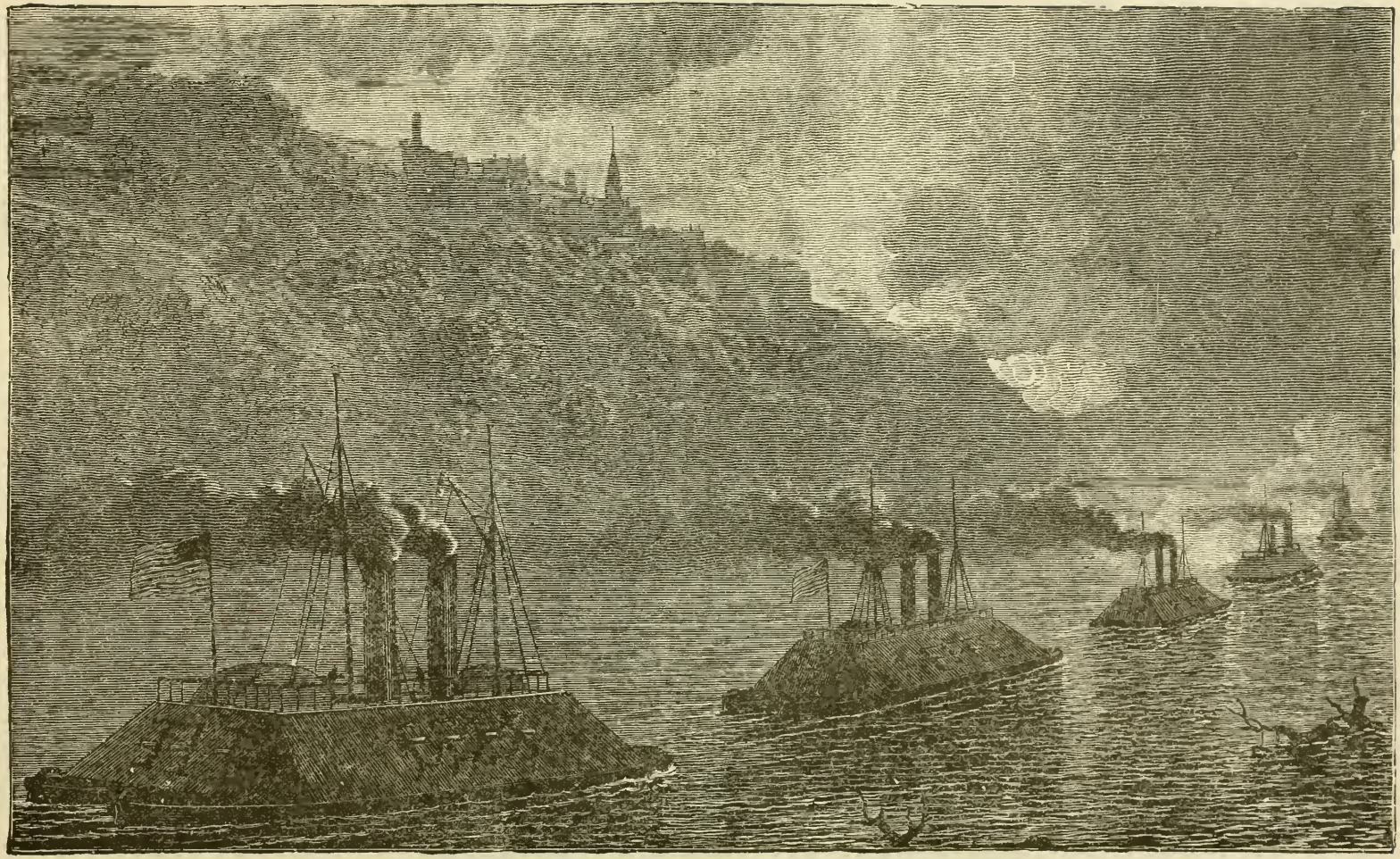
The victory was decisive. It put an end to the Confederate invasion. On the night of the fourth of July General Lee withdrew from Seminary Ridge and retreated to the Potomac, which he crossed on the thirteenth and fourteenth without serious opposition from the Federal army. On the fifteenth Lee moved back to Winchester. The Federal loss at Gettysburg was twenty-three thousand, and that of the Confederates about the same.

On the seventeenth and eighteenth of July General Meade crossed the Potomac below Harper's Ferry, and moving east of the Blue Ridge, endeavored to place his army between Lee and Richmond. The Confederate commander by rapid marches reached Culpepper Court-house in advance of him, however, and about the first of August occupied the line of the Rappahannock. The remainder of the year witnessed but one important operation by the armies in Virginia. In October General Lee made a sudden forward movement for the purpose of throwing his army between Meade and Washington, but the latter eluded him and reached Centreville in safety. Lee then withdrew to the Rapidan, and the army of the Potomac took position on the north side of that stream. Both armies passed the winter there.

VICKSBURG, MISSISSIPPI.

In the west and southwest success crowned the Federal arms. At the opening of the year the army of General Grant lay on the Mississippi above Vicksburg, assisted by the fleet of gunboats under Admiral Porter. The first three months of the year were passed by the Federal army in a series of movements along the Yazoo River, the result of which was to convince General Grant that Vicksburg could not be taken from that quarter. He therefore determined upon a new and more daring plan of operations. He decided to march his army across the Louisiana shore from Milliken's bend, above Vicksburg, to New Carthage, below that city, and to run his gunboats and transports by the batteries.

Should the boats succeed in passing, he meant to cross his command to the Mississippi shore, and attack Vicksburg from the rear. By investing the city from the land



GUNBOATS RUNNING PAST VICKSBURG AT NIGHT

side his flanks would rest upon and be covered by the Mississippi, and he could re-establish communication between his right wing and his base of supplies at Milliken's Bend. The plan was daring in the highest degree, and required the greatest skill and resolution in its execution.

In order to retain their hold upon the Mississippi the Confederates had fortified Vicksburg with great care. Port Hudson, about two hundred and forty miles lower down the river, had also been fortified, but not so strongly as Vicksburg. As long as the Confederates held these points they were able to keep a considerable extent of the river open to themselves and closed to the Union gunboats.

Preparing for the Struggle.

Thus they were enabled to cross in safety the enormous herds of beef cattle which they drew from the rich pastures of Texas for their armies east of the Mississippi. A strong force held the works at Port Hudson. Vicksburg was occupied by a large garrison, and was under the command of Lieutenant-General John C. Pemberton, who, with an army of about thirty thousand men, independent of the garrison of Vicksburg, held the country in the rear of that city. Appreciating the importance of defeating the Federal army in this quarter, the Confederate Government, in the spring of 1863, sent General Joseph E. Johnston to take command of all the forces in Mississippi. It failed to supply him with a proper force of troops, and General Pemberton treated his orders with open defiance.

Grant having completed his preparations moved his army from Milliken's Bend to a point on the Louisiana shore opposite Grand Gulf. On the night of the sixteenth of April a division of gunboats and transports ran by the Vicksburg batteries, suffering severely from the heavy fire to which they were exposed for a distance of eight miles. On the night of the twenty-second a second division passed the batteries with similar loss. Once below Vicksburg, however, the boats were safe. They then proceeded to Grant's position on the river below. On the twenty-ninth of April the gunboats attacked the batteries at Grand Gulf, but were repulsed. The troops were then marched to a point opposite Bruinsburg, Mississippi, and the gunboats and transports were run by the Grand Gulf batteries.

On the first of May the Federal army was ferried across to the Mississippi shore, and at

GENERAL JOHN C. PEMBERTON.

once began its march into the interior. Near Port Gibson a part of Pemberton's army was encountered and defeated on the same day. This success compelled the evacuation of Grand Gulf by the Confederates. Grant now boldly threw his army between Johnston's forces at Jackson and Pemberton's army, intending to hold the former in check, and drive the latter within the defences of Vicksburg. On the fourteenth of May he attacked Johnston at Jackson, the capital of Mississippi, and forced him to retreat northward towards Canton. Then turning upon Pemberton he attacked him at Champion Hills, or Baker's Creek, on the sixteenth, and

inflicted a severe defeat upon him. Pemberton withdrew towards the Big Black River, and the next day met a second defeat there. He now retreated within the defences of Vicksburg, which place was promptly invested by Grant's army.

On the nineteenth of May Grant attempted to carry the Confederate position by assault, but was repulsed with heavy loss. The assault was repeated with a like result on the twenty-second. There remained then nothing but a regular siege. This was pressed with vigor, and the city was subjected to a terrible bombardment, which caused great suffering to the people. While the siege was carried on Johnston's army was held back, and prevented from undertaking any movement for the relief of Vicksburg. At length, reduced to despair by the steady approach of the Union trenches, Pemberton surrendered the city and his army to General Grant on the fourth of July. By this surrender thirty thousand prisoners, two hundred and fifty cannon, and sixty thousand stand of arms, together with a large quantity of military stores, fell into the hands of the Union forces. It was justly esteemed the greatest victory of the war.

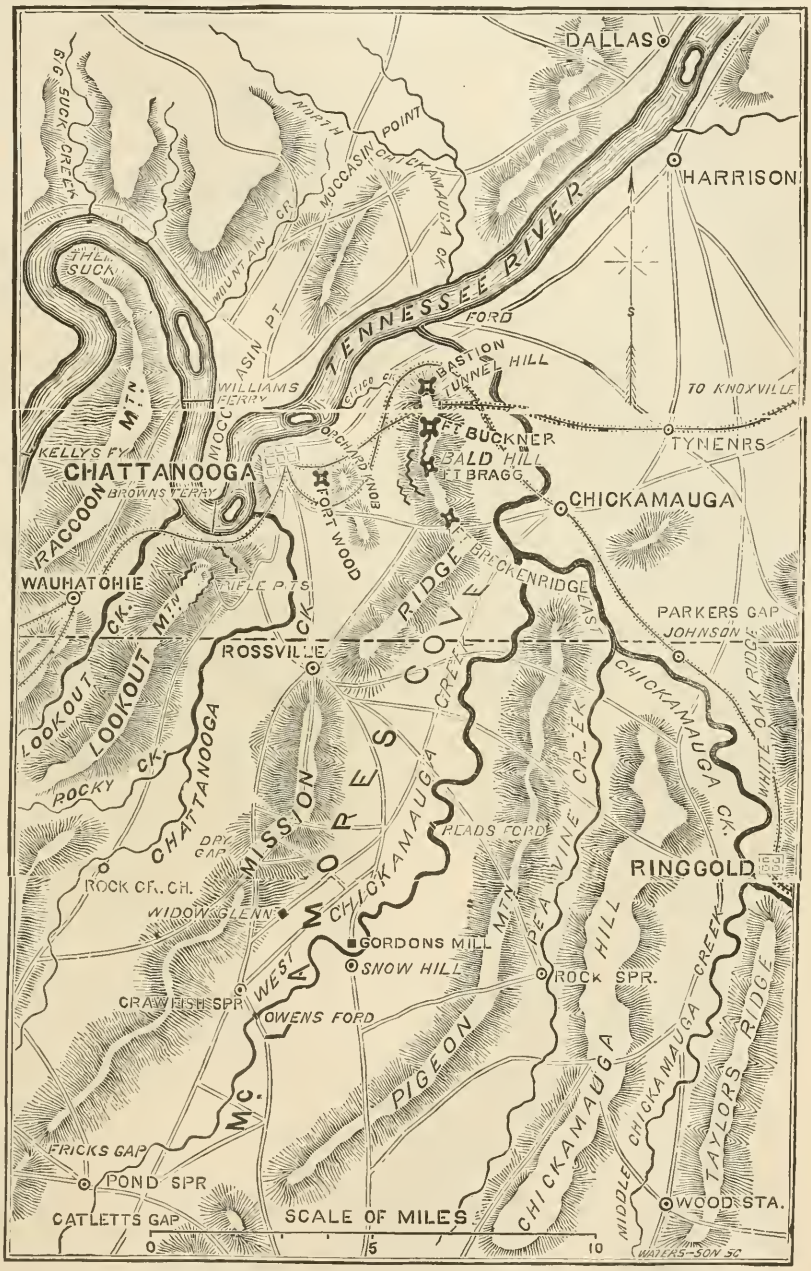
While the siege of Vicksburg was in progress, General Banks ascended the Mississippi from New Orleans and laid siege to Port Hudson. Upon hearing of the fall of Vicksburg, the Confederate commander surrendered the post and his army of sixty-two hundred and thirty-three men to General Banks, on the eighth of July.

GRANT'S HEADQUARTERS NEAR VICKSBURG

These victories wrested from the Confederates their last hold upon the Mississippi. They created the most intense rejoicing in the Northern and Western States, and a corresponding depression in the South. Being simultaneous with the defeat of the Southern army at Gettysburg, they were regarded as decisive of the war: as indeed they were. From this time we shall trace the declining fortunes of the Southern Confederacy and the gradual but steady re-establishment of the authority of the Union over the Southern States.

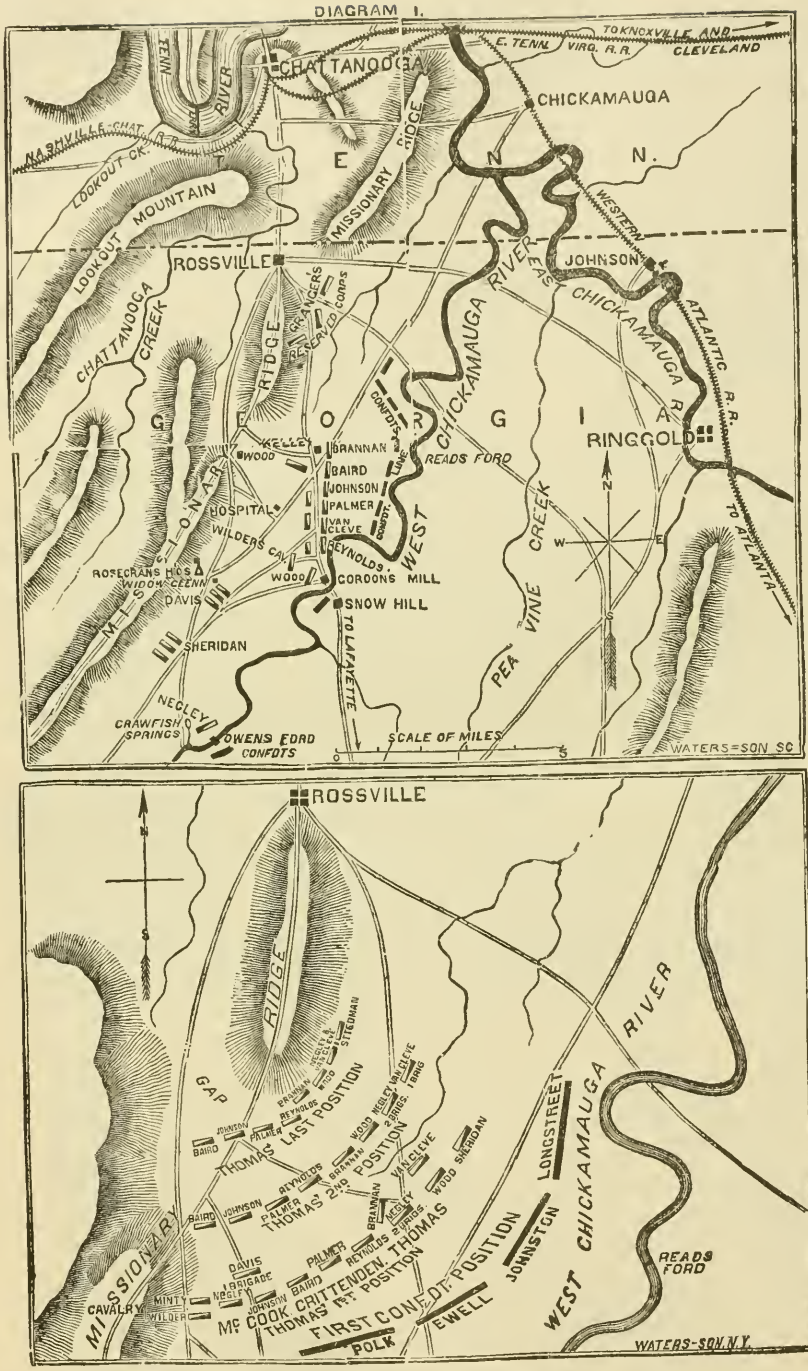
After the battle of Murfreesboro', or Stone River, the army of General Rosecrans remained quietly in winter quarters at Nashville and Murfreesboro'. Bragg's army passed the winter at Chattanooga. Towards the last of June Rosecrans moved forward from Nashville, and advancing slowly threatened Bragg's communications with Richmond. The Confederate commander had no wish to emulate the example of Pemberton

at Vicksburg, and at once evacuated Chattanooga, on the eighth of September, and retired towards Dalton, Georgia. This movement, which was interpreted by Rosecrans as a retreat, was designed to secure the union with Bragg's army of Longstreet's corps, which had been detached from Lee's army and sent to join Bragg. This junction was effected on the eighteenth, and other reinforcements arrived from Mississippi. Thus strengthened Bragg suddenly wheeled upon Rosecrans, and on the nineteenth of September attacked him at Chickamauga. The battle was severe, but indecisive, and was renewed the next day.



MAP OF THE CHICKAMAUGA AND CHATTANOOGA CAMPAIGNS.

Towards noon, on the twentieth, Rosecrans having greatly weakened the other parts of his line to help the left, which was hard pressed, Longstreet made a furious dash at the weakened part, and in an irresistible attack swept the Federal right and centre from the field. Rosecrans endeavored to stop the retreat, but was borne along in the dense crowd of fugitives. Only the left wing, under the command of General George H. Thomas, remained firm. Had that given way the rout would have been complete; but all through the long afternoon, Thomas



POSITIONS OF THE ARMIES AT THE BATTLE OF MISSIONARY RIDGE.

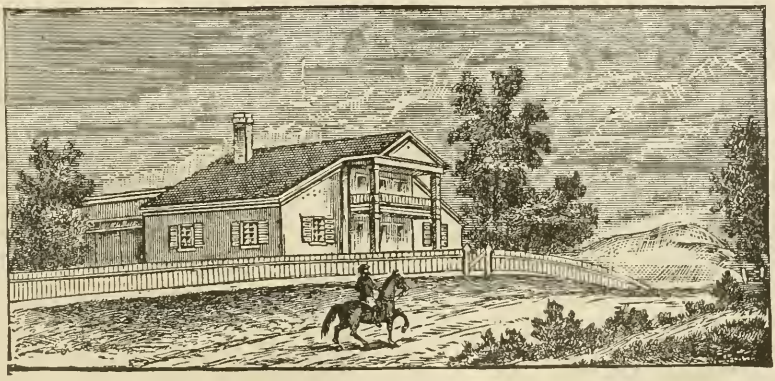
held on to his position with a grim resolution which nothing could shake. After nightfall he withdrew his corps in good order and retired upon Chattanooga. The Union loss at Chickamauga was sixteen thousand men and fifty-one guns; Bragg's about eighteen thousand men.

Bragg advanced at once upon the defeated army of Rosecrans, which had taken refuge in Chattanooga, occupied the heights commanding the city, and seized the communications of the Federal army with Nashville. Thus closely besieged, the Union forces suffered considerably from a scarcity of provisions.

General Rosecrans was now removed from the command of the Army of the Cumberland, and General Grant was appointed to the chief command of all the western armies. He at once set to work to extricate the Army of the Cumberland, to the command of which General Thomas had succeeded, from its perilous situation. Hooker was sent with twenty-three thousand men from Meade's army to his assistance, and Sherman was ordered

to march with the force which had taken Vicksburg along the line of the railway from Memphis to Chattanooga. The arrival of these reinforcements soon changed the aspect of affairs.

On the twenty-third of November the Army of the Cumberland made a vigorous sortie and drove the Confederates from the important position of Orchard Knob. On the twenty-fourth, Hooker stormed Lookout Mountain, the left of the Confederate line, and carried it after a hard fight. The investment was now thoroughly broken, and the Confederates were confined to Missionary Ridge, which had formerly constituted the right of their line. On the twenty-fifth, this position was assaulted by the whole strength of the Federal army, and was carried after a stubborn fight. Bragg, beaten at all points, with heavy loss, retreated into Georgia, where he was soon after removed from his command and immediately succeeded by General Joseph E. Johnston.



GRANT'S HEADQUARTERS NEAR CHATTANOOGA.

During the progress of this campaign General Burnside had moved from Kentucky with a force of about twenty-five thousand men, about the time that Rosecrans began his advance from Nashville in June. The strong position of Cumberland Gap was surrendered to him with scarcely an effort for its defence by the Confederates, and he moved into East Tennessee. Driving back the Confederate forces, which sought to stop his march, he occupied Knoxville. The object of his expedition was to afford a rallying point for the Union men of East Tennessee. After the battle of Chickamauga, and the investment of Chattanooga, President Jefferson Davis visited Bragg's army, and being convinced that the capture of Rosecrans' force was inevitable, decided to withdraw General Longstreet's corps from Bragg, and to send it to drive Burnside out of East Tennessee.

Longstreet's men were in no condition to undertake such a campaign, but under their energetic commander, succeeded in confining Burnside's army to the defences of Knoxville. The siege of that place was formed, and several assaults were made upon the Union works, but were each repulsed with heavy loss. Burnside's men were reduced almost to starvation, but held out with unshaken resolution. After the defeat of Bragg at Missionary Ridge, Grant ordered Sherman to march with his corps to the relief of Knoxville. Upon the approach of this force Longstreet, on the fourth of December, raised the siege and retreated into Virginia.

Beyond the Mississippi the war was carried on with varying success throughout the year 1863, but to the general advantage of the Federal forces. On the third of July the Confederates, under General Holmes, attacked Helena, Arkansas, but were repulsed. By the close of the year the Confederate forces had been pressed back as far as the Red River.

On the first of January, 1863, Galveston, Texas, which had surrendered to the Federal forces in the fall of 1862, was recaptured by the Confederates, under General Magruder. By the capture of this place, the Confederates obtained one more port from which they could maintain communications with and receive supplies from Europe.

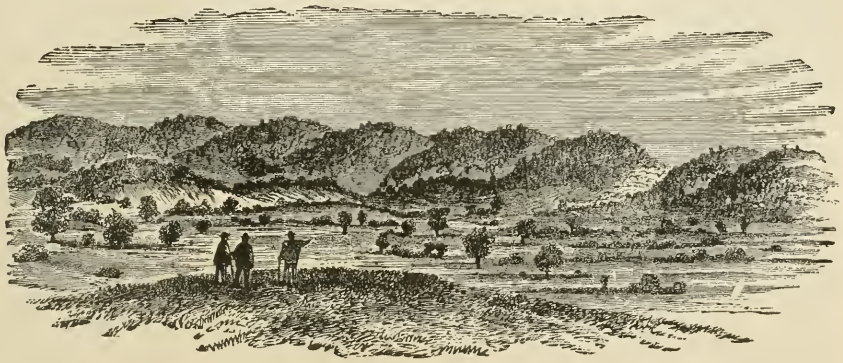
CAPTURE OF LOOKOUT MOUNTAIN.

In the spring of 1863, a powerful naval expedition, under Admiral Dupont, was despatched against Charleston. On the seventh of April, Dupont attempted to force his way into the harbor, but was driven back by the forts and batteries, and nine of his iron-clads were severely injured. Early in July, a force of land troops, under General Gilmore, effected a lodgment on the south end of Morris' Island, and secured their position by intrenchments.

The Union parallels were pushed forward steadily towards Fort Wagner, at the north end of the island, and a final assault of that work was ordered. Before the order could be executed, Fort Wagner was evacuated on the night of the sixth of September. The Federal batteries on Morris' Island now maintained a heavy and constant fire upon Fort Sumter, and reduced it to a shapeless mass of rubbish on the land side. Yet, in this condition it was stronger than at first,

the mass of rubbish offering a more effectual resistance to shot and shell than the walls. The long-range guns on Morris' Island threw shells into the city of Charleston, which was regularly bombarded from this time until its fall, in 1865. The capture of Fort Wagner enabled the Federal forces to close the harbor of Charleston effectually against blockade runners.

In spite of the victories of Chancellorsville and Chickamauga, and the invasion of the North, the close of the year found the South fairly on the downward road to final failure. Missouri was freed from the presence of the Confederate army, and the greater part of Arkansas was held by the Federal troops. The Mississippi was lost to the South, and the immense supplies from the trans-Mississippi region were no longer available to the Confederate forces east of the great river. Tennessee was occupied by the Federal forces, and the invasion of the North had ended in disaster.



MISSIONARY RIDGE FROM THE CEMETERY AT CHATTANOOGA.

The resources of the South were gradually becoming exhausted, and the supply of men was falling off. The North, on the other hand, was increasing in determination. The war had opened new channels of industry, and these had more than repaid the losses of the first period of the struggle. The North was growing richer in spite of the war, while the South was growing poorer because of it. At the end of 1863 the Federal debt had reached the enormous total of $1,300,000,000, with the certainty of a heavy increase during the coming year. Still the people of the loyal States responded with heartiness to the heavy demands of the Federal government for men and money. Specie had long since disappeared from circulation, but a system of Treasury notes, which were made a legal tender, had replaced coin as a circulating medium. The new paper money was abundant, and the North gave few outward signs of distress. Everything spoke of prosperity. The contrast between the condition of the Union and the Confederacy was striking and most suggestive.

Early in the spring of 1864 an expedition was sent into that part of Louisiana known as the Red River country. It consisted of a force of ten thousand troops, under General Smith, from Vicksburg, and a fleet of gunboats, under Admiral Porter. On the fourteenth of March Fort de Russy was captured by the troops, and on the twenty-first Natchitoches was occupied General Banks now arrived with a strong reinforcement of troops from New Orleans, and took command of the expedition. About the first of April he set out for Shreveport, at the head of navigation on the Red River, his army marching along the shore, and the gunboats ascending the stream. The Confederates gathered in heavy force, under the command of General Kirby Smith, to oppose his advance.

On the eighth of April the Confederate army attacked Banks at Sabine Cross-Roads,

near Mansfield, and inflicted a stinging defeat upon him. The Union forces were rallied at Pleasant Hill, where they were attacked by the Confederates on the ninth. The Confederates were repulsed, but Banks continued his retreat, and reached Alexandria on the twenty-fifth of April. The expedition then returned to the Mississippi. Banks was relieved of the command at New Orleans, and was succeeded by General Canby.

General Steele, commanding the Union forces in Arkansas, had moved from Little Rock, on the twenty-third of March, towards Shreveport, to co-operate with General Banks. He was attacked by the Confederates and driven back to Little Rock, which he reached on the second of May.

The Red River expedition was thus a total failure, and was a source of great mortification, as well as serious loss, to the Federal government.

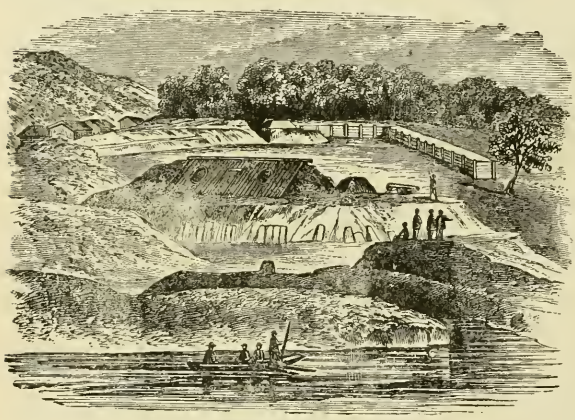
Early in March General Grant was raised to the grade of Lieutenant-General, that rank having been revived by act of Congress to reward him for his great services during the war. It had been held only by Washington, General Scott having been given only the brevet rank. He was also appointed commander of all the armies of the United States. He decided to assume the immediate direction of the campaign in Virginia, and established his headquarters with the Army of the Potomac. At the same time General W. T. Sherman was appointed to

THE ATTACK ON FORT SUMTER BY THE MONITOR FLEET.

PORTRAITS OF PROMINENT FEDERAL GENERALS. 741

the command of the military division of the Mississippi, in which were included the Armies of the Cumberland, of the Ohio, and of the Tennessee.

The supreme control of the military operations both east and west was vested in General Grant—a great gain, inasmuch as the operations in the two quarters of the Union could now be made to assist each other. The plan of the campaign embraced a simultaneous advance of both armies; the Army of the Potomac was charged with the task of defeating Lee and capturing Richmond; the western army, under Sherman, was to force Johnston back into Georgia.



FORT DE RUSSY.

The Army of the Potomac numbered one hundred and forty thousand men on the first of May, 1864; the Confederate army, under General Lee, about fifty thousand. General Meade retained the immediate command of the Army of the Potomac, but General Grant accompanied it, and directed its movements. On the morning of May 4th—just three days before Sherman moved from Chattanooga—the Federal army crossed the Rapidan, and, turning the right of Lee's position, entered the region known as the Wilderness. General Lee determined to attack this force and prevent it from reaching the open country beyond the Wilderness. On the fifth of May he encountered the Army of the Potomac in the Wilderness, near the old battle-field of Chancellorsville.

The attack was made by the Federal forces, which endeavored to drive off Lee's army, which blocked the route by which they were advancing. Lee held his ground during the day, and that night both armies bivouacked upon the field. The battle was renewed on the sixth, but Grant failed to force the Confederate position. The fighting during these two days was carried on in a thickly-wooded region, in which the artillery of the two armies could not be used to advantage. On the sixth the Confederates suffered a serious loss in the person of General Longstreet, who was severely wounded, and was incapacitated from continuing in command. The losses in killed and wounded were very heavy on both sides, as the fighting was of a desperate character.

Six Days' Fighting in Virginia.

On the seventh General Grant moved his army around Lee's right, and marched rapidly to seize the strong position of Spottsylvania Court-house, which would have placed him between the Confederates and Richmond. Lee at once divined his purpose, and fell back rapidly to the heights around Spottsylvania Court house, which he occupied on the eighth. Upon arriving before this position Grant found his enemy strongly entrenched in it, and at once resolved to drive him from it. On the tenth of May he made a determined attack upon the Confederate line, but failed to carry it.

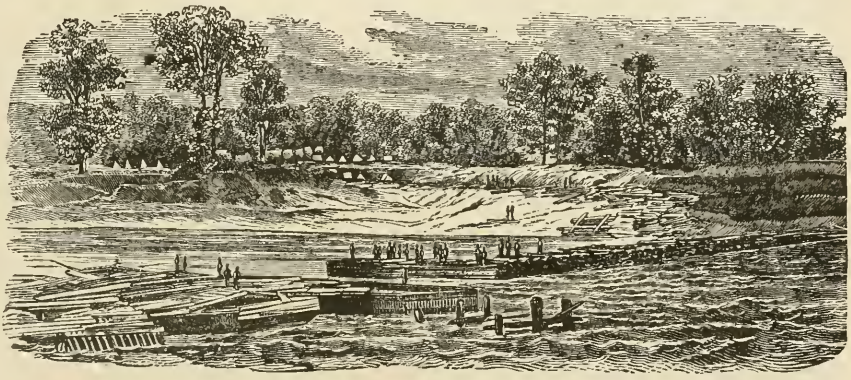
On the morning of the eleventh, General Grant sent a characteristic dispatch to the Secretary of War. "We have now," he wrote, "ended the sixth day of very hard fighting. The result to this time is much in our favor. Our losses have been heavy, as well as those of the enemy. I think the

loss of the enemy must be greater. We have taken over five thousand prisoners in battle, while he has taken from us but few, except stragglers. I propose to fight it out on this line, if it takes all summer."

The eleventh was Wednesday. The morning rose bright and clear. The two opposing armies lay in close proximity to each other. As the day advanced there was some skirmishing; but on neither side was any attempt made to provoke a general engagement. Both commanders, it was evident, were preparing for battle; nor could doubt remain in any mind that, whatever might be the result, another and even more fearful encounter at Spottsylvania was imminent.

Grant was still bent on carrying out his policy of continuous hammering. His success, however, on the Tuesday, in his repeated attacks on the enemy's left and left centre, had not been encouraging. There was no reason to hope that another attack, made in the same direction, would be attended with any better results. It was resolved, therefore, to strike a bold and effective blow on the enemy's right centre. At that point, and near the Landrum House, Lee's lines formed a salient. It was Grant's conviction that the point was vulnerable. Arrangements for the attack were made forthwith. Hancock, who was chosen to strike the blow, was ordered to leave his entrenchments in front of A. P. Hill, and, by moving to the left, to take position between the Sixth and Ninth corps. The movement was to have the support of the entire army. Wright was to extend his left, and to concentrate on that wing. Warren was to make a diversionary movement on the Confederate left, in his own front, the object being to give the enemy sufficient employment in that direction, and so prevent the withdrawal of his troops for the relief of the menaced point.

Burnside, for a similar reason, was to make a vigorous assault on the extreme left. Rain fell heavily in the afternoon. When night came the rain-storm had not abated; and, as the moon was in its first quarter, the night was dark and dismal. Soon after midnight, under cover of the darkness and the storm, Hancock moved out from his intrenchments,



BAILEY'S RED RIVER DAM.

and, guided by the compass, passed in rear of Warren and Wright, and took position within 1,200 yards of the enemy's front, at the point to be attacked. Barlow's division, in two lines of masses, was placed on the left; Birney's division, in two deployed lines, was placed on the right; Mott's division, Hancock's Fourth, supported Birney, and Gibbon's division was held in reserve. Of the actual strength of the position about to be attacked, the Nationalists knew nothing. It might be weak and defenceless. It might be well fortified and proof against any attack. It mattered not. Hancock was ready, waiting for the first streak of early dawn to launch forth his brave battalions to victory or to death.

It is now half-past four o'clock on the morning of Thursday, May twelfth. A heavy fog is resting on the entire surrounding country, and the feeble light of the rising sun struggles hard to penetrate the gloom. Hancock's divisions are already in motion. Steadily and silently they move towards the salient—Barlow over open ground, which extends up to the Confederate lines, Birney through the thickly wooded ground more to the right. Not a shot has yet been fired—not a word uttered. More than half of the intervening distance has already been crossed.

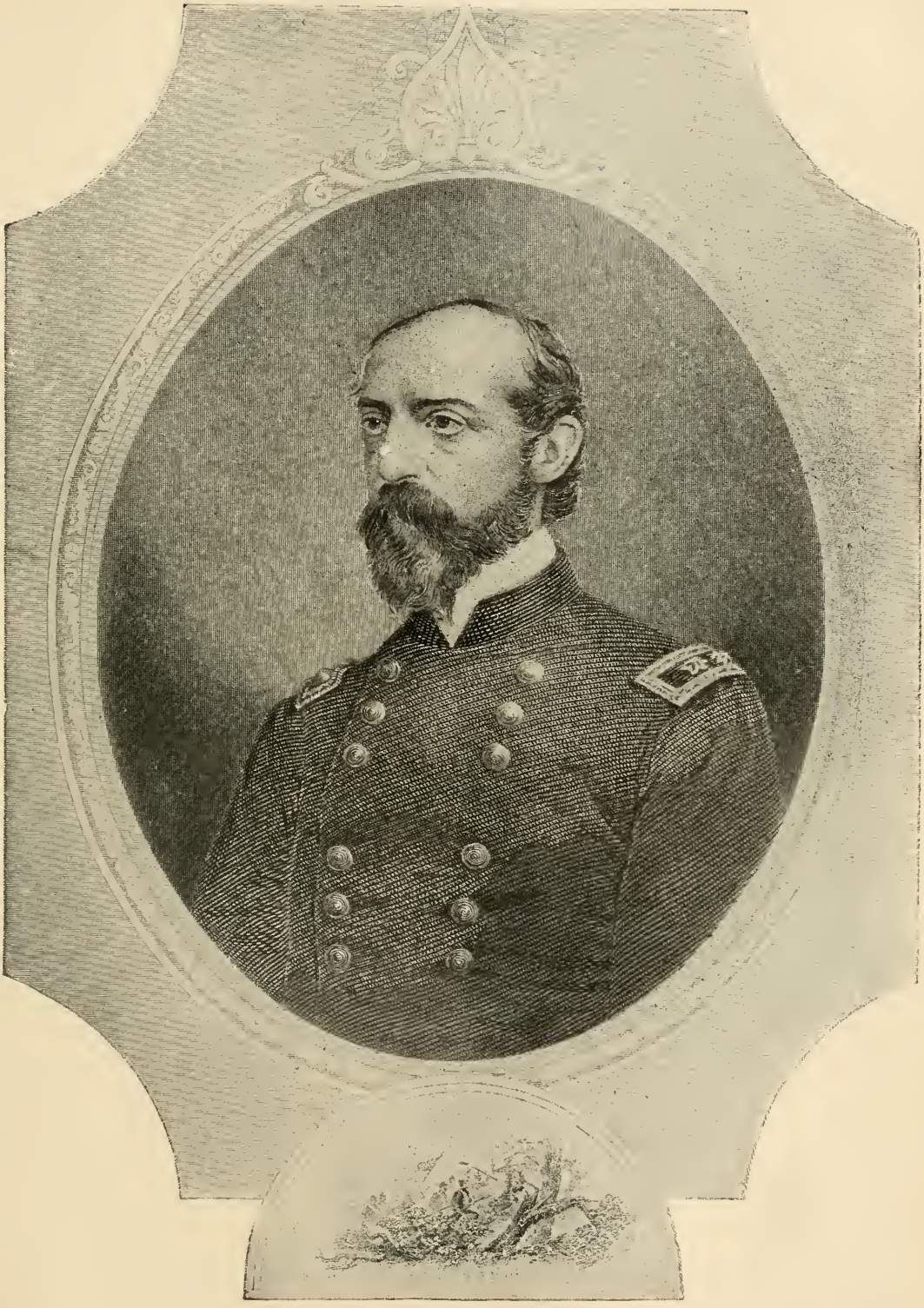
GRANT WRITING DISPATCHES BEFORE CROSSING THE RAPIDAN.

Suddenly there is a loud-resounding cheer, which rings along the whole line. Spontaneously the men take the double-quick. On they roll like a resistless wave. Nothing can now restrain their fierce impetuosity. They have reached the *abatis*, torn it up and tossed it aside.

With wild cries, they rush bounding over the entrenchments, Barlow and Birney's men entering almost simultaneously. Inside the intrenchmects there is a terrible hand-to-hand struggle, the bayonet and the clubbed-musket being freely used. Nothing, however, can save the doomed Confederates. Some four thousand men, including General Johnson, of Ewell's corps, and General George H. Stewart are surrounded and captured; and with them thirty pieces of artillery and as many colors. Meanwhile, the remainder of the Confederate force, stricken with terror and thrown into the wildest confusion, have fallen back, seeking safety in the rear.

This attack of Hancock's was justly regarded as the most brilliant feat of arms yet accomplished in the campaign. Never was surprise more complete or more successful The officers were taken at their breakfast. The captured generals were greatly mortified. An hour only had elapsed since the column of attack was formed. Along with the prisoners, which he sent to Grant, Hancock sent a note hastily written in pencil, saying: "I have finished up Johnson, and am now going into Early." This second task, as we shall soon see, he found to be less easy of accomplishment than the former.

Early, like Johnson, commanded a division of Ewell's corps. At the point penetrated, Lee's army, as we have seen, formed a salient. Hancock had, therefore, by his first success, thrust a wedge between the Confederate right and centre. It was his hope that he would be able to cut Lee's army in two; and there can be no doubt that if sufficient provision had been made, promptly and in force, to follow up the advantage Hancock had won by his first brilliant assault, the desired end would have



GENL. GEO. G. MEADE.

GENL. P. H. SHERIDAN.

been accomplished. As it was, Hancock's troops, flushed with success, and incapable of being restrained after the capture of the intrenchments, pressed on through the forest in the direction of Spottsylvania driving the flying enemy before them.

At the distance of half a mile, they were suddenly brought to a halt in their triumphant career. They had reached a fresh line of breast-works. Behind these works, Ewell had taken shelter; and reinforcements had reached him from the corps of Anderson and Hill. The National advance was now effectually checked. It was not only impossible to make headway—it was impossible to remain in the position in which they found themselves. The tide of battle was now turned. Gathering themselves up for a supreme effort, the Confederates, in overwhelming numbers and in magnificent array, rushed from the breast-works, and, falling with crushing weight on Hancock's men, now slightly disordered by their fearless rush through the woods, drove them back to the line which they had captured in the early morning.

Here, however, Hancock managed to rally his troops; and, getting them into line on the right and left of the angle of the works, he stoutly resisted the fierce and repeated onsets of the enemy, and firmly held his position. His situation, however, was becoming every moment more critical. Lee was resolved, if possible, to recover the lost line of works; and, with this end in view, he was putting forth the most Herculean efforts, and bringing his entire strength to bear on the one point. It was now six o'clock—one hour and a half since the first onset. Hancock

GENERAL JAMES LONGSTREET.

was still holding his position; but relief was sorely needed.

At this opportune moment, when most needed, relief came. Wright, who had been hurried forward with his Sixth corps, arrived on the ground, and took position on the right of the salient. Hancock, thus relieved, concentrated his troops on the left of the angle. A little later, about eight o'clock, and with a view to relieve the pressure on Hancock and Wright, Burnside and Warren were ordered to attack along their whole fronts. The battle now raged furiously at every point. No evidence was given that Lee had changed his purpose. The last line

THE PLACE WHERE SEDGWICK WAS KILLED.

at the salient was still the object of his ambition. On Hancock and Wright he dealt his heaviest and most terrific blows. Again and again, and in rapid succession, he rolled against them his heavy masses. He seemed resolved to dislodge them.

Seeing this, and becoming convinced that Burnside and Warren were producing no impression on their respective fronts, Grant detached two divisions from the Fifth corps—those of Cutler and Griffin—and sent them to the aid of the Second and Sixth corps at the angle which was still regarded as the prize of battle, and where was the focus of the fight. Five times did Lee hurl his heavy columns against the National lines entrusted with the defense of this position. Five times, after severe hand-to-hand fighting, in which the slaughter on both sides was dreadful, were the attacking columns repulsed. It was not until after midnight that Lee withdrew his shattered and bleeding lines and re-formed them in his interior position. Hancock held the works he had captured in the morning. The battle had lasted twenty hours. The losses on either side were about 10,000 men.

Such was the great battle of Spottsylvania Court House. Although not a decisive victory it was a positive gain to the National cause. Its moral effect was great. It was one of the bloodiest battles of the war. The sight presented at the angle where the tide of battle surged and roared from earliest dawn till past midnight of that summer day, as described by eye-witnesses, was something shocking to witness. The bodies of the dead and wounded were piled in heaps and mingled together in wild confusion. It was, as one has said, "an angle of death—one hideous Golgotha." The severity of the musketry fire was evidenced by the condition of the forest after the battle. The trees were not only pierced by the bullets, but literally cut down. At Washington, as a relic of this fight, there is preserved the trunk of an oak tree which was cut through and through by bullets. The trunk is about twenty inches in diameter.

It was evident that the Confederates could not be dislodged from their position without a still heavier loss to the Union army, and

General Grant determined to draw them from the heights of Spottsylvania by another march to the right.

On the twenty-first of May the Army of the Potomac moved from Spottsylvania to the banks of the North Anna River, and reached that stream on the twenty-third. Lee had marched rapidly by a shorter route, and his army was in position on the south side of the river when Grant reached the northern shore. Lee had chosen a position of very great strength in front of Hanover Junction, and had covered it with earthworks.

On the twenty-fifth Grant crossed a large part of his force to the south side of the North Anna, and endeavored to force the Confederate line, but discovering its remarkable strength, withdrew his troops to the north shore, and on the twenty-sixth moved around Lee's right in the direction of the Chickahominy. Lee followed him promptly and took position at Cold Harbor, on the north side of the Chickahominy, and within nine miles of Richmond, occupying very much the same position held by McClellan's army in the battle of Cold Harbor, on the twenty-seventh of June, 1862. He covered his entire line with strong earthworks.

On the first of June a sharp encounter occurred between the Federal right and the Confederate left wings, and on the morning of the third of June, Grant made a general assault upon the Confederate works. The attack was made with great gallantry, but was repulsed with a loss to the Federal army of thirteen thousand men. The losses of the Army of the Potomac since the passage of the Rapidan had reached the enormous total of over sixty thousand men. The Confederate loss during the same period was about twenty thousand. Failing to force the Confederate line at Cold Harbor, General Grant drew off leisurely towards the James River at Wilcox's Landing, intending to cross that river and attack Richmond from the south side of the James.

In the meantime, upon reaching Spottsylvania Court-house, General Grant had sent General Sheridan, with ten thousand cavalry, to destroy the railroads connecting Rich-

GENERAL FITZHUGH LEE.

mond with Lee's army and the valley of Virginia. Sheridan executed his orders with complete success, and went within seven miles of Richmond. On the tenth of May he reached Ashland. He was attacked there by the Confederate cavarly under General Stuart, and moved off towards Richmond. Stuart, marching by a shorter route, threw his cavalry between Sheridan and Richmond, and again encountered him at the Yellow

Tavern, on the Brook turnpike, seven miles from the city.

Stuart was mortally wounded, and Sheridan secured his retreat across the Chickahominy and down the peninsula. In General Stuart the Confederates lost their only great cavalry leader. Had Sheridan, instead of halting at Ashland, pushed straight on to Richmond, the Confederate capital must have fallen into his hands. On the twenty-fifth of June he rejoined General Grant.

BATTLE OF COLD HARBOR.

At the opening of the campaign, General Butler, with a force of about thirty thousand men, known as the Army of the James, was sent up the James River to attack the defences of Richmond, on the south side of that river. He occupied City Point and Bermuda Hundreds on the fifth of May, and a few days later, advanced up the neck of land lying between the James and the Appomattox Rivers.

To oppose him, the Confederates collected a force of about eighteen thousand men, under General Beauregard, and posted them in a fortified line, extending from the James to the Appomattox, in front of the Richmond and Petersburg railroad. On the sixteenth of May, Butler's army, having advanced within a short distance of this line, was attacked by the Confederates and driven back to Bermuda Hundreds. The Confederates then formed their lines across the narrow peninsula, and kept Butler's force enclosed between their works and the two rivers until the crossing of the James River by the Army of the Potomac.

The Federal plan of campaign also included the seizure of the valley of Virginia, and of the railway connecting Virginia with East Tennessee and Georgia. On the first of May, General Sigel, with an army of ten thousand men, advanced up the valley towards Staunton. On the fifteenth, he was defeated with considerable loss by the Confederates, under

General Breckenridge, at New Market, and was driven back down the valley. General Hunter was appointed in Sigel's place, and succeeded in forcing his way to the vicinity of Lynchburg. Lee, becoming alarmed for the safety of that place, sent General Early, with twelve thousand men, to its assistance.

BATTLE OF SPOTTSYLVANIA COURT-HOUSE.

Early, at once attacked Hunter, and forced him to retreat by a circuitous route into West Virginia.

In the meantime, General Grant had reached the James River, where his army was reinforced to one hundred and fifty thousand men. On the fifteenth and sixteenth of June he crossed his troops near City Point, and advanced upon Petersburg. At the same time General Butler moved forward with the Army of the James against the southern works between the James and Appomattox. On the sixteenth, seventeenth and eighteenth, Grant made repeated attempts to storm the Confederate works before Petersburg and south of the James, but was repulsed with a total loss of nine thousand six hundred and sixty-five men.

Being unable to carry the southern works by storm, he began the siege of Petersburg. His right rested on the James above Bermuda Hundreds, and from this point his line extended across the Appomattox, with his

left thrown out towards the Weldon railroad. During the summer and fall he continued to extend his left until he had seized the Weldon road. From this point he sought to extend his left still further, and to seize the South Side railroad, Lee's only remaining line of communication with the South and Southwest.

GENERAL J. E. B. STUART.

Frequent encounters occurred between the two armies during the summer and fall, a number of which attained the proportions of battles, but we have not space to relate them all. On the thirtieth of July a mine was sprung under one of the principal works of Lee's line, and the explosion was followed by an assault by Burnside's corps. The attack was repulsed with a loss of over five thousand men to the Union troops. During the early autumn General Grant extended his lines across the James river, and established a force on the north side of that river to lay siege to the defences of Richmond. The right of this force was extended as far as the Williamsburg road. This was the situation of the two armies at the close of the year.

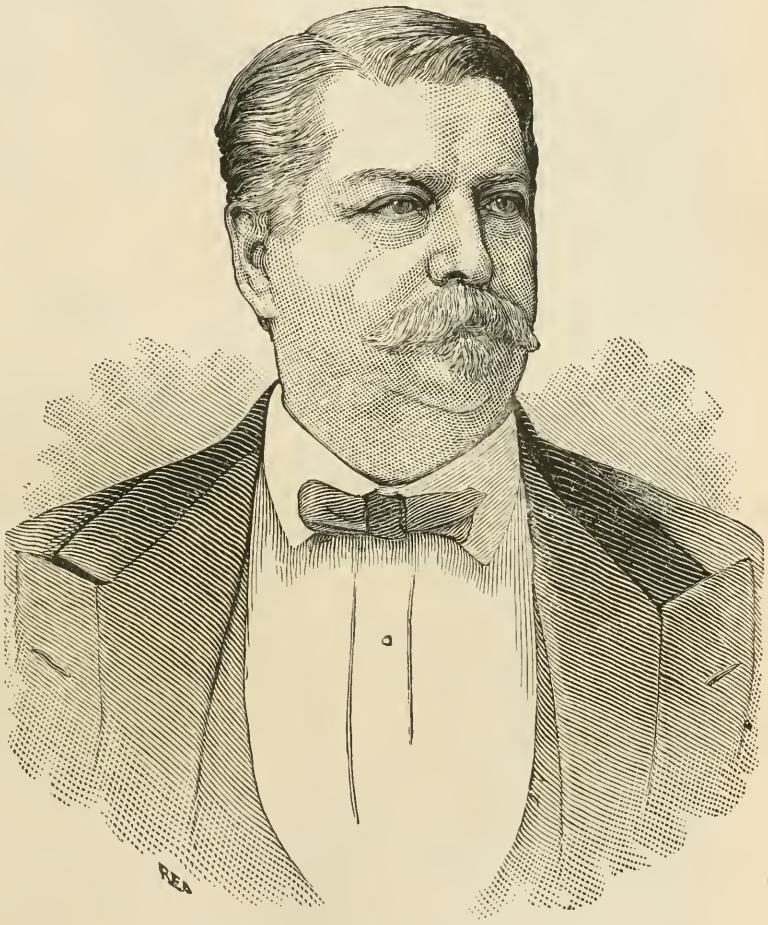
In the meantime Early had advanced into the valley of Virginia after the defeat of Hunter. The retreat of that commander into West Virginia had left the Potomac unguarded, and Washington City exposed to attack. General Lee at once reinforced Early to fifteen thousand men, and ordered him to cross the Potomac and to threaten Washington, hoping by this bold movement to compel Grant to weaken his army for the protection of the capital, if not to raise the siege of Petersburg. Early moved rapidly, crossed the Potomac near Martinsburg on

the fifth of July, and on the seventh occupied Frederick City in Maryland. On the ninth he defeated a small force under General Lewis Wallace at Manocacy Bridge, and advanced upon Washington. The Nineteenth army corps of the Federal army was at Fortress Monroe, where it had just arrived from New Orleans, *en route* to join Grant's army. It was at once ordered to Washington, which, until its arrival, was held by a small garrison, and Grant at the same time embarked the Sixth corps, and sent it with all speed around to the Potomac.

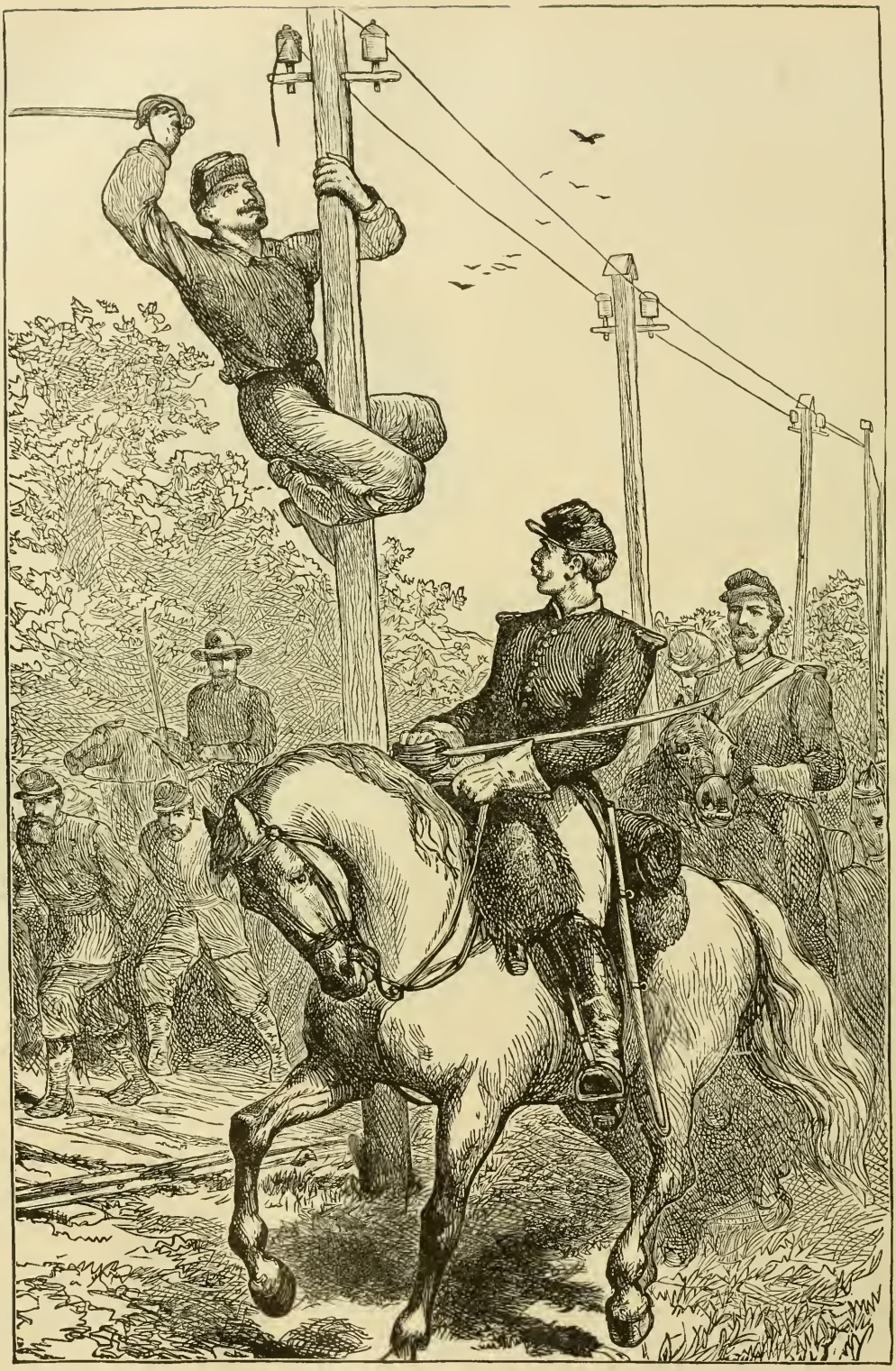
These troops reached Washington before the arrival of Early, who appeared before the defences of that city on the eleventh of July. He found the works too strongly manned to be attacked by his force. After skirmishing for several days before them, he withdrew across the Potomac on the fourteenth, and retreated to the neighborhood of Winchester.

Early's movement so alarmed the Federal government for the safety of Washington that a force of forty thousand men, ten thousand of which were the splendid cavalry of Sheridan, was stationed in the valley, and Major-General Sheridan was appointed to the command of this army. Had Grant been able to retain these troops with his own army, it is safe to say that Lee would have been forced to abandon his position at Petersburg in the autumn of 1864. Their absence in the valley enabled the Confederate leader to prolong his defence through the winter.

As soon as he had gotten his forces well in hand, Sheridan advanced upon Early, and on the nineteenth defeated him at Winchester, and drove him back to Fisher's Hill, where on the twenty-second, he again defeated him and drove him out of the valley, pursuing him as far as Staunton. By the orders of General Grant, General Sheridan now laid waste the entire valley of the



GENERAL WINFIELD S. HANCOCK



752 STUART'S CAVALRY CUTTING TELEGRAPH WIRES.

COPYRIGHT, 1890, BY KURZ & ALLISON

BATTLE OF CEDAR CREEK—GENERAL SHERIDAN LEADING THE CAVALRY CHARGE

COPYRIGHT, 1893, BY KURZ & ALLISON

FALL OF PETERSBURG

Shenandoah, destroying all the crops, mills, barns, and farming implements, and driving off the cattle with his army as he moved back.

Early was reinforced after his retreat to the upper valley, and about the middle of October advanced down the valley towards the Federal position with a force of nine thousand men and forty pieces of cannon. The Union army lay at Cedar Creek, and was under the temporary command of General Wright during the absence of General Sheridan. On the nineteenth of October Early attacked this force, and drove it back for several miles. Instead of continuing the pursuit, his troops stopped to plunder the Federal camp, which had fallen into their hands.

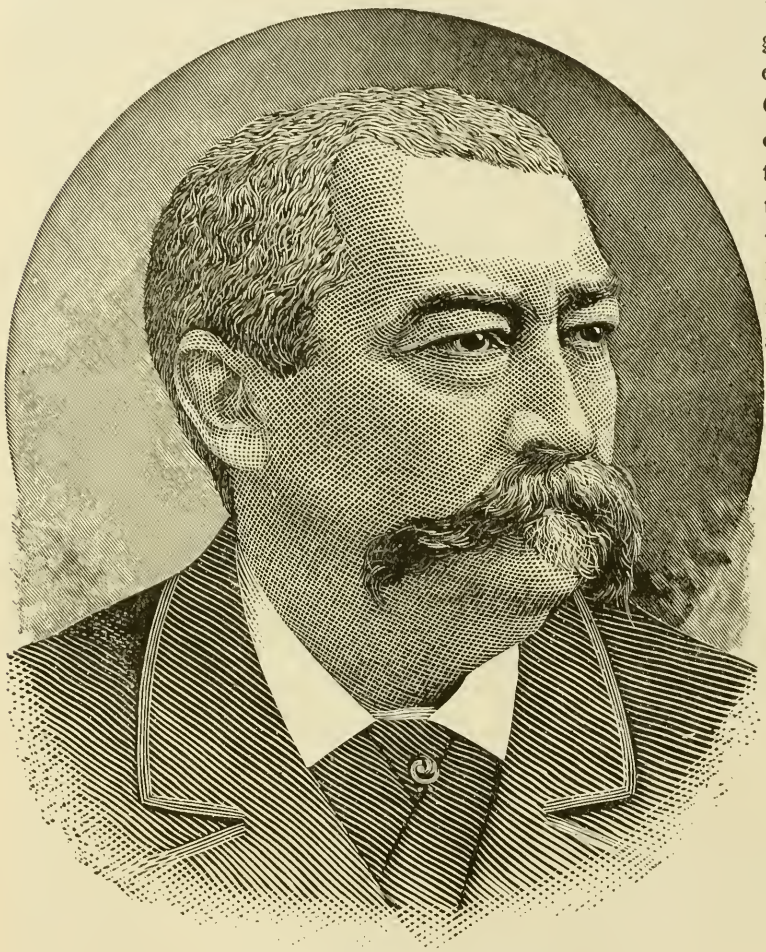
General Wright rallied his men and reformed them in a new position, and at this moment General Sheridan arrived on the field. He had heard the firing at Winchester, "twenty miles away," and had ridden at full speed from that place to rejoin his army. He at once ordered it to advance upon Early, whose men, laden with the plunder of the captured camp, were driven back with terrible force and pursued up the valley for thirty miles. This success cleared the valley of the Confederate forces, for Early was not able after this to collect more than a handful of men, and Lee had no troops to spare him. Sheridan's brilliant victories cost him a total loss of seventeen thousand men.

A more extended account of General Sheridan's operations, by the historian John Laird Wilson, will be of interest to the reader:

"As Sheridan returned down the valley towards Cedar Creek, he was closely followed by the Confederate cavalry under Rosser, supported by the main body of Early's army. On October ninth, the head of Sheridan's infantry column having entered Strasburg by the east road, while the rear was still some miles further south, the enemy following the cavalry on the west road, had advanced so far as to get on the left flank of the infantry column. Custer and Merritt then turned and attacked with their cavalry, when a report having spread among Rosser's men that the National infantry were at the same time flanking them, they immediately gave way and broke into a stampede. The pursuit was continued seven miles. The loss of the enemy was not great, being only about three hundred men, including prisoners; but he abandoned eleven guns, four caissons, and an ammunition train.

PONTOON BRIDGE AT DEEP BOTTOM.

"Things remained quiet for several days after this affair; but on the twelfth, the Confederates again appeared in the neighborhood of Strasburg and opened an artillery fire on Emory's and Crook's corps. These troops were then partially withdrawn and Crook pushed out a reconnoissance, which brought on a smart engagement of three hours' duration. Night, however, closed upon the scene without any advantage and with little loss to either side.



GENERAL PHILIP H. SHERIDAN.

"On the fifteenth, Sheridan went to Washington on important business, leaving the army under the command of General Wright, whose corps was, in the meantime, intrusted to General Ricketts. Fisher's Hill had been abandoned as not affording any good defensible line on its southern slope, on which side Early would be likely to approach, and the army had now lain for several days in front of Strasburg, behind breast-works thrown up on rising and rolling ground, mostly along the east side of Cedar Creek—Crook, with the Eighth corps on the left, the Nineteenth corps in the centre, the Sixth on the right. On the right of the Sixth, a little in the rear and in reserve, were the two cavalry divisions of Custer and Merritt. The line was four or five miles long, and following the course of the creek, nearly north and South.

"Crook's corps rested its left flank on the North Fork of Shenandoah and its right on the Winchester and Strasburg turnpike, the principal highway in that region. Behind Crook's left and at right angles to it, with a view to guard against any turning movement on that flank, lay a force about equivalent to a brigade, known as Kitching's provisional division. North of the turnpike came the Nineteenth corps, Grover's division holding its left and resting on the turnpike, where it joined Thorburn's Division of Crook's command. The Sixth corps on the right, and the second cavalry division, were not strongly protected with works, as was all the rest of

PORTRAITS OF FEDERAL CAVALRY COMMANDERS.

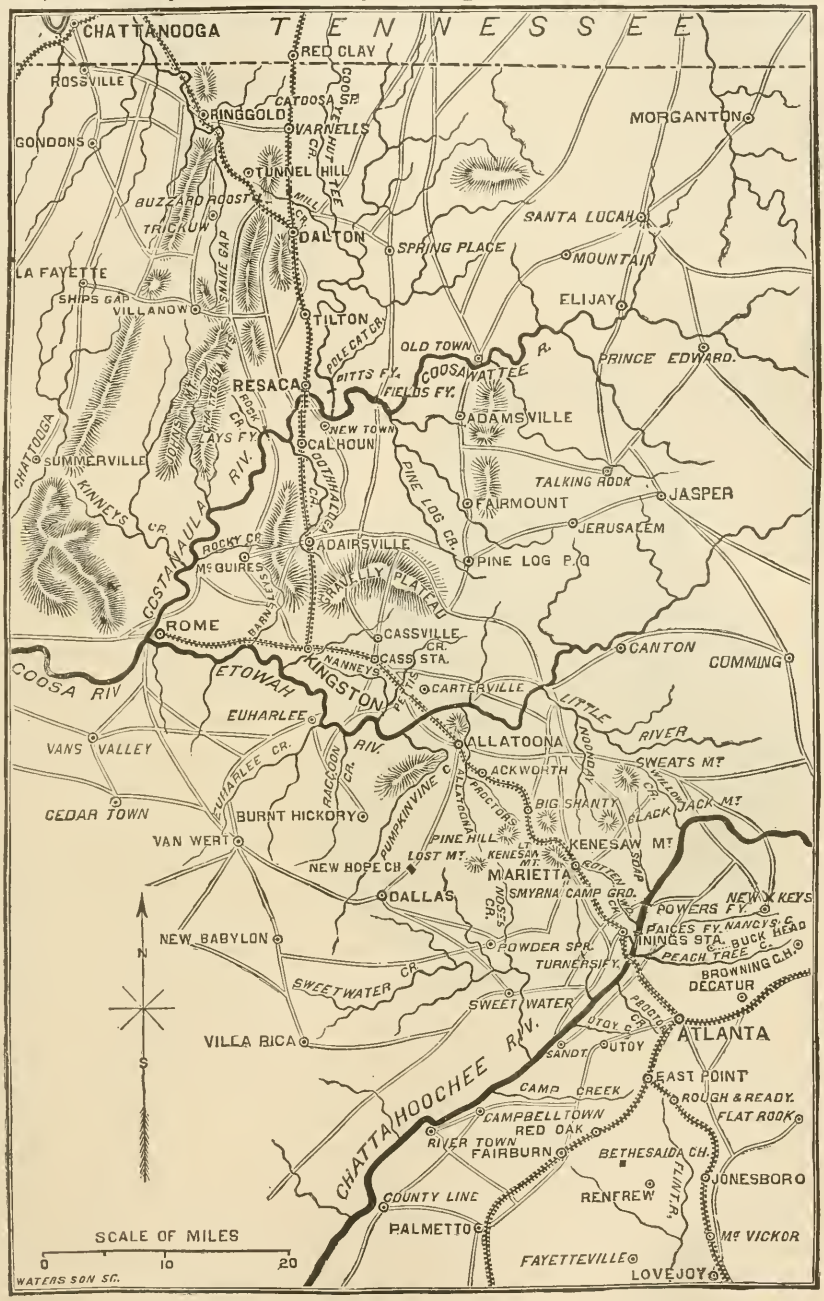
the line, but were well posted on high ridges, and held firmly the Middle road, or that which runs next north of the turnpike. A small stream called Meadow Run, flows into the creek between the two roads mentioned. was picketed by Powell's cavalry division from Cedar Creek all the way to Front Royal. Weir's battery commanded the fords, supported by cavalry which were so posted as to prevent surprise from the direction of

SHERIDAN'S CAVALRY CHARGE AT CEDAR CREEK.

"In front the National position was considered impregnable, except by surprise, and to turn it would be, it was believed, an undertaking of extreme temerity. To guard against surprise on the left, the North Fork the Luray Valley. Artillery was posted in front of the positions of Crook and Emory, so as to command the ford and the bridge over Cedar Creek, as well as the rising ground on the west side. The wagon trains and

reserve artillery lay in the rear on the turnpike. On the seventeenth, the cavalry on the right, under Custer, was attacked by Confederate cavalry and infantry, and a severe skirmish ensued, resulting in the repulse of the enemy. Next day a careful reconnoissance was made from the left towards Strasburg and Fisher's Hill; but no sign of movement on the part of the enemy was discovered. Dispatches, however, were captured; and it was thus ascertained that reinforcements had been sent to Early, for the purpose of enabling him to attack and defeat Sheridan.

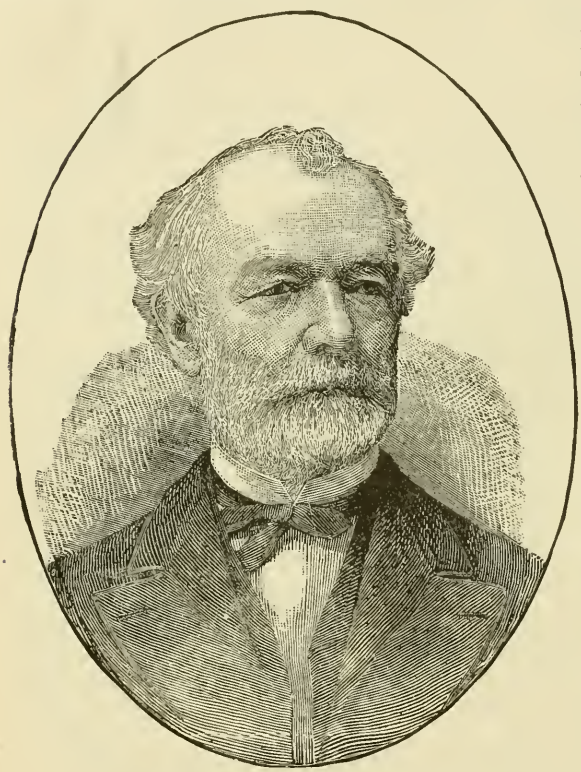
"Early, in fact, had just received a reinforcement of some twelve thousand men. His actual strength was thus increased to twenty-seven thousand. His army was still smaller than that of Sheridan. Encouraged, however, by so large an accession of strength, Early prepared to put in execution one of the most audacious movements of the war.



COUNTRY BETWEEN CHATTANOOGA AND ATLANTA.

"Before break of day on the nineteenth, he arranged his troops at Fisher's Hill and began to move against Sheridan's lines. His cavalry and light artillery were directed to advance against the National right, so as to occupy the attention of Torbert and the

Sixth corps. His infantry marched in five columns, of which Gordon's, Ramseur's, and Pegram's were ordered to place themselves by daybreak on the left rear of the whole National position, while Kershaw's and Wharton's were to endeavor to get, about the same time, close under the entrenched rising ground on which lay Crook's command. To turn the National left, it was



GENERAL JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON.

necessary that Early's columns should descend into the gorge at the base of the Massanutten Mountain, ford the North Fork of the Shenandoah, and skirt Crook's encampment for some distance, in some places within four hundred yards of his pickets.

"It was a hazardous as well as audacious experiment; but it was executed with wonderful skill, and, as the result proved, with complete success. The movement was conducted quietly, and with great caution. The result was that before daybreak the Confederate infantry, formed and ready for battle, lay within six hundred yards of the National camps. Gordon's column was diagonally in the rear of the Nineteenth corps; on the left of Crook, facing Kitching's provisional division, was Ramseur supported by Pegram; in front of Crook was Kershaw supported by Wharton. Under cover of the morning mist, Kershaw's column moved rapidly through Crook's picket line, and with tremendous fury rushed upon the entrenchments. The onslaught was fearful. The surprise was complete.

"In a quarter of an hour Crook's gallant army of Western Virginia became a disorganized mass of fugitives in rapid rout towards the position of the Nineteenth corps. Crook lost several batteries, some seven hundred men made prisoners, and about one hundred in killed and wounded. The Sixth corps was at the same time menaced; and its attention occupied by the enemy's cavalry and light artillery. It fell to the lot of the Nineteenth corps to resist unaided the shock of Gordon's column, now advancing solidly massed up the slope of a broad, bare hill which commanded Emory's camp. The Confederate force, including the divisions of Ramseur and Pegram, was as strong as Emory's, and was supported by another column coming up through the woods on the left, and along the turnpike in front.

"The Nineteenth corps was thus not only taken in the rear, but outnumbered. Still it held out for about an hour; and then its left gave way, leaving a part of the artillery in the enemy's hands. The left and centre of the National army had now fallen into complete confusion; and all the trains that could be got away were sent off in haste along the turnpike towards Winchester. The sun was

now high in the heavens, and the extent of the disaster was rendered visible. The Confederates had succeeded in rolling up the left of the line, and in severing Powell's cavalry division on the extreme left from the rest of the army; and they were now forcing back the entire centre, and occupying the entrenchments of the Nineteenth corps as they had those of Crook's command. They had also captured eighteen pieces of artillery, thus not only lessening the National power for defense, but increasing their own power for attack. The captured cannon were turned with terrible effect on their late possessors. The Sixth corps was now ordered over from the right; and these troops, executing quickly a change of front which brought them at right angles to their former line, were soon engaged in desperate battle.

A Desperate Struggle.

"The resistance made by the Sixth corps in covering the retreat afforded opportunity for re-enforcing the fugitives to some extent; but the Confederates increased their artillery and musketry fire to the utmost, and still pressed the National left flank, with the view, apparently, of getting full possession of the turnpike, that they might seize the trains and get between the National army and Winchester. The enemy pressed the left much more vigorously than the right. Merritt's and Custer's cavalry were transferred from the right to the left; and a severe contest took place in the thickly-wooded country near Middletown, in which the left had been placed by its rapid retreat.

"About nine o'clock Sheridan's army had got into line of battle again, and made desperate efforts to check the enemy. Both sides used artillery; but the Confederates had greatly the advantage in this arm, having not only their own batteries, but the captured guns of their antagonists besides. The Sixth corps held its ground well; but Crook's corps on the left was forced back, and the whole line gradually gave way, the enemy again getting past the National left flank, and finally gaining the village of Middletown, about three miles northeast of the position from which Sheridan's army had been driven. The principal aim of the National commanders now was to cover the trains and draw off the army with as little loss as possible to Newton, where they hoped to be able to re-form and offer an effective resistance. The battle had been completely lost. Camps, earth-works, some twenty-four guns and one thousand eight hundred prisoners—all were left in the hands of the enemy. The routed Nationals were flying in all directions, large numbers of them making their way to Winchester.

"Face the Other Way, Boys!"

"The National army fell back, as we have seen, first towards Middletown, and afterwards in the direction of Newton. About a mile or so in the rear of Middletown, Wright succeeded in restoring something like order. Sheridan was still absent. He had been, as we have mentioned, on a visit to Washington. On his return, he spent the night at Winchester. It was not until his army had been defeated that he was made aware of Early's attack. He was in his saddle in a minute. He had scarcely left Winchester when he beheld sad evidences of the disaster which had befallen his army. The road was covered with wagon trains and crowds of weary fugitives.

"As he rode along on his splendid charger, the air was rent with cheers. The fugitives felt abashed and halted; and the wounded by the wayside feebly waved a joyful salute. He did not slacken his pace to rebuke or encourage. Waving his hat to the cheering crowds, his horse still at full

gallop, he shouted, 'Face the other way, boys! Face the other way! We are going back to our camps. We are going to lick them out of their boots.' The words were electric. The tide of fugitives began to turn. As he neared the main body, the enthusiasm became unbounded. Officers and men tossed their hats and cheered to the echo. He repeated his fiery words, 'Boys, if I had been here this would never have happened. We are going back. We'll have all these camps and cannon back again.' What Sheridan said he meant; and the men believed him. He was in the field shortly after ten o'clock.

General Early Repulsed.

"There was a lull in the fight, which lasted several hours. Wright, as has been mentioned, had already restored order, and made dispositions, if not for attack, at least for effective resistance. Sheridan approved of the arrangements; and mid the most enthusiastic cheers, he rode along the lines, studying the ground and encouraging the men. About one o'clock Early made a charge, which was vigorously repulsed by Emory. About three o'clock Sheridan gave the order, 'The entire line will advance. The Nineteenth corps will move in connection with the Sixth. The right of the Nineteenth will swing to the left, so as to drive the enemy upon the pike.'

"The order was promptly obeyed. The entire line moved forward—Getty's division leading the charge. Merritt's cavalry covered the left flank; and Custer's cavalry was thrown out on the right. As the Nationals advanced they were checked for a moment by a tremendous fire of artillery and musketry. The check, however, was but momentary; for Emory swung around upon the foe, and by two gallant charges greatly disordered his lines. Almost at the same moment, the National cavalry fell upon Early's flank. The tide of battle had already turned.

"The Confederates fought with bravery and determination; but Sheridan's men now fighting in the presence of their favorite chief, were not to be resisted. The battle, in fact, was already won; and what was so recently a retreat, was now changed into a pursuit. It was a perfect rout. On his arrival, Sheridan said, 'We'll have all those camps and cannon back again.' His word was made good. That night, the National infantry halted within their old camps; but the cavalry pursued, hanging upon the flanks and rear of the retreating foe, until he was beyond Strasburg, and night fell upon the scene. Early halted for the night at Fisher's Hill, and in the morning resumed his retreat southward. In the pursuit, all the captured guns were recovered. The Nationals captured not only their own guns, but twenty-three of those of the enemy, together with one thousand five hundred prisoners, and any quantity of horses, mules, ambulances, wagons and stores of various kinds."

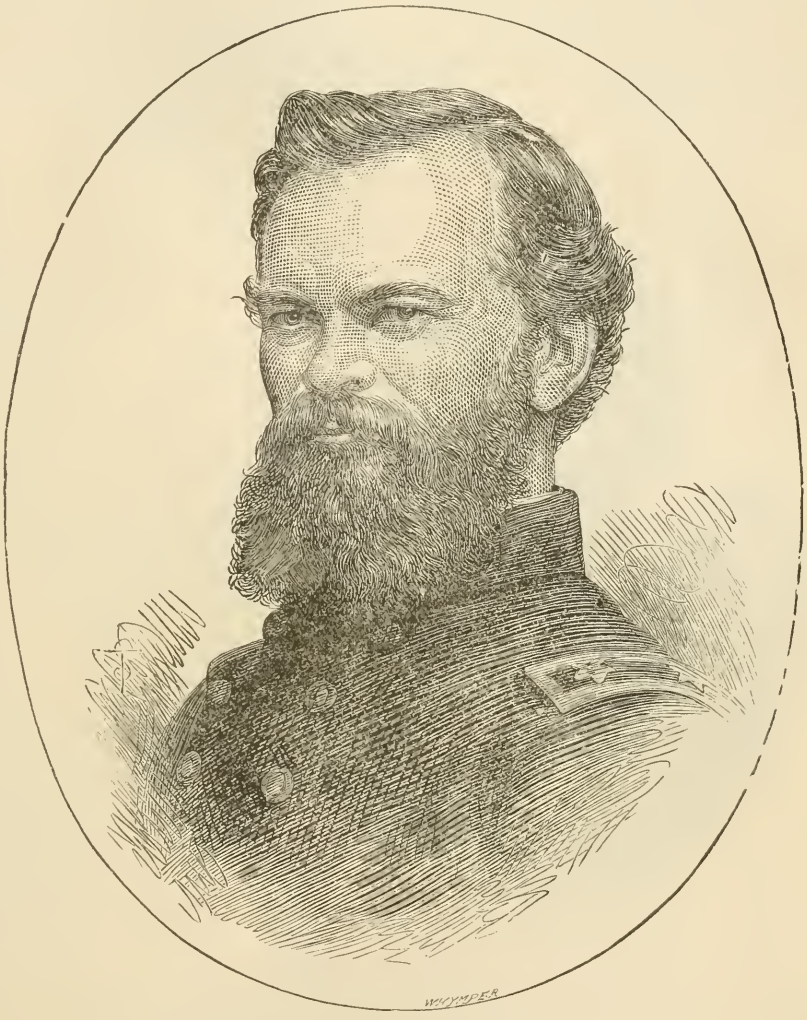
Sharp Struggle at Resaca.

The Western army under General Sherman was increased to one hundred thousand men and was concentrated in and around Chattanooga about the last of April. Opposed to this force, General Joseph E. Johnston had collected an army of fifty thousand men at Dalton, Georgia. The objective point of Sherman was Atlanta, Georgia, the key to the railroad system of the South.

On the seventh of May the Federal army began its advance. The position at Dalton being too strong to be assaulted, Sherman turned it by a flank movement upon Resaca, to which place Johnston fell back. On the fourteenth and fifteenth of May Sherman endeavored to force the Confederate lines near

Resaca, but without success. He therefore moved around Johnston's left again, and compelled him to fall back to Dallas. Severe fighting occurred on the twenty fifth at New Hope Church, but Johnston maintained his position. Heavy skirmishing ensued until the twenty-eighth, when Sherman having turned Allatoona Pass, Johnston occupied a new position, embracing Pine, Lost and Kenesaw Mountains. Between the fifteenth of June and the second of July Sherman made several attempts to force this position, which was one of the strongest yet occupied by the Confederates, and failing to carry it, again moved to the left and turned it.

Johnston at once fell back across the Chattahoochee and within the lines of Atlanta. He had prepared this city for a siege, and strongly fortified it. He had his army well in hand, and he was determined as soon as the Federal army had passed the Chattahoochee to attack Sherman and force him to a decisive encounter. He hoped to defeat him, and had purposely avoided a general battle until now. Should he succeed in his attempt the defeat of the Federal army at such a great distance from its base might result in its ruin, and at all events would be decisive of the campaign. At this juncture, however, he was removed from his command on the seventeenth of July by the Confederate President, who was greatly dissatisfied with the results of the campaign, and who, it was generally believed, was influenced by his personal hostility to Johnston.



MAJOR GENERAL JAMES B. M'PHERSON.

General John B. Hood, a gallant soldier, but unfit for the great task imposed upon him, was appointed to succeed General Johnston. In Johnston General Sherman

had recognized an antagonist of the first rank, and had conducted the campaign accordingly. He regarded the appointment of General Hood as greatly simplifying the task before him. The Federal army had already paid the heavy price of over thirty thousand men for its advance to Atlanta, while Johnston had lost less than eight thousand men. The conditions were now to be reversed.

GENERAL GEORGE H. THOMAS.

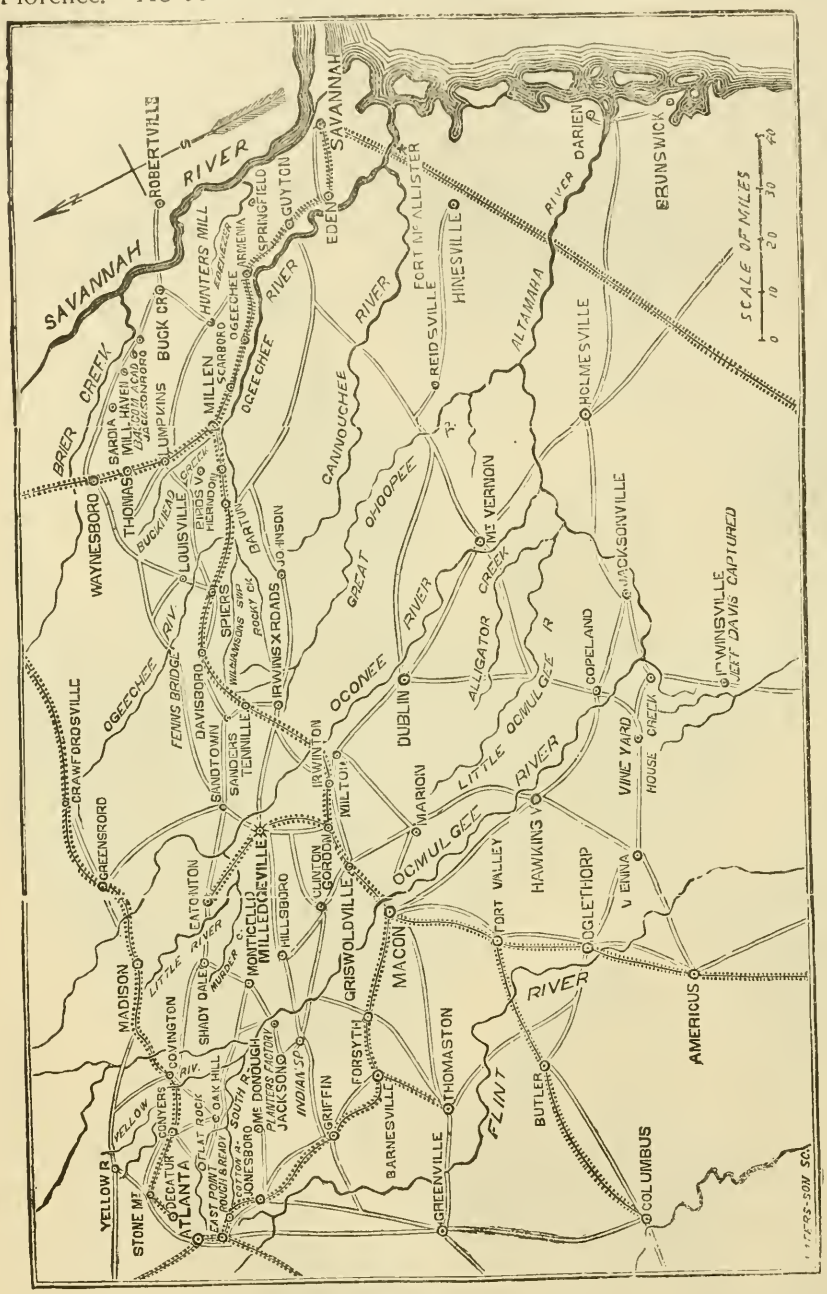
On the seventeenth of July the Union army crossed the Chattahoochee, and advanced towards Atlanta. On the twentieth and twenty-second Hood attacked the Federal lines on Peach Tree Creek, but only to be beaten back with a loss of over eight thousand men, without inflicting any serious injury upon the Union army, which, however, lost General McPherson, one of its ablest commanders. Sherman now drew in his lines closer to Atlanta, and by a skilful movement thrust his army between the two wings of Hood's forces, thus exposing them to the danger of being beaten in detail. This movement sealed the fate of Atlanta, which was evacuated by the Confederates on the thirty-first of August. On the second of September Sherman occupied the city. Hood retreated towards Macon. The loss of Atlanta was a serious blow to the South. It placed the Federal army in the heart of Georgia, and destroyed the principal source from which the Confederate armies were supplied with military stores, which had been manufactured in great quantities at Atlanta. Rome, Georgia, which was captured by Sherman's army during the campaign, was also largely engaged in the manufacture of arms and ammunition.

General Sherman was now anxious to march his army through Georgia, and unite with the Union forces on the coast, but he was unable as yet to undertake this movement, as Hood, with an army of thirty-five thousand men lay in his front, and his communications with Chattanooga and Knoxville were exposed to the raids of the Confederate cavalry. He now learned that the Confederate government had ordered General Hood to invade Tennessee for the purpose of drawing his army out of Georgia, and concluded to make no effort to prevent this movement. The task of watching Hood was confided to the Army of the Tennessee, under General George H. Thomas, who was given a sufficient force to hold Tennessee, and Sherman set about preparing his army for his march to the sea. Thomas was heavily reinforced from the North.

Hood began his forward movement towards the last of October, and on the thirty-first of

PORTRAITS OF SHERMAN AND SOME OF HIS COMMANDERS. 763

that month, crossed the Tennessee, near Florence. He remained on this river until the middle of November, and on the nineteenth, marched northward, forcing back the command of General Schofield, and effecting a passage of Duck River, on the twenty-ninth. Schofield fell back to Franklin eighteen miles south of Nashville. He was attacked on the thirtieth, by the Confederates and forced back to Nashville, within the defences of which city, General Thomas had collected an army of about forty thousand men. Hood invested the city, and hastened forward his preparations to assault the Federal works. General Thomas, however, anticipated him, and on the fifteenth of December, attacked the Confederate army and forced it back at all points. The next day, the sixteenth, the battle was renewed, and Hood was completely routed.



THE COUNTRY TRAVERSED BY SHERMAN IN HIS MARCH THROUGH GEORGIA.

On the seventeenth the Union army set out in pursuit of Hood's broken columns, and followed them for over fifty miles. But for the gallantry of a small rear guard, which preserved its discipline and covered the retreat to the last, the Confederate army would have been scattered beyond all hope of reunion. Hood recrossed

the Tennessee with barely twenty thousand men out of the thirty-five thousand with which he had begun the campaign. He had lost half of his generals and nearly all of his artillery. He fell back to Tupelo, Mississippi, and on the twenty-third of January, 1865, was, at his own request, relieved of his command. In the meantime General Sherman, leaving Thomas to deal with Hood, had begun his march through the State of Georgia. Satisfied that the war was practically decided in the Southwest, he proposed to march to the sea near Savannah, and thence through the Confederacy to the position of General Grant's army. This movement would compel the Confederates to mass their forces in his front, and would confine the decisive operations of the war to the country between his own and Grant's armies, between which it was believed the Southern forces could be crushed. Everything being in readiness, Sherman cut loose from his communications with Chattanooga and set fire to Atlanta. On the fourteenth of November he set out on his "March to the Sea," at the head of a splendid army of sixty thousand men. He ravaged the country as

MAP SHOWING THE CITY OF MOBILE AND ITS DEFENCES.

he went, leaving behind him a broad belt of desolation, sixty miles in width and three hundred in length.

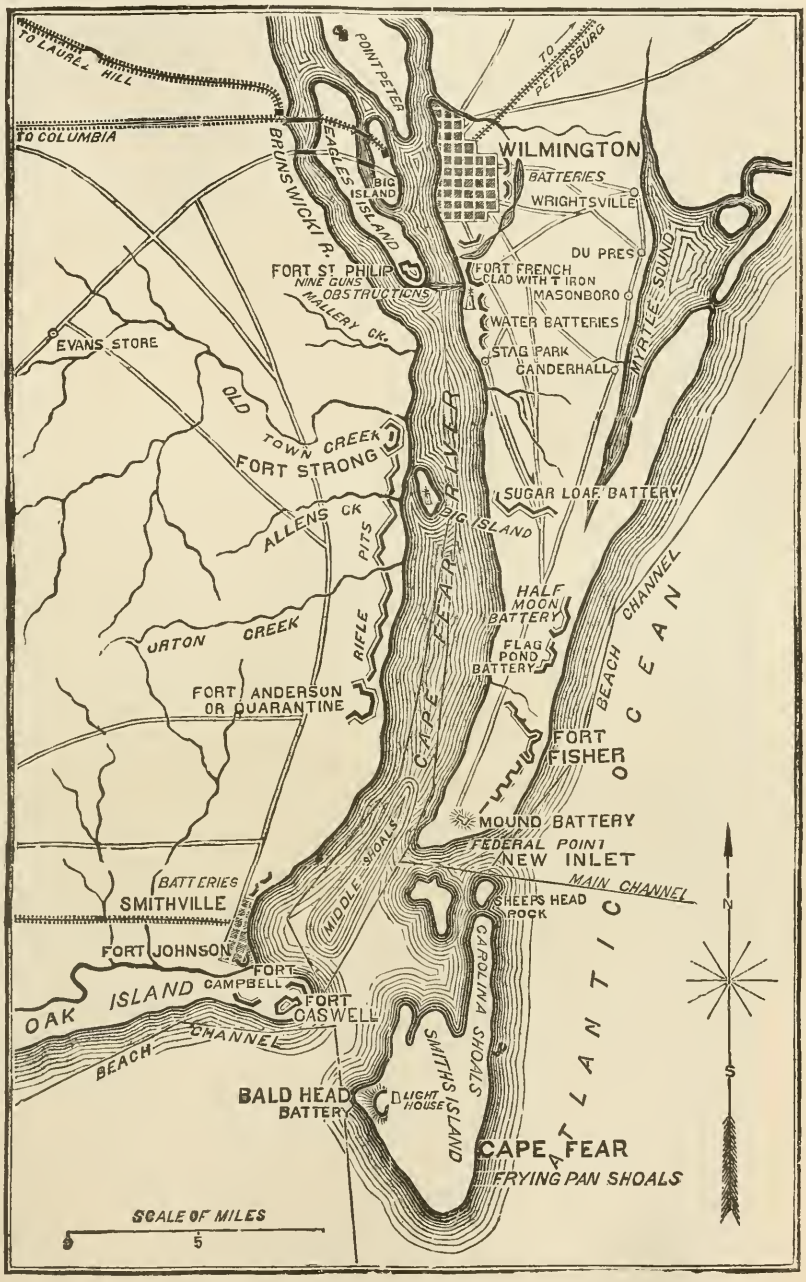
The Confederates had not sufficient force to offer serious opposition to his march, and in about four weeks he reached the coast near the mouth of the Savannah River. On the thirteenth of December he stormed and captured Fort McAllister, which commanded that river. The city of Savannah was thus left at Sherman's mercy, and was occupied by his army on the twenty-second of December. By this successful march to the sea, General Sherman had not only gotten his army in a position to co-operate with Grant in the final struggle of the war, but had struck terror to the South. The most hopeful Confederate now saw that the triumph of the Union cause was inevitable and close at hand.

COMMODORE DAVID G. FARRAGUT.

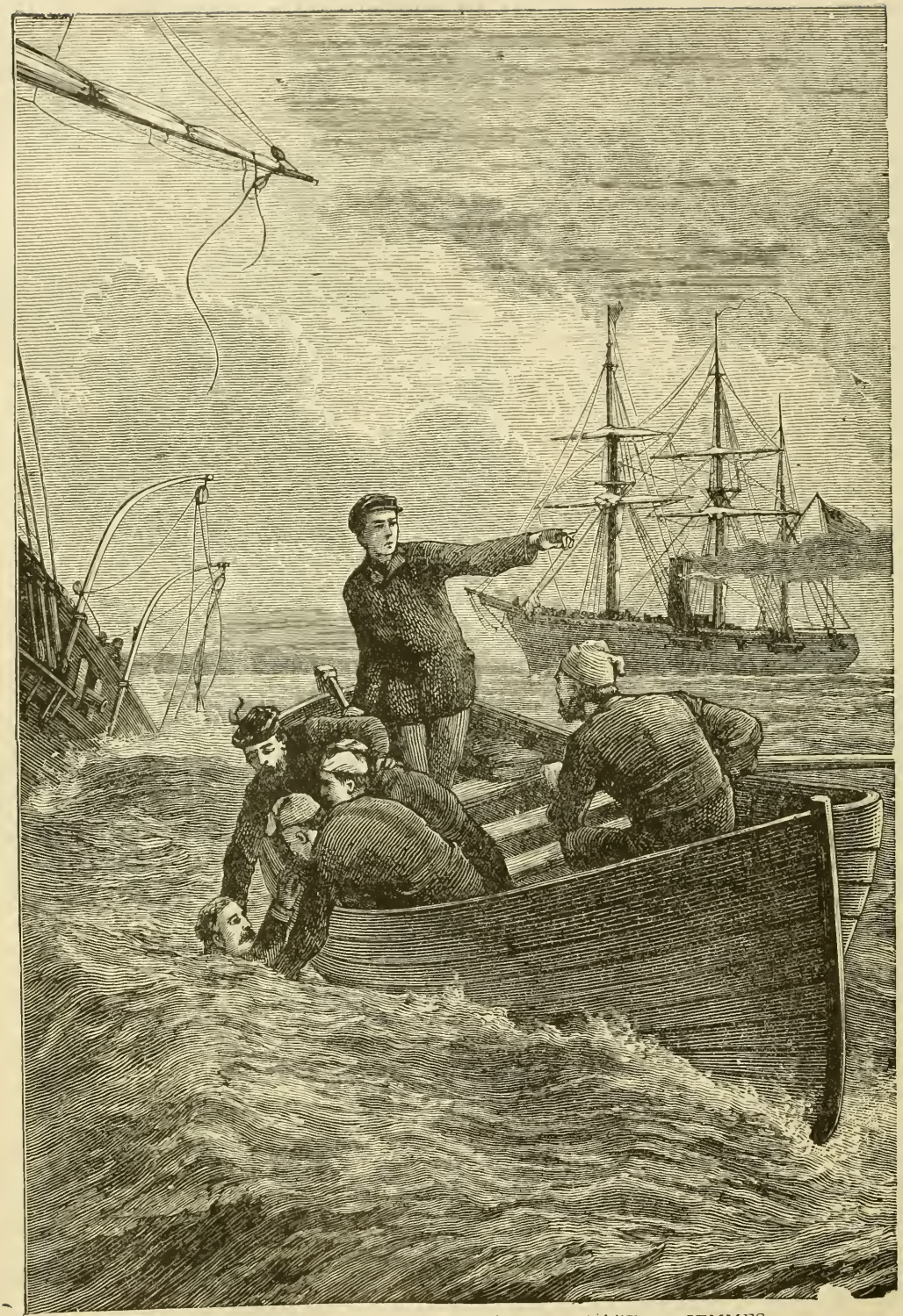
During the year important operations had been undertaken by the Federal forces on the coast. In July, a powerful fleet under Admiral Farragut, accompanied by a strong force of troops under General Granger, was sent against Mobile. This city was one of the principal ports of the Confederacy and was strongly fortified. The entrance to the bay was commanded by Forts Morgan and Gaines, two powerful works built before the war, and a number of batteries and a Confederate fleet under Admiral Buchanan—who had commanded the "Virginia" in her fight with the "Monitor"—lay beyond the forts ready to contest the possession of the bay.

On the fifth of August Farragut passed the forts with his fleet with the loss of but one iron-clad, and entered Mobile Bay. He immediately attacked the Confederate fleet, the flag-ship of which was a powerful iron-clad ram — the "Tennessee." After one of the most desperate fights in naval annals, the entire fleet was destroyed or captured by the Union vessels. Fort Powell was evacuated and blown up by its garrison on the same day. On the seventh of August Fort Gaines surrendered to General Granger, and on the twenty-third Fort Morgan also capitulated. These successes made the Federal forces masters of Mobile Bay, and closed the port to blockade-runners; but the city, which was strongly fortified, was not taken until the next year.

Wilmington, on the Cape Fear River, was now the only port in the Confederacy remaining open to blockade runners. It was defended by Fort Fisher, an unusually formidable work near the mouth of the Cape Fear. A larger fleet than had yet been employed during the war was assembled in Hampton Roads under Admiral Porter. A force of eight thousand troops under General Butler was embarked, and the expedition



CAPE FEAR RIVER AND APPROACHES TO WILMINGTON, N. C.



768 BOAT OF THE "DEERHOUND" RESCUING CAPTAIN SEMMES.

sailed to the Cape Fear. Fort Fisher was subjected to a vigorous bombardment, which was begun on the twenty-fourth of December, and the troops were landed; but at the last moment General Butler decided that the fort was too strong to be assaulted, and the expedition returned to Hampton Roads.

Mobile in August of that year. In January, 1863, she ran the blockade, and in three months captured and destroyed fifteen merchant vessels. She was at length seized in the harbor of Bahia, in Brazil, by a Federal man-of-war, and taken to Hampton Roads. The Brazilian Government, resenting this

SINKING OF THE "ALABAMA" BY THE "KEARSARGE."

Since the opening of the war the Confederate cruisers had nearly driven the commerce of the Northern States from the ocean. These vessels were built in England, and were usually manned by crews of English seamen under Confederate naval officers. One of these, the "Florida," put to sea in the summer of 1862, and succeeded in reaching

breach of its neutrality, demanded the release of the "Florida," but while the negotiations were in progress, she was sunk in Hampton Roads by a collision with another vessel.

The most famous of all the Confederate cruisers, was the "Alabama." She was built at Liverpool, and was suffered to go to sea in spite of the protest of the American

minister at London. She was commanded by Captain Raphael Semmes, and during her long career, captured sixty-five merchant vessels, and destroyed over ten millions of dollars worth of property. During her entire career, she never entered a Confederate port.

In the summer of 1864, she put into the harbor of Cherbourg, in France, and was blockaded there by the United States war steamer, "Kearsarge," Captain Winslow. The French government ordered the "Alabama" to leave Cherbourg, and she went to sea on the nineteenth of June. She was at once attacked by the "Kearsarge," and was sunk by the guns of that steamer, after an

RAPHAEL SEMMES

engagement of an hour and a quarter. Semmes was saved from drowning by the English yacht, "Deerhound," that had witnessed the battle and was set ashore. The destruction of the "Alabama" was hailed with delight throughout the North.

In the fall of 1864, the presidential election was held in the States remaining faithful to the Union. The Republican party nominated President Lincoln for re-election, and Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee for the vice-presidency. The Democratic party supported General George B. McClellan for the presidency, and George H. Pendleton, of Ohio, for the vice-presidency. Mr. Lincoln received at the polls, 2,213,665 votes to 1,802,237 cast for McClellan; and the electoral votes of every State, save those of New Jersey, Delaware, and Kentucky, were cast for him.

On the thirty-first of October, 1864, Nevada was admitted into the Union as a separate State.

The year 1864 closed brilliantly for the Union cause. Though the Confederates had gained a number of important victories during the year, they had, on the whole, steadily lost ground. Virginia, Tennessee, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi and Florida, were overrun by the Federal armies, and on the coast there was not a single port remaining open to the Confederacy save that of Wilmington, which was blockaded by a powerful fleet.

A Million Union Troops.

It was evident that the coming spring campaign would end the war. The Federal forces had been increased to the enormous total of one million of men. The Confederates could bring into the field scarcely two hundred thousand men, and for these it was difficult to find subsistence. The vicious financial system adopted by the Confederate Government had run its appointed course, and the notes of the Confederate Treasury were worth scarcely three or four cents on the dollar.

The year 1865 opened with an effort to secure the return of peace without further bloodshed. In January Mr. F. P. Blair, Sr., came from Washington to Richmond, and on his own responsibility proposed to the Confederate Government the appointment of commissioners to negotiate with the Federal Government for the close of the war. The following commissioners were appointed by the Confederate Government: Alexander H. Stephens, Vice-President of the Confederate States; R. M. T. Hunter, Senator from Virginia in the Confederate Congress, and John A. Campbell, Assistant Secretary of War.

PORTRAITS OF PROMINENT FEDERAL GENERALS.

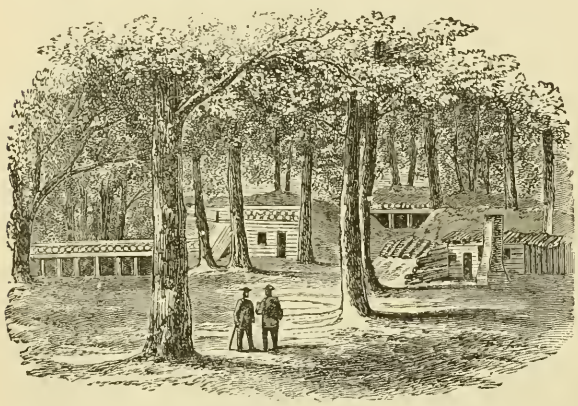
They proceeded to City Point under a safe conduct from General Grant, and were conveyed from that place to Hampton Roads in a Government steamer. On the third of February President Lincoln and Secretary Seward having reached Hampton Roads, an informal conference was held between the President and the commissioners. The President refused to entertain any propositions which were not based upon the unconditional submission of the Southern States to the authority of the Union, and as the commissioners had no authority from their government to enter into any such arrangement the conference accomplished nothing.

MAJOR-GENERAL J. M. SCHOFIELD.

In the meantime, however, Admiral Porter, undaunted by the failure of Butler to take Fort Fisher, had remained off the fort with his fleet and had asked for troops to renew the attempt. The same force that Butler had commanded, with fifteen hundred additional men, was placed under General Terry's command and ordered to join Porter. This force arrived off Fort Fisher on the twelfth of January, and on the morning of the thirteenth accomplished its landing with success. A terrible fire was rained upon the fort by the fleet during the thirteenth and fourteenth, and on the fourteenth a daring reconnoissance of the Union force revealed the fact that the fort had been severely damaged by this bombardment. The trenches of the Union army were pushed rapidly through the sand to within two hundred yards of Fort Fisher in order to attract the attention of the garrison, and on the fifteenth a feint was made by a force of sailors and marines from the fleet in this direction. At the same time the troops under General Terry stormed the fort from the land side, and after a hard hand-to-hand struggle of about five hours, during which each traverse was carried in succession by a separate fight, Fort Fisher was captured.

PORTRAITS OF FEDERAL CAVALRY COMMANDERS.

On the sixteenth and seventeenth the Confederates blew up their other works at the mouth of the Cape Fear and retreated towards Wilmington. The mouth of the river was now in the possession of the Federal forces, and the last port of the South was closed. A number of blockade runners, ignorant of the capture, ran into the river and fell into the hands of the victors. Later in the month, General J. M. Schofield was placed in command of the department of North Carolina, and on the twenty-second of February occupied the city of Wilmington, North Carolina, with his troops.



INTERIOR OF FORT STEADMAN.

Sherman, after the capture of Savannah, allowed his army a month's rest on the coast, and towards the end of January moved northward through South Carolina towards Virginia. His force was sixty thousand strong and moved in four columns, covering a front of fifty miles. His route was marked by the same desolation he had spread through Georgia. The roads were in a horrible condition, and in many places the men were forced to wade through the icy waters up to the armpits. Still he pressed on right into the heart of the Confederacy. On the seventeenth of February he reached Columbia, South Carolina, having destroyed the railroad leading north from Charleston.

General Hardee, commanding the Confederate forces at Charleston, apprehensive of being shut up in that city, which was utterly unprepared for a siege, evacuated Charleston and its defences on the seventeenth of February and retreated northward to join General Johnston in North Carolina. The next day Charleston was occupied by the Federal forces. Fort Sumter was also taken possession of at the same time. The fort was a mass of ruins; the city was not much better off. It had suffered severely from the bombardment to which it had been subjected since the fall of Fort Wagner, and the Confederates upon their withdrawal had set fire to a considerable part of it.

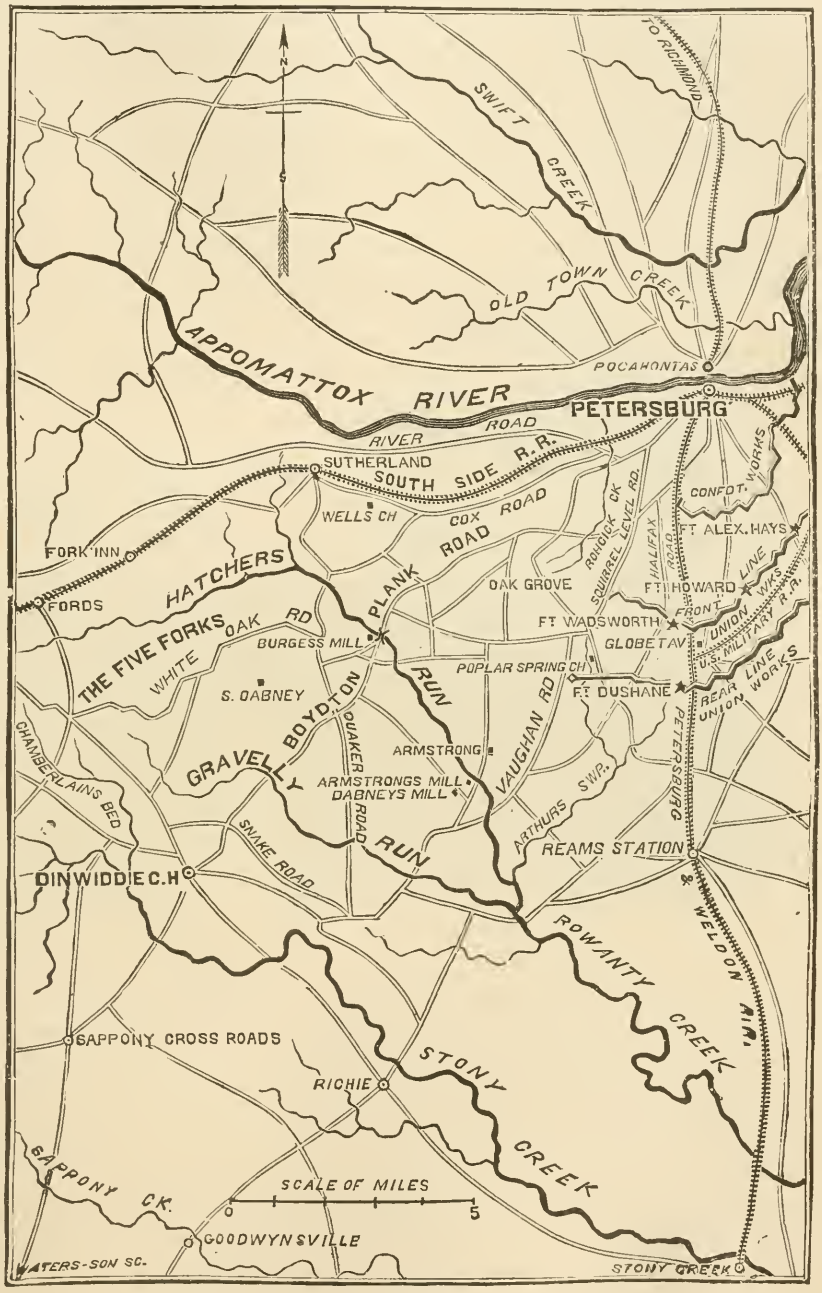
From Columbia, Sherman moved towards Fayetteville, North Carolina, driving back the Confederate forces that resisted his progress, and entered that place on the twelfth of March. From Fayetteville he moved towards Goldsborough.

The Confederate government, in the emergency to which it was reduced, was obliged to reappoint General Joseph E. Johnston to the command of the force assembling in Sherman's front. Johnston succeeded in collecting about thirty-five thousand troops, with which he attacked Sherman at Averasborough on the sixteenth of March, and again at Bentonville on the nineteenth. The Confederates fought with their old enthusiasm in these encounters, but were unable to stay the progress of the Federal army, and on the twenty-third of March Sherman occupied Goldsborough. Johnston withdrew towards Raleigh. At Goldsborough Sherman was joined by the forces of Generals Schofield and Terry, which had come up from the coast.

The armies of Grant and Lee had lain confronting each other during the winter. General Lee had little hope of maintaining

his position after the opening of hostilities. His army was growing weaker from sickness and desertion, and no more men could be obtained. The Confederate Congress made a feeble effort during the winter to enlist negro troops in its service, but with singular recklessness refused to offer the boon of freedom to such of the blacks as would take up arms. That body believed that the negroes would fight for their own enslavement.

Early having been driven out of the valley, General Sheridan was ordered to start from Winchester with a column of ten thousand cavalry, and cut the communications of Lee's army by railroad and telegraph north and east of Richmond. He left Winchester on the twenty-seventh of February, and defeating Early's force at Waynesborough, broke the Virginia Central Railroad at that point and moved to Charlottesville, which surrendered to him. He then divided his force into two columns and resumed his "ride" on the sixth of March. He most thoroughly destroyed the railroad between Charlottesville and Lynchburg for about forty miles, and the canal between Richmond and Lynchburg shared the same fate for a



POSITIONS OF THE ARMIES NEAR PETERSBURG, VA.

considerable distance. Being unable to cross the James above Richmond on account of the high water, he moved around the north of Richmond, crossed the river at Deep Bottom and joined Grant before Petersburg on the twenty-sixth of March. He had utterly laid waste the country along his route. The arrival of this splendid force of cavalry was of the greatest service to Grant, as we shall see.

The situation of General Lee's army was

GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE.

growing more critical every day. He had less than forty thousand troops. He was fully convinced of the necessity of abandoning Richmond and Petersburg, and was anxious to do so at once, and unite his army with that of General Johnston and occupy a new position in the interior of the South. In order to secure the withdrawal of his army, he determined to make a vigorous attack upon Grant's right, hoping to compel him, in order to help his right, to draw back his left wing, which was in dangerous proximity to the road by which Lee wished to retreat. Could he succeed in this effort, he meant to evacuate his position at Petersburg and retire towards Danville, where he hoped to unite with General Johnston.

On the twenty-fifth of March, he made a heavy attack upon Fort Steadman, on the right of Grant's line, and captured it. The Federal forces rallied, however, and drove the Confederates from the captured works back to their own line, inflicting upon them a loss of three thousand men. Lee had now no alternative but to await the movements of General Grant, as he could not afford to make the sacrifice of men which a renewal of his efforts would require of him.

General Grant lost no time in taking the field. By the last of March, his army, numbering about one hundred and seventy thousand men, including Sheridan's magnificent cavalry division, was in readiness to begin the campaign. On the twenty-ninth of March, the advance of the Federal army was begun. Leaving the bulk of his army before Petersburg, Grant sent a column of twenty-five thousand men to turn the Confederate right and seize the South-side railroad, Lee's only means of communication with Johnston's army and the country in his rear. By the morning of the thirtieth, the Federal left had gotten fairly to the right of the Confederates.

On the thirtieth, a heavy storm prevented a further advance, and Lee took advantage of the delay to reinforce his right wing with all the troops he could spare. On the thirty-first, he attempted to drive back the Federal left, but without success. While this battle was going on, Sheridan swung around the Confederate right and seized the important position of Five Forks. Lee then sent Pickett's and Johnston's divisions to recover this point, and they drove off the cavalry, and

occupied Five Forks at night-fall on the thirty-first. Being joined by the Fifth corps, Sheridan attacked the Confederates on the morning of the first of April, and defeated them after a determined encounter, taking over five thousand prisoners.

As soon as Sheridan had secured Five Forks, Grant opened a heavy artillery fire upon the lines of Petersburg along his whole front, and continued the bombardment through the night. On the morning of the second of April he made a determined attack upon Lee's line and broke it at several points. General Lee was now forced to assume a new and shorter line immediately around Petersburg. The Federal army made a vigorous effort to force its way into the city, but was unsuccessful.

The fate of Petersburg was now decided. It was impossible to hold it longer. On the night of the second of April General Lee withdrew his army from Richmond and Petersburg and retreated in the direction of Amelia Court-house. His intention was to move towards Danville and endeavor to join Johnston. His retreat was discovered on the morning of the third of April, and the Federal army, leaving a small force to occupy Petersburg, set off in pursuit, following the line of the Southside Railroad.

On the morning of the third the withdrawal of the Confederates from the lines of Richmond was discovered by General Weitzel commanding the Federal forces on the north side of the James. He at once advanced and occupied the city of Richmond, a large part of which was in flames as he entered it, having been set on fire by the Confederates upon their evacuation of it. Thus fell the Confederate capital after four long years of bloody war for its possession.

Upon reaching Amelia Court-house General Lee found that the supplies he had ordered to be sent there from Danville were not to be had. The trains sent from Danville by his instructions had been ordered to Richmond to remove the property of the Confederate government, and had not been allowed to unload their stores at Amelia Court-house. This was a terrible blow to Lee, who was now unable to furnish food to his troops, who had eaten nothing since the commencement of the retreat. Parties were sent into the surrounding country to obtain supplies, and this consumed the whole of the fourth and fifth of April, which Lee had hoped to spend in pushing on beyond his pursuers.

THE LAST CAVALRY CHARGE OF THE WAR.

The delay enabled Sheridan, with eighteen thousand mounted men, to seize the Confederate line of retreat at Jetersville. This

movement put an end to Lee's hope of reaching Danville and joining Johnston. A battle was impossible, for Sheridan had a force nearly equal to his own, and Grant was hurrying on with the rest of the Federal army. General Lee therefore turned off and retreated towards Farmville, hoping to be able to reach Lynchburg, but Sheridan, after passing Farmville, pushed forward again, and by a forced march reached Appomattox Station, on the Southside Railroad, on the night of the eighth, and planted his force squarely across the Confederate line of retreat.

Surrender of General Lee.

The next morning Lee, when near Appomattox Court-house, discovered this obstacle in his way, and about the same time Sheridan was joined by the Army of the James, under General Ord, while the Army of the Potomac, under General Meade, was closing in fast upon Lee's rear. General Lee had now but eight thousand men with arms in their hands. The bulk of his forces, being too much broken down by fatigue and hunger to keep their places in their ranks, accompanied the regiments in a disorganized mass. As soon as he discovered Sheridan in his front, Lee attempted to cut his way through his lines, but failing in this effort, and being convinced that further resistance would merely be a useless sacrifice of his men, he asked for a suspension of hostilities, and went to meet General Grant.

The two commanders met at a house near Appomattox Court-house, and after a brief interview arranged the terms of the surrender. General Grant treated the beaten army with great liberality. The hungry Confederates were fed by the victors, and after laying down their arms were permitted to return to their homes. In order that the men might betake themselves as soon as possible to the cultivation of the soil, and so avoid the suffering which the failure of the harvest would entail upon the South, General Grant released all captured horses which were identified as the property of the soldiers surrendering them.

The terms of the surrender were arranged on the ninth of April. On the twelfth the Army of Northern Virginia formed in divisions for the last time, and marching to a designated spot near Appomattox Court-house, laid down its arms, and disbanded. About seventy-five hundred men with arms, and about eighteen thousand unarmed stragglers, took part in the surrender. The Federal troops treated their vanquished opponents with true soldierly kindness, and carefully refrained from everything which might seem to insult the valor that had won their earnest admiration.

Terms of Surrender.

The following is a detailed account of the correspondence which passed between Generals Grant and Lee, and a full statement of the terms upon which the Confederate General surrendered his army. On the evening of April 7th Lee received Grant's first letter.

"April 7th, 1865.

"GENERAL: The result of the last week must convince you of the hopelessness of further resistance on the part of the Army of Northern Virginia in this struggle. I feel that it is so, and regard it as my duty to shift from myself the responsibility of any further effusion of blood, by asking of you the surrender of that portion of the Confederate States army known as the Army of Northern Virginia.

"U. S. GRANT, *Lieut.-General.*

"General R. E. LEE."

To this letter Lee wrote an immediate answer; but it was not until the following morning that it reached Grant at Farmville. It was couched in these words:

"April 7th, 1865.

"GENERAL: I have received your note of this date. Though not entertaining the opinion you express of the hopelessness of further resistance on the

part of the Army of Northern Virginia, I reciprocate your desire to avoid useless effusion of blood, and, therefore, before considering your proposition, ask the terms you will offer, on condition of its surrender.

"R. E. LEE, *General.*

"Lieut.-General U. S. GRANT."

On the instant Grant replied as follows:

"April 8th, 1865.

"GENERAL: Your note of last evening, in reply to mine of the same date, asking the condition on which I will accept the surrender of the Army of Northern Virginia, is just received. In reply, I would say that *peace* being my first desire, there is but one condition that I insist upon, viz.: That the men surrendered shall be disqualified for taking up arms against the government of the United States until properly exchanged. I will meet you, or designate officers to meet any officers you may name for the same purpose, at any point agreeable to you, for the purpose of arranging definitely, the terms upon which the surrender of the Army of Northern Virginia will be received.

"U. S. GRANT, *Lieut.-General.*

"General R. E. LEE."

Lee was in a strongly intrenched position, a few miles to the north of the Appomattox. As soon as he indited his reply to Grant's first message he resumed his retreat under cover of the darkness; and so quietly was it conducted that Humphreys was ignorant of the fact until morning, when he was prepared to renew the attack. Lee's skillful generalship was again conspicuously revealed. Ever vigilant, ever fertile in resource, and ever active, he had again put miles between himself and his pursuers.

Lee's Hurried Retreat.

The fact that Lee had retreated during the night was at once made known to Grant, who immediately gave orders for the renewal of the pursuit. The Second and Sixth corps, under the immediate direction of Meade, who was accompanied by the General-in-chief, were pushed forward with all possible haste along the north bank of the Appomattox. Sheridan meanwhile had made excellent use both of his troopers and of his time. Lee was pressing along that gradually narrowing neck of land which lies between the headwaters of the Appomattox and the affluents of the James.

It was of the utmost importance that Sheridan should be able to interpose his troops between Lee's army and Lynchburg. If he could close the outlet in the direction of that city it would be all over with Lee, pursued closely as he was by the Second and Sixth corps, under the direction of Meade and the General-in-chief. This was precisely what Sheridan was aiming at, and what, within a few hours, he actually did accomplish. Having learned from one of his scouts early on the morning of the eighth that four trains of cars with supplies for Lee's army were at Appomattox Station, he at once notified Merritt and Crook, and briskly pushed the whole command towards that point.

Desperate Attempt to Escape.

Lee was not ignorant of the extreme peril of his situation; but he kept pressing eagerly forward, still clinging to the skirts of hope, and, in spite of almost irresistible evidence to the contrary, indulging the thought that he might yet find refuge among the ranges of the Blue Ridge, beyond Lynchburg. In these circumstances he received Grant's second letter, and replied as follows:

"April 8th, 1865.

"GENERAL: I received at a late hour your note of to-day. In mine of yesterday, I did not intend to propose the surrender of the Army of Northern Virginia, but to ask the terms of your proposition. To be frank, I do not think the emergency has arisen to call for the surrender of this army; but as the restoration of peace should be the sole object of all, I desire to know whether your proposals would tend to that end. I cannot, therefore, meet you with a view to surrender the Army of Northern Virginia; but so far as your proposition may affect the Confederate States forces under my command, and tend to the restoration of peace, I should be pleased to meet

you at ten A. M., to-morrow, on the old stage-road to Richmond, between the picket-lines of the two armies.

"R. E. LEE, *General.*

"Lieut.-General U. S. GRANT."

This note was received by Grant about midnight; and he replied next morning in the following terms:

"April 8th, 1865.

"GENERAL: Your note of yesterday is received.

GENERAL JOHN B. GORDON.

As I have no authority to treat on the subject of peace, the meeting proposed for ten A. M., to-day, could lead to no good. I will state, however, General, that I am equally anxious for peace with yourself; and the whole North entertain the same feeling. The terms upon which peace can be had are well understood. By the South laying down their arms they will hasten that most desirable event, save thousands of human lives, and hundreds of millions of property not yet destroyed. Sincerely hoping that all our difficulties may be settled without the loss of another life, I subscribe myself,

"U. S. GRANT, *Lieutenant-General.*

"General R. E. LEE."

As soon as he had finished this letter Grant left Meade in charge of the Second and Sixth corps and hurried on to join Sheridan and Griffin. While the letter was on its way, and before the General-in-chief had joined the one or the other, further parley had become unnecessary. Sheridan had already settled the question. On the morning of the eighth, after a forced march of about thirty miles, his advance, under Custer, had reached Appomattox Station, about four miles to the south of Appomattox Court House. Lee's vanguard had just arrived with four trains of cars, laden with supplies.

Custer Makes a Dash.

Custer, with lightning-like rapidity, dashed upon the rear of the trains, and captured them. Supported by Devin, who had come up, he then rushed with fierce energy on the vanguard, and drove it back to Appomattox Court House, near which was the main body of Lee's army. Twenty-five guns, a hospital train, a large number of additional wagons, with many prisoners, were captured by the National cavalry. Sheridan, hurrying forward with the remainder of his command, flung himself across the line of Lee's retreat, with the determination of holding his ground at any and every risk until the morning, when, he knew, he would be joined by Ord, and the Army of the James, and by Griffin with the Fifth corps. He knew also that by that time, Meade, with the Second and Sixth corps, would be well forward and able to fall with effect on the Confederate rear.

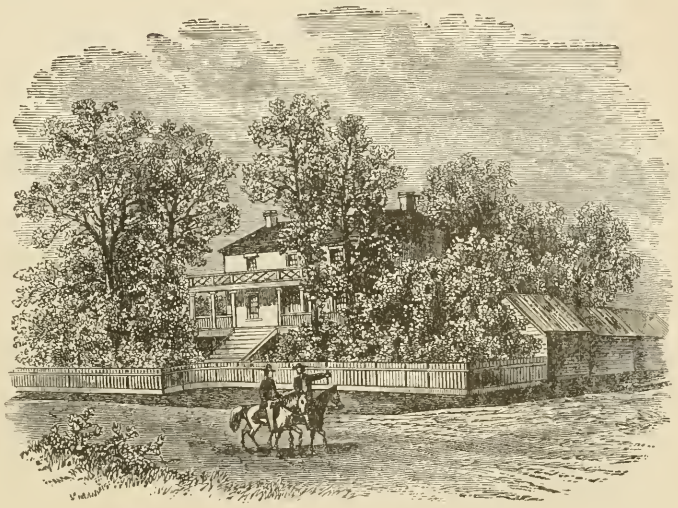
Such was the situation of affairs on the night of the eighth. Lee was completely cut off from his own line of retreat. Brave and resolute to the last, and believing that he had nothing but cavalry in front of him, he

decided to make an attempt, at least, to cut through Sheridan's lines.

Early on the morning of the ninth Lee was ready to carry out his purpose. His heart, however, must have bled within him, when he looked around him, and beheld the wretched remnant of what was once the proud and invincible army of Northern Virginia. It consisted of two thin lines—the one composed of what was left of Hill's, now Gordon's command, the other of the wreck of Longstreet's corps. Between these lines were the *debris* of the wagon-train, and some thousands of miserable creatures who were too weak to carry arms. Lee gave orders to Gordon to cut his way through, at all hazards. The charge was made with tremendous energy. Such, in truth, was the violence of the shock, and so persistent was the pressure, that Sheridan's men who had dismounted to resist the attack, were forced back.

At this critical moment, Sheridan, who had been to Appomattox Station for the purpose of hurrying forward Ord, arrived on the scene of action. Knowing well the purpose of the enemy, and keenly alive to the value of time, he directed his troopers to fall back gradually, but to continue to offer a firm and steady resistance, so as to allow Ord, with his infantry, to come up and form his lines. This done, they were to move to the right and mount. Sheridan's orders were admirably executed. As soon as the cavalry moved towards their own right, the Confederates beheld to their amazement, the glittering arms and serried ranks of the infantry.

The unlooked-for vision had all the effect of a stunning and unexpected blow. The Confederates immediately discontinued their pressure, and began to give way. The National infantry were now pressing upon the confused and bewildered multitude. Sheridan had ridden round to the Confederate left flank; his bugles had sounded the order to remount, and he was just about to fall with all his weight on the already disordered mass, when a flag of truce was presented to Custer who led the advance. Sheridan rode to Appomattox Court House, where he was met by General Gordon and General Wilcox. Gordon asked for a suspension of hostilities,

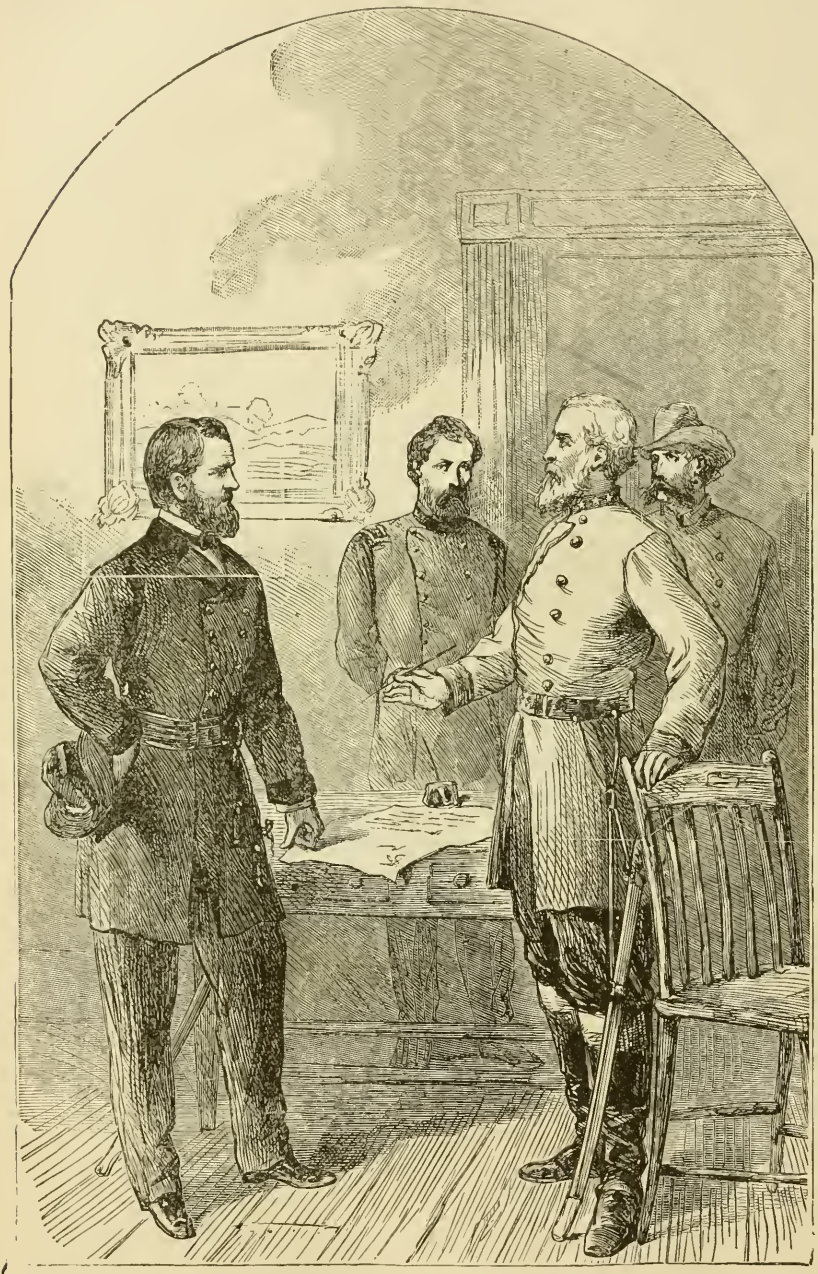


THE McLEAN HOUSE.

and informed Sheridan that Grant and Lee were, even now, making arrangements for the surrender of the Army of Northern Virginia. There was no more fighting between the two great rival armies—the Army of the Potomac and the Army of Northern Virginia.

On the morning of the ninth, a heavy fog enveloped the entire country around Appomattox Court House. Long before that fog dispersed, Lee, clad in a new gray uniform, might have been seen at a camp-fire with Mahone and Longstreet. Care and anxiety were written on each of their countenances. Longstreet, his arm in a sling, and a cigar in

his mouth, sat on the trunk of a felled tree. Gordon had been sent on his mission. It was agreed that if success were denied him there was no longer any chance of escape. Of Gordon's failure to penetrate the National lines, they were soon made aware.



SURRENDER OF GENERAL LEE.

Lee mounted his horse. "General Longstreet," he said, "I leave you in charge; I am going to hold a conference with General Grant." He then rode off. On his way he received Grant's letter, before quoted. He replied immediately:

"April 9, 1865.

"GENERAL: I received your note of this morning, on the picket-line, whither I had come to meet you, and ascertain definitely what terms were embraced in your proposition of yesterday, with reference to the surrender of this army. I now ask an interview, in accordance with the offer contained in your letter of yesterday for that purpose.

"R. E. LEE, *General.*

"Lieut.-General
U. S. GRANT."

To this Grant replied as follows:

"April 9th, 1865.

"GENERAL: Your note of this date is but this moment (11.50 A. M.) received. In consequence of my having passed from the Richmond and Lynchburg road to the Farmville and Lynchburg road, I am at this writing about four miles west of Walter's Church, and will push forward to the front for the purpose of meeting you. Notice sent to me on this

GENERAL LEE'S FAREWELL TO HIS SOLDIERS.

road, where you wish the interview to take place, will meet me.

"U. S. GRANT, *Lieutenant-General.*

"General R. E. LEE."

The scene and the main features of the interview have been preserved for us by an eye-witness. It took place at the house of Mr. Wilmer McLean—a square brick building surrounded with roses, violets and daffodils. Grant—with his slouched hat, dark blue frock-coat unbuttoned and covered with mud, gray pantaloons tucked in his soiled boots, and a dark waistcoat, and with nothing to indicate his rank, except the double row of brass buttons and the three silver stars—walked up to the house, accompanied by Ord, Sheridan and their respective staffs. Lee had already arrived; and his blooded iron-gray horse, in charge of an orderly, was nibbling at the grass. Grant and two aids entered the house; the others who accompanied him, sat down on the porch. Lee was standing beside a table, wearing a bright bluish-gray uniform, a military hat, with a gold cord, buckskin gauntlets, high riding boots, and the splendid dress-sword which had been presented to him by the State of Virginia. Tall and erect, he had a fine soldierly bearing. It was noticed that his hair was long and gray. He was attended only by Colonel Marshall, his chief of staff. On Grant's entrance the two shook hands, sat down and proceeded to business.

Grant Delivers His Terms.

As Lee made no special request, Grant at once wrote out his terms:

"APPOMATTOX COURT HOUSE, April 9, 1865.

"GENERAL: In accordance with the substance of my letter to you of the eighth instant, I propose to receive the surrender of the Army of Northern Virginia on the following terms, to wit: Rolls of all the officers and men to be made in duplicate, one copy to be given to an officer designated by me, the other to be retained by such officers as you may designate. The officers to give their individual paroles not to take up arms against the Government of the United States until properly exchanged, and each company or regimental commander to sign a like parole for the men of his command. The arms, artillery and public property to be parked and stacked and turned over to the officers appointed by me to receive them. This will not embrace the side-arms of the officers, nor their private horses or baggage. This done, each officer and man will be allowed to return to his home, not to be disturbed by United States authority so long as they observe their paroles and the laws in force where they may reside.

"U. S. GRANT, *Lieutenant-General.*

"General R. E. LEE."

The following is Lee's letter of acceptance:

"HEADQUARTERS ARMY OF NORTHERN VIRGINIA, April 9, 1865.

"GENERAL: I have received your letter of this date, containing the terms of the surrender of the Army of Northern Virginia, as proposed by you. As they are substantially the same as those expressed in your letter of the eighth instant, they are accepted. I will proceed to designate the proper officers to carry the stipulations into effect.

"R. E. LEE, *General.*

"Lieut.-General U. S. GRANT."

The signatures had just been attached, when Lee, after a moment's reflection, said that he had forgotten one thing. Many of the cavalry and artillery horses belonged to the men who had charge of them. It was too late, however, to speak of that now.

Grant replied, "I will instruct my paroling officers that all the enlisted men of your cavalry and artillery, who own horses, are to retain them, just as the officers do theirs. They will need them for their spring ploughing, and other farm work." Lee seemed greatly pleased with Grant's prompt compliance with his only half-expressed wish. "General," he said earnestly, "there is nothing which you could have accomplished more for the good of the people or of the government." Grant's terms were in the last degree magnanimous and liberal.

ASSASSINATION OF PRESIDENT LINCOLN

The news of the capture of Richmond and Petersburg and the surrender of Lee's army was received in the North with the greatest rejoicing. Bells were rung, cannon fired, and illuminations flashed from every town and village, for it was understood that these great successes were decisive of the war.

In the midst of these rejoicings occurred a terrible tragedy which plunged the country into mourning. President Lincoln, whose re-election we have related, entered upon his second term on the fourth of March, 1865, amid the congratulations of the country. On the evening of the fourteenth of April he attended a performance at Ford's Theatre, in the city of Washington. During the midst of the performance the report of a pistol rang through the house, and the next moment a man leaped from the President's box upon the stage, and waving a pistol over his head, shouted "*Sic semper tyrannis*" (Thus always with tyrants), and disappeared behind the scenes. The cry was raised that the President had been killed, and in the commotion which ensued the assassin escaped. The murderer had entered the lobby of the theatre, and had fired from the door of the private box upon the unsuspicious President, who was sitting with his back to him.

THE GRAVE OF PRESIDENT LINCOLN.

Mr. Lincoln fell heavily forward and never spoke again. He was conveyed to a house on the opposite side of the street, and the highest skill was exerted to save him, but all in vain. He died on the morning of the fifteenth, surrounded by his family and the leading men of the nation. Appropriate funeral services were held on the nineteenth, and the body of the martyred President was conveyed through the principal cities of the North and West to Springfield, Illinois, where it was buried. Along the entire route it was received with the evidences of the nation's grief. Cities were draped in mourning, and dense crowds poured out to greet the funeral cortege, and testify their love and sorrow

for the dead man. Even in the South, which had made the election of Abraham Lincoln the occasion of the dissolution of the Union, the unaffected and manly virtues of this simply great man had conquered the people, who had come to regard him as their best and truest friend.

His death was sincerely lamented there, and in the lamentation of the South, Abraham Lincoln had his proudest triumph. His death was a crushing misfortune to the whole country. He was the only man capable of carrying out a policy of generous conciliation towards the South, and he had resolved upon such a course. He was sincerely desirous to heal the wounds of the war as soon as possible, and was strong enough to put down all opposition to his policy. His untimely death, as well as the manner of it, threw back the settlement of our national troubles fully five years.

The Assassin Escapes.

As he leaped from the President's box to the stage, the assassin's foot caught in an American flag with which the box was draped, and he fell heavily, breaking his leg. He managed to escape, however. It was immediately ascertained that the assassin was John Wilkes Booth, a younger son of the famous actor Junius Brutus Booth. Almost at the same time that the President was shot, another assassin, one Payne, *alias* Powell, entered the residence of Secretary Seward. Proceeding to the chamber where the Secretary was confined to a sick bed, he attacked the two attendants of the invalid and his son, Frederick W. Seward, and injured them severely, and then attempted to cut Mr. Seward's throat. He succeeded in gashing the face of his intended victim, but fled before further harm could be done.

Booth, who was most probably insane, had drawn quite a number of persons into a conspiracy, which had for its object the murder of the President and Vice-President, Secretaries Seward and Stanton, and Chief Justice Chase. The plot failed through unexpected movements of some of the intended victims and the cowardice of some of the conspirators. Booth and a young man named Harold fled into lower Maryland, from which they crossed the Potomac into Virginia. They were pursued by the government detectives and a squadron of cavalry, and were tracked to a barn in Caroline County, Virginia, between Bowling Green and Port Royal.

Booth Shot by Sergeant Corbett.

Here they were surrounded on the twenty-sixth of April. Harold surrendered himself, but Booth, refusing to yield, was shot by Sergeant Boston Corbett, and died a few hours later, after suffering intensely. His accomplices were arrested, and were brought to trial before a military commission at Washington. Payne or Powell, Atzerot, Harold, and Mrs. Surratt were condemned to death, and were hanged on the seventh of July, 1865, for complicity in the plot. Dr. Mudd, O'Laughlin and Arnold were imprisoned in the Dry Tortugas for life, and Spangler for six years. What Booth expected to accomplish by his horrible deed yet remains a mystery. It is now generally believed that he was insane; rendered so perhaps by his dissipated habits—and in this state of mind had conceived the idea that Mr. Lincoln was a tyrant, and as such ought to be put to death. He had no accomplices in the South, and his bloody deed was regarded with horror by the southern people.

We must now return to Sherman's army, which we left resting at Goldsboro'. Johnston's army was in the vicinity of Raleigh, and after the fall of Richmond was joined by Mr. Davis and the various officers of the Confederate government. On the tenth of

April Sherman advanced from Goldsboro' towards Johnston's position, and steadily pressed the Confederate army back. On the thirteenth Sherman entered Raleigh. Being convinced that further resistance was hopeless, and having learned of the surrender of General Lee's army, General Johnston now opened negotiations with General Sherman for the surrender of his army to the Federal commander.

INTERVIEW BETWEEN GENERALS SHERMAN AND JOHNSTON.

The result of these negotiations was an agreement signed by the two commanders on the eighteenth of April. As this agreement provided for the restoration of the States of the Confederacy to their lost places in the Union, it was disapproved by the Federal government, and Sherman was ordered to resume hostilities. General Johnston was at once notified by General Sherman of this order, and on the twenty-sixth of April entered into an agreement with him by which he surrendered to General Sherman all the Confederate forces under his command, on terms similar to those granted to General Lee by General Grant.

The example of Generals Lee and Johnston was followed by the other Confederate commanders throughout the South. The

last to surrender was General E. Kirby Smith, in Texas, on the twenty-sixth of May. On the twen y-ninth of May President Johnson issued a proclamation announcing the close of the war, and offering amnesty to all who had participated in it on the Confederate side, with the exception of fourteen specified classes.

Upon the surrender of Johnston's army, Mr. Davis and the members of his former cabinet endeavored to make their way to the coast of Florida, from which they hoped to be able to reach the West Indies. Some of them succeeded in doing so, but Mr. Davis was captured at Irwinsville, Georgia, on the tenth of May, and was sent as a prisoner to Fortress Monroe, where he was held in confinement until May, 1867.

The civil war was over. It had cost the country one million men in the killed and crippled for life of the two armies. In money the North and South had expended probably the enormous sum of $5,000,000,000. The exact amount will never be known as the Confederate debt perished with the government which created it.

CHAPTER XLIII

The Administration of Andrew Johnson

The New President—Return of the Army to Civil Life—The Public Debt—The Reconstruction Question—Action of the President—He Declares the Southern States Readmitted into the Union—The Fifteenth Amendment—Meeting of Congress—The President's Acts Annulled—Reconstruction Policy of Congress—The Fourteenth Amendment—The Freedman's Bureau and Civil Rights Bills—The Tenure of Office Act—Admission of Nebraska into the Union—The Southern States Organized as Military Districts—Admission of Southern States into the Union—The Fourteenth Amendment Ratified—President Johnson's Quarrel with Secretary Stanton—Impeachment of the President—His Acquital—Release of Jefferson Davis—Indian War—The French in Mexico—Fall of the Mexican Empire—Laying of the Atlantic Telegraph—Purchase of Alaska—Naturalization Treaty with Germany—Treaty with China—Death of General Scott—Death of ex-President Buchanan—General Grant Elected President—The Fifteenth Amendment.

UPON the death of Mr. Lincoln, Andrew Johnson, the vice-President, by the terms of the Constitution, became President of the United States. He took the oath of office on the fifteenth of April, and at once entered upon the discharge of his duties. His first act was to retain all the members of the cabinet appointed by Mr. Lincoln.

Mr. Johnson was a native of North Carolina, having been born in Raleigh on the twenty-ninth of December, 1808. At the age of ten he was bound as an apprentice to a tailor of that city. He was at this time unable to read or write. Some years later, being determined to acquire an education, he learned the alphabet from a fellow-workman, and a friend taught him spelling. He was soon able to read, and pursued his studies steadily, working ten or twelve hours a day at his trade, and studying two or three more. In 1826 he removed to Greenville, Tennessee, carrying with him his mother, who was dependent upon him for support.

Upon attaining manhood he married, and continued his studies under the direction of his wife, supporting his family in the mean time by his trade. He was subsequently chosen alderman of his town, and with this election entered upon his political career. Studing law he abandoned tailoring, and devoted himself to legal pursuits and politics. He was succesively chosen mayor, member of the legislature, presidential elector, and State senator. He was twice elected governor of Tennessee, and three times a senator of the United States from that State. Upon the secession of Tennessee from the Union he refused to relinquish his seat in the Senate, and remained faithful to the cause of the Union throughout the war, wining considerable reputation during the struggle by his services in behalf of the national cause.

He was an earnest, honest-hearted man, who sincerely desired to do his duty to the country. His mistakes were due to his temperament, and proceeded from no desire to serve his own interests or those of any party. In his public life he was incorruptible. A man of ardent nature, strong convictions, and indomitable will, it was not possible that he should avoid errors, or fail to stir up a warm and determined opposition to his policy.

The first duty devolving upon the new administration was the disbanding of the army, which at the close of the war numbered over a million of men. It was prophesied by foreign nations, and feared by many persons at home, that the sudden return of such a large body of men to the pursuits of civil

life would be attended with serious evils, but both the Union and the Confederate soldiers went back quietly and readily to their old avocations. Thus did these citizen-soldiers give to the world a splendid exhibition of the triumph of law and order in a free country, and a proof of the stability of our institutions.

Two questions—both difficult and delicate—presented themselves for settlement by the government. In June, 1865, the war debt amounted to $2,700,000,000. The interest on this sum was $133,000,000, and was nearly all payable in gold. The government was called upon to raise the latter amount to pay the interest on its bonds, and at the same time to take measures to strengthen the confidence of the bondholders in the security of their investments. The latter object was accomplished by a solemn resolution of the House of Representatives, adopted with but one dissenting voice on the fifth of December, 1865, pledging the faith of the nation to the payment of the public debt, "principal and interest."

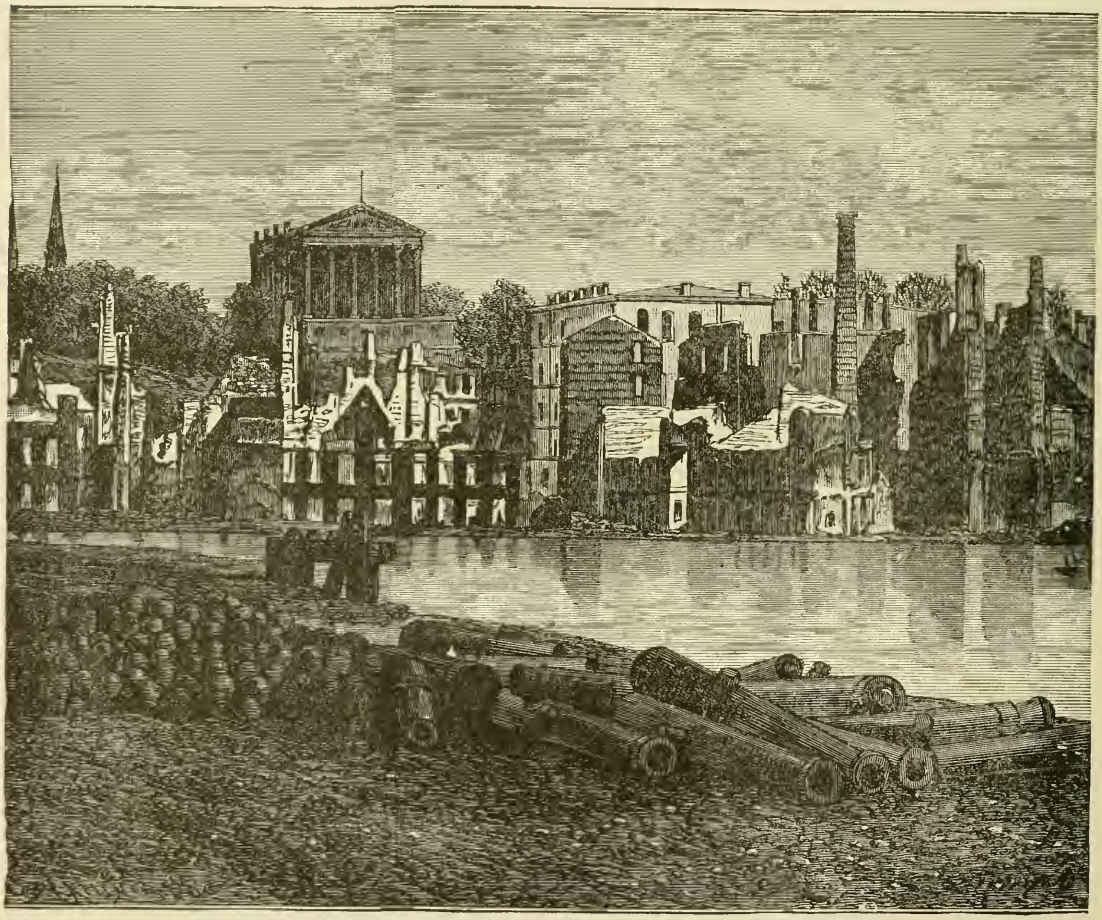
ANDREW JOHNSON.

In order to provide for the immediate wants of the government Congress levied additional duties on imported articles, and imposed taxes upon manufactured articles, incomes, etc. These burdensome imposts were cheerfully submitted to by the people, and a revenue of over $300,000,000 was raised, providing not only for the payment of the interest on the debt, and of the current expenses of the government, but also leaving a large surplus, which was applied to the reduction of the national debt. In the year 1866, "before all the extra troops called out by the war had been discharged, the debt had been diminished more than thirty-one

millions of dollars"—a striking proof of the ability as well as the willingness of the nation to discharge its financial obligations. During the remainder of Mr. Johnson's term this policy was faithfully adhered to under the able guidance of Hugh McCulloch, secretary of the treasury.

which he claimed they had no power to renounce. Now that they had submitted to the authority they had formerly endeavored to reject, he claimed that they were entitled to immediate restoration to their old places in the Union.

In support of his position he quoted the



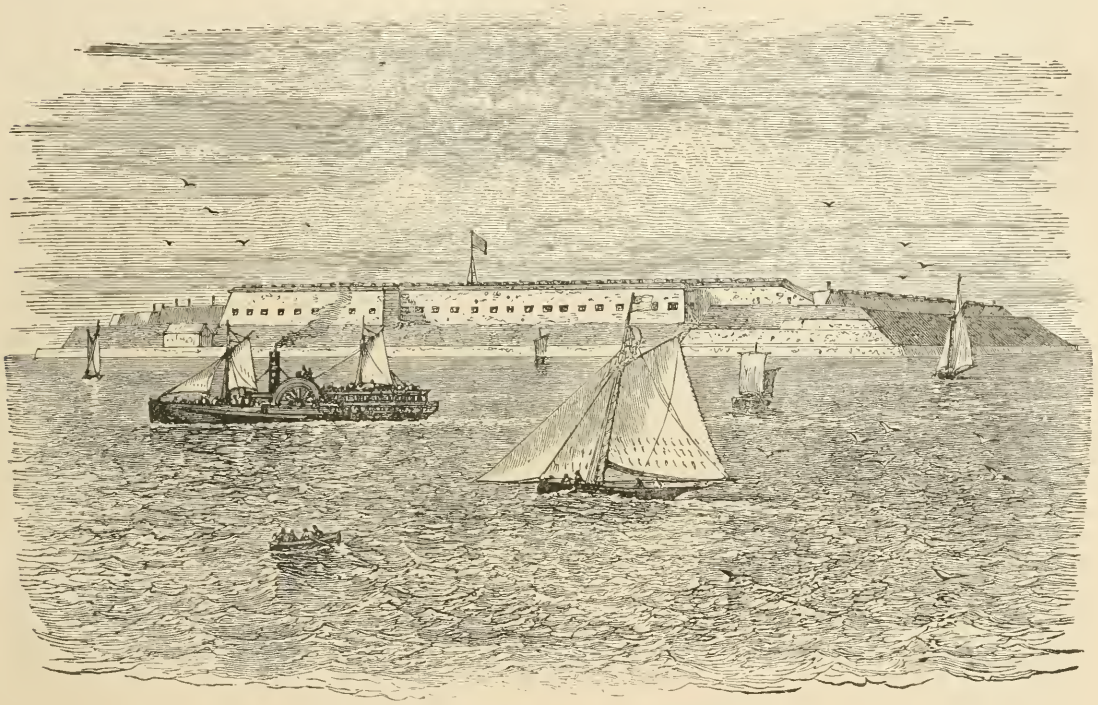
RUINS OF RICHMOND AFTER THE WAR.

The other question demanding immediate attention was the adjustment of the relations of the States of the South to the Union. The President held that they had never been out of the Union but had simply been in insurrection, and had been brought back to the acknowledgment of their allegiance to the constitution and laws of the United States, solemn declaration of Congress in the summer of 1861, and the assurances of Mr. Lincoln's administration that the war was fought for the restoration of the Union, and not for purposes of conquest. In accordance with these declarations, provisional governments had been formed in some of the Southern States and their representatives had been

admited to Congress during the progress of the war. A considerable party in the North supported President Johnson in this position; but the Republican party, now the dominant political organization of the United States, opposed his views with great determination.

The Republicans insisted that the results of the war should be secured by stringent laws, and that the Southern States, before their admission into the Union, should be compelled to give guarantees for the perpetuation of these results. The Republican party, moreover, claimed that the work of reconstructing the Union properly belonged to the legislative branch of the government and not to the President. Had the President summoned Congress in extra session and sought the aid of that body in the task before him, a conciliatory policy might have been agreed upon, and the work of reconstruction have been completed without delay.

President Johnson, however, proceeded alone and without delay to the work of restoring the Southern States to their places in the Union. On the twenty-ninth of May, 1865, he issued a proclamation appointing a provisional governor for the State of North Carolina, and providing for the assembling of a convention in that State for the purpose of forming a new constitution, under which the State would be recognized by him as a member of the Federal Union. In the meantime North Carolina was kept under military rule. A similar course was pursued by the President towards the States of Virginia, South Carolina, Georgia, Florida, Alabama, Mississipi, Arkansas, Louisiana and Texas.



FORT WARREN, BOSTON HARBOR.

The people of the ten Southern States held conventions in accordance with the President's requirements, annulled their ordinances of secession, renewed their obligations to the Federal Union, adopted new

State constitutions, and ratified the thirteenth amendement to the constitution of the United States prohibiting slavery forever in all the States of the Union. They also elected senators and representatives to Congress, and were recognized by the President as formally restored to their places in the Federal Union.

On the first of February, 1865, Congress passed a resolution submitting to the legislatures of the various States the following amendement to the constitution:

"ARTICLE XIII. *Section 1.* Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

"*Section 2.* Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation."

On the eighteenth of December, William H. Seward, Secretary of State, formally announced that this, the thirteenth amendment, had been duly ratified by the States, and had become a part of the constitution of the United States. The ratification of this amendment had been required of the Southern States by the President as a condition of their readimission into the Union.

The Thirty-ninth Congress met in Decembre, 1865, and at once took measures to neutralize the reconstruction policy of the President. The Republican party had a large majority in each house, and was thoroughly united in its opposition to the President. The senators and representatives of the Southern States were refused admission to seats in Congress, and the reconstruction measures of the President were treated as null and void. Congress insisted that the Union should not be "restored" as it was before the war, but "reconstructed" upon an entirely new basis.

The measures of the President had made no change in the political status of the black population of the South. The negroes were secured in their freedom by the thirteenth amendment. Congress now proceeded to make the negro a citizen of the United States, and to reconstruct the Union upon this basis. The following, known as the fourteenth amendment to the constitution, was adopted by Congress and proposed to the States for ratification:

"ARTICLE XIV. *Section 1.* All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the States wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

"*Section 2.* Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed; but when the right to vote at any election, for the choice of electors for President and vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State (being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States), or in any way abridged except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age, in said State.

"*Section 3.* No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of President and vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof; but Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

"*Section 4.* The validity of the public debt of the United States authorized by law, including debts

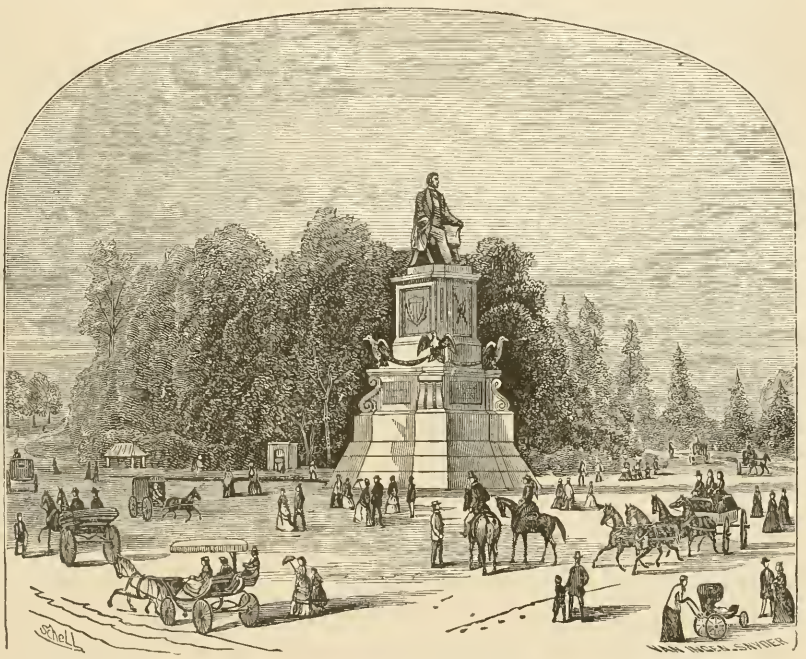
incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned; but neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations and claims shall be held illegal and void.

"*Section 5.* The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article."

This amendement was rejected by all the Southern States except Tennessee, and by several of the Northern States. Tennessee ratified the amendment, and was admitted by Congress into the Union. Congress at this session enacted what is known as the "Freedman's Bureau Bill," creating a department under the Federal Government for the care and protection of the newly emancipated negroes and the destitute whites of the South. This measure was vetoed by the President as unconstitutional, and was passed over his veto. It was immediately put in operation throughout the South. While the Freedman's Bureau did much to assist the negro in adapting himself to the duties of his new position, it was productive of an immense amount of corruption and fraud.

Another measure of Congress which was vetoed by the President upon constitutional grounds, and was passed over his veto, was the "Civil Rights Bill," which secured to the negro the rights of a citizen.

As the quarrel between the President and Congress deepened, various efforts were made by the latter to hamper the executive and impair his powers. The Thirty-ninth Congress adopted for this purpose a measure known as the "Tenure of Office Act," by the terms of which the President was forbidden to remove any person from a civil office under the government without the consent of the Senate. This bill was promptly vetoed by the President, but was passed over his veto by the Congress.



LINCOLN MONUMENT IN FAIRMOUNT PARK, PHILADELPHIA.

On the first of March, 1867, a new State was added to the Union by the admission of Nebraska on an equality with the original thirteen States—four of which were at that time undergoing the process of reconstruction.

In February, 1867, Congress proceeded to take extreme measures with the Southern States that had refused to ratify the fourteenth amendment. The State governments were abolished, the State officers removed,

and the Southern States were organized as military districts, and placed under absolute martial law. The writ of *habeas corpus* was suspended, and the civil law was made to give place to the will of a military commander. This was done with the avowed intention of compelling the Southern States to ratify the fourteenth amendment and seek admission into the Union upon the terms prescribed by Congress.

Bitter Hostility in the South.

The effect of the measures of Congress was to disfranchise the better class of the Southern people, and to confer the unrestricted right of suffrage upon the negroes. The intelligence of the Southern States was denied any voice in their government, which was intrusted to the most ignorant and degraded part of their population. The measures of Congress were regarded with bitter hostility by the South, and there were very many of the more thoughtful Republicans of the North who seriously doubted the wisdom of this method of reconstruction. The measures of Congress were vetoed by the President, but were passed over his veto, March 2, 1867.

Upon the organization of the military districts, the commanding generals, who, as a rule, exercised their power with moderation and forbearance, caused a registry of voters to be made, and ordered elections to be held for conventions to form State governments. The conventions so elected could not in any case be said to represent the white people of the South. After a bitter and protracted struggle, some of the conventions ratified the fourteenth amendment, and organized State governments. On the twenty-fourth of June, 1867, Congress passed a bill over the President's veto admiting the States of Arkansas, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, North Carolina, and South Carolina into the Union, Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas, having refused to ratify the amendment, were denied admission into the Union.

The fourteenth amendment having been adopted by the requisite number of States, was formally declared a part of the constitution on the twenty-eighth of July, 1868.

Attempt to Impeach the President.

In the meantime the quarrel between the President and Congress came to a decisive issue. The extreme or radical wing of the Republican party, comprising the majority in Congress, was anxious to remove Mr. Johnson from his position. Could it succeed in doing so, Benjamin Wade, of Ohio, the President of the Senate, would, by virtue of his office, become President of the United States. As Mr. Wade was one of the extreme radical leaders, this would place the whole power of the government in the hands of that party. A quarrel between the President and Mr. Stanton, the Secretary of War, furnished the occasion for this effort. On the twelfth of August, 1867, Secretary Stanton was removed from the war department by President Johnson, who appointed General Grant Secretary of War *ad interim*. Upon the meeting of Congress, in December, 1867, the President's course was denounced as a violation of the tenure of office act, and on the twelfth of January, 1868, the Senate refused to sanction the removal of Mr. Stanton. Mr. Stanton thereupon demanded of General Grant the surrender of the war department, and the latter at once complied with the demand.

On the twenty-first of February, President Johnson again removed Mr. Stanton, and appointed General Lorenzo Thomas, adjutant-general of the United States, Secretary of War *ad interim*. He held the tenure of office act to be unconstitutional, and an invasion of his lawful powers as chief magistrate of

the Republic. This second removal of Mr. Stanton brought matters to a crisis, and on the twenty-fourth of February, 1868, the House of Representatives, by a strict party vote, ordered the President to be impeached of high crimes and misdemeanors.* The Senate, siting as a high court of impeachment, met on the fifth of March, 1868, under the presidency of Chief-Justice Chase. The impeachment was conducted by managers appointed by the House, and the President was defended by able counsel. On the twenty-sixth of May, the case being closed, the vote was taken, with the following result: For conviction, thirty-four; for acquittal, nineteen. There not being the requisite two-thirds vote for conviction, the President was acquitted.

Jefferson Davis Releasd on Bail.

Jefferson Davis had been confined in Fortress Monroe since his capture by the Federal forces, in May, 1865. All the Confederate officials taken by the Union forces had been released within a year after their capture on giving their parole to answer any prosecution that might be brought against them by the Federal authorities. Mr. Davis was excepted from this clemency, and remained in prison for two years. A prosecution for treason was instituted against him in the district court of Virginia, but he was not brought to trial. A number of prominent citizens of the North who had been so active in their support of the war that their motives could not be suspected, exerted themselves to procure his release on bail, and became his sureties. He was accordingly released on bail on the thirteenth of May, 1867. During the following year the indictment against him was quashed by the government.

During the latter part of the civil war a vexatious and bloody warfare with the Indians broke out on the frontier. It began in 1864, and extended through 1865 and 1866, and until the fall of 1868 its ravages were spread along the frontier through Southern Colorado into the Indian Territory, causing severe suffering to the settlers of this region. By the winter of 1865–'66 the war had assumed such formidable proportions that General Sheridan was sent with a considerable force against the savages. The vigorous measures of Sheridan, and General Custer's victory over the band of Black Kettle at Wacheta, brought the war to a close in the fall of 1868.

* The charges against the President may be summed up as follows: 1. Unlawfully ordering the removal of Mr. Stanton from the office of Secretary of War, in violation of the provisions of the tenure of office act. 2. The unlawful appointment of General Lorenzo Thomas as Secretary of War *ad interim*. 3. Conspiring with General Thomas and other persons to prevent Edwin M. Stanton, the lawfully appointed Secretary of War, from holding that office. 5. Conspiring with General Thomas and other persons to hinder the operation of the tenure of office act; and in pusuance of this conspiracy attempting to prevent Mr. Stanton from acting as Secretary of War. 6. Conspiring with General Thomas and others to take forcible possession of the property in the war department. 7. The President was charged with having called before him the commander of the troops in the department of Washington, and declaring to him that a law passed on the thirtieth of June, 1867, directing that "all orders and instructions relating to military operations, issued by the President or Secretary of War, shall be issued through the general of the army, and in case of his inability, through the next in rank," was unconstitutional, and not binding upon the commander of the department of Washington, the design being to induce that commander to violate the law, and obey orders issued directly from the President. 8. That in a number of public speeches the President had attempted to set aside the authority of Congress, to bring it into disgrace, and to excite the hatred and resentment of the people against Congress and the laws enacted by it. 9. That in August, 1866, in a public speech in Washington, the President had declared that Congress was not a body authorized by the constitution to exercise legislative powers. Then followed a specification of alleged attempts on the part of the President to prevent the execution of the laws of Congress. The impeachment articles were eleven in number. The other two were simply repetitions of some of the above charges.

While the civil war was at its height, France, England and Spain became involved in a quarrel with Mexico concerning the non-payment of certain claims due citizens of those countries by the Mexican republic, and a joint expedition was despatched to Mexico in the fall of 1861. Discovering that France was seeking to use the expedition to destroy the independence of Mexico, England and Spain settled their claims with the republic by the convention of Solidad, on the fourth of March, 1862, and withdrew their forces.

The French, however, continued the war, and after a hard struggle, during which the Mexicans fought gallantly for their country, Mexico was conquered, and early in June, 1863, the French army entered the capital. The emperor of the French now proceeded to overthrow the republic, it being his intention to replace it with an empire which should be dependent upon France. An

EMPEROR MAXIMILIAN.

election was held, and under the intimidation of the French, resulted in a majority in favor of the abolition of the republic and the erection of the empire. Through the same influence, the Mexicans chose Maximilian, archduke of Austria, emporer of Mexico, and in an evil hour for himself, that amiable and high-souled prince accepted the crown.

The government of the United States had viewed the interference of France in Mexican affairs with marked displeasure, but being too much engaged in its efforts to bring the civil war to a successful close to undertake any new difficulty, simply entered its protest against the action of France. The civil war having been brought to a close, however, it took a bolder stand, and demanded of the French emporer the withdrawal of his troops from Mexico. The action of the government was sustained by the great mass of the American people, and it was believed by many that a foreign war would be a sure and speedy way of bringing about the restoration of the Union.

NATIVES OF ALASKA BUILDING HOUSES.

The Emperor Napoleon hesitated for a while, but finally acceded to the American demand. The French troops were recalled at the close of the year 1866, and the Emperor Maximilian was left to face the Mexican people alone. They at once rose against him, defeated his forces and took him prisoner. On the nineteenth of June, 1867, he was shot by order of the Mexican government, in spite of the efforts of the United States to save him. Thus ended the hope of reviving the dominion of France on the American continent.

The efforts of the gentlemen interested in the laying of a telegraphic cable across the Atlantic did not end with their failures in 1858. In 1865 the same company succeeded in laying a cable for about fourteen hundred miles from the Irish coast, when it suddenly parted and sank into the sea. The expedition then returned to England. Undismayed by this failure, Mr. Cyrus W. Field, of New York, to whose courage and determination the final success of the scheme was due, succeeded in persuading capitalists to make one more effort, and in July, 1866, a cable was laid from Valentia Bay, in Ireland, to Heart's Content, in Newfoundland, a distance of eighteen hundred and sixty-four miles. It was found to work to the entire satisfaction of all parties, and the great enterprise was now an accomplished fact.

The fleet then sailed from Newfoundland to the spot where the cable of 1865 had parted in mid-ocean, and proceeded to grapple for it. It was recovered and raised from a depth of over two miles, and was then

spliced to the coil on board the "Great Eastern," the ship employed in the undertaking. The huge steamer then put about, and completed the laying of the cable to Heart's Content, thus giving the company two working lines. The completion of the work was hailed with rejoicings in both America and Europe.

Purchase of Russian America.

On the twenty-ninth of March, 1867, a treaty was concluded between the United States and Russia, by which the latter power sold to the United States for the sum of seven million two hundred thousand dollars, all of the region in the extreme northwestern part of the American continent known as Russian America. The treaty was ratified by the Senate on the ninth of April. The new territory added to the area of the United States a district of about five hundred and seventy-seven thousand three hundred and ninety square miles.

In the same year a treaty was negotiated with China, through an embassy from that country, which visited the United States under the charge of Anson Burlingame, formerly the American Minister to China. It was the first instance in which that exclusive nation had ever sought to negotiate a treaty of commerce and friendship with a foreign nation. Liberty of conscience to Americans residing in China, protection of their property and persons and important commercial privileges were secured by this treaty.

In 1866 the Fenians, a secret society, organized for the purpose of delivering Ireland from British rule, invaded Canada in large numbers from Buffalo, New York, and St. Albans, Vermont. President Johnson at once issued his proclamation declaring the Fenian movement a violation of the neutrality of the United States, and sent General Meade with a sufficient force to the border to execute the laws. This decisive action put an end to the hopes of the Fenians of embroiling this country in hostilities with Great Britain, and after some slight encounters with the British troops in Canada they abandoned the expedition.

During President Johnson's administration, two distinguished public servants passed away. On the twenty-ninth of May, 1866, Lieutenant-General Winfield Scott, the veteran conqueror of Mexico, died at the age of eighty years. On the first of June, 1868, ex-President James Buchanan died at his home at Wheatland, near Lancaster, Pennsylvania, in the seventy-eighth year of his age.

In the fall of 1868, the presidential election was held. The Republican party nominated General Ulysses S. Grant, the commanding-general of the army, for the presidency, and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, for the vice-presidency. The Democratic party nominated Horatio Seymour, of New York, for the presidency, and Frank P. Blair, of Missouri, for the vice-presidency. The election resulted in the choice of General Grant by a popular vote of 2,985,031 to 2,648,830 votes cast for Mr. Seymour. In the electoral college, Grant received two hundred and seventeen votes and Seymour, seventy-seven. The States of Virginia, Mississippi and Texas were not allowed to take part in this election, being still out of the Union.

In February, 1869, the two houses of Congress adopted the fifteenth amendment to the constitution of the United States, and submitted it to the various States for ratification by them. It was in the following words: "The right of the citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude."

CHAPTER XLIV.

The Administration of Ulysses S. Grant.

Early Life of President Grant—Completion of the Pacific Railway—Death of ex-President Pierce—The Fifteenth Amendment Ratified—Prosperity of the Country—The Enforcement Act—The Test-oath Abolished—The Constitutionality of the Legal Tender Act Affirmed—Death of Admiral Farragut—Death of General Lee—The Income Tax Repealed—The Alabama Claims—Treaty of Washington—The Geneva Conference—Award in favor of the United States—The San Juan Boundary Question settled—Efforts to annex St. Domingo—Burning of Chicago—Forest Fires—The Civil Disabilities removed from the Southern People—Re-election of General Grant—Death of Horace Greeley—Great fire at Boston—The Modoc War—Murder of General Canby and the Peace Commissioners—Execution of the Modoc Chiefs—The Cuban Revolution—Capture of the "Virginius"—Execution of the Prisoners—Action of the Federal Government—The Panic of 1873—Bill for the Resumption of Specie Payments—The Centennial Exhibition—The Sioux War—Death of General Custer—Presidential Election—Controversy over it—The Electoral Commission—The Count of the Vote—Hayes declared elected

ULYSSES S. GRANT, the eighteenth president of the United States, was inaugurated at Washington with imposing ceremonies, on the fourth of March, 1869. He was born at Mount Pleasant, Ohio, on the twenty-seventh of April, 1822. His father was a tanner, and wished him to follow his trade, but the boy had more ambitious hopes, and at the age of seventeen, a friend secured for him an appointment as a cadet at West Point, where he was educated. Upon graduating, he entered the army. Two years later he was sent to Mexico, and served through the war with that country with distinction. He was specially noticed by his commanders, and was promoted for gallant conduct.

Soon after the close of the war he resigned his commission, and remained in civil life and obscurity until the breaking out of the civil war, when he volunteered his services, and was commissioned by Governor Yates, colonel of the twenty-first Illinois regiment. He was soon made a brigadier-general, and fought his first battle at Belmont. His subsequent career has already been related in these pages. He selected the members of his cabinet more because of his personal friendship for them, than for their weight and influence in the party that had elected him. Hamilton Fish, of New York, was made secretary of state.

The most important event of the year 1869, was the opening of the Pacific railway from the Missouri River to the Pacific Ocean. The eastern division of this road is known as the Union Pacific railway, and was begun at Omaha, Nebraska, in December, 1863, and carried westward. But little progress was made in the work until 1865, when it was pushed rapidly forward. The western division, known as the Central Pacific railway, was begun at San Francisco, near about the same time, and carried eastward across the Sierra Nevada. The two roads unite at Ogden, near Salt Lake City, in Utah, and the union was accomplished on the tenth of May, 1869, on which day the last rail was laid. The Union Pacific railway, from Omaha to Ogden, is one thousand and thirty-two miles in length; the Central Pacific, from Ogden to San Francisco, eight hundred and eighty-two miles; making a total line of nineteen hundred and fourteen miles, and constituting by far the most important railway enterprise in the world.

By the completion of this great road, to the construction of which the general government contributed liberally in money and lands, Portland, Maine, and San Francisco, the extremes of the continent, are brought within a week's travel. The long and difficult journey across the plains has been dispensed with, and the traveler may now pass over this once terrible and dangerous route with speed and safety, enjoying all the while the highest comforts of the most advanced civilization.

ULYSSES S. GRANT.

The east and the west are no longer separated, and the rapid development of the resources of the rich Pacific slope has more than repaid the enormous cost of the road. A direct trade with China and Japan has been opened, and the wealth of the Orient is beginning to pour into America through the portals of the Golden Gate. The shortest route to India—the dream of Columbus and the old mariners—has indeed been found.

On the eighth of October, 1869, ex-President Franklin Pierce died, at the age of sixty-five years.

The fifteenth amendment, having been ratified by the necessary number of States, was formally proclaimed by Hamilton Fish, secretary of state, a part of the constitution of the United States, on the thirtieth of March, 1870.

In the year 1870 the ninth census of the United States was taken, and showed the population of the country to be 38,558,371 souls.

The country had now attained a marked degree of prosperity. Gold fell to one hundred and ten, and during the first two years of President Grant's administration, $204,000,000 of the national debt were paid. The effects of the war were being rapidly overcome, and the bitter feelings engendered by the struggle were giving way to a more friendly intercourse between the North and the South. The manufacturing industries of the country had nearly doubled since 1860, and the five years that had elapsed since the war had witnessed a marked improvement in the condition of the South, which was gradually adjusting her industry upon the basis of free labor, and entering upon new and profitable enterprises of manufacture and commerce.

The work of reconstruction was concluded in the year 1870. On the eighth of October 1869, the State of Virginia ratified the fourteenth and fifteenth amendments, and on the twenty-sixth of January, 1870, was readmitted into the Union. On the eleventh of January, 1870, Mississippi ratified these amendments, and was readmitted into the Union on the seventeenth of February, 1870, Texas was the last to return to the Union, but came in during the year, having ratified the amendments to the constitution.

The political troubles in the South, however, did not end with the return of the States

to the Union. A great deal of lawlessness prevailed in many of the Southern States, and considerable suffering was experienced by the negroes, whose sudden endowment with the rights and privileges of citizenship was resented by a lawless class of white men. The Federal goverment undertook to remedy these troubles rather than leave them to be dealt with by the States.

ber issued a proclamation suspending the writ of *habeas corpus* in nine counties in South Carolina, in order that the law might be enforced without the interference of the Courts of the State. The evils which these severe measures were intended to remedy were unquestionably very great, but the enforcement bill was nevertheless a dangerous departure from the principles of free

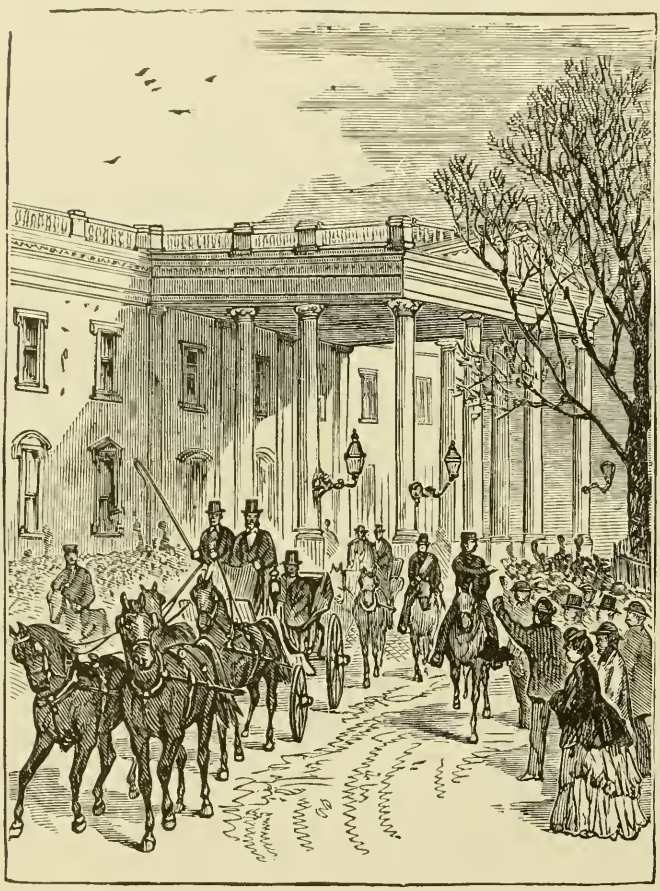
VIEW ON THE GREENE RIVER AT THE CROSSING OF THE U. P. R. R., WYOMING.

In the spring of 1871 Congress passed a measure known as the "Enforcement Act," or the "Kuklux Act of 1871," which gave to the Federal officials absolute power over the liberties of the citizens of the States in which these troubles occurred. The President carried out the terms of the act with promptness, and on the seventeenth of October

government as understood in this country. A free people cannot too jealously guard their liberties.

On the thirty-first of January, 1871, Congress repealed the test oath law, which required all applicants for civil offices to swear that they had not participated in the secession movement. As few Southern men

could take this oath, this law excluded the genuine inhabitants of the Southern States from office under the general government, and threw the political power of those States into the hands of a class of adventurers, who had been drawn to the South since the war by the hope of obtaining office. The repeal of this law by Congress restored the control of the Southern States to the legitimate citizens and tax-payers thereof.



PRESIDENT GRANT ON HIS WAY TO THE INAUGURATION.

In 1870 the Supreme Court of the United States decided that the act of Congress making "greenbacks," or the notes of the Federal treasury, a legal tender, was unconstitutional as regarded the payment of debts contracted prior to the passage of that act. As this decision had been given by a majority of but one justice, Mr. Hoar, the Attorney-General, moved to reconsider it. The case was heard again, and the decision of the court was reversed by a vote of five to four, on the eighteenth of January, 1871. Thus the constitutionality of the legal-tender act was affirmed.

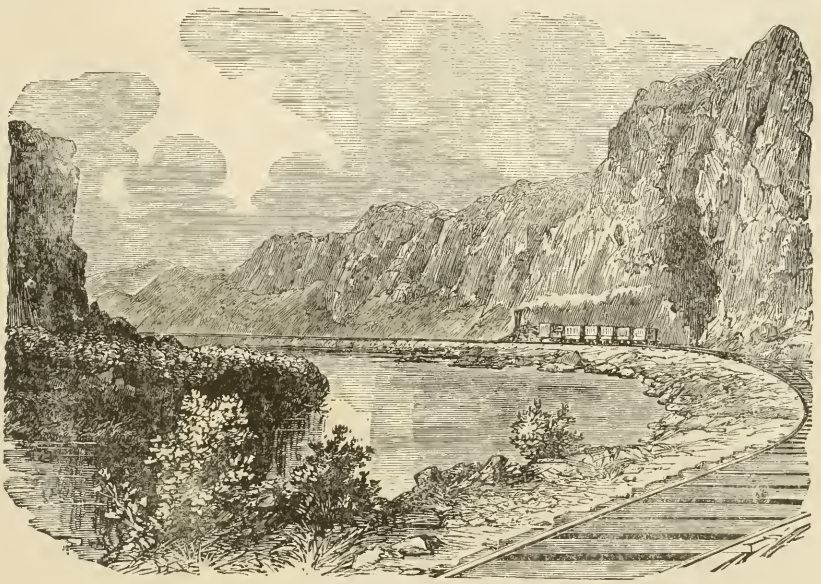
In 1870 died Admiral David G. Farragut, on the fourteenth of August, aged sixty-nine; General George H. Thomas, "the Rock of Chickamauga," and the defender of Nashville, on the twenty-eighth of December, aged fifty-three, and General Robert E. Lee, the commander of the Confederate army of Northern Virginia during the civil war, on the twelfth of October, aged sixty-three.

On the twenty-sixth of January, 1871, Congress repealed the income tax. It had been retained long after the necessity for it had passed away and had become odious to the nation, which had only submitted to it at first because of the urgency of the need for it.

Immediately upon the opening of President Lincoln's second term of office, Mr. Charles Francis Adams, the American minister at the court of St. James, was instructed to call the attention of the British Government to the depredations committed upon American commerce by Confederate cruisers, built, equipped and manned in England, and to insist upon the responsibility of Great Britain for the losses thus incurred by American ship-owners. Mr. Adams discharged this duty in a communication addressed to the British Government, on the seventh of April, 1865. This led to a

correspondence which continued through the summer of that year. Great Britain refused to admit the validity of the American claim, or to submit the question to the arbitration of any foreign government.

The "Alabama question" remained unsettled for several years, and occasioned a considerable amount of ill-feeling between the two countries. Both governments regarded it as full of danger, but to Great Britain it was especially so, as in the event of a war between that country and any foreign power, the United States, following the example of England, might and doubtless would allow cruisers to be sent out from their ports which would seriously cripple, if they did not destroy, the British commerce. After Mr. Adams' return from England, his successor, Reverdy Johnson, was directed by the President to reopen the matter. He negotiated a treaty with the Earl of Clarendon on behalf of the British Government in 1869, but this arrangement was unsatisfactory to the Senate, which body refused to ratify it.



HUMBOLDT PALISADES, PACIFIC RAILWAY.

Two years later the matter was revived, and in 1871 a joint high commission, composed of a number of distinguished public men, appointed by the American and British Governments, met at Washington, and arranged a settlement known as the treaty of Washington, which was ratified by both Governments. This treaty was ratified by the Senate on the twenty-fourth of May, and provided for the settlement not only of the Alabama claims, but of all other questions at issue between the United States and Great Britain.

The Alabama claims were referred by the treaty of Washington to a board of arbitration composed of five commissioners selected from the neutral nations. This board met at Geneva, in Switzerland, on the fifteenth of April, 1872, and the American and English representatives presented to it their respective cases, which had been prepared by the most learned counsel in both countries. On the twenty-seventh of June the board announced its decision. The claims of the United States were admitted, and the damages awarded to that Government were $16,250,000. These were paid in due time.

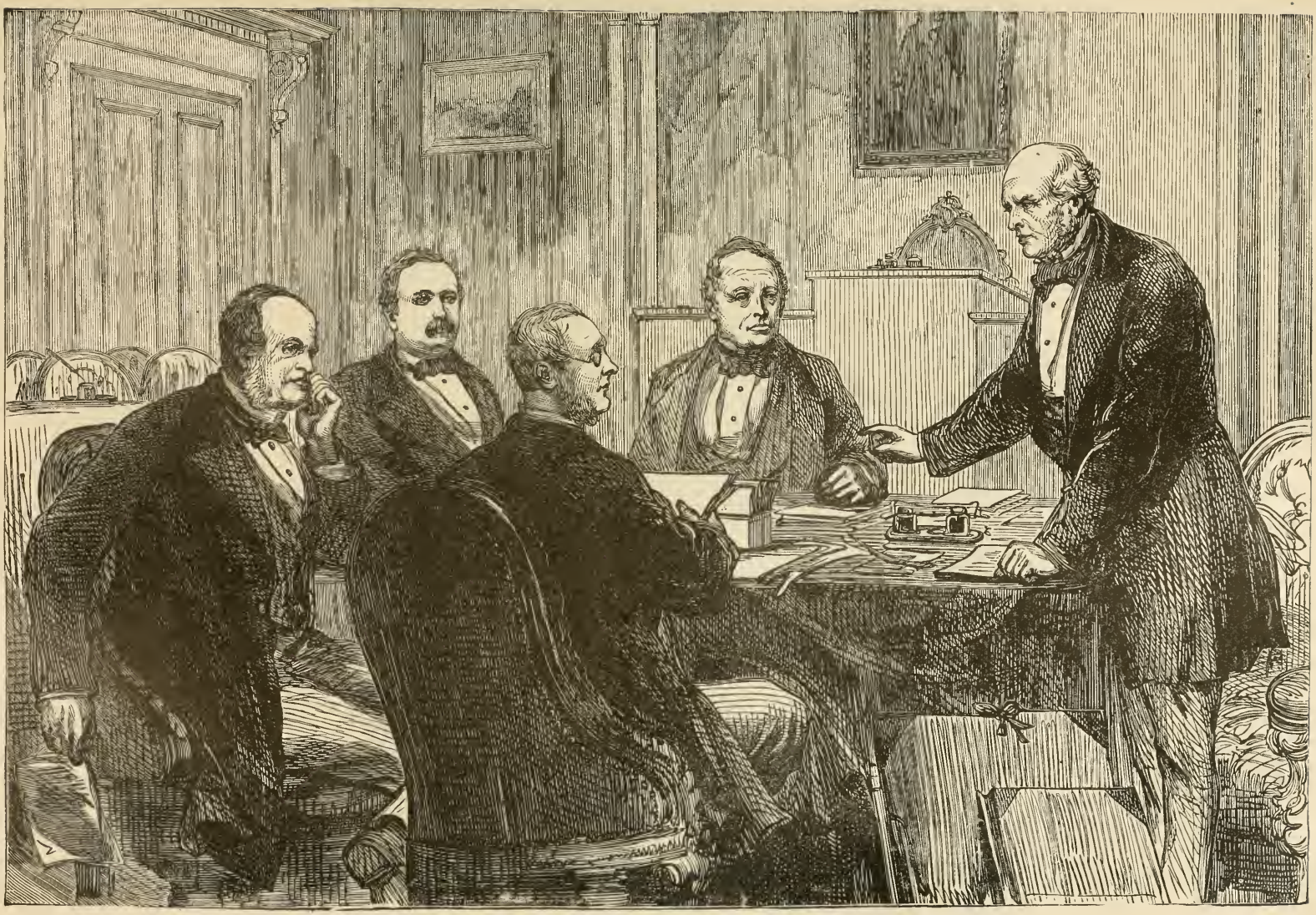
In our account of the administration of Mr. Buchanan we have related the dispute between the United States and Great Britain concerning the possession of the Island of San Juan, growing out of the uncertainty as to the true course of the northwestern boundary of the Union. This had been an open question all through the civil war. By the

thirty-fourth article of the treaty of Washington the two countries agreed to refer this dispute to the friendly arbitration of the Emperor of Germany. Soon after the award of the Geneva conference was made the boundary question was decided by the Emperor William in favor of the United States, into the possession of which the island of San Juan accordingly passed. Thus were these delicate and dangerous questions satisfactorily adjusted by peaceful methods, and not by the sword.

CHEYENNE INDIANS RECONNOITERING THE FIRST TRAIN ON THE PACIFIC RAILROAD.

In 1870 the republic of St. Domingo, comprising a large part of the island of Hayti, applied for annexation to the United States. President Grant was very anxious to secure the annexation of this island, and to accomplish it went to the very verge of his constitutional powers—going farther, indeed, than many of his friends believed he had the right. Measures were introduced into Congress for the purpose of securing this union, but were warmly opposed. A commission of eminent gentlemen was appointed by the President to visit the island and examine into its condition. They reported favorably, but after a warm debate in Congress the measures for the annexation of the Dominican republic were defeated by a decisive majority.

On the night of Sunday, October 8, 1871, a fire broke out in the city of Chicago, and raged with tremendous violence for two days, laying the greater part of the city in ashes. It was the most destructive conflagration of modern times. The total area of the city burned over was two thousand one hundred and twenty-four acres, or very nearly three and one-third square miles. The number of buildings destroyed was seventeen thousand four hundred and fifty. About two hundred



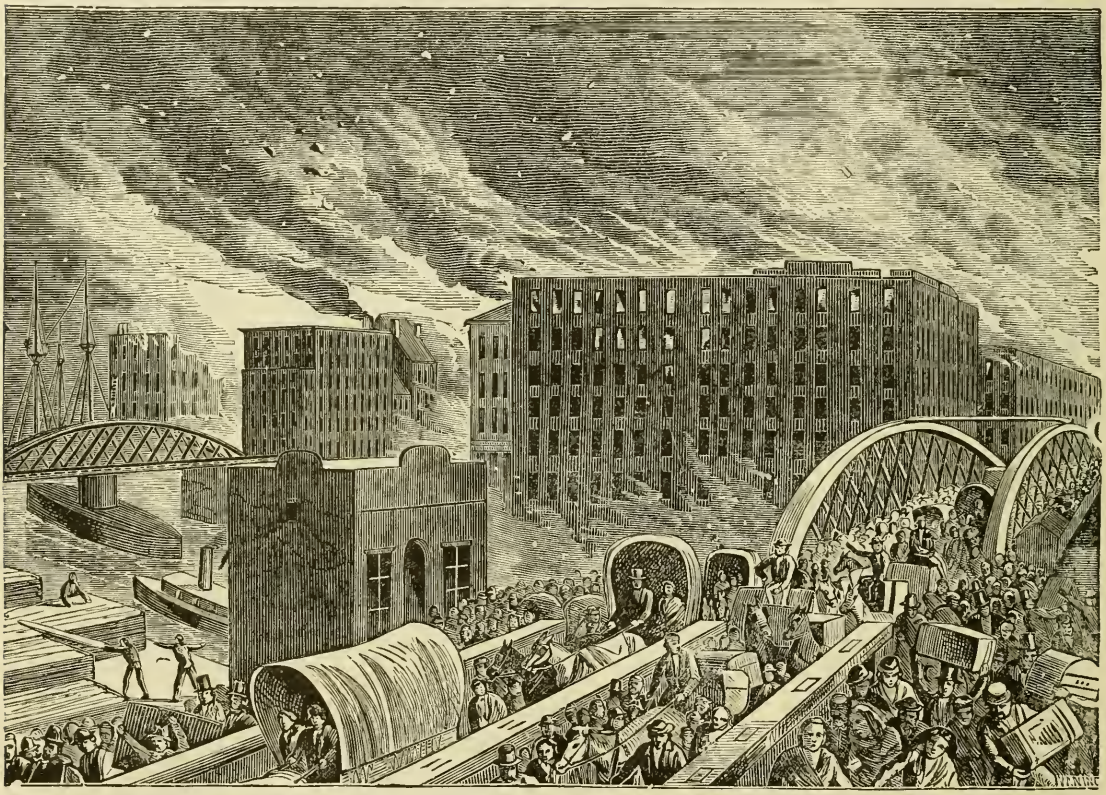
THE GENEVA BOARD OF ARBITRATION SETTLING THE ALABAMA CLAIMS

and fifty persons died from various causes during the conflagration, and ninety-eight thousand persons were rendered homeless by it. The entire business quarter was destroyed. The actual loss will never be known. As far as it can be ascertained, it was about one hundred and ninety-six millions of dollars.

Almost simultaneous with this disaster extensive forest fires swept over the woods of Wisconsin, Minnesota and Michigan. Whole villages were destroyed by the flames, which traveled with such speed that it was often impossible for the fleetest horse to escape from them. Over fifteen hundred people perished in Wisconsin alone.

These terrible calamities aroused the generous sympathy of the rest of the country, and aid in money, clothing, and the necessities of life was liberally extended to the sufferers in Chicago and the other afflicted communities. The telegraph flashed the news across the Atlantic, and in an almost incredibly short time liberal contributions in money came pouring in from England and continental Europe, and even from the far-off cities of India.

On the twenty-ninth of May, 1872, Con-



THE BURNING OF CHICAGO.

gress passed an act removing the disabilities imposed upon the Southern people by the third section of the fourteenth amendment to the constitution. From this general exemption were excepted all persons who had been members of Congress, officers of the army or navy, heads of departments under the general government, or ministers to foreign countries, who had resigned their positions

and joined the secession movement. By this act at least one hundred and fifty thousand men of capacity and experience, whose services were greatly needed by the South, were restored to political life.

In the fall of 1872 the presidential election occurred. The canvass was marked by the most intense partisan bitterness. The Republican party renominated General Grant for the Presidency, and supported Henry Wilson for the Vice-Presidency. The measures of the administration had arrayed a large number of Republicans against it. These now organized themselves as the Liberal Republican party, and nominated Horace Greeley of New York for the Presidency, and B. Gratz Brown of Missouri for the Vice-Presidency. The Democratic party made no nominations, and its convention endorsed the candidates of the Liberal Republican party. The election resulted in the triumph of the Republican candidates by overwhelming majorities.

The elections were scarcely over when the country was saddened by the death of Horace Greeley. He had been one of the founders of the Republican party, and had been closely identified with the political history of the country for over thirty years. He was the "Founder of the New York *Tribune*," and had done good service with his journal in behalf of the cause he believed to be founded in right. He was a man of simple and childlike character, utterly unaffected, and generous to a fault. In his manner and dress he was eccentric, but nature had made him a true gentleman at heart. His intellectual ability was conceded by all. His experience in public life and his natural disposition induced him to favor a policy of conciliation in the settlement of the reconstruction question, and, influenced by these convictions, he signed the bail-bond of Jefferson Davis and secured the release of the fallen leader of the South from his imprisonment.

This act cost him a large part of his popularity in the North. He accepted the presidential nomination of the Liberal party in the belief that his election would aid in bringing about a better state of feeling between the North and the South. He was attacked by his political opponents with a bitterness which caused him much suffering, and many of his old friends deserted him and joined in the warfare upon him. Just before the close of the canvass, his wife, to whom he was tenderly attached, died, and his grief for her and the excitement and sorrow caused him by the political contest, broke down his firmness and unsettled his mind. He was conveyed by his friends to a private asylum, where he died on

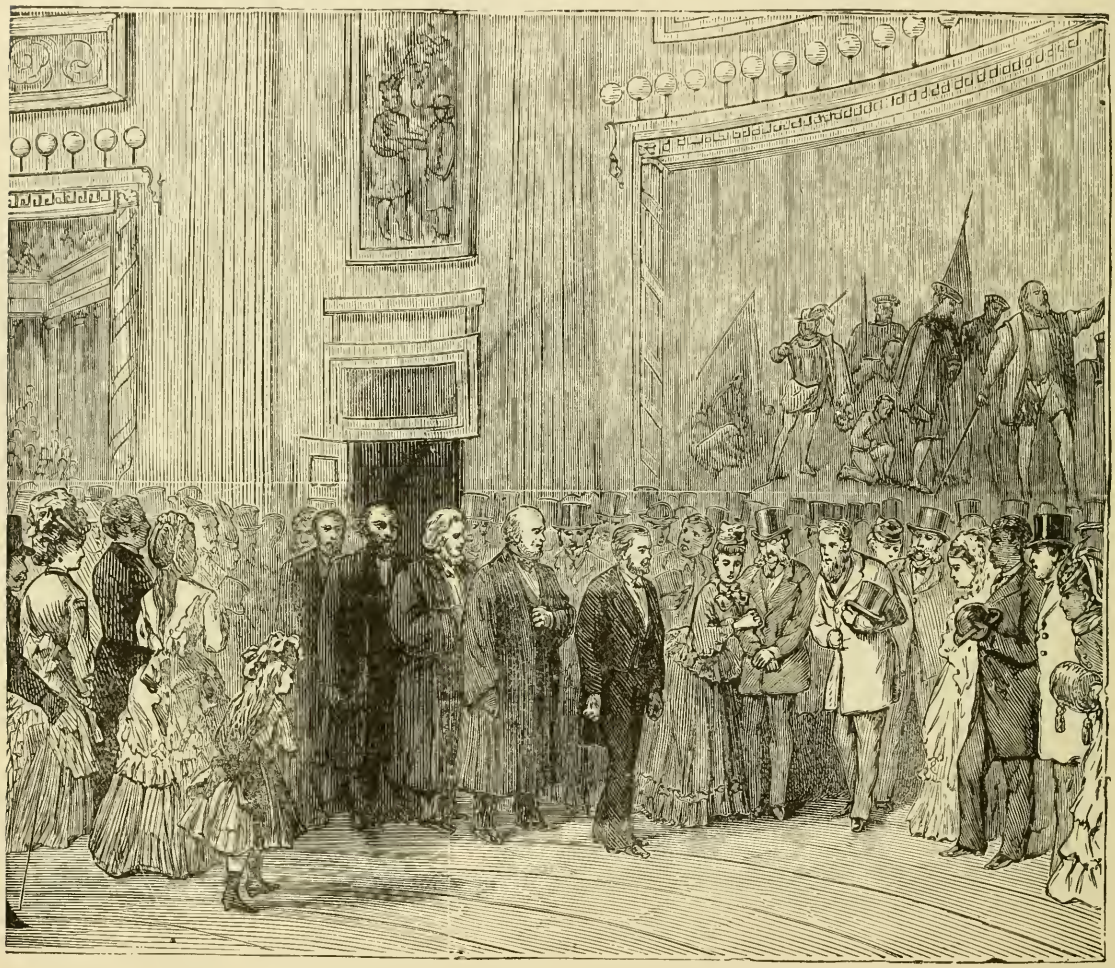
HORACE GREELEY.

the twenty-ninth of November, 1872, in the sixy-second year of his age. The country could ill afford to spare him.

On the ninth of November, 1872, a fire occurred in Boston, and burned until late on the tenth, sweeping over an area of sixty-five acres in the centre of the wholesale trade of the city, and destroying property to the amount of seventy-eight million dollars. As this fire was confined to the business quarter of the city, compartively few persons were deprived of their homes.

On the fourth of March, 1873, President Grant was inaugurated a second time, at Washington, with great pomp. Twelve thousand troops took part in the procession which escorted him to the capitol.

Early in 1873, a troublesome war began with the Modoc Indian tribe, on the Pacific coast. These Indians had been removed by the government from their old homes in California to reservations in the northern part of Oregon. They at length became dissatisfied with their new location, which they declared was unable to afford them a support, and began a series of depredations upon the



PRESIDENT GRANT PASSING THROUGH THE ROTUNDA TO TAKE THE OATH OF OFFICE.

settlements of the whites, which soon drew upon them the vengence of the Federal government. Troops were sent against them, but they retreated to their fastnesses in the lava beds, where they maintained a successful resistance for several months. The government at length reinforced the troops operating against them, and General Canby, commanding the department of the Pacific, assumed the immediate command of the troops in the field.

At the same time, a commission was appointed by the government to endeavor to settle the quarrel with the Indians peaceably. This commission held several conferences with Captain Jack, the head chief of the Modocs, and the other Indian leaders, but accomplished nothing. At length the commissioners and General Canby agreed to meet the Indians in the lava beds, a short distance in advance of the lines of the troops. They went unarmed and without an escort. While the conference was in progress, the Indians suddenly rose upon the commissioners, and killed all but one, who managed to escape with severe wounds. General Canby was shot down at the same time, and died instantly.

The Indians at once fled to their strongholds amid the rocks. The troops, infuriated by the murder of their commander, closed in upon them from all sides, and shut them in the lava beds. Their position was one which a handful of men might defend against an army, and they held it with a desperate determination. They were dislodged finally by the shells of the American guns, and such as were not killed were captured. Captain Jack and his associates in the murder of General Canby and the commissioners were tried by a court-martial and sentenced to death. They were hanged in the presence of their countrymen and of the troops on the third of October, 1873.

For many years Cuba had been growing dissatisfied with the rule of Spain. In 1868 a revolution broke out in that island, having for its object the expulsion of the Spaniards and the establishment of the independence of Cuba. The patriot army was able to win numerous successes over the Spanish troops, and for several years maintained its position against every effort to dislodge it. Very great sympathy was manifested for the Cuban patriots by the people of the United

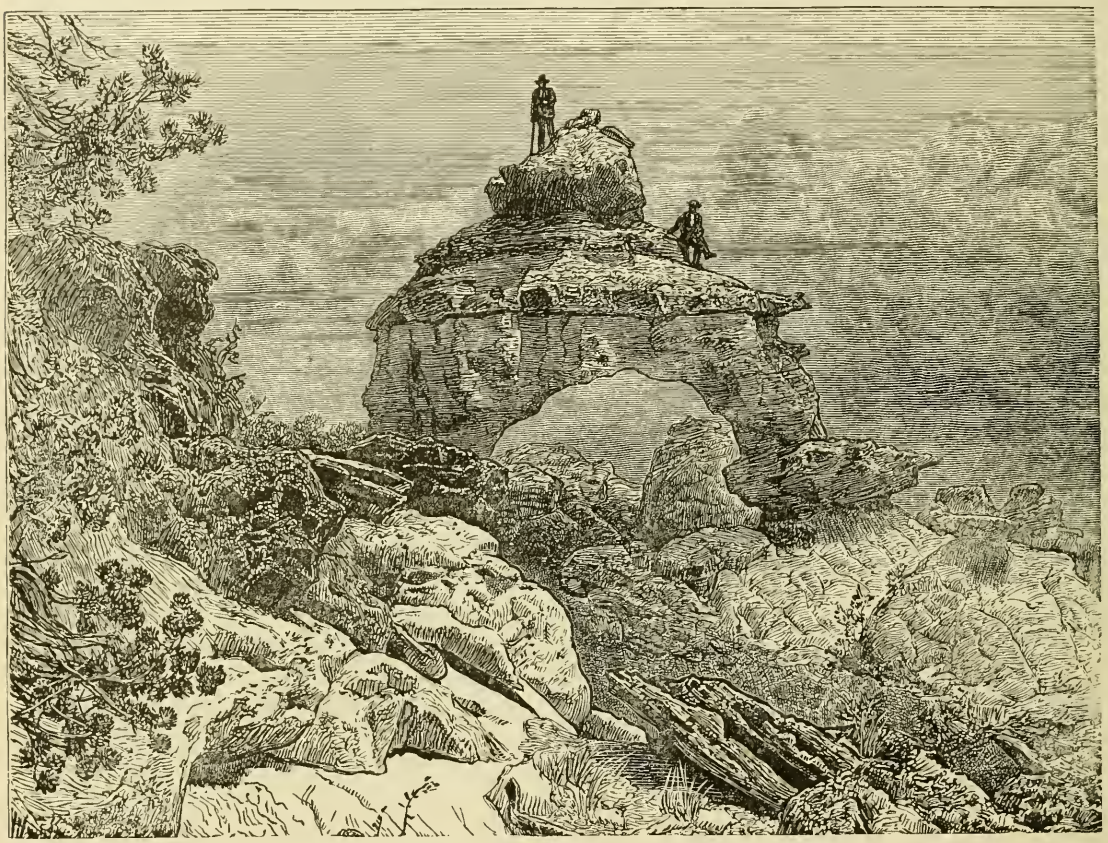
MRS. U. S. GRANT.

States, and repeated efforts were made to induce the government of this country to recognize the independence of Cuba and assist the patriots, or at least to acknowledge their rights as belligerents. The government, however, faithfully observed its obligations as a neutral power, and forbade the organization or departure of all expeditions from this country for the assistance of the Cubans. The Cuban agents were prevented from shipping arms or military supplies to

their forces, and several vessels intended to serve as cruisers against the Spanish commerce were seized and detained by the Federal authorities.

In spite of the precautions of the government, however, several expeditions did succeed in getting to sea and reaching Cuba. One of these embarked on the steamer "Virginius," in the fall of 1873. When off the coast of Jamaica the Spanish war steamer "Tornado" was sighted. She at once gave chase, and though the "Virginius" was on the high seas and was flying the American flag, overhauled her and took possession of her on the thirty-first of October. The "Tornado" then carried her prize into the port of Santiago de Cuba, which was reached the next day. Captain Fry, the commander of the "Virginius," and the crew and passengers of the vessel were thrown into prison.

After a mock trial, in which the simplest forms of decency were disregarded, Captain Fry and a number of the crew and passengers of the "Virginius," about thirty-five or forty in all, were shot by order of the military authorities. The other prisoners were held in a most cruel captivity to await the pleasure of the Spanish officials at Havana. The consul of the United States at Santiago de Cuba made great exertions to save Fry and those condemned to die with him. He was treated with great indignity by the Spanish officials, and was not allowed to communicate with



THE LAVA BEDS—SCENE OF THE MODOC WAR.

Havana, from which point he could consult his government by telegraph.

When the news of the seizure of the "Virginius" at sea under the American flag reached the United States it aroused a storm of indignation. Meetings were held in all the principal cities, and the press unanimously sustained the popular demand that the government should require satisfaction for the outrage upon its flag. The general sentiment of the people was in favor of instant war, and it was openly declared that a better opportunity would never arise to drive the Spaniards out of Cuba and obtain possession of the island.

Prompt Demands of the United States.

The government acted with firmness and prudence. Several vessels of war were sent to Santiago de Cuba to prevent the execution of the surviving prisoners taken with the "Virginius;" the fleet in the West Indies was reinforced as rapidly as possible, and the navy was at once put on a war footing in order to be ready for any emergency. The President was urged to convene Congress in extra session, but he declined to do so, knowing that that body would be most likely to yield to the popular demand for war, and he was anxious to settle the difficulty by peaceful means if possible.

General Sickels, the American minister at Madrid, was ordered to demand of the Spanish government the arrest and punishment of the officials implicated in the massacre of Captain Fry and his associates, a suitable indemnity in money for the families of the murdered men, an apology to the United States for the outrage upon their flag, and the surrender of the "Virginius" to the naval authorities of the United States. These demands were at once submitted to Señor Castellar, the President of the Spanish republic. In the critical situation in which Spain was then placed by her internal dissensions, Castellar had no choice but to submit to the American demands. Orders were at once transmitted to Cuba to surrender the "Virginius" and all the prisoners to the American naval forces.

The orders of the Spanish government were at first disregarded by the officials at Havana, who blustered a great deal, and declared their willingness to go to war with the United States. They were brought to their senses, however, by the warning of Captain General Jovellar, who told them that their refusal to obey the orders of the Madrid government would certainly involve them in a war with the United States, in which Spain would leave them to fight that power without aid from her. The Havana officials, therefore, yielded an ungracious obedience to the orders of the home government.

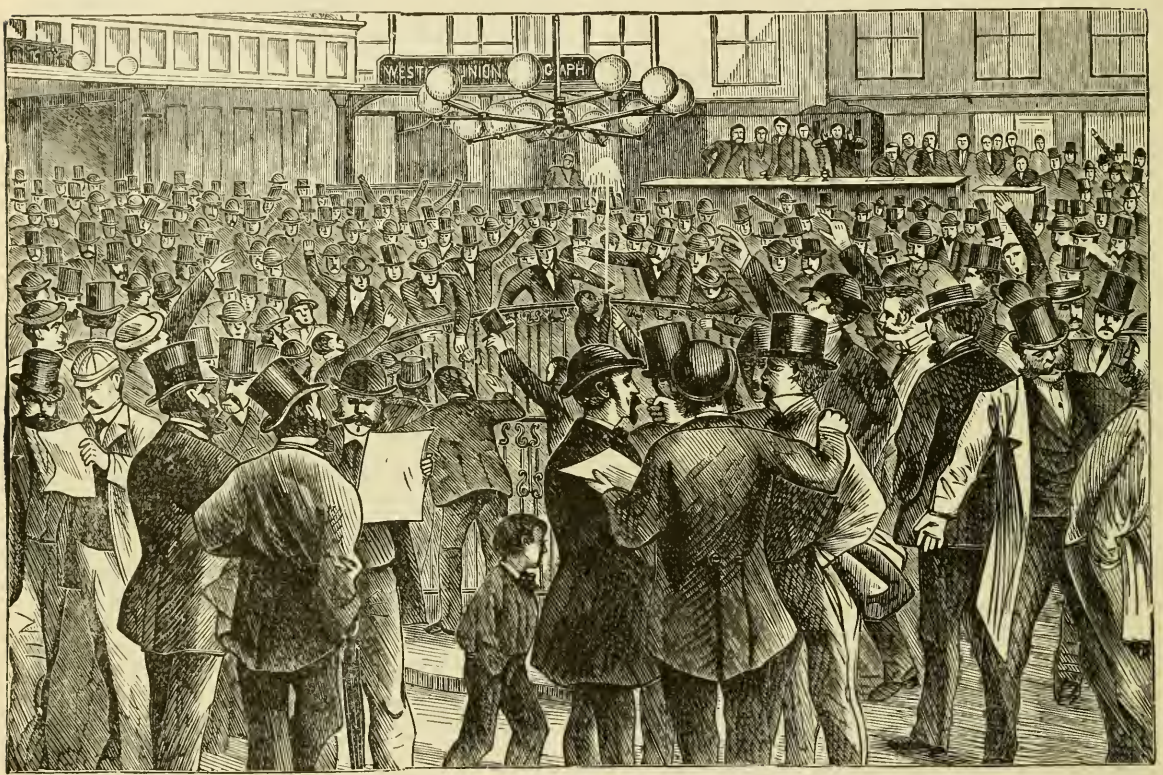
The survivors of the "Virginius" expedition, who were in a most pitiable condition in consequence of the cruelty with which they had been treated during their imprisonment, were released, and delivered on board of an American man-of-war in the harbor of Havana. On the twelfth of December the "Virginius" which had been taken to Havana by her captors some time before, was towed from that harbor and delivered to an American vessel sent to receive her. She was carried to Key West, from which port she was ordered to New York. On the voyage she foundered at sea in a gale off Cape Fear, on the twenty-sixth of December. At a later period the Spanish government paid the indemnity demanded by the United States.

Financial Crisis.

In the fall of 1873 a severe commercial crisis, known as the "Railroad Panic," burst upon the country. It was caused by excessive speculation in railway stocks and the reckless construction of railways in portions of the

country where they were not yet needed and which could not support them. The excitement began on the seventeenth of September, and on the eighteenth, nineteenth and twentieth several of the principal banking firms of New York and Philadelphia suspended payment. The failure of these houses involved hundreds of other firms in all parts of the country in their ruin. The excitement became so intense that on the twentieth the New York Stock Exchange closed its doors and put a stop to all sales of stocks in order to prevent a general destruction of the values of all securities. The banks were obliged to resort to the most stringent measures to avoid being drawn into the common ruin.

President Grant and the Secretary of the Treasury hastened to New York to consult the capitalists of that city as to the proper measures to be taken for the relief of the business of the country. Various measures were urged upon them. A strong appeal was made to the President to lend the whole or the greater part of the treasury reserve of forty-four million dollars of greenbacks to the banks to furnish the Wall street brokers with funds to settle their losses and resume business. He at once declined to take so grave a step, and, thanks to his firmness, the credit of the United States was not placed at the mercy of the reckless men who had caused the trouble.



SCENE IN THE NEW YORK STOCK EXCHANGE DURING THE PANIC OF 1873.

The government as a measure of relief consented to purchase a number of its bonds of a certain class at a fair price, and thus enable the holders who were in need of money to obtain it without sacrificing their securities. On the twenty-second the excitement in New

York and the Eastern cities began to subside. The trouble was not over, however. The stringency of the money market which followed the first excitement prevailed for fully a year, and affected all branches of the industry of the country, and caused severe suffering from loss of employment and lowering of wages to the working classes.

The panic showed the extent to which railroad gambling had demoralized the business and the people of the country. It showed that some of the strongest and most trusted firms in the Union had lent themselves to the task of inducing people to invest their money in the securities of enterprises the success of which was, to say the least, doubtful. It showed that the banks, the depositories of the people's money, had to an alarming extent crippled themselves by neglecting their legitimate business and making advances on securities which in the hour of trial proved worthless in many cases, uncertain in most. The money needed for the use of the legitimate business of the country had been placed at the mercy of the railroad gamblers and had been used by them. The funds of helpless and dependent persons, of widows and orphan children, had been used to pay fictitious dividends and advance schemes which had been stamped with the disapproval of the public.

An amount of recklessness and demoralization was revealed in the management of the financial interests of the country that startled even the most hardened. The lesson was severe, but it was needed. The panic was followed by a better and more healthful state of affairs. The business of the country slowly settled down within proper channels. Recklessness was succeeded by prudence; extravagance by economy in all quarters. The American people took their severe lesson to heart, and resolutely set to work to secure the good results that came to them from this harvest of misfortune.

During the year 1874, sixty persons were murdered at different times in Texas by raider Indians from the Fort Sill reservation, where they were fed by the government and treated as friends. In addition to these atrocities, they also ran off with a large number of horses and mules belonging to settlers on the frontier and to freighters.

SCENE ON THE COLORADO RIVER.

In July, the Commissioner of Indian Affairs, in turning over the savages to the military, directed that "friendly Indians, not participating in late outrages, coming into agencies

will be protected. All professing to be loyal must enter immediately and be enrolled, and each one capable of bearing arms must answer to daily roll-call. No additional Indians must be received amongst them without permission." The result of this announcement was the enrollment of one hundred and seventy-three Kiowas, present at the time of the receipt of the commissioner's dispatch, and who, the agent was positive, had not been at war; one hundred and eight Apaches, likewise present; and eighty-three Comanches, either there at the time or arriving by August third, the day appointed by Lieutenant-Colonel Davidson as the last upon which the enrollment could take place.

Some time after August third, the following Comanche chiefs asked permission to come in: Big Red Food, Tobermanca, Assanonica, Little Crow and Black Duck. Word was sent to Assanonica that he would be admitted on condition of yielding up his arms. The rest were forbidden to come, since it was well known that they had been engaged in several massacres. Big Red Food, however, defied the prohibition, and drawing near to the Wichita agency with his band, formed a point around which the disaffected began to gather.

The Kiowas Open Fire.

On the twenty-first of August, Lieutenant-Colonel Davidson received word from the officer commanding at the agency that trouble was anticipated there. He at once marched with four companies of cavalry, and immediately upon his arrival effected the arrest of Red Food, chief of the Nocanees, and told him that he and his band must submit. He appeared to consent, but presently escaped from his guard.

At the same time the troops were fired upon from the rear by Kiowas, many of whom had just been enrolled at Fort Sill as friendly. The troops were much perplexed in the endeavor to distinguish the amicable from the hostile Indians; but by the aid of interpreters this was accomplished; the inimical band was scattered and its lodges and property were destroyed. It had undoubtedly been their design to implicate those of their band who were disposed to peace, but their purpose was entirely frustrated, and the affiliated tribes belonging to the agency were settled in their allegiance more firmly than ever.

In April, 1875, an engagement occurred at the north fork of Sappa Creek. On the morning of the nineteenth of April Lieutenant Austin Henely, of Fort Wallace, Kansas, started to find the trail of a party of Indians reported to be at Punished Woman's Fork. With him were forty men of Company H, Sixth Cavalry, Lieutenant C. C. Hewitt, Surgeon F. H. Atkins, and Mr. Homer Wheeler, post trader of Fort Wallace, as guide. He also had fifteen days' rations, ten days' forage and two six-mule teams.

On the Trail.

On the second day he directed that his wagons, with a guard under the command of Sergeant Kitchin, should proceed directly to Hackberry Creek while he scouted Twin Butte and Hackberry to find a trail. About noon Corporal Morris, commanding the advance, discovered traces of twelve lodges. Lieutenant Henely at once collected his wagons, abandoned one of them, as well as half his forage, rations and camp equipage, notified the commanding officer at Fort Wallace of the fact, in order that they might be recovered, and started on the trail at the rate of nearly five miles an hour, reaching Smoky Hill River that night. A heavy rain during the night rendered it difficult to follow the tracks the next day. At the Kansas Pacific Railroad the trail was scattered and lost.

After considerable deliberation it was decided to take a northeast course to the North Beaver and follow it to its source, upon the supposition that the Indians would collect there and pass down for the purpose of hunting. Shortly after daylight a party of hunters was met, who informed Lieutenant Henely that the Indians he was in search of were on the north fork of Sappa Creek, and had robbed their camp during their absence the day before. Three of the hunters volunteered to guide the party to the Indian encampment.

In the gray dawn of the morning the squad arrived at the creek, about three-quarters of a mile above the camp, being attracted to the spot by the sight of a number of ponies grazing. Presently Mr. Wheeler came back, galloping with furious speed, swinging his hat and shouting in a loud voice. As the force came up with him the Indian camp was displayed to view.

Plan of Attack.

The plan for the attack had been arranged as follows: Sergeant Kitchin was detailed to kill the herders, round up the herd as near as possible to the main command and take charge of it with half of his men. Corporal Sharples, with five men, was left with the wagon and instructed to keep as near as possible to Lieutenant Henely, the rest of the command were to attack the savages.

The north fork of Sappa Creek at this point is very crooked, is bordered by high and precipitous bluffs, and flows sluggishly through a marshy bottom, making it extremely difficult to cross. As the men charged down the sides ten or twelve of the Indians ran rapidly up the bluff to a small herd of ponies; others escaped down the creek to another herd; while the remainder, the last to be awakened, probably seeing that flight was impossible, prepared for a desperate defence. By this time the men had reached the creek, which looked alarmingly deep and marshy.

Lieutenant Henely, realizing that no time was to be lost in searching for a crossing, plunged in with his horse, followed by Mr. Wheeler. By extraordinary efforts their horses struggled through. A corporal who followed became mired; but at length, by strenuous endeavors, all succeeded in crossing just as a number of dusky figures with long rifles confronted them, their heads appearing over a bank made by the creek in highwater.

The Battle-ground.

This bank, with the portion of the creek and bluffs in the immediate vicinity, possessed the rather remarkable feature of a large number of curious holes or pits, for what purpose constructed did not appear. Some of the Indians took refuge in these hollows; others lined the bank, with their rifles resting on the crest. Lieutenant Henely rapidly formed his men in line and signalled to the savages to surrender, as did likewise Mr. Wheeler. One, who appeared to be a chief, made some rapid gesticulations which seemed to be motions for a parley; but it was soon obvious that they were meant for Indians in the rear.

The lieutenant now ordered his men to dismount and fight on foot, and as they did so the enemy fired, but in so excited a manner that no one was hurt. The troops, posted around in a skirmish-line, were commanded to fire. If the reader will imagine the dress circle of a theatre lowered to within about five feet of the pit, the men to be deployed about the edge, and the Indians down among the orchestra-chairs, they will have some idea of the relative positions of the parties. The most exposed portion was near the centre of the arc. Here Sergeant Theodore Papier and Private Robert Theims,

of Company H, Sixth Cavalry, were instantly killed while fighting with great valor.

After some twenty minutes of firing the Indians ceased to return the attack, and the lieutenant prepared to draw off his men in pursuit of those who had fled Scarcely had they mounted when two savages ran up to the two bodies in the endeavor to gain possession of them; but three or four men charged them at a gallop and rendered their efforts useless. At this moment an Indian, gaudily dressed, jumped from a hole and, with peculiar sidelong leaps, attempted to escape, but was shot down. Lieutenant Henely then posted his men at the ends of the crest and resumed the attack, the savages returning it from their pits, but without doing any damage.

VIEW IN THE GRAND CANYON OF THE COLORADO RIVER.

The firing having ceased, it was inferred that all were killed, and the command moved in the direction of the ponies, driving off the Indian guard, and bringing in a herd of the animals. As they returned a solitary shot was fired from the holes, piercing the horse of one of the officers entirely through the body. Lieutenant Henely then determined to make a termination, and ordered the men to advance on all sides, keeping up a steady fire. The only response was a few shots from the pits, which did no damage.

Nineteen dead warriors were counted, in

addition to eight squaws and children accidentally killed. From the war-bonnets and rich ornaments, two were judged to be chiefs, and one whose bonnet was surmounted by two horns was thought to be a medicine-man.

The Indian camp was burned and the captured stock, amounting to one hundred and thirty-four animals, driven off. On the return march to Fort Wallace the command was overtaken by a terrible snow-storm and forced to encamp under a bank. It was impossible to herd the captured stock, the entire attention of the men being required to save themselves and their horses from freezing to death. Having no tents and but one blanket each, the men passed a night of intense suffering. Some of them were frozen; others, who had dug holes in the banks for shelter, had to be extricated in the morning by their comrades. On the following da the men disbanded into small squads to search for the captured stock, and succeeded in recapturing about one hundred head.

In January, 1875, Congress passed an act providing for the resumption of specie payments, and requiring that on and after January 1, 1879, the legal tender notes of the Government shall be redeemed in specie. In the meantime silver coin is to be substituted for the fractional paper currency.

On the fourth of March, 1875, Congress authorized the Territory of Colorado to form a State Constitution. She was admitted as a State August 1, 1876.

Centennial Celebration.

The political troubles in Louisiana and Arkansas assumed a most serious character during the year 1873, amounting to civil war in both States. The President, in view of the serious nature of the disturbances, intervened with force in each State, and compelled the rival parties to refrain from additional hostilities, and the quarrels were settled in the course of the year without further bloodshed.

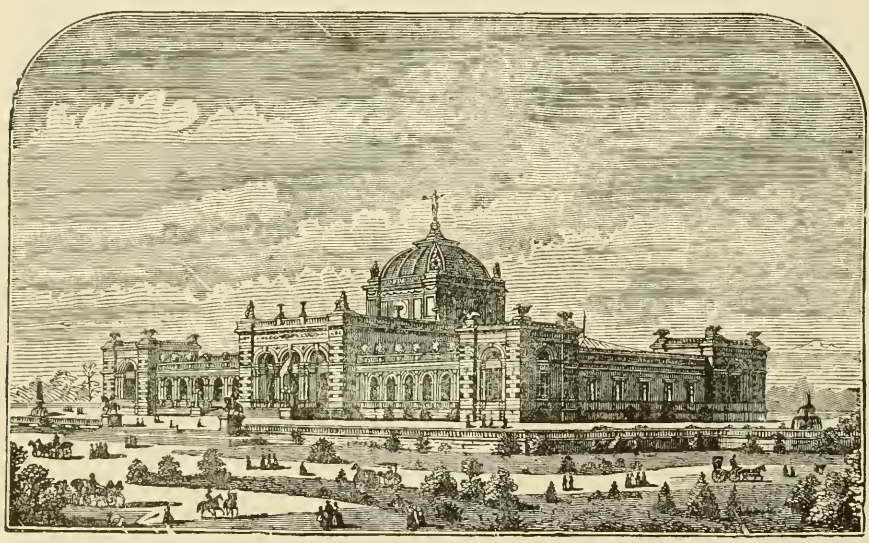
The year 1875 completed the period of one hundred years from the opening of the revolution, and the events of 1775 were celebrated with appropriate commemorative ceremonies in the places where they occurred. The centennial anniversary of the battles at Lexington and Concord was celebrated at those places on the nineteenth of April with great rejoicings. On the seventeenth of June the centennial of Bunker Hill was celebrated at Charlestown. Vast crowds were present from all parts of the country. One of the most gratifying features of the celebration was the presence and hearty participation in the ceremonies of a large number of troops from the Southern States. Nearly all of these had served in the Confederate army, and their presence in the metropolis of New England was an emphatic proof that the Union has indeed been restored. The memory of the common glory won by the fathers of the republic has already done much to heal the wounds and obliterate the scars of the civil war. May the good work go on.

Imposing Ceremonies.

As early as 1872 measures were set on foot for the proper observance of the one hundredth anniversary of the independence of the United States. It was resolved to commemorate the close of the first century of the republic by an International Exhibition, to be held at Philadelphia in 1876, in which all the nations of the world were invited to participate. Preparations were at once set on foot for the great celebration.

The European governments with great cordiality responded to the invitations extended to them by the government of the United States, and on the tenth of May,

1876, the International Centennial Exhibition was opened with the most imposing ceremonies, in the presence of an immense concourse of citizens from all parts of the Union, and of the President of the United States and the Emperor of Brazil. The exhibition remained open from May 10th to November 10th, 1876, and was visited by several million people from the various States of the Union, from Canada, South America and Europe. It was one of the grandest and most notable events of the century, and illustrated our country's progress.



MEMORIAL HALL, FAIRMOUNT PARK, PHILADELPHIA.

On the fourth day of July, 1876, the United States of America completed the one hundredth year of their existence as an independent nation. The day was celebrated with imposing ceremonies and with the most patriotic enthusiasm in all parts of the Union. The celebrations began on the night of the third of July, and were kept up until near midnight on the fourth. Each of the great cities of the Union vied with the others in the splendor and completeness of its rejoicings; but the most interesting of all the celebrations was naturally that which was held at Philadelphia, in which city the Declaration of Independence was adopted.

The arrangements for the proper observance of the day were confided to the United States Centennial Commission, and extensive preparations were made to conduct them on a scale of splendor worthy of the glorious occasion. The city of Philadelphia and the State of Pennsylvania lent their cordial cooperation to the effort to have all things in readiness for the Fourth, and the work went forward with a heartiness and vigor that could not fail of complete success.

It was wisely resolved by the Commission that as the Declaration of Independence was signed in Independence Hall and proclaimed to the people in Independence Square, the commemorative ceremonies should be so conducted as to make the venerable building the grand central figure of all the demonstrations. The city authorities caused the building to be handsomely draped in the national colors, and enormous stands, covered with canvas awnings and ornamented with flags and streamers, were erected in Independence Square for the accommodation of the singers and invited guests who were to take part in the rejoicings. A new bell of vast proportions—the gift of a patriotic and public-spirited citizen—was hung in the State House tower, ready to join its deep tones to the shouts of the multitude when the moment of rejoicing should arrive.

Being anxious that the Centennial celebration should do its share in cementing the reunion of the Northern and Southern States, the Commission began, at least a year before the occasion, the formation of a "Centennial Legion," consisting of a detachment of troops from each of the thirteen original States. The command of this splendid body of picked troops was conferred upon General Ambrose E. Burnside, of Rhode Island, and General Henry Heth, of Virginia, was chosen Lieutenant-Colonel. Both were veterans of the late civil war. The Legion was readily made up, the best volunteer commands of the original States being eager to serve in it. For a week previous to the fourth of July crowds of people began to pour steadily into Philadelphia. Volunteer organizations from the various States were constantly arriving and were either encamped at various points in and around the Exhibition grounds or were quartered at the various hotels.

Gay Decorations.

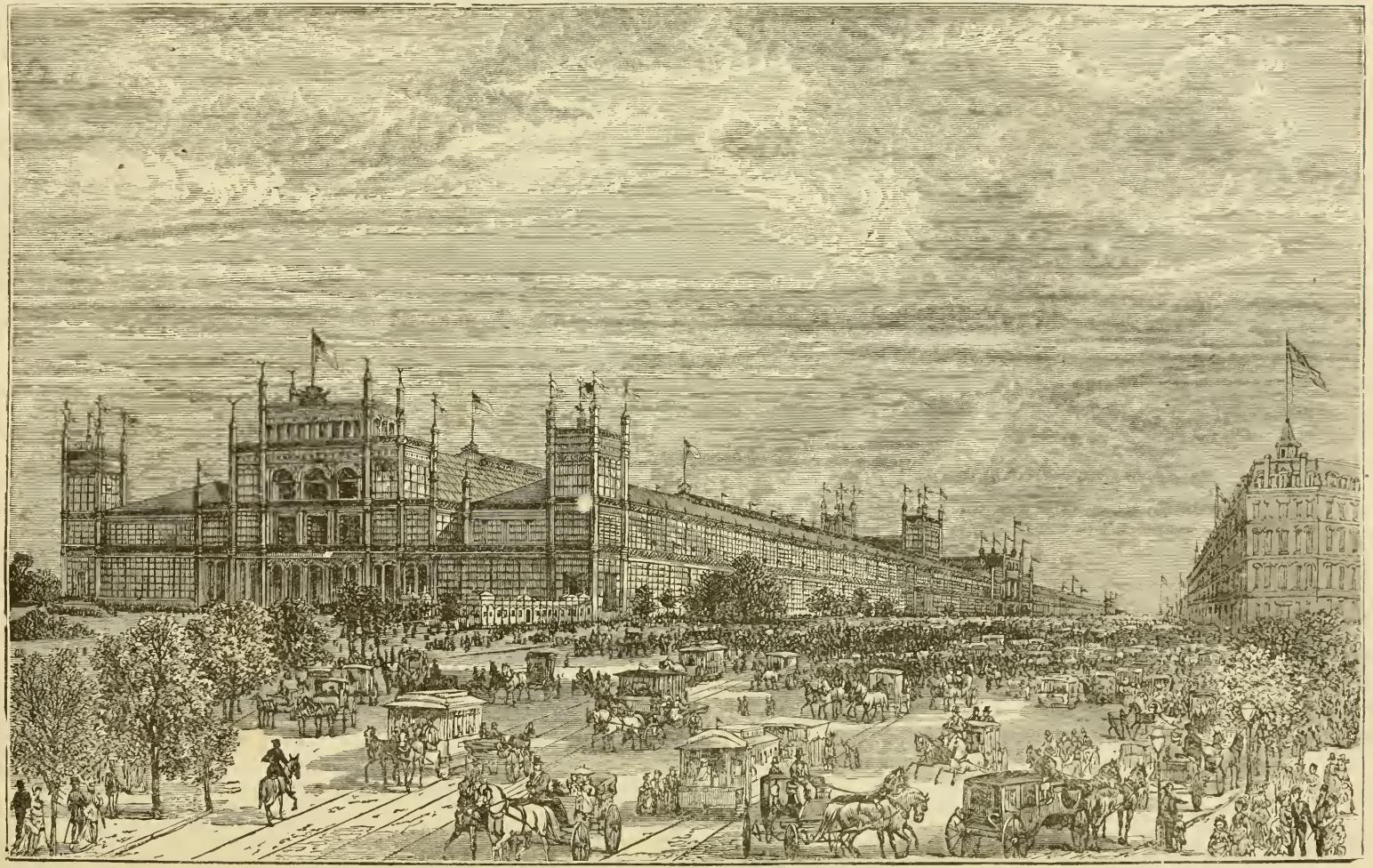
The city was gayly decorated with flags and streamers, and the view down any of the principal streets was brilliant by reason of the clouds of bunting with which it was decorated. The principal buildings were almost hidden by the flags which adorned them, or were ornamented with patriotic inscriptions, and at various points on Chestnut street triumphal arches were erected. By the night of the third of July it was estimated that at least two hundred and fifty thousand strangers were assembled in Philadelphia.

The Centennial ceremonies were begun on the morning of Saturday, the first of July. The leading writers of the Union had been invited to prepare memoirs of the great men of our revolutionary period, which were to be deposited among the archives of the State House, and all who were able to accept the invitation assembled in Independence Hall at eleven o'clock on the morning of July 1, 1876, where they were joined by a number of invited guests. The ceremonies were opened by an address from Colonel Frank M. Etting, the Chairman of the Committee on the Restoration of Independence Hall, and a prayer by the Rev. William White Bronson. Whittier's Centennial Hymn was then sung by a chorus of fifty voices. The names of the authors were then called, to which each responded in person or by proxy, and laid his memoir on the table in the hall. The exercises were then brought to a close, and the company repaired to the stand in Independence Square, where a large crowd had assembled.

Odes, Speeches and Orations.

The ceremonies in the square were begun at half-past twelve o'clock with Helfrich's Centennial Triumphal March, performed by the Centennial Musical Association. Mr. John William Wallace, the president of the day, then delivered a short address, after which Whittier's Centennial Hymn was sung by a chorus of one hundred and fifty voices, and Mr. William V. McKean reviewed at some length the great historical event in commemoration of which the ceremonies were held.

After the band had played "God Save America," the Hon. Leverett Saltonstall, of Massachusetts, delivered an address, which elicited warm applause. "The Voice of the Old Bell," a Centennial ode, was then sung, and Governor Henry Lippitt, of Rhode Island, made a short speech. The band followed with a number of patriotic airs, and Mr. Wallace announced the unavoidable absence of General John A. Dix, and introduced in his place Frederick De Peyster, President of the New York Historical Society, who made a few remarks. After a Centennial Ode, by S. C. Upham, had been sung



VIEW OF THE MAIN BUILDING OF THE INTERNATIONAL CENTENNIAL EXHIBITION.—1880 feet in length, and 464 feet in width.

by the chorus, the Hon. Benjamin Harris Brewster delivered an eloquent address, at the close of which another Centennial Hymn, by William Fennimore, was sung. Senator Frank P. Stevens, of Maryland, then said a few words, after which the "Star Spangled Banner" was sung, and the exercises were brought to a close by a prayer from Bishop Stevens.

All through Sunday, the second, the crowds continued to pour into the city, and on Monday, third, the streets were almost impassable. Business was generally suspended from the first to the fifth of July.

Brilliant Illuminations.

The celebration ushering in the Fourth of July was begun on the night of the third. A grand civic and torchlight procession paraded the streets, which were brilliantly illuminated along the whole line of march. The procession began to move about half-past 8 o'clock at night, and consisted of deputations representative of the various trades of the city, the Centennial Commissioners from the various foreign countries taking part in the Exhibition, the Governors of a number of the States of the Union, officers of the army and navy of the United States, civic and political associations and officers of foreign men-of-war visiting the city. Some of the deputations bore torches, and these added to the brilliancy of the scene. All along the line fireworks were ascending into the air, and cheer after cheer went up from the dense masses of enthusiastic spectators which filled the sidewalks.

The illumination of the streets along the route of the procession was superb. Chestnut and Broad streets flashed resplendently in lines of fire and colored lanterns. The dense masses which thronged these streets stood out boldly in the clear light of the illumination, and the long, slow-moving line of the procession flowed through them like a vast river.

Crowds had collected around Independence Hall, filling the street before it and the square in the rear of it. An orchestra and chorus were stationed on the stands in the square to hail the opening of the Fourth with music. The movements of the procession were so timed that the head of the column arrived in front of Independence Hall precisely at midnight.

Grand Military Parade.

The crowd, which had been noisy but good natured, was hushed into silence as the hands of the clock in the tower approached the midnight hour, and one hundred thousand people waited in breathless eagerness the strokes which were to usher in the glorious day. As the minute-hand swept slowly past the hour there was a profound silence, and then came rolling out of the lofty steeple the deep, liquid tones of the new liberty bell, sounding wonderfully solemn and sweet as they floated down to the crowd below. Thirteen peals were struck, and the first tone had hardly died away when there went up from the crowd such a shout as had never been heard in Philadelphia before. It was caught up and re-echoed all over the city, and at the same time the musicians and singers in the square broke into the grand strains of the "Star Spangled Banner." All the bells and steam whistles in the city joined in the sounds of rejoicing, and fireworks and firearms made the noise tenfold louder. When the "Star Spangled Banner" was ended the chorus in Independence Square sang the "Doxology," in which the crowd joined heartily, and the band then played national airs.

The festivities were kept up until after two o'clock, and it was not until the first streaks of the dawn began to tinge the sky that the streets of the city resumed their wonted appearance.

The lull in the festivities was not of long duration. The day was at hand, and it threatened to be mercilessly hot, as indeed it was. As the sun arose in his full-orbed splendor, the thunder of cannon from the Navy Yard, from the heights of Fairmount Park, and from the Swedish, Brazilian, and American war vessels in the Delaware, and the clanging of bells from every steeple in the city, roused the few who had managed to snatch an hour or two of sleep after the fatigues of the night,

GENERAL J. R. HAWLEY.

and by six o'clock the streets were again thronged.

In view of the extreme heat of the weather, the military parade had been ordered for an early hour of the day. The troops numbered about ten thousand men, rank and file, and the whole column was under the chief command of General Hartranft, Governor of Pennsylvania, and a gallant veteran of the civil war. The command was made up of troops, who during that bloody struggle had fought each other gallantly, and who had now come to testify their devotion to their common country, and to show to the world that in trusting its defence to its well-regulated militia, the American republic is stronger than the most powerful monarchies of the old world.

At half-past eight, the column began to move down Chestnut street towards Independence Hall, in front of which the troops were reviewed by General W. T. Sherman, the Commanding General of the armies of the United States; the Secretary of War; Prince Oscar of Sweden; Lieutenant-General Saigo, of the Imperial army of Japan; the officers of the Swedish men-of-war in the harbor; the governors of several of the States; and General Hawley, the President of the Centennial Commission.

As the troops passed along they were greeted with enthusiastic cheers by the crowds on the street. The Centennial Legion and the troops from the Southern States were the objects of an especially hearty demonstration. The route chosen was a short one, the extreme heat forbidding an extended parade, and by ten o'clock, the military ceremonies were over.

Huzzahs in Independence Square.

As soon as the parade was ended the crowd turned into Independence Square, which was soon filled The approaches to the building by way of Chestnut and Sansom streets were kept clear by the police, in order that those who were entitled to seats on the stand might reach their places. Four thousand persons were given seats on the stand, and a vast crowd filled the square. As the invited guests appeared and took their seats on the platform, the prominent personages were cheered by the crowd. The Emperor of Brazil received a welcome that was especially noticeable for its heartiness.

It was hoped that the President of the United States would be present and preside

over the ceremonies; but General Grant declined the invitation to do so, which it was at once his privilege and his duty to accept, and remained in Washington, preferring his selfish ease to a little patriotic exertion and exposure to the heat on this grandest of his country's festivals. His absence was generally remarked and severely condemned by his countrymen.

At a few minutes after ten o'clock, General Hawley, the President of the United States Centennial Commission, appeared at the speaker's stand and signalled to the orchestra to begin. The opening piece, which was an overture entitled "The Great Republic," based on the national air, "Hail Columbia," and arranged for the occasion by Professor George F. Bristow, of New York, was rendered in fine style by the orchestra under the leadership of Mr. P. Gilmore. As the music ceased General Hawley again came forward and introduced as the presiding officer of the day the Hon. Thomas W. Ferry, Vice-President of the United States, who was received with loud cheers.

Great Enthusiasm Over the Declaration.

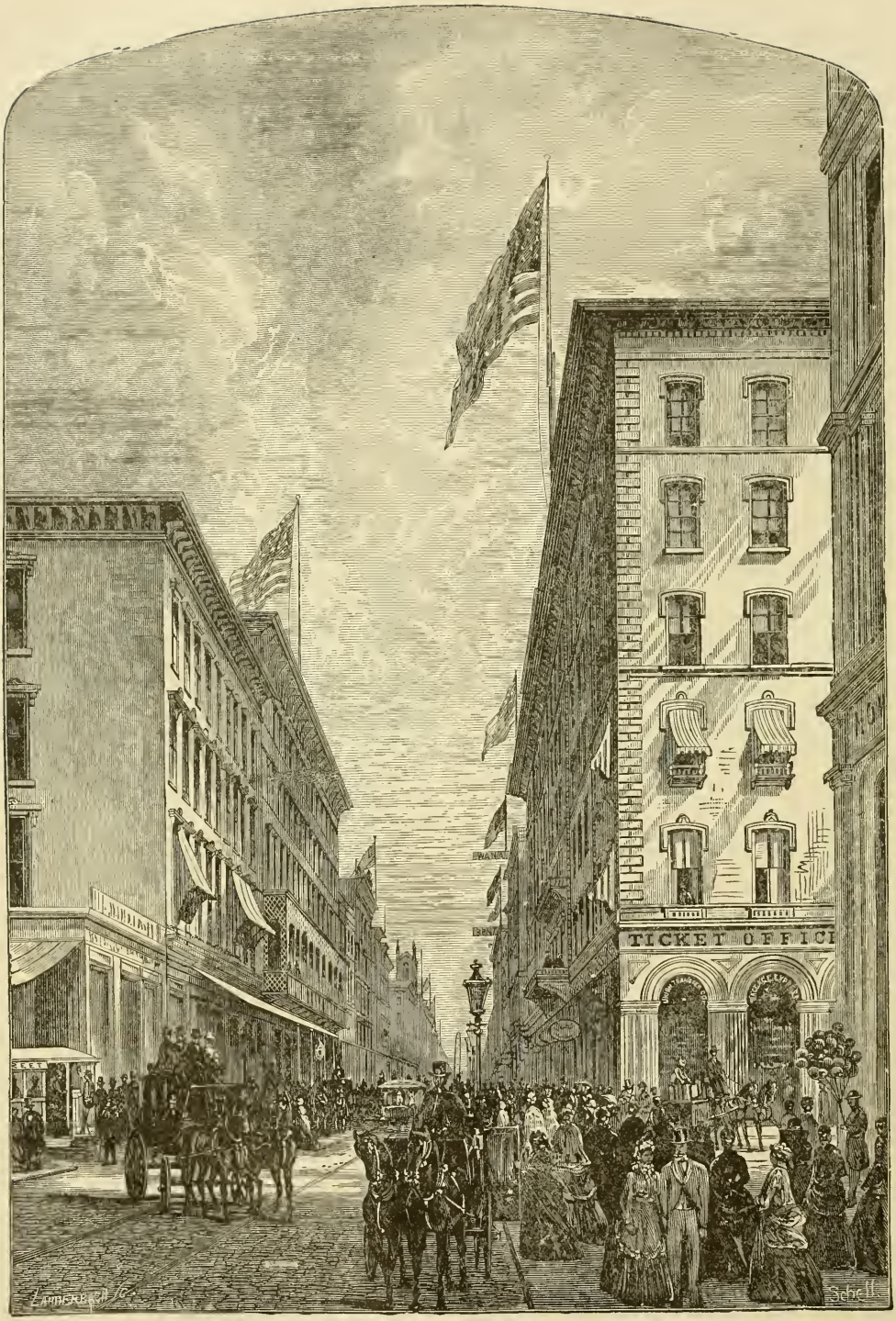
After a few remarks appropriate to the occasion Vice President Ferry presented to the audience Right Reverend William Bacon Stevens, D. D., the Protestant Episcopal Bishop of Pennsylvania, whom he introduced as the ecclesiastical successor of the first chaplain of the Continental Congress. The bishop was in his canonical robes, with prayer book in hand. He delivered a solemn and impressive prayer, during the utterance of which the whole audience stood with uncovered heads, silent and attentive, unmindful of the blazing sun which poured down upon them.

When the prayer was ended the "Hymn, 'Welcome to All Nations,' words by Oliver Wendell Holmes, music, 'Keller's Hymn,'" was sung. The Vice-President then announced that Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, a grandson of the patriot of the Revolution who offered the resolution in Congress that "these United Colonies are and of right ought to be free and independent States," would read the Declaration of Independence from the original manuscript, which the President had entrusted to the Mayor of Philadelphia. The faded and crumbling manuscript, held together by a simple frame, was then exhibited to the crowd and was greeted with cheer after cheer. Richard Henry Lee, a soldierly-looking Virginian, then came forward and read the Declaration; but the enthusiasm of the crowd was too great to permit them to listen to it quietly.

At the close of the reading the orchestra performed a musical composition entitled "A Greeting from Brazil," a hymn for the first Centennial of American Independence, composed by A. Carlos Gomez, of Brazil, at the request of His Majesty Dom Pedro II, Emperor of Brazil. It was received with cheers by the crowd, which were repeated for the Brazilian Emperor, whose hearty interest in the Centennial celebrations and the Exhibition had made him a favorite in Philadelphia.

The Hallelujah Chorus

Mr. John Welsh, Chairman of the Centennial Board of Finance, then, at the suggestion of Vice-President Ferry, introduced Bayard Taylor, the poet of the day, who recited a noble ode, which was listened to with deep attention, the audience occasionally breaking out into applause. When the poem was ended, the chorus sang "Our National Banner," the words by Dexter Smith, of Massachusetts, the music by Sir Julius Benedict, of England



826 INTERSECTION OF NINTH AND CHESTNUT STS., PHILADELPHIA.

As the music died away the Vice-President introduced the Hon. William M. Evarts, of New York, the orator of the day. Mr. Evarts was greeted with hearty cheers, after which he proceeded to deliver an eloquent and able address, reviewing the lessons of the past century, and dwelling upon the great work America had performed for the world.

When Mr. Evarts retired from the speaker's stand, General Hawley gave the signal to the leader of the orchestra, and the "Hallelujah Chorus," from "The Messiah," was sung; after which the vast audience, at the request of the Vice-President, joined in the One Hundredth Psalm, with which the memorable ceremonies came to an end.

At night the city was brilliantly illuminated, and a magnificent display of fireworks was given by the municipal authorities at old Fairmount.

War with the Sioux.

The year 1876, however, was not destined to be entirely a period of peace. In 1867 the Government of the United States made a treaty with the Sioux Indians, by which the latter agreed to relinquish to the United States all the territory south of the Niobrara River, west of the one hundred and fourth meridian of longitude and north of the forty-sixth parallel of latitude. This treaty secured to the Sioux a large reservation in the southwestern part of Dakota, and they agreed to withdraw to this reservation by the first of January, 1876. A few years later gold was discovered in the Black Hills country, a very desirable region situated in southwestern Dakota, and lying within the Sioux reservation.

The announcement of this discovery produced great excitement among the mining class. In the summer of 1874 an expedition under General Custer was sent by the War Department to explore the Black Hills region, partly for the purpose of ascertaining the character of the country, and partly to discover practicable military routes between Fort Lincoln, in the Department of Dakota, opposite the terminus of the Union Pacific Railway, and Fort Laramie, in the Department of the Platte. The report of this expe-

OBVERSE OF CENTENNIAL MEDAL.

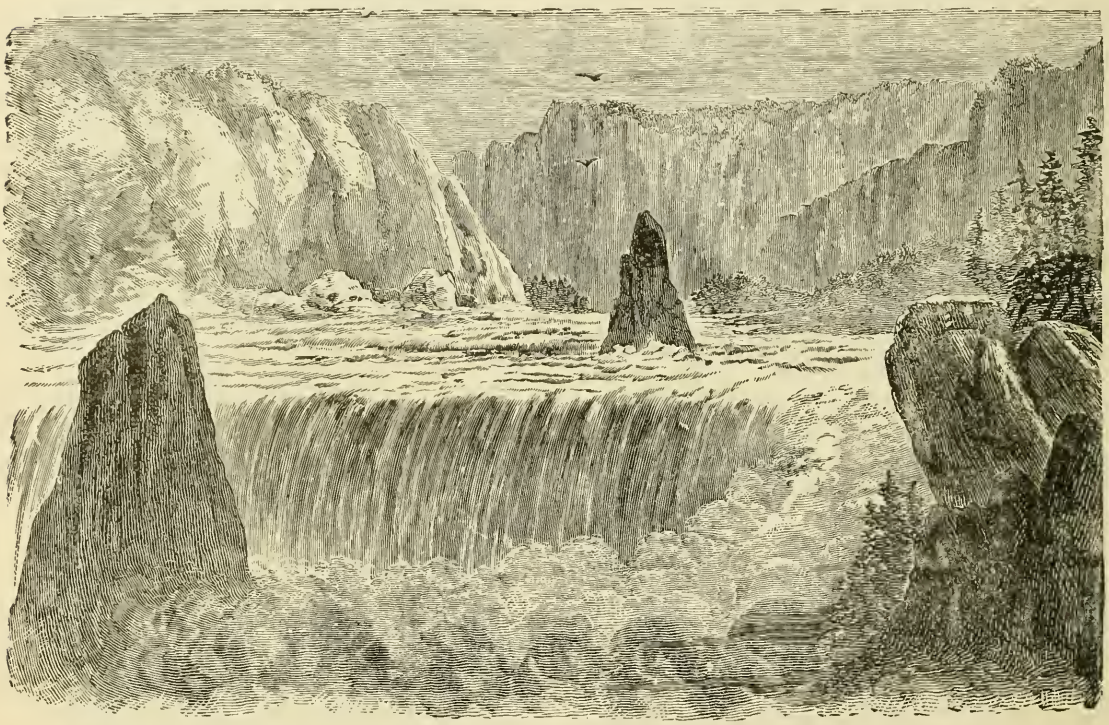
REVERSE OF CENTENNIAL MEDAL

dition confirmed the stories of the discovery of gold, and immediate preparations were made by parties of miners to proceed to the favored lands for the purpose of working the gold mines. These expeditions being reported to the Government, measures were taken by the War Department to prevent

any intrusion into the Indian reservation. Notwithstanding this prohibition, private expeditions were fitted out and started for the Black Hills. Some of these were driven back by the Indians, with loss of life and property, but others succeeded in reaching the Black Hills.

It was now evident that a systematic and determined effort would be made to settle the Black Hills, in spite of the opposition of the army; and the government decided to endeavor to purchase the region from the Sioux and throw it open to emigration. Efforts were made during the year 1875 to induce the Sioux to sell their lands, but the weak and vacillating course pursued by the government simply disgusted the Indians, and they refused to make the desired arrangement.

The Sioux had never been really willing to retire to the reservation to which the treaty of 1867 confined them, and now took advantage of the intrusions of the whites into their territory to gratify their long-cherished wish for war. They broke away from their reservation, and made repeated forays into Wyoming and Montana, laid the country waste, carried off the horses and cattle, and murdered such settlers as ventured to oppose them.



SHOSHONEE FALLS, IDAHO.

This brought matters to a crisis, and early in 1876 the government resolved to drive the Sioux back upon their reservation. A force of regular troops, under Generals Terry and Crook, was sent into the difficult mountainous region of the Upper Yellowstone, and an active campaign was begun against the Indians. The force was too small, however, for the work required of it.

In spite of the smallness of its numbers,

the army on the frontier succeeded in forcing the savages, who were led by Sitting Bull, their most famous chief, and who numbered several thousand fighting men, back to the Big Horn mountains. The Indians now took up a strong position in the mountains, and on the twenty-fifth of June, 1876, the Seventh Cavalry, under Generals Custer and Reno, were sent forward to ascertain the whereabouts of the enemy. They found the savages encamped on the left bank of the Little Horn River, and occupying a large village some three miles in length. General Custer, with his little command, at once made a gallant attack upon the Indian village, hoping that General Reno would be able to come up in time to support him. Reno was unable to advance, however, Custer's little band was soon surrounded by several thousand of the bravest Sioux warriors. The conflict which ensued was one of the most heroic in the annals of the American army, and one of the most disastrous. Custer was slain, together with every man who accompanied him into the fight, but not until they had exacted a fearful price for their lives at the hands of the savages.

The Indians Defeated.

General Reno, in the meantime, had become engaged at the opposite end of the town, and was so hard pressed by the Indians that he was unable to go to Custer's assistance. He succeeded in drawing off his men and in retiring to the bluffs of the Little Horn, where he held his position until the arrival of General Gibbon with reinforcements compelled the savages to retreat, and saved the remnant of the Seventh Cavalry from destruction. The disaster of the Little Horn was the most terrible defeat ever inflicted upon the United States army by the savages, and was directly due to the criminal folly of the administration in sending a mere handful of troops to meet a strong body of the bravest Indian warriors on the continent.

The disaster aroused such a storm of indignation throughout the country that the Government hastily forwarded reinforcements to the frontier, and Generals Terry and Crook were able to conduct their campaign with more vigor. The Indians were beaten in a number of engagements, and on the twenty-fourth of November suffered a decisive defeat in a battle with the Fourth Cavalry, under Colonel McKenzie, at one of the passes of

GENERAL GEORGE CROOK.

the Big Horn Mountains. Negotiations were in progress during the summer and autumn for the removal of the Sioux to the Indian Territory, and by the beginning of the winter the greater part of the savages had surrendered.

A few bands under Sitting Bull and Crazy Horse continued in the field. They were not allowed to remain in security during the winter, and on the eighth of January, 1877, a decisive victory was won over the band of Crazy Horse at Wolfe Mountains, in Montana Territory, by General Miles, with a force

of infantry and artillery. This victory led to the surrender of other bands of Indians, and early in 1877 the operations against Sitting Bull obliged that chief to take refuge in the territory of British America. By the spring of 1877 the war had been practically brought to a close.

INDIANS SURPRISED AND DEFEATED.

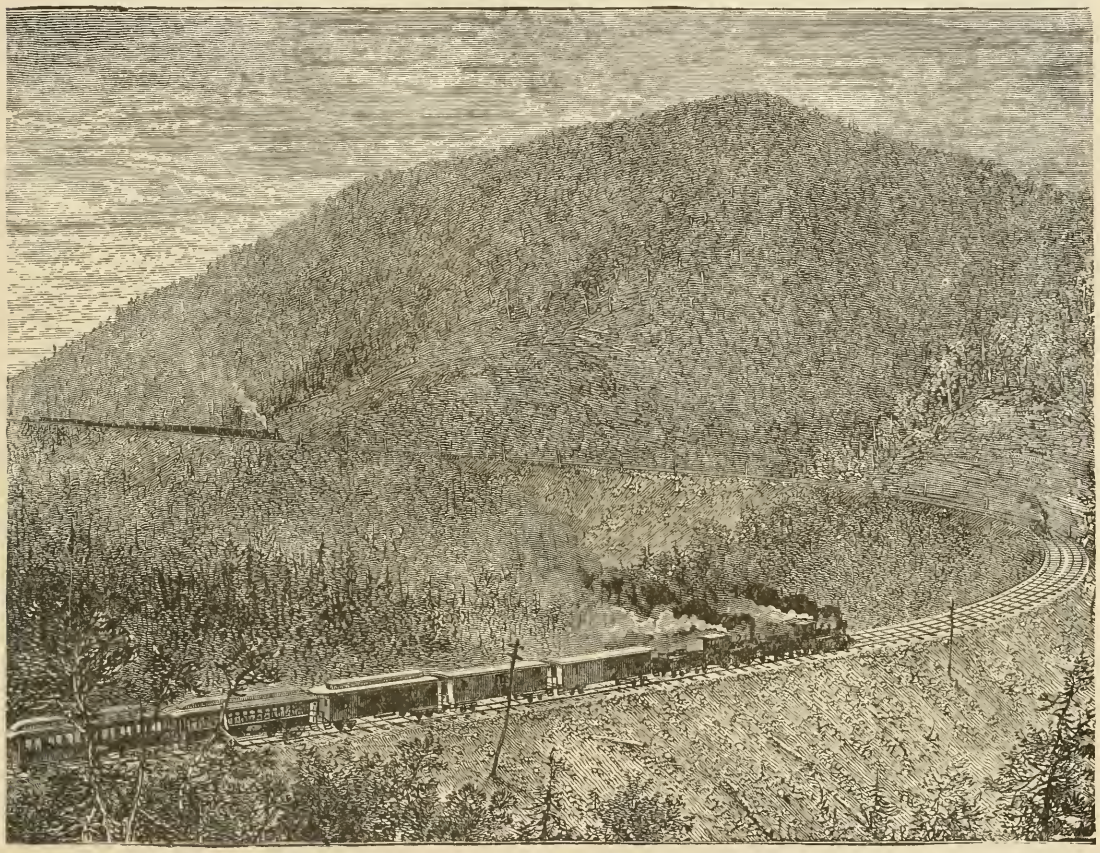
The question of the reconstruction of the Southern States was one of the legacies which President Grant received at the hands of his predecessor. It was fondly hoped by the country at large that under the new administration "the work of reconstruction would be accomplished and the wounds of civil war healed." The utterances of President Grant upon entering upon his new duties justified these expectations, as it was not believed that he cherished extreme views, or that he harbored vindictive feelings.

"Nor is it probable," says a distinguished Northern writer,* "that those who relied upon the President's disposition to deal fairly and even liberally with the Southern States, were at all mistaken in that regard; but his ignorance in civil affairs, which in some cases was conspicuous and mortifying, seems very early to have thrown him into the hands of managing politicians, and these were mainly of the extreme type, who made up in bitterness what they lacked in breadth. The politicians from the South who were most about him were generally

*Charles Francis Adams, Jr.

adventurers, who found the power of the government a convenient instrument for the furtherance of personal schemes, and who did not scruple to make use of their influence with the President to that end. Among these was one of the President's brothers-in-law, who amazed the country by his daring disregard of the rights of the judicial fairness? Republican leaders who were disposed to amnesty and a real oblivion for past offences, were elbowed out of place, and at last driven to the rear."

The labors of reconstruction were nominally completed in 1870. "Had the course of the managing men of the party in power been wise and conciliatory, had it been actu-

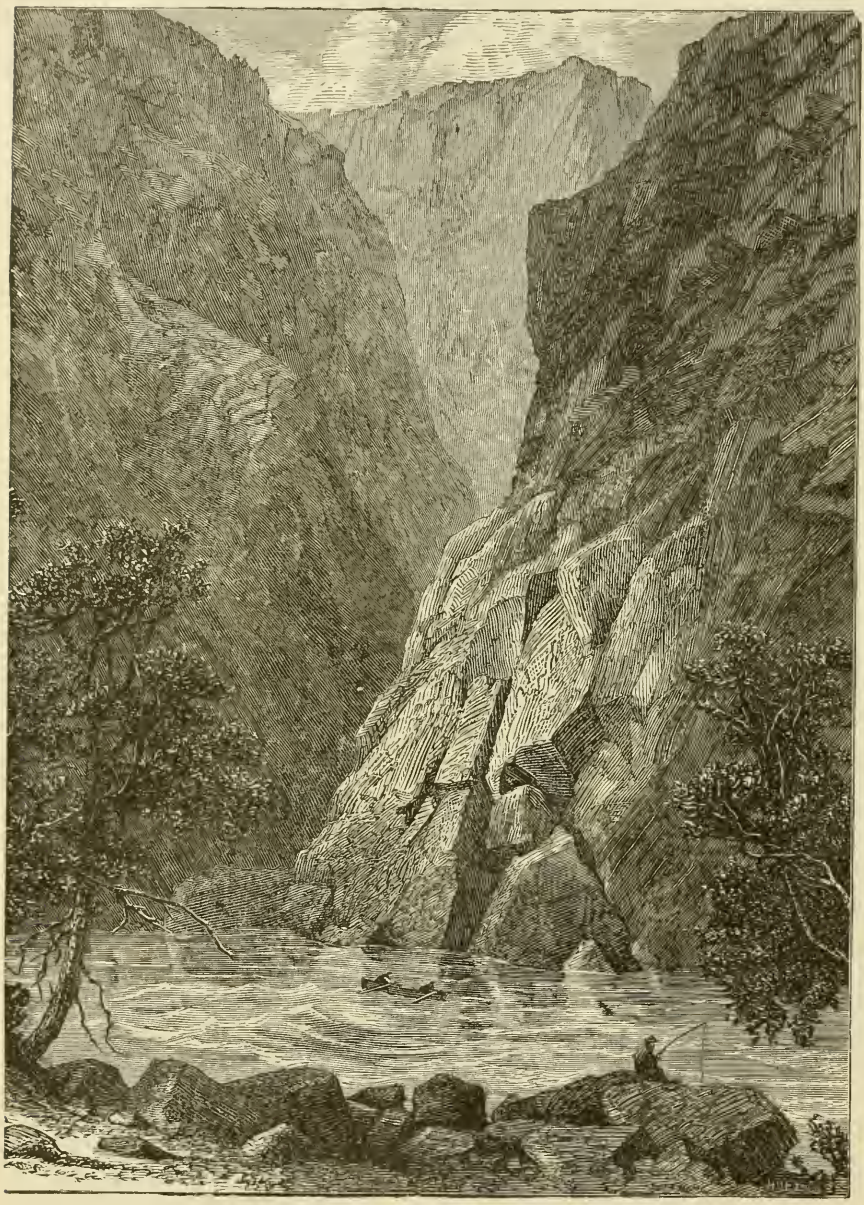


HORSESHOE BEND ON THE PENNSYLVANIA NEAR ALTOONA.

State which he had chosen as the scene of his operations. The Northern politicians who surrounded the President were largely of a similar stripe. . . . . Was it to be expected of such men that they would deal generously with a fallen foe, or was it within the compass of partisanship like theirs that their opponents should be treated with ated by high motives and statesmanlike views, and had the men who represented the party in the Southern States been men who were laboring for the good of their section, rather than for the advancement of their own personal interests, it is not to be doubted that the administration would have been able to attach to itself the support of a majority of

the Southern people. The colored people were naturally its friends.

"The patronage of the administration was large, and it would have drawn a strong support to the party had it been distributed wisely and from an evident desire to accomplish only the purposes for which offices are created. Moreover, the Southern people needed peace and quiet to recuperate their exhausted interests; and while many hot-heads were supposed to be violent and troublesome, the best and most influential of them, of whom the late Vice-President of the Confederacy was an example, were disposed to accept with gratitude such advances of their late enemies as promised to render peace possible and permanent. But as, unfortunately, all were not of this class, the persons who had the President's ear, and who assumed to speak for the party in Congress, found it convenient for their purpose to present the impracticable and violent as the proper representatives of Southern sentiment, and to speak of and deal with the Southern people as unrepentant rebels, who were to be held down by the strong hand.



CANYON OF THE LODORE AND GREENE RIVERS, WYOMING.

"That the white people of the South were alienated from the Republican party was not

surprising. It was almost a matter of course that the control of the Southern States should pass to the Democratic party, for it was quite impossible to retain all the freedmen in one party, while their late masters, the persons upon whom they now relied for employment, were mainly to be found in the other. The 'color line' was drawn when the narrow policy of extreme partisans among the Republican leaders arrayed against them Southern whites; the drawing of it indeed left some white leaders among the freedmen, but it did not prevent a still greater number of the latter following the political fortunes of those with whose material interests their own were so closely identified; and the political ascendency of the Republican party in the Southern States was lost permanently."*

Trouble in Louisiana.

This interference of the President in the affairs of a State was brought to a crisis in the winter of 1874–75, in the State of Louisiana. At the election for members of the Legislature, held during the fall of 1874, both the Republican and Conservative parties claimed the victory. The Legislature met in New Orleans, on the fourth of January, 1875, and a struggle ensued for the control of the organization of the lower House. By their superior strategy the Democrats, or Conservatives, were successful, and proceeded to organize the House and seat five members of their own party, who had contested as many Republican seats in the House. The Democratic triumph was of short duration, however, for in a few moments, General De Trobriand, of the United States army, entered the hall and announced that he had orders to remove the five members sworn in.

The Democratic Speaker, and the five members themselves, protested against this interference on the part of the Federal troops, and declared that they would not leave their seats until forced from them. General De Trobriand immediately summoned a file of soldiers, and the five members were removed from their seats and expelled from the hall, the Democratic Speaker and members at once withdrew from the hall, and the House was organized by the Republicans.

This strange and inexcusable spectacle of the interference of the Federal troops in the domestic affairs of a State had no parallel in American history. It aroused a feeling of

SAMUEL J TILDEN.

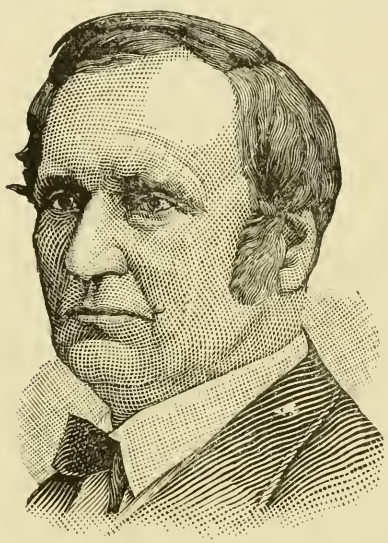
general indignation throughout the North, and the President was sharply denounced, even by men of his own party, for his interference with the organization of a State Legislature. Several Governors addressed special messages on the subject to the Legislatures of their respective States, and legislative resolutions were passed denouncing the course pursued by the Federal government.

The indignation which thus expressed itself was greatly increased by a dispatch from General Sheridan, commanding at New

* Charles Francis Adams, Jr.

Orleans, to the War Department, dated fifth of January, 1875, advising the general government to declare the people of Louisiana banditti, and to turn them over to him and to his troops for punishment. This savage suggestion was deeply resented by the people of the whole country, who had by this time good cause to deplore any interference of the military in civil affairs.

There is reason to believe that the public indignation was felt by even the President, for, in a message to Congress upon the subject, he made this admission, while defending



THOMAS A. HENDRICKS.

the course of the administration: "I am well aware that any military interference by the officers or troops of the United States with the organization of a State Legislature or any of its proceedings, or with any civil department of the government, is repugnant to our ideas of government. I can conceive of no case not involving rebellion or insurrection where such interference by authority of the general government ought to be permitted, or can be justified."

In the summer of 1876 the various political parties of the Union met in their respective conventions to nominate candidates for the Presidency and Vice-Presidency of the United States, which officers were to be chosen at the general election in November. The Republican Convention assembled at Cincinnati, Ohio, on the fourteenth of June, and resulted in the nomination of Governor Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, for President of the United States, and of William A. Wheeler, of New York, for Vice-President. The Democratic Convention was held at St. Louis on the twenty-seventh of June, and nominated Governor Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, for the Presidency, and Governor Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, for the Vice-Presidency. A third convention, representing the Independent Greenback party, met at Indianapolis, on the eighteenth of May, and nominated Peter Cooper, of New York, for President, and Samuel F. Cary, of Ohio, for Vice-President.

Result of the Campaign.

The campaign which followed these nominations was one of intense bitterness, and was in many respects the most remarkable the country has ever witnessed. A most discreditable feature of it was the appearance of Mr. Chandler, the Secretary of the Interior, as the chief manager of the Republican party. It was the first time in the history of the country that a member of the President's Cabinet had ever held so questionable a position; the first time that the patronage of the government had ever been used so openly in behalf of a political party. Under the leadership of Secretary Chandler, the manly and conciliatory letter of acceptance of Governor Hayes was ignored, and a campaign of great bitterness was inaugurated.

The election was held on the seventh of November. The popular vote was as follows:

For Samuel J. Tilden,	4,284,265
" Rutherford B. Hayes,	4,033,295
" Peter Cooper,	81,737

Tilden thus received a popular majority of 250,970 votes over Hayes, and a majority of 169,233 votes over both Hayes and Cooper.

In the Electoral Colleges, one hundred and eighty-five votes were necessary to a choice.

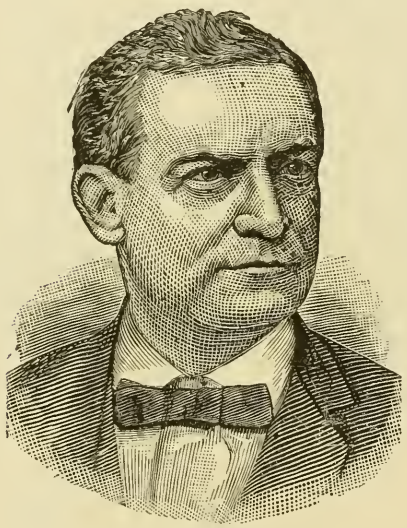
POINT PLEASANT, OHIO, THE BIRTHPLACE OF PRESIDENT GRANT.

Of this number, Governor Tilden received one hundred and eighty-four, and Governor Hayes one hundred and sixty-three undisputed votes. The votes of the States of Florida, Louisiana, Oregon and South Carolina, twenty-two in number, were claimed by both parties for their respective candidates. It was declared by the Democrats that, even conceding the votes of Oregon and South Carolina to Governor Hayes, Mr. Tilden had fairly carried both Florida and Louisiana, and was entitled to one hundred and ninety-six electoral votes. The revision of the vote in Florida and Louisiana had been confided, since the reorganization of those States, to Returning Boards.

It was evident from the first that each of these boards would return the vote of its respective State for the Republican candidate, and it was feared that this would be productive of trouble, as the Democrats claimed a majority in these States. Immediately after the election, therefore, President Grant appointed a number of prominent Republicans to proceed to Florida and Louisiana to watch the counting of the votes of those

States; and a number of prominent Democrats repaired to Tallahassee and New Orleans for the same purpose. These gentlemen had no official character, and were without power to interfere in any way with the counting of the vote. It was hoped, however, that their presence as witnesses would act as a check upon the boards, and thus a fair count be secured. Both States were returned for Hayes.

Investigations showed that the electoral vote of South Carolina had been fairly cast for Hayes, and it was generally conceded to



SAMUEL J. RANDALL

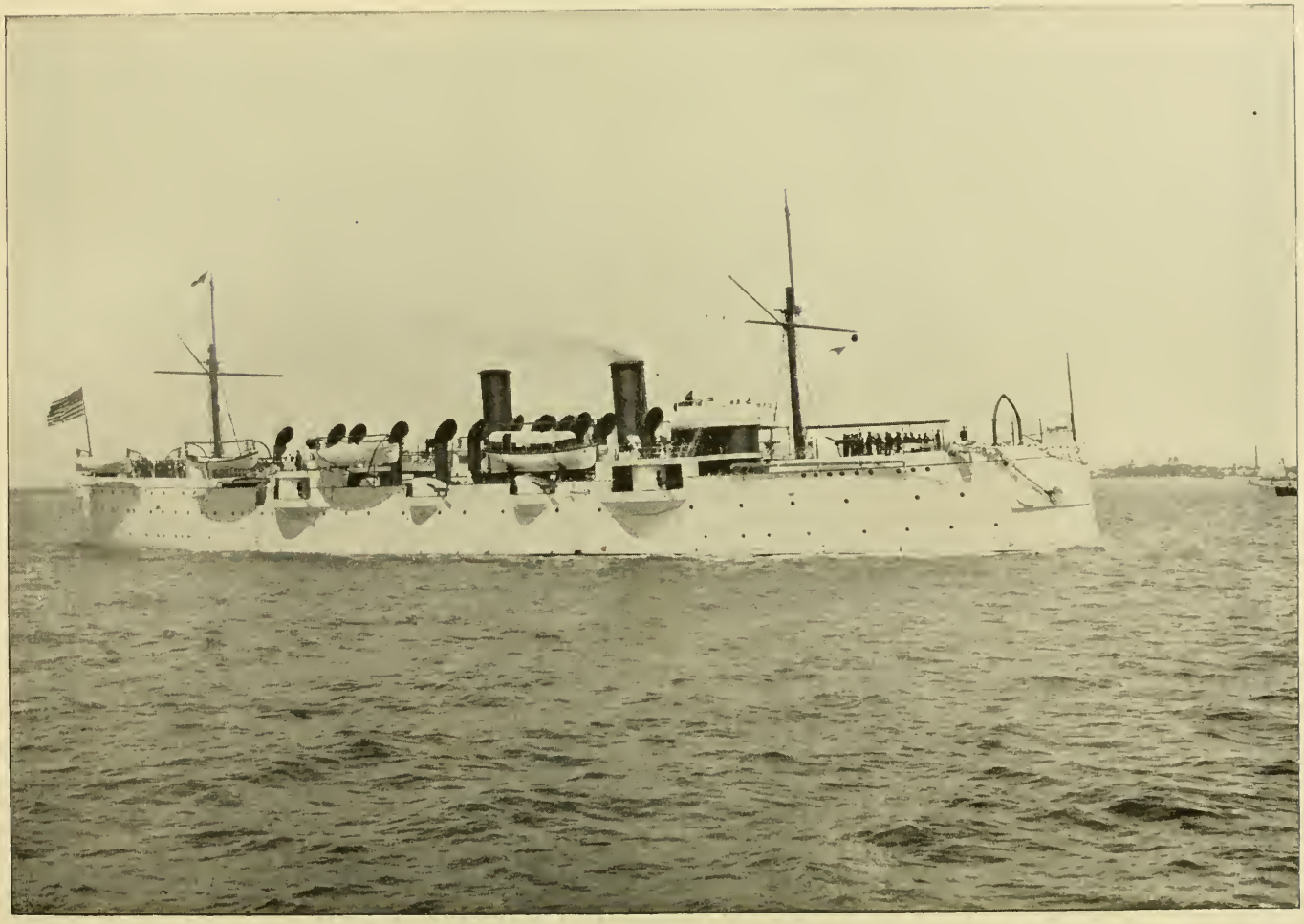
him by both parties. The Democratic Governor of Oregon attempted by a transparent fraud to give the electoral vote of that State to Tilden, and thus elect him; but it came to be the general sentiment of the country that the electoral vote of Oregon should rightfully be cast for Hayes.

This confined the real struggle to the votes of Florida and Louisiana. It was the general conviction of the country that both of those States had been fairly carried by the Democratic party, and many earnest Republicans gave open expression to this belief. The action of the Return Boards, however, was still within the letter of the laws under which they had acted. The Republican party, therefore, claimed that as such action was not contrary to the laws of Florida and Louisiana it must stand; that neither Congress nor any other body had power to go behind the certificate of the electoral vote of a State, properly signed and authenticated by the State officials; and that when such certificates were presented to the two Houses of Congress, at the counting of the electoral votes of the States, they must be accepted without question, and the electoral votes of Florida and Louisiana be counted for Hayes. They declared that the States had power to make any laws they might see fit for the counting of their popular vote, and that for Congress to seek to interfere with such laws would be to illegally trespass upon the reserved rights of the States. They held, therefore, that as the action of the Return Boards was within the letter of the laws of their respective States Florida and Louisiana must be counted for Hayes.

The Country Agitated.

The Democrats, on the other hand, maintained that the popular majority for Tilden in Florida and Louisiana was too evident to be doubted being simply overwhelming in the latter States, and that the Return Boards had overcome these majorities only by a fraudulent use of their powers in throwing out Democratic votes to an extent sufficient to give Florida and Louisiana to the Republicans. They declared, moreover, that, as the Louisiana Board had refused to appoint a Democratic member to the vacancy in that body, as required by the law under which they acted, their action was necessarily illegal. They held that, as both Florida and Louisiana had been wrongfully and fraudulently given to the Republicans by the Return

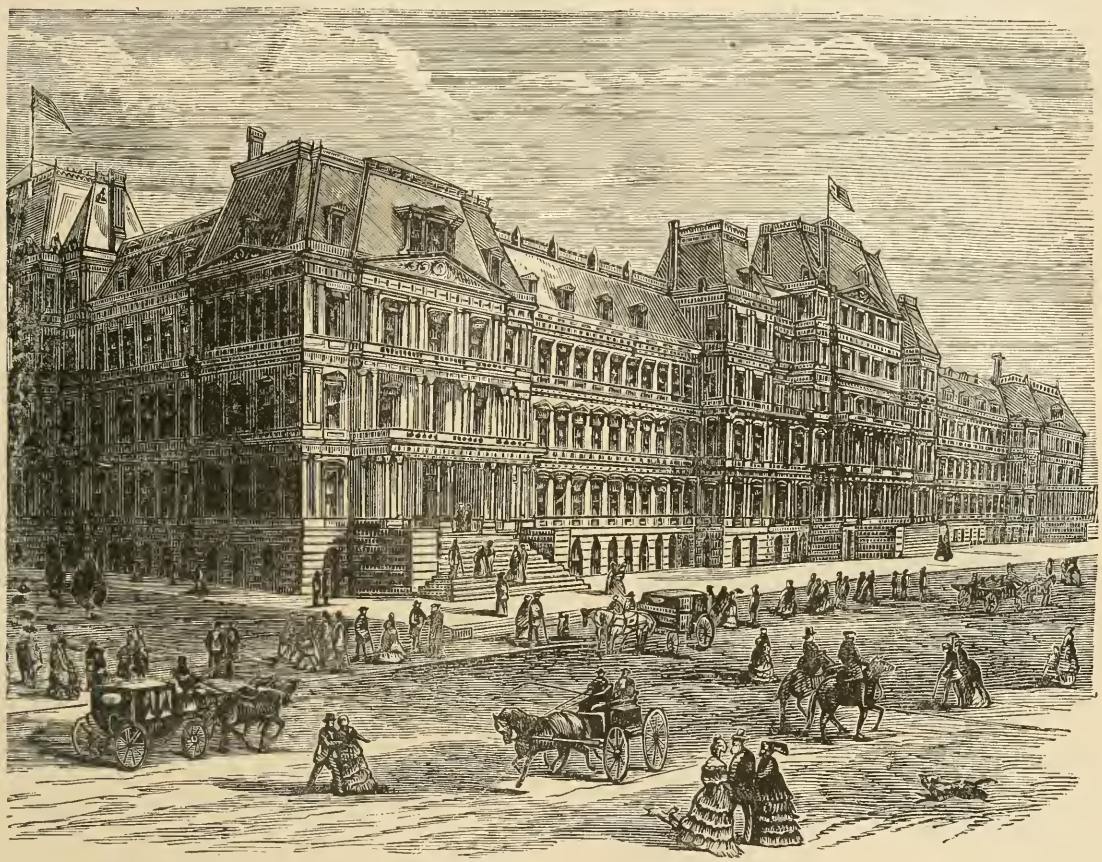
U. S. CRUISER CHICAGO



U. S. CRUISER PHILADELPHIA

Boards in defiance of the will of the people of those States as expressed at the polls, the electoral votes of both of those States should not be counted by Congress.

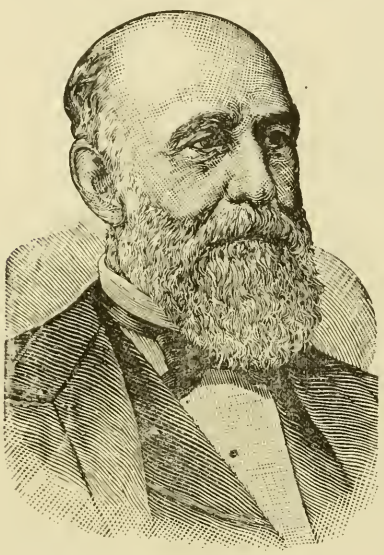
Such action on the part of Congress would have resulted in a declaration by that body that there had been no popular choice of a President and Vice-President, and the election of the President would have devolved upon the House of Representatives, and the choice of the Vice-President upon the Senate, in accordance with the provisions of the Constitution. The Democrats, therefore, declared that they would insist upon the rejection of the votes of Florida and Louisiana upon the ground of fraud on the part of the Return Boards; and the Republicans announced their decision to insist upon the counting of the votes of those States as certified by the State officials. Each party denounced the other with great bitterness; the country was deeply agitated, and threats of armed resistance were freely indulged in by both parties. The crisis was the most alarming that had threatened the country since the outbreak of the civil war. A feeling of general uneasiness prevailed throughout the Union, which showed itself in the depression of business in all sections.



THE NEW DEPARTMENT OF STATE, WASHINGTON, D. C.

Congress met on the fourth of December, 1876. The House of Representatives was organized by the Democratic majority by the

election of Samuel J. Randall, of Pennsylvania, as Speaker. Immediately upon the organization of Congress the question of the manner of counting the electoral votes of the States came up in that body. The Republican majority in the Senate claimed that, by the terms of the Constitution, the Vice-President was compelled to open the certificates of the States in the presence of the two Houses of Congress, in joint convention, and declare the result, the two Houses being present merely as witnesses of the



GEORGE F. EDMUNDS.

count by the Vice-President. With this view the Republicans in the lower House agreed.

The Democrats in both Houses maintained that while the Constitution required the Vice-President to open the certificates and count the electoral votes, the two Houses of Congress were made the judges of the legality of those certificates, and that, in the case of the presentation of two certificates from the same State, the two Houses were the rightful judges of which was the proper one; and that, in the event of a failure of the two Houses to agree in such a decision, the vote of such State must be rejected.

In support of this view, they brought forward the Twenty-second Joint Rule of Congress, adopted February sixth, 1865, by a Republican Congress, and under which the counting of the electoral vote in 1865, 1869 and 1873 had been conducted. In January, 1876, the Senate, still Republican, passed a concurrent resolution adopting the joint rules of the previous session of Congress, as the joint rules for that session, "excepting the Twenty-second Joint Rule." The House failed to act upon the resolutions. At the opening of the session in December, 1876, the President of the Senate ruled that there were no joint rules in operation. The Speaker of the House, on the other hand, ruled that the joint rules previously existing, still existed.

Angry Speeches and Threats.

Thus the issue between the two Houses was distinctly made. The House declared its intention of insisting upon the right secured to it by the Twenty-second Joint Rule of objecting to the vote of a State, and that it would withdraw from the joint convention if this right were denied it by the Senate. The Senate declared that, in case of such withdrawal by the House, the count would be continued by the Senate, and the result proclaimed by the Vice-President. The House, on the other hand, announced its intention of acting in such a case if there had been no choice by the electoral vote; it would at once proceed to elect the President as required by the Constitution.

Each House was firm in its resolution, and the breach between them widened daily. Angry speeches and threats were made by members of Congress, and the general alarm and uneasiness deepened throughout the country. The time appointed by the Constitution for counting the electoral vote was

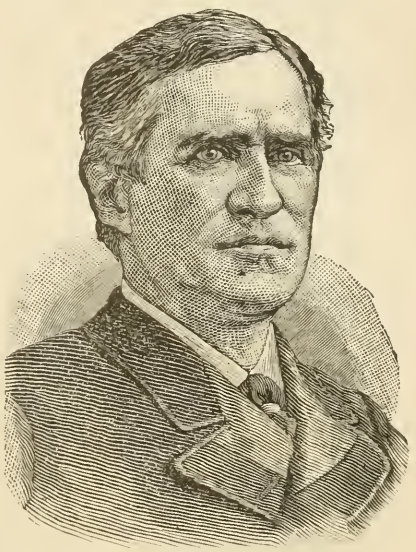
rapidly drawing nigh, and it seemed likely that an era of anarchy was about to ensue. Each House would act for itself; two Presidents would be declared elected. There was no doubt that President Grant would sustain the choice of the Senate with the army. In such an event civil war was inevitable.

The danger was so great that patriotic men of both parties in Congress set to work to devise some means of settlement. It was plain that this could be accomplished only by a compromise. A conference committee was appointed by each House, which committee, after a long deliberation, reported to the two Houses of Congress a bill providing for the appointment of a commission, to consist of fifteen members. Five of these were to be appointed by the Senate, and five by the House of Representatives. The remaining five were to be chosen from the Justices of the Supreme Court. Four of the justices were designated by the bill; the fifth was to be chosen by the justices named in the bill.

The Joint Convention.

The bill provided for the meeting of the two Houses of Congress in joint convention on the first Thursday in February. The votes were to be opened by the Vice-President, and counted by tellers appointed for the purpose. Each House was to have the right to object to the vote of a State, but in cases where only one certificate was presented the objection must be sustained by the affirmative vote of both Houses. If not so sustained, the objection must fall and the vote be counted. Section II. of the bill provided: "That, if more than one return, or paper purporting to be a return from a State, shall have been received by the President of the Senate, purporting to be the certificates of electoral votes given at the last preceding election for President and Vice-President in such State (unless they shall be duplicates of the same return), all such returns and papers shall be opened by him in the presence of the two Houses when met as aforesaid, and read by the tellers, and all such returns and papers shall thereupon be submitted to the judgment and decision as to which is the true and lawful electoral vote of such State," of the commission appointed by the bill.

The decision of the commission, with the reasons therefor, was to be submitted to the two Houses of Congress. Should objection be made by five senators and five representatives to the report of the commission, the two Houses were to separate and discuss the said objections, the time allowed for debate being limited by the bill; but unless both Houses should agree to sustain the objections, the decision of the commission should stand.



THOMAS F. BAYARD.

This plan met with considerable favor from the conservative element of both Houses, but was strongly opposed by the more ultra of both parties. It was debated at length and

with great vigor. It passed the Senate on the twenty-fifth of January, 1877, by a vote of forty-seven yeas and seventeen nays; ten senators not voting. The vote in the House was taken the next day, and stood, yeas, one hundred and ninety-one; nays, eighty-six; fourteen representatives not voting. The vote in the Senate was divided as follows: *Yeas*—Republicans, twenty-one; Democrats, forty-six. *Nays*—Republicans, sixteen; Democrats, one. In the House it stood: *Yeas*—Democrats, one hundred and fifty-nine: Republicans, thirty-two. *Nays*—Democrats, eighteen; Republicans, sixty-eight. The bill was immediately signed by President Grant, who had from the first given it his warm encouragement.

Counting the Electoral Vote.

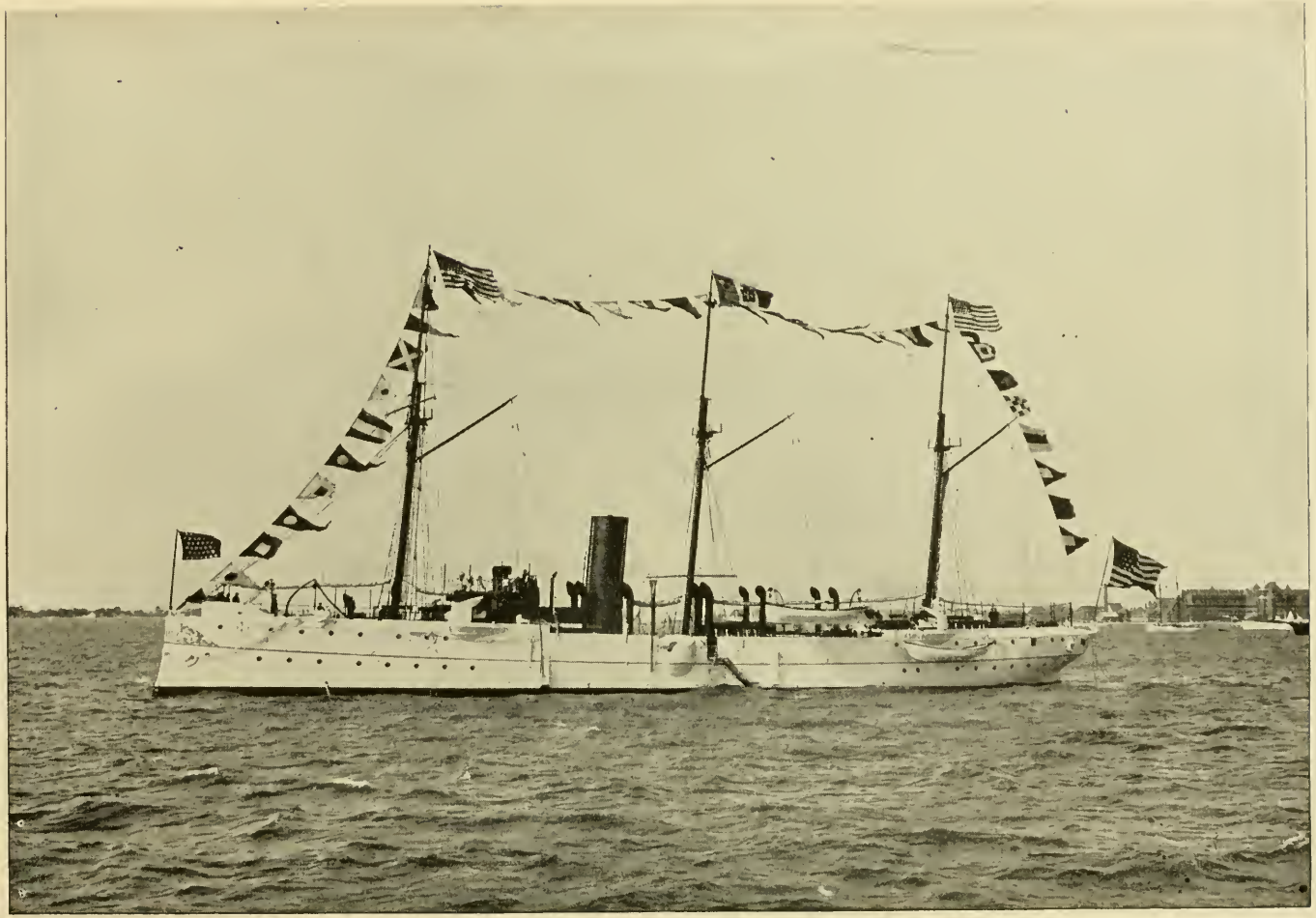
The members of the commission were promptly appointed. They were as follows; Justices Clifford, Strong, Miller, Field and Bradley, of the Supreme Court; Senators Edmunds, Morton, Frelinghuysen, Thurman and Bayard; and Representatives Payne, Hunton, Abbott, Garfield and Hoar.

The two Houses of Congress met in joint convention on the first of February, 1877, and began the counting of the electoral vote. When the vote of Florida was reached, three certificates were presented and were referred to the Electoral Commission. This body, upon hearing the arguments of the counsel of the Democratic and Republican parties, decided that it had no power to go behind the action of the Return Board, and that the certificate of that body giving the vote of that State to Hayes, must be accepted by the two Houses of Congress. The vote by which this decision was reached stood eight all Republicans) in favor of it, and seven (all Democrats) against it. The party line appearing thus so sharply in the commission mortified and disgusted the whole country, which had looked to the commission for a decision that should be beyond question.

A similar conclusion was come to in the case of Louisiana. Objections were made to the reception of the votes of Oregon and South Carolina. In the Oregon case the decision was *unanimously* in favor of counting the votes of the Hayes electors. In the South Carolina case the commission decided that the Democratic electors were not lawfully chosen; but on the motion to give the State to Hayes, the vote stood eight yeas to seven nays. So South Carolina was counted for Hayes. Objection was made, on the ground of ineligibility, to certain electors from Michigan, Nevada, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, Vermont and Wisconsin, but the objections were not sustained by the two Houses.

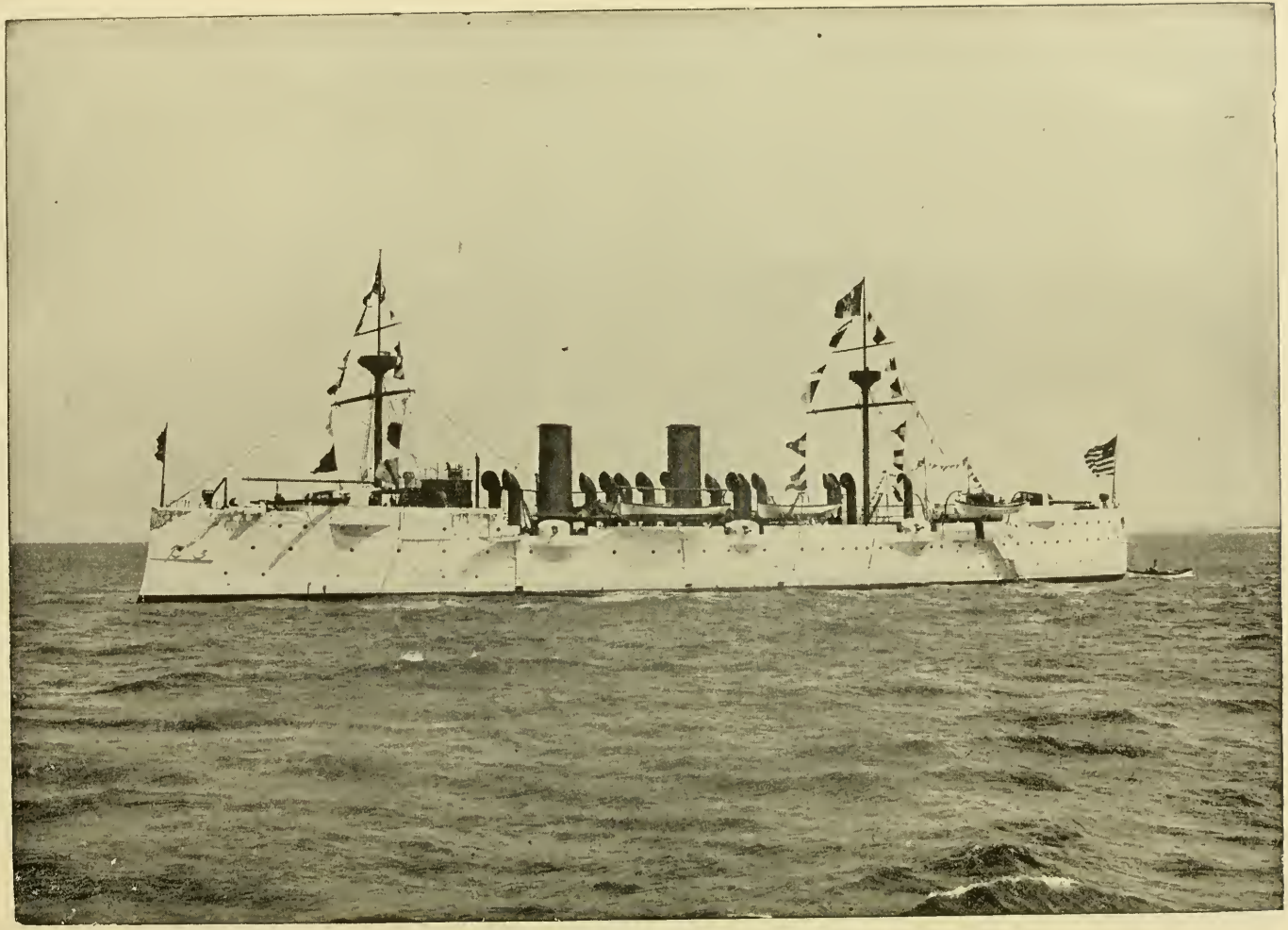
The final result was reached at ten minutes after four o'clock on the morning of the second of March, 1877. The counting of the votes of the States having been concluded, Mr. Allison, one of the tellers on the part of the Senate, announced the result of the footings; whereupon the presiding officer of the two Houses declared Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, the duly elected President, and William A. Wheeler, of New York, the duly elected Vice-President, for the term of four years, commencing on the fourth of March, 1877.

U. S. CRUISER PETREL.



U. S. CRUISER YORKTOWN.

U. S. CRUISER SAN FRANCISCO



U. S. CRUISER BALTIMORE

CHAPTER XLV.

The Administration of Rutherford B. Hayes.

Inauguration of President Hayes—Sketch of the New President—Civil Service Reform—Troops in South Carolina—Two Legislatures in Session—Investigation by President Hayes—Prompt Action—Settlement of the Troubles in South Carolina and Louisiana—General Grant's Tour Around the World—Enthusiastic Reception by the Crowned Heads of other Nations—Tenth Census of the United States—Election of General Garfield as President—Arctic Expedition of Lieutenant DeLong—Hardy Adventurers Two Winters in the Ice-Pack—Destruction of the "Jeannette"—Relief Expeditions—Death from Starvation.

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES, the nineteenth President of the United States, was publicly inaugurated at Washington on Monday, March 5, 1877. As the fourth of March fell on Sunday, the President-elect simply took the oath of office on that day. The inaugural ceremonies were carried out on the fifth at the Capitol with the usual pomp and parade, and in the presence of an enormous multitude of citizens and visiting military organizations from all parts of the country. After the customary reception by the Senate, the new President was escorted to the eastern portico of the Capitol, where he delivered his inaugural address to the assembled multitude, after which the oath of office was publicly administered to him by Chief Justice Waite.

The new President was a native of Ohio, having been born at Delaware, in that State, on the fourth of October, 1822. He graduated at Kenyon College, Gambier, Ohio, and obtained his professional education at the Cambridge Law School. He began the practice of the law at Cincinnati in 1856. He was shortly afterwards made City Solicitor, which office he held until the beginning of the civil war in 1861. Soon after the opening of the war he enlisted in the Twenty-third Ohio Volunteers, with which regiment he served as major, lieutenant-colonel and colonel. He led his regiment, which formed a part of General Reno's division, at the battle of South Mountain, in September, 1862, and was severely wounded in the arm in that engagement.

In the fall of 1862 he was made colonel of the regiment, and in 1864 was promoted to the rank of brigadier-general of volunteers "for gallant and meritorious services in the battles of Winchester, Fisher's Hill and Cedar Creek," and was brevetted major-general "for gallant and distinguished services during the campaigns of 1864 in West Virginia, and particularly in the battles of Fisher's Hill and Cedar Creek." At the time of this last promotion he was in command of a division. He served until the close of the war, receiving four wounds and having five horses shot under him during his military career. In the fall of 1864 he was elected to Congress, and was returned a second time in 1866. In 1867, before the expiration of his Congressional term, he was elected Governor of Ohio, and was re-elected to that office in 1869, being each time the candidate of the Republican party. In 1870 General Hayes was again elected to Congress, and in 1874 was nominated for a third term as Governor of Ohio. His opponent was Governor William Allen, one of the most popular of the Democratic leaders of Ohio. General Hayes was elected by a handsome majority. He resigned this office in March, 1877, to enter upon his

new duties as President of the United States.

President Hayes, in his letter accepting the nomination of his party for the Presidency, declared that if elected he would earnestly and faithfully seek to do justice to the States of the South, and reform the civil service of the country by ridding it of corrupt men, and requiring a faithful discharge of duty at the hands of every public officer.

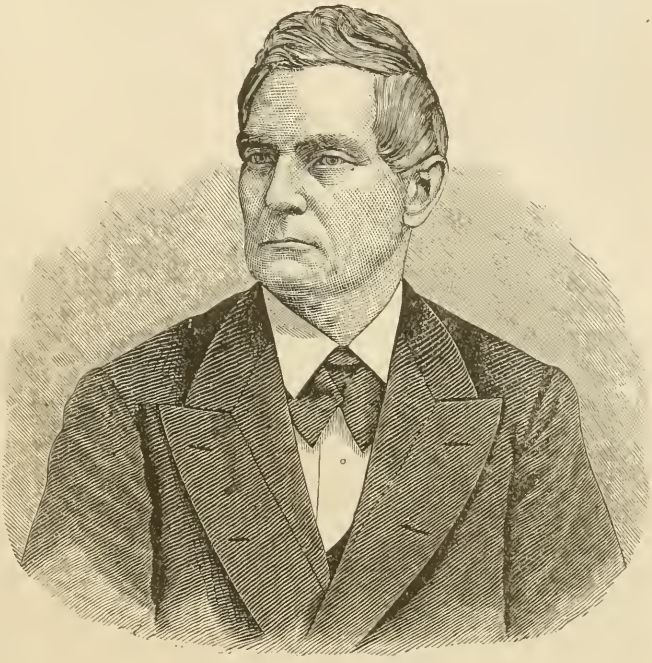
RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

Immediately upon his inauguration he set to work to make good his promises. He selected his Cabinet from among the ablest men in the country, making ability, and not partisan service, the test of the fitness of the persons selected. William M. Evarts, of New York, was made Secretary of State, and the existence of the Southern States as members of the Union was recognized by the appointment, as Postmaster-General, of Mr. Key, of Tennessee, who had sustained the Democratic ticket in the canvass of 1876. Except to the extreme partisans who had done the country so much harm under the last administration, the appointments of the new President gave great satisfaction to the entire nation.

Measures were promptly set on foot for the inauguration of a better civil service system. The most important matter which presented itself to the new President for settlement was the condition of the States of Louisiana and South Carolina. In the fall of 1876 an election for Governor and other State officers was held in each of these States. The result at the polls appeared to be in favor of the Democratic or Conservative

candidates. In each State the revision of the vote was controlled by Republicans, some of whom were candidates for re-election. The Returning Boards announced the triumph of the Republican tickets in Louisiana and South Carolina.

In South Carolina the Conservatives resolved to inaugurate General Wade Hampton, their candidate, as Governor. The Governor of the State was Mr. Daniel H. Chamberlain, who had been the Republican candidate for re-election. Upon learning the intention of the Democrats to inaugurate their Governor, Mr. Chamberlain applied to President Grant for military aid. His application to President Grant was promptly responded to, and General Ruger, commanding the Department of the South, was ordered to place the troops stationed in Columbia at Governor Chamberlain's disposal. Having secured the aid of the troops, Governor Chamberlain now proceeded to take the first step in his plan. On the night of the twenty-seventh of November the State House was occupied by a detachment of troops, which was posted so as to command all the approaches to the halls of the Legislature.



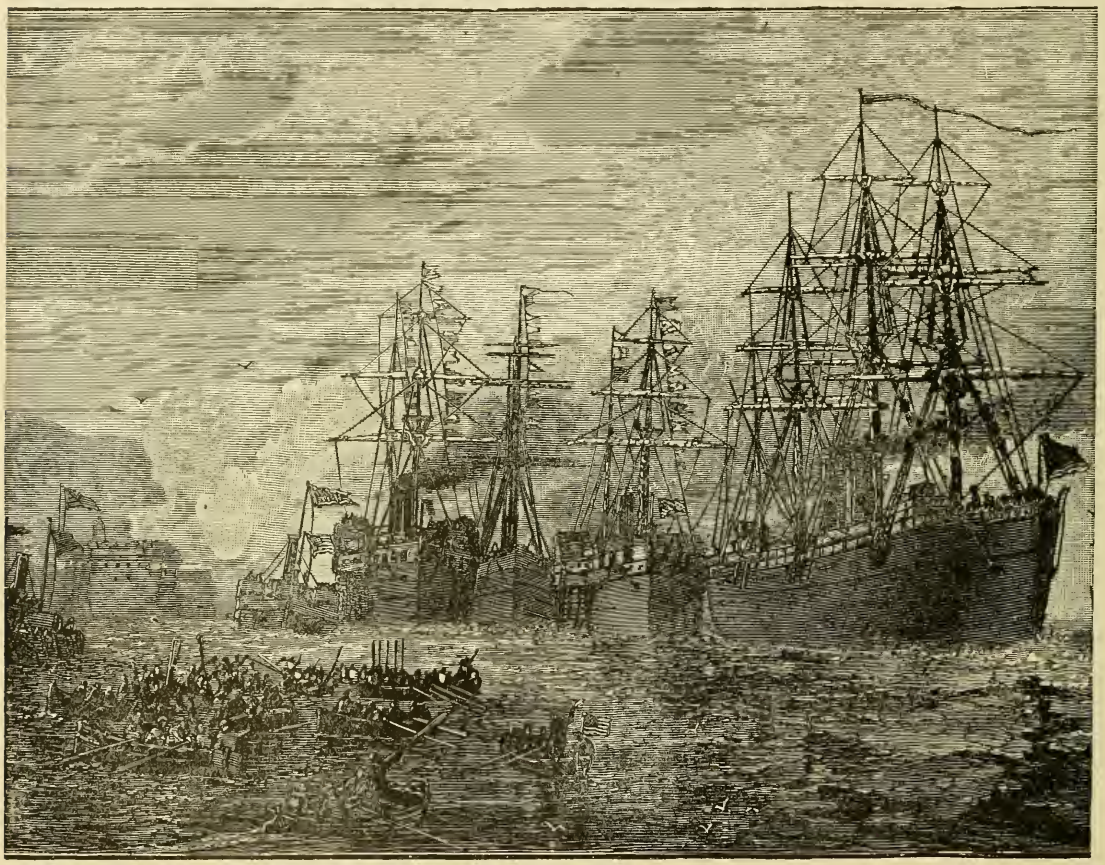
WILLIAM A. WHEELER.

The twenty-eighth of November, 1876, was the day appointed for the meeting of the Legislature. The Democratic members met in caucus at ten o'clock in the morning, and proceeded in a body to the State House. Arriving there, they found the building occupied by the troops, and were compelled to submit their credentials to the officers of the guard, who admitted such as had papers which he pronounced satisfactory. Passing through the troops the members of the Legislature reached the door of the hall of the Lower House, which they found guarded also by troops. The doorkeeper, backed by the military force, refused to admit certain of the delegates whose credentials he declared were null and void. The entire body of Democratic members then withdrew, after protesting against the interference of the military. Under the protection of the troops the Republicans organized the Legislature.

The interference of the troops aroused the most intense excitement in Columbia, and it was with difficulty that an outbreak was prevented, mainly through the influence of General Hampton. The Democrats, on the twenty-ninth of November, succeeded in gaining admission to the State House, where they organized the House of Representatives. After a struggle of a week with the Republicans, they withdrew to South Carolina Hall, and conducted the sessions of the Legislature there, gaining members by degrees from Chamberlain's Legislature at the State House.

The Republican Legislature declared the election of Governor Chamberlain, and on the seventh of December he was sworn into office, under the protection of the Federal troops.

The Conservative Legislature continued its sessions at South Carolina Hall, and on the fourteenth of December Governor Hampton was publicly inaugurated amid the greatest enthusiasm. He at once set to work, with his associates, to administer the government of the State. He was recognized by the vast majority of the people of South Carolina, by many even who had voted against him. His authority was everywhere respected; and his calls upon the people to advance a portion of the taxes to enable him to carry on the government were cordially and promptly responded to. The authority of Governor Chamberlain was not recognized beyond the limits of the State House in which the Federal troops were quartered; the people refused to pay their taxes to his government, and his governorship was a mere name. In view of this state of affairs President Grant was repeatedly urged to withdraw the troops from the State buildings to their barracks, but persistently refused to do so.



ARRIVAL OF GENERAL GRANT AT SAN FRANCISCO IN THE STEAMER "CITY OF TOKIO."

Such was the state of affairs in South Carolina at the inauguration of President Hayes. The new President, with characteristic caution, proceeded to investigate the matter.

U. S. CRUISER NEWARK

U. S. CRUISER COLUMBIA.

After a patient and thorough inquiry he found that the Federal troops were quartered in the State House of South Carolina in an unlawful manner; that the Constitution gave to the Federal government no authority to interfere in the domestic concerns of a State, leaving the decision of disputed elections to the State courts for settlement; and that no such state of lawlessness or insurrection as would justify Federal interference existed in South Carolina.

In view of these facts, his duty in the case was plain. It was to restore the proper relations between the Federal government and the State of South Carolina, and to put an end to the unlawful and unjustifiable interference with the affairs of that State. The matter was laid before the Cabinet, and on the second of April, 1877, it was resolved to order the troops to withdraw from the State House to their barracks at Columbia. The order was at once issued, and was carried into effect on the sixth of April. The troops were withdrawn, and South Carolina was left to settle her own affairs. This step was followed by the speedy withdrawal of Governor Chamberlain from the contest. The Hampton government was soon installed in the State House, and its authority was firmly established in all parts of the State, to the great joy of its people.

The Trouble in Louisiana.

The State buildings of Louisiana had been held by the Federal troops ever since the expulsion of the members of the Legislature by General De Trobriand, in 1873. At the election, in 1876, Mr. Stephen B. Packard was the Republican candidate for Governor, and Mr. H. T. Nicholls was the candidate of the Democratic party for the same office. The Republicans claimed that there was intimidation of Republican voters throughout the State, and the Returning Board declared that Mr. Packard had been chosen Governor.

The substitution of Mr. Packard for Mr. Kellogg as Governor of Louisiana did not touch the evils from which the people of that State had been suffering for so many years. Their patience was exhausted, and they resolved to sustain the government which they claimed had been chosen. The Conservative Legislature was accordingly organized, and on the eighth of January, 1877, Governor Nicholls was publicly inaugurated. On the same day Mr. Packard was sworn into office under the protection of the troops.

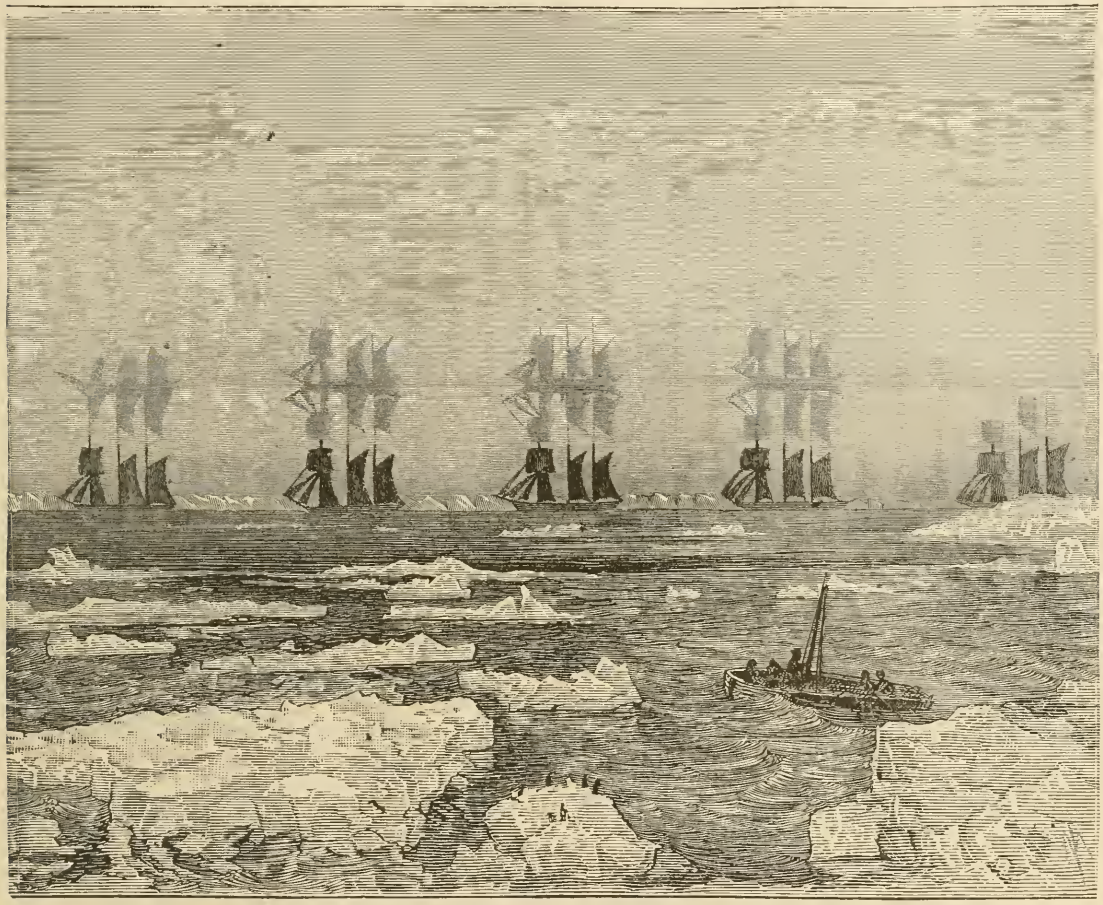
WILLIAM H. ENGLISH.

The Nicholls government got to work as soon as possible; its authority was recognized throughout the State by the courts and people; taxes were paid to it and it was indorsed and supported by a vast majority of the people of Louisiana. President Grant was urged to remove the troops from the State House and other buildings belonging to Louisiana, and was assured that the Packard government would fall to pieces for lack of support as soon as he should take the troops away. He refused to do so, however.

President Hayes found Louisiana in this condition when he entered upon his duties as

THE "JEANNETTE" CRUSHED BY THE ICE.

Chief Magistrate. He selected a commission consisting of four Republicans and one Democrat, and these gentlemen, at his request, proceeded to New Orleans to investigate and report to him the real state of affairs in Louisiana. They made an investigation of the affairs of the State, and found Packard a governor in name only, while the authority of the Nicholls government extended throughout the State. They found also that the condition of affairs in Louisiana was not such as to justify the further interference of the Federal government in the domestic concerns of the State.



THE MIRAGE AS SEEN IN THE ARCTIC REGION.

The conclusions of the commission were reported to the President on the nineteenth of April, and the next day he issued the order to withdraw the United States troops in New Orleans from the State buildings to their barracks. The troops were withdrawn at noon on the twenty-fourth of April, amid the rejoicings of the people. Governor Packard at once abandoned the contest. The members of his Legislature joined the Nicholls Legislature, and the affairs of the State were once more placed in her own hands.

The action of the President in withdrawing the troops from South Carolina and Louisiana gave great satisfaction to the country at large. A small class of extreme

politicians were disposed to denounce it, but their partisan outcries were silenced by the general voice of approval which came from all parts of the Union. The nation was sick of civil war and partisan strife, and hailed the action of the President as the beginning of the long-hoped-for, long-delayed era of peace and good will.

General Grant's Tour Around the World.

On May 17, 1878, ex-President Grant sailed from Philadelphia in the steamer Indiana for a tour around the world. He had achieved the highest distinction in his native land, and was welcomed with every demonstration of respect by all the nations he visited. The rulers and nobility of Europe and Asia accorded him an enthusiastic reception. On his return trip he arrived at San Francisco September 20, 1879, and was warmly greeted by his fellow-countrymen in every place where he made his appearance. His tour called out the friendly feeling of other countries toward America, and was not without political significance.

In the year 1880 the tenth census of the United States was taken, and showed the population of the country to be 50,152,559.

In the summer of 1880 the various political parties of the country met in convention to nominate candidates for the Presidency and Vice-Presidency of the United States. The Republican Convention met at Chicago on the second of June, and nominnted James A. Garfield, of Ohio, for President, and Chester A. Arthur, of New York, for Vice-President. The Democratic Convention met at Cincinnati, on the twenty-second of June, and nominated Winfield Scott Hancock, of Pennsylvania, for President, and William H. English, of Indiana, for Vice-President. The Greenback Convention met at Chicago, on the ninth of June, and nominated James A. Weaver, of Iowa, for President, and B. J. Chambers, of Texas, for Vice-President.

The election was held on the second of November, and resulted in the choice of General James A. Garfield, who received 214 electoral votes to 155 electoral votes cast for General Hancock. The popular vote was as follows: Garfield, 4,437,345; Hancock, 4,435,015; Weaver, 305,931.

The year 1879 was memorable in Arctic exploration by the expedition of Lieutenant George W. DeLong, of the United States Navy. The expedition was projected by James Gordon Bennett, proprietor of the *New York Herald*, with the object of reaching the North Pole, if possible, by way of Behring Straits. Lieutenant DeLong sailed in the steamship "Jeannette" from San Francisco, July 8, 1879. All of the crew were volunteers, selected with great care from many applicants.

The outcome of the expedition was disastrous, and it shared the unhappy fate which has attended many other heroic attempts to explore the polar world. After spending two winters in the ice-pack the hardy adventurers lost their ship and attempted to make their way southward in the hope of reaching a place of safety in the three boats belonging to the ship.

The boats were separated during a strong gale; the provisions were at length exhausted, and in the heroic effort to save their lives Lieutenant DeLong and the men in his boat perished of starvation. Several relief expeditions were sent out in search of the "Jeannette," but these were too late to rescue all the party. The last records of DeLong were found, and also sufficient evidence of the hardships and perils through which he and his men had passed in their endeavor to escape from their perilous situation.

CHAPTER XLVI

The Administration of James A. Garfield.

General Garfield Declared President—Inaugural Ceremonies—Sketch of the New President—Contest with the Stalwarts—The Star Route Cases—Assassination of President Garfield—His Illness—Removal to Long Branch—Death of President Garfield—Removal of the Remains to Washington and Cleveland—Interment at Cleveland—Inauguration of President Arthur—Indictment of Guiteau for Murder—Trial and Execution of Garfield's Assassin—Remarkable Scene upon the Scaffold—The Greeley Artic Expedition—Reaching a point beyond the Eighty-first Parallel—Lieutenant Lockwood's Heroic Exploit—Return of the Exploring Party—Valuable Records—Three Relief Expeditions—Terrible Sufferings and Privations—A Crew Charged with Cannibalism—Celebration of the Landing of William Penn—Great Suspension Bridge between New York and Brooklyn—Dimensions of the Bridge and Cost.

ON the second Wednesday in February, 1881, the two Houses of Congress met in joint-session in the hall of the House of Representatives, for the purpose of counting the electoral vote. The certificates of the electoral colleges of the various States having been opened and read, with the result mentioned above, the Vice-President announced that James A. Garfield had been duly elected President of the United States, and Chester A. Arthur Vice-President, for the term of four years, from the fourth of March, 1881.

The result of the election was cordially accepted by the country, and the nation began to look forward to a new era of prosperity and happiness.

On Friday, March 4, 1881, the inauguration ceremonies took place upon a scale of unusual magnificence, and were participated in by numerous military and civic organizations, and by thousands of citizens from all parts of the country. After the new Vice-President had taken the oath of office, President-elect Garfield was formally received by the Senate, and escorted to the eastern portico of the capitol, where, in the presence of an immense multitude of citizens and soldiery, he delivered an able and eloquent inaugural address, and took the oath of office at the hands of Chief-Justice Waite.

The new President had been long and favorably known to his countrymen. He was in his fiftieth year, and in vigorous health. A man of commanding presence, he was dignified and courteous in his demeanor, accessible to the humblest citizen, and deservedly popular with men of all parties. Born a poor boy, without influential friends, he had by his own efforts secured a thorough collegiate education, and had carefully fitted himself for the arduous duties he was now called upon to discharge. Entering the army at the outbreak of the civil war, he had won a brilliant reputation as a soldier, and had been promoted to the rank of major-general of volunteers. Elected to Congress from Ohio, in 1862, he had entered the House of Representatives in December, 1863, and had seen almost eighteen years of constant service in that body, in which he had long ranked as one of the most brilliant and trusted leaders of the Republican party. Early in 1880 he had been chosen a United States Senator from Ohio, but had been prevented from taking his seat in the Senate by his election to the Presidency. Immediately after his inauguration he sent to the Senate for confirmation the names of the

members of his Cabinet. They were chosen from among the leading members of the conservative portion of the Republican party, and were headed by James G. Blaine, of Maine, as Secretary of State. They were at once confirmed by the Senate, and the new administration embarked upon its short-lived career.

Very soon after entering upon his duties, President Garfield found that the Executive

JAMES A. GARFIELD.

chair was by no means a bed of roses. The Republican party soon divided into two sections, one, known as the "Conservative," supporting the administration, and the other, known as the "Stalwarts," opposing it. A bitter partisan quarrel sprang up between these two wings of the party, and prolonged the Executive session of the Senate until late in June. The quarrel was the fiercest over the appointment of a new collector for the port of New York, and culminated in the resignation of their seats in the Senate by Senators Conkling and Platt of New York, on the sixteenth of May.

The resignation of these gentlemen was based upon the ground that the President had nominated Judge Robertson to be collector of the port of New York, without consulting or yielding to the wishes of the senators from that State, the said senators in effect claiming the right to determine what appointments should or should not be made by the President in their State. The President, on his part, insisted upon his right to nominate to office any man whom he should deem worthy of the trust.

The struggle was in reality a contest for the independence of the Executive in the matter of public appointments, and President Garfield was warmly supported by the great mass of the nation without regard to party. He, therefore, pursued with unshaken firmness the policy he had determined upon. After the resignation of Senators Conkling and Platt, the nomination of Judge Robertson was confirmed by the Senate.

As the time wore on, President Garfield gained steadily in the esteem of his countrymen. His purpose to give to the nation a fair and just administration of the government was every day more apparent, and his high and noble qualities became more conspicuous. Men began to feel that the Executive chair was occupied by a President capable of conceiving a pure and noble standard of duty, and possessed of the firmness and strength of will necessary to carry it into execution. The country was prosperous, and there was every reason to expect a continuance of the general happiness.

Soon after the opening of President Garfield's administration, the Postmaster-General discovered that certain contracts for carrying the mails on what are known as "The Star Routes," were fraudulent, and that the persons interested in them were defrauding the government of large sums of money. The President, Postmaster-General and Attorney-General, sustained by the other members of the Cabinet, without exception, thereupon resolved to bring the guilty parties to justice.

The latter being men of wealth and position, bitterly resented the course of the government, and violently denounced it. Nevertheless the President caused measures looking to the punishment of the accused parties to be begun, and only the unexpected adjournment of the grand jury and court prevented a formal indictment from being brought against them. Before other measures could be taken, the attention of the entire nation was occupied by an event of graver importance.

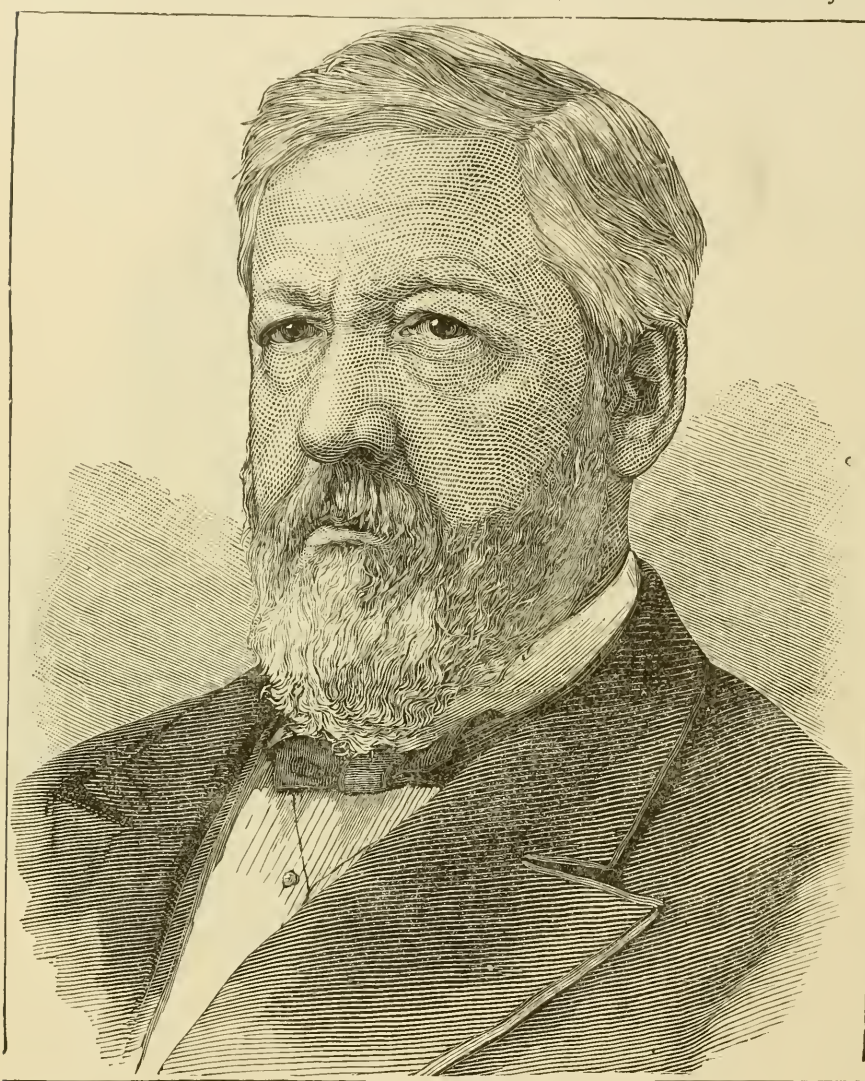
While these matters were still in progress, President Garfield began preparations for a brief pleasure trip to Long Branch, where Mrs. Garfield was recovering from a severe illness; intending from that point to visit New England, and be present at the commencement exercises of his *alma mater*, Williams' College, in Massachusetts. He was to be accompanied by a distinguished party, including several members of the Cabinet. On the morning of the second of July, the party proceeded to the Baltimore and Potomac depot, where they were to take the cars, in advance of the President, who arrived soon after in company with Secretary Blaine, who came simply to see him off and say good-bye. They left the President's carriage together, and sauntered arm-in-arm through the depot towards the cars.

In passing through the ladies' waiting-room, the President was fired at twice by a man named Charles J. Guiteau. The first shot inflicted a slight wound in the President's right arm, and the second a terrible wound in the right side of his back, between the hip and the kidney. The President fell heavily to the floor, and the assassin was secured as he was seeking to make his escape from the building and was conveyed to a police

MRS. LUCRETIA R. GARFIELD.

station, from which he was subsequently taken to prison.

The President lay helpless upon the floor of the waiting-room, the blood flowing copiously from both his wounds. As soon as those near him recovered from the dismay into which the tragedy had thrown them, he was placed upon a mattrass, physicians were summoned and he was conveyed to an upper room in the depot. He bore his sufferings with great firmness, and from the first displayed a cool courage that won the warm admiration of the country. The surgeons summoned were soon at hand, and found that the President's injuries were very critical. It was decided to remove him to the Executive Mansion, and he was carried down the stairs, placed in an army ambulance and driven rapidly to the White House. Arriving there he was conveyed to his wife's chamber, overlooking the Potomac, and placed in bed. Two attempts were made by the surgeons to find the ball — one at the depot, and one at the White House after his arrival there—but both were unsuccessful. Grave fears were entertained by the surgeons for the President's life, and Mrs. Garfield was summoned by telegraph from Long Branch. She arrived during the evening.



JAMES G. BLAINE.

The news of the attempt upon the President's life spread rapidly throughout the Union, and was everywhere received with horror and indignation. During the afternoon his condition became more alarming,

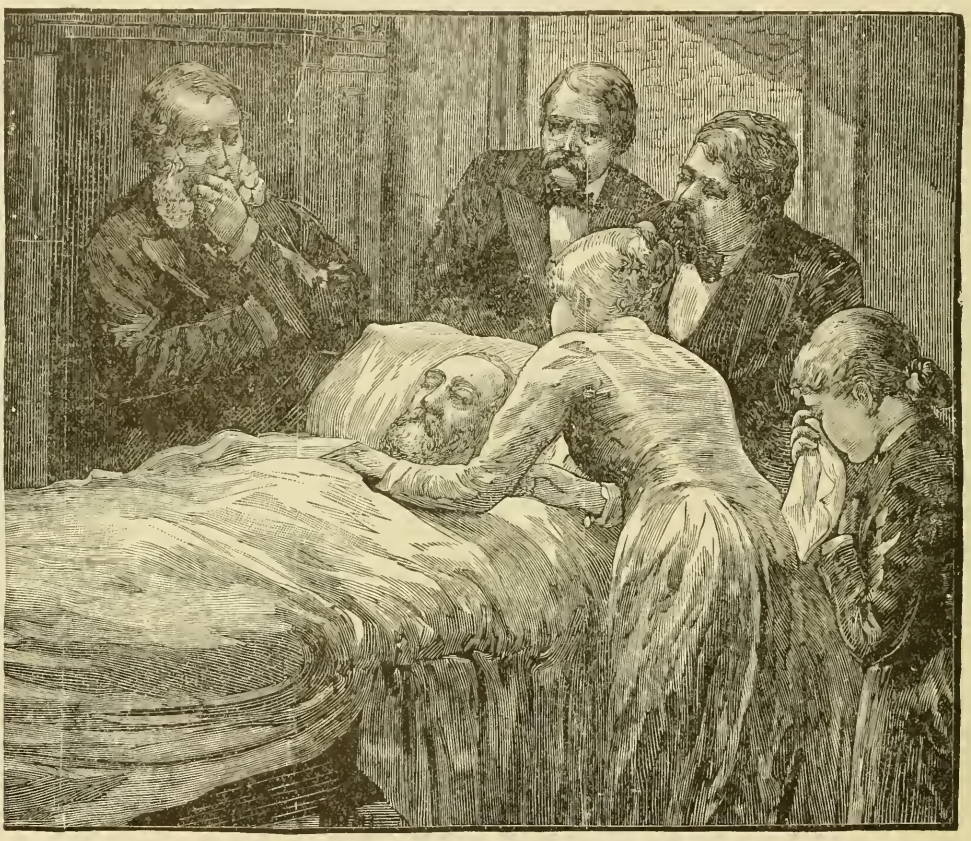
and bulletins were issued by the surgeons in charge at frequent intervals, giving the latest news of the state of the illustrious sufferer. These were telegraphed to all parts of the country, and were watched with eager impatience by vast crowds of citizens wherever they were posted. The sympathy of the whole nation went out warmly towards the wounded President and his afflicted family, and from the governments and nations of Europe messages of inquiry and sympathy were constantly received through the Atlantic cable. During the entire period of the President's illness the official bulletins were issued three times each day, and the nation was thus kept informed of his condition.

The best medical and surgical skill of the country was employed in the effort to save the President's life, and throughout the whole period of his illness he never lost his calm courage, but displayed a firmness and cheerfulness that astonished his attendants, and encouraged them to hope for a favorable result.

The afternoon of the second of July wore anxiously away, no signs of a reaction being manifested, but after the arrival of Mrs. Garfield, in the evening, the President began to rally slightly. The night was passed in anxious suspense. On the morning of the third, the President was calm and cheerful, though he fully realized the gravity of his situation. He told Dr. Bliss, the surgeon in charge of his case, that he wished to know exactly what his chances for life were; that while he desired to live, he was prepared to die, and did not fear to learn the worst. Dr. Bliss replied that though his injuries were formidable, he had, in his judgment, a chance for his life. "Well, Doctor," exclaimed the sufferer, with a cheerful smile, "we'll take that chance."

THE ASSASSINATION OF JAMES A. GARFIELD.

The day passed away without any event of importance, and the anxious nation, as well as the President's attendants, drew some hope from the fact he continued "to hold his own." The popular anxiety and sympathy were strikingly manifested on the Fourth of July, the anniversary of the National Independence, in the listless and careless manner in which the day was celebrated. The people were too much engrossed with their anxiety to take part in any demonstration of joy.



DEATH-BED OF JAMES A. GARFIELD.

The two months following the wounding of President Garfield dragged wearily away, the patient at times showing symptoms of marked improvement, and at others experiencing dangerous relapses. The nation alternated between hope and despair, and was kept all the while in a most painful suspense. The surgeons in charge, however, recognized the true character of the wound from the first, and while they hoped for a recovery, could not conceal from themselves the fact that such a result would be almost miraculous.

The President's sufferings were very great during this period, and were increased by the intense heat of the season and the unhealthy surroundings of the White House. Yet he bore them all with unshaken firmness and unalterable cheerfulness. Dr. Bliss, his chief surgeon, writes of him during this period.—"The time which passed until the twenty-third of July, when the first rigor occurred, was chiefly remarkable for the

quiet, cool determination of the sufferer. Quite ready for, and evidently expecting the worst, his demeanor was that of the man whose great intellect and wonderful will enabled him to give the most intelligent aid to the physician. Apparently indifferent as to result, so far as it should affect him alone, he still watched every symptom, even making inquiry after each examination as to the temperature, pulse and respiration, and every measure of relief adopted, with evidently firm determination to live for others if possible."

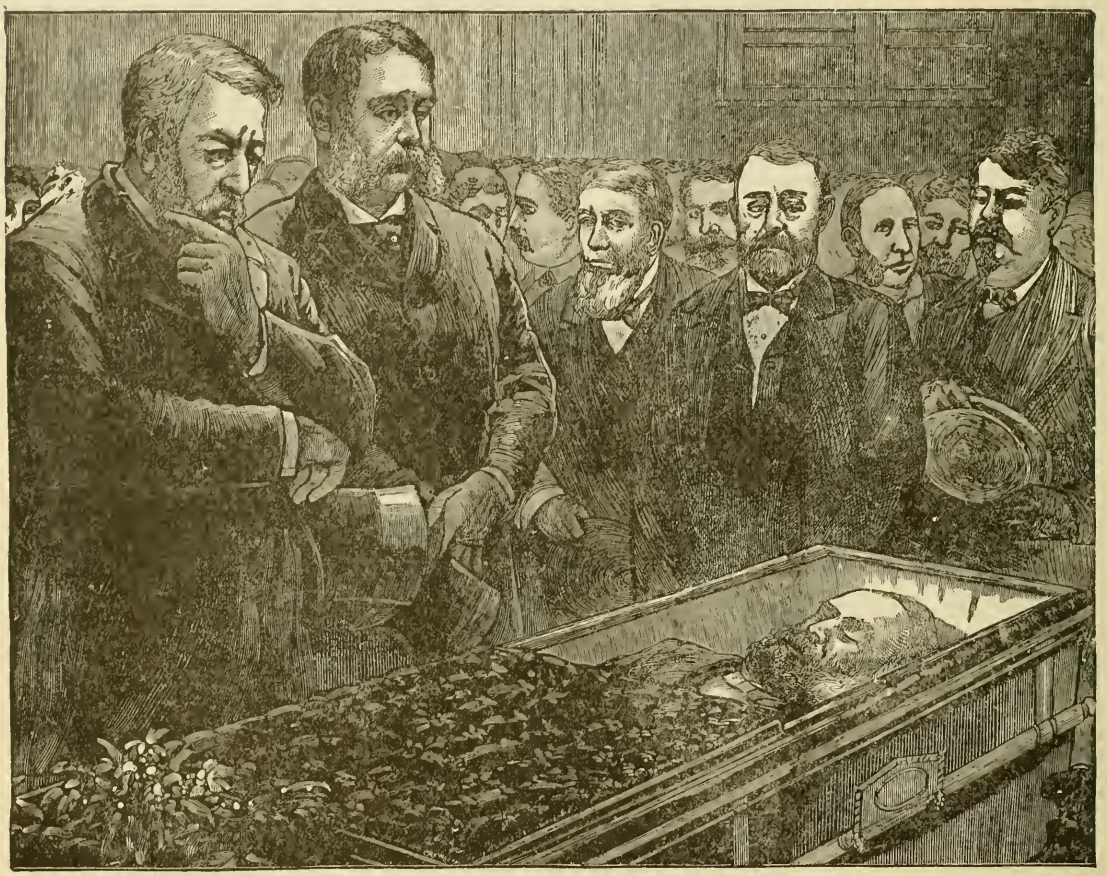
Towards the last of August, the surgeons in attendance upon the President resolved to remove him from the White House to a more healthful locality. The removal was a risk, but not so great a risk as to permit him to remain in the malarious atmosphere which surrounded the Executive Mansion, and which was rapidly destroying the little strength left him. It was decided to convey him to Long Branch, in the hope that the pure and bracing air of the sea would enable him to regain some of his lost vitality.

Accordingly, on the sixth of September, the President, accompanied by his family, his surgeons and attendants, was conveyed to Long Branch in a train specially prepared for the purpose. The journey was made quickly and successfully, and after reaching Long Branch the President seemed to rally.

THE CATAFALQUE AT CLEVELAND, OHIO.

For the first few days after his arrival at the seashore, his symptoms were so much better that renewed hope sprang up in the hearts of his countrymen. It was only for a brief period, however. On the sixteenth of September there was a marked change for the worse, with unmistakable evidences of increasing weakness in mind and body. On the seventeenth the President sank still lower, and in the forenoon was seized with a severe rigor. On the evening of the eighteenth another alarming rigor occurred, followed by other grave symptoms. From this time the President continued to grow worse. On the morning of the nineteenth he was attacked with another severe rigor, but after that had passed away appeared more comfortable, and his attendants were hopeful of a quiet night for him.

Towards nine o'clock in the evening he fell into a quiet sleep, from which he awakened, shortly after ten o'clock, in great pain. General Swaim, who was watching by him, alarmed by the President's symptoms, hastily summoned the family and the surgeons. The President was unconscious when they arrived, and continued to sink rapidly. Efforts were made to revive him with stimulants, but in vain, and at thirty-five minutes after ten o'clock, the brave struggle was brought to an end, and the soul of James A. Garfield passed into eternity.



JAMES A. GARFIELD LYING IN STATE IN THE ROTUNDA OF THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

The sad news of the death of President Garfield was at once telegraphed to New York, and by eleven o'clock the whole country was aware that its Chief Magistrate was dead. Bells were tolled in every city, town and village of the Union, and everywhere citizens draped their houses in mourning. Such a display of national sorrow had never been witnessed before.

The news of the death of President Garfield was at once transmitted by telegraph to Vice-President Arthur by the members of the Cabinet present at Long Branch, and he was advised by them to take the oath of office as President without delay. Accordingly, Justices Brady and Donahoe of the Supreme Court of New York were at once summoned by the Vice-President, and at a little after two o'clock on the morning of the twentieth of September, he took the oath of office as President of the United States before them at his private residence in New York.

On the twentieth of September, arrangements were made for removing the body of the late President to Washington City, and on the same day an autopsy was held upon the body by the surgeons who had been in attendance upon the President, assisted by several others. The autopsy revealed the fact that the wound had been fatal from the first. On the morning of the twenty-first, funeral ceremonies were held in the cottage at Long Branch in which the President died, and at ten o'clock the remains were placed on board of a special train, and conveyed to Washington, and accompanied by the family and friends of the dead President, and by President Arthur and a number of distinguished personages. Washington was reached at 4.35 in the afternoon, and the body was escorted by a detachment of military and Knights Templar to the Capitol, where it was laid in state until the twenty-third.

During the twenty-second and twenty-third it was visited by over one hundred thousand persons. On the afternoon of the twenty-third, the public funeral services were held in the rotunda of the Capitol, after which the body was escorted to the Baltimore and Potomac depot, and conveyed to Cleveland, Ohio, by a special train. Cleveland was reached the next day, and the remains were laid in state in a structure especially prepared for them, until the morning of the twenty-sixth, when they were buried with the most imposing ceremonies in Lake View Cemetery,

CHESTER A. ARTHUR.

in the suburbs of that city. Business was suspended and memorial services were held during the day in all parts of the United States.

On the twenty-second of September, President Arthur again took the oath of office, this time at the hands of the Chief-Justice of the United States, and was quietly inaugurated in the Vice-President's room, in the Capitol, delivering upon this occasion, a brief inaugural address.

Soon after the attempt upon the life of President Garfield, a popular subscription was set on foot to provide a fund for the support

JOHN A. LOGAN.

of his family in the event of his death. The movement was successful, and over $330,000 were raised, and invested in United States bonds for the benefit of the widow and children of the "Martyred President."

President Arthur entered quietly upon the duties of his administration, and his first acts were satisfactory to a majority of his countrymen. As he had been the leader of "the Stalwart," section of the Republican party, it was felt by the members of the Cabinet of the late President that he should be free to choose his own advisers. Therefore, immediately upon his accession to the Executive chair, Mr. Blaine and his colleagues tendered him their resignations. They were requested, however, by the new President to retain their offices until he could find suitable successors to them. To this they agreed, but before the year was out several important changes had been made in the Cabinet. The principal of these were the substitution of Frederick T. Frelinghuysen, of New Jersey, for Mr. Blaine, as Secretary of State, and the appointment of Judge Charles J. Folger to the Treasury Department.

Indictment of Garfield's Assassin.

One of the first acts of the new administration was to cause the indictment of Charles J. Guiteau for the murder of President Garfield. The grand jury of the District of Columbia met on the third of October, 1881, and promptly found a true bill against Guiteau, who was arraigned in the Criminal Court of the District on the fourteenth of October. After some delay the trial of the assassin began on the fourteenth of November. The first three days were consumed in selecting a jury, and then the trial began in earnest. It ended on the twenty-fifth of January, 1882, in the conviction of Guiteau for the murder of the late President. The prisoner was defended by able counsel, and was allowed many privileges never before granted to persons on trial for so grave an offence.

The plea upon which the defence was based was insanity, but the evidence entirely destroyed this assumption, and the verdict of the jury was received throughout the country as just and proper. An effort was made by Guiteau's counsel to obtain a new trial for him, but this was denied by the court, and on the fourth of February Guiteau was sentenced to be hanged on the thirtieth of June, 1882. The counsel for the prisoner still continued his efforts to secure a new trial.

but these being unsuccessful in each and every instance, his only resource was an appeal to the clemency of the Executive. The President declined, however, to interfere with the sentence.

Execution of Guiteau.

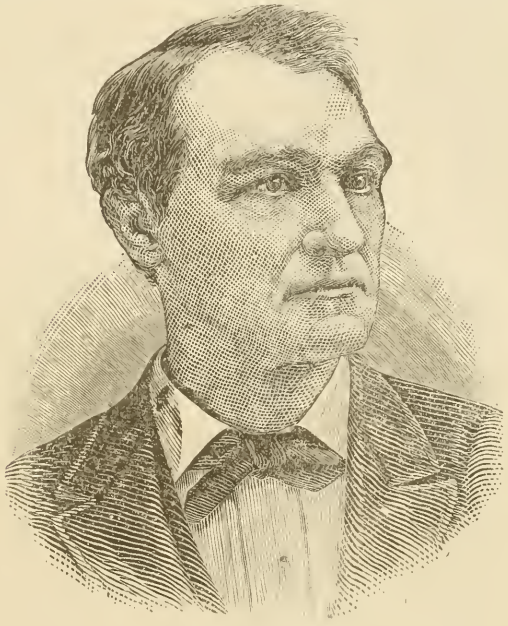
During the interval between his sentence and his execution, Guiteau was confined in the jail of the District of Columbia, at Washington. His conduct during this interval was in keeping with that which had marked his trial—vain, egotistical, and blasphemous. To the last the prisoner was confident that President Arthur would interfere in his behalf, but the result proved this to be a vain hope.

The execution took place in the District jail on the thirtieth of June, 1882, and was witnessed by about two hundred people, nearly all representatives of the press. Guiteau displayed more firmness than had been expected of him. He walked to the gallows without making the violent scene which had been anticipated by many, and ascended it with a firm step. Upon the scaffold, however, he displayed considerable emotion, which he quickly subdued. His religious adviser, Rev. Dr. Hicks, offered a short prayer, and Guiteau read a selection from the Holy Scriptures.

Then he read a prayer, strangely at variance with his religious professions, in which he called down the curse of the Almighty upon all who had been engaged in his trial and execution, and upon the nation at large, and denounced President Arthur as a coward and an ingrate. Finally he chanted a poem which he had written during the morning. At the close of this singular recital the trap fell, precisely at forty-three minutes past twelve o'clock, and the great crime against the American people was avenged. Guiteau's neck was broken by the fall, and his death was painless. He died without a struggle, and with scarce a tremor.

At the opening of Congress in 1883, John G. Carlisle, of Kentucky, was chosen speaker of the House.

In 1881 an attempt was made to establish a signal station at a point north of the eighty-first parallel, and Lieutenant A. W. Greeley, of the United States Navy, was selected as the officer to take charge of the expedition. He received his instructions from the chief



JOHN G. CARLISLE.

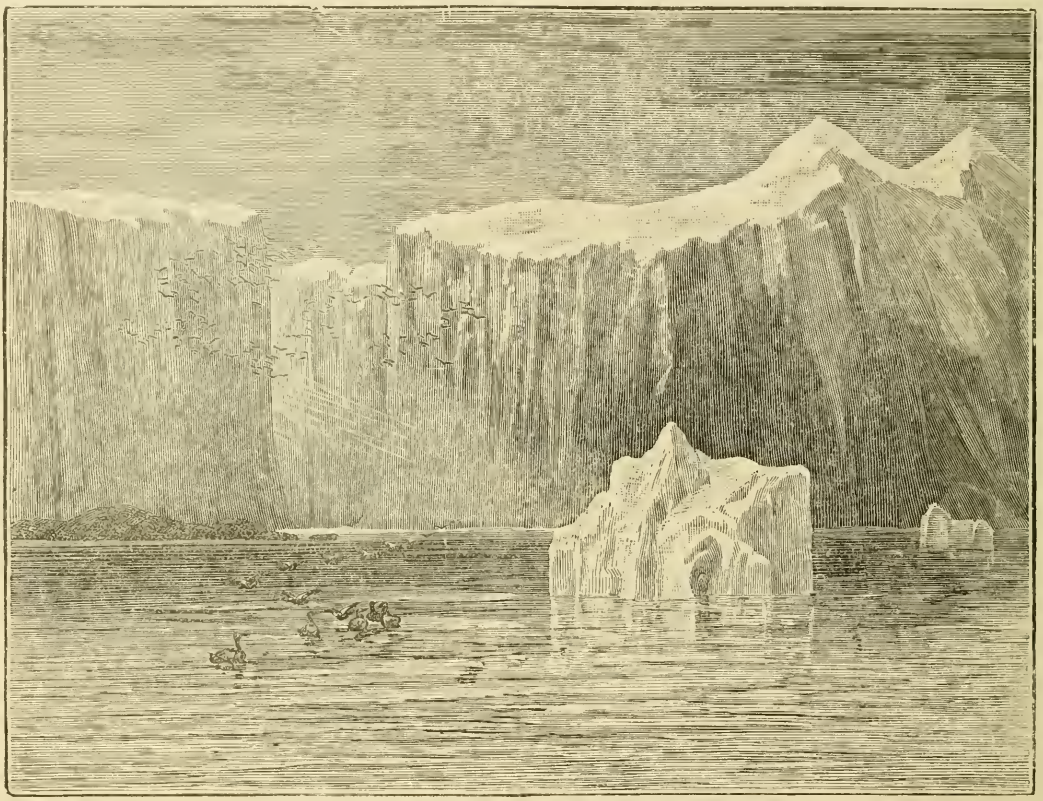
signal officer, General Hazen. The steamer "Proteus," which was to convey the party to its destination sailed from St. John's, Newfoundland, on the seventh of July, and immediately encountered rough weather.

The adventurers pressed forward and, notwithstanding almost insurmountable obstacles succeeded in reaching a point beyond the eighty-first parallel, where they established a post and named it Fort Conger. After landing the party the "Proteus" had returned.

As is usual with all polar expeditions anxiety began to be felt for the safety of the party, and attempts were made in 1882 and 1883 to send relief. The colonists were not found, and at length, on account of their provisions being exhausted, they were reduced to terrible straits.

The expedition of Greeley is especially memorable for having reached the highest point ever gained in Arctic exploration. This achievement was due to Lieutenant Lockwood, who approached nearer the North Pole than any other explorer either before or since. The records of the expedition are replete with valuable information concerning the meteorology of that latitude, and with descriptions of very remarkable natural phenomena. Brilliant auroras lighted the northern sky; the Arctic moon wore a strange appearance; the air was sharp with penetrating frost; and the long night of the Arctic winter was attended with a loneliness impossible to describe.

The brave company at length retreated from their post. Few pages in the history of polar exploration record such terrible hardships and sufferings as fell to the lot of the Greeley expedition. Three relief ships, the "Thetis," "Bear" and "Alert," were sent to Lady Franklin Bay. The survivors were at last found when they were in dire distress and must soon have perished from starvation, except for the timely relief which reached them.



SANDERSON'S HOPE, UPERNAVIK, BAFFIN BAY.

The officers of the expedition were charged with cannibalism and inhuman cruelty. One

of their number who was accused of stealing rations was shot, and if half suppressed reports are to be credited, his body furnished food for his famishing comrades. All who were left of Greeley's command were found on the twenty-second of June, 1884, three years after the party started on its perilous voyage. The heroism of the brave explorers excited the admiration of the world, and universal interest was felt in the thrilling story of their sufferings.

ARCTIC REGION—BEECHEY HEAD.

On the twenty-seventh of October, 1882, the two-hundredth anniversary of the landing of William Penn was celebrated at Philadelphia. The exercises included public addresses, a military display, and an industrial parade. In addition to these there were various historic devices and tableaux, illustrating events in the early history of Pennsylvania. It was estimated that upwards of four hundred thousand persons attended the celebration.

One of the notable events of 1883, was the opening of the great Suspension Bridge over the East River, between New York City and Brooklyn. Work commenced January 3, 1870, and the bridge was opened to the public May 24, 1883. The total cost was $15,500,000 The total length from New York to Brooklyn is 5,989 feet, and the length of the main span is 1,595½ feet. The height of the towers is 276⅔ feet. The height of the floor of the bridge at the centre, above high water mark is 135 feet. The height of the floor of the bridge at the piers is 118 feet.

862 SCENE IN THE ARCTIC REGIONS—AMONG THE ICEBERGS.

The caisson for the New York pier was sunk 78 feet, and that for the Brooklyn pier 45½ feet below the bed of the river. Each cable is 15¾ inches in diameter and is made up of 5,000 wires, each ⅛ inch in diam-

In the campaign of 1884, James G. Blaine, of Maine, and John A. Logan, of Illinois, were the nominees of the Republican party for the offices of President and Vice-President. Grover Cleveland, of New York, and

THE BROOKLYN SUSPENSION BRIDGE.

eter. The anchorages are 930 feet from the towers and weigh 120,000,000 pounds each. The cables are capable of sustaining 49,200 tons. The weight of the central span is 6,742 tons.

Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana, were the nominees of the Democratic party. The campaign resulted in the election of Cleveland and Hendricks, the vote in the Electoral College being 219 to 182.

CHAPTER XLVII

The Administration of Grover Cleveland.

Mr. Cleveland's Early Life—Governor of New York—Elected President—Inauguration Ceremonies—Civil Service and Revenue Reform—The New Cabinet—Death of General Grant—Imposing Obsequies—Honors to the Illustrious Dead—Death of General George B. McClellan—Free Trade Conference at Chicago—Death of Vice-President Thomas B. Hendricks—Pension Granted to the Widow of President Grant—President Cleveland's Message—Bill Regulating the Presidential Succession—Labor Agitations—Riot at Chicago Instigated by "Anarchists"—Statue of Liberty Enlightening the World—President Cleveland's Marriage—Soldiers' Pensions—Capital and Labor—Centennial Anniversary of the Adoption of the Constitution—Nomination of President Cleveland—Nomination of Benjamin Harrison—Harrison's Election.

THE twenty-second President of the United States was Hon. Grover Cleveland. Mr. Cleveland was a native of New Jersey, and was born in Caldwell, Essex County, March 18, 1837. He came from sturdy New England stock, many of his ancestors having held honorable positions in their respective localties.

President Cleveland, after teaching two or three years, studied law in Buffalo, was admitted to the bar, became sheriff of the county, mayor of the city, and, having received the nomination for governor of New York, was elected by a large majority. This was followed by his nomination in the Democratic Convention of 1884, and his election in the following November to the Presidency.

Naturally the departure of the Republican administration and the return of the Democratic party to power after twenty-four years of exile from the highest seats in the councils of the Republic awakened a profound interest. As the fourth of March, 1885, approached, eyes were turned toward Washington, and multitudes went up to the Capital as to a Mecca. Washington itself, accustomed to civic displays, exciting events and magnificent parades, was more than usually awakened, and an interest was exhibited in the inauguration which overshadowed all other concerns. The representatives of the press throughout the country were there in full force to record the event and depict the scene in its imposing aspects.

The ceremonies incident upon the inauguration presented a pageant exceeding in civic and military display any such preceding occasion in the history of the government. There were in attendance more than one hundred thousand visitors, and the city in its profuse decorations was a bewildering maze of bright colors. Among the significant allegorical designs was a great floral ladder reaching to the roof of a business house on Pennsylvania Avenue, which bore upon its rungs the words, "Sheriff," "Mayor," "Governor," "President," thus graphically symbolizing the life-work of the President elect.

The inaugural of President Cleveland began as follows:

"In the presence of this vast assemblage of my countrymen I am about to supplement and seal by the oath which I shall take the manifestation of the will of a great and free people. In the exercise of their power and right of self-government they have committed to one of their fellow-citizens a supreme and sacred trust, and he here consecrates himself to their service.

"This impressive ceremony adds little to the solemn sense of responsibility with which I contemplate the duty I owe to all the people of the land. Nothing can relieve me from anxiety lest by any act of mine their interests may suffer, and nothing is needed to strengthen my resolution to engage every faculty and effort in the promotion of their welfare."

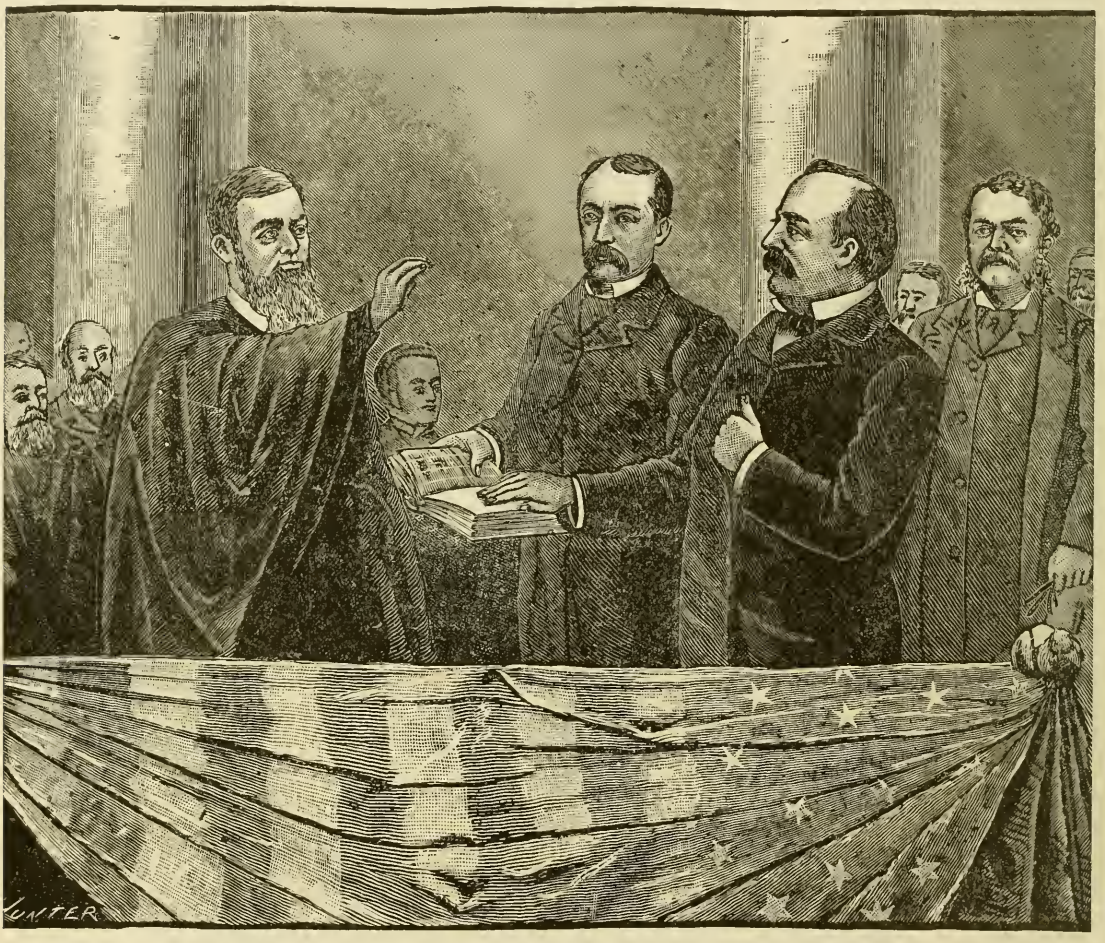
Having stated his sense of the importance and sacredness of the trust confided in him, President Cleveland gave expression to the purpose by which he would be guided in the administration of the affairs of the government:

"In the discharge of my official duty I shall endeavor to be guided by a just and unstrained construction of the Constitution, a careful observance of the distinction between the powers granted to the Federal government and those reserved to the States or to the people, and by a cautious appreciation of those functions which, by the Constitution and laws, have been especially assigned to the executive branch of the government."

GROVER CLEVELAND.

Upon the question of civil service reform President Cleveland expressed himself in accordance with the sentiments enunciated in the platform of his party, adopted at the convention of 1884:

"The people demand reform in the administration of the government and the influence of those who promise and the vicious methods of those who expect such rewards. And those who worthily seek public employment have the right to insist that merit and competency shall be recognized instead of party subserviency, or the surrender of honest political belief."



CHIEF-JUSTICE WAITE ADMINISTERING THE OATH OF OFFICE TO PRESIDENT CLEVELAND.

application of business principles to public affairs. As a means to this end civil service reform should be in good faith enforced. Our citizens have the right to protection from the incompetency of public employees who hold their places solely as the reward of partisan service, and from the corrupting

Revenue reform was another topic referred to in President Cleveland's inaugural address. Thus early in his administration he presented a matter which was very fully discussed in his subsequent messages to Congress, and became the subject of contention between the two great parties.

"A due regard," he says, "for the interests and prosperity of all the people demand that our finances shall be established upon such a sound and sensible basis as shall secure the safety and confidence of business interests and make the wage of labor sure and steady, and that our system of revenue shall be so adjusted as to relieve the people from unnecessary taxation, having a due regard to the interests of capital invested and workingmen employed in American industries, and preventing the accumulation of a surplus in the treasury to tempt extravagance and waste."

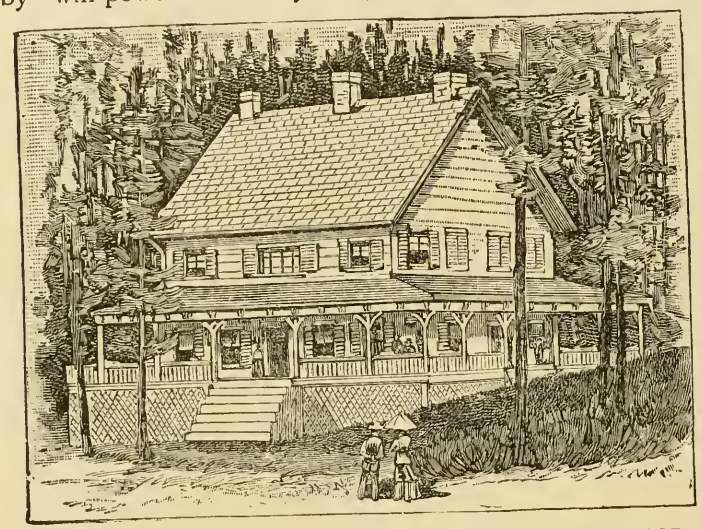
The new cabinet was composed as follows: Thomas Francis Bayard, of Delaware, Secretary of State; Daniel Manning, of New York, Secretary of the Treasury; Lucius Q. C. Lamar, of Mississippi, Secretary of the Interior; Augustus H. Garland, of Arkansas, Attorney-General; William Crowninshield Endicott, of Massachusetts, Secretary of War; William F. Vilas, of Wisconsin, Postmaster-General; William Collins Whitney, of New York, Secretary of the Navy.

On the fourth of March, the day of President Cleveland's inauguration, ex-President Grant was placed on the retired list of the army. For some months previous to this there were ominous rumors respecting the state of his health. The great general who had led the Federal forces in the last part of the civil war, and who had gained a military reputation second to that of no commander of modern times; who had also been lifted to the highest position in the gift of a grateful people, and had served eight years in the

DEATH OF GENERAL GRANT.

White House as our chief executive, was reported to be in his last illness.

The sympathy of the entire country was profoundly stirred by this announcement. Medical skill of the highest order was summoned; daily bulletins of the condition of the illustrious patient were issued; hope was expressed that his life might be spared for many years, a hope which soon proved to be unfounded; and although his labors in the preparation of his "Memoirs" continued, it became evident that he was sustained more by will-power than by any increasing strength, and that very soon he would be compelled to lay down his pen as he had already laid down his sword.



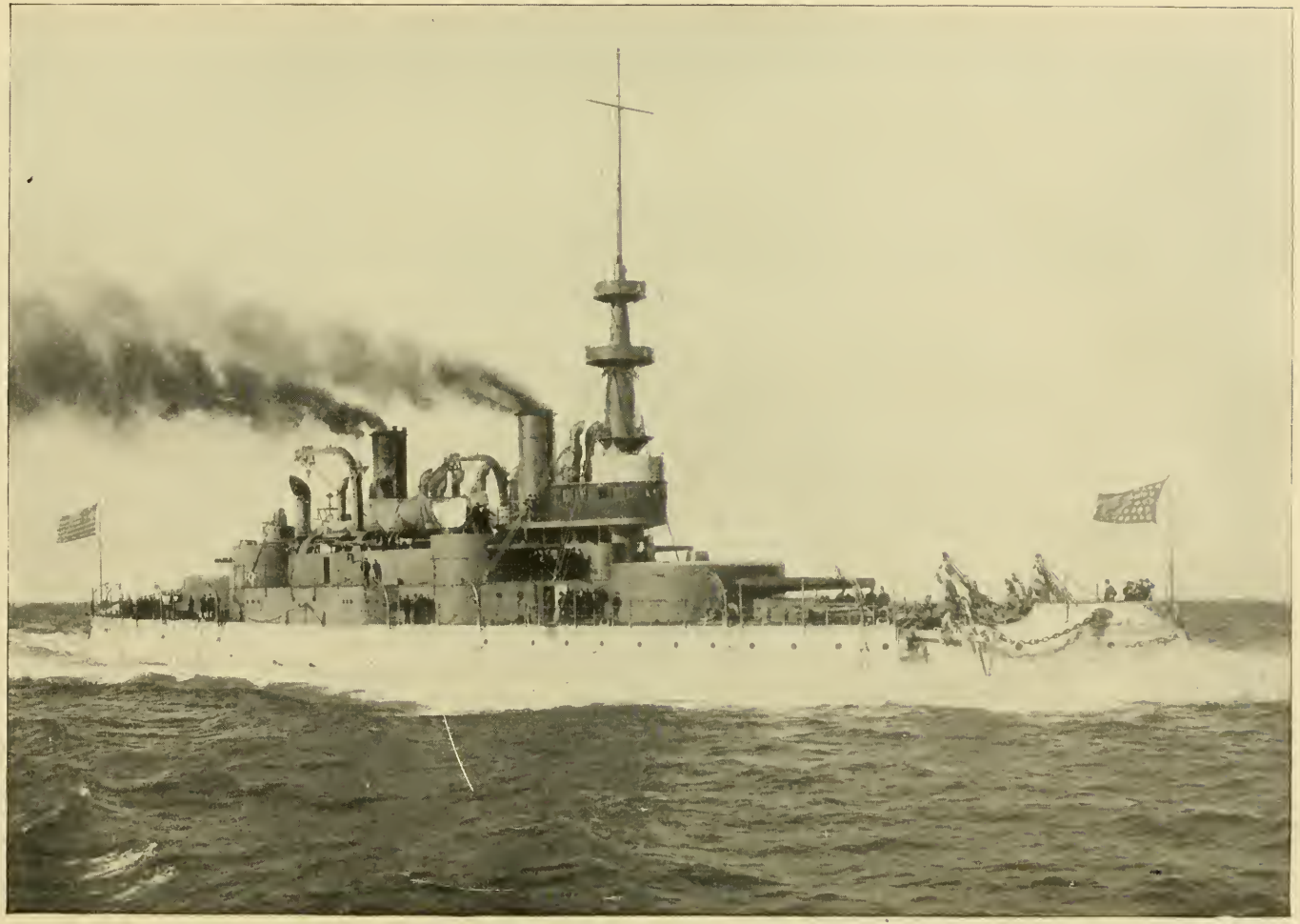
THE COTTAGE IN WHICH GRANT DIED AT MT. McGREGOR.

In the summer of 1885 he was removed to Mount McGregor, in the northern part of the State of New York, in the hope that he would be invigorated by the mountain air. Disease, however, had progressed so far that his death became inevitable, and this occurred on the twenty-third of July, at 8 o'clock A. M. Demonstrations of sorrow attended his obsequies. A special train bore his remains from Mount McGregor to the city of New York, where the funeral services and the interment were to take place. On the sixth of August he was laid in state in the City Hall, and vast crowds of people came to take their last look. On August eighth the funeral took place, which was an extraordinary pageantry. It was attended by celebrities from all parts of the land. All that statesmen, members of Congress, Governors of States, Judges of Supreme Courts and persons in the highest walks of professional and mercantile life could do to give honor to the illustrious dead was rendered on this ocasion.

The Grand Army, of which General Grant had been the leader, was fully represented. A procession numbering from fifty to sixty thousand men followed the hearse from the City Hall to the mausoleum erected on the banks of the Hudson, which was to contain the remains of the illustrious dead. The closing scenes of the life of General Grant were as impressive as his previous illness had been painful, and fitted to awaken public sympathy. Thus was laid in the tomb another of the renowned sons of the Republic who had done much to add to her fame and brighten her glory.

It was not long after this that another death occurred which added to the affliction caused by that of ex-President Grant. On the 29th of October General George B. McClellan died at his residence at Orange Mountain, N. J. General McClellan's name comes out conspicuously in the history of our country since 1860. In the early part of the war he was commander of the Army of the Potomac. Having been displaced, the part that he occupied in the war was not afterward prominent. He was widely known, however, in political life, and was invested

U. S. BATTLESHIP MAINE



U. S. BATTLESHIP INDIANA

with several offices, one of which was the governorship of New Jersey. His funeral took place in the city of New York on the second of November.

The public agitation of the question of free trade and revenue reform took definite shape in the latter part of this year. At Chicago on the eleventh of November there was a national conference of free-traders and revenue reformers. This was preliminary to political action which, it was understood, would be taken afterward. The conference was attended by representative men, views were freely exchanged, and it was thought that by this action the cause of free trade would be materially promoted. Thus it may be seen that the tariff question was becoming more and more prominent, entering more largely into public discussion, and was destined to be the leading issue in the next presidential campaign.

On the twenty-fifth of November Vice-President Thomas B. Hendricks died suddenly at Indianapolis, and his obsequies were attended December first. Thus passed away another of the prominent figures whose removal made the year 1885 conspicuous as a year of death in high places.

GENERAL GRANT'S TEMPORARY TOMB, RIVERSIDE PARK, NEW YORK.

In December both houses of Congress passed a bill granting a pension to President Grant's widow. This was thought to be an act of justice in consideration of the services rendered to the nation by her distinguished husband—a measure which was heartily

approved by the people at large, and which was another evidence of the fact that, notwithstanding the old saying that "Republics are ungrateful," ours is not to be classed in that number.

In the early part of December, Congress reassembled at Washington, and President Cleveland submitted his annual message. In this message the matter of silver coinage was given a prominent place, and in connection with it the existing condition of the laboring classes throughout the country was discussed. The president expressed the gravest anxiety for the prosperity of the country, unless measures should be taken by Congress to remedy the existing evils. Another important recommendation had reference to the Indians. It was maintained that the present laws and regulations for their control should be prudently administered, while at the same time it was stated that there was a lack of fixed purpose or policy on this subject.

The Presidential Succession.

The president took the ground that the Indians were within the care of the government, and their rights should be protected from invasion by the most solemn obligations. It was stated that there was a general concurrence in the proposition that the ultimate object of their treatment should be their civilization and citizenship, and it was urged that measures to this end should be pressed forward as speedily as possible. The passage of a law was recommended which should authorize the appointment of six commissioners to carry out the preceding recommendations. These were the most important matters which were submitted by President Cleveland in this message.

A bill stating the terms of the presidential succession was passed by Congress on the fifteenth of January, 1886. The opinion had long been held by members of Congress, and had been discussed by the journals throughout the country, that the statutes regulating the succession in the office of president were not sufficiently adequate. The intention was, by this bill, to set up such safeguards as would prevent any revolutionary act in the event of the death of the chief executive, the vice-president, or both, during a single presidential term.

Agitations upon the labor question continued throughout the country; organizations were rapidly formed, conventions were held, leading agitators inflamed the laboring classes, and the subject assumed such grave proportions that on the twenty-second of April, 1886, President Cleveland sent a special message to Congress. The object was to recommend such measures as would tend to quiet the labor agitation, and at the same time guard the interests of capital.

Anarchists Sentenced to be Executed.

The next event of importance, although occurring in Chicago, very soon assumed a national aspect. On the fourth of May a riot occurred in that city, instigated by a company of revolutionary spirits who have been denominated "Anarchists." After having held secret and public meetings for a long time, which were promoted and reported by one or two journals edited by the leaders in the movement, an open outbreak occurred on the above date. While a public meeting was being held and speeches were being made of a revolutionary description, the police attempted to disperse the crowd. At that instant dynamite bombs were thrown, and seven policemen were killed, and eighty-three officers and citizens were wounded.

A number of arrests followed, and on the twentieth of August, after a protracted trial, seven anarchists were convicted of murder and sentenced to be executed. Able counsel defended them, and managed their trial

in such a way as to indicate that they were as much in sympathy with the measures proposed by the anarchists as they were with the maintenance of law and order. On the seventh of October a new trial was refused, and on the ninth formal sentence of execution was pronounced. Four were executed on November 11, 1887, one committed suicide in prison, two were sentenced to imprisonment for life and one to fifteen years in the penitentiary.

Earthquake at Charleston.

On the thirty-first of August, 1886, the city of Charleston, South Carolina, was visited by a severe earthquake. Nearly seven thousand buildings were totally destroyed or seriously injured. About one hundred lives were lost, and so great was the work of destruction that more than one-half of the city had to be rebuilt. This calamity threw a gloom over the entire country; prompt aid was offered the sufferers, and the people of the stricken city began at once to repair their desolated homes.

On Thursday, October 28, 1886, the great statue of Liberty Enlightening the World was unveiled on Bedlow's Island, in New York Harbor. This massive work was conceived and executed by M. Auguste F. Bartholdi, of Paris, France, and was presented by the French nation to the people of the United States. The first steps toward its construction were taken in 1874, when the French-American Union was established, a banquet given, and an appeal made to the people of France. In 1876 M. Bartholdi had begun his great work, and with extended right arm of the statue—the first part that was completed—came to America and placed it with the torch in the Centennial Exhibition at Philadelphia, whence it was subsequently removed to Madison Square, New York. In February, 1877, Congress set apart Bedloe's Island for the statue, and a committee was chosen, with William M. Evarts at its head, to make preparations for receiving the great work.

The statue weighs 450,000 pounds, or 225 tons. The bronze alone weighs 200,000 pounds. Forty persons can stand comfortably in the head, and the torch will hold twelve people.

The total number of steps in the temporary staircase, which leads from the base of the foundation to the top of the torch is 403. From the ground to the top of the pedestal, 195 steps. The number of steps in the statue from the pedestal to the head is 154, and the ladder leading up through the extended right arm to the torch has 54 rounds. The cost of the statue was estimated at $250,000; the cost of the pedestal and the erection of the statue, $350,000. Total cost of the work completed and in place, $600,000.

President Cleveland's Marriage.

A social event of great interest during the administration of President Cleveland was his marriage at the White House, on the second of June, 1886, to Miss Frances Folsom, of Buffalo, New York, who was educated at Well's College, and who, just previously to her marriage, had made the tour of Europe. At seven o'clock in the evening the wedding guests assembled in the Blue Room. Owing to the President's desire that the affair should be as private as possible, the Diplomatic Corps had not been invited.

The guests placed themselves in the form of a semicircle, Mr. Bayard being at the extreme left and Rev. Mr. Cleveland at the extreme right.

The Marine Band, which was stationed in the ante-room, gave forth the dulcet strains of the perennial wedding-march of Mendelssohn as the Rev. Dr. Sunderland took his position at the south end of the room,

and immediately after the bridal party entered. The bearing of the couple was dignified and impressive. They were followed by the few guests who were closely related to the contracting parties.

The reverend doctor then performed the marriage ceremony in a manner at once solemn and impressive, the bride and groom making their responses in clear tones. The ring was then passed and placed on the bride's finger, and the two were pronounced man and wife. The following benediction was spoken by the Rev. Mr. Cleveland, brother of the President:

MRS. FRANCES FOLSOM-CLEVELAND.

"God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Ghost, bless, preserve and keep you; the Lord mercifully fill you with all temporal and all spiritual blessings, and grant that you may so live together in this world that in the world to come you may have life everlasting. Amen."

Ex-President Chester A. Arthur died November 18, 1886, aged fifty-six years.

In his message of December, 1886, President Cleveland made special reference to the statutes granting and regulating pensions. This was done, doubtless, in part to answer criticisms upon his many vetoes of bills passed which granted pensions to disabled soldiers and their families. He says:

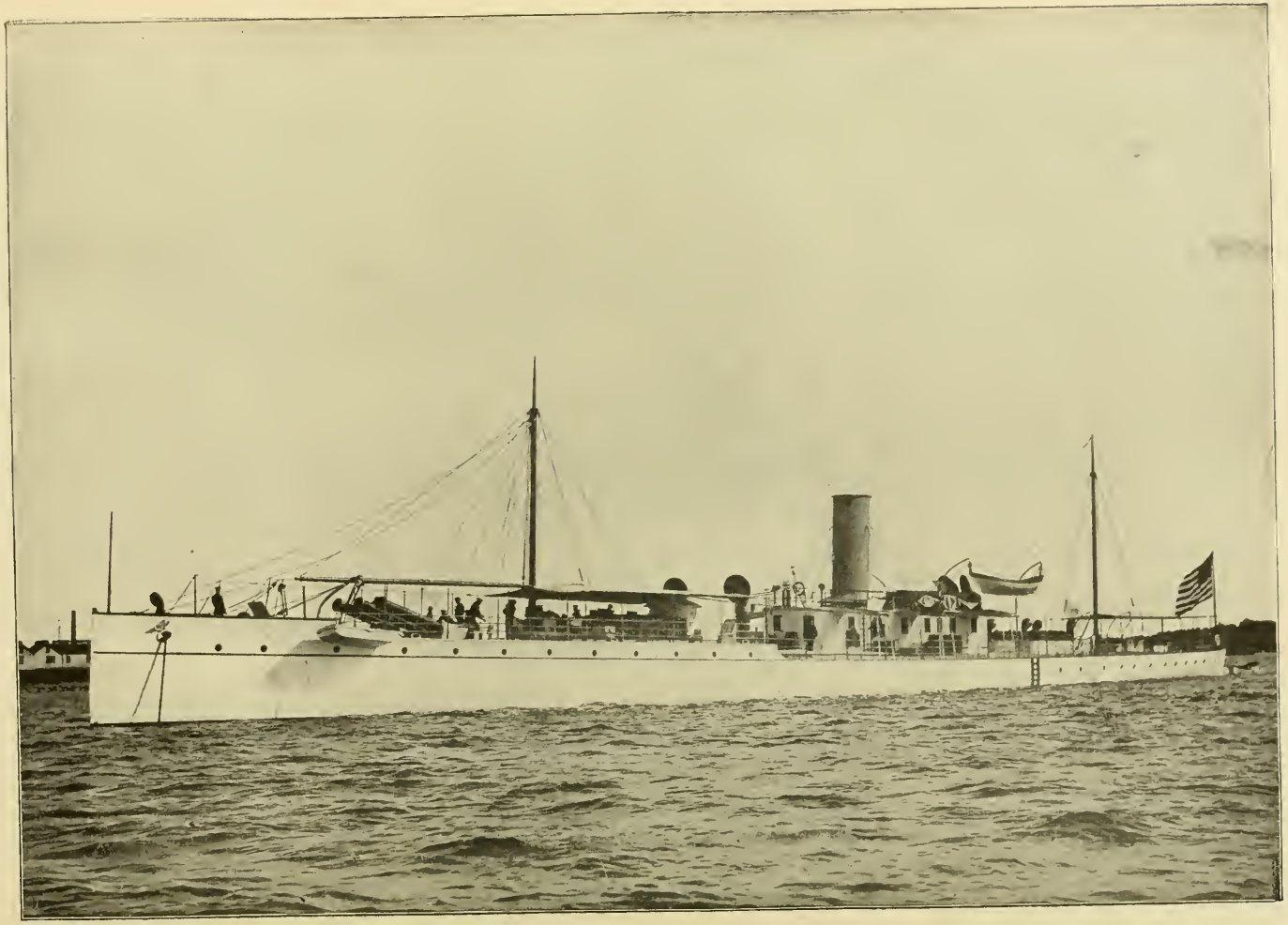
"The usefulness and the justice of any system for the distribution of pensions depend upon the equality and uniformity of its operation. It will be seen from the report of the Commissioner that there are now paid by the government one hundred and thirty-one different rates of pension.

"He estimates from the best information he can obtain that nine thousand of those who have served in the army and navy of the United States are now supported, in whole or in part, from public funds or by organized charities, exclusive of those in soldiers' homes under the direction and control of the government. Only thirteen per cent. of these are pensioners, while of the entire number of men furnished for the late war something like twenty per cent., including their widows and relatives, have been or are now in the receipt of pensions.

U. S. RAM KATAHDIN

U. S. BATTLESHIP OREGON

U. S. BATTLESHIP TEXAS



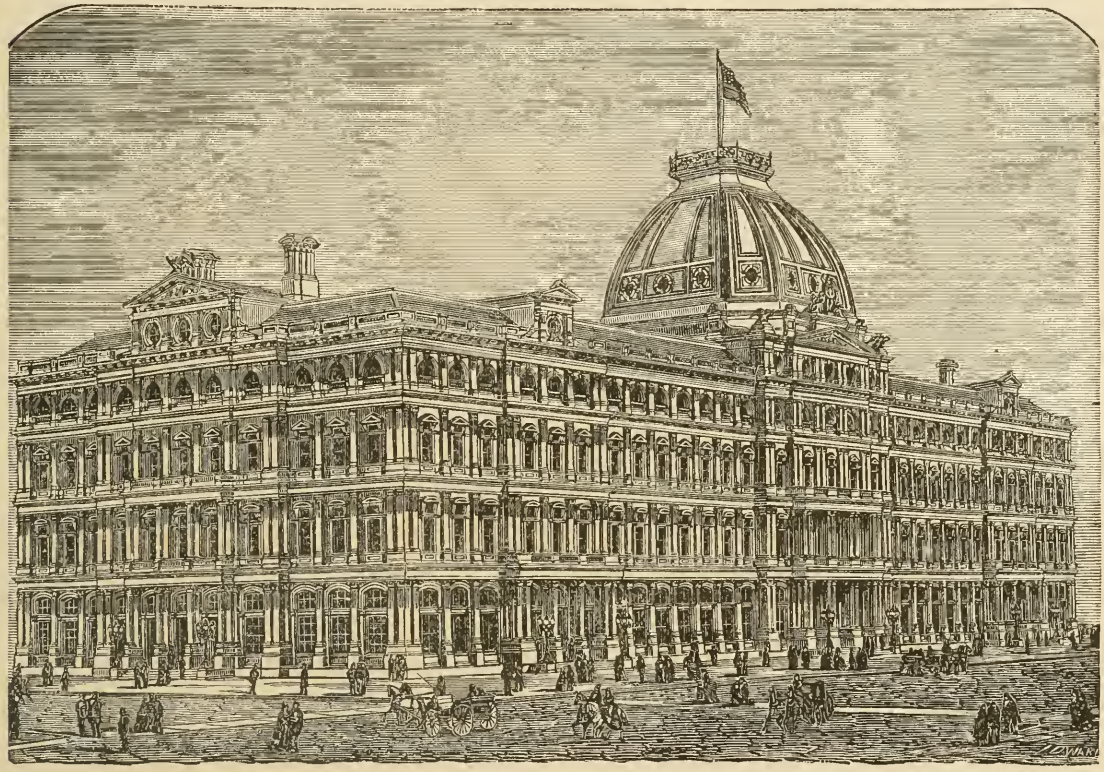
U. S. DYNAMITE CRUISER VESUVIUS

"The American people, with a patriotic and grateful regard for our ex-soldiers—too broad and too sacred to be monopolized by any special advocates—are not only willing but anxious that equal and exact justice should be done to all honest claimants for pensions. In their sight the friendless and destitute soldier, dependent on public charity, if otherwise entitled, has precisely the same right to share in the provision made for those who fought their country's battles as those better able, through friends and influence, to push their claims.

"Every pension that is granted under our present plan upon any other grounds than actual service and injury or disease incurred in such service, and every instance of the many in which pensions are increased on other grounds than the merits of the claim, work an injustice to the brave and crippled, but poor and friendless soldier, who is entirely neglected or who must be content with the smallest sum allowed under general laws."

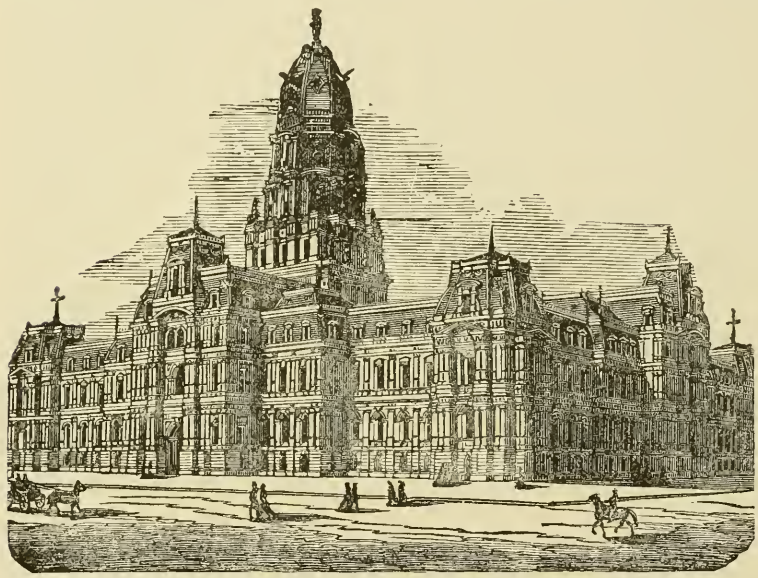
In the same message occurred a further discussion of the labor question as follows:

"The relations of labor to capital and of laboring men to their employers, are of the utmost concern to every patriotic citizen. When these are strained and distorted, unjustifiable claims are apt to be insisted upon by both interests, and in the controversy which results, the welfare of all and the prosperity of the country are jeopardized. Any intervention of the General Government, within the limits of its constitutional authority, to avert such a condition, should be willingly accorded.



THE NEW POST OFFICE BUILDING, PHILADELPHIA.

"In a special message transmitted to the Congress at its last session, I suggested the enlargement of our present Labor Bureau, and adding to its present functions the power of arbitration in cases where differences arise between employer and employed. When these differences reach such a stage as to result in the interruption of commerce between the States, the application of this remedy by the General Government might be regarded as entirely within its constitutional powers.



THE NEW CITY HALL, PHILADELPHIA.

"And I think we might reasonably hope that such arbitrators, if carefully selected and if entitled to the confidence of the parties to be affected, would be voluntarily called to the settlement of controversies of less extent and not necessarily within the domain of Federal regulation.

"I am of the opinion that this suggestion is worthy the attention of the Congress.

"But after all has been done by the passage of laws either Federal or State to relieve a situation full of solicitude, much more remains to be accomplished by the reinstatement and cultivation of a true American sentiment which recognizes the equality of American citizenship. This, in the light of our traditions and in loyalty to the spirit of our institutions, would teach that a hearty co-operation on the part of all interests is the surest path to national greatness and the happiness of all our people, that capital should, in recognition of the brotherhood of our citizenship and in a spirit of American fairness, generously accord to labor its just compensation and consideration, and that contented labor is capital's best protection and faithful ally. It would teach, too, that the diverse situations of our people are inseparable from our civilization, that every citizen should, in his sphere, be a contributor to the general good, that capital does not necessarily tend to the oppression of labor, and that violent disturbances and disorders alienate from their promoters true American sympathy and kindly feeling."

In September, of 1887, the centennial anniversary of the adoption and promulgation of the United States Constitution was celebrated in Philadelphia. The celebration occupied the three days—Thursday, Friday and Saturday, September fifteenth, sixteenth and seventeenth. On the fifteenth there was a grand industrial display under the general direction of Colonel A. Louden Snowden, which was seven hours in passing a given point, and was by far the largest exhibition of the sort ever made in America.

On Friday, the sixteenth, there was a military parade, composed of United States regular troops, United States marines, Girard

College cadets and companies of State militia from over half the States in the Union. Fifteen thousand men were in line, the governors of States riding at the head of their several State troops, the whole under the command of Lieutenant-General Phillip H. Sheridan. It was reviewed by the President in Independence Square, at which President Cleveland presided, the opening and closing prayers being made by Bishop Potter of New York and Cardinal Gibbons of Baltimore, respectively. There were addresses by President Cleveland and President Kasson, of the Constitutional Celebration Committee, and

STEAMSHIP DOCKS ON THE DELAWARE RIVER, PHILADELPHIA.

of the United States. Stands had been erected along Broad street from Wharton to Dauphin streets, and on Market and Chestnut streets from Broad to Fifth streets, and they were filled with tier upon tier of enthusiastic thousands, the whole forming one of the grandest military spectacles of the century.

On Saturday there were public exercises the oration was given by Associate Justice Samuel F. Miller, of the United States Supreme Court.

Hon. Roscoe Conkling, ex-United States Senator of New York, died April 18, 1888, aged fifty-nine. Hon. Morrison R. Waite, Chief Justice of the United States Supreme Court, died March 23, 1888, aged seventy-two years.

At St. Louis, June 5, 1888, the Democratic National Convention was held for the purpose of nominating candidates for the offices of President and Vice-President. When the convention was called to order the scene was an inspiring one. Back of the delegates rose tier after tier of spectators, a vast, undulating sea of heads and faces. In the galleries the bright ribbons of the ladies and the highly-colored fans fluttered among the red, white and blue, the silver stars and the graceful folds of bunting. The morning was close and muggy and threatened rain, but when

ALLEN G. THURMAN.

Chairman Barnum, of the Democratic National Committee, and Secretary Frederick O. Prince came upon the platform the sun burst through the clouds, and through the windows of the convention hall as well.

President Grover Cleveland, of New York, was unanimously nominated for the office of President of the United States, and Allen G. Thurman, of Ohio, for the office of Vice-President; after which the convention adjourned on June 7. The meetings of the convention were attended by scenes of excitement and enthusiasm, which indicated complete harmony in the Democratic party, resolute determination to make the approaching campaign one of great vigor, and hope of success at the general election to be held in November.

The Republican National Convention, held at Chicago from the nineteenth to the twenty-fifth of June, 1888, nominated the Hon. Benjamin Harrison, of Indiana, for the office of President.

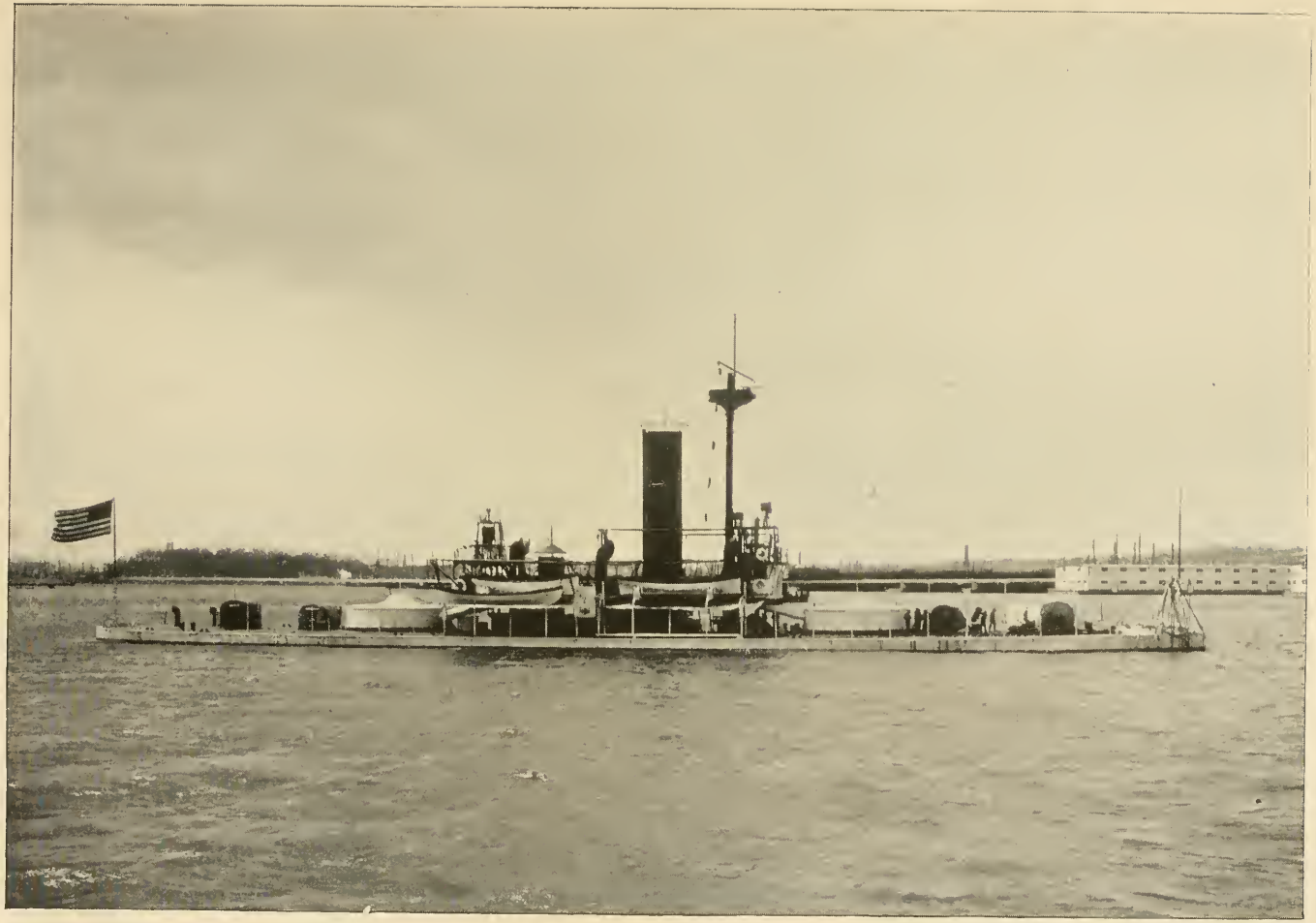
Previous to the assembling of the convention, and even during its early sessions, Mr. Harrison was not so prominently named for the nomination as several others. Sherman, of Ohio; Gresham, of Illinois; Alger, of Michigan, and that distinguished leader of the Republican party, James G. Blaine, had their respective enthusiactic following. The nomination was given to Mr. Harrison after a long and patient effort to secure the best man for the high honor of leading the Republican hosts.

Nomination of Benjamin Harrison.

When the convention, on the eighth ballot, declared in favor of Harrison, the decision was hailed with universal delight. Although the friends of other candidates had worked with great zeal to secure the prize for their favorites, there was a hearty acquiesence in the final decision, the choice was made unanimous, the building shook with hearty plaudits, great waves of excitement swept over the vast audience, and the scene was one never to be forgotten by those who witnessed it. At once all differences among the delegates were harmonized, and they prepared to push the canvass with vigor up to the day of decision in November.

Hon. Levi P. Morton, of New York, was nominated for the office of Vice President.

On the twentieth of July, 1888, the nomination of Melville W. Fuller, of Illinois, as Chief Justice of the United States Supreme Court, was confirmed by the Senate, and on



MONITOR MIANTONOMOH

U. S. BATTLESHIP IOWA

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY WILLIAM H. RAU

the fourteenth of August General John M. Scofield was appointed to command the army of the United States.

General Philip H. Sheridan, the distinguished cavalry commander, died August 5, 1888, aged fifty-seven years.

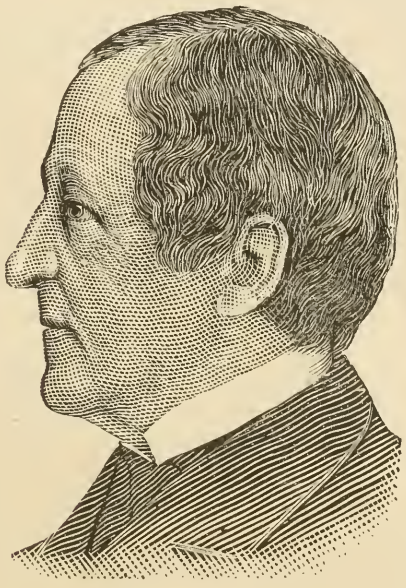
In October occurred an incident which resulted in the recall by the British Government of its Minister at Washington. On the thirtieth Lord Sackville-West was notified by Secretary Bayard that his presence in this country in a diplomatic capacity was no longer desired by the United States. This action was taken because of the publication of a letter from Minister West to a mythical personage named Murchison, in which he advised support of Cleveland for President because he was favorable to British interests.

Result of the Election.

On the sixth of November the election was held, which resulted in a victory for the Republican party, the States voting as they did at the election four years before, with the exception of New York and Indiana, which gave their votes to Benjamin Harrison.

The first session of the Fiftieth Congress was the longest continuous session ever held, having lasted 321 days, ending October twentieth. In the Senate 3,641 bills and 116 joint resolutions were introduced; in the House, 11,598 bills and 230 joint resolutions—a grand total of 15,585 measures. President Cleveland's message calling attention to the surplus and recommending a revision of the tariff forced a discussion of that economic question which extended through and prolonged the session.

What became known as the Mills bill was reported to the House, and passed July twenty-first. A substitute measure known as the Senate bill was reported to the Senate



LEVI P. MORTON.

October fourth and debated, but no action was taken thereon. So much time was occupied by the tariff debate and other discussions brought about for effect on the Presidential election that there was very little important legislation. About 1,200 bills were passed, of which 800 were private pension bills.

CHAPTER XLVIII

The Administration of Benjamin Harrison

Inauguration of President Harrison—Imposing Scene at Washington—Vast Assembly—Civic and Military Parade—President Harrison's Inaugural Address—Celebration of the Centennial Anniversary of Washington's Inauguration—Fine Naval Parade—Religious and Literary Exercises—Military Display—President Harrison at the Banquet—The President's Address—The New Cabinet—Terrible Calamity at Johnstown—Admission of New States—President's Message to the Fifty-first Congress—Legislation of the First Session of the Fifty-first Congress—The New Tariff Law—Indian War in the Northwest—Death of Sitting Bull—Restriction of Immigration—Mob Law in New Orleans—Trouble with Chile—Political Conventions of 1892—Labor Contest at Homestead—Defeat of the Bland Silver Bill.

THERE was an imposing demonstration at Washington on the occasion of President Harrison's inauguration, March 4, 1889. A vast concourse of people assembled from all parts of the country, and the civic and military display surpassed all pageantries ever before witnessed at the capital.

President Harrison's inaugural address, while recommending some important measures, was regarded as conservative in its tone, and served to inspire confidence in the new administration.

The address traced the necessary growth of tariff legislation. This legislation was adopted in the early history of the nation.

"Societies for the promotion of home manufactures and for encouraging the use of domestics in the dress of the people were organized in many of the States. The revival at the end of the century of the same patriotic interest in the preservation and development of domestic industries, and the defence of our working people against injurious foreign competition, is an incident worthy of attention. It is not a departure, but a return that we have witnessed. The protective policy had then its opponents. The argument was made, as now, that its benefits inured to particular classes or sections."

Continuing, the President said: "I look hopefully to the continuance of our protective system and to the consequent development of manufacturing and mining enterprises in the States hitherto wholly given to agriculture, as a potent influence in the perfect unification of our people. The men who have invested their capital in these enterprises, the farmers who have felt the benefit of their neighborhood, and the men who work in shop or field will not fail to find and to defend a community of interest."

The President gave some timely suggestions respecting the formation of trusts and the evils which are likely to attend them. Among other things he said: "The evil example of permitting individuals, corporations or communities to nullify the laws because they cross some selfish or local interest or prejudices is full of danger, not only to the nation at large, but much more to those who use this pernicious expedient to escape their just obligations or to obtain an unjust advantage over others. They will presently themselves be compelled to appeal to the law for protection and those who would use the law as a defense must not deny that use of it to others.

"If our great corporations would more scrupulously observe their legal limitations and duties, they would have less cause to

complain of the unlawful limitations of their rights or of violent interference with their operations. The community that by concert, open or secret, among its citizens denies to a portion of its members their plain rights under the law, has severed the only safe bond of social order and prosperity. The evil works, from a bad centre, both ways. It demoralizes those who practice it, and destroys the faith of those who suffer by it in the efficiency of the law as a safe protector. The man in whose breast that faith has been darkened is naturally the subject of dangerous uncanny suggestions. Those who use unlawful methods, if moved by no higher motive than the selfishness that prompted them, may well stop to inquire what is to be the end of this."

The President also recommended that our naturalization laws be so amended as to exclude the worst class of immigrants. "We should not cease to be hospitable to immigration, but we should cease to be careless as to the character of it."

The address recommended that care be exercised to maintain friendly relations with the other nations of the globe, but not at the expense of our own interests.

A strong navy for the protection of the United States was urged as a prime consideration, with such appropriations as would be needed to build and equip a fleet of war vessels capable of defending our coasts and upholding the dignity of our flag.

The reform of the civil service, the admission of new States, the freedom of the ballot and the safeguards needed to give efficacy to our election laws, were topics discussed by the address in a timely, patriotic manner.

The new cabinet was constituted as follows: Secretary of State, James G. Blaine, Maine (resigned), succeeded by John W. Foster, Indiana; Secretary of the Treasury, William Windom, Minnesota (deceased), succeeded by Charles Foster, Ohio; Secretary of War, Redfield Proctor, Vermont (resigned), succeeded by Stephen B. Elkins, West Virginia; Secretary of the Navy, Benjamin F. Tracy, New York; Secretary of the Interior, John W. Noble, Missouri; Post-master-General, John Wanamaker, Pennsylvania;

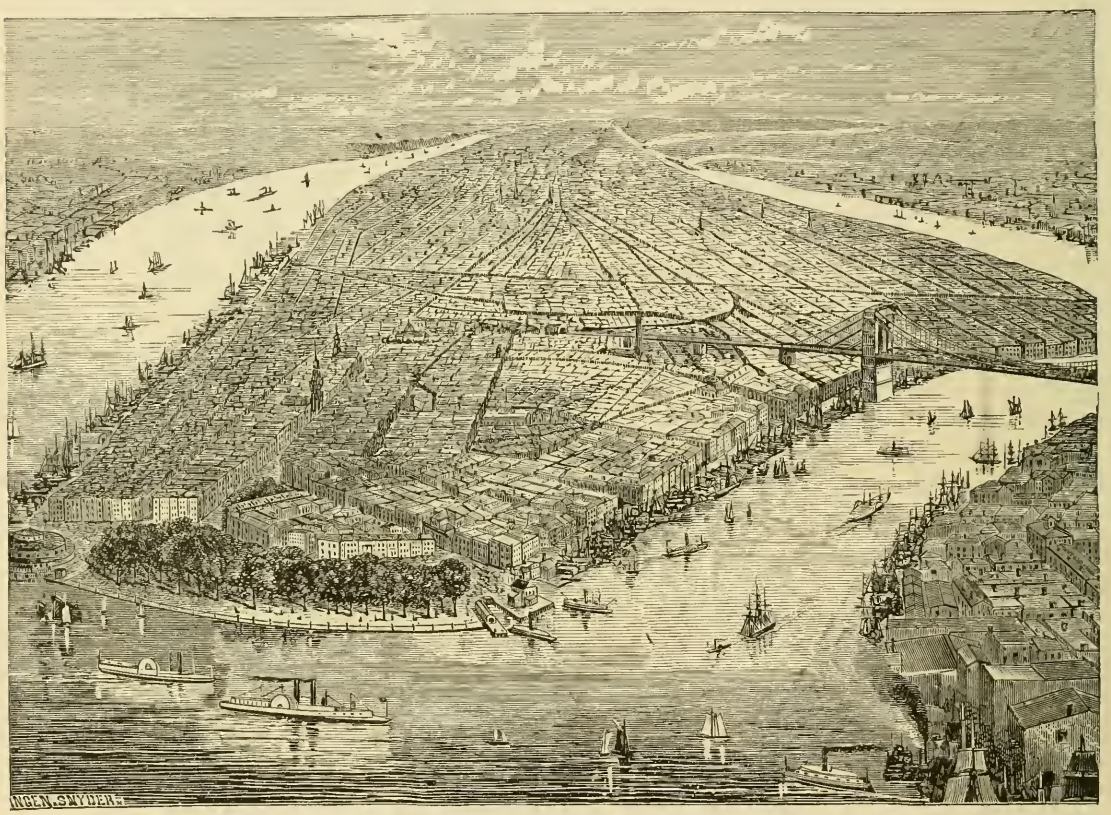
BENJAMIN HARRISON.

Secretary of Agriculture, Jeremiah M. Rusk, Wisconsin; Attorney-General, William H. H. Miller, Indiana.

On the thirtieth of April, 1889, the Centennial Anniversary of Washington's Inauguration was celebrated in New York city. On the morning of the twenty-ninth, President Harrison was received in New York harbor with a naval parade, which comprised

The religious exercises comprised a prayer by Rev. R. S. Storrs, D. D., LL. D., and a sermon by Bishop Potter, of New York. The literary exercises comprised a poem written for the occasion by John Greenleaf Whittier, and an oration by Hon. Chauncey Depew.

At a banquet in the evening, President Harrison spoke as follows:



BIRD'S-EYE VIEW OF NEW YORK CITY.

ships of the navy, steamboats, and a large number of vessels belonging to the merchant marine. On the thirtieth, religious and literary exercises were held, and these were followed by a fine military parade, comprising regiments from the regular army and militia from a number of States. On a stand erected at Madison Square, President Harrison and several cabinet officers reviewed the parade.

"The occasion and all its incidents will be memorable, not only in the history of your city, but in the history of our country. New York did not succeed in retaining the seat of national government here, though she made liberal provision for the assembling of the first Congress in the expectation that Congress might find its permanent home here. But though you lost that which you coveted,

I think the representatives here of all the States will agree that it was fortunate that the first inauguration of Washington took place in the State and city of New York.

"For where in our country could the centennial of the event have been so worthily celebrated as here? What seaboard offered so magnificent a bay, on which to display our merchant and naval marine? What city offered thoroughfares so magnificent or a people so great or so generous as New York has poured out to-day to celebrate that event?

"I congratulate you to-day, as one of the instructive and interesting features of this occasion, that these great thoroughfares dedicated to trade have closed their doors and covered up the insignia of commerce; that your great exchanges have closed and your citizens given themselves up to the observance of the celebration in which we are participating.

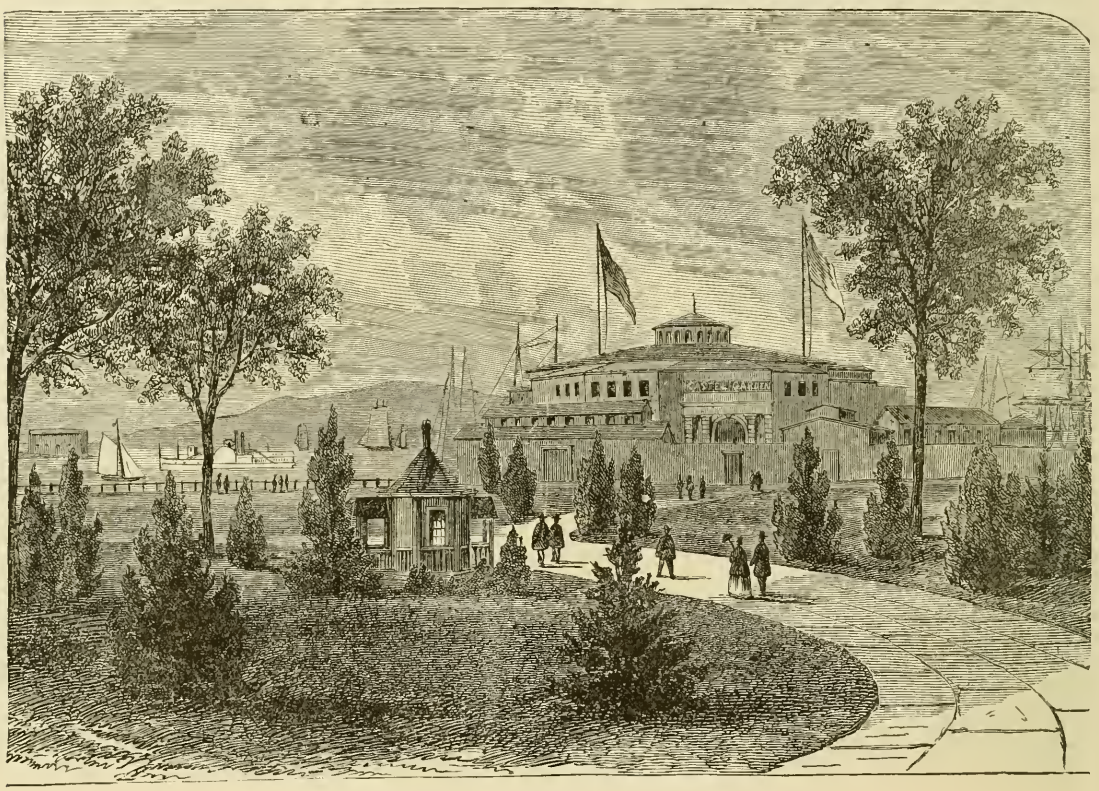
"I believe that patriotism has been intensified in many hearts by what we have witnessed to-day. I believe that patriotism has been placed into a higher and holier fane in many hearts. The bunting with which you have covered your walls, these patriotic inscriptions, must go down, and the wage and trade be resumed again.

"Here may I not ask you to carry those inscriptions that now hang on the walls into you homes, into the schools of your city, into all your great institutions where children are gathered, and teach them that the eye of the young and old should look upon that

THE POST OFFICE, NEW YORK.

flag as one of the familiar glories of every American.

"Have we not learned that no stocks and bonds nor land is our country? It is a spiritual thought that is in our minds; it is the fireside and the home; it is the flag and what it stands for; it is the thoughts that are in our hearts; born of the inspiration which comes with the story of the flag of martyrs to liberty; it is the graveyard into which a common country has gathered the unconscious deeds of those who died that the thing might live which we love and call our country, rather than anything that can be touched or seen."



THE BATTERY AND CASTLE GARDEN, NEW YORK.

On the advent of summer, June first, the country was horror-stricken by the announcement that a terrible calamity had overtaken the inhabitants of Johnstown, Pennsylvania, and the neighboring villages on the preceding day. Instantly the whole land was stirred by the startling news of this great disaster. Its appalling magnitude, its dreadful suddenness, its scenes of terror and agony, the fate of thousands swept to instant death by a flood as frightful as that of the cataract of Niagara, awakened the profoundest horror. No calamity in the history of modern times so appalled the civilized world.

The South Forks dam, situated a few miles above the city of Johnstown, suddenly gave way, precipitating an immense body of water into the valley below. The impetuous torrent swept downward with frightful velocity, overturning trees, carrying with it barns, houses, fences and vast accumulations of

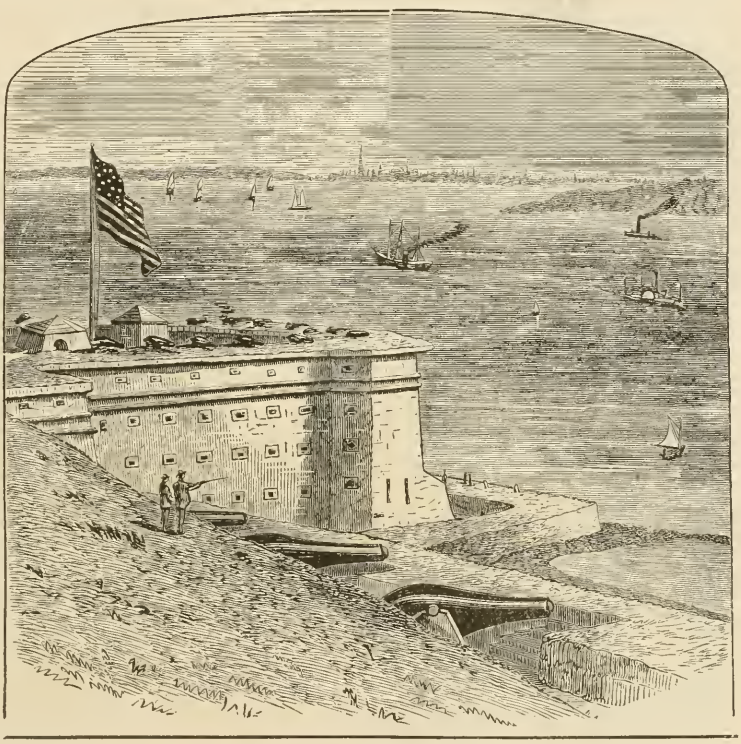
debris. People fled in terror to save their lives, but were overtaken by the rushing torrent. The destruction to life and property was appalling.

The greatest damage occurred at Johnstown, a large part of the dwellings being swept away, transforming a flourishing manufacturing town of twelve thousand persons into a scene of utter desolation. The story of this great disaster is replete with thrilling incidents, narrow escapes from death, the rending asunder of families, the loss of husbands, wives and children, and in many instances the obliteration of entire households. It was estimated that upwards of four thousand persons perished.

Profound sympathy throughout the world was awakened for the surviving sufferers, and immense sums of money and contributions of clothing were sent to the scene of the disaster.

On the twenty-second of February, 1889, an act was passed by Congress admitting the following Territories into the Union as States: North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, and Washington. President Harrison issued his proclamations by which the admission of these Territories took effect during the same year, that of the two Dakotas on November 2, that of Montana on November 8, and that of Washington on November 11. The addition of so many States in one year was styled by the President "an event as unexampled as it is interesting."

The message of the President, sent to the Fifty-first Congress at the beginning of its first session, made reference to the conference held during the year of the representatives of all the independent States of North and South America for the purpose of perpetuating and expanding the relations of mutual interest and friendliness existing among them. While it was hoped commercial results would follow, the crowning benefit would be found in the better securities that would be devised for the maintenance of peace among all American nations, and the settlement of all contentions by the methods of Christian civilization.

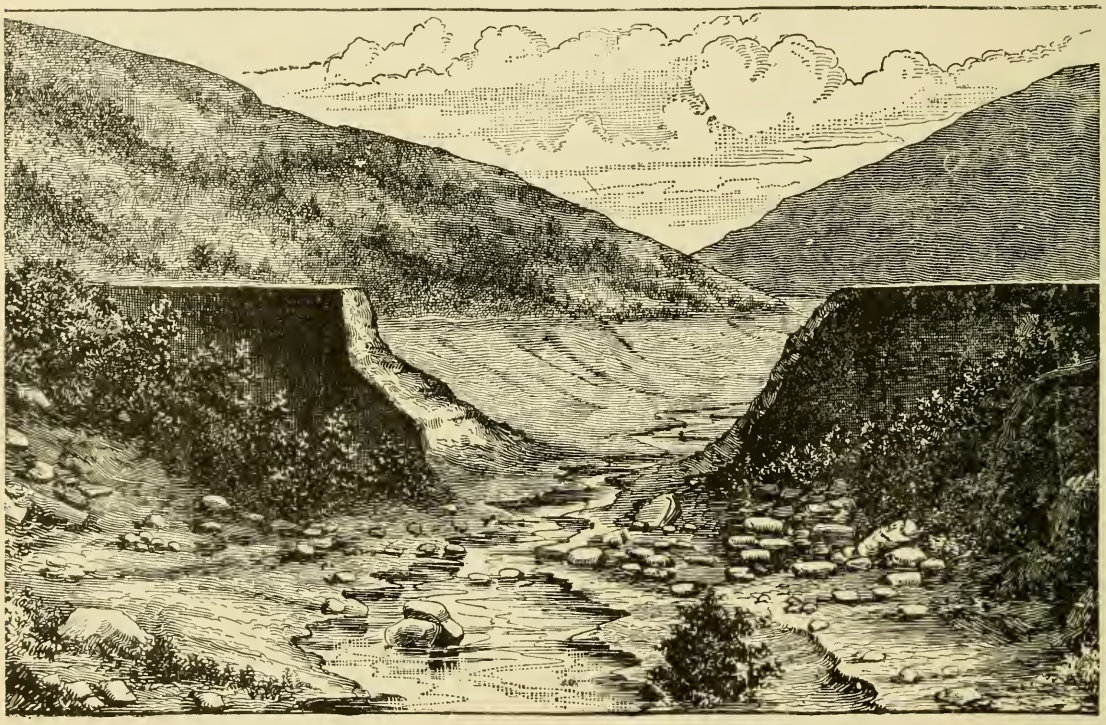


HARBOR OF NEW YORK.

The message also called attention to the international conference at Washington to adopt a uniform system of marine signals and to amend the rules and regulations governing vessels at sea. The foregoing conferences brought together the accredited representatives of thirty-three nations.

The President then discussed the question of Chinese immigration. After calling attention to the fact that previous legislation had failed, he continued: "While our supreme interests demand the exclusion of a laboring element, which experience has shown to be incompatible with our social life, all steps to compass this imperative need should be accompanied with a recognition of the claim of those strangers now lawfully among us to humane and just treatment."

cities against foreign attack, the improvement of rivers and harbors, how far "trusts" should be brought under Federal jurisdiction, the revision of our naturalization laws, the allotment of lands to the Indians and such legislation as was required for the protection of these wards of the nation in their lawful rights and of the white settlers on our frontiers. The message dealt largely with the subject of pensions for our ex-soldiers, and urged that, with due regard to the public



THE BREAK IN THE SOUTH FORKS DAM, JOHNSTOWN, PA.

The message took strong ground upon the question of protection to American industries. A new schedule of customs duties was recommended. "The inequalities of the law should be adjusted, but the protective principle should be maintained and fairly applied to the products of our farms as well as of our shops."

Other subjects discussed in the message were silver coinage, provision for our coast treasury, Congress should meet every just claim on the part of those who made heroic sacrifices in the hour of the nation's peril.

The foregoing were the most important subjects treated by the President, all of which were discussed with marked ability and with a breadth of view which impressed the country with his statesmanlike sagacity.

For many years the Louisiana State Lottery carried on its operations in defiance of

the moral sentiment of the country. Both Houses of Congress finally passed, without a division, an act forbidding the use of the United States mails by any person or company engaged in conducting any lottery, gift enterprise, or any scheme for obtaining money by false and fraudulent pretenses. The passage of this act resulted in the suppression of the Louisiana Lottery.

An act was also passed declaring to be illegal every contract, combination in the form of trust or conspiracy in restraint of trade or commerce among the several States, or with foreign nations. This act passed both Houses of Congress without a division. Its aim was to check the growing evils of trusts and all combinations of capital whereby a restriction is put upon the manufacture and sale of commodities which constitute the necessaries of life.

Increasing the Navy.

President Harrison's administration was also signalized by important legislation affecting the Navy. Provision was made for the construction of three sea-going coast-line battle ships, to carry the heaviest armor and ordnance, the cost not to exceed $4,000,000 each; one protected cruiser, to have a maximum speed of 21 knots, and to cost not more than $2,750,000; one swift torpedo cruiser, to have a maximum speed of not less than 23 knots; and one torpedo boat.

Acts were passed admitting the Territories of Idaho and Wyoming as States into the Union, the act admitting Idaho being approved July 3, and that admitting Wyoming July 10, 1890.

By a vote of 29 to 5 in the Senate, and a vote of 119 to 93 in the House of Representatives, Congress passed an act providing that "All fermented, distilled or other intoxicating liquors or liquids transported into any State or Territory remaining therein for use, consumption, sale or storage therein, shall, upon arrival in such State or Territory, be subject to the operation and effect of the laws of such State or Territory enacted in the exercise of its police powers, to the same extent and in the same manner as though such liquids or liquors had been produced in such State or Territory, and shall not be exempt therefrom by reason of being introduced therein in original packages or otherwise."

The act was approved August 8, 1890,

WILLIAM M KINLEY.

and was occasioned by a decision of the United States Supreme Court (three judges dissenting) that brewers in Illinois had the right to import into Iowa beer, and to sell it in original packages without regard to the law of Iowa. Congress took up the matter promptly and provided ample legislation for the enforcement by the various States of their laws relating to the traffic in liquors.

On the twenty-fifth of April, 1890, Congress passed an act relating to the Columbian Exposition at Chicago. The act provides for an exhibition of arts, industries, manufactures, products of the soil, mine

and sea, in 1893, in Chicago, Illinois, in celebration of the four hundredth anniversary of the discovery of America by Christopher Columbus. A commission of two persons from each State and Territory to be appointed by the President on the nomination of the Governors, and of eight commissioners at large and two from the District of Columbia, to be appointed by the President, in all which there shall be one from each of the two leading political parties—with alternates—shall be the World's Columbian Commission, with

CHARLES F. CRISP.

power to accept the site, etc., on condition of their being satisfied that $10,000,000 are secured for the complete preparation for said Exposition. The Commission is required to appoint a board of lady managers, who may appoint one or more members of all committees authorized to award prizes for exhibits which may be produced in whole or in part by female labor.

A naval review is directed to be held in New York harbor in April. 1893, and the President is authorized to extend to foreign nations an invitation to send ships of war to join the United States navy in rendevous at Hampton Roads and proceed thence to said review. The buildings shall be dedicated October 12, 1892, and the Exposition open not later than May 1, 1893, and closed not later than October 30, 1893. The Commission shall exist no longer than January 1, 1898. A government building for $400,000 shall be erected, to contain the government exhibits.

The United States shall not in any manner, nor under any circumstances, be liable for any of the acts, doings, proceedings or representations of the said corporation organized under the laws of the State of Illinois, its officers, agents, servants or employees, or any of them, or for the service, salaries, labor or wages of said officers, agents, servants, or employees, or any of them, or for any subscriptions to the capital stock, or for any certificates of stock, bonds, mortgages, or obligations of any kind issued by said corporation, or for any debts, liabilities or expenses of any kind whatever attending such corporation or accruing by reason of the same.

The foregoing were the main provisions of the act. On December 24, 1890, President Harrison issued a proclamation inviting the nations of the earth to take part in the Chicago Exposition of 1893.

The New Tariff Law.

One of the most important measures enacted during President Harrison's administration was the McKinley Tariff Bill. After a lengthy discussion the bill was passed by a party vote, the Republican party being pledged to the principle of protection. The act went into effect October 1, 1890, and in its practical workings was closely watched and universally discussed.

A remarkable political revolution swept over the country in the autumn of 1890,

which was considered largely due to the enactment of the McKinley Tariff Bill. In the Fifty-first Congress the House of Representatives contained one hundred and seventy-six Republicans and one hundred and fifty-five Democrats. In the Fifty-second Congress there were eighty-eight Republicans and two hundred and thirty-five Democrats. The House was organized by electing Charles F. Crisp, of Georgia, as Speaker.

In the autumn of 1890 troubles broke out afresh at the Indian agencies. The several tribes were seized with a peculiar craze, and began to perform the "ghost dance," which was supposed to indicate their belief in a coming Messiah who was about to appear.

It seems impossible to trace the exact origin of the Indian faith. An Indian from the upper Columbia River, named Smohalla, preached the doctrine of an Indian Messiah about the year 1880. This Indian taught that there would be an upheaval of nature, which would destroy the white man and restore to the Indian his ancestral remains, and that the dust of countless dead Indians would spring to life, and would surround without one word of warning each pale face, who would be swept from the face of the earth. None of the deadly weapons of civilization or skill in their use would avail,

SITTING BULL IN HIS WAR-DRESS.

and the blood of eighty millions of whites would atone for the wrongs done to the red race.

Within a few months the belief in this new religion spread from tribe to tribe with marvellous rapidity. Runners traversed thousands of miles to reach distant tribes and bear the glad tidings. The Arrapahoes, the Shoshones, the great Sioux tribes, the Cheyennes, both north and south, and many other tribes, were taught the faith; and the "ghost-dance," the religious ceremony of the creed, was danced by all these tribes.

CHIEF AMERICAN HORSE.

Possessed by these superstitious notions, these extraordinary beliefs, the powerful tribe of Sioux began and continued to perform their fantastic ghost-dances. Sitting-Bull, the old deadly foe of the white men, took advantage of the craze to inflame the anger of his people and prepare for deeds of blood.

The disquietude among the Sioux Indians resulting from Sitting-Bull's prophecy that a new Messiah was soon to appear to restore to the Indians the land taken from them by the pale-faces, and to bring back the buffalo, assumed such proportions that on the fourteenth of November the Interior Department transferred the control of the Indians of North Dakota, under orders of the President, to the War Department, and General Miles, commanding the Department of the Missouri, was placed in control. Troops were ordered to be sent forward, and it was expected that within a short time there would be three thousand regulars massed in North Dakota. Sitting-Bull had about three thousand warriors, and it was the intention of the War Department to overawe the Indians by bringing against them an equal force of United States soldiers.

The Indian hostility to those of their number who were friendly to the United States Government showed itself in the attempted assassination of American Horse. This Indian was a prominent Sioux chief, and a friend of the United States. He was so regarded for years, and was always inclined to be peaceable and loyal. To nothing but the turbulent, hostile and disaffected spirit of the Indians can be attributed the attempt to murder him. They were seemingly angry because American Horse opposed

the turbulent spirit manifested by the Indians.

On the seventh of December some of the hostile chiefs from the Bad Lands appeared at the Pine Ridge agency to hold a conference with General Brooke. They came bearing a flag of truce and armed with Winchester and Springfield rifles. The entrance of the novel procession created great excitement. First came the chiefs, who were Turning Bear, Big Turkey, High Pine, Big Bad Horse and Bull Dog, who was one of the leaders in the Custer massacre. Next came Two Strike, the head chief, seated in a buggy with Father Jule, a priest who induced the chiefs to take this step. Surrounding these was a body guard of four young warriors.

All the Indians were decorated with war paint and feathers, while many wore ghost-dance leggings and the ghost-dance shirt dangling at their saddles. The warlike cavalcade proceeded at once to General Brooke's spacious headquarters in the agency residence. At a given signal all leaped to the ground, hitched their ponies and, guided by Father Jule, entered the General's apartments, where the council was held, lasting two hours.

At the beginning of the pow-wow General Brooke explained that the Great Father, through him, asked them to come in and have a talk regarding the situation. A great deal of misunderstanding and trouble had arisen by the reports taken to and fro between the camps by irresponsible parties, and it was therefore considered very necessary that they have a talk face to face. Through him, he said, the Great Father wanted to tell them if they would come in near the agency, where he (General Brooke) could see them often, and not be compelled to depend on hearsay, that he would give them plenty to eat and would employ many of their young men as scouts, etc.

The soldiers did not come there to fight but to protect the settlers and keep peace.

GENERAL NELSON A. MILES.

He hoped they, the Indians, were all in favor of peace, as the Great Father did not want war. As to the feeling over the change in the boundary line between Pine Ridge and Rosebud Agency, he said that and many other things would be settled satisfactorily after they had shown a disposition to come in, as asked by the Great Father. Wounded Knee was suggested as a place that would prove satisfactory to the Great Father to have them live.

The representatives of the hostiles listened with contracted brows, sidelong glances at one another and low grunts. When the General had concluded his remarks, Turning Bear came forward and spoke in reply. He proved a most entertaining person. Simmered down to a few words, Turning Bear gave expression to the following ideas:

It would be a bad thing for them to come nearer the agency, because there was no water or grass for their horses here. He could not understand how their young men could be employed as scouts if there was no enemy to be watched. They would be glad to be employed and get paid for it. They might come in, but as the old men and old women have no horses, and as their people have nothing generally to pull their wagons, it would take them a long time to come. If they should come they would want the Great Father to send horses and wagons to the Bad Lands camp and bring in great quantities of beef, etc., they had there, and take it anywhere to a new camp that might be agreed on. In conclusion, the speaker hoped that they would be given something to eat before they started back.

CAPTAIN WALLACE FOUND AFTER THE WOUNDED KNEE FIGHT.

To this the general replied that they should be given food. As for horses and wagons being sent after the beef, the general said that and other things would be considered after they had acceded to the Great Father's request to move into the agency. Any reference whatever to the wholesale devastation and depredation, thieving and burning of buildings, etc., was studiously avoided on both sides. After the pow-wow was over the band was conducted to the quartermaster's department and there given a big feast. The squaws living at the agency came out in gala-day feathers and gave a squaw dance.

The conference amounted to nothing, and the trouble was no nearer a settlement than before.

Bloody Engagement with the Sioux.

The next news received was of a startling character. It was known that General Miles considered Sitting-Bull the chief instigator of the hostilities on the part of the Indians, yet no public notice had been given of his intention to have the crafty old warrior arrested. The Indian police, however, employed on the Pine Ridge reservation, were ordered to make the arrest. The chief was taken, and in the melée which followed an attempt to rescue him he was shot, together with his son and six braves, while four of his captors were slain.

The following is the dispatch announcing the capture:

FORT YATES, N. D., December 15, 1890.

"At daybreak this morning there was a desperate fight at the camp of the hostile Indians, forty miles northwest of Standing-Rock Agency, and before it could be quelled Sitting-Bull, his son, Crow Foot, and six other Indians were killed, besides four of the Indian police, while quite a number on both sides were wounded. The fight was the result of an attempt to arrest Sitting-Bull in order to prevent his departure for the Bad Lands.

"The Indian police were ordered early this morning to proceed to the camp and arrest the wily old chief, who it was known had arranged to make an early start for the Bad Lands, where he would be almost absolutely safe from arrest. The police were followed by a troop of cavalry in command of Captain Fechet and a company of infantry under Colonel Drum. When the police reached Sitting-Bull's camp on the Grand River, they found arrangements being made for the departure of the band, and without waiting for the soldiers to come up, at once placed the old chief under arrest and started back with him to the agency.

Efforts to Rescue the Chief.

"Scarcely had the officers gotten under way when the friends of the old Indian rallied to his rescue. They announced their determination to retake him, and a terrible fight ensued. The police were surrounded, and, though greatly outnumbered, they fought like demons and succeeded in holding their own against the redskins until the cavalry, attracted by the firing, came up on a quick run and succeeded in compelling the Indians either to fly or surrender.

"The fighting was of the hand-to-hand description, and is said to have been exceedingly savage. One of the Indian police jumped on Sitting-Bull's horse as soon as he saw the old man fall and rode back for the infantry, which arrived on the scene shortly after the cavalry had relieved the overmatched police. Then the Indians began to break away, and probably one hundred of the braves deserted their families and fled west, up the Grand River.

The Killed and Wounded.

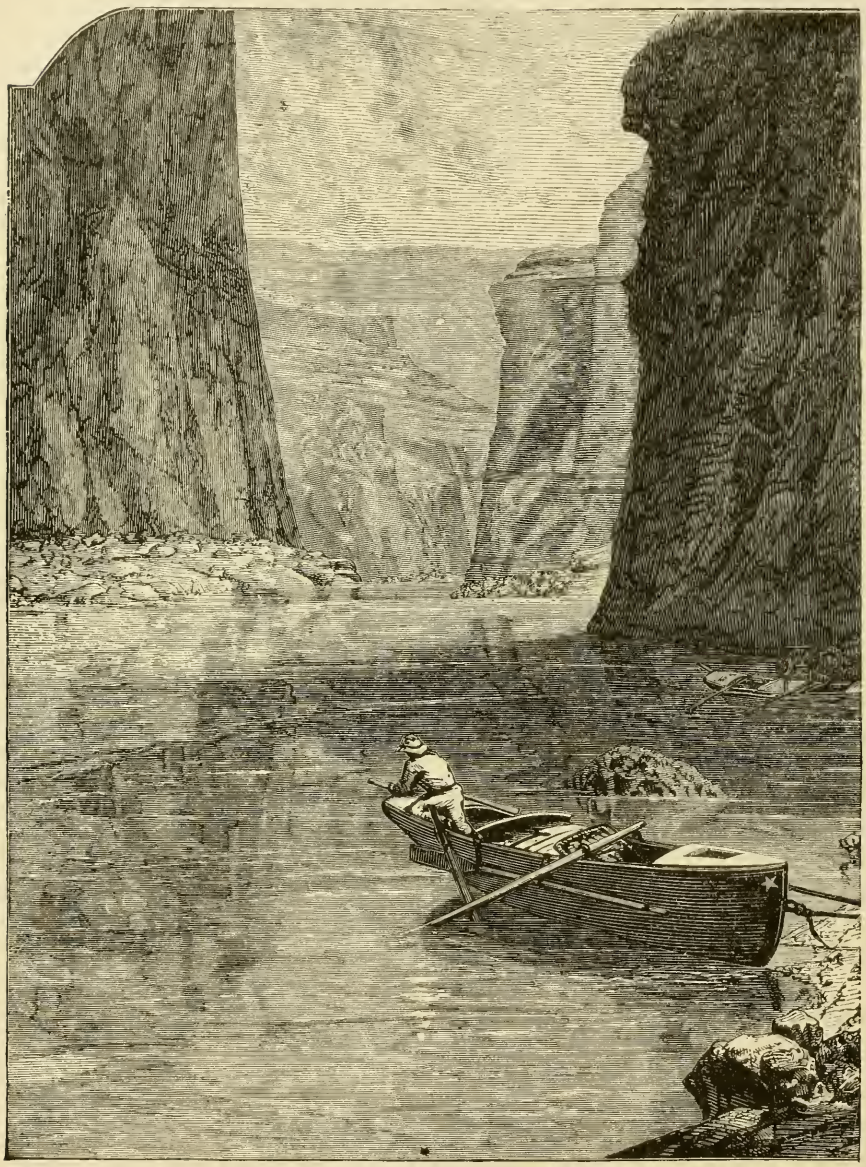
"When the smoke of battle had cleared away it was found that Sitting-Bull was dead, as also was his son, Crow Foot, and six braves. Four of the policemen, whose names could not be learned, were also dead, and three of them badly wounded. A number of the Indians were badly injured, but managed to escape on their ponies. Captain Wallace, commanding Troop K, of the Seventh Cavalry, was killed, and Lieutenant Garlington of the same regiment was shot in the arm."

After the death of Sitting-Bull his warriors saw the hopelessness of continuing the strife and surrendered, December twenty-second, to the United States troops.

General William Tecumseh Sherman died at New York City, February 14, 1891,

aged seventy-one years. The interment took place at St. Louis, with military honors.

Important action was taken by the fifty-first Congress on the question of immigration.



SCENE ON THE YELLOWSTONE RIVER.

The act of March 3, 1891, provides that the following, besides Chinese laborers, shall be excluded from admission into the United States, in accordance with the existing acts regulating immigration: "All idiots, insane persons, paupers, or persons likely to become a public charge, persons suffering from a loathsome disease or a dangerous contagious disease, those who have been convicted of a felony or other infamous crime or misdemeanor involving moral turpitude, polygamists, and also any person whose ticket or passage is paid for with the money of another or who is assisted by others to come, unless it is affirmatively and satisfactorily shown on special inquiry that such person does not belong to one of the foregoing excluded classes, or to the class of contract laborers excluded by the act of February 26, 1885, but this section shall not be held to exclude persons living in the United States from sending for a relative or friend who is not of the excluded classes under such regulations as the Secretary of the Treasury may prescribe: Provided, that

nothing in this act shall be construed to apply to or exclude persons convicted of a political offense, notwithstanding said political offense may be designated as a felony, crime, infamous crime, or misdemeanor, involving moral turpitude, by the laws of the land whence he came or by the court convicting."

Mob Law in New Orleans.

On March 14, 1891, eleven Italians, who had been accused of conspiracy and the murder of Chief of Police Hennessy, were lynched in New Orleans by an enormous mob, who broke open the jail. The Italian Government made a protest and demanded satisfaction from the United States. Dissatisfied with Mr. Blaine's reply, the Italian Minister to the United States was recalled. Our government finally paid indemnity for the lives lost at New Orleans, and referred all judicial action to the State Courts of Louisiana, thereby restoring peaceful relations with Italy.

The steamer "Itata," loading at San Diego, California, with arms and ammunition for the Chilean insurgents, was seized on May 6, 1891, by the United States Government. She sailed the following day with the United States deputy marshal on board. The warship "Charleston" was sent in pursuit, and the "Itata" was finally turned over to the United States officers in the harbor of Iquique, June fourth.

An International Copyright Law went into effect July 1, 1891, according to proclamation by President Harrison. The Governments of the United States, Great Britain, France, Belgium and Switzerland are parties to the same.

The Hon. James Russell Lowell, the distinguished author and plenipotentiary, died at Cambridge, Massachusetts, August 12, 1891, aged seventy-two years. The necrology of the year also included the deaths of the two eminent historians, George Bancroft, who died at Washington, January seventeenth, aged ninety, and John Benson Lossing, who died at Chestnut Ridge, New York, June third, aged seventy-eight.

The Chilean Affair.

On October 26, 1891, the United States demanded of Chile an explanation and reparation for the attacks in the streets of Valparaiso on American seamen on the sixteenth instant, and the subsequent action of the Chilean police. The affair caused much excitement throughout the country, and also indignation at what was considered a wanton act of cruelty and an insult to the American flag. President Harrison and his Cabinet took prompt action, a special message detailing the outrage was sent to Congress, and soon a satisfactory explanation and apology by Chile ended the unfortunate affair. On July nineteenth the Secretary of State announced that an entirely cordial and mutually satisfactory settlement had been reached between the government of the United States and Chile, respecting the indemnity to be paid by the latter on account of the assault upon the crew of the Baltimore. Seventy-five thousand dollars in gold were to be distributed among families of the two men who lost their lives and to the surviving members of the crew who were wounded.

On the seventh of June, 1892, the Republican Convention met at Minneapolis. The nomination of President Harrison had been considered a foregone conclusion up to June fourth, when the country was startled by the news that Secretary Blaine had resigned from President Harrison's Cabinet. A letter written by Mr. Blaine in the preceding February announced that under no consideration would he consent to be a candidate for the Presidency. This letter was very generally accepted in good faith, and there was a general

conviction that Mr. Blaine was entirely out of the race. It was known, however, that for some time before the Convention assembled, persistent efforts had been made by enemies of the administration to induce Mr. Blaine to reconsider his letter of February, and allow his name to be used at Minneapolis; and when he suddenly resigned from the Cabinet by a curt letter, and his resignation was accepted by President Harrison in a letter equally brief and barren of all complimentary expressions, it was commonly believed that the "Plumed Knight" had decided to seek the nomination.

President Harrison Renominated.

There was consequently great excitement preceding the organization of the Convention and during its progress. It became evident at once that there would be a hard contest between the two leading candidates. The States at their Conventions had strongly indorsed the administration of President Harrison, and many of the delegates had been instructed to vote for his renomination in the National Convention. His friends, after they recovered from the first shock which followed the announcement of Mr. Blaine's resignation, rallied bravely, and remained firm to the end.

Minneapolis was the scene of animated discussions and unique popular demonstrations. The loud huzzahs for Blaine showed that he had a strong hold upon the popular heart; but the thoughtful mass of delegates who were to decide the question remained true to the President, and worked diligently and wisely to secure his nomination.

The brilliant eloquence of Chauncey M. Depew, of New York, awakened an unparalleled scene of enthusiasm as he placed Mr. Harrison in nomination before the Convention. Mr. Blaine was nominated by Senator Wolcott, of Colorado.

When the vote was taken it was found to be as follows: Harrison, 535½; Blaine, 182½; McKinley, 182; Reed, of Maine, 4; Robert Lincoln, of Illinois, 1. On motion of Governor McKinley, of Ohio, who was chairman of the Convention, the nomination was made unanimous. The Hon. Whitelaw Reid, of New York, was nominated for the Vice-Presidency.

The platform which was adopted by the Convention was highly commended as a sound exposition of the great principles of the Republican party.

Ex-President Cleveland Nominated.

The National Democratic Convention of 1892 was held in Chicago June twenty-first to June twenty-third. It was conceded before the Convention assembled that ex-President Cleveland would again receive the nomination for the Presidency, and the result on the first ballot proved the prediction to have been correct.

The vote was as follows: For Mr. Cleveland, 616⅓; for Senator Hill, of New York, 112; for Governor Boies, of Iowa, 103; for Senator Gorman, of Maryland, 36½; for Hon. A. E. Stevenson, of Illinois, 16⅔; for Senator Carlisle, of Kentucky, 15; for William R. Morrison, of Illinois, 5; for ex-Governor Campbell, of Ohio, 2; for Governor Robert E. Pattison, of Pennylvania, 1; for Hon. William C. Whitney, of New York, 1; for Governor Russell, of Massachusetts, 1.

Ohio moved the rules be suspended and Mr. Cleveland made the nominee by acclamation. Governor Flower, of New York, seconded the motion to make the nomination unanimous. The motion to suspend rules and declare Mr. Cleveland nominee by acclamation was carried.

Hon. Adlai E. Stevenson, of Illinois, was nominated unanimously for the office of Vice-President.

"The People's Party of the United States" was formed at a convention at Cincinnati, May 4, 1891. The first National Convention was held in Omaha, Nebraska, July 1, 1892. On July fourth the nominations were made, resulting in the choice of General James B. Weaver as the nominee for President, and George Field, of Virginia, for Vice-President. The platform adopted demanded the free and unlimited coinage of silver, a graduated income tax, the establishment of postal savings banks, the operation of the railroads, the telegraph and telephone by the government, and the election of senators by direct vote of the people. The convention also approved of the Sub-Treasury plan of the Farmers' Alliance, and adopted other resolutions demanding a free and fair ballot, and opposing the granting of subsides to any private corporation for any purpose.

Prohibition Party.

The National Convention of the Prohibition Party opened in Cincinnati, on the morning of June 29, 1892, and continued in session until July first. The platform declared that the liquor traffic is a foe of civilization, and the manufacture and sale of alcoholic liquors as a beverage should be suppressed; favored female suffrage; declared that an increase of the volume of money is needed, and its volume should be fixed at a definite sum per capita, and made to increase with population; favored the free and unlimited coinage of silver and gold; declared that tariff should be levied only as a defence against foreign governments which levy tariff upon or bar out our products from their markets, revenue being incidental; favored government control of railroads and telegraphs, and stricter immigration laws; condenmned alien ownership of land; favored arbitration for settling national disputes, while speculation in margins, the cornering of grain, and the promotion of trusts and pools should be suppressed. The party pledged itself to grant just pensions, and affirmed that it was opposed to any appropriation of public money for sectarian schools.

Lockout at Homestead.

On June 29, 1892, the managers of Carnegie & Co.'s steel works at Homestead, Pennsylvania, closed their establishment, and five thousand employés ceased work. An attempt was made by the company to introduce non-union laborers, and in order to protect them, as well as to retain possession of the plant, a Pinkerton force of three hundred armed men was sent by boat to Homestead. They attempted to land on the morning of July 6, when a sanguinary contest took place, resulting in the death of several men on each side and the wounding of many more. The next day the Pinkerton force was withdrawn, and the sheriff of Allegheny county telegraphed to Governor Pattison for a force of State militia sufficient to enable him to hold the company's property.

After some delay the Governor ordered out the entire militia of the State, under command of General Snowden. The troops arrived on the twelfth, and were quartered in and around the town, their presence having a restraining effect upon the strikers. On the fourteenth General Snowden placed the borough of Homestead under martial law. On July twenty-third an Anarchist named Berkman attempted to assassinate Mr. H. C. Frick, chairman of the Carnegie Steel Company. Mr. Frick was shot twice, but not fatally. His assailant was captured and lodged in jail. Subsequent developments revealed a plot of the Anarchists to take the lives of leading capitalists.

What was designated as the Bland Silver Bill was defeated in the House of Representatives at Washington on the thirteenth of July.

1892, by a vote of 154 to 136. The bill, which provided for the free coinage of silver, had previously passed the Senate by a small majority.

Cyrus W. Field, the projector of the first Atlantic cable, died July 12, 1892, at the age of seventy-three.

Canadian Tolls.

On the twentieth of August President Harrison issued a proclamation intended to secure just commercial relations between the United States and Canada. The government of the Dominion had made a practice of discriminating against the citizens of the United States in the use of the Welland Canal, in violation of the treaty of Washington, concluded May 8, 1871. The President maintained that this discriminating system was unjust and unreasonable. He therefore directed that from and after September 1, 1892, until further notice, a toll of 20 cents per ton be levied, collected, and paid on all freight of whatever kind or description passing through the St. Mary's Falls Canal in transit to any port of the Dominion of Canada, whether carried in vessels of the United States or of other nations; and to that extent he suspended from and after said date the right of free passage through said St. Mary's Falls Canal of any and all cargoes or portions of cargoes in transit to Canadian ports.

During August, 1892, alarming reports of the spread of cholera in Europe caused our government to take action intended to prevent the introduction of the pestilence in the United States. On September 1st, President Harrison issued a proclamation subjecting all vessels from infected ports to a quarantine of twenty days.

George W. Curtis, the eminent author, journalist, and orator, died August 31, 1892, aged sixty-eight years.

The poet John G. Whittier died on September 7, 1892, aged eighty-four years.

The arrival of the steamer "Kite" at St. John, Newfoundland, September 12, 1892, ended one of the most successful Arctic expeditions ever made. The commander was Lieutenant Peary, of the United States Navy. On his arrival he telegraphed to the Navy Department at Washington as follows: "United States Navy claims highest discoveries on Greenland, east coast, Independence Bay, 82 degrees north latitude, 34 degrees west longitude, discovered July 4, 1892. Greenland ice cape ends south of Victoria Inlet. The highest point heretofore attained on the east coast is about 75 or 77 degrees, and was made by Holdenby, a German. The highest point on the west coast was 83, made by Lockwood and Brainard, of the Greely expedition." Lieutenant Peary's expedition was rich in scientific treasures and geographical discoveries.

The buildings of the World's Columbian Exposition at Chicago were dedicated, the ceremonies beginning on the nineteenth of October, and continuing to the twenty-second. Distinguished persons were present from all parts of the country, including Vice-President Morton and members of President Harrison's Cabinet. There were military and civic parades, and orations by Hon. Chauncy M. Depew and Hon. Henry Watterson.

On October 25, 1892, Mrs. Caroline Lavinia Scott, wife of President Harrison, died, aged sixty years. Funeral services were held at the White House, Washington, and at Indianapolis. The interment was at the latter place on October 28th.

The national election on November 8th resulted in the success of the Democratic party by a large majority. The official returns showed that Cleveland and Stevenson obtained two hundred and seventy-eight electors, or fifty-five more than a majority of the Electoral College.

On January 11, 1893, General Benjamin F. Butler died at Washington, aged seventy-five years. He became prominent during the civil war by the capture and occupation of New Orleans.

Death of James G. Blaine.

Closely following the death of General Butler occurred that of James G. Blaine at his residence, in Washington, on January twenty-seventh. From 1862 he served fourteen years in Congress as Representative from Maine, and during the last three terms he was Speaker of the House. In the Republican nominations for the Presidency in 1876 and 1880 he was defeated by Hayes and Garfield. Appointed United States Senator in 1876, he served till 1881, and acted as Secretary of State under Garfield, but resigned after Garfield's assassination. He was the Republican candidate for the Presidency in 1884, but was defeated by Cleveland.

On the fourth of March, 1888, he received the portfolio of Secretary of State in President Harrison's Cabinet.

In the long and intricate controversy with Great Britain respecting the Behring Sea fisheries, Mr. Blaine vigorously maintained the rights of the United States and showed himself a master of diplomacy. By his speeches and writings he was known as an advocate of protection to American industries, and he made this one of the leading issues in the presidential campaign of 1884.

To his ability as a statesman was added the charm of varied accomplishments, a commanding personal appearance, great controversial power, and those eminent gifts which distinguish the persuasive orator and successful leader. Always intensely American in his convictions and sympathies, his conduct of the State Department at Washington, aimed to maintain our national prerogatives, and to extend our influence among the other powers of the globe.

Early in February, the question of the annexation of Hawaii was brought to the attention of Congress, accompanied with news of a revolution in the Islands. On January fifteenth, the Queen tried to get the Cabinet to sign a new constitution that disfranchised all foreigners and put the whole government in the hands of the native politicians. The Ministers refused, and when threatened by the Queen, fled for their lives. They returned later and induced the Queen to postpone her stratagem. There was a public meeting in front of the palace. The Queen announced the failure of her plans, and a native orator demanded the lives of the Ministers.

Committee of Public Safety.

Early in the evening, citizens met and formed a committee of public safety. On January sixteen, the United States steamship, Boston, landed three hundred men, fully armed. They marched to the office of the Consul General of the United States. The marines were sent to the American Legation, while the sailors, with two Gatling guns, camped for a time on private grounds. The committee of public safety rapidly completed its organization, and made arrangements for the proclamation of a provisional government and its protection by armed force.

Commissioners soon arrived in Washington to conduct negotiations with our government with a view of forming a protectorate of the Islands or annexing them to the United States. A treaty of annexation was concluded between Secretary of State Foster, and the Commissioners, and on January twenty-first was transmitted to the United States Senate. No action with a view to annexation was taken by Congress.

CHAPTER XLIX.

Second Administration of Grover Cleveland.

Second Inauguration of President Cleveland—The New Cabinet—Extraordinary Session of Congress—Repeal of the Sherman Silver Law—New Tariff Bill—The Bill Passes the House of Representatives—Discussion in the Senate—Over Six Hundred Amendments—Senate Bill Rejected by the House—Afterwards Passed—The President Refuses to Sign the Bill—Bland Seigniorage Bil—Utah Admitted as a State—Congress Investigates the Relations of the United States to Hawaii—Subsequent Events.

ON THE 4th of March, 1893, Grover Cleveland entered for the second time upon his duties as President of the United States. The ceremonies of inauguration drew visitors to Washington from all parts of the country, and were of the usual imposing character. Mr. Cleveland announced the members of his Cabinet as follows:

Secretary of State, Walter Q. Gresham, of Illinois; Secretary of the Treasury, John G. Carlisle, of Kentucky; Secretary of War, Daniel S. Lamont, of New York; Attorney-General, Richard Olney, of Massachusetts; Postmaster-General, Wilson S. Bissell, of New York; Secretary of the Navy, Hilary A. Herbert, of Alabama; Secretary of the Interior, Hoke Smith, of Georgia; Secretary of Agriculture, Julius S. Morton, of Nebraska.

Congress was called together in extraordinary session August 7th, and received a message from President Cleveland. The main object of the message was to recommend the immediate repeal of what was known as the Sherman law, relating to the purchase of silver by the government for coinage. The session was preceded by a period of great financial depression, the closing of many manufacturing establishments and a general disturbance of the industrial and business interests of the country. A bill for the repeal of the obnoxious law was introduced into the House of Representatives by Hon. William L. Wilson, of West Virginia, and after brief discussion, was promptly passed by a large majority, August 28th.

The bill then went to the Senate, where a protracted struggle ensued, attended at times by bitter personalities, and by "filibustering" on the part of the minority, thereby preventing the majority from declaring its expressed will. At length the bill passed the Senate October 30th, by a vote of forty-three to thirty-two.

The New Tariff Bill.

The second session of the Fifty-third Congress began on the first Monday of December, 1893. The most important business was the passage of the Tariff bill. The new Tariff bill derived its name from Mr. Wilson, Chairman of the Ways and Means Committee.

Preliminary work was begun upon the bill by the Ways and Means Committee of the House, in October, 1893, during the extra session called by the President for the repeal of the Sherman Silver act. It was reported to the House on December 19, and on January 8, 1894, it began to be discussed in that body. It passed the House, February 1, by a vote of 204 to 140, having been modified in only one important feature—sugar being made free of duty. On the 2d of February it was reported to the Senate and at once referred to the Finance Committee.

Promptly on receiving the Wilson bill, the Finance Committee gave over its task to a

sub-committee, consisting of Mills, Jones and Vest, who completed a bill on tariff-reform lines, making few changes in the Wilson bill. This was reported to the full committee on February 26. Thereupon Mr. Gorman called together the Democratic caucus to instruct the sub-committee to go to work again and reconstruct the bill so that it would suit the Protectionist Democratic Senators.

A New Bill Reported.

The sub-committee made a new bill, "amending" the Wilson bill in several hundred particulars, and altering its character in a Protectionist sense. It was reported to the Senate on March 20, but was still unsatisfactory. On May 5, Mr. Gorman called another caucus to secure unanimity, after which, on May 8, some four hundred new amendments were reported.

"The Senate bill" had assumed its final form. On July 3 it passed the Senate, and on the 7th—the House rejecting the 634 Senate amendments in gross—consideration of points of disagreement between the two Houses was begun in the conference committee. The Senate conferees presented an ultimatum—"the Senate bill as it is or no tariff legislation."

The House conferees demanded free raw materials and no protection for sugar, but in vain. On July 19, Mr. Wilson reported the continued disagreement to the House, at the same time making public the President's letter insisting on free raw materials. In the Senate, Mr. Gorman replied in a defiant speech, full of personal flings.

After a week of sensations, Senator Hill's proposal to recede from the amendments putting a duty on ore and coal was voted down and the bill sent back to conference. After some further dickering by the "compromisers" and an attempt on the part of Mr. Hill to kill the bill in the Senate, the House became alarmed at the supposed prospect of failure of all tariff legislation, and on August 13 passed the Senate bill. On the same day the House passed four bills, putting sugar, coal, ore and barbed wire on the free list, but they were not acted on by the Senate.

The President neither signed nor vetoed the Tariff bill and it became a law without his signature, taking effect August 28, 1894.

Next in general importance to the Tariff and Silver Repeal bills, were two measures which passed both the Senate and the House, one to receive the approval of the President, and the other to be returned to the body whence it came, accompanied by a veto message. These were the Bland Seigniorage bill, which was vetoed, and the bill repealing "all statutes relating to Supervisors of Elections and Special Deputy Marshals."

Action Concerning the Chinese.

Another important measure enacted into law, was that providing that all Chinese now in the United States should register in the offices of Internal Revenue Collectors.

An act enabling Utah to enter the Union was also enacted, the same to go into effect July 4, 1895. Acts enabling New Mexico and Arizona to become States, were passed by the House.

Other bills which became laws during the session, were to give effect to the award rendered by the Bering Sea Arbitration Tribunal; to permit the construction of a bridge across the Hudson, between New York City and the New Jersey shore; to permit the construction of a bridge across the Delaware at Frankford, Philadelphia; extending the limits of the port of New York so as to include Yonkers; making Labor Day a legal holiday; extending for one year the time for final proof and payment of lands

claimed under the public land laws; reducing the time of enlistments in the army from five to three years; to promote the efficiency of the naval militia by allowing the naval reserves of a State the use of a war vessel for manœuvres; to exempt the articles of foreign exhibitors at the Inter-State Fair at Tacoma, Washington, from the payment of duties; joint resolutions conferring diplomas upon designers, inventors, and expert artisans who assisted in the perfection and production of exhibits awarded medals or diplomas at the World's Fair; providing for the appointment of a commission to the Antwerp International Exposition; permitting taxation of National Bank notes, and authorizing the condemnation of land at Gettysburg for marking the lines of battle and the position of troops, and for opening avenues, etc.

During the session about 8000 bills were introduced in the House and referred to the various committees. These measures covered every conceivable subject of legislation. The committees acted on about 1500 of them.

About 800 of them were passed by the House and sent to the Senate, but owing to the extended debate on the Tariff bill in the latter body they did not receive its consideration.

The policy of the Administration with reference to the admission of Hawaii, and more particularly Secretary Gresham's allegation that Queen Liliuokalani's overthrow was accomplished through the presence of United States marines in Honolulu, formed a subject of a long inquiry by the Committee on Foreign Relations. Dozens of witnesses were examined, and the committee finally made a report which was construed to mean a vindication of both Commissioner Blount and Minister Stevens, the Administration and the Provisional Government. The report was not considered in the Senate, but the matter was settled by the adoption of a resolution practically indorsing all parties concerned and reaffirming the Monroe doctrine with respect to Hawaii.

During the session there were sent to the Senate by the President 2461 messages containing nominations. Inasmuch as some of these messages contained more than are usual, notably, in the case of military and naval promotions, a fair estimate of the total number would be 3000. Of these, all were acted upon but about fifty. The most celebrated cases that resulted in rejection, were those of Messrs. Hornblower and Peckham, both of New York, nominated to be Associate Justices of the Supreme Court.

During the session there were created by death and resignation five vacancies in the Senate and eighteen in the House.

Subsequent events included two issues of bonds to maintain the gold reserve. Another issue was provided for, and the subscription was opened in New York, February 20, 1895. Subscriptions for $60,000,000 were made in a few minutes.

On April 8, 1895, the United States Supreme Court delivered a decision respecting the Income Tax law, which declared that the Federal Government had no authority to collect a tax on incomes derived from state, county and municipal bonds.

A message sent to Congress by President Cleveland concerning the dispute between Great Britain and Venezuela awakened great interest throughout the country, and led to the formation of a Commission for investigation.

On January 4, 1896, President Cleveland issued a proclamation admitting Utah as a state into the Union.

Bids for $100,000,000 of 4 per cent. bonds were opened at the Treasury Department, Thursday, February 6, 1896. There were nearly 4700 distinct offers, aggregating nearly $700,000,000.

CHAPTER L.

Cuba and Venezuela.

Story of Cuban Insurrections—Great Revolution of 1848—Gallant Uprising of the People for Life and Liberty—Long and Bitter Struggle—Political Situation in Cuba—Insurrection of 1895–96—Boundary Line Dispute between Venezuela and Great Britain—The Monroe Doctrine Asserted.

SINCE the beginning of the present century Cuba has been the scene of revolutions or uprisings of one kind or another. The direct aim of most, if not all, of these has been to free the island from Spanish control. The city armed natives, joined by bands of stragglers and aided by filibusters, have struggled without organization against drilled, uniformed and comparatively well-equipped regular troops representing Spain.

For a long time insurrection was the term applied to these uprisings. At first and, indeed, until recently, it may be doubted if these uprisings had the genuine sympathy of the Cubans as a body. And, consequently, they were foredoomed to be failures.

But the history of these struggles is replete with brave deeds and exhibitions of personal courage and strategy that would do credit to a body of men familiar with the science of warfare and accustomed to facing danger on the battle-field.

The Spanish colonies, Cuba excepted, gained their independence in 1820–21. Bolivar was their successful leader, and when he had freed the other provinces of Spain he turned his attention particularly to Cuba. But for a time his project failed; some revolutionists allege that it was the refusal of the United States to countenance such efforts which prevented their success. Be that as it may, the efforts of the islanders to throw off the Spanish yoke came to nothing material. But Bolivar and his fellow-conspirators were determined and sought by every means in their power to stir up rebellion in the island. Commissioners were sent to Cuba to create sentiment favorable to revolution. They were soon seized by the Spanish authorities and executed. Bolivar's plan came to a dismal end.

Revolution was in the blood of many of the Cubans, however, and not many years later it had manifestation. From 1848 to 1854 small and ill-planned uprisings took place. Certain elements in the Southern States assisted in encouraging these insurrections.

There was for some time in Southern circles a project looking to the annexation of Cuba and its division into four States, each of which, of course, would have been entitled to representation in Congress, giving the South, perhaps, eight Senators and sixteen Representatives, and so throwing the balance of power here into the hands of the slavery advocates.

The most important of these movements was that headed by Narciso Lopez, who had served in the Spanish army as a general of division, but who, on going to Cuba,

espoused the cause of the revolutionists. He, with Crittenden, the Kentuckian, with a force of some 400 Americans and 200 Cubans, set out from New Orleans, landing at Cardenas, on the north coast of Cuba, and captured it by assault.

The victory was a hollow one, for the time had been ill-advised and the country did not rise.

Finding themselves without support and seeing that without aid from the Cubans, they must be captured or driven into the sea, the invaders returned to Key West. The Cubans on that occasion regarded the movement as one solely in the interest of slavery, and believed its projectors inspired by mercenary motives.

His Star in the Ascendant.

But Lopez was not to be cast down by one failure. He made a second attempt, and landed at Bahia Honda. There he encountered a force of Spanish troops, under General Henna, and put them to rout. The Spanish commander was killed, and for the time the star of Lopez was in the ascendant.

Still the country did not rise. Lopez, in the western end of the island, where Spanish troops were strongest and the revolutionary spirit weakest, soon found himself surrounded and overpowered. Crittenden, who was to have joined him, remained on the coast, and finally attempted to escape by taking to the open sea in boats. He was captured, with fifty of his men, and all were put to death in Havana.

The execution was marked by atrocities, the news of which rang through the civilized world.

The forces of Lopez, overpowered by Spanish troops, were dispersed with ease. The commander himself was garroted.

The island was quiet for a time then, but not for long. Other attempts to raise the country up to 1854 were those of Pinto, a Spaniard of revolutionist tendencies; Estrampes and Aguero, the last-named of whom freed all his slaves before he raised the rebel standard. He was the first outspoken abolitionist in Cuba. He and the other leaders were captured after a brief struggle and executed.

Minor Insurrections.

There were some unimportant risings after that, but none of note until after the American civil war. This conflict abolished slavery. Then the Southern States had no further object in meddling with Cuba. The filibustering movements died out. It remained for Cuba to attempt to work out its own salvation.

In 1868 came the hour which thousands of patriots hailed as the dawn of deliverance; for on October 10, of that year, Cespedes raised the five-barred flag at Yara. He was a lawyer and logical above all things, so to begin with he freed his two hundred slaves and they followed him to battle to a man. The entire eastern end of the island rose against the Spaniards at the call of Cespedes, but the men were without arms or discipline. Their spirit was unquestioned, but they were of little utility against well-armed and disciplined forces.

Their leaders were Maximo Gomez, who is now commander-in-chief of the revolutionary forces; Marmol and Figueredo.

The centre of the island, called Camaguey, flocked to the standard of the Marquis de Lucia and the Agramontes in November, and as enthusiasm and confidence came with numbers the beginning of 1889 saw Las Villas in rebellion with 14,000 men, among whom there were not more than 100 armed with effective firearms. To oppose these unarmed and undisciplined enthusiasts there were 15,000 regulars.

The western end of the island proved cold, but even there small uprisings were fomented. They were put down without difficulty.

Aid from without was not wanting. In December, 1868, General Quesada landed with the first expedition from Nassau, bringing the first consignment of arms and munitions of war. The revolutionist cause prospered, and on April 10, 1869, a new government was constituted and a House of Assembly established. Cespedes was President of the provisional government, and Quesada commander-in-chief of the forces.

Proclamation of Freedom.

The government, which had little beyond its name, issued a proclamation giving freedom to all the negroes in the island—a matter which gave great offence to the Spaniards, even those of liberal tendencies.

Ten years of desultory warfare followed. The revolutionists held the centre of the island and the mountains, but were unable to obtain any standing in the seaports, as their flag was not recognized there by the great powers, although it was duly saluted from time to time by the South American Republics. The United States did not recognize the revolutionists, despite the efforts of General Rawlings and Senator Sherman to that end.

Every effort was made to send arms to the insurgents. There were continual attempts at blockade running. Some of these expeditions evaded capture, but others were taken by Spanish troops and the leaders were promptly executed. The most notable was that of the *Virginius*, under Captain Fry. The *Virginius* put out from Kingston, Jamaica.

The capture of the *Virginius* and the summary execution of American citizens by the Spanish authorities so excited this nation at the time that war with Spain seemed certain. This was one of the most notable incidents in Cuban history, at least in point of American interest.

Public Agitation.

Had the popular voice been heeded at that time a peaceful solution of the difficulty would have been impossible. Feeling ran so high throughout the country that public meetings were held all over the country denouncing the execution as a butchery, and warlike preparations were begun in many cities. In some cases ships were prepared to go to sea in anticipation of an immediate declaration of war.

The voyage of the *Virginius* was begun in November of 1873. The steamer was pursued by the Spanish warship *Tornado*, and captured within sight of the Morant Point Light-house, at the east end of Jamaica. She was towed at once into Santiago de Cuba, despite the fact that she was flying the Stars and Stripes and was in British waters. Fifty-three of her men were shot in a public square in Santiago, in some instances after they had been given a trial lasting only ten minutes.

Among them was Captain Joseph Fry, who commanded the ship; Bernade Varona, W. A. C. Ryan, Jesus del Sol and Pedro Cespedes. There was no United States cruiser within reach of Santiago, but the British man-of-war *Niobe* arrived in time to prevent further slaughter of American and English subjects. Her commander, Sir Lambon Lorraine, acted with quickness and determination.

"Shoot another Englishman or American," he said, "and the *Niobe* will bombard the city."

Then the slaughter ceased. Both the United States and England protested through their representatives, and sent men-of-war to

protect the other prisoners. The survivors were delivered up to the rescuing ships and brought to New York, and the *Virginius*, with a hole in her bottom, sank off Frying Pan Shoals.

The Difficulty Settled.

The return of the survivors and an accurate knowledge of the details of the shooting only served to fan into fierce blaze the fire of popular indignation. The general voice was for war with Spain, and General Sickles, then American Minister in Madrid, had already asked to be recalled, and was preparing to leave the capital. Finally, however, the matter was adjusted diplomatically. The Spanish Government paid an indemnity for the American subjects shot with General Ryan and Thomas Ryan, and the war cloud blew over.

But in Cuba the revolutionists continued their fight for supremacy. For five years—until 1878—they strove against terrible odds in the centre of the island and in the mountains. At last they saw that the lack of arms and supplies and of money to purchase either had made the struggle a hopeless one, and they decided to make peace.

A treaty was signed, by which Spain granted the native Cubans certain liberties, promised to reform their administration in some measure, and recognized the freedom of all the slaves who had fought in the Cuban army. It had been a long and desperate fight. Quesada had been succeeded as general-in-chief by General Thomas Jordan, formerly General Beauregard's chief of staff and a West Pointer. He lent much strength to the cause, but abandoned it as hopeless after a year's campaigning in the face of overwhelming odds, and with a few arms and scant supplies. After him came Agramonte, but he died in a year, and then, when the rebel cause seemed to be prospering, General Gomez took command. He invaded the western part of the island and almost reached Matanzas, but he, too, saw that he could not gain ground with unarmed men and withdrew his forces. That was in 1876, and from that time the revolution waned until the treaty of El Zanjon in February, 1878.

Still there was not entire quiet. In the east end of Cuba General Maceo refused to recognize the treaty, and continued to fight for eleven months, only to fail in the end and be driven from Cuban soil.

The Latest Uprising.

The treaty concessions were by no means liberal enough to maintain order for any length of time. In 1889 General Garcia tried again. He had been captured in Cuba in 1875 and sent to a fortress in Spain. He shot himself while in prison; but the bullet failed, and when he recovered he made his escape and reached the United States.

Here he conferred with Jose Marti, President of the Cuban revolutionary party, 1895–96, and they planned another expedition to Cuba. They landed and held their ground for six months, only to find that the country was not ripe for revolt. The Cubans, weary of continual turmoil and bloodshed, longed for quiet. At last Garcia was captured and sent once more to Spain.

From this time dates the autonomist party, started by a group of men who maintained that experience would not justify further attempts to gain freedom for Cuba by force of arms, and that the island's hope lay in peaceful measures alone. The party gained a footing very rapidly; indeed, its existence and doctrine had much to do with the failure of General Garcia.

Despite the efforts of the peace party, however, there were revolutionist leaders who were ready to try again. In 1884 Generals Gomez and Maceo visited the United States

and Central America with a view of preparing for another invasion. The movement was opposed bitterly by the home-rule party in Cuba and was abandoned. Small and ill-advised attempts at revolution followed from time to time after that, notably those headed by Limbana Sanchez, Benitez and Aguero.

The home-rulers, in the meantime, were attempting to get what concessions they could from Spain by peaceful means. In 1890 they became restless again. The peace policy did not prosper. Cuba was growing uneasy again. The concessions, small and unsatisfactory at all times, began to be regarded as sops which Spain distributed to maintain peace. They gave no promise of more liberal treatment in future. Men began to say that the native Cubans were cheated at the polls, and in time their representatives went to the Cortes no more.

Changes in Cuba.

For fourteen years the home-rulers, led by such men as Govin Monture, Figueroa, Fernandez, De Castro and Siberga, had made most vigorous fights at the polls, and, notwithstanding conservative frauds, had sent their best orators to the Spanish Parliament. It was to no purpose. The home-rulers spoke to empty benches in Spain, and no party there recognized them. They succeeded, nevertheless, in forcing the conservatives in Cuba to modify their policy and aided manfully to complete the emancipation of the negro, following the Cuban constitution, which declared that "all men are free." With the economic party they forced the government to celebrate the Spanish-American treaty, without which the fate of the island was sealed.

The conservatives divided into two groups, one leaning toward union with the Cubans on economic questions, and hoping secretly for the annexation of Cuba by the United States. They were demoralized by the refusals of the liberals from the polls, the autonomists having declared that unless the obnoxious suffrage laws, which gave the Spaniards a sure majority at the polls and disfranchised the Cuban rural population, were abolished, they would never go to Parliament again.

The Liberal Party.

The Spanish liberals really formed the economist party to obtain commercial concession and secure a treaty with the United States, and by joining hands with the Cubans they forced Spain's hand in the matter.

But this, like the other efforts to restore quiet and content, proved a failure. The Cubans complained that in return for the treaty and its benefits to the island, Spain imposed new taxes, which more than counterbalanced all the good that had been done. Representatives were sent to the Spanish Parliament again, the home-rule contingent demanding, as of old, electoral reform sufficient to guarantee just representation.

It was then that the Cuban revolutionary party began to gain prominence—the party which has drawn the sword now—and asserted boldly that peaceful measures, looking to freedom and equality, had failed, and that Cuba must take up arms again and drive the Spanish soldiers into the sea. Such talk was dangerous on Cuban soil. Leaders of the party who were not already in exile left Cuba and began to plan from the outside, to raise money, to stir up the native population by secret agents—in a word, to prepare the island for one grand united effort to be free.

While this sentiment was being nursed at home and outside of Cuba the peace party was still at work on its own lines. In 1894 the reform wing of the Spaniards joined the Cubans in their fight against the Spanish conservatives. They secured some reforms.

but these, the Cubans say, are a mere farce, as the proposition now being passed upon is the establishment of a council in Cuba in which the Spanish element will predominate. This council was to consist of thirty members, of which fifteen were to be appointed by the crown, and the remainder elected. The method of electing, the Cubans contend, would insure a majority for the Spaniards, and in any event the council might be dissolved at pleasure by the Captain-General, Callejas.

The Cubans want universal suffrage, and have been unable to secure it, as the Spaniards have insisted upon certain property qualifications.

Spread of the Insurrection.

On the 14th of March, 1895, Marti and Gomez, the Cuban exiles, with a handful of companions, landed at Baracoa, on the eastern coast of Cuba, and proclaimed the republic. The effect of this bold move was instantaneous. The news spread from end to end of the island, and although the friends of Cuba thought the moment ill-timed, hundreds of sympathizers flocked to the patriot standard. Like a prairie fire before a brisk breeze the single spark of insurrection fired the dry tinder of the oppressed Cubans, and the rebellion grew in volume as it flew westward.

This is not Spain's first experience of the temper of her colony. For the past seventy years conspiracy, insurrection, rebellion and red war have followed one another in endless progression. A few words will suffice to explain the cause leading up to the conflict of 1895–96.

Cuba became a possession of Spain by the right of discovery on Columbus' second voyage. He named it Juana, after the son of Ferdinand and Isabella, and it has successively been known as Juana, Fernandina, Santiago, Ave Maria and Cuba, the latter being the native name of the Queen of the Antilles. It was colonized by Spain, and its early history is a series of sacks and ravages by European foes. Not until the rule of Captain-General Las Casas, beginning 1790, did prosperity begin.

A Wise Administration.

Under his guidance agriculture and commerce flourished, and the condition of the native population was ameliorated. The effect of his sagacious rule was felt for over thirty years, and when Napoleon deposed the royal family of Spain, every member of the Cabildo took oath to preserve the island for their monarchy, and, going even further, they declared war against the French conqueror. This much to show the instinctive feeling of the colony toward the mother country.

Spanish coffers were empty with the restoration of the Bourbons in the person of Ferdinand VII., and Spain's mistress looked with hungry eyes upon the rich island with her 1800 miles of seacoast, gemmed with prosperous ports and her plantations of indigo, sugar, tobacco and fruit. It was Fortunata's purse wherein Spain might dip her fingers and forever find it full to overflowing. With this discovery came oppressive taxation. With the gradual impoverishment of Spain came added demands. Then the deprivation of all civil, political and religious liberty and the exclusion of Cubans from all public stations, and in order to enforce this the Cubans were taxed to support a standing army and navy—their gaolers.

With their oppression came their desire for liberty. In 1829 the Black Eagle conspiracy arose. The purpose of this was to throw off the Spanish yoke. It was suppressed, but was followed in 1840 by an insurrection of the colored population. After

smouldering and blazing for a while the fires of insurrection were smothered only to break out eight years later in a genuine conspiracy of the Cubans under the leadership of Narciso Lopez. This rebellion was quelled and Lopez fled. In 1850 he landed in Cuba with 600 men from the United States. He made a third attempt in 1851, and together with most of his companions was captured and executed by the Spanish authorities.

Insurgents Recognized.

The Reformist party, which sprang up at this time, succeeded in getting an inquiry of the abuses at Madrid, with the result, however, of increased taxation. In 1868 the Advance party in Cuba rose in the district of Bayamo, and on October 10, 1868, signed a declaration of independence at Manzanillo. Their first successes were so great that almost all the Spanish-American republics recognized the insurgents as belligerents. After a war of ten years, that was confined to the mountainous regions east of the town of Puerto Principe, the rebellion was put down. To confine it to that locality the Spanish troops built a great fortified trench, known as La Trocha, across the entire width of the island, in the western portion of the State of Puerto Principe. It was here that Captain-General Campos drew up his forces last summer to prevent the eastward march of the insurgents, who were now heavily reinforced.

All during the summer of 1895 the insurgent leaders were organizing their forces and receiving supplies of arms and ammunition. The people were flocking to the standard of revolt, and during October, 1895, Gomez and Maceo, with ease, penetrated the lines of the Spanish captain-general, crossing La Trocha, and causing the regular troops to fall back to a line just east of Remedios. The insurgents still pushing on, this was followed by a retreat of Campos to Santa Clara, in the province of Santa Clara, still further west.

Gomez and Maceo were now in supreme authority, for Marti died just as the command started west. This blow to the insurgent cause was more than offset by the character of the people among which they found themselves. Of all the provinces of Cuba, Santa Clara is the most outspoken and loyal to the cause of liberty. The ranks of Gomez and Maceo were increased by thousands of volunteers of an intelligence and physical strength superior even to those of Santiago. Horses were procured in abundance, and the bulk of the insurgent army was formed into a speedy and well-equipped cavalry. They were armed with rifles, and carried with them an abundance of ammunition.

Fully Armed.

Each man also carried a machete, which is a long, heavily-weighted iron knife, used by the sugar planters to cut the cane, and by all travelers to open up paths through the heavy tropical underbrush. They are terrible weapons in the hands of the Cubans, and the Spanish troops fear them more than the rifles. The insurgents took no supply train with them. A stray pig or fowl supplied them with supper, while an ox meant dinner for a company. Thus prepared they turned their faces toward the setting sun and Havana.

All this while Campos, the Spanish general, was "concentrating," according to the official dispatches. In other words, he was drawing dead lines across the island at points where he announced that he would bring the insurgents to a pitched battle. Each successive dead-line was further west than the one preceding it. And each time the insurgents slipped by the troops, leaving a harried country behind them. Railroads, bridges and roads were destroyed; plantations burned and

store-houses empty. The troops, under the spur of necessity, followed as rapidly as possible, leaving the insurgents in possession of the country to the east.

In this way not only did the Cubans make this remarkable march westward, but they garrisoned it. In Santiago the insurgents kept the Spanish forces in the fortified cities, and in a short time two large expeditions successfully landed at that end of the island. One, armed with cannon, fired upon and crippled the *Nueva Espana*, of the Spanish navy, while such leaders as Rabi, Martinez and Aguirre were fighting as valiantly there as Gomez and Maceo in the province of Matanzas.

Similar reports came from Puerto Principe and Santa Clara, showing that the insurgents had complete control of the interior of these provinces. But Campos claimed that it was his plan to get the insurgents between his forces and Havana and crush them as a nut is crushed in a nut-cracker.

General Campos Repulsed.

Then came decisive attacks by the insurgents. Campos was driven from pillar to post, changing his headquarters from Santa Clara to Cienfuegos, from Cienfuegos to Palmillas, from Palmillas to Colon, from Colon to Jovellanos, from Jovellanos to Limonare, from Limonare to Guanabana, and from Guanabana to Havana, where he was feted as a conqueror by the Spanish authorities, and where he received telegrams of congratulation from the Queen Regent of Spain and her Prime Minister.

Just prior to this noisy welcome, namely on December 24, 1895, General Maximo Gomez, at the head of 12,000 men, by a feint, turned the flank of the Spanish commander at Colon, and passing the sleepy old seaport of Matanzas, marched straight on to a point only fifty miles from Havana, Campos with all his 80,000 picked Spanish troops, to the contrary notwithstanding. Christmas and New Year's passed and the insurgents were still there, marching and countermarching in three columns, holding Spain at bay, and waiting for additional supplies of ammunition and arms before pushing on. The grave question now was what the insurgents would do? Havanna was in an agony of suspense and preparing for a siege. The loyalty of the citizens was questionable, as well as that of the Grande Civil, or local militia. Campos and all his troops seemed unable to cope with the situation. It was believed that should the insurgents push on and take Havana, the defeat of Spain and the liberty of Cuba would arrive.

Advent of General Weyler.

The next move on the part of Spain was to recall General Campos, his campaign in Cuba having proved a failure. He was replaced by General Weyler, whose tyrannous policy and barbarous cruelties, when previously commanding the Spanish forces in the island, are well known.

The steamer *Alfonso XIII.* arrived at Havana, February 10, 1896, having on board General Valeriano Weyler, the new Captain General of Cuba; Nicolau, Marquis of Teneriffe; and Generals Enrique, Barges, Ferderico Ochando, Miguel Melquiso, Marinues Ahumada, Luis Castelloi, Sanchez Bernal and Juan Arolas, the latter being the hero of Jolo, Philippine Islands.

The entire city was brilliantly decorated in honor of the occasion and the bay was a splendid sight, all the warships and merchant craft present being decorated with bunting. The wharfs were crowded with people at an early hour and all the steamers and tugs were loaded with sightseers. The Chamber of Commerce, the Bourse, all the big commercial houses and government departments,

the Canarian Association, General Weyler's countrymen and others, crowded upon the chartered steamers or about the landing-place.

The troops and volunteers were turned out to a man, together with the fire department and police, and for a long time no such brilliant display had been witnessed in Havana. Among the high military officers present were Generals Suarez Valdez, Pando, Marin and Navarro, Admiral Yanas and staff, Colonel Castanedo, Major Moriano and many others.

Enthusiastic Reception.

General Weyler was welcomed by the City Council on board the *Alfonso XIII.* He was presented with an address of welcome and assurance of loyalty. At eleven o'clock the Captain General came ashore and was received by General Marin and staff. The streets were packed with people, who displayed the greatest enthusiasm. In fact, rarely has a distinguished person been received so warmly as was General Weyler when he landed. There is no doubt that considerable real enthusiasm was manifested, in addition to the greetings which would naturally be bestowed upon the representative of Spain.

The balconies in all the streets about the water front and in the vicinity of the Palace were full of ladies in holiday attire, and they showered flowers upon the new commander as he passed. Besides, numerous floral offerings of the most beautiful description, principally in the shape of crowns, were presented to the general, who expressed his thanks in each case in a few brief words. He seemed to be much pleased with his reception, and upon arriving at the Palace formally took over the duties of the captain-generalship, taking the oath of fealty over a crucifix and upon a Bible. General Marin administered the oath of office and soon afterward he received the local military and civil authorities, the different corporations and the bishops and priests.

The German warships which were in the harbor saluted the arrival of General Weyler, as did all the Spanish warships in port and the forts ashore. The Loyalists, of course, were out in the strongest force possible; but it may be said that the entire population of Havana turned out, and hardly a representative of the shipping or business interests of the city failed to make the day a holiday.

Cheers and Cannonading.

After the reception of the local military and civil authorities, corporations and clergy was completed, General Weyler appeared upon the balcony of the palace and reviewed the troops. His appearance before the public was the signal for a long outburst of the most enthusiastic cheering, the firing of cannon and the sound of martial music, all the bands in the city being stationed at different points. In addition to the inhabitants of the city proper, thousands of people flocked into the city from all directions before daybreak.

Accompanying General Weyler were Captains Gelaber and Linares, who are known as "military editors." They were to have charge of the press censorship, and it was rumored that there would be considerably more difficulty experienced in this connection by the correspondents in the future. The press regulations had been considerably relaxed, and not much difficulty had been experienced in getting average matter upon the cable. But, it was thought, the new captain-general would be very severe with correspondents who sent false accounts of Cuban successes or in any way brought about the publication of false news. By this it was not meant that General Weyler intended to interfere with

the proper liberty which the press can be allowed in war time. It really meant only that he would do everything possible to prevent the sending out of news undoubtedly false.

A disinterested observer of the situation wrote as follows, under date of February 10, 1896:

"So far as the general situation is concerned there is not much change. Indeed, no change of importance is expected for some days. General Weyler will first devote himself to a complete review of the operations already undertaken, and he will then figure out the situation as it actually exists. For this purpose, almost immediately after taking the oath of fealty, he caused orders to be sent to all the commanders in the field to draw up promptly and forward to headquarters here complete returns of the condition of their commands, together with the state of railroads, telegraphs and public thoroughfares and the probable location and strength of the enemy in their neighborhood.

Reasons for this Action.

"This action upon the part of General Weyler is supplementary to the regular report and returns which were handed over to him by General Marin after the new captain-general had been sworn in. While it is no reflection upon General Marin or the other Spanish commanders here or in other parts of Cuba, the captain-general took this step in order thoroughly to go over the ground himself, and possibly in view of the sensational reports which have been circulated by agents of the insurgents and others to the effect that large quantities of stores, arms and ammunition are missing from the different depots and have found their way into the hands of the insurgents. Between this and the tales of wholesale dishonesty circulated here and elsewhere there is quite a difference, and nobody here believes that there has been any treachery of importance."

General Marin, who has been appointed captain-general of Porto Rico, is expected to leave for his new post to-morrow.

Weyler's Plans of Campaign.

The exact plan of campaign of General Weyler is not known, but it is believed that it will be a very different one from that of Campos. He is likely to call in all of the small detachments of troops, which have from the first had such a weakening effect upon the Spanish operations, and will try to drive the insurgents into a position from which they cannot escape without a pitched battle. General Weyler will also do everything possible to muster as strong a force of cavalry as he can. Considerable reinforcements of this branch of the service have already arrived here, and more are expected during the week.

Some reports credit the insurgents with desiring to concentrate all their scattered detachments and columns into one body, and so bring the insurrection to a direct issue. But Spaniards here who are well posted on the situation say that there is no truth in the report that the insurgents will make any effort to risk a pitched battle.

Captain General Weyler clearly defined the policy he intended to pursue in the conduct of the campaign for the suppression of the insurrection. Before he had been at Havana many hours he issued the following proclamation:

"To the People of Cuba: Honored by Her Majesty, the Queen, and her government, with the command of this island, under the difficult circumstances now prevailing, I take charge of it with the determination that it shall never be given up by me, and that I shall keep it in the possession of Spain, willing as she is to carry out whatever sacrifice

shall be required to succeed, as she has been in the past.

"I rely upon the gallantry and discipline of the army and navy, upon the patriotism, never to be subdued, of the volunteer corps, and more especially upon the support that I should be given by the loyal inhabitants, born here or in Spain.

"It is not necessary to say that I shall be generous with the subdued and to all of those doing any service to the Spanish cause. But I will not lack in the decision and energy of my character to punish with all the rigor that the law enacts those who in any way shall help the enemy, or shall calumniate the prestige of our name.

"Putting aside at present any idea of politics, my mission is the honorable one of finishing the war, and I only see in you the loyal Spaniards who are to assist me to defeat the insurgents. But Her Majesty's government is aware of what you are and of what you are worthy, and the status of peace that these provinces may obtain. It will grant you, when it is deemed suitable to do so, the reforms the government may think most proper, with the love of a mother to her children.

"Inhabitants of Cuba, lend me your co-operation, and in that way you will defend your interests, which are those of the country.

"Long live Spanish Cuba!

"Your General and Governor,

"VALERIANO WEYLER,

"Marquese of Tenerife."

To the Volunteers and Firemen.

General Weyler also offered the following address:

"Volunteers and Firemen: Being again at your head, I see in you the successors of the volunteers and firemen who fought with me in the previous war and, with their bravery, energy and patriotism, brought about peace, defended the towns and cities, and contributed most powerfully to save Cuba for Spain. Remember these virtues brighten your spirits, and, relying on my whole attention, my decisive support and my utmost confidence, lend me the same help and co-operation, and with the same ambition save the prestige of your name and the honor of our flag, which, forever victorious, should fly over this island.

To the Soldiers.

"Soldiers of the army, I greet you in the name of Her Majesty, the Queen, and of the government. Having the honor of being at your head, I trust that at my command you will continue to show the bravery in face of hardships proper for the Spanish soldier, and that you will confer new wreaths to add to those already attained under the command of my predecessors, Generals Martinez Campos and Sabas Marin.

"On my part, answering to the great sacrifice made by the nation, and using the efforts of all arms and bodies in the work entrusted to each of the organic units, I will not omit anything to place you in the condition for obtaining the victory and the return of peace to this island, which is what she longs for.

"Sailors, I have again the satisfaction to be at your side, and I again trust that, as in Mindanao recently, you will lend me your powerful co-operation to bring peace to this island. Thus I expect surely that you will afford me a new chance to express my thanks and my enthusiasm to the Spanish navy."

The following circular of General Weyler was addressed to the military officers:

"I have addressed my previous proclamations at the moment of my landing to the loyal inhabitants, to the volunteers and firemen, and to the army and navy.

"I may give you a slight idea of the intentions I have and the measures I shall follow as Governor-General-in-Chief, in accordance with the general desire of Spain, and with the decided aim of Her Majesty's government to furnish all the means required to control and crush this rebellion.

The Question Argued.

"Knowing this, and knowing my character, I may perhaps need to say no more to make you understand what is the conduct that I am to follow. But with the idea of avoiding all kinds of doubt, even keeping (as you are to keep) the circulars to be published, I deem it necessary to make some remarks.

"It is not unknown by you that the state in which the rebellion has come and the raid made by the principal leaders recently, which could not be stopped even by the active pursuit of the columns, is due to the indifference, the fear or the disheartenment of the inhabitants. Since it cannot be doubted that some, seeing the burning of their property without opposition, and that others, who have been born in Spain, should sympathize with the insurgents, it is necessary at all hazards to better this state of things and to brighten the spirit of the inhabitants, making them aware that I am determined to lend all my assistance to the local inhabitants. So I am determined to have the law fall with all its weight upon all those in any way helping the enemy, or praising them, or in any way detracting from the prestige of Spain, of its army, or of its volunteers. It is necessary for those by our side to show their intentions with deeds, and their behavior should leave no doubt, and should prove that they are Spanish.

"Since the defence of the country demands the sacrifice of her children, it is necessary that the towns should look to their defence, and that no precautions in the way of scouts should be lacking to give news concerning the enemy, and whether it is in their neighborhood, and so that it may not happen that the enemy should be better informed than we.

"The energy and vigor of the enemy will be strained to trace the course of our line, and in all cases you will arrest and place at my disposal to deliver to the courts those who in any way shall show their sympathy or support for the rebels.

Enlistments Called For.

"The public spirit being heatened, you must not forget to enlist the volunteers and guerillas in your district, this not preventing at the same time the organization, as opportunity offers, of a guerilla band of twenty-five citizens for each battalion of the army.

"I propose that you shall make the dispositions you think most proper for the carrying out of the plan I wish, but this shall not authorize you to determine anything not foreseen in the instructions, unless the urgency of some circumstances should demand it.

"I expect that, confining yourself to these instructions, you will lend me your worthy support towards the carrying out of my plan for the good of the Spanish cause.

"WEYLER."

The proclamation produced no perceptible change in the situation. The insurgents continued to land arms and ammunition secretly and to carry on their peculiar mode of warfare. No great battles were fought, and in the majority of the skirmishes, the Spanish troops were successful, it being apparently the policy of the rebels to worry and harass their enemy instead of coming to open conflict. Thus far it has been the history of Cuban insurrection repeated—a work of devastation, a scattered warfare, an attempt

by Spanish troops to rout or capture the insurgents, yet without success. Spain has maintained a large army in Cuba which seems to be incapable of bringing order out of confusion.

We come now to the trouble between Venezuela and England, with some statements showing the spirit and intent of what is known as the American Monroe Doctrine.

The Venezuelan Question.

For fifty-five years the location of the boundary line between British Guiana and Venezuela has been in dispute. Nine times the line has been surveyed by British engineers, and each time it was unsatisfactory to the South American Republic, and was not accepted. The two governments agreed that neither nation should occupy the ground claimed by both until the controversy should be settled, and the question has dragged along in a neglected way until recent events have opened the old wound afresh.

Some time ago one Sergeant Behrens and two companions of the British constabulary on duty in Guiana, were discovered on the disputed strip of land, and through some clashing with the authority of the Venezuelan Government, were arrested and taken into custody as trespassers on Venezuelan soil. The English Government contended that the arrest had been made on British soil, and demanded redress for the action, as unlawful and an insult to British citizens. The Venezuelan Government protested that the arrest had occurred on its own soil, and therefore Behrens was amenable to the laws of the Republic.

Thus the question was brought to a crisis. Venezuela offered to arbitrate the whole matter, but Great Britain insisted on the surrender to itself of a large and important portion of the disputed territory, and would then submit to arbitration what was left. The evidence thus far obtainable on the question of the boundaries was somewhat wrapped in the uncertainties of the terms of the original cession to England of Guiana, which was acquired from Holland in 1814, and the world cannot form an accurate idea of the merits of the controversy until a tribunal of arbitration has sifted them out.

There are, however, certain features of England's position which give color to the suspicion generally entertained by the American press, that that nation was afraid to trust its case to arbitration, and was bulldozing the weaker Government of the South American State out of a very large portion of its territory. Most people believed that Great Britain's scruples were none too fine to attempt this, and in the public mind, at least, the burden of proof in the dispute rested upon her. The property at issue includes the greater part of the country lying between the Orinoco and Esequibo Rivers, and is believed to contain valuable gold and silver deposits.

Reply from the British Premier.

The question between these Governments becomes of special interest to the people of the United States in view of the action that our representatives at Washington have taken. Some time ago Secretary of State Olney addressed a communication to the British Government reminding it that the United States expected it to observe the restrictions which the Monroe Doctrine placed upon the operations of European powers on American soil. Lord Salisbury replied that the matter was of so great moment as to require further consideration before answering.

Judging from the widely varying comments of the press, it would seem that in the public mind the real meaning of that famous doctrine is as uncertain as is the knowledge of the true rights of the foreign countries to

whom the doctrine is now sought by some to be applied.

The principle of the Monroe Doctrine originated not with President Monroe, but—oddly enough, as it now seems—with a great English Premier. In the year 1815 the Governments of Russia, Austria and Prussia concluded a treaty known as the "Holy Alliance," by which they pledged mutual support in all military operations of every kind. After a few years the alliance was joined by France, and it then became known as the defender of the divine right of monarchy, and the powerful combination used its armies to suppress popular movements for liberty in a number of countries, notably in Spain.

Congress of Nations.

The Alliance made such progress in the objects of its existence, that in 1823 steps were taken to call another congress of the Powers with the view of crushing the revolutionary governments in Spanish America. At this point the Prime Minister of England, George Canning, saw in the new proposal a menace to his own country in that the growing commerce of England with the Spanish-American Republics would be diverted if those countries returned to the condition of colonies of Spain or of any other Power.

Mr. Canning then proposed to the United States Minister, Mr. Rush, that the two governments unite in a protest against the interference of the allies with the affairs of the Spanish-American States. This was the origin and the first public proposal of the principle which has since become the most famous rule in the foreign policy of the United States. President Monroe and his Cabinet gave the subject anxious consideration.

Thomas Jefferson, in commenting on the proposal, used this language: "Our first and fundamental maxim should be never to entangle ourselves in the broils of Europe; our second, never to suffer Europe to intermeddle with cis-Atlantic affairs. While Europe is laboring to become the domicile of despotism, our endeavor should surely be to make our hemisphere that of freedom. One nation most of all could disturb us in this pursuit; she now offers to lead, aid and accompany us in it. By acceding to her proposition we detach her from the bands, bring her mighty weight into the scale of free government, and emancipate a continent at one stroke."

When Congress assembled in the month of December following Mr. Canning's proposal, President Monroe in his annual message defined in carefully chosen words the principles by which he proposed to be guided in the matter of the threatened interference of the allies. The statements touching on this foreign policy are included in the following extract from his message, almost every phrase of which has become a classic in international history:

Only Injuries Resented.

"Of events in that quarter of the globe (Europe) with which we have so much intercourse, and from which we derive our origin, we have always been anxious and interested spectators. The citizens of the United States cherish sentiments the most friendly in favor of the liberty and happiness of their fellowmen on that side of the Atlantic. In the wars of the European Powers in matters relating to themselves we have never taken any part, nor does it comport with our policy to do so. It is only when our rights are invaded or seriously menaced that we resent injuries or make preparation for our defence.

"With the movements in this hemisphere, we are, of necessity, more immediately con-

nected, and by causes which must be obvious to all enlightened and impartial observers. The political system of the allied Powers is essentially different in this respect from that of America. This difference proceeds from that which exists in their respective governments. And to the defence of our own, which has been achieved by the loss of so much blood and treasure, and matured by the wisdom of their most enlightened citizens, and under which we have enjoyed unexampled felicity, this whole nation is devoted.

Dangerous to Our Safety.

"We owe it, therefore, to candor and to the amicable relations existing between the United States and those Powers to declare that we should consider any attempt on their part to extend their system to any portion of this hemisphere as dangerous to our peace and safety. With the existing colonies or dependencies of any European Power, we have not interfered and shall not interfere. But with the governments who have declared their independence and maintained it, and whose independence we have, on great consideration and on just principles, acknowledged, we could not view any interposition for the purpose of oppressing them, or controlling in any other manner their destiny, by any European Power, in any other light than as the manifestation of an unfriendly disposition toward the United States.

"Our policy in regard to Europe, which was adopted at an early stage of the wars which have so long agitated that quarter of the globe, nevertheless remains the same, which is, not to interfere in the internal concerns of any of its Powers, to consider the Government *de facto* as the legitimate Government for us; to cultivate friendly relations with it, and to preserve those relations by a frank, firm and manly policy, meeting, in all instances, the just claims of every Power, submitting to injuries from none. But in regard to these continents, circumstances are eminently and conspicuously different.

"It is impossible that the allied Powers should extend their political system to any portion of either continent without endangering our peace and happiness; nor can any one believe that our Southern brethren, if left to themselves, would adopt it of their own accord. It is equally impossible, therefore, that we should behold such interposition, in any form, with indifference. If we look to the comparative strength and resources of Spain and those new Governments, and their distance from each other, it must be obvious that she can never subdue them. It is still the true policy of the United States to leave the parties to themselves in the hope that other Powers will pursue the same course."

Comments of the Press.

The leading daily papers of New York waged a lively war of words over the proper application of the Monroe Doctrine, arising out of the varying interpretation of some expressions used in this message. It must be admitted that President Monroe had reference solely to the overturning of republican forms of government, when he stated that any attempt on the part of European Powers to extend "their system" to any portion of this hemisphere would be considered as dangerous to our peace and safety.

The only loophole for controversy is the clause, "We could not view any interposition for the puspose of oppressing them (the Spanish-American republics) or controlling in any other manner their destiny, by any European Power." Does this clause forbid any "oppressing" of whatsoever kind? Or does it constitute an appendage to the preceding clause and refer only to "oppressing" when coupled with the intention to extend the monarchical "system" over the op-

pressed, and thus establish colonial allegiance to the European Power who may be the aggressor?

Some influential newspapers and one or more jurists of prominence extended to the word "oppressing," as used above, a meaning of almost unlimited scope. They construed it to cover almost any sort of unfair dealing by a European Power with an American State. The second interpretation, on the other hand, was the one which has usually guided our State Department, and received the support of Calhoun and Webster, as well as the published opinions of one or more college professors of international history.

Seward's Interpretation.

This view was also clearly expressed by Secretary Seward in a note of instruction to our Minister to France at the time of the collision between that country and Mexico in 1862: "France has a right to make war against Mexico, and to determine for herself the cause. We have a right and interest to insist that France shall not improve the war she makes to raise up in Mexico an anti-republican or anti-American government, or to maintain such a government there. France has disclaimed such designs, and we, besides reposing faith in the assurances given in a frank, honorable manner, would, in any case, be bound to wait for, and not anticipate, a violation of them."

If the first interpretation be the proper one, then the United States may have some right to insist on the submission to arbitration of the question at issue between Great Britain and Venezuela. If, however, the second interpretation is correct—and the weight of authority is certainly in support of it—then there is as yet no violation of the principles of the Monroe Doctrine in the Venezuelan controversy, and the United States cannot invoke the same in justification of any interference in behalf of the South American republic.

The tremendous sensation created all over the world by President Cleveland's message to Congress in December, 1895, on the controversy between Great Britain and Venezuela quieted down, and the general belief among Government circles was that an amicable settlement would be reached by the two nations most intimately concerned, without the necessity of further action on the part of the United States.

It was well known that the Foreign Office at London was trying to bring about this result. British sentiment seemed to incline more and more toward the propriety of making concessions, if necessary, to preserve peace with the United States, and very strong speeches were made in Parliament favoring arbitration of the entire dispute and recognizing the justice of the position of the United States.

A Senate Resolution.

The indications were that President Cleveland's action would result in establishing the force of the Monroe Doctrine in its broadest application, and its efficacy as a rule of American international law would not be disputed in the future.

The Monroe Doctrine has had some discussion in the Senate, arising from a resolution introduced by Senator Davis, of Minnesota, which aimed to commit Congress to a definite positive declaration of the existence and enduring force of the doctrine in the widest meaning which American construction has placed upon it. The resolution was vigorously opposed by a few of the Senators as an ill-timed agitation of the question, an unwise extension of the meaning of the doctrine.

EMINENT AMERICANS.

COMPRISING

Biographies of Distinguished Statesmen, Inventors, Financiers, Etc.

THE foregoing history of the United States may appropriately close with a concise account of the most famous of our celebrities. There are names that shine resplendent in the firmament of human achievement, and with them are associated triumphs and successes that can never perish from the annals of time. Not alone in the stormy period of the Revolution, or during the sanguinary struggle of the Civil War, do we gaze upon these illustrious ones. In more recent history there are those who challenge our admiration, and are an honor to our country. America is rich in her distinguished citizens, and in every walk of life, in every pursuit, we trace the footsteps of the giants who have given fame to the Republic, and whose noble deeds and achievements are among her proudest possessions.

THOMAS A. EDISON.

NO inventor since the world began has achieved greater distinction than Thomas A. Edison. He is nothing less than a phenomenon in the realm of science, more especially in that part of it which relates to electricity. His discoveries have been the wonder of the age, and have placed him in the front rank of inventors.

We find him at the age of ten reading the histories of Gibbon and Hume, yet his biographers assert that he went to school only two months in his boyhood. Like the vast majority of those men who have left a deep impression upon their time, he was born in poverty and obscurity, being conspicuously a self-made man. His education was under the direction of his mother, yet at best was but superficial.

Mr. Edison was born at Alva, Ohio, February 11th, 1847. As soon as he was old enough to become interested in any study, he showed great fondness for chemistry. This indicated the bent of his mind, and was a prophecy that the natural sciences would be his favorite pursuit. While he was employed as a newsboy on a railway train, he determined to learn telegraphy. Here was the beginning of that remarkable career, and of those discoveries which, if they have not revolutionized the telegraph system, have certainly promoted its efficiency and perfected its instruments. While residing at Adrian, Mich., he opened a shop for repairing telegraph instruments and making new machinery. Subsequently, at Indianapolis, he invented his automatic repeater, which was greatly in advance of any telegraph in-

strument then in existence, except the original one invented by Professor Morse.

Having lived a short time at Cincinnati, still devoting himself to electrical science, he removed to Boston, where he startled electricians with his duplex telegraph. Many attempts had previously been made to invent such an instrument, yet without success. Mr. Edison was still a young man, but having shown pre-eminent abilities, he was made president of the New York Gold Indicator Company, and moved his shops to Newark, N. J. He did not, however, remain long in the latter place, but, determining to devote himself exclusively to the work of invention, he established himself permanently at Menlo Park, where he has an extensive laboratory and is occupied constantly, with a large corps of assistants, in his various researches.

Mr. Edison's history is more than usually rich in incidents of an interesting character. When he was selling papers and candies on the trains of the Grand Trunk Railway, he was making a hobby of chemistry. At this time he was a mere boy. Not having any other facilities for experimenting, he constructed an amateur laboratory in one corner of a baggage-car. When other boys would have been at play, he was amusing and instructing himself in that corner. During his absence one day a bottle of phosphorus, by being upset, or in some way broken, set the car on fire. Grave doubts were entertained as to the propriety of having so dangerous a lad on board the train, and the baggage-master kicked his chemicals and apparatus out of the car, which did not, however, put an end to the boy's passion for chemistry. He improvised another laboratory in a different place, and continued his studies as before.

Mr. Edison was also at one time an amateur printer, and the publisher of a paper which bore the rather high-sounding title of *The Grand Trunk Herald*. It came about in this way: on one of his trips to Chicago, the publisher of one of the daily papers in that city made him a present of a lot of worn-out type. Thinking that this could be used to advantage, Edison established his journal which was filled with items of news that were of special interest to the hands employed on the railroad. During the great battle at Shiloh, he persuaded the telegraph operators to send reports of the engagement to the different stations along the road. This created an immense demand for papers, and the young newsboy reaped a handsome profit by supplying them.

About this time an incident occurred which has had an important influence on his life from that day to this. He proved himself to be a young hero one day by saving the child of a telegraph operator from being killed by a train. The father sought to reward him in some way, and was informed that the best reward, and one that would be the most acceptable, would be to teach the rescuer of his child the art of telegraphing. This being done, the lad provided himself with wires and batteries, and soon became quite an expert in the use of telegraphic instruments.

Naturally a mind so alert was constantly seeking out new inventions. He never saw an instrument without immediately asking himself whether it could not in some way be perfected. Very often his inventive genius would instantly discover something that had been entirely overlooked by the original inventor. Having pursued this plan all his life, his name has become identified with a vast number of inventions of various kinds—all this in addition to his own original dicoveries.

Having perfected himself as a telegraph operator, and being extremely expert, he readily secured a situation where he was ex-

pected to do night work, and was required to telegraph the word "Six" to the Superintendent, in order to let this man know he was at his post and wide-awake. It did not take him long to contrive a machine that did the work for him, and left him free without interruption to pursue his favorite study of chemistry. His clever trick was, however, discovered, and by reason of it he lost his situation.

It happened, while Mr. Edison was residing in New York, that one day the Western Union wire to Albany gave out, and no messages could be transmitted. The electricians of the company were baffled, and were unable to discover the trouble. After experimenting a number of days, as a last resort, they called in Mr. Edison. He obtained communication with Albany by way of Pittsburg. Then he requested the best operator at the other end of the line to sit at the machine, with whom he experimented for a couple of hours with currents of different intensity. He then told the officers of the company what the difficulty was, and exactly where it was located. This achievement gave him much reputation, and proved his pre-eminent ability as an electrician.

One of Mr. Edison's famous inventions is the Phonograph. The manner of its discovery shows the readiness with which he seizes upon every new fact, even every hint developed in the study of electrical science. He was at work upon an apparatus for recording a telegraphic message by making, with a needle, indentations on a piece of tin foil wrapped around the cylinder.

The message would thus be punctured or indented on this tin foil, then by substituting another needle—blunt—for the sharp one, and turning the cylinder, there would be a vibration as the needle entered into and passed out of the indentation. In the course of the experiments he turned the cylinder very rapidly, and instead of a succession of "clicks" a musical sound was produced. He seized the idea, and the Edison Phonograph is the result.

The perfected Phonograph of to-day consists of a cylinder of wax, or other plastic material, which is revolved either by hand, foot power or an electric motor. This cylinder, called the phonogram, is used for recording the sound. This is done by a diaphragm such as is used in a telephone, into the centre of which is fastened a sharp needle, which rests upon and just touches the phonogram.

When the words are spoken the diaphragm vibrates, moving this needle up and down, and a series of indentations are made in a spiral line on the phonogram, which is turning around about eighty-five times a minute. To make the Phonograph speak, or repeat the words, another diaphragm, having a blunt, instead of a sharp needle, is placed at the starting point, and the phonogram is made to revolve. Of course, as the needle passes over the indentations it vibrates the diaphragm, and the words are reproduced as in the Telephone. Thus we can get a faithful reproduction of instrumental music, songs, whistling, conversation, all sorts of sounds, and the phonograms can be packed into a mailing tube, and sent all over the world to be used as often as desired.

This certainly is a most remarkable invention. It shows what possibilities are connected with the science of electricity. If there are more wonders in heaven and earth than are dreamt of in our philosophy, a large proportion of them find their home in Mr. Edison's laboratory. His inventive genius is always alert and active. No new phase of electricity ever presents itself without starting the inquiry in his mind as to how it can be made to serve some useful and practical end. He has been so successful in devising strange things, such as were never before

dreamed of, that he has been given the appropriate title of "Wizard."

The idea of the Telephone has long been in existence. It was first practically applied in the construction of toys. One called the "Lover's String" was made in 1831, and is the simplest form of a Telephone. The discoveries and improvements of Mr. Edison have aided greatly in perfecting this instrument. The transmitter, constructed and improved by him and Blake, is combined with the Bell Telephone and makes the Telephone of general use. To such a state of perfection has the instrument been brought that over long distances, even between some of our great cities, communication can be successfully carried on.

Special mention must be made of Mr. Edison's invention for the multiplication, or printing of copies made by pen and ink and the typewriter. This is found very serviceable in large establishments that send out circulars, etc. Its fundamental principle is the stylus or point, the writing implement of man since the art was first invented. It is the natural tool by which the hand can trace characters, and it is this stylus or point, used in the instrument, which has created for it such a decided and permanent popularity.

The sheet of paper upon which the copy is to be printed is placed upon a blotter resting on the base-board beneath the stencil sheet, and the ink roller is passed over the stencil sheet, forcing the ink through perforations, thus making the impression upon the paper. This operation is repeated until the required number of copies are obtained. It is a quick and simple process of reproducing letters and circulars in quantities large or small.

One of the latest and most interesting inventions of Mr. Edison is the Kinetoscope, which is nothing more nor less than the reproduction of motion. The observer looks through a glass into a small cabinet and sees what appear to be living figures. They may be men or animals, and they are in action. Thus the movements of horses, children at play, men and women walking, exercises in gymnastics, etc., are faithfully reproduced. This, it must be admitted, is a marvelous triumph of inventive genius.

It is not too much to say that Mr. Edison's ideas have entered largely into all the electrical discoveries of recent time. He, or his assistants, prompted by his original conceptions, have contributed largely to all the scientific journals of the country. His inventions consist of improvements in the electric light and the telephone. He is also the inventor of the phonograph, the quadruplex and sextuplex transmitter, the microphone, the megaphone, the kinetoscope, the mimeograph, the electric pen, etc.

No one can foresee what discoveries are yet to be made in the science of electricity. The field is as wide as it is interesting. Already the marvels are on every side of us. Especially is the thought of electricians occupied with the endeavor to obtain a motive power that shall supersede steam. That this will be accomplished is certainly within the bounds of possibility; but whatever the future discoveries are to be, it is safe to predict that Mr. Edison will be among the foremost of those who achieve success in this department of science.

In person Mr. Edison is rather tall, somewhat stocky, with smooth face and a youthful expression. He is capable of a great amount of work and has been known to spend sixty hours consecutively in his laboratory without sleep. He bears the title of Count, which was conferred upon him in Italy, in honor of his brilliant discoveries.

CHAUNCEY M. DEPEW.

THERE are Americans who do not need to be placed in official position, who do not need to be Governors, Senators or Presidents, to exert a commanding influence and stand in the eye of the nation. They are capable of winning celebrity in more private walks. Some of our most distinguished citizens have never been placed to any considerable extent under political responsibility. There are those who appear to be naturally outside of office, if not altogether superior to it. Their worth lies entirely in themselves irrespective of position or surroundings.

If one were asked to name the most eminent citizens of our country Chauncey Mitchell Depew would be mentioned as one of them. His fame has gone into all parts of the land, among men of business, politicians, leaders of thought, those who are especially interested in moral reform—in fact, among all classes of our citizens Mr. Depew is known for his estimable qualities, his intellectual ability and his genial nature. He did, indeed, at one time hold office, but this was many years ago, and, while he has always been interested in politics, and has even been suggested as the candidate of his party for the Presidency, he does not appear to have sought distinctions of this description.

Mr. Depew is a man of broad and liberal education. He was born in Peekskill, N. Y., April 23, 1834. Even in his boyhood he was a gifted declaimer, and gave prophecy then of his distinguished career as an orator. The old saying that "the boy is the father to the man" is illustrated in his case. He graduated from Yale College in 1856, having taken high rank during his course, especially in the department of rhetoric and oratory. Many were the contests he had in college, and many were the times that he emerged from them with complete success. His social disposition, his breezy manner, his happy knack of merry-making and his fund of anecdote, rendered him a general favorite.

In 1858 he began practicing law, considering that this profession furnished the widest opportunities for such abilities as he could command. His public career as an orator was begun in 1856 in the Fremont campaign. At this time he identified himself with the young Republican party, of which he has since been a prominent and enthusiastic member. He became widely known throughout the eastern part of New York for his pithy and eloquent stump-speeches, and very soon found himself in favor with the older leaders of the party. His youth, his self-possession, his fluency, his grasp of the subjects he treated, his unbounded enthusiasm, drew immediate attention and marked a coming man.

In 1861 he was sent to the Legislature of New York, and two years later he was elected Secretary of State, declining a re-election two years subsequently. He found it necessary to devote his time somewhat exclusively to his profession, considering that this was his legitimate calling, and to pursue it would prove of lasting benefit to him in the end. In 1866 he was chosen attorney for the New York and Harlem Railroad, and, three years later, when the railroad was consolidated with the New York Central, he became general counsel of the company. He was elected second Vice-President of the Central Railroad in 1882, and the following year President of the "Vanderbilt roads."

In person Mr. Depew is above the medium height, has prominent features and a clear, penetrating voice that can be heard by the largest audiences.

PHILIP D. ARMOUR.

THE ancient classic nations were in the habit of speaking of the seven wonders of the world. If we were asked to give a list of the seven wonders of America, the city of Chicago would most assuredly be one of them. It sits like a queen at the feet of the great chain of lakes which, taken together, are nothing less than an immense inland sea. Its growth has been rapid and phenomenal. Within the memory of living men, it was only a village, located on marshy ground, then giving no promise of becoming the great metropolis of the West.

The explanation of this remarkable growth is something which does not especially concern us. That location has had much to do with it is doubtless true. Here is a wonderful centre of railroads, branching out into all parts of the West. Here are facilities for navigation which are unsurpassed by those of any inland waters on the face of the globe. Lying around Chicago, and extending through leagues of fertile territory, are farms and homesteads which have sprung into existence with startling rapidity. Chicago looks out upon a vast country that may appropriately be called the garden of America, producing grains, cattle, sheep and swine, in almost boundless affluence. Naturally these must all have a market, a central point for distribution to other parts of the country and the eastern world.

While all these causes have combined to render Chicago a city whose growth has been extraordinary, it is no less true that much is due to the enterprise of her citizens, among whom are numbered men of broad ideas, exceptional business ability, and an integrity made of gold unmixed with dross. One of these citizens whose remarkable successes have given fame to Chicago is Mr. Philip D. Armour—a full-grown man, looked at from every point of view, whose business career, whose unimpeachable character and faithful endeavors in every walk of life, have made him conspicuous in the city of his residence and widely known throughout the country. He was born in Stockbridge, N. Y., May 16, 1832, and received his education in the district school of his native town.

Like many young men, he was under the impression that some other part of the country than the one in which he was born and reared would afford a wider field for activity and success, and started out to seek his fortune, going to California in 1851. This was only two or three years after the discovery of gold, but Mr. Armour found, even at that time, that fortunes are not picked up in a day, and he was doomed to disappointment. In 1856, he left California, convinced that he could do better elsewhere.

Still, it is true that even at this time he exhibited those qualities of industry, tact and perseverance, which have since distinguished him and are really the secret of the success that has made him a millionaire, or it would be more correct to say, a multi-millionaire, for his possessions must be numbered among the millions. Mr. Armour went to Milwaukee, Wis., where he embarked in the commission business, meeting with the success that might be expected from a man of his ability. He saw that there was a wide and growing field in the provision trade, that the West was destined, if not to feed the world, yet to contribute largely toward it, and this led to the widening of his plans and the beginning of the business in which he has made his fame and fortune.

In connection with John Plankington, of Milwaukee, he established a packing house, and for a number of years devoted to the business his time and energies. This was in

1863, and in 1868 the Chicago establishment of P. D. Armour & Co. was founded, which has branch houses in Kansas City and New York, and extends its trade all over the world. These packing houses are immense establishments, and, except by actual observation, no one would be able to get an accurate idea of the vast business that is carried on.

To one unused to such sights, the rapidity with which live animals are converted into provisions, ready to be shipped, is something amazing. Various mechanical arrangements are in use, and inventive genius has employed itself in furnishing facilities for expediting the work. Many as are the remarkable sights of Chicago, a visit to the packing houses of P. D. Armour & Co. is one of the most interesting and one that is seldom omitted by strangers. That a business should have grown up in a few years so large as to extend itself into all parts of the world, is a high tribute to the enterprise of its controlling head, and to the resources of the great West.

Mr. Armour does not believe in turning his business over to others and merely supervising it in a general way. Like all successful business men, he has a rare faculty for dealing with details. The imprint of his hand is on every part of the great enterprises he carries on; his personality is felt everywhere. Among all the thousands of his employees there is probably not one who performs the daily amount of labor that he does himself. He is not a man to merely say, "Do this, or that," but is himself a worker, and is always found at his post.

At the same time Mr. Armour is a very benevolent man, giving away large sums of money and doing this, not merely by spasmodic contribution, but as a daily habit. He not only gets, but he gives, and in this respect his ideas and activities are on a scale with the vast plans that enter into his business. The Armour Mission is one of the religious institutions of Chicago, and he is not content merely to provide the ways and means, but also shows his interest in the work by his personal presence and supervision.

Thus it will be seen that Mr. Armour is something more than a man of business, confining his thoughts and energies entirely to his own immediate concerns. As a citizen he is interested in public affairs, although he has never sought office. He has been willing that others should occupy positions which could have been filled most satisfactorily by a man of his ability and character. Honors would have been placed upon him by his fellow-citizens if he had been willing to receive them; but he has never sought them, and when they have sought him he has gracefully declined.

While such a man would doubtless have achieved great success in any pursuit, it seems evident that Mr. Armour luckily found the one to which he was especially adapted. He has given very close attention to it, and from first to last has been a working man. He has no time to waste. With him life means unremitting labor and the furtherance of his great enterprises. It is impossible to conceive of a man possessed of his energy and business capacity contenting himself with meagre results. He does not look at obstacles and hesitate; he masters them by the force of his will and the energy of his active nature. His honorable career is well worthy to be recorded as an example and a stimulus to others who are engaged in industrial pursuits.

One of the most magnificent presents Chicago ever received was from him, and the Armour Institute, fully endowed, stands not only as one of the finest ornaments of the city, but also as a monument that will perpetuate the memory and philanthropic disposition of the founder.

THOMAS B. REED.

THE history of our country shows that in every great crisis and emergency men have come forward who were equal to the occasion. An extraordinary demand has always developed extraordinary characters and has been fruitful in remarkable achievements. From the period of the Revolution down to the present time, statesmen who would compare favorably with those of any other nation, have appeared upon the scene of action. Those who established our national policy and guided the young republic through its early career, were not more conspicuous than those who, in later times, have shaped the events whose record is written upon the enduring pages of history. It is but just to say that our nation has been gifted with wise and able statesmen, nor do we need to go far back to discover their names.

Stormy times always bring grand men to the front, the occasion affording opportunity for leaders of intellectual force, heroic courage and glowing patriotism. It has been no light task to guide American affairs during the period immediately following our great Civil War. The conflict of opinions has raged under the dome of the Capitol. This was only to be expected, for a nation like ours, covering so vast an extent of territory, the life of which is composed of interests so varied, and where there is always a strong local feeling, must find that there will be differences of opinion respecting many questions of national policy.

Few men have lately occupied more public attention than Thomas Brackett Reed, a man constructed on a broad plan, with abundance of material put into his original composition, and physically and intellectually the peer of the most conspicuous Americans who have gone before him. As a party leader, he has shown pre-eminent abilities, while at the same time he possesses the elements of personal popularity to a remarkable degree. He appears to have gained his full growth, is not confined within narrow limits, and is so ample in thought, energy and deed, that he must be considered a grand outgrowth of American institutions.

Mr. Reed was born in Maine, October 18th, 1839. After the usual common-school education, which the most of American boys are fortunate in being able to obtain, he continued his studies and graduated at Bowdoin College in 1860. The choice of his profession was that of law, and he immediately began its study after leaving College. For a short time he was diverted from the practice of his profession, becoming acting paymaster in the Navy in 1864. Here, however, he remained only a year, and then resumed his profession.

His comprehensive knowledge of current politics and his sound Republican principles made him widely known in his own locality, and he was honored with an election to the lower branch of the Maine Legislature in 1868. At the next election, he was made Senator and was transferred to the upper house. For two years he was attorney-general of the State, and city solicitor for Portland for a term of four years. During all this time his reputation was extending, his marked qualities were showing themselves, his strong individuality was attracting observation, and it became evident that he had abundant qualifications for a sphere of the widest political action.

The next step in his career was his election to Congress, in 1876. He has since been continuously re-elected, a fact in itself affording sufficient evidence of his great popularity and the unbounded confidence reposed in

him by his constituents. It was soon admitted in Washington that a man of extraordinary parts had taken his seat in the House of Representatives. He did not commit the error of expressing his views on every little subject, on every little occasion, but when the turning-points came and matters of weighty import were to be decided, Mr. Reed stood in the centre of the arena, a valiant champion of his party faith, and an opponent with whom few dared to measure arms.

Mr. Reed showed an intricate knowledge of parliamentary law and usages, having made the conduct of public business a special study. He was quick to detect any blunder or mistake in the deliberations and modes of procedure on the floor of the House. Naturally he became the leader of his party, having a clear and comprehensive conception of its principles, and being able to express his views with such force and eloquence as to command attention. He assumed his position at the front without effort, without courting favor, purely upon his own merits as a statesman of broad views, generous impulses, magnetic force and calm judgment.

He became the central figure of the Republican party, and in the Fifty-first Congress was elected Speaker of the House. It soon became evident that a man of stern will and remarkable executive ability was in the chair. Business was to go on. The country expected legislation and was to have it. The subterfuges and delays for defeating measures of public importance were to be branded as infamous. The old-time usages and rules which blocked legislative machinery were to be dragged forth and slain, as Samuel hewed Agag in pieces before the Lord in Gilgal.

Of course, there was a stir among the dry bones. It had never been so seen in Washington before. A new man was at the helm, a new life and vigor were infused into the deliberations and actions of the House of Representatives. Men who had resorted to the most unscrupulous methods for defeating projects which they did not favor, were respectfully but firmly told to take a back seat. Rules were adopted for "counting a quorum," and permitting public business to be transacted, a very wise and indispensable proceeding, as would be said by any man of common sense. It was justly concluded that where something was expected to be done, it was the height of idiocy and obstinacy to allow a small minority to paralyze all action, resulting in the doing of nothing.

As might have been expected, a storm of criticism was awakened. In the midst of it all Mr. Reed stood like a rock, conscious that he was right and that the position he had taken was a public necessity. Americans do not like a weak man. They had found a strong one, and the entire approbation of his party sustained Mr. Reed and applauded his administration. He was unmoved by assaults, bitter criticisms, storms of vituperation. His enemies gave him the title of "Czar," berated what they called his tyranny, yet inwardly respected him and bowed before the majesty of his will. Time has justified fully the position Mr. Reed assumed, and the very rules which the minority opposed they were compelled to adopt when they became the majority. Mr. Reed's views upon great public questions are so well known as to require little reference here. Suffice it to say, he is a thorough American, believes in a strong foreign policy, is an advocate of reasonable protection to American industries, and stands with his windows open to the light, ready for any and all measures that will promote the widest public welfare.

In personal characteristics and force of character Mr. Reed is a typical American and seems abundantly able to bear the responsibilities which have fallen to his lot as a public man.

MELVILLE W. FULLER.

LAWYERS of high reputation are found in all parts of our country, and here, more than in almost any other profession, it is difficult to draw distinctions and say that one is superior to another. Taken as a whole, the profession of law exhibits keen intellectual ability and marked oratorical power.

Some members of the profession have been eminent as jurists, such as Chief Justice Marshall and Chief Justice Chase. Others have been eloquent pleaders, like Webster and Choate. Others have excelled in that intellectual acuteness which is especially required in untangling the meshes of the law.

It is true that very able jurists have been placed upon the bench of the Supreme Court. Yet these never have enjoyed a monopoly of legal talent. Others of equal ability might have been elevated to the same position, fulfilling its duties with equal efficiency.

The subject of this sketch did not have a national reputation until he was nominated for Chief Justice by President Cleveland and promptly confirmed by the Senate. That such an honor is great is universally conceded; it is one of the highest that can be conferred. It has been said that the Supreme Court is peculiarly the pride and glory of our country. Although this was said by a member of the Court and appears to have a touch of self-praise about it, nevertheless it must be admitted to be true. Here is the tribunal of last resort. Here questions are decided which pertain even to the Constitution and government of the country. Matters of the gravest import are constantly before the Court, vast interests hinging upon their decision. Beyond this tribunal there is no appeal. Its word is final and is not to be disputed. Its decisions pass into laws, into principles of action, and even become a part of our unwritten Constitution.

History furnishes a record of many tribunals, some just, some unjust, some cruel, some merciful, some pure, and many corrupt, but in all the long story of civilization from ancient Egypt down through the Greek and Roman Empires to the present day, there can be found no judicial organization more worthy of high honor and profound respect than the Supreme Court of the United States.

Intimately interwoven as its proceedings have been with the national and individual life of our people, calmly deciding, as it has, matters of the gravest import, involving vast measures of wealth, political consequences unmeasurable in mere money, and questions on the turn of which hung millions of lives, no taint of suspicion ever sullied its honor, the serious charge has seldom made, even in the heat of sectional strife and bitterness, that its decision, or the decisions of its individual members, were guided by aught save the cold, passionless mandate of the law, clothed with the significance that each one attached to its utterance.

It was characterized by an eminent jurist as "The court which interprets the living voice of the Constitution." "In whatever has concerned the national welfare, this court has," he said, "always stood for the conscience of the people of the United States."

The character and eminence of its members must ever be a subject of deepest interest to all Americans, for it is readily conceivable that without a Marshall, a Waite, a Storey and a Chase, as Chief Justices, our national and political development might have proceeded upon lines far different from the ones which it has followed.

The position held by the Supreme Court, the importance of the cases brought to its judgment and the far-reaching effects of its decisions, require jurists of the most profound learning, the widest experience, the utmost

patience and candor, and personal characters above reproach. That Mr. Fuller meets these requirements to a most eminent degree, is universally admitted. He was born in Augusta, Maine, February 11, 1833, and twenty years later graduated from Bowdoin College, an institution which has been peculiarly favored in its distinguished graduates. Having studied law at Harvard College, Mr. Fuller entered upon the practice of his profession in his native city in 1855.

His mind seems to have had a leaning toward journalism, and he became the editor of the *Augusta Age*, while at the same time he became prominent in local politics, having been made president of the Common Council during his editorship. In 1856 he was elected City Attorney. But, like many young men born and reared in New England, he was seized with the Western fever, and determined to go West to find a wider field for his energies. He removed to Chicago, where, for thirty-two years, he conducted a highly successful law practice, having gained immediately a wide reputation for legal acumen, and for honorable methods in the management of his cases.

At the same time, he did not divorce himself from public affairs. He was a member of the Illinois Constitutional Convention in 1862, and of the Illinois House of Representatives in 1863. A strong Democrat, he served as a delegate to all the national Conventions from 1864 to 1880 inclusive, and was always prominent in the councils of his party, where his word had the greatest influence. His successful career naturally pointed to a higher position of service than he had hitherto occupied. Not only the men of his own party, but his fellow-citizens generally looked upon him as an able, honorable and upright man.

When President Cleveland selected him to fill the vacancy on the Supreme Bench of the United States caused by the death of Chief Justice Waite, the choice was pronounced a wise one by those who knew Mr. Fuller best. Those who had not known him were somewhat surprised at his selection, but subsequent events have justified the wisdom of the choice. He was confirmed by the Senate July 20, 1888, and took the oath of office on the 8th of October following.

In the social life of Washington, Mr. Fuller and his family are widely known, making it a point to entertain their friends and show attention to strangers. Their delightful hospitalities are widely extended and thoroughly enjoyed. A large family of daughters, bright and well educated, lend attraction to the home. These have been reared, not after the straight-laced fashion, but, while placed under judicious parental restraint, they have been allowed such freedom as develops individuality of character, and, to a considerable extent, independence of action. They think for themselves, have opinions of their own, and are fully equal to all the social functions in which they are required to take part.

Mr. Fuller has received the degree of LL.D. from Bowdoin College, and also from the Northwestern University. This is simply the recognition of those distinguished abilities which have placed him at the head of the highest judicial tribunal in the land. In person he is of medium height and build, and not at all remarkable for what we are in the habit of calling "presence." His hair is white and is worn long; his face smooth, with the exception of a somewhat heavy mustache. His features are clear cut, giving evidence of the scholar and the thinker.

His decisions are marked by learning, profound insight into the merits of the case, and a simplicity and clearness of expression which render them capable of being comprehended by the average mind.

JOHN WANAMAKER.

THE career of no business man in the United States has been more successful than that of John Wanamaker. From the poor boy to the foremost merchant of our time, is an amazing step. Others may be accounted self-made men, miracles we might call them of energy and achievement, but to no other does the term phenomenal apply with as much force as it does to the subject of this sketch.

Not only is Mr. Wanamaker the greatest merchant in America, he is also one of our greatest men. By this we do not mean that he is brilliant from all points of view, that he is a profound scholar or a great orator, but in all the elements which go to form a true and noble manhood, a man successful in all his undertakings, and a private and public citizen of pre-eminent worth and influence, he may be considered unique.

It has been quite customary for instructors of the rising generation to point to Mr. Wanamaker as a shining example for young men. The young as well as the old learn best from object lessons. That Mr. Wanamaker should have been selected so frequently as a pattern for imitation is not surprising to those who know him best. Standing conspicuously as he does before the public, it is not to be wondered at that he should have his critics, perhaps even enemies. All positive characters do have them, and it is greatly to their credit that they do. What impresses one especially is, that Mr. Wanamaker has so many sides to his character, and shows so much of genius, not only in one direction, but in many. It is not too much to say that if he had been engaged in any other pursuit than the mercantile, he would instantly have come to the front.

The secret of all this is simply in the man himself. Having the ability, it cannot help exhibiting itself under all circumstances. The man who is a natural-born leader is pretty sure to lead wherever you place him. He carries in his own strong will and iron arm successes beyond the reach of feebler men. Such an one does not need to have greatness thrust upon him; he is great already. The world always has estimated, and always will estimate, men by their successes. Judged by this inevitable standard, Mr. Wanamaker is a Saul among the Prophets.

He was born in Philadelphia, July 11, 1838; attended a country school until he was fourteen, and there obtained about the only education he ever received. His first place was that of messenger boy with the publishing house of Troutman & Hayes, at the exceedingly modest salary of $1.25 a week. He lived over four miles from the store, and footed it morning and evening, eating at noon the plain lunch brought with him from home, put up for him by a loving mother's hands. Subsequently the family lived for a time in Kosciusko County, Indiana, but returned to Philadelphia in 1856, where young Wanamaker eventually obtained employment in Tower Hall, then the largest clothing house in that city.

At the outbreak of the Civil War in 1861, when he was twenty-three years old, he married Miss Brown, and, having obtained a very small capital, he went into the clothing business in partnership with his brother-in-law. Here the qualities of the man began to show themselves, and he became conspicuous for that business shrewdness, push, and perseverance, enterprise, courage, and breadth of views which have distinguished him ever since.

Of course, the business prospered and grew rapidly, until in time his clothing house became the largest in America. A second

store was opened in the city, and afterwards several branch houses in other parts of the country. It is noticeable that from early manhood Mr. Wanamaker devoted himself enthusiastically to religious work, his activity in this respect keeping pace with that displayed in his business. He established a mission school in what was then a poor, neglected part of the city, so infested with rough, criminal characters, that it was scarcely safe for a respectable citizen to walk through its streets after nightfall.

This mission has grown to amazing proportions. It was the forerunner of the great Bethany Church and Sunday-schools, which have attracted attention, not merely in Philadelphia, but in all parts of the country. It may as well be said here that in connection with Bethany, advantages have been offered to young persons in humble circumstances for the study of various secular branches, a knowledge of which is intended to prepare them for business life. Moreover, arrangements have been made for the founding of an institute which will cost from one to two million dollars, where at a nominal rate young persons of both sexes can pursue academical studies, and have ample opportunities for manual training. This is one of Mr. Wanamaker's crowning achievements.

After the Centennial Exhibition of 1876, with the financial management of which he was prominently connected, he opened the great general store in Philadelphia which continues to be one of the wonders of the age. It occupies an entire square in one direction and half this space in another. The building was once a large freight depot, and when Mr. Wanamaker conceived the idea of opening a store of such gigantic dimensions it was freely prophesied that he would fail. Notwithstanding all reports to the contrary, there has doubtless never been a time when Mr. Wanamaker was anywhere near the point of failing. Failure does not seem to be in the man.

Mr. Wanamaker's methods of conducting business have shown his original genius. These have been quite different from those long pursued, being especially noticeable in the liberality shown to the public. They are made to feel quite at home in the great establishment, are treated with the utmost courtesy, and if, after making purchases, these are not satisfactory, they can be returned. The theory is, that to treat the public liberally pays.

Quite naturally Mr. Wanamaker became prominent as a citizen and public man. He appeared to have no ambition for office, but for many years was fully occupied with the management of his vast concerns. His counsel and advice were, however, often sought, and it is probable that no preferment within the gift of his native city would have been denied him. But he was destined to hold a much higher position and one that would identify him with the affairs of the nation at large. Having many times declined public office, in 1889 he accepted the portfolio of Postmaster-General in President Harrison's Cabinet, and introduced into the department the most approved business methods. His efficient administration did much toward perfecting and extending the postal service.

Mr Wanamaker has long been distinguished for his liberal contributions to benevolent work, and it is certain that more than one institution, endowed by his munificence, will stand as a monument to his business capacity and liberal spirit.

He takes the view that a considerable part of his vast estate should be distributed during his lifetime under his own care and supervision. He is not willing merely to part with his money when compelled to by grim death, after the example of a great many.

CHARLES FREDERICK CRISP.

MR. CRISP has been a well-known figure in Congress since the period of his first election. He had gained a wide celebrity in Georgia, had shown himself, in various ways, to be a man suited to leadership, and his elevation to the House of Representatives was only to be expected, and was a worthy tribute to the man. He seems to have been by nature marked out for political life, and it will be generally admitted that in Washington he found his appropriate sphere.

Mr. Crisp was born in Sheffield, England, January 20, 1845. His parents were Americans, temporarily residing in England, and returned to this country in 1846, when the subject of the sketch was about one year old. Thus, although Mr. Crisp is not a native of the United States, he comes as near it as one possibly can, being distinctively American by parentage and education.

The family having settled in Georgia, the boy was placed in the common schools, where he received his education. While quick to learn and exhibiting qualities of mind much above the average, he also displayed marked traits which have been prominent through all his subsequent career. He was independent, positive, aggressive, and self-reliant. He was not in the habit of allowing any of his rights to be invaded without showing quick resentment. In time, he became a leader among the young men by whom he was surrounded, and over whom he exerted great influence.

Even at this period he seemed to combine in a remarkable degree wise foresight and judgment with impetuous force. He was evidently born to be a power in whatever sphere or circumstances placed him. He shared the spirit of the South which flamed out in secession, and in this he was only like the great body of young men in the Southern States. It is a well-known fact that quite largely the Confederate Army was composed of this class. They were strong in their convictions; they were eager for action in the field; they were willing to take risks and make sacrifices. They did not count their lives dear to them, and history shows that tens of thousands of them fell upon the battle-field, reddening its sod with their warm blood.

In 1861 Mr. Crisp entered the Confederate army as a lieutenant. He saw a good deal of active service in the field, showed himself to be a good soldier, and won the approbation of his superiors. He was a prisoner of war from May, 1864, until June, 1865. After his release he studied law, and practiced first at Ellaville, and afterward at Americus, Ga., which latter place became his subsequent home. He quickly took high rank in his profession, and gained rapid prominence, being well thought of by older lawyers as well as by the community in which he lived.

In 1872 he was appointed solicitor-general of the South-western Judicial Court, and held that office until the middle of 1877, when he became judge of the Superior Court of the same circuit. He showed himself to be fully equipped for the exacting duties of his position, lending dignity to his office, and evincing that impartial spirit which properly belongs to the occupant of the judicial bench. He could have remained in this position if he had chosen, but whether satisfied with his successes or not, his fellow-citizens had already expressed their wishes to have him represent them at Washington.

He resigned from the bench in September, 1882, to accept the Democratic nomination for Congress. He was permanent president of the Democratic Convention which assem-

bled in Atlanta in April, 1883, to nominate a candidate for governor. Thus his steps all seemed to be in the natural order of things, one following the other in a kind of logical sequence. He was elected to the Forty-eighth Congress, and immediately took high rank among the members of the House, being prominent on all occasions in the deliberations of his party, and regarded as one of the wisest and most efficient leaders.

When the Democratic party came into power with Mr. Cleveland's second administration, Mr. Crisp was unanimously selected to assume the responsible duties of Speaker of the House, and was chosen to that position. His knowledge of parliamentary law, his experience upon the floor of Congress, his character for impartial judgment, gained when connected with the courts of his adopted State, all marked him out as possessing the necessary qualifications for the Speakership. During the sessions of the Fifty-second Congress he added greatly to his reputation, and it was generally conceded that he was a worthy successor of the able presiding officers who had gone before him.

Even his political opponents agreed that his rulings and decisions showed at all times careful consideration, and were unbiased by prejudice.

In manner, Mr. Crisp is a type of the cultivated gentleman, urbane, cordial, courteous, and approachable upon all occasions. Possessed of great independence and resolution, always looking at public questions from a practical point of view, firm in the maintenance of his opinions, and immovable as a rock when conscious that he is in the right, he affords a central point around which the sentiment of his party shapes itself. In debate, he is incisive, fluent, forcible, and ordinarily shows a thorough study and complete grasp of his subject.

He has proved himself to be a formidable antagonist, and many are the weapons of lesser men that have been broken upon his shield, and have fallen harmless at his feet. At times his utterances are bold and almost defiant, yet his evident sincerity assures him a respectful hearing, while the honesty of his convictions is always plainly apparent. Taking him all in all, he is a typical representative of the locality from which he comes and of the party whose ideas and principles he holds with tenacity and expounds with such marked ability.

After the shifting fortunes of political parties had deprived Mr. Crisp of his position at the head of the House of Representatives, he resumed his place on the floor to represent again the district that had repeatedly honored him. He did not seem to lose interest in national legislation, but, although acting with the minority, and knowing beforehand that measures advocated by himself and friends were not certain to be passed, he did not relax his vigilance, or in any way diminish his efforts in behalf of what he deemed essential to the public welfare.

By common consent he was the leader of his party, and, being so regarded, he had the chief voice in its deliberations. His entire history as a public man had been so free from mistakes, and so contrary to the intrigues of the mere self-seeking partisan, that he commanded the utmost respect and confidence. It was sufficient to know what were his views on public questions in order to gather around him a strong and loyal band of supporters.

Not that he has ever been in the habit of exercising a domineering spirit, or of showing any attempt to override the honest convictions of other men. His appeal has always been to reason and common sense. Mr. Crisp's native qualities have been his success; at the same time they have been quickened by a broad culture and large experience.

MARSHALL FIELD.

GIVEN the man and the opportunity, and the combination is complete. The opportunity is the great West, even the world; the man is Marshall Field.

There is no special merit in being an Eastern boy or being born even in Massachusetts. Yet, in numerous instances, our Eastern boys, who are the flowering and the growth of a hard-headed, industrious, thrifty ancestry, have honored their parentage, have amassed fortunes and risen to enviable positions in every walk of life. It is useless to say that nothing depends upon the kind of stuff of which a young man is made. No one can sharpen a stick and make of it a razor.

That enterprises should be conducted on a grand scale in Chicago and other parts of the West, is only to be expected. Man's plans appear to follow nature's, and nature's plans in America are broad and comprehensive. Our rivers are more than rivulets, our prairies are more than garden patches, our Northern lakes have a suggestion of the sea about them, and in keeping with this breadth and fulness is American enterprise. We are an ambitious, nervous, pushing, money-making people. The Eastern boy, in fact, every boy, has dreams of a fortune.

Marshall Field was born in Conway, Mass., in 1835. His father was a farmer, and that, too, in a locality where it is no easy matter to make two blades of grass grow where one grew before. It was not needful that the father should make fortunes and successes for the son; the son had fortunes and successes in himself. He went to Chicago in 1856 and obtained employment in the wholesale dry-goods house of Cooley, Wadsworth & Co., afterward Cooley, Farwell & Co., and subsequently the John V. Farwell Company.

In 1860 he obtained an interest in the concern, but in 1865 Mr. Field and L. Z. Leiter withdrew from the house, and in connection with Potter Palmer organized the firm of Field, Palmer & Leiter. Mr. Palmer withdrew in 1867, and the firm became Field, Leiter & Co. Since the retirement of Mr. Leiter, in 1881, the house has been known by the name of Marshall Field & Co.

To say that its business has been extended, not only throughout America, but into other parts of the world, until it is, perhaps, the most extensive of its kind of which we have any record, speaks volumes for the tact and enterprise, sound judgment and persevering energy of those who have had the management of it. While Mr. Field has been associated with men of ability and not capable of making many mistakes, his guiding thought and practical business talent have been displayed throughout.

This great mercantile establishment has branches in Paris, Manchester, Yokohama and other foreign centres, and carries on a business that amounts to many million dollars a year—just how many it would be difficult to say, for the reason that in every mercantile establishment the volume of business may vary according to times and circumstances. The amount of labor involved in starting, extending and conducting a business of such vast proportions can be known only to those by whom the burden has been borne.

Let no one suppose for a moment that there has been any recklessness which rushes on without taking any thought of consequences. There has been a conservative management on the one hand, and a bold, energetic, forward movement on the other. There has been nothing whatever in the nature of wild speculation. There has been no jumping at chances, but in a straightforward, mathema-

tical way, business has been pushed, and the results could almost be foreseen. This seems to have been the great cardinal principle on which Mr. Field has always acted. When financial depressions have come, and every morning's bulletin made startling announcements of failures, he has been able to meet the emergencies and conquer all threatening disaster. It is said that his rule is to never borrow, never give a note, never to speculate in stocks, and to buy for cash.

He has never considered himself under any obligation to be influenced by the whims and caprices of the hour. When others have departed from sound business principles and have extended credits in order to quicken the pulses of trade, he has marked the line of danger and has pursued an opposite course.

Moreover, he has always conducted his dealings with a view to gain the confidence of the public, guaranteeing the quality of the goods sold, and absolutely refusing to sell goods of inferior character. Confidence is one of the corner-stones of sound and successful business. The man who deals honestly and justly, who is willing to make his word good, and who will stand by every statement made, is the one who will draw custom and reap a corresponding benefit. Honesty is not only right, but it is the best policy. All policy aside, honesty should be the rule of action because it *is* right.

In Mr. Field's long business career, he has, of course, encountered difficulties, and has sometimes been placed in trying positions. He was a sufferer from the great fire in 1871, which laid a large part of Chicago in ashes. Although well insured, so many of the insurance companies failed that his losses were immense. He turned away from the smouldering ruins of his establishment, and with new energy and courage started afresh. On the corner of State and 20th Streets were some horse-car sheds that had been spared by the fire; these were rented, business was re-established, and in the following year new stores were ready to be occupied. Other buildings have been erected since, as they were needed, equipped with all facilities and admirably adapted to their purpose.

In 1873 came the great panic which affected the business of the entire country. Few such periods of depression have ever been known, and many of the strongest concerns, some of which were almost becoming venerable through their long careers of prosperity, were compelled to succumb. But Mr. Field's house owed nothing, had an excellent class of customers, who had paid their bills up to within two months of the time when the panic fell with such disastrous results, and it stood like a rock. Never has there been a time since it was founded when it could not promptly meet its obligations.

The business continued to grow steadily until, in 1885, it was necessary to erect another building. This was constructed of granite and sandstone, and is one of the most substantial and conveniently arranged dry-goods establishments in the world. Building after building has been added to the retail store to meet the growing demands of the business.

Mr. Field has never been infatuated with the idea of making money merely to hoard it up. His charities are large and without ostentation. He has been a public-spirited citizen, taking an interest in all that concerned the growth and welfare of Chicago. Many institutions have profited by his liberal bequests. He gave one million dollars to the Columbian Museum fund, has been a large contributor to the Chicago University, and in numberless private channels has shown his benevolent spirit. It is but simple truth to say that he is a noble specimen, not only of the merchant-prince, but of the highest type of man.

JOHN SHERMAN.

OUR Civil War and the stirring times that followed it have developed some statesmen of distinguished ability, who will long be remembered and honored for the invaluable services they have rendered to the nation. There is always a large class of people prating about the "good old times," telling how superior the early statesmen were to those of more recent date, glorifying the founders of the Republic, and implying that with their death a large part of our national capacity for public affairs went out of existence, never to return.

It is well to be patient with those who live in the shadow of bygone days, although we may be compelled to pity their simplicity. They show very little knowledge of current history, if they imagine that all the virtue and all the statesmanship belong to a past generation. With all due respect to the ability of that great class of heroes and patriots whose deeds have given lustre to our early American history, it must yet be remembered that there are giants in these days, and that the next generation will outline their figures in grand proportions, as we do those of former times.

The name of John Sherman has been closely associated with our national affairs for more than thirty years. During this long period few men have wrought more valiantly, have stood out more prominently in the eye of the nation, have marked their career with greater achievements or have committed fewer mistakes. An eminently wise and safe man he has been. Always strong in his party convictions, he has yet been something more than a politician. He was originally freighted with material sufficient to enable him to fill every position he has occupied, so that it has never been said of him that he was unequal to the occasion. From early manhood he has given to the public an impression of massive strength, great intellectual insight, close familiarity with public affairs unswerving integrity, and an ability, especially in the matter of finances, second to that of no other man in the nation. To write Mr. Sherman's history is to write his eulogy.

He was born in Lancaster, Ohio, May 10, 1823. When he was but six years old his father died, leaving a large family in reduced circumstances, and he was subsequently adopted by a relative living at Mt. Vernon, Ohio. At the age of twelve a sister took charge of him and put him in a school at Lancaster, where he acquired an education.

He studied law with his brother, C. T. Sherman, at Mansfield, where he afterward practiced for ten years, and where he was married, in 1848, to a daughter of James Stewart. He was looked upon as a rising man, and gained a distinction which was not confined to the limits of his profession. His neighbors and friends believed that he possessed unusual qualifications for public life

In 1855 he was elected to the 34th Congress in the interest of the Free Soil party, and was re-elected to the 35th and 36th Congresses. He became a power on the floor and in committees, and was recognized as the foremost man in the House, particularly in matters affecting finance. He was again elected to Congress in 1860, but in the following year was chosen to the United States Senate, where he at once became a leader. After the close of the Civil War he and Thaddeus Stevens prepared the bill for the reconstruction of the Southern States, which was passed by Congress in the winter of 1866–67.

In March, 1877, Senator Sherman was

appointed by President Hayes, Secretary of the Treasury, a position which he retained until the close of Mr. Hayes' administration, in 1881, when he re-entered the Senate, of which he has been a member ever since, having discharged his duties with such fidelity and efficiency as to insure his continual re-election. Few men have ever had such confidence placed in them, and few have ever done so little to disappoint it. Having made the subjects of Finance and Revenue a special study, he was looked upon as eminently fitted for his position in the Cabinet, and when he returned to the Senate and there found grave problems confronting the country, he addressed himself earnestly to the task of solving them and putting the finances of the nation upon a sound basis. It was due to his management, while at the head of the Treasury, that the resumption of specie payments was effected in 1879, without disturbance to the financial or commercial interests of the country. Naturally he has been brought into close relations with capital, with banks and bankers, with moneyed men of every description, who have placed great reliance on his judgment and advice.

He was a prominent candidate for the Republican presidential nomination in 1880, and again in 1888, but if this was ever seriously his goal of ambition, he stopped short of gaining the prize. Lacking, probably, in some of those magnetic qualities which belong to a great popular leader, he has never been able to command a following large enough to place him at the head of his party in a presidential campaign. His intellect is cold and keen, his manner is dignified and somewhat reserved; he means business, and that only, so constantly, that he has never drawn around him a sufficient number of influential men who were willing to make him their idol and stake everything upon his advancement.

Mr. Sherman would not be selected as a shining example of the brilliant statesman. He is not possessed of that peculiar magnetism by which many other prominent men in the nation have been distinguished, but he is a fine type of those substantial, useful qualities by which the best results are always brought about. He has never aimed to startle the public by dash and enthusiasm. His mind is judicial, and as a jurist he would be preëminent.

His ripe age, calm judgment, and devotion to his constituents on the one hand, and to his own political faith on the other, have drawn to him universal respect. His life is one that is well rounded and complete. Especially has he shown himself familiar with our national finances, upon which he has long been an authority.

That his service in Washington has been as useful as it has been protracted, will be denied by no one. He was, until 1893, chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations, and a member of the Committee on Finance, the Committee on Organization, Conduct and Expenditures of the Executive Departments, the Select Committee on the Quadro-Centennia and the Committee on Rules.

In person Mr. Sherman is very tall and somewhat spare. He has a nervous, energetic temperament, and is capable of great endurance and of a vast amount of work. Having risen from the poverty of boyhood to the commanding heights of personal power and influence, he affords a fine illustration of the ample success within the grasp of every young American possessed of ability, industry and laudable ambition. He has left his imprint upon the recent history of our country, which cannot be written without frequent reference to the important measures conceived and fostered by his wise and eminent statesmanship.

LEW WALLACE.

MOST men who have distinguished themselves as authors have been authors only, devoting their entire time and energies to literary pursuits. This may be said of Washington Irving, Henry W. Longfellow, Dr. J. G. Holland, and many others whose works have been widely known and read. Occasionally some brilliant genius like Nathaniel Hawthorne has been compelled to combine business pursuits with literary labors in order to obtain the very necessary commodities of bread and butter. There is in our country a growing class of writers who aim to devote themselves exclusively to authorship, realizing that in this way only the best work can be accomplished.

It must be admitted, however, that some of our most popular fictions have been written amidst exacting labors, not at all connected with authorship; for example, Mrs. Stowe's famous story, which has been more extensively read than any other similar production, and which was penned amidst onerous household duties and the most absorbing cares. This, however, is no evidence against the truth of the statement, that here as elsewhere, to make the most of the pursuit requires that it should be followed to the exclusion of all others. It seldom happens that any one individual shows particular aptitude for more than one calling. The merchant must be a merchant only, the teacher must be only a teacher, the clergyman only a clergyman, the lawyer only a lawyer, the farmer a farmer only.

In the person of General Lew Wallace we have the example of a man who has been successful in several directions and has exhibited an unusual combination of talents. He was born at Brookville, Franklin County, Indiana, in 1827. He was fortunate in having good advantages for education in his boyhood, and always showed himself to be a diligent and painstaking scholar. He began the study of law, but upon the outbreak of the Mexican War his patriotic ardor and spirit of adventure carried him into the army, where he became a lieutenant of Indiana volunteers. Returning from active service in the field, he practiced law at Covington and Crawfordsville in his native state.

He lived a comparatively uneventful life until the outbreak of the Civil War, when he immediately came to the front, fired apparently with the old war spirit of earlier days. He was appointed adjutant-general of Indiana and became colonel of volunteers. At the capture of Fort Donelson, he commanded a division, and was promoted major-general of volunteers in March, 1862. He took an active part in the battle of Shiloh, and in 1863 prevented the capture of Cincinnati by General Kirby Smith. His success at this time showed that he possessed military ability of no mean order.

His troops were defeated by overwhelming numbers at Monocacy, July 9, 1864. General Early was marching upon Washington with 28,000 men, while Wallace had only 5,800; yet with this inferior force he detained Early for some days, and thus enabled Grant's troops to reinforce Washington before the Confederates could get there. Yet, by reason of incompetency, supposed or real, he was removed from his command by General Halleck, but was reinstated by General Grant. He was mustered out of volunteer service in 1865; returned to the practice of law at Crawfordsville, Indiana; was Governor of Utah from 1878 to 1881, and served from 1881 till 1885 as United States Minister to Turkey.

He afterwards devoted himself to the

practice of law and to literature at his home in Crawfordsville. From the stirring public life he had led hitherto, he settled down into quiet pursuits. No one would have been likely to predict that a man of his make-up would have any idea of devoting himself to authorship, but the old Scotch saying that, "What is in the heart must come oot o' the heart," is fully illustrated in his case. Mr. Wallace was born, not merely to be a soldier and diplomat, but also a writer of unusual merit.

His conceptions are bold and original; he has the gift of imagination and the happy faculty of combining characters and circumstances in his works, in a way that awakens the interest of his readers, and, considering the large sale of his publications, he must be considered one of the most successful authors of the day.

Mr. Wallace has issued two widely-read novels, namely, "The Fair God, A Story of the Conquest of Mexico," and "Ben Hur, A Tale of the Christ." The former was published in 1873, the latter in 1880. The chief reputation of the author is built upon "Ben Hur," which furnishes graphic pictures of Jewish life and character, and weaves around the central figure of the story an air of captivating romance. Many of the incidents are worked out with the most exacting attention to details. The work begins in a style somewhat prosaic, yet gradually becomes more interesting as it progresses; and although it cannot be read so hurriedly as lighter works of fiction, once begun it is likely to be finished.

Mr. Wallace is also the author of a "Life of Benjamin Harrison," published in 1888. Another work, entitled "The Boyhood of Christ," was issued during the same year. In 1893 he published "The Prince of India," yet it is true of him, as of other writers, that there is one work which constitutes the crowning achievement and the author cannot surpass himself. The later works of Mr. Wallace have added little or nothing to his fame.

It will be noticed that his writings are not in the ordinary realm of fiction. He makes no attempt, as most novelists do, to portray the great master passion of the human heart. Yet he deals with all the emotions, weaves together the facts of history, depicts characters of an unusual type, and for these reasons can lay claim to a large measure of originality.

There are multitudes of writers of light fiction, in fact, fiction so frothy and unsubstantial that it has only a momentary life, and, it may be said, ought not to have even that. Like a flood it comes, and the one compensation is that it goes as fast as it comes. There is nothing in it of permanent endurance. It whiles away a passing hour of the "summer girl," and of that class of readers who have a mania for novels of the sensational order. Only now and then comes a work of transcendent merit which makes it a thing of life.

It will doubtless be conceded that Mr. Wallace's works are not of the former class. They are written so carefully and are of such a high order that they are likely to be known and read in after time.

Mr. Wallace is courtly and affable, an agreeable friend and companion, showing the cultivated scholar and gentleman under the rugged exterior of the soldier, who has been accustomed to the rough life of the camp and the field. He has often appeared upon the platform as a lecturer and with considerable success. He affords a striking example of what may be accomplished by untiring industry and those natural endowments which, if not far above the average, can be made to take on strength and lustre by their diligent use.

FRANCES E. WILLARD.

IN every walk of life where it is possible for woman to display her talents, her success has been conspicuous. Our country has every reason to be proud of those members of the gentler sex who have commanded attention in authorship, sometimes in business, especially in works of reform, and whose influence has always been upon the side of good morals, higher education, and the development of the noblest womanhood.

While our progress as a nation has been rapid and such as to draw the wondering attention of the world, it is not all due to soldiers or statesmen. Our history could not be correctly written without mention of those women who, in the walks of private life, and frequently in more public spheres, have made their influence felt and have been leaders of thought and public opinion.

One of our most distinguished American women is the subject of this sketch. No one is more widely known or universally respected. She is possessed of talents of an unusual order, a warm and earnest spirit, untiring energy, the ability to influence others, and seems to be lacking in none of those qualities essential to successful achievement.

Miss Willard is known throughout the country for her devotion to the cause of reform, especially that branch of it embraced in Temperance work. She has attended meetings and conventions, and has lectured in every part of the land, and has always been received with the attention due to her position and character and the worthy objects she seeks to promote. She is eloquent in the best sense of the term, very fluent in speech, possessed of unusual tact, and has been heard by multitudes who are in the habit of affirming that they "do not care to hear a woman speak in public."

It may be truthfully said that her career exhibits all those elements which go to make one independent, aggressive, and progressive likewise. Throughout her life she has never thrust herself into notice, but has simply embraced the opportunities open to her, and has entered the field of usefulness when she heard the call for service. She was born in Churchville, N. Y., September 28, 1839, and was educated at Milwaukee and the Northwestern Female College at Evanston, Ill., from which she graduated in 1859. She became Professor of Natural Science there in 1862, and was principal of Genesee Wesleyan Seminary in 1866–'67.

Considering that no person's education is complete without those advantages furnished by travel and contact with the world, she spent two years abroad, and then returned to become Professor of Æsthetics in Northwestern University and Dean of the Woman's College. This position she filled from 1871 to 1874, and there developed her system of self-government, which has attracted wide attention and has been adopted by other educators. She became convinced at this time that there was a work for her to do in connection with the cause of Temperance.

In consequence of this decision she gave up all other engagements in 1874 to identify herself with the Woman's Christian Temperance Union. She was immediately made corresponding secretary, discharging the duties of this office until 1879, when she was elevated from the position of secretary to that of president.

In 1876 she assisted Dwight L. Moody in his evangelistic work and rendered efficient service. During these years she traveled

through the country, addressing legislatures and people's meetings in behalf of temperance and prohibition. She organized the Home Protection Movement, and sent an appeal from nearly two hundred thousand people to the Legislature of Illinois, asking for the Temperance ballot for women. She has always been of the opinion that the great reforms needed in America will never be brought about until women are permitted to vote, having a voice not merely in domestic affairs, but in public measures for the welfare of the community. Some of her hardest work has been done in the advocacy of this project.

On the death of her brother, Oliver A. Willard, in 1879, she succeeded him as chief editor of the *Chicago Evening Post*, but resigned soon afterward to devote all her time to the work which was dear to her heart, and in which she had exerted a wide and commanding influence. In 1886 she accepted the leadership of the White Cross movement in the societies founded by herself, and obtained enactments in many states for the protection of women.

In 1888 she was made president of the American branch of the International Council of Women and of the World's Christian Union. In 1892 she visited England, and received an enthusiastic welcome from the friends of reform in that country. She was at the head of the Women's Committee of Temperance Meetings at the World's Fair in 1893. She is the editor-in-chief of the *Union Signal*, a journal of large circulation, and has issued nine volumes, containing addresses and other matter connected with those reforms in which she has been so conspicuous a figure.

Miss Willard bears her honors with becoming modesty and grace. Although a positive character, she is never bold or obtrusive, giving evidence constantly of the cultivated lady, the considerate adviser, and the warm-hearted, genial friend. In person she is a little above the medium height, has a clear-cut intellectual face, is always self possessed and affable in manner.

In Miss Willard's career we have a graphic illustration of the influence woman can exert upon all the great questions of the day. She and others rightly believe that the great fountain of a pure national life is the home. This must be carefully guarded, and the rising generation must be correctly taught. Sound morals must be inculcated, and the noblest aims held up to view.

But what kind of a home can that be which is cursed by the power of drink? What is to be done with this great evil that throws its withering blight over the whole land? If women can be excused, even commended and applauded, for showing an interest in public questions, urging on all true reforms, it surely is in the present case, since by efforts to check and destroy the evil of intemperance much is done for the salvation and the uplifting of the home. We are mainly concerned with Miss Willard's crusade, which could not be carried on without bringing her into public notice and incurring the criticism that she is stepping out of the domestic sphere. Let her and all others step out, if thereby lasting good shall come to the country.

She will be identified with Temperance work and other reforms as long as she lives, and the best and truest womanhood will owe her a debt of profound gratitude. She stands for what is noblest in her sex, and may be congratulated upon having escaped hostile criticism to so large an extent.

The best wishes of her country-women are with her in her great labor of love. There are many sympathetic souls who pray that her life may long be spared, and her influence widely extended.

WILLIAM B. ALLISON.

THE career of this distinguished Senator affords another striking proof of the power and influence belonging to the individual man. Money talks for some men, social influence for others, learning and culture for others, and brains for others. The last-named element of success belongs especially to Mr. Allison. Combined with it is his sterling integrity and a character that has never been called in question.

For a long time he has stood in the halls of the United States Senate, taking an active part in all its deliberations and debates. He is considered a statesman, eminently wise and safe. While it may be said that he has gained large experience in Congress, it may also be said that he brought his experience with him. He was a man of public affairs, prominent and widely known before going to Washington. It was but natural that, having gained a local celebrity, he should be transferred to the wider field.

His native state is Ohio, where he was born at Perry, Wayne County, March 2, 1829. Like many others who have molded the affairs of the nation, he spent his early years upon a farm. While the pursuit of agriculture is honorable and, fortunately, is universally considered so, it is proverbial that farmers' boys rebel against the hard labor and monotonous life incident to a farm and seek some other calling.

These sons of farmers constitute some of the best timber we have in the nation. Their surroundings are not generally luxurious, they are trained to habits of industry, they usually obtain at least a good common-school education, and by the sheer force of intellectual ability and perseverance, they often rise to positions of great honor and usefulness. It did not take long for Mr. Allison to outgrow the farm. He had an ambition which could not be gratified by any such pursuit. He was educated at Allegheny College, Pa., and at the Western Reserve College, Ohio, after which he took up the study of law and practiced his profession in Ohio until 1857. He wished to locate farther west, where he could be identified with a growing town. He removed to Dubuque, Iowa, where he has since made his home. Being by nature a citizen of public spirit, interested in all that concerned the town of his adoption, he soon became widely known, and was not more widely known than he was respected. His gift of speech was such as to inspire confidence. Matters of grave responsibility were at once committed to his hands. Like many lawyers, he anticipated public life and political preferment.

He was sent as a delegate to the Chicago convention that nominated Abraham Lincoln for the presidency in 1860, and in the following year became a member of the staff of the governor of Iowa. When the war broke out he was among the first to offer his services to the government, being willing to let his profession suffer in order to help maintain the cause of the Union. He rendered valuable service in raising troops and organizing volunteer regiments for the war. Those were stirring times, and the exigencies brought into prominence many men who might otherwise have remained in comparative obscurity.

In 1862, Mr. Allison was elected to the 38th Congress as a Republican. He served in this capacity with such fidelity and distinction that he was re-elected to the three succeeding Congresses. His re-election, his neighbors were accustomed to remark facetiously, was chronic. He served continuously as a member of that body from December 7, 1863, until March 3, 1871. Often he was appointed on important committees, and being

a willing worker, was soon known as one of the most industrious members of the House.

At the same time, he kept in close touch with his constituents at home. They marked his achievements and were proud of his advancement in the estimation of the public. He was always found at the post of duty, never shuffled or evaded any question of importance, was always willing to have his opinions known, and was always able to give a reason for the faith that was in him.

In 1873, he was elected by the Legislature of Iowa to the United States Senate to succeed James Harlan, and since that time has been re-elected almost without opposition. Thus it will be seen that he has had one of the longest terms of service that has fallen to the lot of any public man. There are no sensational elements in his character. He does not glare like a meteor nor astonish others by ill-considered and unexpected methods. Mr. Allison's character, attainments and public services have been such as to point to him for a presidential nomination. Accordingly, on several occasions, his name has been mentioned in the national Republican Conventions. While he has had a large following, and many prominent men in the Northwest and elsewhere have endorsed him, others have distanced him in the race.

It is, however, a high distinction to be prominently named for a presidential nomination. Such an honor can never be conferred upon a weak, insignificant man. Mr. Allison is one who fully justifies the confidence of the public and whose elevation to the highest position in the nation would be fittingly bestowed.

It is frequently the case that men of reputation diminish and appear to disadvantage as one gets near to them. They do not stand out in all the grand proportions pictured by our imagination. "'Tis distance lends enchantment to the view," and as they are looked at from afar they are apt to be invested with very heroic qualities. Then, as we get a nearer view, the charm is dispelled, and the delusion and disappointment become apparent. Very few men gain much by a close inspection. We are apt to place our public men on a pedestal, and look up to them with a kind of awe. Upon a nearer approach we find that they stand on the ground, and perhaps are not so very far above the common level.

It has, however, been said of Mr. Allison, that the near view is the one most favorable. He bears acquaintance remarkably well, and while not showy or dazzling, there is much about him to be commended, and the service he has rendered as a national legislator forms the record of an honored page of our history

The personal appearance of Mr. Allison indicates strength of body and of mind. He is large and well formed. His face is not that of a scholar, but rather the man of affairs. He is a type of the sturdy, honest, practical man, who conveys at once the impression of good sense and the possession of a level head. In his speeches he does not circumnavigate his subject, but comes at it at once. He always speaks to the point. Having something to say and being able to say it, others are willing to listen and be instructed.

He has the rare faculty of saying what he means and clothing his thoughts in such language that no double interpretation can be put upon his statements. The quaint old adage of calling a spade a spade applies in his case. As a type of the useful citizen, the able legislator, the genial and hearty friend the man of culture, breadth and fullness, Mr Allison is conspicuous. Such men at the head of public affairs give stability and confidence to the nation. Our country has been favored with many of this description, and among this galaxy of shining ones must be placed the subject of this brief biography

RICHARD OLNEY.

A POSITION in the Cabinet at Washington requires ability of a high order. Especially is this true of the positions of Attorney-General and Secretary of State. An Attorney-General must add to profound legal knowledge a sound judgment, a wise discretion, and executive ability equal to that of any manager of a large and exacting business. It is not enough that he should be merely a shrewd lawyer, a man skilled in the supposed tricks of the profession, nor is it expected that he should practice any of the unscrupulous arts that are so often charged upon the members of the bar.

A Secretary of State is expected to be a statesman. He must understand the policy of the government, and know by a kind of instinct what position to take upon all critical questions. He must be a profound student of international law and be well acquainted with our relations to foreign governments.

That Richard Olney meets these unusual demands in an eminent degree, is universally conceded. By natural ability and broad culture, he is amply qualified for the positions he has held at Washington.

He was but little known, except in his native State of Massachusetts, when called to the Cabinet during the second administration of President Cleveland, although it must be said that his associates considered him one of the ablest lawyers of his time. He comes from one of the oldest New England families, and has back of him a sturdy stock and ancestry which have had so much to do in molding the nation and shaping its history.

He was born in Oxford, Mass., in 1835, and at the comparatively early age of twenty one graduated with high honors from Brown University, at Providence, R. I. In college he was distinguished for close application to his studies, rare scholarship and excellent literary ability. He was easily the peer of the brightest and most brilliant of his class. He seemed to be able to do easily what others could do only by the hardest labor.

After his graduation he entered the Harvard Law School, and in two years completed the course Thus, at the age of twenty-three, he was prepared to enter upon his profession. He was fortunate in being able to associate himself with Judge B. F. Thomas, a descendant of Isaiah Thomas, the publisher of the old *Thomas Almanac*, a publication known everywhere in Massachusetts, and regarded with a feeling almost akin to veneration. He was also the founder of the well-known journal, *The Worcester Spy*. In 1861 Mr. Olney married the daughter of Judge Thomas, thus uniting two distinguished families.

Efforts have been made in Massachusetts to make Mr. Olney one of the judges on the Supreme Bench of the State, but on two occasions he has declined the honor, and also, for the most part, has separated himself from political life. His ambition appeared to lie in other directions, and many positions of honor would have been conferred upon him if he had been willing to accept them. He did, however, in 1874, represent Roxbury in the State Legislature, proving himself to be a useful member of that body and thoroughly acquainted with the duties of a representative. In 1876 he was a candidate for Attorney-General of the State on the Democratic ticket, but was defeated with the other candidates of his party

He has been counsel for two big western railroads, the Atchison, Topeka and Santa

Fé and the Chicago, Burlington and Quincy. This shows the estimate placed upon his legal ability. His work is always thorough, his arguments are logical and presented with admirable skill, he is quick to take advantage of the weak places in the case of his opponent, he exhibits a complete mastery of law, and, withal, impresses others as a man of honor and high character. His political party has always placed great confidence in his judgment, and in all critical periods have sought his counsel and advice.

It is said that during the first administration of President Cleveland his name was favorably considered for the position of Chief Justice of the United States Supreme Court; but the President did not quite reach the point of sending his name to the Senate for confirmation. That he would have been an able member, an ornament of that dignified body, is doubted by none who are acquainted with his qualifications and his admitted integrity.

In 1893 he was appointed by President Cleveland Attorney-General of the United States, where his strength of character, his eminent ability and profound knowledge of international law have made him conspicuous. Upon the death of Secretary Gresham, which occurred May 28, 1895, Mr. Olney was made Secretary of State. He has had the handling of some very important matters connected with the foreign policy of our government, and has acquitted himself in such a manner as to command the admiration of his fellow-countrymen. He believes in a vigorous policy, yet one that is always founded upon right principles. He never takes a position which he is unable to defend and maintain.

He is a man of method, carrying on his work always in an orderly way, and showing marked attention to those details upon which success in any pursuit so largely depends. He is not accustomed to do things in any fitful or spasmodic manner, but on the contrary always shows cool judgment and calm deliberation. There is an absence of impulse and recklessness of decision which helps to fit him for his official duties.

Exhibiting these characteristics, he soon gained the confidence of public men in Washington. What opportunities in public life may lie before him no one can predict; neither would any one be surprised if he were to have larger responsibilities placed upon him.

A recent biography says: "Mr. Olney is a man of dignified bearing, one who appreciates the responsibilities of the position he occupies, and his reputation is that of a profound legal scholar, whose judgment on questions of law is seldom at fault."

Mr. Olney is a substantial, well-built man, capable of a great amount of labor; he has a genial, pleasant face, but never gives one the impression that he is courting popularity. His manner is calm, yet his addresses are full of force, always engaging the attention of his hearers. There is a sharp expression to his eyes and a forward thrust of the head which seems to indicate a disposition to see his way, and a determination to go straight through every matter that occupies his attention.

Although not widely known when he went to Washington, he has become a man of national reputation. The best elements of manhood enter into his composition. He is a wise and safe counsellor, is possessed of marked individuality, and must be considered as one of the brightest ornaments of his profession. His comparatively quiet yet successful career furnishes a good example to the rising generation of lawyers. It shows what can be done by ability well applied and by industry that never tires.

JAMES WHITCOMB RILEY.

A NEW generation of writers has come forward, with characteristics widely different from those of their predecessors in the field of literature. Their writings are more distinctively American—perhaps it would be more appropriate to say—West-American. There is a breeziness about them—an off-hand dash—a disregard of conventionalities which we do not discover among such men as Irving, Bryant, Longfellow and others, who may be said to have created our literature and stamped it with their genius.

Both fiction and poetry have taken on what may be called a new style. The aim to entertain, to present the humorous side of things, to make a quick, even though superficial impression, is very apparent.

It would be unjust, however, to deny unusual merit to the new class of authors. They are splendidly endowed. To brilliant native talent many of them add great industry, a profound knowledge of human nature, and are able to discern what is demanded by the popular taste. They simply write as the time and the people require that they should. While the writer helps to form national character, it is also true that the national character helps to form him.

Americans are almost omnivorous readers. They devour newspapers and periodicals by the million. There is a large and probably growing class who are cultivated in the broad sense of the term, who are students of science and philosophy, and who have a keen relish for thoughtful, substantial works, such as instruct the mind and promote scholarship, but the number of those who are patrons of light literature is so great that authors in this field multiply very rapidly, and may find sufficient encouragement to cause them to make authorship a pursuit.

James Whitcomb Riley has been given the title of the "Hoosier Poet of America." This is partly owing to the State in which he was born and lives. He has been a contributor for some years to current literature, showing in his writings so much of pith and pungency, together with a healthful moral tone, that his productions have been widely read and enjoyed.

He was born in Greenfield, Indiana, in 1852. In his boyhood he often accompanied his father, who was an attorney, as he went from place to place transacting his business, and thus early came into contact with the world, which has so much to do with the education and development of the young mind. At an early age he left home to follow the calling of a wandering sign-writer.

For a time he was connected with a theatrical troupe, and showed some aptitude for revising and adapting plays. He also began to show a talent for song-writing and improvising lines on the spur of the moment, thus indicating that he had a ready wit, and not merely the kind which is studied up and manufactured for the occasion.

Over the name of "Benjamin F. Johnson, of Boone," he began, about the year 1875, to contribute verses in the Hoosier dialect to the Indianapolis papers. These attracted considerable attention, suggesting an interesting field of literature, which he resolved, sooner or later, to occupy. It was evident that dialect poems were relished by the public, and as these were written upon subjects near at hand, and such as appealed to the popular heart, Mr. Riley found himself growing in favor, and from that day has continued in active literary work.

He is gifted in the art of imitation, which was shown by his writing a piece after the style of Edgar Allen Poe that was accepted

by many critics as the work of that author. Such a feat as this required something more than ordinary talent. Poe's writings have an individuality peculiarly their own, and to be a successful imitator of them, one must possess literary ability somewhat akin to that of the gifted author of "The Raven" and "The Bells."

Mr. Riley finally accepted an engagement with the *Indianapolis Journal*, and has also been a constant contributor to various periodicals. In addition to many dialect pieces, he has published poems of a more serious character, proving that he possesses ability for the graver as well as the lighter strains of thought and feeling.

He has issued a number of volumes, including "The Old Swimmin' Hole," "Afterwhiles," "Neighborly Poems," "Pipes o' Pan," "Green Fields and Running Brooks," "Rhymes of Childhood," "The Flying Islands of the Night," and others. His works abound in pictures of Western life, and around the most commonplace objects he throws a peculiar charm. Like the ballads of Carlton, many of his songs deal with the farm, the old homestead, the old arm-chair, the boys who whistle and shout and play, and the old people whose eyes are already growing dim and whose forms are bending toward the grave. Thus it will be seen that much of his popularity is due to the subjects which he treats. These are always such as to afford a fine opportunity for sentiment and wholesome moral lessons. While his writings are intended to engage the attention of the reader and furnish entertainment, they are nearly always pointed with a moral, and there is something worth storing in the memory.

No one could form an accurate estimate of Mr. Riley's writings and leave out what may be called the human element that is always prominent. There is no attempt to reach the towering heights of the English poets of earlier times. No stately measures of verse appeal to the most cultivated mind and arouse the admiration always accorded to genius. There is, however, a genius less commanding and imposing. Mr. Riley descends into the common walks of life, and makes himself at home with ordinary people. His language is so simple, his meaning is so clearly comprehended, there is such an evident comprehension of everyday life, that not as a stranger, but as a friend, does he step into the home.

Much of Mr. Riley's popularity is undoubtedly due to the dialect noticeable everywhere in his work. Often the same thought clothed in different phraseology would be comparatively tame, but by the dialect used it takes on a different complexion, and comes home to the reader with much greater force.

Mr. Riley has often appeared as a public reader of his own works. He has met with a large degree of success, being able, generally, to command large and interested audiences. It is not always that an author succeeds in the endeavor to interpret his own writings before a critical audience. Dickens was able to do this, but there has never been more than one Dickens, and it will be long before the world will see his like again.

Mr. Riley has been much sought after for the platform, and has succeeded in giving full meaning to those dialect pieces in the production of which he has exhibited so much of literary skill and ability. Whether his work will be lasting, or will ever add greatly to the fame of American literature, is a question which we do not need to discuss, and one upon which there might be a difference of opinion. His career, however, points him out as a man of mark, whose distinction has been justly gained, and who merits the success that has crowned his labor.

REV. CHARLES H. PARKHURST, D.D.

THE late Reverend Howard Crosby, D. D., was for many years President of the Society for the Prevention of Crime, a large and influential organization in the city of New York. Upon the death of Dr. Crosby, it was conceded that it would be difficult to find a person possessing the peculiar qualifications necessary for the position he had held with such distinguished ability and efficiency. Dr. Parkhurst had been favorably known as a member of the organization, was noted for intellectual ability and zeal in the work of reform, and the choice of the society placed him at its head.

It became evident immediately that a man of great courage, political insight, enthusiasm in carrying out his objects, and able to command the co-operation of the most influential men in New York, was now fully identified with the great reform movements contemplated by the society. His strong personality was immediately felt. For several years he has been one of the most noted figures in New York, applauded by some, and execrated by others.

Dr. Parkhurst was born in Framingham, Mass., April 17, 1842. He came from a vigorous stock, containing a pretty strong infusion of old Puritan element. Thoughtful and studious in his boyhood, he marked himself out for the career of a professional man, and having become an earnest and devout adherent of the Christian faith, his family and friends naturally set him aside for the work of the ministry.

Accordingly he prepared for college and graduated from Amherst in 1866. He did not consider that his education would be complete if confined within narrow limits of thought, or favored with only meagre advantages. He studied theology at Halle, Germany, in 1869, and at Leipsic in 1872 and 1873, during the intervals of which studies he was principal of the High School in Amherst, and professor of Williston Seminary at Easthampton, Mass. Thus it seems that he was in no excessive hurry to enter upon his life-work, being occupied with laying broad and deep foundations upon which to rear a superstructure of strength and commanding proportions.

From 1874 to 1880, he was pastor of the Congregational Church at Lennox, Mass., where he became widely known for his eminent pulpit ability. His congregation, especially during the summer months, contained many persons of culture, who enjoyed his keen, intellectual discourses and looked upon him as one of the rising men in the ministry. Upon the death of Rev. Dr. Adams, who had long been the pastor of the Madison Square Presbyterian Church, New York City, and who was a man of peculiar gifts, the church sought far and near for a suitable successor. Not being very successful in the attempt, attention was turned toward Dr. Parkhurst, who was chosen as pastor in 1880.

Since this period he has occupied one of the most influential positions in New York. The church has been largely attended, the aggregation of wealth is great, the culture and refinement of the congregation are conspicuous, merchants and professional men are found there in large numbers, and, added to large benevolent contributions, is the missionary work, in which many of the members take a special personal interest.

In 1893 Dr. Parkhurst became prominent through his efforts to make the Society for the Prevention of Crime true to its name. He saw no reason why a society, organized for a special purpose, confessedly a good one,

should not be active and accomplish something for the welfare of the city. He had no fear of those petty criticisms aimed at ministers who take some interest in public affairs. Dr. Parkhurst considered that his profession had not only the right to promote all true reform, but, in fact, was bound to do it. Those who were disturbed in their nefarious business were the ones who were so anxious that he should keep to what they called his legitimate work.

He felt that his position would be stronger and his influence more widely felt if he could speak of the gigantic evils in New York from personal observation. He wanted the facts that did not come by hearsay. Vague insinuations, statements that could easily be doubted and opinions based upon guesses were not the ammunition with which to load his guns, trained against the enemy. He wanted facts, and such only as came within the sphere of his personal knowledge.

It cannot be doubted that Dr. Parkhurst went about his work in the right way. Convinced himself from his own observation, he was able to convince others. In company with judicious friends he stepped into the haunts of vice, some of them almost under the shadow of his own church, and others of palatial gorgeousness located in some of the most respectable and aristocratic quarters of the city. Each new step in the investigation convinced him of the enormity of the evils on every side and of the connivance of city officials in allowing them to exist. His blood was stirred, and he came forth like a prophet of old to denounce the wickedness that cursed the city.

When he began his crusade he was fully armed and equipped with the facts he had gathered. Even with these a smaller man would have made little or no impression, but embodied in him were intellectual power, commanding force of speech, a position in the pulpit second to that of none, a mighty array of influential men and ample resources for the great struggle. The downfall of the corrupt political organization that ruled the city was assured. The rotten fabric trembled to its base under the strokes of the sturdy foe, who had decreed its overthrow.

It is said that in college Dr. Parkhurst's professor of rhetoric criticized his style of writing very severely, but there are few public men who can put so much into a single sentence. His thoughts are at once bold and striking, and his style is pre-eminently concise and original. He has contributed to various magazines and has published several volumes, including "The Forms of the Latin Verb, Illustrated by Sanskrit," "The Blind Man's Creed, and other Sermons," and "Pattern in the Mount, and other Sermons."

In person Dr. Parkhurst is of medium size, compactly built and a fair specimen of muscular Christianity. His great courage, persistence and untiring energy have made him the most successful political leader of the day, and given him a wide and enviable fame.

Nor has his influence been confined to New York City alone, but other cities throughout the country have patterned by the movement he has inaugurated, and have taken active steps for the investigation of municipal evils and misrule. He addressed large audiences in a number of towns, presenting the plan of reform of which he is the acknowledged chief exponent, and thus awakened public interest which resulted in organized effort.

Dr. Parkhurst's career teaches especially the lesson of strong and persistent courage and endeavor in the face of opposition. The consciousness of being in the right always arms a man with aggressive weapons, and keeps him firm and patient, even though robbed for the moment of success.

CLAUS SPRECKELS.

NOT as a scholar, orator or statesman, is Claus Spreckels known, yet his name is familiar from the Atlantic to the Pacific. In the great channels of trade and business a wonderful success has attended his efforts, and he has built up one of the largest fortunes in the world. It is, then, as a business man that he is to be considered, and as such his life affords valuable lessons by which younger men of our generation may well profit..

Mr. Spreckels was born in Lamstedt, Kingdom of Hanover, in July, 1828. His early life was spent in Germany, where his opportunities for education were none of the best. Had he remained in his native land, it is not likely that he would have become a millionaire, for the chances would have been much fewer and the opportunities more limited.

When twenty years old Mr. Spreckels came to America and went to Charleston, S. C., in pursuit of employment. He obtained a situation as clerk in a grocery store. He had no thought of remaining as a mere clerk, but had his eye upon the proprietorship of the place. In two years he owned the store and largely extended its trade. Going into the wholesale business, he became an importer, and was very soon known in commercial circles throughout the South. Wishing for a wider field of operations, he removed his business to New York City in 1855.

Having a brother who was engaged in the grocery trade in San Francisco, Mr. Spreckels left the East and went to that city to reside. He soon bought out his brother and continued the business. A year later he started what was known as the Albany Brewery. His shrewd business foresight was fully justified by the results. The business sprang at once into prominence and promised a fortune for its founder. He soon disposed of his grocery business, devoted his time and energies to the brewery, and so continued until 1863.

Mr. Spreckels had long had his mind fixed upon sugar refining, and the time had now come for him to realize his ambition in this respect. He sold out his interest in the brewery, and, with others, founded the Bay Sugar Refinery. Being a practical man, and wishing to gain a more thorough knowledge of the sugar business, he went to Europe to familiarize himself with the process of manufacturing beet-root sugar. He meant to learn the process from the beginning, and with this in view he actually entered the great refinery at Magdeburg as a workman. Few men probably would have been willing to come down to such a capacity after they had already acquired what was considered an ample fortune, but it is the practical man whose knowledge of his pursuit is complete who always carries off the palm.

Having gained an intimate knowledge of the Sugar Refining business, Mr. Spreckels returned to San Francisco and immediately built another and larger refinery. In 1867 he organized the great corporation of the California Sugar Refinery, of which he became the president and was the principal owner. The vast business carried on by this company is one of the marvels of the Pacific coast. It refines fifty million pounds of sugar every year. The whole country may be said to be a market for this immense product. The success of this great concern is almost entirely due to the enterprise and skillful management of its founder. Not merely the general oversight, but to a large extent the minor details, are constantly under his eye.

Mr. Spreckels possesses a nervous temperament, strong features, and has a prompt and incisive manner of doing business.

WILLIAM McKINLEY

PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES

CAPTAIN CHARLES D. SIGSBEE

APPENDIX.

Latest Events of American History.

IN the beginning of 1896 a remarkable interest was shown by the press and the people throughout the country in the pending Presidential campaign. There was a stir in the nation like that in the forest which precedes the coming storm. Radical differences of opinion existed upon the monetary question, and it was evident that these would find expression in the national conventions which were soon to be held. On the one hand, the majority of the Republican party were prepared to maintain the gold standard. As time advanced it became evident that a large part of the Democratic party had adopted the cause of free silver, although President Cleveland, Secretary Carlisle, and many other influential party leaders were opposed to the free coinage of silver at the ratio of 16 to 1. The wave of discussion rose higher and higher and the country was filled with clamor. Among all classes of citizens national questions were discussed, and the heat and fervor of the pending campaign were such as had not been witnessed since the days of the Civil War.

The eleventh Republican National Convention met at St. Louis on June 16th, and nominated as the candidates of the Republican party Hon. Wm. McKinley, of Ohio, for President, and Hon. Garret A. Hobart, of New Jersey, for Vice-President. The Convention was an unusually harmonious one, choosing its platform without debate, excepting for the protests of the advocates of a plank for the free coinage of silver, who were voted down by a large majority.

Twenty-one silver advocates under the lead of Senator Teller, of Colorado, thereupon "bolted" from the Convention and severed their allegiance from the Republican party. The scene in the Convention was impressive when Senator Teller, under deep emotion, made a farewell address to the representatives of the party of which he had so long been a conspicuous member, and, followed by twenty of the delegates, left the hall.

Both Mr. McKinley and Mr. Hobart were nominated on the first ballot long before the roll call of the States was finished, and the enthusiasm for McKinley was intense. For some time before the holding of the Convention it was plain that Mr. McKinley would be the choice of the Republicans, the rising tide in his favor engulfing all opposition. He received the nomination amidst the acclamations of the vast majority of his party.

The platform pledged renewed allegiance to the principle of protection; declared in favor of the gold standard; demanded reciprocity; reasserted the Monroe doctrine; expressed sympathy for suffering Cuba; demanded that the immigration laws be rigidly enforced; renewed the party's declarations in favor of civil service; insisted upon the right of trial by jury for criminals, in opposition to lynchings, and recommended arbitration for the settlement of the differences which may arise between employers and employed engaged in interstate commerce. The nominations and the platform were favorably received and were at once heartily ratified by

public meetings and the formation of political clubs.

The Democratic National Convention met at Chicago on July 8th, and nominated for President, Hon. Wm. J. Bryan, of Nebraska, and for Vice-President, Hon. Arthur Sewall, of Maine. The remarkable feature of the Convention was the strength of the supporters of free coinage of silver, who constituted over two-thirds of the delegates and represented chiefly Southern and Western States. This turn in the Convention was quite unexpected to many and suddenly revealed a strong sentiment in favor of free silver in many parts of the country. Mr. Bryan's nomination was largely due to a speech he made in the Convention which received the hearty applause of many of the delegates.

The silver question thus became the prime issue of the national campaign, and large contingents from both the old parties abandoned former political ties and enrolled themselves on the one side or the other of the monetary question. The populous Eastern States were the strongholds of the gold standard of currency, and scarcely a doubt was entertained that the movement looking towards free coinage of silver by the United States without waiting for an international agreement could not prevail. The success of the silver advocates in the Democratic convention, however, gave the cause of the white metal a great impetus, and roused the people of the nation to study the currency question with more earnestness and thought than they had ever done before. A campaign of education was carried on in which the arguments for and against free coinage of silver were widely circulated and discussed.

The Democratic platform denounced the gold standard, opposed the issue of bonds in time of peace; declared in favor of an income tax and tariff for revenue only; recommended that the Federal government have more control over railroads; denounced the arbitrary interference by Federal authorities in local affairs, and expressed opposition to a third term for President.

The divided state of public sentiment on the silver question appeared strikingly in the convention of the Prohibition party, which was held in Pittsburg, May 2. A large number of delegates were present, representing all parts of the country. The silver question was thrust into the deliberations of the convention, and created great excitement. Many of the delegates wanted Prohibition without any other issue; many others wanted Prohibition and free silver. The convention was rent in twain; the seceders met and formed a new party, and the outcome was a complete disruption of that very considerable body of citizens who considered legislation on the Temperance question the first duty of the nation.

Hon. Joshua Levering, of Maryland, was nominated by the Prohibitionists for President, and Hon. Hale Johnson, of Illinois, for Vice-President. The National party nominated Hon. Joseph E. Bentley, of Nebraska, for President, and Hon. J. H. Southgate, of North Carolina, for Vice-President. Neither of these parties acted any conspicuous part in the campaign, as the financial question overshadowed all others, affecting, as it did, every individual in the nation.

A number of influential Democrats expressed a strong opposition to the action of the Democratic Convention at Chicago, and resolved that some movement should be inaugurated to save the party, if possible, from being entirely captured by the advocates of free silver. The sound-money delegates in the convention, under the leadership of Senator Hill, of New York, entered a strong protest against the rule of the majority. This, however, was without avail, and during the latter part of the convention those who

DESTRUCTION OF THE BATTLESHIP MAINE IN THE HARBOR OF HAVANA

ADMIRAL GEORGE DEWEY

THE HERO OF MANILA

favored the gold standard took no part in the proceedings.

It was felt by many of the old-line Democrats that something should be done to preserve the party-name and its time-honored principles. A call was issued for a convention to be held at Indianapolis, September 2. The delegates were among the most influential and conservative of the Democratic party, and were thoroughly in earnest. A platform was adopted, denouncing free-silver coinage, and advocating the gold standard. Strong denunciations were hurled at the Populistic notions and ideas so prevalent in many of the States. The first paragraph of the platform was as follows:

"This convention has assembled to uphold the principles upon which depend the honor and welfare of the American people, in order that Democrats throughout the Union may unite their patriotic efforts to avert disaster to their country and ruin from their party. The Democratic party is pledged to equal and exact justice to all men of every creed and condition; to the largest freedom of the individual consistent with good government; to the preservation of the Federal Government in its Constitutional vigor, and to the support of the States in all their just rights; to economy in public expenditures, to the maintenance of the public credit and sound money, and it is opposed to paternalism and to all class legislation. The declarations of the Chicago Convention attack individual freedom, the right of private contract, the independence of the judiciary and the authority of the President to enforce Federal laws."

Hon. John M. Palmer, of Illinois, was nominated for President, and Hon. Simon B. Buckner, of Kentucky, for Vice-president. They made an active canvass throughout the country, but failed to unite the Democratic forces to any great extent, as it was conceded from the outset that there was no possibility of their election.

The campaign throughout was one of unexampled activity, the eminent leaders of all parties entering the contest with great spirit. All the influences and resources of the press and of men in public life were brought to bear upon the great issues involved which, it was admitted by all, affected the integrity of the nation, if not its very existence.

In the election of November, Mr. McKinley received 7,101,401 of the popular vote; Mr. Bryan 6,470,656; Mr. Palmer, 132,056, and Mr. Levering 130,560. Of the Electoral College, Mr. McKinley received 271 votes, and Mr. Bryan 176.

On the 4th of March, 1897, Mr. McKinley was inaugurated President with imposing ceremonies, and Mr. Hobart was inducted into the office of Vice-president. A multitude of people from all parts of the country assembled in Washington, and nothing occurred to mar the success of the inauguration. Mr. McKinley entered upon the duties of his office with the best wishes, not only of his party, but of all classes of his fellow-countrymen. His Cabinet was constituted as follows: Secretary of State, John Sherman, of Ohio; Secretary of the Treasury, Lyman J. Gage, of Illinois; Secretary of War, Russell A. Alger, of Michigan; Attorney-General, Joseph McKenna, of California; Postmaster-General, James A. Gary, of Maryland; Secretary of the Navy, John D. Long, of Massachusetts; Secretary of the Interior, Cornelius N. Bliss, of New York; Secretary of Agriculture, James Wilson, of Iowa.

Mr. McKinley immediately called an extra session of Congress, which assembled on March 15th, for the express purpose of revising the tariff, providing a revenue sufficient for the wants of the Government, and placing the finances of the nation upon a sound basis. Hon. Thomas B. Reed, of Maine, was re-elected Speaker of the House.

The extraordinary session of Congress was called by President McKinley two days after he took the oath of office on the steps of the Capitol. It met in pursuance to his proclamation at noon on March 15. The special message transmitted by him to both Houses on the opening day was brief. It explained the deficiencies in the revenues, reviewed the bond issues of the last Administration, and urged Congress promptly to correct the then existing condition by passing a tariff bill that would supply ample revenues for the support of the government and the liquidation of the public debt. No other subject of legislation was mentioned in the message, and the tariff bill was the all-absorbing feature of the session. The Republican members of the ways and means committee of the preceding House had been at work throughout the short session, which ended March 4, giving hearings and preparing the bill which was to be submitted at the extra session.

Three days after the session opened the tariff bill was reported to the House by the ways and means committee, and thirteen days later, March 31, 1897, it passed the House. It went to the Senate, was referred to the committee on finance, and the Republican members of that committee spent a month and three days in its consideration and in preparing the amendments, which were submitted to the Senate May 4. Its consideration was begun in the Senate May 7, and exactly two months later, July 7, it passed the Senate with 872 amendments. The bill then went to conference, where after a ten days' struggle, on July 17, a complete agreement was reached by which the Senate receded from 118 amendments and the House from 511. The others, 243 in number, were compromised. The conference report was adopted by the House July 19 at the conclusion of twelve hours of continuous debate. The report was taken up in the Senate July 20 and adopted Saturday July 24. The tariff bill was signed by the President the same day.

In open session, after much debate, the Senate passed the Cuban belligerency resolution, a bankruptcy bill, including both voluntary and involuntary features, and the "free-homes bill." But none of these important questions received consideration in the House.

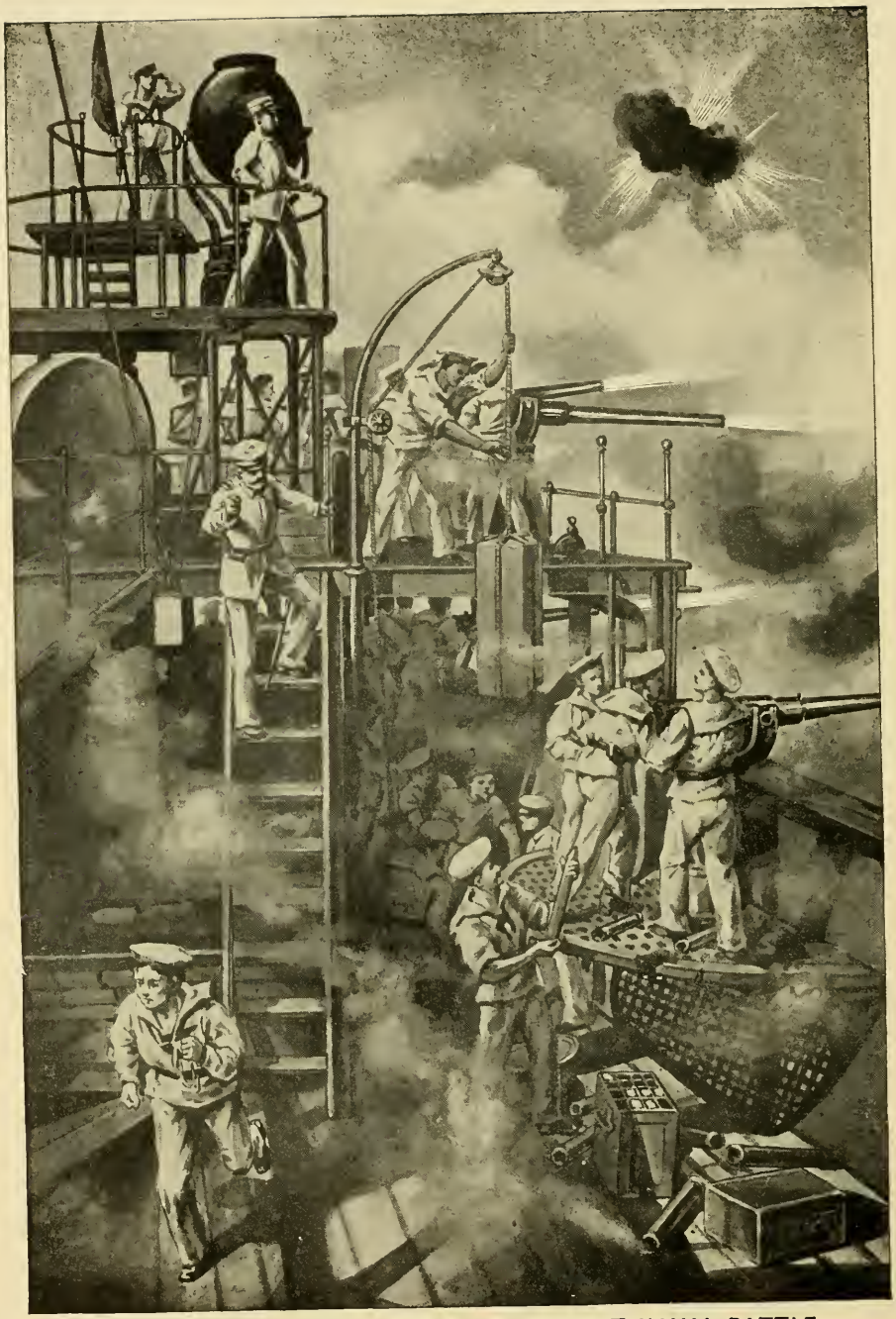
Late in July reports came of the discovery of rich gold deposits in the Yukon Valley, Alaska. Upwards of $1,000,000 worth of gold dust was brought by one steamer to Seattle, Wash., and many prospectors from all parts of the country set out for the new gold fields, while others were deterred from doing so by reports of the terrible hardships and dangers incurred by the miners.

In August President McKinley promulgated amendments to the civil service rules which elicited enthusiastic praise from civil service reformers. The order considered of most importance provides that "no removal shall be made from any position subject to competitive examination except for just cause and upon written charges filed with the head of the department or other appointing officer, and of which the accused shall have full notice and an opportunity to make defence."

Through the Hon. Stewart L. Woodford, American Minister to Spain, our Cabinet at Washington addressed a note in September to the Spanish government concerning the war in Cuba, urging that the most strenuous efforts be made to bring it to an end and offering mediation between the contending parties. Spain's reply, which was received in November, was considered satisfactory and not likely to lead to any rupture between the two countries.

CAPTAIN ROBLEY D. EVANS

COMMANDER OF THE BATTLESHIP IOWA



WORKING RAPID-FIRE GUNS IN THE GREAT NAVAL BATTLE OF SANTIAGO

In February, 1898, an incident occurred which created universal comment. A letter was written by the Spanish Minister at Washington, Senor De Lome, reflecting seriously upon President McKinley, in connection with the policy our administration was pursuing toward the government of Spain with regard to the insurrection in Cuba. This letter was written by De Lome to a friend, but failed in some way to reach its destination, and was made public. Public indignation was expressed at this perfidy of the Spanish Minister, and he was compelled to resign, being subsequently recalled by the government at Madrid.

The struggle in Cuba for independence continued to be the one absorbing topic that occupied the attention of Congress. General Weyler ordered all the inhabitants of Cuba who were suspected of sympathizing with the insurgents into the towns, where they were left to obtain the necessaries of life as best they could. This act, which was pronounced inhuman by the American people, resulted in the death of tens of thousands of men, women and children by starvation. Meanwhile, accurate reports of the appalling situation in Cuba were brought by several members of Congress who visited the island with a view to ascertaining the exact facts.

These reports so inflamed the Senate and House of Representatives that a number of resolutions were introduced demanding that belligerent rights should be granted to the Cubans, and further that the United States should intervene with force of arms to end the war in Cuba, and secure the independence of the island. These resolutions, which were referred to the committee on foreign relations, were indicative of the temper of Congress.

A profound sensation was created by the destruction of the United States battleship "Maine" in the harbor of Havana. The "Maine" was lying in the harbor, having been sent to Cuba on a friendly visit. On the evening of February 15th a terrific explosion took place on board the ship, by which 266 sailors and officers lost their lives and the vessel was wrecked. The cause of the explosion was not apparent. The wounded sailors of the "Maine" were unable to explain it. The explosion shook the whole city of Havana, and the windows were broken in many of the houses. The wounded sailors stated that the explosion took place while they were asleep, so that they could give no particulars as to the cause.

The Government at Washington and the whole country were horrified at the destruction of one of our largest cruisers and the loss of so many of our brave sailors. The excitement throughout the country was intense. The chief interest in the "Maine" disaster now centered upon the cause of the explosion that so quickly sent her to the bottom of Havana harbor.

A Naval Board of Inquiry, composed of Captain Sampson, of the "Iowa;" Captain Chadwick, of the "New York;" Captain Marix, of the "Vermont," and Lieutenant-Commander Potter, of the "New York," went to Havana, and proceeded promptly to investigate the causes of the explosion that destroyed the battleship.

The further the inquiry into the causes that led to the "Maine" disaster proceeded, the more remote appeared the chances that any evidence would be discovered to show that the disaster was due to accident. Those divers who penetrated into the forward part of the wreck found that the whole forward end of the ship from a point just abaft the forward turret had been twisted fifteen or twenty degrees to starboard. That part of the vessel was a wilderness of debris and curled and twisted plates.

For upwards of twenty days the country awaited in profound suspense the result of the inquiry of the Naval Board. During this time all sorts of conflicting rumors were afloat, but it was well understood that the government at Washington was pursuing a conservative course and would not plunge the country into war without the greatest provocation. At length the investigation by the Naval Board was completed and was transmitted to Congress, accompanied by a message from President McKinley as follows:

"To the Congress of the United States:

"For some time prior to the visit of the 'Maine' to Havana harbor our consular representatives pointed out the advantages to flow from the visit of national ships to the Cuban waters in accustoming the people to the presence of our flag as a symbol of good will and our ships, in the fulfillment of the mission of protection to American interests, even though no immediate need therefor might exist.

"Accordingly on the 24th of January last, after conference with the Spanish Minister, in which the renewal of visits of our war vessels to Spanish waters was discussed and accepted, and the peninsular authorities at Madrid and Havana were advised of the purpose of this government to resume friendly naval visits at Cuban ports, and that in that view the 'Maine' would forthwith call at the port of Havana. This announcement was received by the Spanish Government with appreciation of the friendly character of the visit of the 'Maine' and with notification of intention to return the courtesy by sending Spanish ships to the principal ports of the United States. Meanwhile, the 'Maine' entered the port of Havana on the 25th of January, her arrival being marked with no special incident besides the exchange of customary salutes and ceremonial visits.

"The 'Maine' continued in the harbor of Havana during the three weeks following her arrival. No appreciable excitement attended her stay; on the contrary, a feeling of relief and confidence followed the resumption of the long interrupted friendly intercourse. So noticeable was this immediate effect of her visit that the Consul General strongly urged that the presence of our ships in Cuban waters should be kept up by retaining the 'Maine' at Havana, or, in the event of her recall, by sending another vessel there to take her place.

"At forty minutes past nine in the evening of the 15th of February the 'Maine' was destroyed by an explosion, by which the entire forward part of the ship was utterly wrecked. In this catastrophe two officers and two hundred and sixty-four of her crew perished, those who were not killed outright by her explosion being penned between decks by the tangle of the wreckage and drowned by the immediate sinking of the hull.

"Prompt assistance was rendered by the neighboring vessels anchored in the harbor, aid being especially given by the boats of the Spanish cruiser 'Alphonse XII.' and the Ward Line steamer 'City of Washington,' which lay not far distant. The wounded were generously cared for by the authorities of Havana, the hospitals being freely opened to them, while the earliest recovered bodies of the dead were interred by the municipality in the public cemetery in the city. Tributes of grief and sympathy were offered from all official quarters of the island.

"The appalling calamity fell upon the people of our country with crushing force, and for a brief time an intense excitement prevailed, which in a community less just and self-controlled than ours might have led to hasty acts of blind resentment. This spirit, however, soon gave way to the calmer processes of reason and to the resolve to investigate the facts and await material proof

before forming a judgment as to the cause, the responsibility, and, if the facts warranted, the remedy. This course necessarily recommended itself from the outset to the Executive, for only in the light of a dispassionately ascertained certainty could it determine the nature and measure of its full duty in the matter.

"The usual procedure was followed, as in all cases of casualty or disaster to national vessels of any maritime state. A Naval Court of Inquiry was at once organized, composed of officers well qualified by rank and practical experience to discharge the duty imposed upon them. Aided by a strong force of wreckers and divers, the Court proceeded to make a thorough investigation on the spot, employing every available means for the impartial and exact determination of the causes of the explosion. Its operations have been conducted with the utmost deliberation and judgment, and while independently pursued, no source of information was neglected, and the fullest opportunity was allowed for a simultaneous investigation by the Spanish authorities.

"The finding of the Court of Inquiry was reached after twenty-three days of continuous labor, on the 21st of March, and having been approved on the 22d by the Commander-in-Chief of the United States naval force of the North Atlantic station, was transmitted to the Executive.

"It is herewith laid before the Congress, together with the voluminous testimony taken before the Court. Its purport is in brief as follows :

"When the 'Maine' arrived at Havana she was conducted by the regular government pilot to buoy No. 5, to which she was moored in from five and one-half to six fathoms of water. The state of discipline on board and the condition of her magazines, boilers, coal bunkers and storage compartments are passed in review, with the conclusion that excellent order prevailed, and that no indication of any cause for an internal explosion existed in any quarter.

"At 8 o'clock in the evening of February 15 everything had been reported secure and all was quiet. At forty minutes past 9 o'clock the vessel was suddenly destroyed. There were two distinct explosions, with a brief interval between them. The first lifted the forward part of the ship very perceptibly; the second, which was more open, prolonged and of greater volume, is attributed by the Court to the partial explosion of two or more of the forward magazines.

"The evidence of the divers establishes that the after part of the ship was practically intact and sank in that condition a very few minutes after the explosion. The forward part was completely demolished. Upon the evidence of a concurrent external cause the finding of the Court is as follows :

"'At frame 17 the outer shell of the ship, from a point eleven and one-half feet from the middle line of the ship and six feet above the keel when in its normal position, has been forced up so as to be now about four feet above the surface of the water; therefore about thirty-four feet above where it would be had the ship sunk uninjured.

"The outside bottom plating is bent into a reversed V shape, the after wing of which, about fifteen feet broad and thirty-two feet in length (frame 17 to frame 25) is doubled back upon itself against the continuation of the same plating extending forward. At frame 18 the vertical keel is broken in two and the flat keel bent into an angle similar to the angle formed by the outside bottom plates. This break is now about six feet below the surface of the water and about thirty feet above its normal position.

"In the opinion of the Court this effect could have been produced only by the explo-

sion of a mine situated under the bottom of the ship, at about frame 18 and somewhat on the port side of the ship.

"The conclusions of the Court are: That the loss of the 'Maine' was not in any respect due to fault or negligence on the part of any of the officers or members of her crew.

"That the ship was destroyed by the explosion of a submarine mine, which caused the partial explosion of two or more of her forward magazines; and

"That no evidence has been obtainable fixing the responsibility for the destruction of the 'Maine' upon any person or persons.

"I have directed that the finding of the Court of Inquiry and the views of this government thereon be communicated to the government of her Majesty, the Queen Regent, and I do not permit myself to doubt that the sense of justice of the Spanish nation will dictate a course of action suggested by honor and the friendly relations of the two governments.

"It will be the duty of the Executive to advise the Congress of the result, and in the meantime deliberate consideration is invoked.

Signed "WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

"EXECUTIVE MANSION, March 28, 1898."

The following is the full text of the report of the Court of Inquiry appointed to innvestigate the disaster to the "Maine" at Havana:

"U. S. S. Iowa, 1st rate, Key West, Fla., Monday, March 21, 1898.—After full and mature consideration of all the testimony before it, the court finds as follows:

"1. That the United States battleship 'Maine' arrived in the harbor of Havana, Cuba, on the twenty-fifth day of January, Eighteen Hundred and Ninety-eight, and was taken to Buoy No. 4, in from five and one-half to six fathoms of water, by the regular government pilot. The United States Consul General at Havana had notified the authorities at that place the previous evening of the intended arrival of the 'Maine.'

"2. The state of discipline on board the 'Maine' was excellent, and all orders and regulations in regard to the care and safety of the ship were strictly carried out. All ammunition was stowed in accordance with prescribed instructions, and proper care was taken whenever ammunition was handled. Nothing was stowed in any one of the magazines or shell rooms which was not permitted to be stowed there.

"The magazines and shell rooms were always locked after having been opened, and after the destruction of the 'Maine' the keys were found in their proper place in the captain's cabin, everything having been reported secure that evening at 8 P. M. The temperatures of the magazine and shell room were taken daily and reported. The only magazine which had an undue amount of heat was the after 10-inch magazine, and that did not explode at the time the 'Maine' was destroyed.

"The torpedo warheads were all stowed in the after part of the ship under the ward room, and neither caused nor participated in the destruction of the 'Maine.' The dry gun cotton primers and detonators were stowed in the cabin aft, and remote from the scene of the explosion.

"Waste was carefully looked after on board the 'Maine' to obviate danger. Special orders in regard to this had been given by the commanding officer. Varnishes, dryers, alcohol and other combustibles of this nature were stowed on or above the main deck and could not have had anything to do with the destruction of the 'Maine.' The medical stores were stowed aft under the ward room and remote from the scene of the explosion. No dangerous stores of any kind

UNITED STATES FORCES CAPTURING THE INTRENCHMENTS AT SANTIAGO

ADMIRAL
W. S. SCHLEY.

were stowed below in any of the other store rooms.

"The coal bunkers were inspected daily. Of those bunkers adjacent to the forward magazines and shell rooms four were empty. One bunker had been in use that day and another was full of new river coal. This coal had been carefully inspected before receiving it on board. The bunker in which it was stowed was accessible on three sides at all times.

"The fire alarms in the bunkers were in working order, and there had never been a case of spontaneous combustion of coal on board the 'Maine.' The two after boilers of the ship were in use at the time of the disaster, but for auxiliary purposes only, with a comparatively low pressure of steam and being tended by a reliable watch. These boilers could not have caused the explosion of the ship. The four forward boilers have since been found by the divers and are in a fair condition.

"On the night of the destruction of the 'Maine' everything had been reported secure for the night at 8 P. M. by reliable persons, through the proper authorities, to the commanding officer. At the time the 'Maine' was destroyed the ship was quiet, and, therefore, least liable to accident caused by movements from those on board.

"3. The destruction of the 'Maine' occurred at 9.40 P. M. on the 15th day of February, 1898, in the harbor of Havana, Cuba, she being at the time moored to the same buoy to which she had been taken upon her arrival.

"There were two explosions of a distinctly different character, with a very short but distinct interval between them, and the forward part of the ship was lifted to a marked degree at the time of the first explosion.

"The first explosion was more in the nature of a report, like that of a gun, while the second explosion was more open, prolonged and of greater volume. This second explosion was, in the opinion of the court, caused by the partial explosion of two or more of the forward magazines of the 'Maine.'

"The evidence bearing upon this, being principally obtained from divers, did not enable the court to form a definite conclusion as to the condition of the wreck, although it was established that the after part of the ship was practically intact and sank in that condition a very few minutes after the destruction of the forward part.

"4. The following facts in regard to the forward part of the ship are, however, established by the testimony: That portion of the port side of the protective deck which extends from about frame 30 to about frame 41 was blown up aft, and over to port, the main deck from about frame 30 to about frame 41 was blown up aft, and slightly over to starboard, folding the forward part of the middle superstructure over and on top of the after part.

"This was, in the opinion of the court, caused by the partial explosion of two or more of the forward magazines of the 'Maine.'

"5. At frame 17 the outer shell of the ship, from a point eleven and one-half feet from the middle line of the ship and six feet above the keel when in its normal position, has been forced up so as to be now about four feet above the surface of the water, therefore, about thirty-four feet above where it would be had the ship sunk uninjured. The outside bottom plating is bent into a reversed V-shape, the after wing of which, about fifteen feet broad and thirty-two feet in length (from frame 17 to frame 25) is doubled back upon itself against the continuation of the same plating extending forward.

"At frame 18 the vertical keel is broken in two and the flat keel bent into an angle similar to the angle formed by the outside

bottom plating. This break is now about six feet below the surface of the water and about thirty feet above its normal position.

"In the opinion of the court this effect could have been produced only by the explosion of a mine situated under the bottom of the ship at about frame 18, and somewhat on the port side of the ship.

"6. The court finds that the loss of the 'Maine' on the occasion named was not in any respect due to fault or negligence on the part of the officers or men of the crew of said vessel.

"7. In the opinion of the court the 'Maine' was destroyed by the explosion of a submarine mine, which caused the partial explosion of two of her forward magazines.

"8. The court has been unable to obtain evidence fixing the responsibility for the destruction of the 'Maine' upon any person or persons. "W. T. SAMPSON,

"Captain U. S. N., President.

"A. MARIX,

"Lieutenant Commander U. S. N., Judge Advocate."

Following the destruction of the battleship "Maine," which, as already noted, stirred the resentment of the entire country to a marked degree, negotiations were continued by our government with Spain for the purpose of putting an end to the war in Cuba, which, it was admitted by all, had been attended with intolerable cruelties. Perhaps the exact number of those who perished by starvation, as a result of the Spanish policy in that island, will never be known; suffice it to say, that the land was in desolation; starvation and death on every side aroused the indignation of the civilized world.

Meanwhile there was a very restless feeling in Congress and definite action toward intervention between Spain and Cuba was delayed only by the expectation of a message from President McKinley that would deal vigorously with the whole question. The message was held back in order that the views of our government might, if possible, be accepted by Spain and the issues between the two countries settled by diplomacy.

The President's Message was sent to Congress at noon, April 11th, accompanied by the Consular reports.

The Message opened with a detailed account of the revolution and of its effect upon American interests. It called attention to the fact that President Cleveland's offer of mediation was rejected by Spain. A description was then given of the "new and inhuman phase" added to the horrors of the strife by the concentration of the inhabitants in fortified places, which brought the narrative down to the opening of the present Administration, when 300,000 or more people had been herded in towns and villages, and half of them had died of starvation and the diseases incident thereto.

The new Administration in Spain, while not admitting mediation, proposed reforms in the government of Cuba, and, while negotiations were in progress, relief plans were proposed and accepted, under which nearly $200,000 in money and supplies reached the sufferers, and then the Spanish Government revoked the orders of General Weyler, permitted the reconcentrados to return to their homes, and appropriated $600,000 for their relief.

The President said that the war in Cuba was of such a nature that a final military victory for either side seemed impracticable. Realizing this, he submitted to the Spanish Government propositions for an armistice until October 1 for the negotiation of peace with the good offices of the President. He also asked for a revocation of the order for reconcentration.

Spain replied that the preparation of terms of peace would be referred to the Insular Parliament. The President then abandoned negotiations.

The President then discussed, in the light of freely quoted State papers, the untried measures—recognition of the insurgents as belligerents, recognition of the independence of Cuba, neutral intervention to end the war by imposing a rational compromise between the contestants, and intervention in favor of one or the other party. He showed that we could not at this time, without departing from the settled policy of the Government, recognize the insurgents as belligerents or recognize the independence of Cuba. He used the destruction of the "Maine" to illustrate the elements of danger and disorder that prevailed in Cuba and called for intervention, and said of the Maine disaster:

"In any event the destruction of the 'Maine,' by whatever exterior cause, is a patent and impressive proof of a state of things in Cuba that is intolerable. This condition is thus shown to be such that the Spanish Government cannot assure safety and security to a vessel of the American navy in the harbor of Havana on a mission of peace and rightfully there."

An able argument in favor of intervention was followed by these conclusions and recommendations:

"The long trial has proved that the object for which Spain has waged the war cannot be attained. The fire of insurrection may flame or may smoulder with varying seasons, but it has not been and it is plain that it cannot be extinguished by present methods. The only hope of relief and repose from a condition which can no longer be endured is the enforced pacification of Cuba. In the name of humanity, in the name of civilization, in behalf of endangered American interests which give us the right and the duty to speak and to act, the war in Cuba must stop.

"In view of these facts and of these considerations I ask the Congress to authorize and empower the President to take measures to secure a full and final termination of hostilities between the Government of Spain and the people of Cuba, and to secure in the island the establishment of a stable government capable of maintaining order and observing its international obligations, ensuring peace and tranquillity and the security of its citizens as well as our own, and to use the military and naval forces of the United States as may be necessary for these purposes.

"And in the interest of humanity and to aid in preserving the lives of the starving people of that island, I recommend that the distribution of food and supplies be continued, and that an appropriation be made out of the public treasury to supplement the charity of our citizens.

"The issue is now with the Congress. It is a solemn responsibility. I have exhausted every effort to relieve the intolerable condition of affairs which is at our doors. Prepared to execute every obligation imposed upon me by the Constitution and the law, I await your action."

The President submitted the armistice granted by Spain at the eleventh hour as a fact to be considered by Congress and said of it:

"If this measure attains a successful result, then our aspirations as a Christian, peace-loving people will be realized. If it fails, it will be only another justification for our contemplated action."

There was no doubt whatever from the manifestations and utterances of Senators and Representatives on both sides that the Message had not met popular expectation. The opinion had obtained that the President

would disclaim against Spain in the most vigorous terms and that his recommendations would be favorable to legislative action that would speedily lead to hostilities.

Congress debated a week over the recommendations contained in the President's message, and on April 18th both Houses united in passing a series of resolutions calling for the intervention of the United States to compel Spain to withdraw her forces from Cuba, and thus permit the authorities at Washington to provide the Island with a free and independent government. The demand contained in the resolutions was sent to the Spanish Minister at Washington on April 20th, who at once called for his passports and left for Canada.

On the same date the ultimatum of our Government was sent to United States Minister Woodford, at Madrid, who was curtly handed his passports before he had an opportunity of formally presenting the document. These transactions involved a virtual declaration of war, although Congress did not formally declare that war actually existed until April 25th, dating the time back to the 21st.

The North Atlantic Squadron was immediately ordered to blockade the Cuban ports, and on April 22d proceeded to carry out the order. On the same date the United States gunboat "Nashville" captured the Spanish merchantman "Buena Ventura" in the Gulf of Mexico. In this capture the first gun of the war was fired. The next day President McKinley promulgated a resolution calling for 125,000 volunteers. On the same date Morro Castle, commanding the harbor of Havana, fired on the United States flagship "New York," but without doing damage. Subsequent events comprised the capture of a number of Spanish vessels by Admiral Sampson's squadron.

On April 26th Hon. John Sherman, Secretary of State, resigned, and Hon. Wm. R. Day, of Ohio, was appointed to be his successor. Movements were at once set on foot for mobilizing our army at Chickamauga, Tenn., and Tampa, Fla., for the purpose of invading Cuba and capturing Havana. Meanwhile a powerful Spanish squadron had proceeded to the Cape Verde Islands and was there awaiting orders. Mystery attended the movements of the fleet, and even after it sailed, its destination could only be surmised.

Stirring news from our Asiatic fleet was soon received. On May 1st Admiral Dewey practically destroyed the Spanish squadron in the harbor of Manila, Philippine Islands, capturing nine vessels and inflicting a loss of 400 killed and 600 wounded.

The sailing of the American fleet from Hong Kong on April 27 was promptly cabled to Manila, and despite all that the authorities could do to prevent, it was soon known throughout the island.

Many of the better class of residents at once hurried aboard merchant vessels with their valuables and fled. Those left behind took no courage from the confident boastings of the Spanish army and naval officers, but gave way to panic from fear of what would happen when the native insurgents made an attack on the town.

It was known to the Spanish authorities that the American fleet would be almost certain to arrive on the evening of Saturday, April 30th.

The Spanish fleet, which at first put to sea to meet and destroy the "cowardly Yankees," was recalled Saturday afternoon and lined up at Cavite, where the arsenals, dry-docks and naval warships are defended by a long line of earthworks.

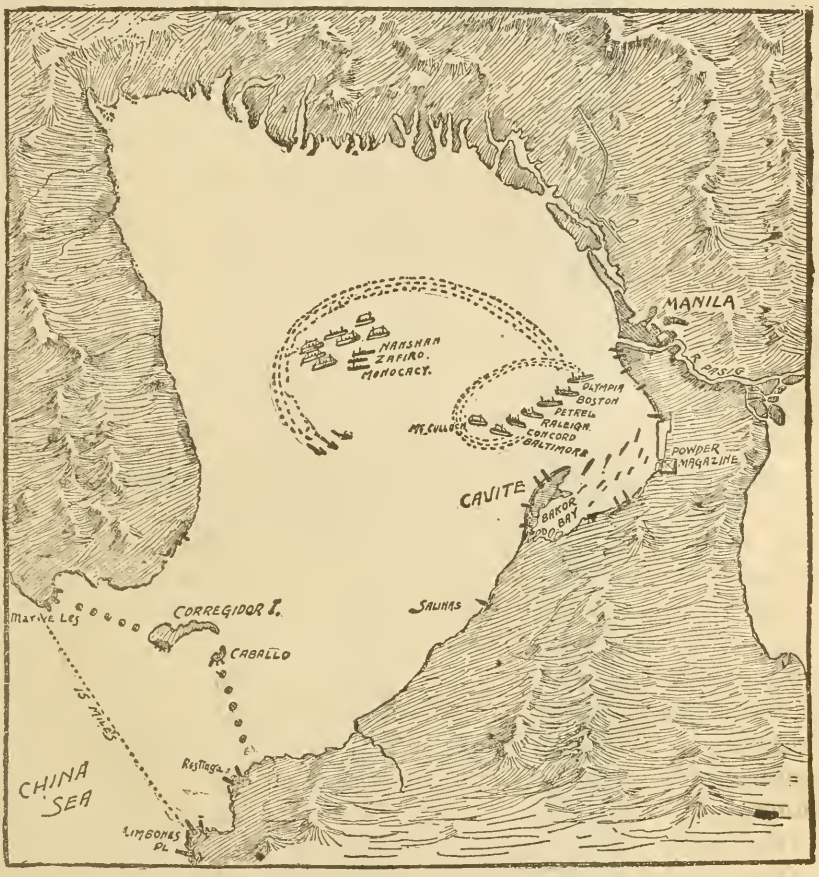
These works had been greatly strengthened, notably by the addition of several big modern guns. They were regarded as very formidable by old-fashioned Spanish military engineers, as were also the fort on Corregidor

Island, the battery on Cabilla Island, and the works on the mainland points to the north and south. These islands were all in readiness, and a chain of mines which guarded both channels was prepared to blow up each American ship as it passed.

Saturday night fell with the Spaniards on land and water quite cheerful over the coming engagement. A short time after midnight, the darkness being intense, one of the guns in Corregidor suddenly boomed out, and all the other guns about the entrance to the bay took up the cry, and the anxious people in Manila poured into the streets. They thought the battle had begun. In reality the American fleet was already past the entrance and was on its way up the opposite side of the bay.

It was a night of terror in Manila. The women and children fled to the churches, and men rushed to and fro in the streets. Dismay seized upon the Spanish soldiers. They had not believed that the Americans could ever get past the entrance to the batteries and past the mines. Long before dawn the panic became a frenzy because of reports that came from the interior of the island that natives were massing for a descent upon the city to pillage and massacre. When day broke the tens of thousands watching on all sides of the vast and beautiful harbor saw the enemy in line of battle about ten miles out, directly in front of Manila. There were nine vessels in all.

The "Olympia," 5800 tons, a swift commerce destroyer, carrying four terrible 8-inch guns and ten deadly 5-inch quick-firers.



MANILA HARBOR—SCENE OF THE GREAT BATTLE

The "Baltimore," scarcely less formidable than the "Olympia," with four eight-inch guns and six six-inch rapid-firers.

The "Boston," smaller than the "Olympia" and "Baltimore," but still a real and powerful floating fort, with her two eight-inch guns and her six six-inch rapid-firers

The "Raleigh," similar to the "Boston," with one six-inch and ten five-inch guns.

The "Concord," with six six-inch guns.

The gunboat "Petrel," with five six-inch guns.

To the rear of these the transport ships, with coal, ammunition and accommodations for wounded.

With a bright American flag floating gayly over each ship, the decks and all visible appointments neat and trim, the fleet seemed to be out for a holiday rather than awaiting an opening for the only real demonstration of an ironclad fleet in action that the world has had. The Spaniards could hardly believe their own eyes. That this formidable apparition was in the very centre of their harbor, almost within firing distance of the capital city of their last remaining Eastern possessions seemed incredible, impossible.

They had not long to watch and speculate. The sun was hardly clear of the horizon before the American fleet began to steam in slow and stately fashion straight toward the city, near which were anchored three men-of-war from three different nations, French, German and English. The decks and rigging of each of these ships were thronged with eager officers and sailors, discipline seeming to have been forgotten in an intense desire to see what the Yankees would do—these Yankees who in three-quarters of a century have never sent a hostile fleet into any port of a European Power.

On came the American fleet until it was within about three miles of Manila, and then a Spanish gun on the battery at the end of the Mole spoke; but the shot fell short. Then from the Spanish fleet, steaming slowly up from Cavite, came several shots at the American fleet. The two duelists were now face to face.

To expert eyes the Spanish fleet seemed far inferior, yet to the people watching, and, apparently, to the Spanish officers and sailors, the difference did not seem great. The Spanish ships were of older patterns, rather than smaller, and were far more numerous. There were:

The "Reina Cristina," of 3090 tons, with six six-inch and two three-inch guns.

The "Castilla," with four six-inch guns.

The smaller cruisers "Velasco," "Don Juan de Austria" and "Don Antonio de Ulloa," besides ten gunboats.

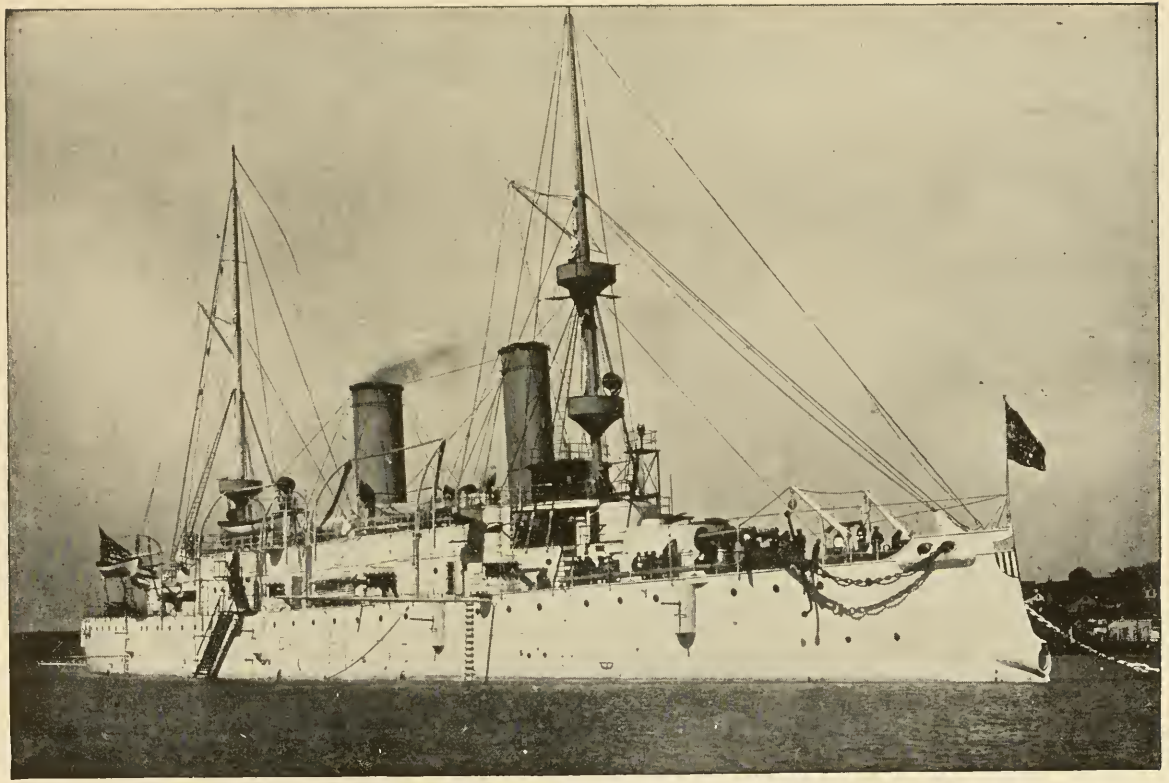
Then there were the batteries on shore all along the low peninsula.

To get the full effect of all of these guns the Spaniards formed so that the Americans would have to face not only all the guns afloat, but also all the guns on shore at Cavite, while from the rear the strong batteries of Manila could, perhaps, send aiding shots. When the American manœuverings brought their ships within range, at about 6.45, the real duel began. The Spanish fleet stood ready, flanked by the Cavite batteries on the south.

The American fleet began to steam languidly to and fro. Suddenly there were one or two sharp cracks, and then a succession of deafening roars, and then one long, reverberating roar, that boomed and bellowed from shore to shore. A huge cloud of smoke lay close upon the waters, and around it was a penumbra of thick haze.

Through this the American ships could be seen moving, now slowly, now more rapidly, flames shooting from their sides, and answering flames leaping from the Spanish ships and land batteries, while now and then from the direction of Manila came hollow rumbles as the big guns there were discharged, more from eagerness to take part than from the hope of lending effective aid.

It was impossible to see from shore the effect of many of the shots, but from the fact that the American ships were alternately advancing and retreating in the course of their manœuverings, the Spaniards on shore



UNITED STATES CRUISER OLYMPIA

Twin screw; length on water line, 340 feet; breadth, 53 feet; draft, 21 feet 6 inches; displacement, 5,870 tons; speed, 20 knots. Main battery, four 8-inch guns and ten 5-inch rapid fire guns. Secondary battery, fourteen 6-pounder and six 1-pounder rapid-fire guns. and four gatlings. Protected steel deck, from 2 to 4¾. 20 officers, 290 men. Cost, $1,769.000.

GREAT AMERICAN VICTORY IN THE HARBOR OF MANILA

got the impression that the Yankees were being beaten. When the ships were again seen, the "Reina Cristina" was wrapped in flames. On her decks sailors, Spaniards and natives, were rushing frantically about. The "Isle De Cuba" came near, and part of the "Reina Cristina's" crew—perhaps all that were still alive—and the Spanish Admiral went aboard her, but hardly were they aboard when she, too, burst into flames.

UNIFORMS OF UNITED STATES MARINES AND NAVAL OFFICERS.

Confusion now reigned throughout the Spanish fleet. On every vessel the decks were slippery with blood and the air filled with the shrieks and groans of the Spaniards. The native sailors rushed about in a frenzy of rage rather than terror. The Americans were seemingly calm and cool, and still in good order they pressed their advantage. In fact, they pushed on too closely, for now the fire from the Cavite batteries became effective.

At this juncture the "Don Juan de Austria" became a centre of interest. She had been in the very front of battle and received, perhaps, more of the American shots than any other ship. Admiral Montojo, on the burning "Isla de Cuba," threw up his arms with a gesture of despair as a heavy roar came from the "Don Juan de Austria" and part of her deck flew up in the air, taking with it scores of dead, dying and mangled. A shot had penetrated one of her magazines. She was ruined and sinking, but her crew refused to leave her. Weeping, cursing, praying and firing madly and blindly they went down with her, and as the "Don Juan de Austria" went down the "Castilla" burst into flames.

The remainder of the Spanish fleet now turned and fled down the long, narrow inlet behind Cavite. Several of the gun-boats

were run ashore, others fled up a small creek and were grounded there. The guns of Cavite kept on thundering, and the Americans, pressing their advantage no further, drew off. As they steamed away toward their waiting transports the Spaniards went wild with joy.

They thought that in spite of outward appearances the American fleet was crippled, and that as it would be unable to escape from the harbor it would fall into their hands. This was telegraphed up to Manila, and soon to Madrid, where it filled the Ministry with momentary delight; but before the Ministers at Madrid had read the false news, the American fleet, with decks again cleared and with fresh supplies of ammunition, was steaming back toward Cavite.

This second engagement was short. The last Spanish ship was soon grounded or sunk. The American guns were now trained on Cavite, and one ship after another steamed along pouring in a deadly fire. At 11.30 the batteries at Cavite ceased to answer, and the American fleet with ringing cheers from its exhausted, but triumphant crews steamed jubilantly back to the transport ships. And to the long list of splendid naval victories beginning with the Revolution was added the glorious victory of Manila.

STREET SCENE IN MANILA—PHILIPPINE ISLANDS.

In honor of his distinguished services Commodore Dewey was raised to the rank of Admiral, and Congress passed a series of resolutions thanking him and his men for services rendered their country.

On May 11th Ensign Bagley, of the torpedo

ADMIRAL W. T. SAMPSON

BOMBARDMENT OF SAN JUAN BY ADMIRAL SAMPSON'S FLEET

THURSDAY, MAY 12, 1898

BOMBARDMENT OF SAN JUAN, PORTO RICO, BY ADMIRAL SAMPSON'S FLEET

boat "Winslow," and five men were killed, and five others were wounded, in Cardenas harbor, on the northern coast of Cuba, in an engagement with Spanish gunboats. The Americans displayed great bravery in the face of danger, the action of the United States gunboat "Hudson" being especially notable in going to the rescue of the "Winslow," and towing her out of range of the enemy's fire. Ensign Bagley was the first to lose his life in the war. On the same date there was an engagement between United States vessels and Spanish troops at Cienfuegos, on the southern coast of Cuba. One American was killed, and six badly wounded. The object of the expedition, however, was successful in cutting the cable from that point.

On May 12th General Wesley Merritt was appointed Military Governor of the Philippines, and orders were given for troops to be sent to Manila for the purpose of capturing the town and occupying the Island. Agreeably to this order the cruiser "Charleston" sailed on May 18th for Manila, loaded with supplies and ammunition.

On May 12th Admiral Sampson's squadron arrived off Porto Rico, and for three hours bombarded the forts of San Juan, inflicting serious damage upon them and the town. The Admiral then withdrew, stating that his object was not to capture San Juan, but to find, if possible, the Spanish fleet which had sailed some days previously from the Cape Verde Islands. Great mystery attended the movements of the Spanish squadron.

On May 19th the long suspense occasioned by the difficulty of ascertaining what Admiral Cervera intended to do with his fleet was over, and it was definitely known that his vessels were entrapped in the harbor of Santiago. The government resolved to send troops at once to that point to aid the fleet in capturing the town. While it was known that the Spanish vessels were inside the harbor of Santiago it was considered impossible for our battleships to enter the harbor on account of mines which had been planted, and the formidable attack sure to be made by batteries on shore.

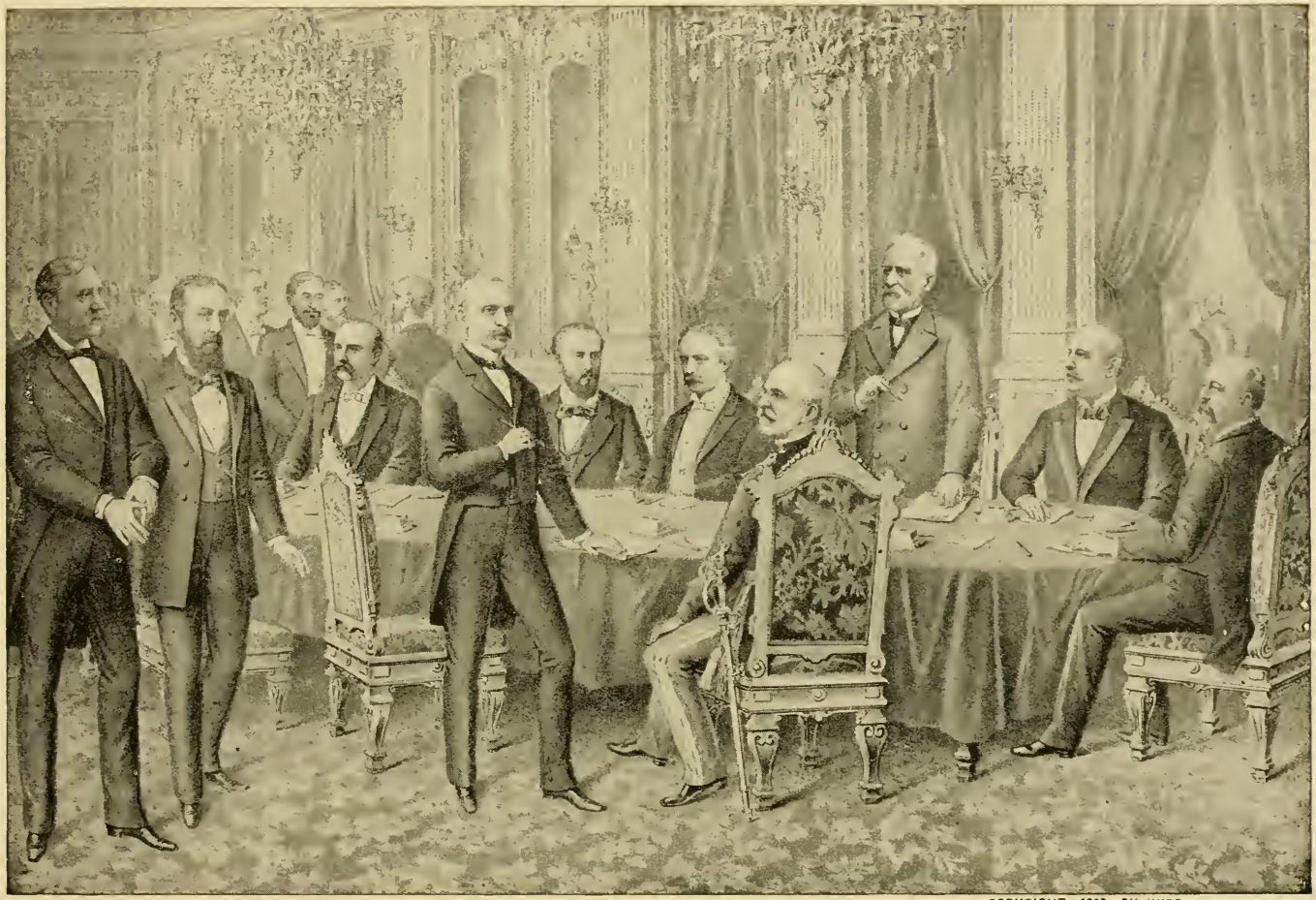
The entrance to the harbor of Santiago is very narrow, and vessels are compelled at one point to go through a channel not much over three hundred feet wide. Here occurred on the morning of June 3d one of the most gallant acts recorded in the annals of naval warfare. Lieutenant Hobson, naval constructor, on the flagship of Admiral Sampson,

LIEUT. R. P. HOBSON.

conceived the plan of blocking this narrow entrance by sinking the collier "Merrimac," thus "bottling up" Cervera and his fleet. The reader will be interested in a detailed account of this remarkable exploit.

When the Admiral's consent for making the daring venture was obtained, Mr. Hobson became impatient of all delay, and that very night, after the moon went down, he set the time for the attempt. Volunteers were called for on all the ships of the fleet. Whole cheering crews stepped forward at the summons for the extra-hazardous duty. About three hundred on board the "New York," one hundred and eighty on board the "Iowa,"

AMERICAN PEACE COMMISSIONERS



COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY KURZ & ALLISON

SENATOR WM. P. FRYE SENATOR GEORGE GRAY WM. R. DAY GENERAL R. CERERO SENATOR CUSHMAN K. DAVIS
SENOR W. R. DE VILLI-URRUTIA SENOR BUENAVENTURA DE ABARAZUZA WHITELAW REID SENOR EUG. MONTERO RIOS SENOR J. DE GARNICA

AMERICAN AND SPANISH PEACE COMMISSIONERS SIGNING THE TREATY OF PEACE IN PARIS

and a like proportion from the other ships volunteered, but Mr. Hobson decided to risk as few lives as possible.

He picked three men from the "New York" and three from the "Merrimac." The latter were green in the service, but they knew the ship, and had pleaded hard to go, and one man stowed away on board the collier.

Six other men, selected from various ships, with Ensign Powell in command, manned the launch, which was to lie at the harbor mouth and take off those who escaped. The "Merrimac" was made ready. Six torpedoes were strung along her port side, with wire connections to the bridge. Her anchors were lashed at the bow and stern. Her cargo of coal was shifted, and her cargo-ports were opened so that she would more readily fill when the time came to cut her anchor-lashings, open the seacocks, and torpedo her bulkheads.

The work was not completed until after four o'clock in the morning; but, with the sky paling in the east, Mr. Hobson headed in on his desperate mission.

On board the ships of the fleet picketed about the entrance every officer and man, with many warm heart beats for their brave comrades, awaited the issue, with eyes anxiously fixed on the jutting headlands that marked the entrance of the harbor. But as the "Merrimac" steamed forward Rear Admiral Sampson, pacing the deck of the flagship, looked at his watch and at the streaks in the east, and decided that the "Merrimac" could not reach the entrance before broad daylight. Consequently, the torpedo boat "Porter," which was alongside, was despatched to recall the daring officer. Mr. Hobson sent back a protest, with a request for permission to proceed. But the Admiral declined to allow him to take the risk, and slowly the "Merrimac" swung about.

During the day Lieutenant Hobson went aboard the flagship. So absorbed was he in the task ahead of him that, unmindful of his appearance and of all ceremony and naval etiquette, he told the Admiral, in a tone of command, that he must not again be interfered with.

"I can carry this thing through," said he, "but there must be no more recalls. My men have been keyed up for twenty-four hours and under a tremendous strain. Iron will break at last." When Mr. Hobson left the ship and the extended hands of his shipmates, more than one of the latter turned hastily to hide the unbidden tear. But the Lieutenant waved them adieu with a smile on his handsome face.

The "Merrimac" started in shortly after three o'clock Friday morning. The full moon had disappeared behind a black cloud-bank in the west. Three thousand strained eyes strove to pierce the deep veil of night.

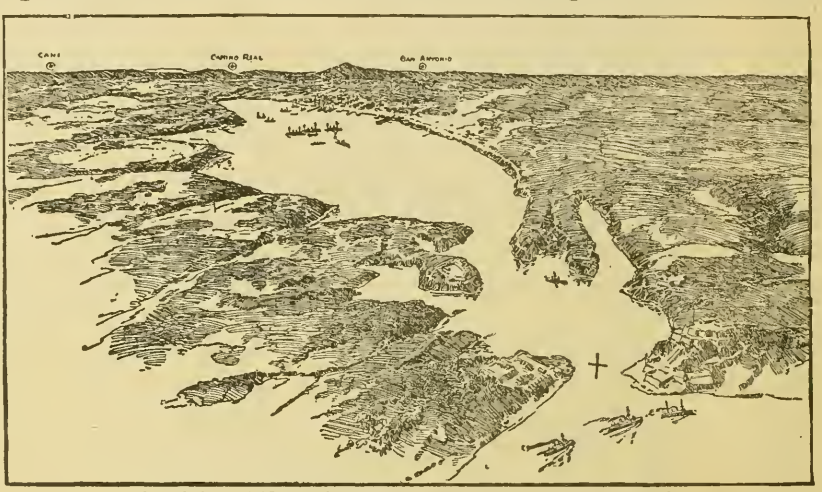
Suddenly there were several shots from the rocky eminence on which Morro Castle is situated. They were followed by jets and streams of fire from the batteries opposite. The "Merrimac" had reached the entrance of the harbor. She must have passed so close that a stone loosened from the frowning parapet of the Castle would have fallen on her deck. It seems a miracle that her apparently riddled hull could have reached the goal. After five minutes the firing ceased and all became dark again.

When the curtain of the night was at last lifted the light disclosed a tiny steam launch riding the waves at the very throat of the entrance of the harbor. In an instant the guns of the shore batteries were turned upon her, and, with a last lingering, vain look for the crew of the "Merrimac," Ensign Powell headed his launch close along shore to the westward. In this lay his salvation. The guns of the batteries to the westward could not be depressed enough to hit the little

launch, and the guns on Morro Castle would not bear upon her.

But the Spaniards, nevertheless, fired wildly, overshooting the launch, until the latter was fully two miles up the coast. Then some of the shells began to drop fairly close, and one of them threw a cloud of spray on board the small craft. In the meantime the ships of the fleet had drawn on until the "New York," "Massachusetts," "Texas" and "Marblehead" were barely three miles from Morro Castle.

The fire of the great guns continued, but the gunnery seemed to grow worse, until the Spaniards became tired. They were not rash enough, except in two instances, to fire at the fleet, fearing probably to provoke an antagonist with the strength of Admiral Sampson. Knowing of Hobson's desperate plan, the despatch boat had taken up a position opposite to the narrow harbor entrance and just outside the line of the blockading war ships.



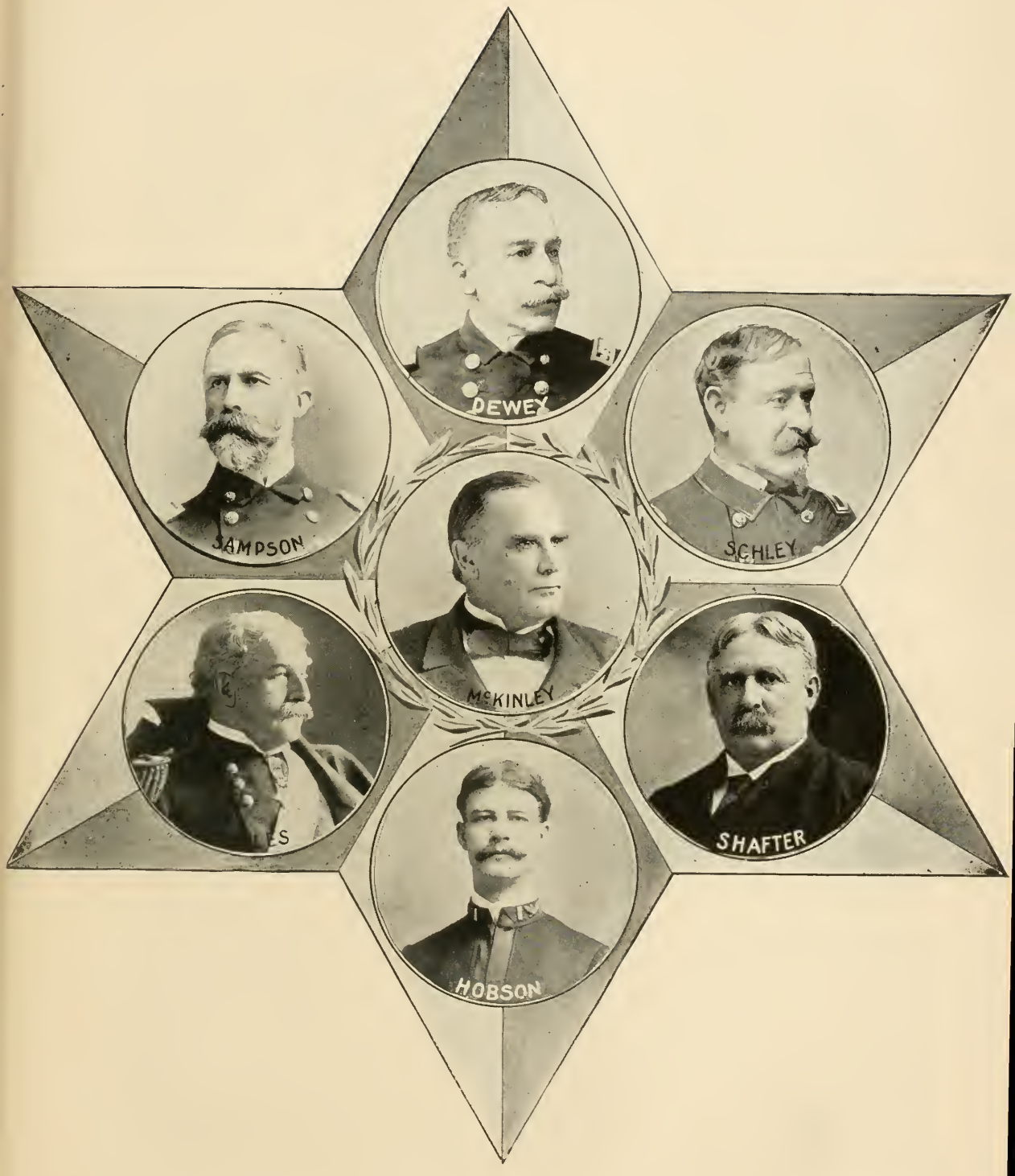
HARBOR AND FORTIFICATIONS OF SANTIAGO.
The star shows where the Merrimac was sunk.

From here the "Merrimac" was seen entering the harbor. A few minutes later the fire of the Spanish batteries was seen to be concentrated westward close to the shore. There a tiny thread of smoke disclosed their target. It was the "New York's" launch which Ensign Powell had gallantly held close under Morro's walls until after daylight, when, driven out by the fire of the big guns, he had run far up the shore, under the partial cover of the bluffs and had turned and eventually boarded the "Texas" out of range. Then he passed the "New York," broken-hearted at not finding Hobson and his men.

Lying closer in than the warships, Powell had seen the firing when the "Merrimac" and her dare-devil crew, then well inside Morro Castle, were probably first discovered by the Spaniards. He also heard an explosion, which may have been caused by Hobson's torpedoes. The Ensign was not sure. He waited vainly, hoping to rescue the heroes of the "Merrimac," until he was shelled out by the forts.

The work, however, was done. The big vessel had been swung across the narrow entrance to the harbor, the torpedoes had been fired, the explosion had come, the great collier was sinking at just the right point; and her gallant crew, having jumped into the water to save their lives, were taken on board the flagship of the Spanish Admiral, who praised their bravery, and sent an officer under flag of truce to assure Admiral Sampson that the heroic band was safe and would be well cared for. Spanish chivalry was forced to admiration.

Within three hours, on the morning of June 6th, the American fleet silenced nearly all the fortifications at the entrance to the harbor of Santiago de Cuba. The formidable Estrella and Cavo batteries failed to reply



HEROES IN OUR WAR WITH SPAIN

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY KURZ & ALLISON

BATTLE OF LA QUASINA—NEAR SANTIAGO, CUBA

during the last hour of the bombardment. They were so shattered that it is doubtful whether they could be of the smallest service to the Spaniards in the future.

There was a heavy fog and a steady rain during the engagement. The American gunners, however, rose superior to the mist, and their keen eyes, supplemented by high skill, directed the shot and shell with terrific effect. Again the Spaniards proved to be miserable marksmen They managed to hit the battleship "Massachusetts" once. Her fighting top was struck, but that was all the damage. The other ships did not suffer. Not one of our sailors was reported killed.

The formation of the American ships was in double column. About six o'clock in the morning the war vessels stood off six miles from the beetling Morro Castle. The weather was nasty; but no rain nor fog could depress the spirits of the sailors, who were eager for the fray.

The ships moved slowly to within three thousand yards of the shore. One line, composed of the "Brooklyn," "Texas," "Massachusetts" and the "Marblehead," turned westwardly. The flagship of Commodore Schley led. In the second line were the "New York," "Oregon," "Iowa," "New Orleans" and "Yankee." The "New York" was at the head of the line. The second line moved eastwardly. Far out on the left were the "Vixen" and the "Suwanee," whose crews watched the riflemen on shore. The sailors on the "Dolphin" and the "Porter" guarded the right flank. Admiral Sampson's column directed its attention to the new earthworks near Morro Castle Commodore Schley's vessels went opposite the Estrella and Catalina batteries.

There was no firing until the American ships were in the most strategic position for fighting. The bad weather evidently had caused the Spaniards to believe that there would be no bombardment while the heavy fog and rain lasted. The movement of the ships had not been noticed, apparently, until they were close to the batteries. But the battle-ship "Iowa" waked the Spaniards from their reveries. A shot from one of her great guns hit a battery with serious effect.

Both columns of ships then poured a fusillade into the fortifications and earthworks on either side of the harbor entrance. The Spaniards rushed to their guns and started to blaze away wildly. What they lacked in skill they made up in passion. But fiery temperaments with poorly trained eyes and bad nerves behind guns were no match for the superior gunners of Sampson and Schley's columns.

The Americans fired with great effect, but the Spaniards' shots were reckless and wide of the mark. There was a splendid chance for the enemy to display any proficiency in marksmanship, for the United States war vessels remained at their chosen stations, and did not resort to manœuvring. In this grand battle great clouds from the guns increased the heavy fog. It was a magnificent spectacle, even though the conditions were opposed to a thoroughly accurate survey of what was taking place. But glimpses left a vivid idea of the terrors of bombardment by great modern war ships.

Admiral Sampson had issued instructions that no firing should be directed upon Morro Castle, for in it were imprisoned Lieutenant Hobson and the other seven heroes of the "Merrimac's" volunteer crew. But several shells did strike the castle on the promontory and left gaping wounds.

As the bombardment proceeded the ships in Commodore Schley's column moved nearer to the shore in order to bring speedier destruction to the shore batteries. This action resulted in the "Texas," "Massachusetts" and "Brooklyn" dealing such awful broad-

sides that the earthworks were torn up and the Spanish gunners took to their heels for a less exposed place. But these three ships were not the only vessels in Schley's column that were doing their duty. The "Vixen" and the "Suwanee" drew in close to the shore and entered the fray with startling zeal. These small ships hammered away with their rapid-fire guns and demolished a shore battery.

The main interest in Schley's column was centered on the Estrella fortification. This fort offered great resistance, but when the "Texas" and the "Marblehead" trained their guns upon it at a closer range the woodwork of the fortification was set on fire and the defence was silenced.

The American gunners were doing their duty in the same glorious manner in the eastward column, from which Admiral Sampson was watching the engagement. Cavo battery was silenced by the "New York" and the "New Orleans." This required an energetic fire for quite a time, but the Spaniards were not able to endure the sustained attack. Their guns were dismounted and their defence was wrecked.

At the close of the second hour of the engagement the vessels of the American fleet turned so that they could use the port batteries upon what was left of the enemy's defences. Part of the time the firing was not accurate, because of the location of several fortified points on shore, which were difficult to hit. But in spite of the numerous disadvantages the American tars sent many shells into the right places.

There was great rejoicing among the American gunners when they saw that the Catalina fort was on fire. The guns in it spoke no more and the Spaniards could not be seen. With fire added to a rain of death-dealing shells, there was no withstanding the attack. Our fleet threw shell after shell into the Spanish fortifications until ten o'clock. Then the enemy made no responses. The American war ships had completed their task with despatch and with great destruction. Rear-Admiral Sampson signalled for the ships to stop the bombardment.

As the war ships steamed away some Spanish gunners returned to the very few guns that had not been dismounted and fired several shells, which, as usual, went very wide of their mark. None of our men were killed and few were injured.

Shortly after the engagement came to an end the inquiry was made whether we had lost any men. The question was answered, "Not a man." Later it was learned that one of the men on the "Suwanee" was injured.

What the loss was among the Spaniards was only a matter of conjecture. If they had remained at their guns tenaciously they would have suffered terribly, but, as many did not endure the terrific fire from our ships, it is believed that the loss was not enormous. But the fortifications at the entrance to the Santiago harbor were in ruins. Only two small shore batteries were not dismantled.

On June 7th, five American war ships appeared off the entrance to the Bay of Guantanamo just as the rising sun began to redden the horizen. With the "Marblehead" in the lead, the little squadron sailed into the bay and proceeded to a position which commanded the cable house, under the guns of the Spanish fortifications. While the "Marblehead," the "St. Louis," and the "Yankee" formed in battle order before the forts and opened fire, the little gunboats darted out from the line and began to grapple for the cable.

The fire from the cruisers was rapid and well directed, and was replied to with vigor by the Spanish. All the men on board the warships worked with enthusiasm, the New York Naval Reserves on board the "Yan-

JOHN D. LONG
SECRETARY OF THE NAVY

MAJOR GENERAL
FITZHUGH LEE.

kee" earning their share of laurels at the guns.

The bombardment continued until the gunboats cutting the cables had concluded their labors. This was at two o'clock in the afternoon. The fleet then sailed out of the bay and took up a position about three miles from shore.

The shells from the warships early began to tell on the fortifications, from which the fire became weaker and weaker. One battery after another was silenced, until finally not a shaft of fire or balloon of smoke issued from the face of the forts to tell of continued resistance.

As the walls of the fortifications began to tumble upon them the Spanish gunners deserted their posts of duty and ran to the town, which was in a state of high excitement. With the silencing of the forts a still greater panic fell upon the residents of Caimanera, who feared the Americans would complete their work by destroying the town, and there was a general movement to places of safety. After the cessation of firing from the forts, the fleet concentrated its fire upon the block-house, at which the cables of the French Cable and Telegraph Company land, and speedily demolished it. The cables which connected the block-house with Caimanera were cut.

Rear-Admiral Sampson's fleet again bombarded the batteries at Santiago de Cuba at daylight on the morning of June 16th. For hours the ships pounded the batteries at the right and left of the entrance, only sparing El Morro, where Lieutenant Hobson and his companions of the "Merrimac" were in prison.

The western batteries, against which the main assault was directed, were badly wrecked One was utterly destroyed. In others many guns were dismounted. At first the Spaniards replied passionately and wildly, but impotently. Then most of the guns were deserted. Not a ship was struck nor a man injured on the American side.

As a preliminary to the hammering given the batteries the dynamite cruiser "Vesuvius" was given a chance. Three two hundred and fifty pound charges of gun cotton were sent over the fortifications at the entrance. The design was to drop them in the bay, around the angle, back of the eminence on which El Morro is situated, where it was known that the Spanish torpedo-boat destroyers were lying.

From where the fleet lay the entrance to the harbor looked, in the black night, like a door opening into the livid fire of a Titanic furnace. An immense crater was blown out of the side of Cayo Smith, and was clearly seen from the ships.

Admiral Sampson issured orders for the bombardment the night before. Coffee was served to the men at half-past three in the morning, and with the first blush of dawn the men were called quietly to quarters. The ships steamed in five-knot speed to a three thousand yards range, when they closed up, broadside on, until a distance of three cables' length separated them. They were strung out in the form of a crescent, with the heavy fighting ships in the center, the flag-ship on the right flank and the "Massachusetts" on the left flank. The line remained stationary throughout the bombardment. The "Vixen" and "Scorpion" took up positions on opposite of flanks, close in shore, for the purpose of enfilading any infantry that might fire upon the ships.

When the ships got in position it was still too dark for any firing. The Admiral signaled the ships not to fire until the muzzles of the enemy's guns in the embrasures could be seen by the gun captains.

Fifteen minutes later, at 5.25 A. M., the "New York" opened with a broadside from

her main battery at the works on the east of the entrance to the harbor. All the ships followed in red streaks of flame. The fleet, enveloped in smoke, pelted the hills and hurled dirt and masonry into the air. It was a magnificent spectacle from where the dispatch boat "Dauntless" lay.

Though the gun captains had been cautioned not to waste ammunition, but to fire with deliberation, the firing was so rapid that there was an almost continuous report. The measured crash of the big 13-inch guns of the battleships sounded above the rattle of the guns of the secondary batteries like thunder claps above the din of a hurricane. A strong land breeze off the shore carried the smoke of the ships seaward, while it let down a thick curtain in front of the Spanish gunnery.

The Spanish guns responded spiritedly at first, but the frenzied, half-crazed fire could not match the cool, ever-trained eyes and skilled gunnery of the American sailors. Our fire was much more effective than in preceding bombardments.

In fifteen minutes one western battery was completely wrecked. The "Massachusetts" tore a gaping hole in the emplacement with a thousand-pound projectile, and the "Texas" dropped a shell into the powder magazine. The explosion wrought terrible havoc. The frame was lifted, the sides were blown out and a shower of debris flew in every direction. One timber, carried out of the side of the battery, went tumbling down the hill. The loss of life must have been great.

The batteries on the east of Morro were harder to get at, but the "New Orleans" crossed the bows of the "New York" to within five hundred yards of the shore, and played a tattoo with her long 8-inch rifles, hitting them repeatedly, striking a gun squarely muzzle on, lifting it off its trunnions, and sending it in somersaults high in the air.

Several times Admiral Sampson signaled the ships temporarily to cease firing, in order to allow the smoke to clear from the batteries. When the order came at 6.30 to cease firing every gun of the enemy had been silenced for ten minutes, but as the ships drew off some of the Spanish courage returned, and a half-dozen shots were fired spitefully at the "Massachusetts" and "Oregon," falling in their wakes.

Throughout the bombardment the dynamite cruiser "Vesuvius" and the "Porter," by direction of the Admiral, lay outside of the right flank. The steam launch of the flag-ship scurried among the ships carrying messages.

At the close of the action a stream of multi-colored flags floated from the "New York," generally complimenting the ships, and especially commending the work of the "Texas" and "New Orleans." The men of the "New Orleans" raised a cheer, which was passed quickly from ship to ship, until every sailor in the fleet was shouting himself hoarse.

The destruction and death at the western batteries must have been appalling. Many of the guns had been mounted during the preceding two days. From this it was inferred that Admiral Cervera had given up all hope of extricating himself from the trap in which he was caught, and had removed the guns from some of his ships to strengthen the land defences. Admiral Sampson was highly gratified with the results of the bombardment.

Vigorous preparations for landing troops in Cuba had been going on at Tampa. Under command of General Shafter about 16,000 men, including officers, sailed on June 13th and arrived at Santiago on the 20th.

It was not long after General Shafter's army landed before the United States troops were engaged in active service and had a sharp con-

GENERAL NELSON A. MILES

LIEUT. R. P. HOBSON

flict with the enemy. The initial fight of Colonel Wood's Rough Riders and the troopers of the First and Tenth regular cavalry will be known in history as the Battle of La Quasina. That it did not end in the complete slaughter of the Americans was not due to any miscalculation in the plan of the Spaniards, for as perfect an ambuscade as was ever formed in the brain of an Apache Indian was prepared and Lieutenant-Colonel Roosevelt and his men walked squarely into it.

For an hour and a half they held their ground under a perfect storm of bullets from the front and sides, and then Colonel Wood, at the right, and Lieutenant-Colonel Roosevelt at the left, led a charge which turned the tide of battle and sent the enemy flying over the hills toward Santiago.

The fight was opened by the First and Tenth Cavalry, under General Young. A force of Spaniards was known to be in the vicinity of La Quasina, and early in the morning Lieutenant-Colonel Roosevelt's men started off up the precipitous bluff back of Siboney to attack the Spaniards on their right flank, General Young at the same time taking the road at the foot of the hill.

About two and one-half miles out from Siboney, some Cubans, breathless and excited, rushed into camp with the announcement that the Spaniards were but a little way in front and were strongly entrenched. Quickly the Hotchkiss guns out in the front were brought to the rear, while a strong scouting line was thrown out.

Then cautiously and in silence the troops moved forward until a bend in the road disclosed a hill where the Spaniards were located. The guns were again brought to the front and placed in position, while the men crouched down in the road, waiting impatiently to give Roosevelt's men, who were toiling over the little trail along the crest of the ridge, time to get up.

At 7.30 A. M., General Young gave the command to the men at the Hotchkiss guns to open fire. That command was the signal for a fight that for stubbornness has seldom been equaled. The instant the Hotchkiss guns were fired, from the hillsides commanding the road came volley after volley from the Mausers of the Spaniards.

In the two hours' fighting, during which the volunteers battled against their concealed enemy, enough deeds of heroism were done to fill a volume. One of the men of Troop E, desperately wounded, was lying squarely between the lines of fire. Surgeon Church hurried to his side, and, with bullets pelting all around him, dressed the man's wound, bandaged it, and walked unconcernedly back, soon returning with two men and a litter. The wounded man was placed on the litter and brought into our lines. Another soldier of Troop L, concealing himself as best he could behind a tree, gave up his place to a wounded companion, and a moment or two later was himself wounded.

Sergeant Bell stood by the side of Captain Capron when the latter was mortally hit. He had seen that he was fighting against terrible odds, but he never flinched. "Give me your gun a minute," he said to the sergeant, and, kneeling down, he deliberately aimed and fired two shots in quick succession. At each a Spaniard was seen to fall. Bell in the meantime had seized a dead comrade's gun and knelt beside his captain and fired steadily.

When Captain Capron fell he gave the sergeant a parting message to his wife and father, and bade the sergeant good-bye in a cheerful voice, and was then borne away dying.

Sergeant Hamilton Fish, Jr., was the first man killed by the Spanish fire. He was near the head of the column as it turned from the woodside into the range of the

Spanish ambuscade. He shot one Spaniard who was firing from the cover of a dense patch of underbrush. When a bullet struck his breast he sank at the foot of a tree with his back against it. Captain Capron stood over him shooting and others rallied around him, covering the wounded man. The ground was thick with empty shells where Fish lay. He lived twenty minutes. He gave a small lady's hunting-case watch from his belt to a messmate as a last souvenir.

The American officers showed the utmost energy in preparing for the attack on Santiago; by July 1st everything was in readiness, and General Shafter ordered a forward movement with a view of investing and capturing the town. The advance was made in two divisions, the left storming the works at San Juan. Our forces in this assault were composed of the Rough Riders, commanded by Lieutenant-Colonel Roosevelt, and the First, Third, Sixth, Ninth and Tenth dismounted cavalry. Catching the enthusiasm and boldness of the Rough Riders, these men rushed against the San Juan defences with a fury that was irresistible.

Their fierce assault was met by the Spaniards with a stubbornness born of desperation. Hour after hour the troops on both sides fought fiercely. In the early morning the Rough Riders met with a similar, though less costly, experience to the one they had at La Quasina just a week before. They found themselves a target for a terrific Spanish fire, to resist which for a time was the work of madmen. But the Rough Riders did not flinch. Fighting like demons, they held their ground tenaciously, now pressing forward a few feet, then falling back, under the enemy's fire, to the posttion they held a few moments before.

The Spaniards were no match for the Roosevelt fighters, however, and, as had been the case at La Quasina, the Western cowboys and Eastern "dandies" hammered the enemy from their path. Straight ahead they advanced, until by noon they were well along toward San Juan, the capture of which was their immediate object.

There was terrible fighting about the heights during the next two hours. While the Rough Riders were playing such havoc in the enemy's lines, the First, Third, Sixth, Ninth and Tenth cavalry gallantly pressed forward to right and left.

Before the afternoon was far gone these organizations made one grand rush all along the line, carrying the Spaniards off their feet, capturing the San Juan fortifications, and sending the enemy in mad haste off toward Santiago. It was but three o'clock when these troops were able to send word to General Shafter that they had taken possession of the position he had given them a day to capture.

In this attack the cavalrymen were supported by the Sixth and Sixteenth infantry, who made a brilliant charge at the crucial moment. The advance was up a long steep slope, through a heavy underbrush. Our men were subjected to a terrific fire from the enemy's trenches, and the Rough Riders and the Sixth cavalry suffered severely.

There was no artillery to support the attack. The dynamite gun, which a detachment of Rough Riders, under charge of Sergeant Hallett Alsop Borrowe, had hauled up from the coast with such tremendous effort, was jammed during the opening hours of the engagement and rendered useless for the time.

On the right General Lawton's division, supported by Van Horne's brigade, under command temporarily of Colonel Ludlow, of the Engineers, drove the enemy from in front of Caney, forcing them back into the village. There the Spaniards for a time were able to hold their own, but early in the

LANDING OF GENERAL SHAFTER'S ARMY NEAR SANTIAGO—CUBA

GALLANT CHARGE BY GENERAL WHEELER'S CAVALRY

afternoon the American troops stormed the village defences, driving the enemy out and taking possession of the place. Gaining the direct road into Santiago, they established their lines within three-quarters of a mile of the city at sunset.

General Shafter's advance against the city of Santiago was resumed soon after daybreak on the morning of July 2d. The American troops renewed the attack on the Spanish defences with impetuous enthusiasm. They were not daunted by the heavy losses sustained in the first day's fighting. Inspired by the great advantages they had gained on the preceding day, the American troops were eager to make the final assault on the city itself. Their advance had been an uninterrupted series of successes, they having forced the Spaniards to retreat from each new position as fast as it had been taken. Admiral Sampson, with his entire fleet, joined in the attack.

The battles before the intrenchments around Santiago resulted in advantage to General Shafter's army. Gradually he approached the city, holding every foot of ground gained. In the fighting of July 2d, the Spanish were forced back into the town, their commanding general was wounded, and the day closed with the certainty that soon our flag would float over Santiago.

The fleet of Admiral Cervera had long been shut up in the harbor, and during the two days' fighting gave effective aid to the Spanish infantry by throwing shells into the ranks of the Americans. On the morning of July 3d, another great naval victory was added to the successes of the American arms, a victory no less complete and memorable than that achieved by Dewey at Manila.

Admiral Cervera's fleet, consisting of the armored cruisers "Cristobal Colon," "Almirante Oquendo," "Infanta Maria Teresa," and "Vizcaya," and two torpedo-boat destroyers, the "Furor" and the "Pluton," which had been held in the harbor of Santiago de Cuba for six weeks by the combined squadrons of Rear-Admiral Sampson and Commodore Schley, was sent to the bottom of the Caribbean Sea off the southern coast of Cuba.

The Spanish admiral was made a prisoner of war on the auxiliary gunboat "Gloucester," and 1,000 to 1,500 other Spanish officers and sailors, all who escaped the frightful carnage caused by the shells from the American warships, were also made prisoners of war by the United States navy.

The American victory was complete, and the American vessels were practically untouched, and only one man was killed, though the ships were subjected to the heavy fire of the Spaniards all the time the battle lasted.

Admiral Cervera made as gallant a dash for liberty and for the preservation of the ships as has ever occurred in the history of naval warfare. In the face of overwhelming odds, with nothing before him but inevitable destruction or surrender if he remained any longer in the trap in which the American fleet held him, he made a bold dash from the harbor at the time the Americans least expected him to do so, and, fighting every inch of his way, even when his ship was ablaze and sinking, he tried to escape the doom which was written on the muzzle of every American gun trained upon his vessels.

The Americans saw him the moment he left the harbor and commenced their work of destruction immediately. For an hour or two they followed the flying Spaniards to the westward along the shore line, sending shot after shot into their blazing hulls, tearing great holes in their steel sides and covering their decks with the blood of the killed and wounded.

At no time did the Spaniards show any indication that they intended to do otherwise

than fight to the last. They displayed no signals to surrender even when their ships commenced to sink and the great clouds of smoke pouring from their sides showed they were on fire. But they turned their heads toward the shore, less than a mile away, and ran them on the beach and rocks, where their destruction was soon completed.

The officers and men on board then escaped to the shore as well as they could with the assistance of boats sent from the American men-of-war, and then threw themselves upon the mercy of their captors, who not only extended to them the gracious hand of American chivalry, but sent them a guard to protect them from the murderous bands of Cuban soldiers hiding in the bushes on the hillside, eager to rush down and attack the unarmed, defeated, but valorous foe.

One after another of the Spanish ships became the victims of the awful rain of shells which the American battleships, cruisers and gun-boats poured upon them, and two hours after the first of the fleet had started out of Santiago harbor three cruisers and two torpedo-boat destroyers were lying on the shore ten to fifteen miles west of Morro Castle, pounding to pieces, smoke and flame pouring from every part of them and covering the entire coast line with a mist which could be seen for miles.

Heavy explosions of ammunition occurred every few minutes, sending curls of dense white smoke a hundred feet in the air and causing a shower of broken iron and steel to fall in the water on every side. The bluffs on the coast line echoed with the roar of every explosion, and the Spanish vessels sank deeper and deeper into the sand or else the rocks ground their hulls to pieces as they rolled or pitched forward or sideways with every wave that washed upon them from the open sea.

Admiral Cervera escaped to the snore in a boat sent by the "Gloucester" to the assistance of the "Infanta Maria Teresa," and as soon as he touched the beach he surrendered himself and his command to Lieutenant Morton and asked to be taken on board the "Gloucester," which was the only American vessel near him at the time, with several of his officers, including the captain of the flagship. The Spanish admiral, who was wounded in the arm, was taken to the "Gloucester," and was received at her gangway by her commander, Lieutenant Richard Wainwright, who grasped the hand of the gray-bearded admiral and said to him :

"I congratulate you, sir, upon having made as gallant a fight as was ever witnessed on the sea."

The only casualties in the American fleet were one man killed and two wounded on the "Brooklyn." A large number of the Spanish wounded were removed to the American ships.

An incident of special interest was the exchange of Lieutenant Hobson and his brave men for Spanish prisoners on July 7th Hobson and his band of heroes were escorted through the American lines by Captain Chadwick, of the "New York," who was awaiting them. Every step of their journey was marked by the wildest demonstrations on the part of the American soldiers, who threw aside all semblance of order, scrambled out of the entrenchments, knocked over tent guys and other camp paraphernalia in their eagerness to see the returning heroes, and sent up cheer after cheer for the men who had passed safely through the jaws of death in their desire to serve their country. General Miles arrived at Santiago on the 12th of July and took command of the army.

On the 14th of July General Toral surrendered Santiago and his entire army, numbering ten or twelve thousand men.

We are able to furnish a reliable account of the preliminaries that preceded the surrender. It appears that on Monday, July 11th, General Shafter did not again demand the unconditional surrender of Santiago, which General Toral had refused on Sunday; but he offered, as an alternative proposition, to accept the capitulation of the enemy and to transport the Spanish officers and troops to Spain, they to leave all their arms behind. He offered also to accept their parole. This proposition General Toral declined.

It was decided next morning to hold a personal interview with General Toral. General Miles and his staff, accompanied by General Shafter and his staff, rode out to the front shortly before eight o'clock under a flag of truce.

A request for a personal interview with the Spanish commander-in-chief was made and acceded to, and about nine o'clock General Miles, General Shafter, General Wheeler, General Gilmour, Colonel Morse, Captain Wiley and Colonel Mestre rode up, passed over our entrenchments and went down into the valley beyond. They were met by General Toral and his chief of staff under a spreading mango tree, at the bottom of the valley, about half way between the lines. The interview that followed lasted almost an hour.

The situation was placed frankly before General Toral, and he was offered the alternative of being sent home with his garrison or being attacked by the combined American forces. The only condition imposed was that he should not destroy the existing fortifications and should leave his arms behind. This latter condition the Spanish general, who does not speak English, explained through his interpreter, was impossible. He said the laws of Spain gave a general no discretion. He might abandon a place when he found it untenable, but he could not leave his arms behind without subjecting himself to the penalty of being court-martialled and shot. His government, he said, had granted him permission to evacuate Santiago. That was all. Further than that he was powerless to go.

Without saying so in words, General Miles stated that the tenor of General Toral's remarks all betrayed his realization that he could not hold out long. When General Shafter explained that our reinforcements were coming up, that he was completely surrounded, and that new batteries were being posted, General Toral simply shrugged his shoulders. "I am but a subordinate," said he, "and I obey my government. If it is necessary we can die at our posts."

General Toral appeared to be a man sixty years old, with a strong, rugged face, and fine soldierly bearing. His brave words inspired a feeling of respect and admiration in the hearts of his adversaries. Nevertheless, the Spanish General's anxiety to avoid further sacrifice of life in his command was manifest, and he did not hesitate to ask for time to communicate the situation to Madrid, although he dubiously shook his head when he spoke of the probable response.

During the course of an interview General Toral said the bombardment of Sunday and Monday had done little damage. He admitted the shells from the guns of the fleet had destroyed four houses, but he asserted that only half a dozen soldiers of the garrison had been injured. He also volunteered the information when General Miles gallantly inquired after General Linares' condition that the latter would in all probability have his left arm amputated at the shoulder.

General Miles at the interview did not attempt to assume the direction of the negotiations, but, as General of the United States Army, he vouched for the conditions General Shafter offered. Upon the return of our com-

manders to the American lines an important consultation was held at General Wheeler's headquarters. Generals Garcia and Castillo, with their staff, had ridden around from the extreme right to see General Miles. It was a notable group gathered under the protecting awning of General Wheeler's tent.

General Miles, in blue fatigue uniform, with the double star on his shoulders, and his campaign hat encircled by a single strand of gold braid, sat on an empty ammunition box and formed the centre of the party.

On the right of General Miles sat General Shafter, and on his left was General Garcia, in mud-spotted white uniform, with heavy riding boots and jingling spurs. The Cuban General wore a large, weather-worn Panama hat, and at his side was a silver mounted machete. General Garcia has a strong, swarthy face, with a deep bullet scar in his forehead. In a general way he is not unlike a Cuban edition of General Miles.

General Wheeler, with grizzled beard, small of stature, and in a brown campaign uniform, faced the three officers mentioned, while about them sat the aides-de-camp of the four Generals. Assistant Naval Constructor Hobson, the hero of the "Merrimac," who had come to headquarters with messages from Rear Admiral Sampson, was also present.

The situation was discussed with the aid of a profusion of maps, and at the conclusion of the conference luncheon was served. It consisted of beans, hard tack and coffee. After this meal, General Miles, General Shafter and General Garcia, with their staffs, rode off, to inspect the position on the right flank. They all agreed that General Toral was securely wedged in and that escape was impossible.

After further communication with the Spanish government General Toral, on July 14th, surrendered his entire command, including all the troops in Eastern Cuba, guns and ammunition. The surrender was hailed with joy throughout the United States, and already there was talk of peace.

The formal sanction by the Madrid government of the terms of capitulation unraveled the tangled skeins of demands and counter-demands between the opposing commanders which threatened to end the negotiations and compel a return to arms.

The agreement consisted of nine articles :

The first declared that all hostilities should cease pending the agreement of final capitulation.

Second. That the capitulation includes all the Spanish forces and the surrender of all war material within the prescribed limits.

Third. The transportation of the troops to Spain at the earliest possible moment, each force to be embarked at the nearest port.

Fourth. That the Spanish officers shall retain their side arms and the enlisted men their personal property.

Fifth. That after the final capitulation the Spanish forces shall assist in the removal of all obstructions to navigation in Santiago harbor.

Sixth. That after the final capitulation, the commanding officers shall furnish a complete inventory of all arms and munitions of war, and a roster of all the soldiers in the district.

Seventh. That the Spanish general shall be permitted to take the military archives and records with him.

Eighth. That all guerrillas and Spanish irregulars shall be permitted to remain in Cuba if they so elect.

Ninth. That the Spanish forces shall be permitted to march out with all the honors of war, depositing their arms to be disposed of by the United States in the future, the American commissioners to recommend to their government that the arms of the soldiers be returned to those "who so bravely defended them."

On the evening of July 17th the War Department at Washington posted the following despatch from General Shafter:

"I have the honor to announce that the American flag has been this instant, 12 o'clock, noon, raised over the House of the Civil Government in the city of Santiago. An immense concourse of people was present, a squadron of cavalry and a regiment of infantry presenting arms and a band playing national airs. The light battery fired a salute of twenty-one guns.

"Perfect order is being maintained by the municipal government. The distress is very great, but there is little sickness in the town. Scarcely any yellow fever. A small gunboat and about two hundred seamen, left by Cervera, have surrendered to me. Obstructions are being removed from the mouth of the harbor.

"Upon coming into the city I discovered a perfect entanglement of defences. Fighting as the Spaniards did the first day, it would have cost five thousand lives to have taken it. Battalions of Spanish troops have been depositing arms since daylight in the armory over which I have guard. General Toral formally surrendered the plaza and all stores at 9 A. M."

Amid impressive ceremonies the Spanish troops laid down their arms between the lines of the Spanish and American forces at nine o'clock in the morning of July 17th. General Shafter and the American division and brigade commanders and their staffs were escorted by a troop of cavalry, and General Toral and his staff by one hundred picked men. Trumpeters on both sides saluted with flourishes.

General Shafter returned to General Toral the latter's sword after it had been handed to the American commander. Our troops, lined up at the trenches, were eye-witnesses to the ceremony. General Shafter and his escort, accompanied by General Toral, rode through the city, taking formal possession. The city had been sacked, before they arrived, by the Spaniards. General McKibben was appointed temporary military governor.

The ceremony of hoisting the Stars and Stripes was worth all the blood and treasure it cost. A vast concourse of 10,000 people witnessed the stirring and thrilling scene, that will live forever in the minds of all the Americans present. A finer stage-setting for a dramatic episode it would be difficult to imagine. The palace, a picturesque old dwelling, in the Moorish style of architecture, faces the Plaza de la Reina, the principal public square. Opposite rises the imposing Catholic Cathedral.

On one side is a quaint, brilliantly painted building, with broad verandas—the club of San Carlos; on the other a building of much the same description—the Cafe De La Venus. Across the plaza was drawn up the Ninth Infantry, headed by the Sixth Cavalry Band. In the street facing the palace stood a picked troop of the Second Cavalry, with drawn sabres, under command of Captain Brett. Massed on the stone flagging, between the band and the line of horsemen, were the brigade commanders of General Shafter's division, with their staffs.

On the red tiled roof of the palace stood Captain McKittrick, Lieutenant Miley and Lieutenant Wheeler; immediately above them, upon the flagstaff, the illuminated Spanish arms and the legend "Vive Alfonso XIII." All about, pressing against the veranda rails, crowding the windows and doors and lining the roofs, were the people of the town, principally women and non-combatants. The chimes of the old cathedral rang out the hour of twelve; the infantry and cavalry presented arms. Every American uncovered, and Captain McKittrick hoisted the Stars and Stripes.

As the brilliant folds unfurled in a gentle

breeze against a fleckless sky, the cavalry band broke into the strains of "The Star Spangled Banner," making the American pulse leap and the American heart thrill with joy. At the same instant the sound of the distant booming of Captain Capron's battery, firing a salute of twenty-one guns, drifted in.

When the music ceased from all directions around our line came floating across the plaza the strains of the regimental bands and the muffled, hoarse cheers of our troops. The infantry came to "order arms" a moment later, after the flag was up, and the band played "Rally Round the Flag, Boys." Instantly General McKibben called for three cheers for General Shafter, which were given with great enthusiasm, the band playing "Stars and Stripes Forever."

Since 4 o'clock in the morning a stream of refugees had been pouring into the city, some naked, and all hungry. Many had fallen by the wayside. The town of Santiago presented a dismal sight. Most of the houses had been sacked and the stores had all been looted and nothing to eat could be had. In the streets of the city, at the intrenchments, at the breastworks and at every hundred feet or so of the barbed wire fences were the living skeletons of Spanish soldiers.

Among the arrivals were the German, Japanese and Portuguese Consuls and their families, the British and French Consuls having arrived two days before.

The United States military expedition under the command of Major General Nelson A. Miles, commanding the Army of the United States, which left Guantanamo Bay during the evening of Thursday, July 21, was landed successfully at Guanica, July 25, after a skirmish with a detachment of the Spanish troops and a crew of thirty belonging to the launch of the United States auxiliary gunboat Gloucester. Four of the Spaniards were killed and no Americans were hurt.

At noon on the 24th, General Miles called for a consultation, announcing that he was determined not to go by San Juan Cape, but by the Mona Passage instead, land there, surprise the Spaniards and deceive their military authorities. The course was then changed and the Dixie was sent to warn General Brooke and the transports conveying our troops, which had been ordered to Cape San Juan.

Early in the morning the Gloucester, in charge of Lieutenant Commander Wainwright, steamed into Guanica harbor in order to reconnoitre the place. With the fleet waiting outside, the gallant little fighting yacht Gloucester braved the mines which were supposed to be in this harbor and found that there were five fathoms of water close in shore. Guanica Bay is a quiet place, surrounded by cultivated lands. In the rear are high mountains, and close to the beach nestles a village of about twenty-one houses.

The Spaniards were taken completely by surprise. Almost the first they knew of the approach of the army of invasion was in the announcement contained in the firing of a gun from the Gloucester, demanding that the Spaniards haul down their flag, which was floating from the flagstaff in front of a blockhouse standing to the east of the village.

The first couple of three-pounders were fired into the hills right and left of the bay, purposely avoiding the town, lest the projectiles hurt women or children. The Gloucester then hove to within about six hundred yards of the shore and lowered a launch, having on board a Colt rapid-fire gun and thirty men, under the command of Lieutenant Huse, which was sent ashore without encountering opposition.

Quartermaster Beck thereupon told Yeoman Lacy to haul down the Spanish flag, which was done, and they then raised on the flagstaff the first United States flag to float

MAJOR-GENERAL W. R. SHAFTER

COMMANDER OF OUR ARMY IN THE SANTIAGO CAMPAIGN

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY GEO. G. ROCKWOOD, N. Y

COLONEL THEODORE ROOSEVELT

CELEBRATED COMMANDER OF THE ROUGH RIDERS

over Porto Rican soil. Suddenly about thirty Spaniards opened fire with Mauser rifles on the American party. Lieutenant Huse and his men responded with great gallantry. the Colt gun doing effective work. Almost immediately after the Spaniards fired on the Americans the Gloucester opened fire on the enemy with all her 3 and 6-pounders which could be brought to bear, shelling the town and also dropping shells into the hills to the west of Guanica, where a number of Spanish cavalry were to be seen hastening toward the spot where the Americans had landed.

Lieutenant Huse then threw up a little fort, which he named Fort Wainwright, and laid barbed wire in the street in front of it in order to repel the expected cavalry attack. The lieutenant also mounted the Colt gun and signaled for reinforcements, which were sent from the Gloucester.

Presently a few of the Spanish cavalry joined those who were fighting in the street of Guanica, but the Colt fired to a purpose killing four of them. By that time the Gloucester had the range of the town, and of the blockhouse, and all her guns were spitting fire, the doctor and the paymaster helping to serve the guns.

Soon afterwards white-coated galloping cavalrymen were seen climbing the hills to the westward, and the foot soldiers were scurrying along the fences from the town. By 9.45, with the exception of a few guerrilla shots, the town was won, and the enemy was driven out of its neighborhood. The Red Cross nurses on the "Lampasas" and a detachment ot regulars were the first to land from the transports.

After Lieuteuant Huse had captured the place he deployed his small force into the suburbs. But he was soon reinforced by the regulars, and then by other troops in quick succession. All the boats of the men-of-war and the transports were used in the work of landing the troops, each steam launch towing four or five boats loaded to the rails with soldiers. But everything progressed in an orderly manner, and according to the plans of General Miles. The latter went ashore about noon, after stopping to board the Gloucester and thank Lieutenant-Commander Wainwright for his gallant action.

Report from General Miles.

The War Department at Washington posted the following bulletin:

"St. Thomas, July 26, 1898, 9.35 P.M.

"SECRETARY OF WAR, Washington:

"Circumstances were such that I deemed it advisable to take the harbor of Guanica first, fifteen miles west of Ponce, which was successfully accomplished between daylight and 11 o'clock. Spaniards surprised. The Gloucester, Commander Wainwright, first entered the harbor; met with slight resistance; fired a few shots. All the transports are now in the harbor, and infantry and artillery rapidly going ashore. This is a well-protected harbor. Water sufficiently deep for all transports and heavy vessels to anchor within two hundred yards of the shore. The Spanish flag was lowered and the American flag raised at 11 o'clock to-day. Captain Higginson, with his fleet, has rendered able and earnest assistance. Troops in good health and best of spirits. No casualties.

"MILES, Major-General Commanding."

Ponce, Guayama and other towns in Porto Rico were captured in quick succession by General Miles' army. The people everywhere gave a hearty welcome to the American troops, and there was great rejoicing at their escape from the authority of Spain.

Coincident with the landing of our troops at Guanica the Spanish Government made a move to end the war and secure peace. The proposition was formally submitted to the

President at 3 o'clock, July 26th, by the French Ambassador, M. Jules Cambon, who had received instructions from the foreign office at Paris to deliver to the United States Government the tender of peace formulated by the Spanish Cabinet. President McKinley and his advisers immediately took the proposition into consideration.

In an engagement five miles beyond Guayama on August 8th, the Americans were caught in an ambuscade. It was just 1 o'clock in the afternoon when a horseman came galloping into Guayama shouting: "Send the dynamite guns at once! The Fourth Ohio is being annihilated!" In less than five minutes the alarm had spread throughout the town, and the streets were filled with soldiers hurrying to their quarters.

The Spanish attack grew out of the fact that Colonel Coit, Major Dean and Lieutenant Wardman of General Brooke's staff, had started early in the morning to reconnoitre to the northward with the object of ascertaining the truth of the report that the Spaniards had mined the bridges on the road to Cayey, whither General Brooke's command was bound. On account of the smallness of the reconnoitring party, the report that they had been attacked by the Spaniards caused consternation at the Guayama headquarters.

A strong force was, however, at once hurried to the front. There were no horses to haul the dynamite guns, but the men buckled to and dragged them over the hills for five miles to the scene of action. Soon the dynamite guns got into action. The first shell landed at one side of the blockhouse and exploded with a terrific roar. The Spaniards were simply thrown into a state of panic by the explosion of the shell and were seen fleeing from the hill at top speed in all directions except toward the Americans. They could hardly be derided for evincing such a pressing desire to get out of range. The shell tore a hole in the ground for a distance of fifty feet and the shock of the explosion could be felt where the Americans stood.

From the place in the road where the guns were fired the sight was a beautiful one. All up the hill the American soldiers, their brown hats silhouetted against the sky, kept volleying away at the enemy and chatting at the same time in a manner to shock regular troops. After the third shot from the dynamite guns the Spaniards were in full retreat. The Americans then retired to Guayama for the night.

There was a two hours' fight before daybreak at Cape San Juan August 9th. Eight hundred Spaniards attempted to retake the lighthouse, which was guarded by forty of our sailors, commanded by Lieutenant Atwater. The Spaniards were driven back by shells from the "Amphitrite," "Cincinnati" and "Leyden." Refugees reported that one hundred Spaniards were killed. The Spanish advance began from Rio Grande, whither the Spaniards had retreated after the first landing of troops at Cape San Juan the week before. They marched through Luquillo and pulled down the American flag at Fajardo and replaced the Spanish flag.

The terrified refugees warned the lighthouse force that the Spanish were coming. Sixty women and children were in an outbuilding of the lighthouse during the fight. The Spaniards opened with a machine gun at a distance of three hundred yards. The "Leyden," Ensign Crosley commanding, rushed within one hundred yards of the shore and poured one-pounders into the Spaniards. Captain Barclay, of the "Amphitrite," used six-pounders and the "Cincinnati" five-inch guns.

The ships landed two hundred and fifty men during the fight and reinforced the lighthouse. A machine gun, rifles and am-

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY I. B. BOYCE

MAJOR-GENERAL JOSEPH WHEELER

COMMANDER OF THE CAVALRY DIVISION OF GENERAL SHAFTER'S ARMY

MAJOR-GENERAL H. W. LAWTON

munition were left by the retreating Spaniards. Ensign Crosley took the refugees off at daybreak and went to Ponce. Our flag was still on the lighthouse, but the forces were withdrawn. The Amphitrite guns covered the lighthouse, ready to annihilate it if our flag was hauled down. It is one of the most important lights on the island.

The Department of State at Washington, on the afternoon of August 2d, issued a statement announcing officially the President's terms of peace, which were handed to Ambassador Cambon. They were that Spanish sovereignty must be forever relinquished in the Western Indies; that the United Stated should have a coaling station in the Ladrones, and that this country would occupy Manila's bay and harbor, as well as the city, pending the determination of the control, disposition and government of the Philippines. The statement was as follows:

"In order to remove any misapprehension in regard to the negotiations as to peace between the United States and Spain, it is deemed proper to say that the terms offered by the United States to Spain in the note tendered the French Ambassador on Saturday last are in substance as follows:

"The President does not now put forward any claim for pecuniary indemnity, but requires the relinquishment of all claim of sovereignty over or title to the Island of Cuba, as well as the immediate evacuation by Spain of the Island; the cession to the United States and immediate evacuation of Porto Rico and other Islands under Spanish sovereignty in the West Indies, and the like cession of an island in the Ladrones.

"The United States will occupy and hold the city, bay and harbor of Manila, pending the conclusion of a treaty of peace which shall determine the control, disposition and government of the Philippines.

"If these are accepted by Spain in their entirety, commissioners will be named by the United States to meet commissioners on the part of Spain for the purpose of concluding a treaty of peace on the basis above indicated."

The announcement on August 7th, from Madrid, that the Spanish Ministry had formally decided to accept the proposition of the United States for a peace convention relieved the anxiety that was felt for a definite decision. No doubt was entertained that Spain would agree to the terms offered by President McKinley, nor was the faith of the President shaken in the ultimate outcome by reason of what the impatient public regarded as delay on the part of Spain in making answer.

There were reasons why an immediate reply could not be made to the American proposition, and these reasons were understood and appreciated by the President and Secretary Day. Convinced that Spain would accept the terms, there was no disposition on the part of the President to insist upon hasty action. It was felt that the reply would be made within a reasonable time, and the good judgment and sagacity of the President were vindicated by the action of the Spanish Cabinet.

On the evening of August 12, 1898, President McKinley issued the following proclamation:

"By the President of the United States of America.—A Proclamation.

"Whereas, By a protocol concluded and signed August 12, 1898, by William R. Day, Secretary of State of the United States, and His Excellency Jules Cambon, Ambassador Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary of the Republic of France at Washington, respectively representing for this purpose the Government of the United States and the Government of Spain the United States and Spain have formally agreed upon the terms on which negotiations for the establishment of peace between the two countries shall be undertaken; and

"Whereas, It is in said protocol agreed that upon its conclusion and signature hostilities between the

two countries shall be suspended, and that notice to that effect shall be given as soon as possible by each government to the commanders of its military and naval forces:

"Now, therefore, I, William McKinley, President of the United States, do, in accordance with the stipulations of the protocol, declare and proclaim, on the part of the United States, a suspension of hostilities, and do hereby command that orders be immediately given, through the proper channels, to the commanders of the military and naval forces of the United States to abstain from all acts inconsistent with this proclamation.

"In witness whereof, I have hereunto set my hand and caused the seal of the United States to be affixed.

"Done at the city of Washington, this 12th day of August, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and ninety-eight, and of the independence of the United States the one hundred and twenty-third. WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

"By the President, WILLIAM R. DAY, Secretary of State."

The protocol, signed by Secretary Day on behalf of the United States and by Ambassador Cambon on behalf of Spain, contained the following provisions:

That Spain will relinquish all claim of sovereignty over and title to Cuba.

That Porto Rico and other Spanish islands in the West Indies, and an island in the Ladrones to be selected by the United States, shall be ceded to the latter.

That the United States will occupy and hold the city, bay and harbor of Manila pending the conclusion of the treaty of peace, which shall determine the control, disposition and government of the Philippines.

That Cuba, Porto Rico and other Spanish Islands in the West Indies shall be immediately evacuated, and that commissioners, to be appointed within ten days, shall, within thirty days from the signing of the protocol, meet at Havana and San Juan, respectively, to arrange and execute the details of the evacuation.

That the United States and Spain will each appoint not more than five commissioners to negotiate and conclude a treaty of peace. The commissioners are to meet at Paris not later than the 1st of October.

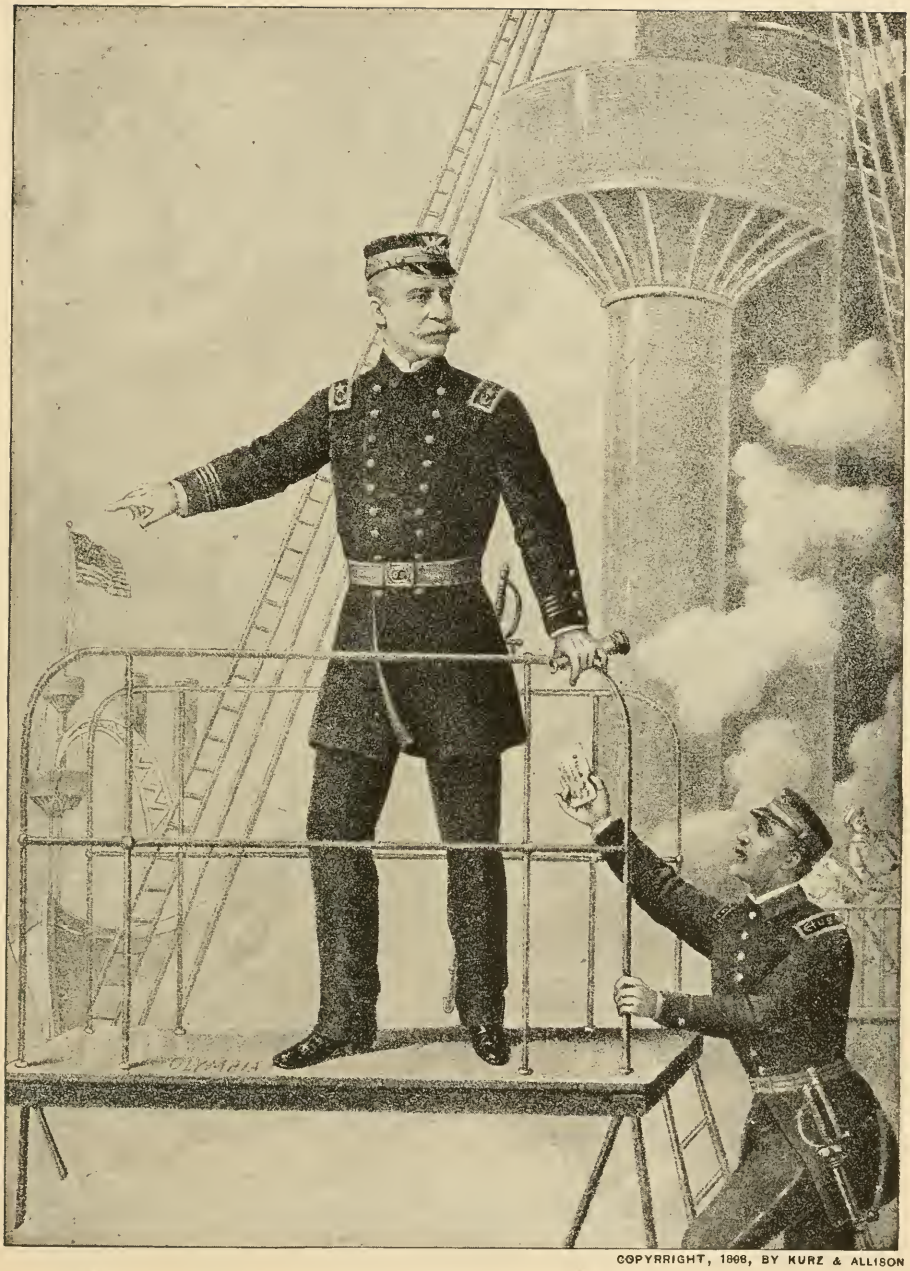
On the signing of the protocol, hostilities will be suspended and notice to that effect will be given as soon as possible by each government to the commanders of its military and naval forces.

The closing chapter of events that led up to the signature of the protocol and the cessation of hostilities was full of interest. It was 4.23 o'clock, in the afternoon of August 12th, when the final signatures were attached to the protocol, and within the knowledge of all the officials present this was the first time that a protocol or treaty had been signed at the White House.

The President took the hand of the Ambassador and through him returned thanks to the sister republic of France for the exercise of her good offices in bringing about peace. He also thanked the Ambassador personally for the important part he had played in this matter, and the latter replied in suitable terms. As a further mark of his disposition, President McKinley called for the proclamation which he had caused to be drawn up suspending hostilities, and signed it in the presence of M. Cambon, who expressed his appreciation of the action.

Messages were immediately sent to all army and navy commanders announcing that the war was ended and ordering them to cease hostilities.

Before the message reached Manila, Admiral Dewey and General Merritt resolved to capture the city. The war ships bombarded the forts on August 13th, and the land forces at the same time made an attack. After a spirited resistance by the Spaniards they surrendered, knowing it was useless to longer resist.



COPYRRIGHT, 1898, BY KURZ & ALLISON

ADMIRAL DEWEY ON THE BRIDGE OF THE OLYMPIA DURING THE GREAT NAVAL BATTLE OF MANILA

HEROES OF THE MERRIMAC

MAJOR-GENERAL J. R. BROOKE

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL JOHN JACOB ASTOR

WHO RAISED AND EQUIPPED A BATTERY FOR OUR GOVERNMENT
AT HIS OWN EXPENSE

Details of the battle before Manila show that the American land and naval forces captured the city after several hours of fighting. Thirteen thousand prisoners, twenty-two thousand rifles, a number of field guns and an immense quantity of ammunition fell into the hands of the victors.

The fortifications and shore defences and part of the city itself were destroyed by American shot and shell during a terrific bombardment of two hours by eight ships of Admiral Dewey's fleet. The Americans killed lost their lives in storming the Spanish trenches, when they swept everything before them like a whirlwind, and gave the Spaniards and Filipinos a splendid exhibition of Yankee valor.

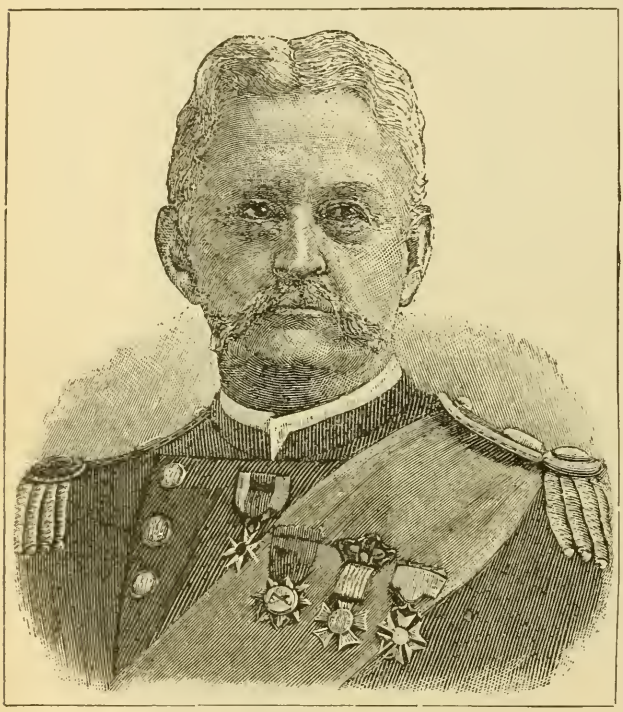
Three demands for the surrender of the city were made by Admiral Dewey before Manila was attacked. The first was made on August 7th. In it the Spaniards were given forty-eight hours to lay down their arms. The German Consul immediately embarked all German subjects on the German warships for protection. On the afternoon of August 9th the demand for surrender was again made. The Spaniards asked a delay to enable them to get instructions from Madrid. This was refused. On the 13th the final demand was made. A message was sent to the Spanish commander at 8 o'clock. The Spaniards were given one hour in which to surrender. They immediately refused to do so. The American squadron promptly cleared for action. They moved into a line between Malate and Old Manila. There were eight vessels in the squadron—the Olympia, the flagship; the Monterey, the Boston, Baltimore, Charleston, Petrel, Raleigh and Hugh McCulloch. The German and French vessels lay north of the Passig river. The greatest excitement prevailed among the vessels of the foreign fleet, which lay across the bay. The British and Japanese warships were nearest the American fleet.

ADMIRAL GEORGE DEWEY.

At 9.30 o'clock the signal to open fire fluttered from the signal lines of the Olympia. The flags were scarcely set when there was a roar from the big guns of the flagship herself. Instantly all the other vessels opened, and a shower of steel missiles sped toward the doomed city. At the same time

along the line of the American intrenchments the field guns opened on the Spanish position, and the American infantry were massed in the intrenchments ready for the final assault.

The din was terrific. The heavier guns of the warships roared at intervals, while the rapid-fires barked viciously and the guns of the secondary batteries spat and sputtered fast and furiously. Through the awful noise the great 13-inch guns of the big monitor



GENERAL WESLEY MERRITT.

Monterey could be heard distinctly like great thunderclaps, and the awe-inspiring shrieks of her immense shells could be readily distinguished from the tenor and alto notes of the smaller missiles.

Great gaps were torn in the Spanish fortifications as the shells struck and exploded, and buildings in the outskirts of the city could be seen to tumble or rise in the air as the shells passed through or exploded within them. In the midst of the bombardment the order to storm the Spanish trenches was given to the American soldiers. The Spanish lines extended a distance of ten miles around the city, and from two to four miles outside the walls.

With a cheer the Americans sprang from their trenches and dashed for the Spanish earthworks. The First Colorado Volunteers were in the van. A deadly fire was poured in from the heights occupied by the Spaniards, and it was this that caused the American losses.

But the men never hesitated. They swept the enemy from the outer line of intrenchments to the second line of defence. This was at once attacked, and from there the Spaniards were driven into the walled city. Then the Spanish commander saw that further resistance was useless, and he sent up a white flag. The bombardment was at once stopped, and soon afterward the American forces entered the city. General Merritt assumed command and temporarily restored the civil laws.

The Spanish forces were well intrenched. The American losses under the circumstances were considered small. The Colorado troops were the first to storm the trenches, and every man was a hero.

The Commissioners appointed in behalf of the United States to arrange for the Spanish evacuation of Cuba were Rear-Admiral Sampson and Major-Generals Wade and Butler. The commissioners for Porto Rico were Rear-Admiral Schley and Major-Generals Brooke and Gordon. The commissioners appointed by Spain were as follows: For Cuba: Major-General Gonzales Parrado, Rear-Admiral Pastor y Landero, Marquis Montoro. For Porto Rico: Major-Gen-

STORMING SAN JUAN HILL—WORKING THE GATLING GUN BATTERY

LIEUTENANT RICHARD WAINWRIGHT

COMMANDER OF THE GLOUCESTER

ENSIGN WORTH BAGLEY

KILLED ON THE WINSLOW IN CARDENAS HARBOR

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY GEO. R. BUFFHAM

LIEUTENANT VICTOR BLUE

FAMOUS FOR SCOUTING SERVICE AT SANTIAGO

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY GEO. R. BUFFHAM

ENSIGN JOSEPH W. POWELL

SENT TO RESCUE HOBSON AND HIS MEN

eral Ortega y Diaz, Commodore of First Rank Vallarino y Carrasco, Judge-Advocate Sanchez del Aguila y Leon.

On August 24th it was announced that the following American Peace Commissioners to settle the future of the Philippine Islands had been selected by President McKinley: William R. Day, of Canton, Ohio, Secretary of State; Cushman K. Davis, United States Senator from Minnesota, Chairman of the Foreign Relations Committee; William P. Frye, United States Senator from Maine, member of the Foreign Relations Committee. He has served ten years in the House of Representatives and fifteen in the Senate; succeeded James G. Blaine in the Senate; Whitelaw Reid, of New York, for several years American Ambassador to the French Republic; and George Gray, United States Senator from Delaware, who succeeded Thomas F. Bayard in the Senate in 1885. The sessions of the Peace Commission were to be held in Paris, commencing not later than October 1st and continuing until an agreement was reached.

Terms of Peace with Spain.

On the 28th of November, 1898, the Peace Commissioners appointed by the United States and Spanish Governments reached an agreement respecting the terms for establishing peace between the two nations. The Commissioners met in Paris on October 1st and at once began their labors. Reports from time to time indicated that serious disagreements had developed, and it was even rumored that it would be impossible to reach an agreement that would satisfy both parties. The result, however, proved the contrary.

The Spanish Commissioners were compelled to yield to the force of circumstances, to realize the hopelessness of further opposition and to accept the inevitable. In other words, the title of the United States to the possession of a vast colonial territory was confirmed and ratified at the meeting of the Joint Commission in Paris on the above date.

This territory includes Porto Rico, the Island of Guam and the Philippine Archipelago, considered in its broadest geographical sense—that is, comprising the Sulu Islands. At the same time the Spanish sovereignty over Cuba was also relinquished.

Confined to the Main Question.

The length of the proceedings alone would indicate that every concession was wrested with difficulty from the Spanish delegates, while the completeness of their surrender proves the moral strength of the American position. It seemed at one time that the sittings might be dragged out indefinitely. The American Commissioners, however, gradually and skillfully bound down their adversaries to the real issue. At length it became manifest that the moment had arrived when Spain must decide between accepting the essential conditions of the United States or the resumption of hostilities.

The American Commissioners presented a long, detailed reply to all the Spanish objections. The arguments advanced were shown to be inadmissible. The different points of law raised by Spain were discussed and disposed of, and the Americans finally pointed out that, as the negotiations had lasted nearly two months, it was impossible to prolong the unreasonably strained situation that at any moment might jeopardize the peace of the civilized world.

They, therefore, in diplomatic but unmistakable language, gave Spain the choice between an acceptance of their terms and a fresh appeal to arms.

These terms were, first, the relinquishment of Spanish sovereignty in Cuba; second, the complete and unconditional cession to the United States of Porto Rico, the Island of

Guam and the Philippines, between latitudes 5 degrees and 20 degrees north, and longitude 115 degrees and 130 degrees east.

The ceding of all the Philippines cannot have been an afterthought upon the part of the Commissioners, for a careful collation of information from various sources proves that from the very beginning they included the Sulu Archipelago in the Philippine group, to which it belongs, both geographically and politically, as it has always been governed from Manila—a view amply borne out by the action of Germany and Great Britain some twenty years before.

Upon the condition that these preliminaries should be accepted the United States Commissioners expressed their willingness to discuss amicably the settlement of the various questions which the change of regime made it desirable to have regulated.

Seeking a Cable Station.

Among these were the purchase of an island in the Carolines, preferably Ualan, the most easterly of the group, for a cable station, the release of political prisoners and the establishment of religious freedom in the Caroline Islands. The necessity of an island, to be used as a naval station, between Honolulu and Guam, is made clear by a glance at the map.

With reference to the second point, the release of political prisoners, the United States could not humanely take any other attitude than one of commiseration and interest in those who have fallen into disgrace while struggling to throw off the rule of Spain in either Cuba, Porto Rico or the Philippines. The Commissioners, therefore, deserve the hearty approbation of all for having included this matter among those it is desirable to have arranged in the peace treaty.

The establishment of genuine religious freedom in the Carolines is also a question intimately concerning the United States. These islands have offered a wide and fertile field for missionary work. The majority of the natives are Christians, and their conversion is, in a preponderating measure, the work of the American missionaries. Therefore, in endeavoring to secure a real, as opposed to a theoretical religious freedom, the United States Commissioners were only assuring to their countrymen peaceful enjoyment of the fruits of their labors in the cause of Christianity.

Pledge of the "Open Door."

The Commissioners further went on to discuss the treatment to be accorded to Spanish importations to the Philippines. After assuring the Spaniards that the policy of the United States was an "open door" in these islands, they offered to guarantee, during a certain period, identically the same commercial privileges to Spain as would be accorded to America, and, indeed, to Europe. This agreement would still be binding upon the United States, even though their policy in this respect might otherwise undergo modification.

It appears that this term of years is sufficiently long to be worth Spain's consideration, while not so extended as to unduly bind the United States. The Commissioners, in fact, were actuated, on the one hand, by a desire not to pledge the government here to a definite policy for too lengthy a period, and, on the other hand, to avoid the accusation of trifling with their adversaries by making a derisive offer of commercial advantage.

This, in substance, was the ultimatum given to the Spanish Commissioners, and subsequently Spain replied to it. While refusing to admit the arguments of the United States, and at the same time disputing the

CAPTAIN CHARLES E. CLARKE
COMMANDER OF THE BATTLESHIP OREGON

COMMODORE JOHN W. PHILIP
COMMANDER OF THE BATTLESHIP TEXAS

CAPTAIN F. J. HIGGINSON
COMMANDER OF BATTLESHIP MASSACHUSETTS

CAPTAIN B. H. McCALLA
COMMANDER OF THE MARBLEHEAD

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY KURZ & ALLISON

SURRENDER OF ADMIRAL CERVERA, JULY 3, 1898, ON BOARD THE BATTLESHIP IOWA

justice of their conclusions, the Spanish delegation yielded to the force of circumstances and accepted the inevitable, avowing their willingness to agree to these terms.

There was a mutual agreement concerning the indemnity of $20,000,000 offered by the United States, this being accepted by Spain as part and parcel of the agreement.

The document presenting this acceptance of our terms by the Spanish Commission contained only 300 words. It opened with a reference to the final terms of the United States, and said that the Spanish Commissioners, after having taken cognizance of the terms proposed by the Americans, replied that their government had tried to give as equitable an answer as possible, but that they were not prepared to commit their government to the acceptance of the principles embodied in the American argument. Spain rejected these principles, the note continued, "as she always has rejected them."

Won't Give Up Her Principles.

Basing her attitude on the justice of her cause, the note then said she still adhered to those principles "which she has heretofore invariably formulated."

However, the note added, in her desire for peace she had gone so far as to propose certain compromises, which the Americans had always rejected. She had also attempted, it was further asserted, to have submitted to arbitration some of the material points upon which the two governments differed. These proposals for arbitration, it was added, the Americans had equally rejected.

These allegations in Spain's reply as to attempted arbitration referred to her proposal to arbitrate the construction of the third article of the protocol, and also to submit the Spanish colonial debt of Cuba and the Philippines to arbitration. The last proposition was made in a written communication. Subsequent to its presentation, and in return for such arbitration, Spain offered to cede the territory in dispute. The Americans refused both propositions for arbitration.

Spain's reply in substance continued by declaring that the United States had offered, as a kind of compensation to Spain, something very inadequate to the sacrifices the latter country makes at this moment, and she feels, therefore, that the United States' proposals cannot be considered just and equitable.

Prepared to Submit.

Spain had, however, exhausted all the resources of diplomacy in an attempt to justify her attitude. Seeing that an acceptance of the proposal made to Spain was a necessary condition to a continuance of negotiations, and seeing that the resources of Spain were not such as to enable her to re-enter upon war, she was prepared, in her desire to avoid bloodshed and from considerations of humanity and patriotism, to submit to the conditions of the conquering nation. She was therefore ready to accept the proposals of the American Commission, as presented at the last sitting.

The reading and the translation of the document occupied less than five minutes. At the conclusion of the translation the Commissioners empowered Senor Ojeda, Secretary of the Spanish Commission, and Secretary Moore, of the American Commission, to draw up articles which were to embody the relinquishment of Cuba by Spain and the cession of Porto Rico and the Philippines.

The Commissioners left the Foreign Office immediately after the secretaries had been directed to prepare the articles of the peace treaty. There was scarcely any conversation

between the American and Spanish Commissioners after the adjournment.

Among the Americans only the most grave consideration for their Spanish colleagues was apparent. The Spaniards seemed to be relieved at having arrived at the conclusion of a long controversy.

Having embodied in the treaty articles all the protocol questions, the two Commissions entered upon friendly negotiations regarding the matters suggested in the American ultimatum, matters subsidiary and incidental to the principal provisions, which must form part of the peace treaty as finally signed.

Spain's Great Losses.

Thus Spain honorably accepted the situation, and while entering a protest against the demands of the United States, yielded to superior force and entered into a treaty upon the conditions imposed. Beyond the general rejoicing that the war was thus definitely and successfully ended, there was no disposition among Americans to exult over the fallen foe. The very completeness of Spain's defeat and her acknowledged helplessness appealed, if not to sympathy, at least to consideration, and strengthened the conviction everywhere of the inevitableness of the result.

The time had come, in the course of history, when Spain's government of her colonies had failed and they must of necessity pass under more enlightened control, for the sake of the people themselves and of the wide interests of humanity. Circumstances threw this necessary task upon the United States, and our ground for rejoicing is that we were equal to the opportunity. We can see now that to Spain's weakness as well as to our strength was due the quickness and completeness of her overthrow in both her Western and her Eastern possessions, and that these have passed into our hands because she was no longer fit to hold them and because in the natural evolution of events their control has devolved upon ourselves.

Thus the agreement at Paris is not merely the acquiescence of a defeated nation in the demands of its conquerors, but rather the recognition, upon both sides, of an historical event of vast importance which neither side nor both together could successfully avert and which their disagreement could no more than delay. Spain's great part in the development of a new world has long been played and the power she was unable to hold has passed from her finally. That Spain may eventually be the stronger by the concentration of her energies at home is quite conceivable. Whether this country shall become stronger by the wide extension of its energies in new fields must depend entirely upon the use we make of the opportunities and duties which have come to us in the history of the world.

How Regarded by Senators.

Upon the assembling of Congress at Washington on the 5th of December, measures were taken for ascertaining the sentiments of the Senators concerning the terms of the treaty, and it was discovered that, without doubt, the work of our Peace Commissioners at Paris would be endorsed and the treaty would be ratified by the Senate.

It was thought by the majority of the Senators that our demands on Spain were quite reasonable under the circumstances. There were others, however, who voiced a certain public sentiment by affirming that we did not want the Philippine Islands at any price and would be better off without them.

Meanwhile the Joint Commission at Paris continued its deliberations. Much of the discussion concerned details as to the guaranteeing of the rights of Spanish citizens in the ceded colonies. The debate was occa-

sionally energetic, and the Spaniards often appeared to be dejected.

The Spanish Commissioners received authority to bind their government on certain matters, but there were important questions on which their instructions were unsatisfactory, and it was thought that many of the details involved in the change of sovereignty in the Spanish possessions would have to be left for settlement by the regular diplomatic processes when relations between the two governments are resumed.

The history of the document which will certify the downfall of the oldest colonial power in the world and the advent of the newest was epitomized by Judge Day in a single sentence: "A peace treaty can contain anything which the victors put into it."

What the Spanish Commissioners Wanted.

The Americans listened with their accustomed patience to the technicalities employed by the Spaniards with their customary shrewdness and persistency against every proposal making for the dismemberment of their empire.

The burden of the Spanish arguments was that matters outside the bare cession and evacuation of the conquered territories, which the Americans proposed to cover by the treaty, were beyond the legitimate and customary scope of a peace treaty. Behind this bulwark Senor Montero Rios, president of the Spanish Commission, fortified himself, bombarding his opponents with a supply of arguments and precedents which inspired the feebly expressed admiration of the Americans. Finally Judge Day summarized the American position in the foregoing memorable utterance. It was given and taken in good spirit, and from that moment the proceedings were entirely friendly.

The bargain for a coaling station in the Carolines was not cemented, and was thought likely to fail. The temper of the Americans in this matter was: We have made you a good offer for an island. You may take or leave it.

The Spaniards seemed disposed to leave it. The Americans did not regard it as a prize which they could demand as one of the natural fruits of the war, while the whole policy of the Spaniards was to confine the negotiations as narrowly as possible to the letter of the protocol signed in Washington, and to exclude all extraneous matters. The result of this policy may be the leaving of many details involved in the change of sovereignty over the various possessions to settlement by the regular diplomatic processes when normal relations between the two governments have been resumed.

Treaty of Peace with Spain.

The Treaty of Peace between the United States and Spain was at first comprised in eight articles containing the essential features of the agreement. These were afterwards subdivided into seventeen articles as follows:

The United States of America and her Majesty the Queen Regent of Spain, in the name of her august son, Don Alfonso XIII., desiring to end the state of war now existing between the two countries, have for that purpose appointed as Plenipotentiaries:

The President of the United States, William R. Day, Cushman K. Davis, William P. Frye, George Gray and Whitelaw Reid, citizens of the United States; and her Majesty the Queen Regent of Spain, Don Eugenio Montero Rios, President of the Senate; Don Buenaventura de Abarzuza, Senator of the Kingdom and ex-Minister of the Crown; Don Jose de Garnica, Deputy to the Cortes and Associate Justice of the Supreme Court; Don Wenceslao Ramirez de Villa-Urrutia,

Envoy Extraordinary and Minister Plenipotentiary at Brussels, and Don Rafael Cerero, General Division.

Who, having assembled in Paris, and having exchanged their full powers, which were in due and proper form, have, after discussion of the matters before them, agreed upon the following articles:

ARTICLE I. Spain relinquishes all claim of sovereignty over and title to Cuba.

And as the island is, upon its evacuation by Spain, to be occupied by the United States, the United States will, so long as such occupation shall last, assume and discharge the obligations that may under international law result from the fact of its occupation, for the protection of life and property.

ARTICLE II. Spain cedes to the United States the island of Porto Rico and other islands now under Spanish sovereignty in the West Indies and the island of Guam in the Marianas or Ladrones.

ARTICLE III. Spain cedes to the United States the archipelago known as the Philippine Islands, and comprehending the island lying within the following line:

A line running from west to east along or near the twentieth parallel of north latitude, and through the middle of the navigable channel of Bachi, from the one hundred and eighteenth (118th) to the one hundred and twenty-seventh (127th) degree meridian of longitude east of Greenwich, thence along the one hundred and twenty-seventh (127th) degree meridian of longitude east of Greenwich to the parallel of four degrees and forty-five minutes (4° 45′) north latitude, thence along the parallel of four degrees and forty-five minutes (4° 45′) north latitude to its intersection with the meridian of longitude one hundred and nineteen degrees and thirty-five minutes (119° 35′) east of Greenwich, thence along the meridian of longitude one hundred and nineteen degrees and thirty-five minutes (119° 35′) east of Greenwich, to the parallel of latitude seven degrees and forty minutes (7° 40′) north, thence along the parallel of latitude seven degrees and forty minutes (7° 40′) north to its intersection with the one hundred and sixteenth (116th) degree meridian of longitude east of Greenwich, thence by a direct line to the intersection of the tenth (10th) degree parallel of north latitude with the one hundred and eighteenth (118th) degree meridian of longitude east of Greenwich, and thence along the one hundred and eighteenth (118th) degree meridian of longitude east of Greenwich to the point of beginning.

The United States will pay to Spain the sum of twenty million dollars ($20,000,000) within three months after the exchange of the ratifications of the present treaty.

ARTICLE IV. The United States will, for the term of ten years from the date of the exchange of the ratifications of the present treaty, admit Spanish ships and merchandise to the ports of the Philippine Islands on the same terms as ships and merchandise of the United States.

ARTICLE V. The United States will, upon the signature of the present treaty, send back to Spain, at its own cost, the Spanish soldiers taken as prisoners of war on the capture of Manila by the American forces. The arms of the soldiers in question shall be restored to them.

Spain will, upon the exchange of the ratifications of the present treaty, proceed to evacuate the Philippines, as well as the island of Guam, on terms similar to those agreed upon by the Commissioners appointed to arrange for the evacuation of Porto Rico and other islands in the West Indies under the Protocol of August 12, 1898, which is to continue in force till its provisions are completely executed.

The time within which the evacuation of the Philippine Islands and Guam shall be complete shall be fixed by the two Governments. Stands of colors, uncaptured war vessels, small arms, guns of all calibres, with their carriages and accessories, powder, ammunition, live stock, and materials and supplies of all kinds, belonging to the land and naval forces of Spain in the Philippines and Guam, remain the property of Spain. Pieces of heavy ordnance, exclusive of field artillery in the fortifications and coast defences, shall remain in their emplacements for the term of six months, to be reckoned from the exchange of ratifications of the treaty; and the United States may, in the meantime, purchase such material from Spain, if a satisfactory agreement between the two Governments on the subject shall be reached.

ARTICLE VI. Spain will, upon the signature of the present treaty, release all prisoners of war, and all persons detained or imprisoned for political offences, in connection with the insurrections in Cuba and the Philippines and the war with the United States.

Reciprocally the United States will release all persons made prisoners of war by the American forces, and will undertake to obtain the release of all Spanish prisoners in the hands of the insurgents in Cuba and the Philippines.

The Government of the United States will at its own cost return to Spain, and the Government of Spain will at its own cost return to the United States, Cuba, Porto Rico, and the Philippines, according to the situation of their respective homes, prisoners released or caused to be released by them, respectively, under this article.

ARTICLE VII. The United States and Spain mutually relinquish all claims for indemnity, national and individual, of every kind, of either Government, or of its citizens or subjects, against the other Government, that may have arisen since the beginning of the late insurrection in Cuba, and prior to the exchange of ratifications of the present treaty, including all claims for indemnity for the cost of the war.

The United States will adjudicate and settle the claims of its citizens against Spain relinquished in this article.

ARTICLE VIII. In conformity with the provisions of Articles I, II and III of this treaty, Spain relinquishes in Cuba, and cedes in Porto Rico and other islands in the West Indies, in the island of Guam, and in the Philippine Archipelago, all the buildings, wharves, barracks, forts, structures, public highways and other immovable property which, in conformity with law, belong to the public domain, and as such belong to the Crown of Spain.

And it is hereby declared that the relinquishment or cession, as the case may be, to which the preceding paragraph refers, cannot in any respect impair the property or rights which by law belong to the peaceful possession of property of all kinds, of provinces, municipalities, public or private establishments, ecclesiastical or civic bodies, or any other associations having legal capacity to acquire and possess property in the aforesaid territories renounced or ceded, or of private individuals, of whatsoever nationality such individuals may be.

The aforesaid relinquishment or cession, as the case may be, includes all documents exclusively referring to the sovereignty relinquished or ceded that may exist in the archives of the Peninsula. Where any document in such archives only in part relates to said sovereignty, a copy of such part will be furnished whenever it shall be requested. Like rules shall be reciprocally observed in favor of Spain in respect of documents in the archives of the islands above referred to.

In the aforesaid relinquishment or cession, as the case may be, are also included such rights as the Crown of Spain and its authorities possess in respect of the official archives and records, executive as well as judicial, in the islands above referred to, which relate to said islands or the rights and property of their inhabitants. Such archives and records shall be carefully preserved, and private persons shall without distinction have the right to require, in accordance with law, authenticated copies of the contracts, wills and other instruments forming part of notarial protocols or files, or which may be contained in the executive or judicial archives, be the latter in Spain or in the islands aforesaid.

ARTICLE IX. Spanish subjects, natives of the Peninsula, residing in the territory over which Spain by the present treaty relinquishes or cedes her sovereignty, may remain in such territory or may remove therefrom, retaining in either event all their rights of property, including the right to sell or dispose of such property or of its proceeds; and they shall also have the right to carry on their industry, commerce and professions, being subject in respect thereof to such laws as are applicable to other foreigners. In case they remain in the territory they may preserve their allegiance to the Crown of Spain by making, before a court of record, within a year from the date of the exchange of ratifications of this treaty, a declaration of their decision to preserve such allegiance; in default of which declaration they shall be held to have renounced it and to have adopted the nationality of the territory in which they may reside.

The civil rights and political status of the native inhabitants of the territories hereby ceded to the United States shall be determined by the Congress.

ARTICLE X. The inhabitants of the territories over which Spain relinquishes or cedes her sovereignty shall be secured in the free exercise of their religion.

ARTICLE XI. The Spaniards residing in the territories over which Spain by this treaty cedes or relinquishes her sovereignty shall be subject in matters civil as well as criminal to the jurisdiction of the courts of the country wherein they reside, pursuant to the ordinary laws governing the same; and they shall have the right to appear before such courts and to pursue the same course as citizens of the country to which the courts belong.

ARTICLE XII. Judicial proceedings pending at the time of the exchange of ratifications of this treaty in the territories over which Spain relinquishes or cedes her sovereignty shall be determined according to the following rules:

1. Judgments rendered either in civil suits between private individuals, or in criminal matters, before the date mentioned and with respect to which there is no recourse or right of review under the Spanish law, shall be deemed to be final, and shall be executed in due form by competent authority in the territory within which such judgments should be carried out.

2. Civil suits between private individuals which may on the date mentioned be undetermined shall be prosecuted to judgment before the court in which they may then be pending, or in the court that may be substituted therefor.

3. Criminal actions pending on the date mentioned before the Supreme Court of Spain against citizens of the territory, which by this treaty ceases to be Spanish, shall continue under its jurisdiction until final judgment; but, such judgment having been rendered, the execution thereof shall be committed to the competent authority of the place in which the case arose.

ARTICLE XIII. The rights of property

secured by copyrights and patents acquired by Spaniards in the Island de Cuba, and in Porto Rico, the Philippines and other ceded territories, at the time of the exchange of the ratification of this treaty, shall continue to be respected. Spanish scientific, literary and artistic works, not subversive of public order in the territories in question, shall continue to be admitted free of duty into such territories for the period of ten years, to be reckoned from the date of the exchange of the ratification of this treaty.

ARTICLE XIV. Spain shall have the power to establish consular offices in the ports and places of the territories, the sovereignty over which has been either relinquished or ceded by the present treaty.

ARTICLE XV. The Government of each country will, for the term of ten years, accord to the merchant vessels of the other country the same treatment in respect of all port charges, including entrance and clearance dues, light dues and tonnage duties, as it accords to its own merchant vessels, not engaged in the coastwise trade.

This article may at any time be terminated on six months' notice given by either Government to the other.

ARTICLE XVI. It is understood that any obligations assumed in this treaty by the United States with respect to Cuba are limited to the time of its occupancy thereof; but it will, upon the termination of such occupancy, advise any Government established in the island to assume the same obligations.

ARTICLE XVII. The present treaty shall be ratified by the President of the United States, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate thereof, and by Her Majesty the Queen Regent of Spain; and the ratification shall be exchanged at Washington within six months from the date hereof, or earlier if possible.

In faith whereof we, the respective Plenipotentiaries, have signed this treaty and hereunto affixed our seals.

Done in duplicate at Paris, the tenth day of December, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and ninety-eight.

William R. Day

C K Davis

Wm P Frye

Geo Gray

Whitelaw Reid

EUGENIO MONTERO RIOS.
B. DE ABARAZUZA.
J. DE GARNICA.
W. R. DE VILLI-URRUTIA.
RAFAEL CERERO.

The treaty of peace was signed at 8.45 on the evening of December 10th, 1898. The treaty consisted of seventeen articles, it having been found advisable to subdivide some of the articles in the draft agreed upon at the last meeting.

The commissioners of the two nations wrote their signatures on two copies of the treaty, one copy being for the archives. The document was prepared by Secretary Moore in behalf of the United States commission

and by Senor Villaurutia for Spain, on account of the illness of Secretary Ojeda, of the Spanish commission.

Each copy contained the English and Spanish texts of the treaty in parallel columns. The wording had been approved previously by the commissioners without a joint meeting, so there was no controversy on the subject.

There was a great contest among the families and friends of the American Commissioners for the pens with which the signatures of the treaty were written Some of the Americans were provided with handsome pens purchased for the purpose. The Spaniards appeared to be unaffected by the souvenir craze, and contented themselves with the ordinary quill pens.

An Impressive Scene.

Arthur Ferguson, the interpreter of the American Commission, requested Senor Montero Rios to give him his pen, saying: "Have you any desire to preserve the pen with which you will sign?"

"Not the slightest," said the Spaniard, with a courtly bow.

The signing of the treaty would have afforded a subject for a great historical painting. The group gathered about the table in the stately chamber of the French Foreign Office was impressive, while the fact that the sense of the importance of the issues which the act consummated was deeply felt by all the participants, gave an impressive and solemn tone to the scene.

Around the great mahogany table sat the ten arbiters of the destinies of an old and a young nation. Ranged standing behind them were numerous attaches of the American commission. The jets from the crystal chandeliers above the heads of those present magnified the green and scarlet upholstering, giving the whole room a brilliant appearance.

There was a theatrical contrast between the black-clothed actors and the scenery. To the Americans it was a happy ending of the drama of war; for the Spaniards it was plainly a bitter tragedy, none the less painful because long foreseen. They sat silently, as though almost crushed, and none could withhold sympathy from Senor Montero Rios, the President of the Spanish Commission, who, coming from his bed, was bundled in a great overcoat, though logs were burning in the fireplace near by.

Details of Signing the Treaty.

The spirits of the two bodies were symbolized by the clothes worn by the members of the commission, for the Americans were attired in evening dress for the dinner given to them after the meeting by the Duc de Loubat, and the Spaniards wore black frock coats.

When the seals were prepared to be affixed, attendants were sent to procure ribbons of the French tri-color with which the documents were sealed, as a compliment to the French hosts of the commissions.

The seal being impressed, the commissioners rose, and without formality each member shook the hands of all his antagonists and exchanged assurances of sincere personal esteem.

The signing was finished at 8.54. At that time the door of the chamber opened, and Senor Villaurutia appeared and exclaimed to a group of correspondents who were waiting in the corridor, "C'est fini." [It is finished.] The other members of the Spanish commission followed Senor Villaurutia and hurried silently through the vestibule to their waiting carriages. The American commissioners strolled out chatting complacently, and as they descended the steps the lights in the chamber were darkened

Further details were soon learned as to the

wording of the treaty. The Americans are to pay for the repatriation of the Spanish troops from all the colonies. The Spaniards are to return all prisoners held by them. They are to retain possession of all military stores and munitions of war in the Philippines, and of such ships as have not been captured.

Renewal of Commercial Relations.

The commercial treaties between the two nations which the war ruptured are to be renewed at the convenience of the two nations.

The United States Peace Commissioners appreciated the respite from the long strain of daily conferences and almost daily sessions, the intensity of which they hardly realized until it was over.

Warm personal friendships and mutual regard had arisen between the two commissions as the result of their extended controversy, and several members of both commissions exchanged calls.

The American Commissioners unofficially informed the Spaniards that they would be glad to have the two commissions dine together. The reply was that the Spaniards would be most pleased, but feared it would be inadvisable, because it might be misconstrued at Madrid, where already much feeling existed against the Spanish Commissioners. Americans in Paris congratulated our Commissioners upon the successful termination of their labors. They had taken a deep interest in the proceedings, feeling confident that the result would reflect honor upon our country.

The treaty was placed in the hands of President McKinley, who immediately transmitted it to the Senate. As the time for voting upon it approached, public interest became intense. Not since the excitement immediately following the destruction of the battleship Maine were the people of Washington so aroused as they were when the vote was to be taken. The Capitol halls and corridors were thronged from early morning with crowds who were intent upon witnessing the proceedings. The fact that our flag had been insulted and our soldiers and sailors at Manila subjected to wounds and death accentuated national interest in the pending treaty.

Long before noon the public and private galleries of the Senate were filled and people streamed into the big marble building on Capitol Hill. But very few Senators were present before the gavel fell at noon. The Senators were in their various committee rooms, discussing the situation, and working with the supposed doubtful Senators to induce them to place patriotism above party and vote for the treaty.

The Treaty Ratified.

The treaty of peace was ratified in the executive session of the United States Senate, February 6th, by a vote of 57 to 27, the supporters of the treaty mustering but a single vote more than the necessary two-thirds. There was no doubt whatever that the Spanish Cortes would ratify the treaty and the war with Spain was therefore concluded.

The long agitation in Congress and throughout the country concerning the peace treaty was over and the way was prepared for Congress to adopt such measures as it might see fit for the future government of the Philippine Islands. The debate in the Senate had been very able and for some time the result was in doubt. Efforts were made to pass a resolution declaring that it was not the policy of the United States to acquire possession of the Islands and make them a part of the territory of the United States.

The insurgent army of Aguinaldo, which had resolutely maintained its position near

Manila after the town was surrendered by the Spaniards to the American soldiers and sailors, made a fierce attack on the American lines in the evening of February 4, 1899.

Defeated in a desperate effort to break through the American lines and enter the city of Manila, the insurgent forces, after fourteen hours of continuous fighting, were driven from the villages of Santa Anna, Paco and Santa Mesa. They were compelled to retreat to a position quite a distance further out in the suburbs than the one they held before attacking the city.

The losses of the insurgents were heavy, the American troops having gone into the engagement with great enthusiasm and determination. They made the streets of the city ring with their cheers when they were notified of the attack and were ordered to advance.

Several of the vessels in Admiral Dewey's squadron participated in the fight, firing on the natives in Malate and Caloocan, and driving them inland from both of those places and inflicting heavy losses.

How the Fight Began.

This engagement was brought about by the action of three native scouts, who, advancing close to the American lines near Santa Mesa, made a feint to go through. They retreated upon being challenged, but returned again in a short time. Once more they retreated. When they returned a third time and attempted to make their way past the outposts of the Nebraska troops a corporal challenged them and then fired. One of the natives was killed and another wounded.

This affair was followed at nine o'clock by a general attack on the American outposts. The insurgents advanced all along the line from Caloocan to Santa Mesa. Our troops lost no time in replying to the attack. Members of the North Dakota, Nebraska and Montana regiments returned the insurgent fire with great vigor and succeeded in holding the natives in check until the main body of the American troops arrived on the scene.

There was a lull in the fighting after the first reply of our troops, but the firing was continued for five hours with much regularity. During the early hours of the morning it became more brisk, and at daylight the American troops made a firm advance.

Insurgents again Routed.

In the daylight it was found that the insurgents had massed themselves about Santa Mesa and Caloocan, and that they had a considerable force about Gagalangin. Our troops directed their movements primarily against the natives between the first named places, and ultimately drove them out of the two villages. Telling work was done at the same time against the insurgents about Gagalangin, and when the fighting ceased our troops were in possession of Santa Anna, in which village the natives had congregated for weeks prior to the fight.

While the American troops were doing such effective work in repelling the attack, news of the fight was received on board the vessels of the American squadron, and the monitor Monadnock, which was lying off Malate, joined with the gunboat Concord and the cruiser Charleston, lying off Malabon, in firing on the insurgents.

Aguinaldo's forces were completely routed and were driven from six to ten miles beyond the positions they occupied when the battle began. On February 10th a force of 6,000 insurgents that had gathered at Caloocan was attacked by the Americans and defeated with heavy loss.

On February 11th Iloilo was captured by General Miller and the force under his command, aided by the warships Petrel and Baltimore. No casualties resulted to our troops

On February 21st the transport Newport arrived at Manila from Iloilo, having on board Senor Aranita, the President of the provisional governmentof Negros, and other representative natives of the island. They called upon the American authorities. These men visited General Miller at Iloilo and discussed the situation with him. They then returned to Silay, the principal town in the northern part of Negros, and hoisted the American flag. The flag was also raised at Bacoloo, the capital of the island, and was saluted with twenty-one guns. Afterward the men returned to Iloilo in order to embark for Manila to confer with General Otis.

The people of Negros never sympathized with either the Tagal or Visayan insurgents, and obviously were desirous of settling down to peaceful occupations.

The Island of Cebu.

It was soon ascertained that the island of Cebu was ready to submit to the authority of the United States. Cebu is one of the most important of the Vasayas group of the Philippines. It hoisted the American flag on Washington's birthday, February 22d. A battalion of the Twenty-third Infantry was sent by General Otis to uphold the authority of our government.

On February 21st there was great excitement throughout the city of Manila. Three fires were started by the insurgents at Santa Cruz, Tondo and the Binondo Market. The latter fire worked its way toward the wharves. The natives cut the hose. One thousand native houses and hundreds of business places were burned. The refugees thronged the streets with their rescued property. The houses fired were marked with red.

An idea of the extent of the loss by fires in the suburbs of Manila may be obtained from the figures herewith given:—Sixty buildings of stone and 150 substantial wooden structures with iron roofs were destroyed. In addition 8,000 nipa houses of the natives were burned.

The flying column under General Wheaton started the aggressive campaign against the insurgents on the morning of the 13th. The line consisted of three troops of the Fourth cavalry on the extreme right, and next in their order the Twenty-second infantry, the Oregon volunteers, and the Washington volunteers. The latter, who were on the extreme left, were opposite Guadaloupe on the river.

General Wheaton's Flying Column.

A lieutenant of Scott's battery fired the signal gun at five minutes of seven o'clock, and at once the Fourth cavalry, mounted, swung forward. Then all the infantry regiments, formed in three lines, left their trenches and moved on the enemy. It was a beautiful sight, this clock-like regularity of the advance. The cavalry met a heavy fire on the right. The men dismounted and drove the enemy out of their intrenchments.

General Wheaton, commanding the United States flying column, attacked and defeated a force of 3,000 Filipinos at Pasig, in the afternoon of the 15th, inflicting a heavy loss upon them. The American loss was slight. The Americans captured many Filipinos. Many bodies of rebels killed in the engagement were seen floating down the river.

The Washington volunteers captured and burned Pateros, meeting with a sharp fire from the enemy while crossing the river. The day's fighting was like that of the preceding week, the insurgents occasionally making a stand, but eventually fleeing.

General Wheaton's column advanced beyond Pasig to the shore of Laguna de Bay, sweeping everything before it. The enemy made a running fight and suffered a severe loss.

The rebels' avenue of communication north

and south was closed, the American cordon stretching over a mile from the river to the lake. The rebels were in force at Pateros and Taguig. At about eight o'clock the Twenty-second regular infantry advanced until it encountered a number of volleys. This fire was returned with interest. The strongly fortified village of Gaitai was captured after a desperate fight by the Twentieth regular infantry.

On Friday, March 17th, the Queen Regent signed the treaty of peace, which was forwarded to the French Ambassador at Washington, M. Jules Cambon, for exchange with the one signed by President McKinley. The draft of the treaty was signed in Paris on December 10, 1898. The Commissioners appointed by the two Governments began their labors on the 1st of October.

Another Town Captured.

Fighting continued near Manila, the object of the American troops being to rout the insurgents, and by one blow end their rebellion. From detailed accounts it appears that at daybreak MacArthur dashed beyond Polo and to the north-east, and captured Meycauayan. This place is two miles beyond Polo. It was not taken without a fight. The insurgents left detachments in all the trenches to delay the advance. Meycauayan is at the base of the rough hills and the jungle.

The railroad over the conquered country to the rear was repaired and fresh troops were rushed forward. Malabon was burned by the insurgents, and the 5000 rebels who constituted its garrison retreated to rejoin Aguinaldo's main column of insurgents at Malolos. The town of Malinta, beyond the Tuliahan river, was taken by General Wheaton's division. The fighting was sharp all day, and the battlefield was carpeted with the insurgent dead. Our own losses were comparatively slight, though among our dead was Colonel Harry C. Egbert, a hero of two wars.

The plan to cut off the 5000 insurgents in Malolos failed by reason of the roughness of the ground and the thickness of the jungle, which prevented General MacArthur from getting far enough around to the north of Polo to shut the enemy in. We had to be content with a victory consisting of our having driven the enemy from his position. The victory in this light was a sweeping one. The insurgents, though beset with cavalry, infantry and artillery, volunteers and regulars, fought desperately in their trenches.

Flight of the Filipinos.

The advance to Malinta was made ove the Nivaliches Rial. Hale's command in the flank movement of MacArthur's division surprised the insurgents in the northern trenches. The Filipinos fled along the railroad, burning rice mills, tearing up the tracks and obstructing all they knew how. They finally took refuge in the church at Malinta, where they made a stand. The American troops were coming on the run, however, and Malinta was taken by assault, the rebels continuing to retreat toward Polo, destroying as they went. As they fell back the insurgents broke up into comparatively small bodies, so the day's fighting was really a series of small battles.

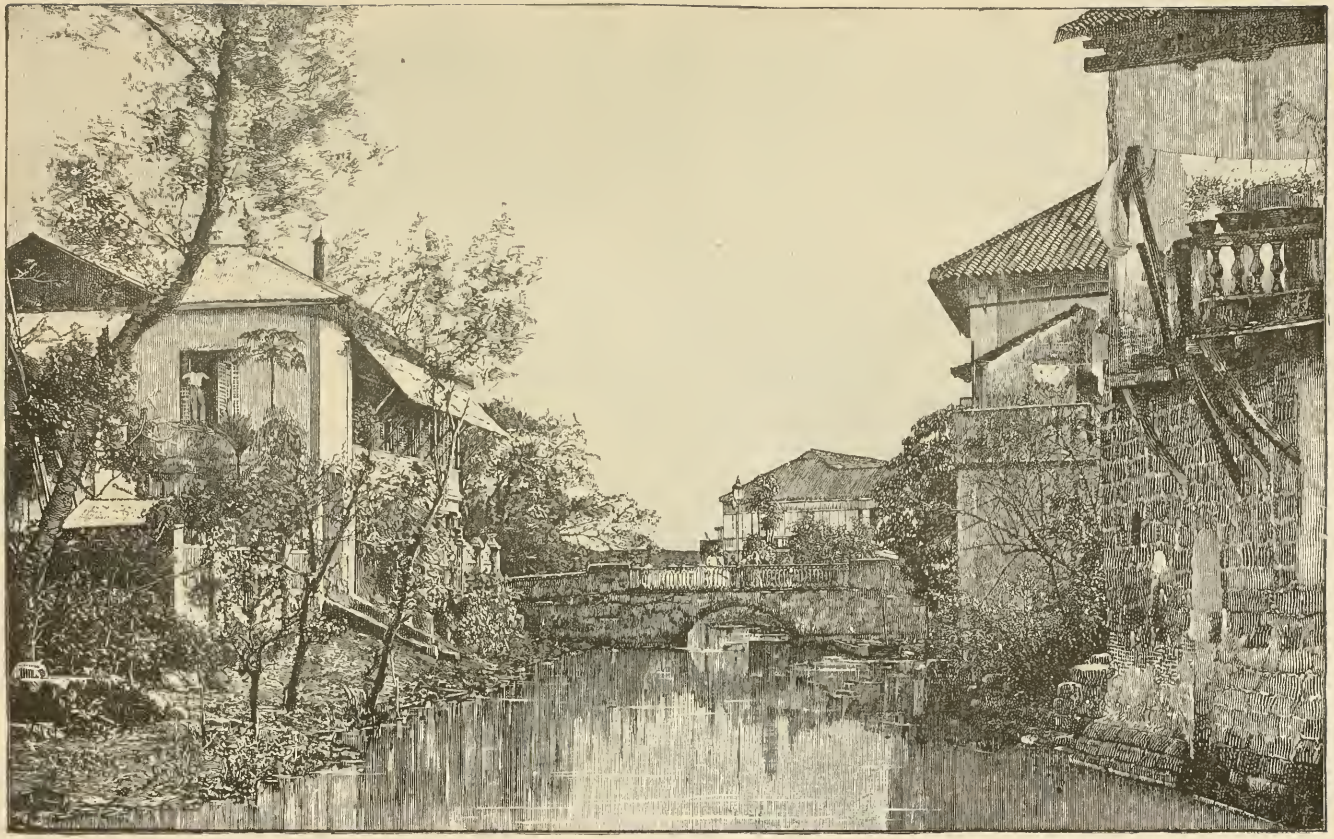
General MacArthur's division advanced along the torn-up railroad toward Malabon. Ahead of them could be seen the black smoke rising from the burning town. The insurgents realized that they could not hold Malabon, and alarmed at the narrow escape they had from being caught in it, as in a trap, they fled back toward Malolos as fast as they could go.

The day's action was beautifully conducted. When Wheaton's brigade was wading the river the insurgent bullets were churning

GENERAL OTIS

COMMANDER OF THE AMERICAN FORCES IN THE PHILIPPINE ISLANDS

BATTLE AT CALOOCAN, NEAR MANILA, BETWEEN AMERICAN TROOPS AND THE INSURGENTS



QUIAPO, NEAR MANILA, SHOWING THE BRIDGE GUARDED BY GENERAL GREENE'S TROOPS

GENERAL MILLER
THE HERO OF ILOILO

and spattering the water in their faces. Our soldiers dashed up the north bank dripping, and without stopping to shake the water from them, swept on over the ridge and into the rebel entrenchments. In the midst of it all came volley after volley from the left. And as suddenly as if it had been a battle on the stage, MacArthur's right wing appeared over the hill, cheering wildly.

Their sudden appearance was too much for the insurgents. They threw down their rifles and ran. The American forces, in a great triangle, rushed after them, and the slaughter among the fleeing natives was terrific. It was a magnificent picture of war, with the Fourth Cavalry galloping along the crest of the farthest hills shooting as they rode. Cannon, carbine and rifles were all belching forth death, and the smoke framed it all.

As if Swept by a Cyclone.

The American army advanced at 6 o'clock on the morning of the 29th, sweeping onward three miles before 10 o'clock, and driving the insurgents beyond Bocave, to the east of Bulacan and on the railroad leading to Malolos. Our troops met with but slight resistance. The Filipinos fired volleys for the purpose of drawing the American fire and disclosing the locality of our positions. Two men of the Pennsylvania regiment and one man belonging to the Dakota regiment were wounded. The Americans remained silent.

The country between Marilao and Manila presented a picture of desolation. Smoke curled from hundreds of ash heaps, and the remains of trees and fences torn by shrapnel were to be seen everywhere. The general appearance of the country was as if it had been swept by a cyclone. The roads were strewn with furniture and clothing dropped in flight by the Filipinos. The only persons remaining behind were a few aged persons too infirm to escape. They camped beside the ruins of their former homes and begged passers-by for any kind of assistance. The majority of them were living on the generosity of our soldiers, who gave them portions of their rations. The dogs of the Filipinos cowered in the bushes, still terrified and barking, while hundreds of pigs were to be seen busily searching for food.

Bodies of dead Filipinos were stranded in the shallows of the river, or were resting in the jungle where they crawled to die, or were left in the wake of the hurriedly retreating army. These bodies gave forth a horrible odor, but there was no time to bury them.

Fled in a Panic.

The inhabitants who fled from Marilao and Meycauayan left in such a panic that on tables our soldiers found spread money and valuables, and in the rooms were trunks containing other property of value. This was the case in most of the houses deserted. They were not molested by our soldiers, but the Chinese who slipped in between the armies were looting when they could, and took possession of several houses, over which they raised Chinese flags, some of which were torn down. An old woman was found hidden in a house at Meycauayan yesterday just dead, apparently from fright and hunger.

Malolos, the insurgent capital, was captured on the morning of March 31st by the American troops, after a hot fight. The final advance began before daylight. After eating a good breakfast the troops started from their former line in the following order, extending from left to right:

Third United States Artillery; Montana Volunteers; Kansas Volunteers; Tenth Pennsylvania; South Dakota Volunteers; Nebraska Volunteers; Fourth United States Cavalry.

Shortly before 3 o'clock the army began its cautious advance, meeting almost imme-

diately with a heavy fire on the right. The troops advanced regardless of the rain of bullets, driving the insurgents from their trenches into the thickets. The army then advanced two miles and discovered an insurgent outpost strongly intrenched. The natives came forward flying a white flag and asked for mercy. They assured our troops that they were unarmed, but when they returned to their trenches they immediately opened a sharp fire on our lines, which was soon silenced.

Our Troops in Malolos.

Major General MacArthur entered Malolos, the seat of the so-called insurgent government, at half-past nine in the morning, the rebels burning the city and simultaneously evacuating it.

The service of our troops in the Philippines was such as to cause every American heart to swell with pride. There was not one act of cowardice nor a step of retreat, and good generalship was supported by a soldiery whose courage, patience and fighting would make the honor page of any country stand more gloriously forth in its history.

The campaign in the East had, however, peculiar qualities which commended those engaged in it to the hearts of their countrymen. It was fought chiefly by the citizen soldiers, the regiments of the National Guard, not one of whom had until within a few months seen a shot fired in battle, and they all conducted themselves with the precision of regular troops and of veterans.

The regiments furnished by their respective States were volunteers, the boys from the plow, the clerks from the store, and officers who had only until within less than a year looked upon soldiery as a military picnic, a playtime period for armory drills and dances, a matter of uniform and flirtation. But back of this existed the real soldier's spirits, the fighting capacity which belonged to the Old Guard, the armies of Marlborough, Cromwell and Frederick the Great. Being called upon to exhibit it they responded with such splendid courage that the nation which sent them forth began to realize the potentiality of the race and to know that it is a people of strength in war as in the other channels through which it has attained grandeur, and promoted the well-being of mankind.

The next event of importance in the Philippines after the downfall of Malolos was the capture of Santa Cruz, on Laguna de Bay, by General Lawton's forces on the morning of April 10th. This was done after a sharp engagement with the rebel defenders, who were commanded by Pac-Wah, a Chinaman.

Battle at Quingan.

A furious battle was fought between the Americans and Filipinos on April 23d. The scene of the battle was Quingan, five miles northeast of Malolos. Major Bell, of the Fourth United States Cavalry, was ordered to make a reconnoissance in order to develop the strength of the insurgents. He took Lieutenant Rutherford and sixty-one men of the Fourth Cavalry. At daybreak this little body of Americans reached the insurgent position. Major Bell and Lieutenant Rutherford, with five men, went ahead of the rest of the reconnoitering party. The insurgents saw them, but withheld their fire, evidently expecting that the remainder of the company would soon come within range.

Major Bell's orders from General MacArthur explicitly instructed him to ascertain the strength of the enemy. The remainder of the cavalry was advanced. As soon as the little command came within range the insurgents opened with a hot fire. One American

soldier was killed and five wounded by the first volley.

Major Bell immediately sent for reinforcements. The cavalry held its ground bravely. The insurgents fought like demons. The Filipinos sent canoe loads of soldiers down the river. These landed on both the right and left sides of the American soldiers, surrounding them on three sides. They were forced back, but they fought hard for every inch of ground which they gave to the rebels.

The Filipinos followed up their advantage. They had driven Major Bell and his men nearly three-quarters of a mile from Quingan, when Major Morford, with a battalion of the First Nebraska Volunteers, hastened up to the assistance of the retreating cavalrymen. Instead of the new troops changiog the tide of battle and causing the Filipinos to retreat, the insurgents held their ground and fought more savagely. The battle was fought in a fog, which enabled the enemy to keep close to the Americans without being seen.

Shot in the Charge.

Next two companies of the Iowa Regiment advanced to the fighting line, but later they were withdrawn, being on guard duty. The rest of the Nebraska Regiment next came up. General Hale arrived shortly afterward with the rest of the Iowans. The Americans were ordered forward to take the positions which the insurgents were holding.

Just as the forward movement began Colonel Stotsenberg came dashing up and took his place at the head of his regiment. He had just returned to Malolos from Manila, where he had been visiting his wife. He heard of the battle, rushed to Quingan and reached his men in time to lead them in the storming of the insurgent trenches. During this charge in the withering hail of bullets Colonel Stotsenberg, of the Nebraska Volunteers, was shot. An insurgent bullet pierced his heart, and he dropped dead within a few yards of the trenches.

Three guns from the Utah Artillery reached the fighting ground just as the Nebraskans were making their charge. Their advance, assisted by the shells from the artillery, broke the resistance of the insurgents, and after half an hour more of fighting they were driven from Quingan. The village was occupied by the Americans.

A Brilliant Victory.

The most brilliant exploit and the winning of the greatest American victory in the battles around Manila occurred on the 27th. The taking of the bridge over the Rio Grande at Calumpit was a deed of astonishing daring. It was the most strongly defended position held by the insurgents. Located on the north shore of the Rio Grande, opposite Calumpit, it is the most valuable stragetic point in Luzon. The fact that it was guarded by the most trustworthy and best disciplined regiments of General Aguinaldo made the feat more noteworthy. Army officers said the daring displayed by the American troops was almost unparalleled in the annals of modern warfare.

It was a notable day for the Twentieth Regiment of Kansas Volunteers, commanded by Colonel Funston. One hundred and twenty men belonging to that regiment crossed the river in the face of a deadly fire from 3,000 insurgent Mausers. This torrent of bullets was augmented by a fusillade of a Maxim gun, of which the insurgents had obtained possession.

Colonel Funston, with only nine men, charged the trenches manned by thousands of insurgents, discharging their rifles as they ran up the embankments. The American artillery on the south shore of the Rio Grande poured shot and shell into the Filipino

stronghold. The rebels were stampeded. They went north, toward Bacolor. Despite the extraordinary risks and chances taken by the Americans our troops suffered very few casualties. Only one man was killed, and the wounded did not exceed a dozen. The insurgents lost heavily, fully twenty-five were killed during the mad charge of Colonel Funston's men on the trenches.

The two batteries of artillery known at Manila as the "Mormons" became famous on account of their heroic exploits. Sturdy city men from Pennsylvania, plainsmen from Nebraska, Kansas and South Dakota, and miners and cowboys from Montana and Idaho, have all charged under the protection of the twelve guns of the Utah artillery, and the generals have taken pride in giving credit and promotion to its brave men.

Officers of the Battery.

There is special interest in the East, too, in the performances of this organization. Major Richard W. Young, the senior officer of the battalion, is a graduate of Columbia University Law School, a West Pointer, and spent many years on Governor's Island as Judge Advocate of the Department of the East under General Hancock. Major Grant, Commander of the Second battery, was a graduate of the Canadian School of Artillery, and spent many years of his life in the East.

Utah prepared in 1886 for the distinction that has now come to her by purchasing eight 3.2-inch modern field guns immediately after she was admitted to the Union. At that time there was a large sum in the Treasury at Washington, the accumulation of many years' allowances for militia organization. This, on the advice of Major Young, formerly an officer of the Fifth artillery, then a lawyer in Salt Lake City, was used in the purchase of the cannon, and when the war began he was entrusted with the organization of three batteries of volunteers.

Two of these were taken on the transports Colon and China on the second military expedition to Manila, embarking on June 15, 1898, and it was their fortune to be engaged in the first battle with the Spaniards. Four of the guns were posted to guard the advanced post of the American troops in front of Malate. Barely eight hundred yards in front of them were the Spanish trenches and forts, and only the Tenth Pennsylvania was near to support them.

Onslaught by the Insurgents.

The handful of men at the guns had a memorable taste of war on the night of July 31st, when a tropical rain was flooding the trenches and shutting out everything from their sight. In the midst of the storm the Spaniards opened fire from their trenches, and soon a body of more than three thousand were charging on the guns and the Pennsylvanians.

Captains Young and Grant and almost all the other officers of the batteries were with General Greene at Camp Dewey. The guns were in charge of Lieutenant Orrin M. Grow, who was barely twenty-seven years old. Supported by the Pennsylvanians, the men held to their position, pouring shrapnel in the direction of the Spanish lines, and at one time seeing the faces of their charging foes by the flash of their guns. Finally when their ammunitior was almost exhausted General Greene came up with infantry support, and Captains Young and Grant led the other eager men of the Utah batteries, who were pulling their guns through mud that reached the hubs of the carriages.

Even the advance of the Americans proved a danger for the brave little band, however, for when the Californians saw the flash of the Utah guns in the darkness they opened fire

on the two score of men in the trenches and kept it up until they realized they had been shooting at friends.

In the capture of Manila the post of honor was given to the Utah batteries. They opened fire early in the morning on the Spanish fort at Malate, and covered the advance of General Greene's division, which forced its way even to the walls of the old city. Special mention was made of the artillerymen and their officers in the report of the engagement. When the alarm sounded after the insurgent attack on the night of Februnry 4th the Utah guns, now increased to twelve by the capture of cannon from the Spaniards, were in the city. But to each had been given its station, and soon the boys were rattling through the streets, dragging their guns in the midst of bullets that came from every side. At daylight they were guarding the infantry from the beach north of Manila to the Pasig river.

In the Thick of the Fight.

Two of the guns under Lieutenant W. C. Webb were directly in front of San Juan Bridge, over which had been fired the shot of the American sentry that brought the armies into conflict. So close were the cannon to the enemy that after the first fire the insurgents concentrated their attention on them, and two of the gunners were killed before the infantrymen could reach the rebel trenches.

From one position to another along the whole front of the left wing the Utah batteries for three days covered the advance of the infantry. In the recapture of the Manila water works, on which depended the safety of the city, seven of the guns shelled the insurgents from hill to hill. Churches, convents, monasteries and other buildings wherein Aguinaldo's men took refuge bear the marks of the accurate fire of the Westerners.

On the right wing in this engagement Utah artillerymen acted on the water, Lieutenant Naylor commanding the gunboat Laguna de Bay, dubbed by the soldiers the "Mud Hen," which prepared the way for the advance up the Pasig River. Afterward Major Grant, who had received promotion in company with Major Young for gallantry in action, was put in command of the fleet of gunboats which guarded the Pasig River and swept around Laguna de Bay, disorganizing the insurgents and later covering the landing of Lawton's expedition on the lake shore. From Caloocan to Calumpit insurgent works show evidence of the work of the Utah gunners. They were in the advance line of MacArthur's troops, covering the advance with canister that shook the bravery of Aguinaldo's best troops.

Nearly All Mormons.

As a reward for his efficiency Major Young was offered a commission in the regular army. During the early days of the occupation of Manila he was judge of the provost court, and his name was recommended to President McKinley for an appointment as lieutenant colonel in the Judge Advocate General's Department.

Probably three-fourths of the men in the two batteries are Mormons. Many of them served their two or three years as missionaries for that Church and a Mormon chaplain was with the battalion. Major Young is a grandson of Brigham Young, and an elder and Mormon home missionary. Major Grant is a Gentile in Utah, in company with several of the brave officers in the battalion. There was no church feeling in the batteries, however.

Ambassador Cambon, as the diplomatic representative of the Spanish government in Washington, called at the State Department on May 1st and received from Secretary Hay four warrants for $5,000,000 each, making

$20,000,000, due to Spain under the treaty of Paris.

There was little formality about the transfer of warrants. The Ambassador showed to Secretary Hay his authority from the Spanish government to receive the money, and after the warrants had been handed him he signed four copies of a receipt. He retained one copy and another was sent to Mr. Storer, the newly appointed American Minister to Spain. A third was sent to Ambassador Porter, at Paris, and the fourth was sent to the Treasury Department to be filed.

This ended the details connected with the treaty of peace between our Government and Spain, and prepared the way for diplomatic relations to be resumed. The negotiations were conducted by Ambassador Cambon with excellent judgment and tact, and his work was highly commended.

Our Troops Advance.

General Lawton's force was engaged in hard fighting early in the morning of May 2d. He marched in a westerly direction on Balinag, where a large body of rebels was concentrated. General Hale started from Calumpit at daybreak with the Iowa and South Dakota regiments, and a squad of cavalry and two guns of the Utah battery in a northeasterly direction, to co-operate with the Macabebees, who asked the Americans to arm them in order that they might fight the Tagals. The Macabebees had already organized a company of Bolomen to guard the town. They brought Tagal prisoners to General MacArthur.

Refugees reported that the Filipino army was deserting San Fernando and massing at Santo Tomas, where General Luna's headquarters were located, and that strong entrenchments were being constructed at the sides of the railway and on the swamp front, in the best positions possible.

On May 5th, Major General MacArthur carried San Tomas, after encountering a strong resistance. In spite of the peaceful overtures of their commissioners, the Filipinos vigorously resisted the advance of General MacArthur's division from Apalit towards San Fernando, fighting desperately at long range after running from trench to trench when driven out by the American artillery.

The movement commenced at half-past five in the morning. General Hale's brigade advanced along the road a few miles west of the railway line. General Wheaton, with Hotchkiss and Gatling guns, under the command of Lieutenant Naylor, of the Utah Light Artillery, mounted on hand cars, pushed ahead.

Stubborn Resistance.

Both brigades met with resistance simultaneously on approaching the river near San Tomas, which is about eight kilometers from Apalit. The centre span of the railroad bridge had dropped into the river, and the rebels had only left a small force to check General Wheaton, their main body lining the strong trenches in front of General Hale.

Although the attacking force poured a very heavy artillery and musketry fire across the river, the enemy stubbornly resisted for over an hour, ultimately breaking when Major Young shelled their left flank, and then retreating along the river bank under cover.

So soon as they discovered that the nature of the country would permit only a few skirmishers on each side of the embankment, the rebels regained their courage and fought desperately for three-quarters of an hour, in the face of the American volleys and a rapid-fire fusillade, until flanked by the Montana Regiment. Then a general scramble ensued, most of the enemy boarding trains that were in readiness and the others taking the road

to San Fernando, after burning the villages of San Tomas and Minalin.

About noon General Wheaton crossed the broken bridge, cleared the stragglers out of the villages and advanced towards San Fernando. General Hale effected a crossing simultaneously, after a slight delay necessary to repair a stone bridge. After a short rest the advance was continued, General Wheaton encountering the first series of entrenchments near San Fernando. The rebels now opened a hot fire. Colonel Funston, of the Twentieth Kansas, was wounded, one lieutenant was killed and four were wounded while leading four companies of the Kansas Regiment to outflank the enemy. General Hale pushed along the road, flanking the trenches.

The first Filipino municipal government sanctioned by the Americans was established at Balinag May 9th. General Lawton authorized the Filipinos at this village to select a native for Mayor, which was done. A municipal council, composed of Filipinos, was elected, and the Filipino government took control of the city.

Influx of Filipinos.

Thousands of Filipinos came through the insurgent lines, and moved southward into the territory under American control. General Lawton welcomed them back, and gave them to understand that they were to be treated kindly and justly. Hundreds of natives received food supplies of rice and sugar from the insurgent stores. These stores were captured by General Lawton when he seized Balinag. The great number of these returning natives was regarded as a sure indication that Aguinaldo's power was weakening.

There was a hard fight on the same date at San Ildefonso. A reconnoitering party, consisting of one company of Minnesota volunteers and two companies from the Oregon regiment, ran into a force of insurgents strongly entrenched at San Ildefonso. A system of heavy earthworks extended from an impenetrable swamp on the left along the ridge fronting the town. Flanking trenches had been thrown up, commanding every approach to the village. The Americans were within short range of the earthworks before they were aware of the presence of the Filipinos. A furious fusillade came from the insurgent stronghold. The Americans were forced to withdraw. Major Diggles, of the Minnesota regiment was shot through the head.

Another Town Captured.

On May 17th General Lawton's advance guard, under Colonel Summers, of the Oregon troops, took San Isidro, the insurgent capital, at 8.30 o'clock A.M. Colonel Summers' command, consisting of the Twenty-second Infantry on the left, the Minnesota Regiment in the centre and the Oregon and North Dakota Regiments on the right, preceded by scouts and accompanied by Scott's Battery of Artillery, advanced from Baluarte at daylight.

The troops first encountered the enemy two miles from San Isidro. The rebels retired when our artillery opened fire. Just outside the town a rebel force estimated to number 2,000 men was entrenched. It made a slight resistance, but evacuated its position when our troops turned its right flank. The enemy's loss was fifteen men killed and twenty wounded. Our troops also captured three prisoners and many rifles. On the American side one soldier of the Oregon Regiment and one of the Minnesota Regiment were slightly wounded. After capturing the town, Colonel Summers' troops continued the advance, pursuing the retreating rebels for several miles.

On May 24th thirty Filipinos were killed

and over sixty wounded in the battle between the American forces and the insurgents, one mile north of San Fernando. The Americans lost one man. Twelve of our troops were wounded. The insurgents made the attack. About 9 o'clock the Filipinos opened fire upon the outposts of General MacArthur's command. The American scouts fought bravely, and held the natives back until they were reinforced by troops from San Fernando. General MacArthur, at the head of two battalions of the Montana Regiment, and General Funston, leading two battalions of the Kansas Regiment; two guns from the Utah Battery, one Hotchkiss and one Gatling gun, hurried to the assistance of outposts.

Obstinate Resistance.

The insurgents were occupying the trenches which they had previously vacated at the fall of San Fernando. The Kansas troops deployed to the right, while the Montana soldiers went to the extreme left. The artillery was left in the centre of the line. The Filipinos made an obstinate resistance. Finally they attempted to retreat, but found themselves flanked by the Kansas troops. General Funston charged his men and drove the insurgents right over into the fire of the Montana volunteers. At length they escaped from this fearful fire, but they left their dead and wounded where they had dropped on the battlefield. Besides the killed and wounded ninety were made prisoners, while over 100 stands of arms were captured, having been dropped by the natives in their wild flight from the Americans' fire.

The opening of a new and vigorous campaign against the insurgents was inaugurated on June 1st. The capture of Cainta on the 3rd was followed on the 4th by the occupation of Antipolo after a running fight between the forces of General Hall and the insurgents lasting nearly twenty-four hours, the rebels being forced to retreat by the gallant charges and well-directed fire of the American troops. The artillery played an important part in the battle, our guns shelling the jungle which concealed the rebels and inflicting heavy loss.

In a Strong Position.

The position of the American troops at night indicated that they would sweep the peninsula of Morong, the land projecting to the south into Laguna de Bay, where the insurgents were supposed to have a large force, near the town of Morong, as well as the battery on the western shore of the peninsula, which smashed the propeller of the gunboat Napidan.

The original plan was to surround the forces of General Pio del Pinar, so that he must retreat to the Morong peninsula, where capture would have been inevitable. This was not a complete success, because General Hall's column found the country full of handicaps to marching. There were several streams to be bridged or forded, and the troops frequently floundered through morasses, waist deep in mud, an experience which, under the terrific sun, exhausted the Americans quite beyond endurance. Most of General Pio del Pinar's followers are supposed to have escaped northward, probably reaching Bosoboso, a stronghold in the mountains.

Colonel Wholley, having successfully completed his share of the movement, brought the Washington regiment to the river Pasig, where about midnight the men embarked upon cascoes and started for their destination, under the convoy of the gunboats.

They encountered a repetition of the experience undergone by almost every expedition on attempting to enter Laguna de Bay, as the boats went aground in the shallows at the mouth of the river and were detained there

several hours. Major General Lawton, in the meantime, was indefatigable, riding from one force to another and supervising the loading of the cascoes, without sleep for two nights.

General Hall's column, which assembled at the water works or pumping station late on the 2nd, under cover of a moonless sky, consisted of the Second Oregon Volunteers, who marched to the point of rendezvous from the city barracks; a battalion of the Second Wyoming Regiment, four troops of the Fourth Cavalry—one mounted on the big American horses which so impressed the natives, the others unmounted—two battalions of the Fourth Infantry, one battalion of the Ninth Infantry, the first six companies of the First Colorado Regiment, and two mountain guns. The men rolled themselves in their blankets and lay upon the wet grass for a few hours under a drizzling rain.

Driven from the Hills.

At 4 o'clock on the morning of the 3rd, they began to cross the San Mateo river and about noon easily repulsed a large band of Filipinos about twelve miles east of Manila, between Mariquina and Antipolo. The Oregon regiment, the cavalry, the artillery and the Fourth Infantry accomplished this task, driving the insurgents from the hills, the other troops being held in reserve, but afterwards joining the main column in the pursuit towards the sea.

A running fight was in progress all the afternoon. A Filipino outpost first attacked a few American scouts, whereupon the Fourth Cavalry formed a skirmish line and drove the insurgents into the hills. Then the Oregon regiment moved across a wet, soggy rice field, in extended order, toward the hills, where it was believed a large force of the enemy had concentrated. When the Oregonians were within about a mile of the position, the Filipinos opened a heavy fire, the Americans replying and pressing forward more rapidly.

After a few volleys the insurgents were seen scattering over the crest of the hills in every direction, and their panic was increased when the artillery opened upon them and the shells began to explode all around them, undoubtedly causing great loss of life. The bombardment by the batteries and the musketry was maintained for nearly half an hour, after which not a Filipino could be seen on the hills, and not a shot came from the position. The heat was intense and the troops suffered greatly, but they continued on the trail taken by the fleeing enemy in the hope of driving them toward the lake.

Combining Forces.

Colonel Wholley with two battalions of the First Washington Regiment, a battalion of the Twelfth Infantry, two guns of Scott's Battery and a party of scouts under Major Jeisenberger left San Pedro Macari on the 3rd, and after forcing the river Pasig advanced northeast upon Cainta, while General Hall approached the town from the opposite direction, the gunboats Napidan, Covadonga and Ceste co-operating in the river.

This important movement was kept so secret that the public thought the plan was to send General Ovenshine's lines forward against the insurgents who were intrenched south of the city. The Signal Corps displayed admirable enterprise in laying wires with the troops, but the native sympathizers cut them behind the army, even within the American lines.

General Hall's column in the movement upon the Morong peninsula completed a circuit of twenty miles, over rough and mountainous country, having two engagements with the insurgents, one of them severe, keeping up an almost constant fire against

scattered bands of rebels for nearly twenty-four hours from 4 o'clock on the morning of the 3rd, when the column left the pumping station.

The Filipinos were driven in every direction, and the country through which General Hall passed was pretty thoroughly cleared. At 10 o'clock in the morning of the 4th the column reached a point a few miles from Tay Tay, where General Hall was met by General Lawton, who had already entered the town and found it deserted. General Hall's objective point was Antipolo, ten miles off, and there was desultory firing all along the line of march. The gunboats could be heard shelling the hills in advance of the column.

The Second Battle.

The column, after driving the rebels from the foothills near Mariachino, with a loss of but two or three slightly wounded, proceeded with all possible haste toward Laguna de Bay, the Fourth Cavalry in the lead, the Oregon Regiment next and the Fourth Infantry last. At 5 o'clock on the 3d, these three regiments fought their second battle of the day, and it resulted like the first, in the complete rout of a large Filipino force located in the mountains and having every advantage of position.

The progress of the column was considerably delayed while passing up the steep mountain grade by a small band of insurgents, but these were effectually routed by the Fourth Cavalry, which was in advance, and the troops reached Antipolo in a few hours. Our lines were immediately thrown around on three sides of the town, and then the final advance was made. But it was found unnecessary to fire a shot. Not a rebel was visible and the town was entirely abandoned. Two hours later, after a conference between General Lawton and General Hall, the column proceeded toward Morong to drive away any rebels found in that quarter.

When the start was made for Antipolo in the morning the Oregon Regiment and the Ninth Infantry were left behind as a rear guard, and there was considerable firing along their lines in clearing the enemy from the high hill between their position and the lake.

Morong was captured at noon on June 5th by Colonel Wholley with the First Washington Regiment and the army gunboats Napidan and Cavadonga. This regiment, which had been stationed at Pasig, moved north together with two battalions of the Thirteenth Infantry, four battalions of the Ninth Infantry, part of the Nebraska Volunteers and Scott's guns of Dyer's Battery. This force, under the command of Colonel Wholley, joined General Hall in the attack on Cainta. It later moved its position near to Tay Tay and waited there until General Hall struck Antipolo when it took Tay Tay without loss. No resistance was made to our advance by the enemy, but the journey was exceedingly hard, owing to the difficult road and the intense heat.

South of Manila.

At daybreak on June 10th, a force of 4,500 men, under Generals Lawton, Wheaton and Ovenshine, advanced from San Pedro Macati, sweeping the country between the Bay of Manila and Bay Lake, south of Manila. By noon the country had been cleared almost to Paranaque. The Americans lost two officers killed and twenty-one soldiers wounded. The rebels resisted desperately at the stronger of their positions, and left fifty dead in the trenches. Many more wounded were left behind by the rebels in their retreat. The heat during the day was overpowering, and there were many prostrations of American soldiers from that cause.

General Wheaton's advance over barren country was slow and accompanied with great suffering to the men. The land trav-

ersed was high and hilly, devoid of vegetation, and the blazing sun made the sandy soil terrible to march over. Besides, the insurgents constantly harassed the soldiers from the trenches located on the crest of the hills, from which they fired on the Americans and inflicted considerable loss.

The Colorado Volunteers led the advance of General Wheaton's brigade. The march was a constant succession of gallant charges up the hillsides in the face of a galling fire, only to find each time that the insurgents had retreated to the next hilltop before the Colorado men reached them. These tactics were repeated time and again.

Filipinos Intrenched.

The Fourteenth Infantry, of General Ovenshine's brigade, met with strong opposition from a band of Filipinos, which was in a large and strongly-constructed trench. The Americans were repulsed in their first and second attempts to capture this trench, but the third time they dashed up to the breastwork and gained possession of it, but most of the insurgents succeeded in making their escape.

The most exciting incident of the day was the flank attack made upon General Wheaton's troops. The Americans were approaching Manila Bay, about a mile South of Las Pinas, for the purpose of completing the semicircle enclosing Las Pinas and Paranaque. General Lawton and General Wheaton, with their respective staffs, were in advance. In the following column were a troop of the Fourth Cavalry, the Colorado Volunteers and the Ninth Infantry.

On approaching Zapote River the advance guard met a sudden and fierce fire from across the stream. The Colorado men hurriedly formed a skirmish line along the bank of the river. While attention was thus directed to the force across the river, the American officers were amazed to observe the insurgents had thrown out a long skirmish line 600 yards to the left. As soon as the American line began its advance the insurgents opened with a fierce fire. The American line was between two fires, because all this time the rebels across the river were keeping up an incessant firing on our troops.

Two guns from the artillery were hurried out. They began to shell the insurgent lines, and the Filipinos, who had made the flank attack, retreated. They ran towards the lake, thus escaping from the semi-circles of American troops which had been drawn around Las Pinas and Paranaque, and also keeping in a position where they would be able to attack the Americans from the rear.

Desperate Resistance.

General Lawton's forces had an all-day battle with the insurgents at Las Pinas on June 13th. He called out the whole force of 3,000, but at 5 o'clock was only able to push the insurgents back 500 yards to the Zapote River, where they were intrenched. The insurgents resisted desperately and aggressively. They attempted to turn the left flank of the American troops. The American loss was conservatively estimated at sixty.

The fight at the Zapote River was the most desperate and obstinate of all that occurred after the beginning of hostilities in February. Almost exactly a year before the insurgents of Cavite province fought the greatest engagement of the Spanish-Filipino war at this same place, defeating a strong force of Spaniards, which had been sent from Manila against them. Their successful defense of the bridge at that time doubtless inspired them with greater courage than they otherwise would have shown. The insurgents of Cavite province are the most warlike of any in the Island of Luzon. This is the province of Aguinaldo, and the men who were met and

defeated by General Lawton's troops were those who did the severest fighting against the Spaniards under the direction of Aguinaldo and his immediate lieutenants.

The Zapote River is two miles east of Bacoor. The Americans captured the passage of the river after a long and desperate battle in which ten were killed and forty-eight wounded. The insurgent loss was forty killed and one hundred and twenty wounded. Forty-eight armed Filipinos were captured by the Americans. The fighting began early in the forenoon and continued until evening. It was accompanied by a terrific bombardment by the American warships lying near the shore.

Heavy Losses.

By this desperate battle the insurgents lost a district which they superstitiously believed to be invulnerable against any attack of their enemies, it having been the scene of many former victories against the Spaniards. The American forces engaged were all regulars of the Ninth, Twelfth, Fourteenth and Twenty-first Infantry, and all of them showed magnificent valor. The sailors who were landed undoubtedly saved the detachment on the beach from destruction or capture, and the hearty co-operation shown by these, and by the men at the guns on the warships, caused the soldiers to feel the warmest gratitude and affection for the men of the navy.

The small gunboat Napidan, captured from the Filipinos, arrived at Manila June 17th, and her commander, Franklin, reported the details of an engagement with the rebels on the lake on June 10th. While Brigadier-General Wheaton was fighting near Taguig, Franklin saw a party of 500 insurgents advancing under cover of the bluffs to attack Wheaton's left flank. The Napidan steamed unseen by the rebels to within 500 yards of the shore, when she opened fire upon the enemy with every gun on board, two and three-inch Hotchkiss, revolving Colt, rapid-fire Gatling and rifles in the hands of the crew. It was a tremendous surprise to the insurgents.

The first discharge scattered the rebels and threw them into utter confusion. The Filipino commander, who was mounted, belabored his men with the flat of his sword, striving to rally them, but they would not stand to be cut down by the murderous fire of the gunboat. Finally the rebels fled over the hill, the Napidan shelling them until the last man disappeared.

The Third Battalion of the Fourth Regiment, under the command of Major Bubb, and one gun of the Sixth Artillery, commanded by Lieutenant Koehler, started southward from Imus June 19th, on a reconnoissance, and met the enemy near Perez das Marinas. While the American troops were in a sunken road a force of insurgents attacked them on the left flank. The Americans retreated in good order for several miles, losing five killed and twenty wounded.

Enemy Driven Back.

Finally, being reinforced by Robinson's Battalion of the Fourth Infantry, they advanced upon the foe. The fighting still continued until the enemy was driven off, with considerable loss. Our loss during the day amounted to a total of forty killed and wounded.

Reports were received that Das Marinas had been deserted by the insurgents. The Alcalde of the place came to Imus and formally surrendered this town. The houses along the roadside were filled with natives professedly friendly, and the battalion advanced confidently until within three-fourths of a mile of Das Marinas, when they discovered the enemy, paralleling the road at a long distance on both sides and practically surrounding

the little force. Natives began firing from houses in the rear, and natives in white clothes were captured with guns in hand.

The whole scheme was to wipe out the small body of American troops, and might have succeeded but for the marvelous courage of the troops and officers. The fight began at noon, and the enemy's fire was silenced in one hour. The Americans, on retiring, discovered that they were surrounded.

Bravery of Rear Guard.

The skirmish lines were crowding the Filipinos back toward Imus. Outflankers were thrown out right and left under a flanking fire. The rear guard was desperately holding the enemy's rushes in check in spite of an incessant and galling fire on the main road. Men were falling everywhere, the ambulances being filled, and carts were impressed and loaded with the wounded, and dragged by hand by the prisoners. Two of our dead were left behind. At 3 o'clock it looked as if nothing could save the battalion. At 4 it had pressed the enemy off to the right, and was at last behind them, and fifteen minutes later Captain Hazzard, an aide to General Wheaton, pushed through alone with the news that Wheaton was coming to their relief. The men cheered wildly as they sprang at the Filipinos.

General Wheaton found the enemy a thousand strong moving to intercept the road where it runs at right angles. He opened on them with shrapnel, and mowed down the insurgents. The way cleared, our left advanced rapidly, and at 4.30 had the enemy in full rout and gained a mile and a half of lost ground. The regiment bivouacked at last in the rice fields, and food and ammunition were rushed forward. It was the most determined and best-planned resistance yet made by the Filipinos.

The more thoroughly all the facts regarding the battle near Perez des Marinas are investigated, the more clear is it that General Wheaton saved the First Battalion of the Fourth Infantry from a great disaster by his timely arrival on the scene with reinforcements.

The movement was very slow, and every step had to be contested with the enemy. The 2,000 insurgents were making a supreme effort to destroy the Americans and were sending in a galling fire from all directions. Lieutenant Kohler's one field gun was used with telling effect on the enemy, and assisted materially in opening a path for the harassed battalion. One company was cut off at one time from the rest of the force, and was compelled to charge twice over an open fire-swept field to regain its place on the left of the advancing column. The sunken road afforded no protection.

Under Constant Fire.

The ambulance containing the dead and wounded was under fire continually, and as the supply of ammunition became nearly exhausted the condition of the Americans was desperate. Lieutenant Wolf, with his men, was sent to the left flank, and there fought with great heroism. Four hours of this kind of fighting had taken the battalion only three miles in its retreat. Then it made a stand to collect and care for the wounded.

At that time Lieutenant Hazlett, an aide to General Wheaton, and Lieutenant Cunningham, of the signal corps, galloped up the Imus road bringing word that reinforcements were on the way. Hearty American cheers greeted this welcome news. The Filipinos answered with a heavier fire, their bullets sweeping the road with fearful effect. At last the guns of General Wheaton's men, consisting of the Second Battalion of the Fourth Infantry, were heard on the left. This soon turned the tide of battle.

The fresh troops, with their ammunition belts well filled, dashed to the relief of the First Battalion. Deploying on the left and charging front with precision, they drove the insurgents for a distance and recovered the dead bodies of the Americans which had been left behind.

Throughout the action the conduct of the men was magnificent, though at times it seemed as if they could expect nothing except destruction. The officers remained cool, riding along the road and giving their orders with a calmness which added much to the confidence of the men. The enemy at the end of the engagement was driven in confusion off the field and was followed within two miles of Pedez des Marinas, when darkness put an end to the engagement.

The American loss was four killed and twenty wounded. Ninety-three dead Filipinos were recovered from a part of the battlefield, and many more doubtless were slain during the battle.

Aguinaldo in Charge.

At this juncture of affairs Aguinaldo took charge of the army formerly under command of General Luna, who, as reported, was assassinated by command of the insurgent leader. He massed the largest force yet brought together, about 8,000 men, bringing 2,000 from the Antipolo region. The enemy became very troublesome and constantly annoyed our troops, who had to be on the alert to repel the attacks and were compelled to sleep on their arms. Aguinaldo seemed fully resolved to continue his warfare, and it was surprising how rapidly he brought forward his forces.

On July 20th severe fighting took place at Bobong. Captain Byrne, of the Sixth Infantry, with seventy men, surprised a force of 450 Babaylones, of whom 115, by actual count, were killed and many more were wounded. Only one of the enemy was captured. The American loss was one man killed and one wounded. Fighting was mostly at close quarters with bayonets and clubbed guns. A large quantity of supplies and arms were captured.

On July 26th an expedition comprising troops from San Pedro Macati, Pasig and Morong, under Brigadier-General R. H. Hall, captured Calamba, an important trading town on the south shore of Laguna de Bay. There were two hours of fighting, during which four soldiers were killed and twelve wounded.

An Important Town.

Calamba is about thirty miles southeast of Manila. It is much further south than the United States troops had before penetrated on land. It is in the province of Laguna. It has a population of 11,476, and is twenty-seven miles from Santa Cruz, on the eastern shore of the bay.

Later details of the fight at Calamba showed that it was a warm one. The insurgents were unwilling to abandon the place, which is the key to the lake road. General Hall, hearing that General Malbar was preparing to make an attack, sent Major Weisenberger with three companies of the Twenty-first Infantry, three troops of cavalry and one of Hamilton's guns to attack the insurgents. This detachment found a force of 1,000 rebels behind hastily-made intrenchments. The rebels held their fire until the contingent of the Twenty-first Regiment was within 300 yards, when they fired a volley. The Americans dropped in the high grass out of sight and returned the fire.

Lieutenant Love, who was walking erect along the front of the men, was shot in the arm. An insurgent officer, equally brave, stood at the top of the trenches, directing the fire of the insurgents until he was killed, when the Filipinos fled.

During the fighting on the north side of the town a small body of insurgents attempted to enter on the south side, but a troop of cavalry repulsed them. The total American loss at Calamba was seven killed and twenty wounded. Sixteen dead insurgents were found.

Military operations in the Philippines were nearly suspended during the rainy season, but on August 9, 1899, General MacArthur, with a force of 4,000 men, pushed northward five miles from San Fernando, meeting and defeating 6,000 insurgents, who left many dead and wounded on the field in their retreat. The American loss in several sharp encounters was known to have been at least eight killed and twenty-six wounded. The objective point was Angeles, one of the richest towns north of Manila.

Armored Cars.

The movement on Angeles had been planned for some time, but was delayed by rains. Finally two days of sunshine dried the ground sufficiently to warrant the attempt, and the movement began.

Armored cars, each with a 6-pounder and two Gatling revolving cannon on board, moved out on the railroad track in the centre of our lines. Their guns did sharp execution throughout the day. The Filipinos were evidently surprised at the movement, having expected the American forces to move against Tico. They were well protected by trenches, and followed their usual tactics of holding their positions until the American fire became too warm and then retreating in disorder.

On August 28th there was a great demonstration at Pittsburg in honor of returning soldiers. Through cheering multitudes of people, who packed eight miles of sidewalks, occupied every window and observation point along the route, and alternated their cheers with tears, the Tenth Pennsylvania Volunteers, the only volunteer regiment east of the Mississippi to see Philippine service, triumphantly marched through Pittsburg.

Enthusiastic Reception.

The occasion was made memorable by the presence of the President of the United States, Major-General Wesley Merritt, General Francis V. Greene, United States Senator Boies Penrose, the Governor of the State, and other prominent persons who gathered to receive the farmer boys who made an honorable record in the Spanish and Philippine wars. The President delivered a speech, in which he welcomed home the members of the regiment, and made an emphatic declaration of his Philippine policy.

Active military operations in the Philippines were almost entirely halted by the wet season, but an occasional brush with the enemy served to keep our troops on the alert and in fighting mood. The United States cruiser Charleston, the monitor Monterey and the gunboats Concord and Zafiro, with marines and bluejackets from the cruiser Baltimore, left Cavite on September 18th, and proceeded to Subig Bay to destroy an insurgent cannon there. Owing to the bad weather the operation was postponed until the 23d, when the warships bombarded the town of Olangapo and the intrenchments where the gun was situated.

The Monterey opened fire with her secondary and main batteries at twenty-five minutes past seven o'clock, the Charleston and Concord joining in the firing immediately. At twenty-two minutes to eight the insurgent cannon answered, the first shot passing close to the Monterey's smokestack.

The American bombardment became general. At half-past nine o'clock the Monterey advanced to a range of six hundred yards, using her main battery. Two hundred and

fifty men were landed about eight hundred yards east of the cannon at eleven o'clock under a severe Mauser fire from the shore. The cannon was found to be a 6-inch Krupp gun that the insurgents had obtained from the Spaniards. Fifty pounds of gun-cotton were used in destroying it.

The insurgents captured the United States gunboat Urdaneta in the Orani River, on the northwest side of Manila Bay, on September 25th, where she was patrolling.

New Secretary of War.

When President McKinley selected his Cabinet, he made Hon. Russell A. Alger, of Michigan, Secretary of War. Mr. Alger continued in office until July 22, 1899, when he resigned, and Hon. Elihu Root, of New York, was appointed his successor. Mr. Root entered upon the administration of his office in the most efficient manner, and very soon had additional forces on their way to the Philippines, with a view of suppressing as speedily as possible the insurrection in those islands.

The greatest public demonstration in honor of any individual in the history of our country took place in New York upon the return of Admiral Dewey from his great victory in the harbor of Manila. The Admiral arrived on the 26th of September, 1899, and was warmly greeted by city and state officials. As his flagship, the Olympia, came into the harbor, she was received with noisy demonstrations, and a multitude of people, on land and water, testified in every possible way, their admiration for Admiral Dewey.

On the 29th, there was a naval parade that was participated in by the North Atlantic squadron, and a vast number of vessels all gaily decked. It was the most imposing naval spectacle ever witnessed on this continent. Hundreds of thousands of interested spectators lined the shores, from the Battery to Grant's tomb on the Hudson, and cheered our battleships and other naval vessels.

Welcome to Dewey.

On the 30th there was a land parade in which 30,000 soldiers and civilians participated. Admiral Dewey was escorted first to the City Hall where he was presented by the Municipal Government with a loving cup in the presence of a vast throng of people. Thence he was escorted to Riverside Drive, and from there made his way through a vast concourse of applauding people to the arch erected in his honor at Twenty-fourth Street and Fifth Avenue, where he reviewed the parade. Many state governors, their escorts and a large number of city and state officials were in the parade, and all attempts to describe the enthusiasm of the populace would fail.

It was a memorable day in the history of the United States, as it showed the patriotic feeling of the people and their admiration for the famous hero of the Spanish war.

From New York the Admiral made his way to Washington, where he again met with a most cordial reception, and on the 3d of October was presented with a sword that had been voted in his honor by Congress. An immense concourse of people surrounded the Capitol, on the steps of which the Admiral took his stand and was welcomed in an eloquent speech by Hon. John D. Long, Secretary of the Navy.

President McKinley then presented the Admiral with the diamond sword. He made a brief and graceful reply thanking Congress and the American people for the distinguished consideration that had been shown him. Other receptions to the Admiral followed, all of which showed the appreciation of the public and gave evidence of the very high esteem in which he was held for his bravery, his adherence to duty and his gallant exploit at Manila.

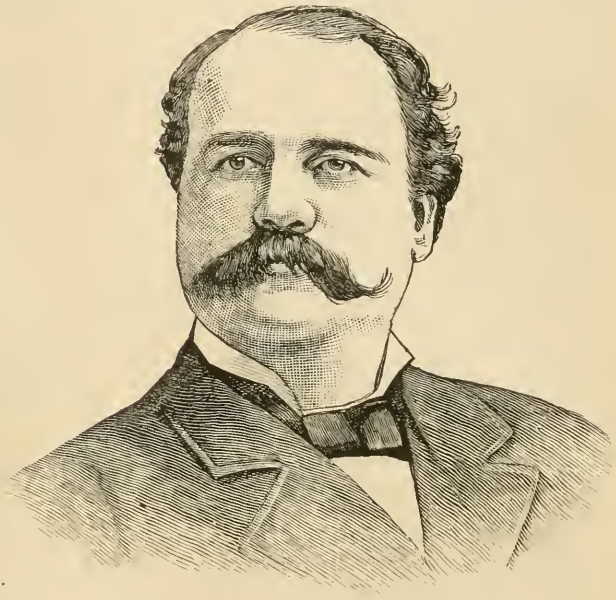
General Funston and the 20th Kansas Infantry, having done heroic service in the Philippines, returned from the seat of war, and on November 2d their arrival home was signalized by an enthusiastic welcome.

It was officially announced at Washington, November 8th, that an agreement had been arrived at between Great Britain and Germany, by which the Samoan Islands would be left by the former to Germany and our own country. The negotiations were conducted in a friendly spirit, and there was general satisfaction at the result on the part of our own government officials.

Garret Augustus Hobart, Vice-President of the United States, died at half-past eight o'clock on the morning of November 21st, of organic heart disease, at his home in Paterson, N. J. Mr. Hobart was the sixth Vice-President to die in office. The others were George Clinton, of New York, who died in 1812, while Madison was President; Elbridge Gerry, of Massachusetts, who died in 1814, Madison still being President; William R. King, of Alabama, who died in 1853, while Pierce was President; Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, who died in 1875, having been elected with Grant, and Thomas A. Hendricks, who died in 1885, during Cleveland's first administration. Gerry, Wilson, and Hendricks all died in November.

Senator William P. Frye, of Maine, was re-elected president *pro tem.* of the Senate, and presided over that body when it assembled on December 5th. Under the law enacted after Mr. Hendricks' death, the Secretary of State will succeed to the Presidency should the Chief Executive die or leave office.

General Lawton, who had made a brilliant record in the Philippines by his great sagacity, courage, and generalship, was killed instantly on December 18th, while engaged in driving insurgents from the San Mateo section of country, northeast of Manila. General Lawton's death was felt to be a great loss to our army, and the whole country united in praise of his manly virtues and heroism.



HON. GARRET A. HOBART.

Lieutenant J. C. Gilmore and other Americans from the gunboat "Yorktown," captured by the Filipinos at Baler in April, were rescued by Colonel Hare's column in northern Luzon.

Congress assembled on the 5th of December and received President McKinley's message. The topics treated that came closest home to the people were the currency and the trusts. The President declared in the strongest terms for the enactment of the

gold standard and for breaking the "endless chain" by providing that greenbacks when once redeemed should assume the character of gold certificates, being paid out again only for the yellow metal.

Citing the great prosperity of the country and the plentitude of gold, he argued that these conditions made this the most fitting time to insure continuance of the gold standard and to be prepared to meet less favorable conditions when they recur. The President, however, suggested no plan of currency reform to make the gold standard effective.

National Banking System.

After urging its adoption and that the Secretary of the Treasury be given power to uphold it—presumably by the sale of bonds when necessary—Mr. McKinley merely invited the attention of Congress as to "whether or not such reasonable modifications can be made in the National Banking act" as will render possible an increase in volume of the existing bank notes.

Touching the trusts, Mr. McKinley fortified his own remarks with liberal excerpts from Presidential messages of Mr. Harrison and Mr. Cleveland. His own recommendations were of a general character. "If the present law," he said, "can be extended more certainly to control or check these monopolies or trusts, it should be done without delay Whatever power Congress possesses over this most important subject should be promptly ascertained and asserted." The most practical of his recommendations on the subject dealt with the lack of uniformity of State laws on the subject, urging that they be made to harmonize, and that Congress may supplement the work so as to make a complete system of laws throughout the United States.

The President was "satisfied that the judgment of the country favored the policy" of paying bounties on shipping, and the plan fathered in the last Congress by Senator Hanna and now to be introduced in substantially the same form appeared to have his approval. This would call for payments of about nine millions a month, and it was asserted in the minority report that it would within twelve months involve contracts running over the period of twenty years to an aggregate of 165 millions. On the Isthmian Canal the President said that the reasons he presented a year before for early action were even stronger now. He renewed his appeal for a commission to visit China and study its commercial possibilities and its resources.

The message covered a wide range of topics, from the need of making good roads, lynchings, pensions, Indian affairs and armor plate, at home, to the unsatisfactory attitude of Turkey abroad. In passing he told of the preparations for the Paris Exposition of 1900 and of the magnificent manner in which American Industries would be represented. The President very tersely presented the reasons for setting before the world the results of our artistic skill and inventive genius at the approaching great exposition.

On January 15th, 1900, the Senate Interoceanic Canal Committee agreed to report favorably the Hepburn bill for the construction of the Nicaragua Canal by the United States, and the measure was pushed in both houses of Congress. Secretary Gage's estimates of the Government's expenses for 1901 showed an increase of more than $38,000,000 over the year's appropriation for 1899. The Currency bill, establishing the gold standard, was passed by the House of Representatives by a vote of 189 to 150, and was sent to the Senate.

Our New Possessions.

THE area of Cuba is about equal to that of Pennsylvania, the length being 760 miles, and the width varying from 35 to 130 miles. The productive soil, mineral wealth and climatic conditions of the island entitle it to rank among the foremost communities of the world. The soil is a marvel of richness, and fertilizers are seldom used, unless in the case of tobacco, even though the same crops be grown on the same land for a hundred years, as has happened in some of the old sugar-cane fields. The mountains are of coral formation, while the lowlands of Eastern Cuba at least seem to be composed largely of fossils of sea matter from prehistoric times, and are extremely rich in lime and phosphate, which accounts for the inexhaustible fertility of the soil.

Products of Cuba.

Although founded and settled more than fifty years before the United States, Cuba has still 13,000,000 acres of primeval forests; mahogany, cedar, logwood, redwood, ebony, lignum-vitæ and caiguaran (which is more durable in the ground than iron or steel) are among the woods. If all the land suitable to the growth of sugar-cane were devoted to that industry, it is estimated that Cuba might supply the entire Western Hemisphere with sugar. The island has already produced in a single year for export 1,000,000 tons, and its capabilities have only been in the experimental stage. The adaptability of the soil for tobacco culture has long been known. Cuba takes great pride in the quality of her coffee, and until the war the plantations were flourishing. The land is not suited to the cultivation of cereals.

The tobacco crop on an average, says the Consul General, is estimated at 560,000 bales (one bale is 110 pounds), 338,000 bales being exported, and the remainder used in cigar and cigarette manufacture in Havana. The cigars exported in 1896 numbered 185,914,000. Tobacco leaf exported in 1895, 30,466,000 pounds; in 1896, 16,823,000 pounds; the decrease being due to a decree of May, 1856, forbidding tobacco leaf exports except to Spain. About 80,000 of the inhabitants are ordinarily engaged in the cultivation of tobacco.

Principal Cities.

The several principal cities of Cuba are thus described, and the information will be especially interesting and instructive at this time, when they are under the control of the land and naval forces of the United States: Habana (Havana), the capital city of the province of that name and of the Island of Cuba, is situated on the west side of Havana Bay, on a peninsula of level land of limestone formation, and is on the narrowest part of the island. Its strategic position at the mouth of the Gulf of Mexico, has aptly given it the name of the Key of the Gulf, and a symbolic key is emblazoned in its coat of arms.

The entrance to the harbor, guarded on one side by the Morro and the frowning heights of La Cabana Fort, and on the other by the Punta and Reina batteries, is narrow, but expands into a wide and deep harbor, where a thousand ships can safely ride.

Havana is a strongly-fortified place, surrounded by imposing fortifications, such as the Cabana, Morro Castle, Castillo del Principe, Fort Atares, Punta Reina Battery and Fort No. 4. The streets are generally narrow in the older part of the city, but outside the walls are many wide avenues.

The city also contains many notable buildings, as the Cathedral, formerly a Jesuit convent, now the depository of the ashes of the immortal discoverer of America; the palace of the government, fine private residences, public parks, and statues of Columbus, Fernando VII., Isabel III., etc. There are many churches and convents, a commemorative chapel fronts the palace, close to a large ceiba tree, under which Diego Velasquez, the founder of the city, celebrated mass in 1519. There are numerous cigar and cigarette factories, tanneries, manufactories of sweetmeats, rum, candles, gas, beer, carriages, soap, perfumery, glycerine, etc.

Climate and Population.

The population of Havana, from reliable official estimate, is about 220,000. Its principal exports to the United States consist of tobacco, fruit, wax and honey, sugar and molasses. All kinds of breadstuffs, lumber, coal and machinery are imported from the United States. The climate is generally warm and humid, and marked by two clearly defined seasons—the wet and dry, the former ranging from June to December; September and October being considered the hurricane months. The trade winds blow generally with great regularity, and the heat of the day is cooled by evening breezes.

Matanzas is beautifully situated on Matanzas Bay, on the north coast of Cuba, sixty miles east of Havana. It is divided into three parts by rivers, the principal business part occupying the central portion, and extending west one and one-half miles. The chief warehouses, distilleries, and sugar refineries are on the south of the river San Juan, easily accessible to railroads and lighters. The population is 49,384, and that of Matanzas province 271,000, according to the 1893 census. The principal industries are rum distilling, sugar-refining, and manufacture of guava jelly. There are railroad car and machine shops. The climate is fine, and Matanzas is considered the healthiest city on the island. With proper drainage and sanitary arrangements, yellow fever and malaria would be almost unknown.

The Oldest City.

Santiago de Cuba, the second city in size on the island, is probably the oldest city of any size on this hemisphere, having been founded by Velasquez in 1514. It fronts on a beautiful bay six miles long and two miles wide, on the south-eastern coast of Cuba, 100 miles west of Cape Maysi. The population in 1895 was 59,614. The mean temperature in summer is 88 degrees; in winter, 82 degrees. It is regarded as very unhealthy, yellow fever being prevalent throughout the year and small-pox epidemic at certain times. These conditions are due to the lack of sanitary and hygienic measures; all refuse matter as well as dead dogs, cats, chickens, etc., being thrown into the streets to decay and fill the air with disease germs. A railroad called the Sabanilla and Maroted, runs from the city to San Luis, twenty-five miles distant, with a branch to Alto Songo, twelve in length. It is largely owned and controlled by citizens of the United States.

Santiago is the headquarters for three large mining plants owned by United States citizens, viz., the Jurugua, the Spanish American, and the Sigua, together representing the investment of about $8,000,000; the last named are not in operation. Santiago is the capital of this province and oriental region.

There are a number of tobacco factories, but the chief business is the exportation of raw materials and the importation of manufactured goods and provisions. Sugar, iron ore, manganese, mahogany, hides, wax, cedar and tobacco are exported to the United States.

City and Harbor of Cienfuegos.

Cienfuegos is on a peninsula in the Bay of Iagua, six miles from the sea. The depth of water at the anchorage in the harbor is 27 feet, and at the different wharves from 14 to 16 feet. The commercial importance of the place was recognized as long ago as 1850, and has increased with the development of the sugar industry. This port is now the centre of the sugar trade for the south of the island. It is connected by rail with Havana and the principal points on the north of the island. The population in 1895 was 24,030. Sugar and tobacco are exported to the United States, and soap and ice are manufactured.

The climate from December 1st to May 1st is dry and moderately warm, the temperature ranging from 60 degrees to 78 degrees during the day and falling several degrees at night. At this season almost constant winds prevail from the north-east or north-west, accompanied by clouds of dust. For the rest of the year the temperature ranges from 75 degrees to 93 degrees, descending a few degrees at night. During this season there are frequent and heavy rainfalls and windstorms. The yellow fever is then epidemic. But little attention is given by the municipal authorities to hygienic or to sanitary measures. Water for household purposes is insufficiently supplied by two small plants, the principal source being the Jicotea river, 10 miles distant. The death rate is 42.82 to 1,000.

Cardenas is a seaport on the north coast of Cuba, about 135 miles east of Havana. In 1893 it had 23,517 inhabitants. The temperature is pleasant during the winter, but from about the middle of May to the middle of October the weather is hot and sultry, the thermometer during the day being usually 94 degrees in the shade and falling some five degrees at night. Sanitary conditions are bad. Yellow fever, typhus, typhoid and pernicious fevers prevail throughout most of the year, being worse in the hot season. Cases of small pox also appear at times.

Trinidad de Cuba is located on a slope of the mountain called La Vijia (Lookout), which has an elevation of about 900 feet above sea level. The port, Casilda, lies about one league to the south; the harbor is almost landlocked, and has very little depth. Vessels drawing 10 feet 6 inches are liable to run aground with the least deviation from the tortuous channel. About half a mile west of Trinidad is the River Guarabo, navigable for small boats only. Four miles east lies Masio Bay, which will accommodate deep-draft vessels. The population numbers about 18,000. Sugar and a little honey are exported. The climate is very healthy, the death rate being 21 to 26 per 1,000, though sanitary measures are almost unknown. The town is so situated that the heavier it rains the cleaner it becomes. The town and vicinity are considered the healthiest in Cuba.

The Island of Porto Rico.

The island of Porto Rico has an extent of about 3668 square miles, being 37 miles broad and 108 miles long. The population is placed at 813,937; one-half are white and the balance negroes and creoles. San Juan is situated on a long and narrow island, separated from the main island at one end by a shallow arm of the sea, over which is a bridge connecting it with the mainland, which runs out at this point in a long sand spit, some nine miles in length, apparently to meet the

smaller island; at the other end the island ends in a rugged bluff or promontory some hundred feet high and three-fourths of a mile distant from the main island. This promontory is crowned by Morro Castle, the principal fortification of the town. At this end of the island is the entrance to the harbor, with a narrow channel and rocky bottom, so close under the headland that one can almost leap ashore from a passing vessel. The water here is some thirty feet deep.

To a mariner unacquainted with the locality, or when a norther is blowing, this entrance is one of difficulty and danger. After rounding the bluff, one finds a broad and beautiful bay, landlocked, and with a good depth of water which is being increased by dredging. It is by far the best harbor in Porto Rico, and probably as good a one as can be found in the West Indies. However, it has its drawbacks. Sailing vessels are frequently detained by the northerly winds during the winter months, and even steamers with a draft of over twenty feet are sometimes delayed; but these occasions are rare. When they do occur, the "boca," or entrance to the harbor, is a mass of seething, foaming water, and presents an imposing spectacle.

Good Specimen of a Walled Town.

To see steamers of 16 or 18 feet draft enter in a severe norther is a sight to be remembered, as the great waves lift them up and seem about to hurl them forward to destruction. At such times there is need of a staunch vessel, steady nerves, and a captain well acquainted with the channel, as no pilot will venture out.

The island upon which the city stands is shaped much like an arm and hand; it is about two and a half miles long and averages less than one-fourth of a mile in width. The greatest width is a little over half a mile in the portion representing the hand, which also contains the major part of the city. San Juan is a perfect specimen of a walled town, with portcullis, moat, gates, and battlements. Built over two hundred and fifty years ago, it is still in good condition and repair. The walls are picturesque and represent a stupendous work and cost in themselves. Inside the walls, the city is laid off in regular squares, six parallel streets running in the direction of the length of the island and seven at right angles. The houses are closely and compactly built of brick, usually of two stories, stuccoed on the outside and painted in a variety of colors. The upper floors are occupied by the more respectable people, while the ground floors, almost without exception, are given up to negroes and the poorer classes.

Life on the Ground Floor.

The population within the walls is estimated at 20,000, and most of it lives on the ground floor. In one small room, with a flimsy partition, a whole family will reside. The ground floor of the whole town reeks with filth and conditions are most unsanitary. In a tropical country, where disease readily prevails, the consequences of such herding may be easily inferred. There is no running water in the town. The entire population depends upon rain water, caught upon the flat roofs of the buildings and conducted to the cistern, which occupies the greater part of the inner court yard that is an essential part of Spanish houses the world over, but that here, on account of the crowded conditions, is very small.

There is no sewerage, except for surface water and sinks, while vaults are in every house and occupy whatever remaining space there may be in the parts not taken up by the cisterns. The risk of contaminating the water is very great, and in dry seasons the supply is entirely exhausted. Epidemics are

frequent, and the town is alive with vermin, flies, cockroaches, mosquitoes and dogs. The streets are wider than in the older part of Havana, and will admit two carriages abreast. The sidewalks are narrow, and in places will accommodate but one person. The pavements are of a composition manufactured in England from slag, pleasant and even, and durable when no heavy strain is brought to bear upon them, but easily broken and unfit for heavy traffic. The streets are swept once a day by hand, and, strange to say, are kept very clean.

The Sickliest Season.

From its topographical situation the town should be healthy, but it is not. The soil under the city is clay, mixed with lime, so hard as to be almost like rock. It is, consequently, impervious to water and furnishes a good natural drainage. The trade wind blows strong and fresh, and through the harbor runs a stream of sea water at a speed of not less than three miles an hour. With these conditions no contagious diseases, if properly taken care of, could exist; without them the place would be a veritable plague spot.

A study of the orographic features of the island shows that its mountain systems are developed most extensively in its south-central region and in its northeastern division. Taking it as a whole the island is approximately roof-shaped, so that the rainfall is rapidly drained off. For drainage purposes there are forty-five considerable rivers and countless rivulets, seventeen of the rivers running to the north, sixteen to the south and nine to the east coast. And it is very noticeable that there is no extensive lake nestling in the highlands of the interior.

Though there are no extended climatic observations covering the whole Porto Rican territory, the Spanish series of international observations at San Juan, published by the Weather Bureau, show the general conditions prevailing in that city and its vicinity. The most marked feature of the climate is that the summer's heat and rainfall keep up until late autumn. This constancy of tropical heat has a very relaxing effect upon the body, and is, therefore, injurious to the health of strangers, though the heat is mitigated by trade winds and stiff land and sea breezes. But in August and even later on the north coast the air is often intensely sultry, oppressive and almost calm, with little or no relief, so that Colonel Hinter pronounced this the sickliest time for foreigners. For this reason he advised residents of temperate climates not to visit Porto Rico until November, when the weather becomes exquisitely fine and settled, continuing generally good during the winter and early spring.

Heat, Rainfall, Winds and Hurricanes.

In this beautiful island, under new auspices, doubtless there will spring up eventually a number of inviting winter resorts and sanitaria. For in the winter and early spring Porto Rico is less subject than even Cuba to chilling winds, blowing out from freezing anti-cyclones that move east off the American coast toward Bermuda.

At San Juan the average temperature in August is nearly 81 degrees Fahrenheit; in September 80.5 degrees, and in October 79.3 degrees.

The rainfall in the capital—which is a fair index of that along the northeast coast of the island generally—averages about 6.65 inches during August, 5.30 during September, and 7.10 during October. But in some years September brings the heaviest rains. It is obvious that with such heavy rainfall the narrow roads leading from the east coast to San Juan and those skirting the north coast are liable in these months to be at

times badly washed by the heavy showers. The southern side of the island is relatively much drier than the northern, though the former is liable to excessive rains during the passage of a hurricane.

The prevailing winds at San Juan from August 1st to October 31st, as deduced from he fragmentary data, are southeasterly and easterly, contrary to the general idea, a rather light sprinkling of northeasterly winds, while southerly winds figure considerably. The calm days in the hottest months average not far from ten per month, and in some months exceed eighteen, and even twenty.

Destructive Tornadoes.

Fortunately for Porto Rico, it does not lie directly in the track of West Indian cyclones. At long intervals it has been visited by a desolating hurricane. The usual track of hurricanes runs in a northwestwardly course, a little north of the island in August and a little south of it in September and October. So erratic, however, are these tremendous whirlwinds of the tropics, so liable to be deflected from their wonted paths, that it will be unsafe to assume, at least until late in autumn, that the danger has passed for Porto Rico. And commanders of all vessels on or near the coasts of the island should exercise extreme vigilance to avoid being caught in a hurricane.

It cannot be said that the anchorages are the best in the world, but a few of them are excellent and most of them sufficiently deep for ordinary craft. Mayaguez Bay, on the west coast, admitting vessels of any size, is the best anchorage in the island. Guanica is the best on the south coast. The east coast is fairly indented and washed by a sea usually smooth. On the rugged north side there are no good anchorages between Arecibo and San Juan, and the ocean current sets to southwestward. But the port of San Juan, affording good shelter, will be an important centre of merchant shipping, as well as an attractive rendezvous for yachts, whose owners are seeking health and pleasure in a winter cruise to the sunny seas of the tropics.

Things go on in San Juan much as they have been going for a hundred years. Hundreds of officers, soldiers and policemen block the sidewalks and appear in the shops and cafes. San Juan has more policemen than any city of the same size on earth. They are not needed. A more quiet and law-abiding population could scarcely be found. Street fights and brawls, so common in American towns, are comparatively unknown. Days pass without a single arrest, and those which do occur are almost invariably for petty thievery. Yet one cannot move without bumping against a policeman armed with a revolver and a heavy short sword.

Shops Closed at Midday.

San Juan awakes early. By seven o'clock the shops are open, and a stirring of wide shutters in the upper stories of the houses show that even the women are about. Hundreds of men are having their coffee in the cafes. Probably a band is playing somewhere, which means a detachment of troops returning from early mass in the Cathedral. By ten o'clock this early activity has worn itself out. The sun has got well up into the sky, white and hot. It falls in the narrow, unshaded streets, and the cobblestones begin to scorch through thin shoe soles. It is a time to seek the shade and quaff cooling drinks. Business languishes. About eleven shop shutters begin to go up, and soon the streets are as deserted as at midnight.

This is breakfast hour, and until well after noon not a shop or public building will be found open. About two or three, whether the siesta is long or short, people begin to reappear and shops reopen. Gradually traffic

revives. By four o'clock, when the Palais de Justice has cast its cooling shadow over half the blazing Plaza, loungers begin to appear to occupy the numerous benches and blink idly at the guards about the gloomy Palais entrance. With each passing hour the city presents a livelier appearance, until at six o'clock it is fully awake and ready for dinner, the principal meal of the day.

Music and Parades.

In the evening is when the inhabitants of San Juan really live. These are the pleasant hours of the day. From the sea comes a breeze, cool and fresh, to whisper to the few shade trees in the plazas and revive enervated humanity. Twice a week one of the military bands plays in the principal plaza. Then it is worth while to go, hire a comfortable arm chair from a "muchacho" for ten cents in Porto Rican silver and sit and observe and listen.

These military bands—several are always stationed in San Juan—are equal to Sousa or Herbert on a considerably smaller scale. They play beautifully voluptuous airs of sunny Spain, the strains swelling and quickening until they entice an answer in the livened step and unconscious swaying bodies of hundreds of promenaders; then slowly dying to a sweet, soft breath, borne to the ear from distant guitars nnd mandolins. Italian, French and German composers are not neglected, while occasionally there will come a spirited bit from some modern light opera; or even a snatch from a topical song of the day.

On band nights San Juan may be seen at her best. The concerts begin at eight o'clock. Prior to that hour the private soldiers are permitted the liberty of the Plaza, and hundreds avail themselves of the opportunity for an airing. At eight they must retire to their barracks, leaving the plaza to the officers. The music racks are set at one end of the Plaza, and the musicians stand during the two hours of the concert. By the time the second number on the programme is reached the Plaza is thronged with the wealth, beauty and fashion of the Porto Rican capital. A row of gas street lamps, thickly set, encircles the Plaza, while at each end rise iron towers, upon which are supported electric arc lights. All the houses surrounding the Plaza are illuminated, their bright coloring and Eastern architecture giving an Oriental effect. The balconies—every house has a balcony—are filled with gayly dressed women and officers, and through open windows glimpses of richly furnished interiors can be obtained. On the street level, the Grand Central and other cafes, tha Spanish Club and a dozen brilliantly lighted drug stores and shops help flood the Plaza with light and lend life and gayety to the scene.

Many Women in the Throng.

And the women. They are out in force, dressed in the latest fashion of Madrid and Paris. Here and there some gentleman walks with his wife and family, but usually the women promenade alone until joined by male acquaintances. A group of girls will be accompanied by a duenna, who keeps discreetly in the background if any men approach. Often, however, two or more senoritas will promenade entirely alone, with a freedom which would be considered unbecoming in the United States.

This is one of the occasions when rigorous Spanish etiquette is somewhat relaxed, and unmarried women enjoy a fleeting glimpse of social freedom. So the crowd, constantly swelling, until progress is almost impossible, moves in a circle back and forth along the length of the Plaza. Mingling with it are scores of police, in their bright uniforms, who seem to have no business there except

to accentuate the crush, and hundreds of civilians in their best dress. Nowadays there is a sprinkling of American navy and army officers, in quiet uniforms, and a good deal of attention they attract. And so it goes until the concert ends. The band, preceded by an escort of cavalry, marches away to a wonderfully quick quickstep, the lights fade and slowly the crowd disperses through the shadowy streets.

Sights by Night.

Not all San Juan, however, is to be seen in the grand plaza. Only fashionable and official life centralizes there. In other sections of the city the evenings pass differently. Take a stroll from the brilliantly lighted plaza into the eastern part of town, near the barracks. There the whole lower strata will be found in the narrow, badly lighted streets, or in the plaza Cristobal Colon and the smaller breathing places of the densely populated city. Here hand organs and dirty wandering minstrels, who perform semi-barbaric music upon cracked guitars and raspy mandolins, accompanied by the "guero"—a native instrument made of a gourd—furnish the music.

Venders of "dulce" squat beside their trays of sweetmeats, dolorously crying their wares. Non-commissioned officers and privates mingle with the people and chat with the women. Everybody smokes cigarettes, even children hardly able to toddle. The shops and meaner cafés are open and crowded. Further on one can wander through streets more narrow and darker than alleys to where the massive gray battlements of the ancient city walls lift their sombre, jagged towers to greet the moon.

Inquisitive sentinels, with rifles in hand, walk here to turn intruders back, but by exercising discretion glimpses may be obtained of tiny balconies ensconced in nooks and crannies high up in the wall and overlooking the sea and the twinkling city. Perhaps a peep may be had into the odd habitations within, with dusky senoritas gazing out through a curtain of flowers and vines. This is a different San Juan from that which promenades in the plaza, but not less interesting.

The Philippine Islands.

The war between Spain and the United States directed public attention to the Philippine Islands, and the victory of the United States naval squadron and land forces at Manila has emphasized the great resources of these islands. Under the circumstances, a general review of some of the industries of the islands will be interesting.

In 1834, the port of Manila, the capital of the islands, was opened to resident foreign merchants, but before that date the Philippine Islands were little known in the foreign markets and commercial centres of Europe. So decided was the spirit of exclusiveness and abhorrence of foreign intercourse that the Spaniards, in 1738, preferred a war with England to the fulfillment of a contract, for freer commerce, entered into under the treaty of Utrecht. Before 1834 a Mr. Butler applied for permission to reside in and open up a trade between Manila and foreign ports, but the application was promptly rejected, though subsequently the American firm of Russell & Sturgis, having the support of the Governor-General, made a similar application, which was successful, and since then many foreigners have settled in the open ports of the Philippine Islands for business purposes. Banks have been established and other agencies necessary to facilitate and promote trade are now a part of the business machinery of the islands.

During the reign of Isabella II. (1833-1868) a Philippine coin was issued, and about the year 1868 gold coin sold for less

than the nominal value in silver, and as much as 10 per cent. was paid to exchange an onza of gold ($16) for silver. In 1878 gold and silver were worth their nominal relative value, and gold gradually disappeared from the islands, large quantities being exported to China. At the beginning of 1885 as much as 10 per cent. premium was paid for Philippine gold of the Isabella II. or any previous coinage, but at the present day gold is obtainable in limited quantities and about the same rate as sight drafts on Europe.

Manufacturing in the Philippines.

The monetary crisis, attributed by some to the depreciation of silver, was experienced in the islands, and the Spanish Government added to the embarrassment by coining half dollars and twenty-five cent pieces without the intrinsic value expressed. It was in consequence of such a false value that exchange fell lower, and in Spain the silver then coined was rejected by the Government officers and merchants, which still further impaired the interests of the islanders. The action of the Spanish Government was a retrograde movement. The coinage of a nation denoting its political condition, the deterioration of it indicates an age of decrepitude.

The manufacturing industry of the islands is in its infancy, and the industrial arts have not been fostered. It may be said that cigars are about the only manufactured export staple, though occasionally some cordage, hides and a parcel of straw or finely split bamboo hats are shipped. In some of the provinces hats and straw mats are made, in others a rough cloth is woven from hemp fibre.

These last are principally woven in the province of Yloilo, where also is made a muslin of pure pine leaf fibre, and a fabric of mixed pine-leaf and hemp filament. The province of Hocos has a reputation for its woolen and dyed cotton fabrics, and that of Batangas produces a special make of cotton stuffs. Pasig, on the river of that name, and Sulipan in Pampanga are locally known for their rough pottery. The centre of the white wood furniture and wood carving is Palte, the extreme east of Sagina de Bay. In Mariquina, near Manila, wooden clogs and native leather shoes are made, and the gold and silver workers are at Santa Cruz, a ward of Manila. In the more civilized provinces the native women produce pretty specimens of embroidery on European patterns, and on a small scale there are centres of manufacture of straw bags, alcohol, bamboo furniture, buffalo hide, leather, wax candles and soap.

The first brewery was opened October 4, 1890, in Manila, by Don Enrique Barretto. The manufactures indicated are supported by native capital, and the traffic and consumption being mostly local, the addition to the wealth of the islands is not large. Outside of the open ports there is little scope for the natives to profitably pursue the industrial arts, and whatever capacity they possess appears to be lost in the want of an opportunity under competent guidance.

Agriculture Past and Present.

There is one railroad running from Manila to Dagupin, about 220 miles, built by a British company, called the Manila Railway Company, Limited; between Manila and Dagupin there are four railway stations. We have no statistics as to the earnings of the road, but the civilizing influence it exerts is quite evident, and shows that when the islands are properly governed, and modern industrial appliances are utilized, the personnel of the natives as well as the resources are capable of great improvement and development.

Agriculture has never flourished in the islands. Before competition in other colon-

ies became so active there were fair remunerative returns from the cultivation of hemp and sugar—the main staple products; labor was then cheaper, as were the beasts for tilling the soil; the necessities of the laboring classes were fewer, and though the aggregate production was not so large, the natives were in a sounder position than the same class are generally now. It would seem that in passing from the primitive to a more civilized state one may look back with fond regret to the simple wants of the former as compared with those of the latter.

One of the causes of agricultural failure in the islands is the same which results in failure elsewhere. Some embark in agriculture with insufficient capital and end by becoming the slaves of the money lender, having themselves to blame for want of foresight, but invariably blaming the one who loaned them money which they needed, and cursing the lender for the high rate of interest which they agreed to pay.

Business Done on Credit.

Thus it is in the Philippine Islands as in other parts of the world, proving that every departure from sound economic laws entails losses if not financial ruin. It is not so certain that the natives of the Philippines are readier to begin work on insufficient capital and pay high rates of interest than the natives of more civilized lands, but a marked characteristic of the islanders is their indifference to adequate provision for crop failures. It is estimated that if all the Philippine planters had to liquidate within twelve months as many as 50 per cent. would be insolvent.

The value of agricultural land is, of course, in proportion to its productive capacity and its nearness to the open court. In the province of Manila land is usually higher priced, Manila being the capital and the largest, commercially, of the open ports. In the province of Bulacan, which adjoins that of Manila, an acre that produces 20 tons of cane would probably sell for $115, while in a province more remote from Manila, the average value of land, yielding 20 tons per acre, would not sell for more than $75 per acre. The finest sugar-cane producing island is the island of Negos, in Visaya district, between 9° and 11° N. latitude. The area of the island is about equal to that of Porto Rico, but it has never been made to yield its full capacity.

How Sugar-Cane is Cultivated.

The sugar estates are small, and from those inland the sugar is transported to the open ports in buffalo carts. The system of planting is different from that prevailing in the West Indies. In the latter the planters set the canes out widely, leaving plenty of space for the development of the roots, and the ratoons serve from five to twenty years, while in the Philippines the setting of cane points is renewed each year, with few exceptions, and the planting is comparatively close. The system of labor in the northern and southern parts of the islands is different. The plantations in the north are worked on the co-operative principle. The estate is divided by the owner into tenements, each tenant being provided with a buffalo and agricultural implements to work and attend to the crop of cane as if it were his own property, and when cut and the sugar is worked off, the tenant receives one-third, and sometimes as much as one-half of the output.

The cane crushing and sugar making are at the expense of the tenant, but the landowner furnishes the machinery and factory establishment and takes the risk of typhoons, inundations, droughts, locusts, etc. If the tenant has no means the landlord generally makes the necessary advances against the

estimated value of the tenant's share. In the southern part of the islands the plantations are worked on the daily wages system. The sugar produced is of different grades and the price is according to grade.

The staple food of the islanders is rice, which is cultivated more or less largely in every province, and is the only branch of agriculture in which the lower classes of natives take a visible pleasure and which they understand; but much of the land formerly devoted to rice cultivation is now devoted to cultivating sugar-cane, which yields a more valuable return.

Hemp is another staple industry. The hemp plant grows in many parts of the islands, and the leaves so closely resemble those of the banana that it is difficult to distinguish between them, those of the hemp plant being of a darker hue and greener. The plant appears to thrive best on an inclined plane, and though requiring a considerable amount of moisture, it will not thrive in swampy land, and must be shaded by other trees to attain any great height. The average height of the tree is about ten feet, and being endogenous, the stem is enclosed in layers of half-round petioles.

Preparing Hemp for Shipment.

The hemp fibre is extracted from the petioles which, when cut down, are separated into strips, five or six inches wide, and drawn under a knife attached at one end by a hinge to a block of wood, whilst the other end is suspended to the extremity of a flexible hook. The bow tends to raise the knife, and a cord, attached to the same end of the knife and a treadle, is so arranged that by a movement of the foot the operator can bring the knife to work on the hemp petiole with the pressure he chooses. The last is drawn through between the knife and the block, the operator twisting the fibre, at each pull, around a stick of wood, while the parenchymatous pulp remains on the other side of the knife. The knife should be without teeth or indentations, but it often has a slightly-serrated edge. The fibre is then spread out to dry, and afterwards tightly packed in bales with iron and rattan hoops for shipment.

Machinery has not been used with satisfactory results, and this is because the mechanical apparatus should be so arranged as to reduce the tension of the fibre in a strip of bast by means of a cylinder, though experiments have been and are being made, and some are more or less satisfactory. The plant is grown from seed or suckers; if seed, it requires about four years to arrive at cutting maturity, and if from suckers, not more than three are required. The stem should be cut for fibre drawing at the flowering maturity, and in no case should it be allowed to bear fruit, as the fibre is thereby weakened. As the fibre known as Manila hemp is a specialty of the islands, competition and overproduction to the extent of annihilating profits are remote.

Cultivation of Coffee.

The cultivation of coffee dates from the early part of the present century, and some of the original trees are still alive and bearing fruit, but after twenty-five years the tree does not bear profitably. The best coffee comes from Sugon Island, embracing the provinces of Batangas, La Laguna and Cavite. There is one crop gathered in the Philippine Islands. In the West Indies the beans are found during eight months of the twelve, and in Brazil there are three gatherings annually.

The tobacco seed was introduced into the Philippines from Mexico by Spanish missionaries soon after the possession of the islands by Spain, and, from the islands, into the south of China in the sixteenth or seventeenth century. The Spanish Government

for a long time enjoyed a monopoly of the tobacco trade, but the monopoly ceased in 1882, and the cultivation and trade were handed over to a private enterprise. The Manila cigar has a world-wide reputation, and under better cultivation the quality can be improved.

In addition to the industrial products named, the soil and climate of the islands are favorable to the cultivation of Indian corn, cotton, chocolate and the bamboo, and all kinds of tropical fruit. It may be said that the Philippine Islands, under the rule of a just government and an intelligent system of cultivation, would become rich in mineral and agricultural products, and a valuable possession, strategically and otherwise.

Admiral Dewey's Achievement.

If the word failure was in Admiral Dewey's lexicon, it is only necessary to consider the position his naval squadron would have been in had the Manila engagement been indecisive, to conclusively show how important it is for the United States to own a base of operations in Asiatic seas and lands. There was not a port in the whole of Asia where Admiral Dewey could have gone to refit his squadron had he met with a reverse. He was excluded by neutrality proclamations from every port, save that of his own brave and loyal heart, which is better than all, but no naval commander was ever so completely isolated from his country as was Admiral Dewey when war was declared between Spain and the United States; and such a condition of affairs should never be allowed to exist again.

The policy of isolation, which has long been the policy of the United States, to every proper extent ought to be abandoned for a policy that will safeguard American interests everywhere against all contingencies, for the most liberal and enlightened nation in the world cannot escape the responsibilities that attend liberality and enlightenment, and has no right to hide its light under a bushel. The rule of Spain in the Philippines is as oppressive as Spanish rule has been in Cuba, and both of these provinces should be freed from a despotism which has crushed the spirit and energy of the inhabitants.

The sun, in his course, does not shine upon any lands of greater fertility than Cuba and the Philippine Islands, and upon none more capable of proportionately contributing to the necessities and comforts of mankind; but under the government of Spain no progress has been made, and honest industry is denied the right of just returns. With Hawaii as a part of the United States, Cuba and the Philippines liberated from serfdom, and the Nicaragua canal cut, the position of the United States would be commanding in both of the great oceans of the world, and enabled to foster commercial enterprises which, in all ages, have been promotive of free institutions. Other nations should not be allowed to monopolize commercial advantages which nature has placed nearest within our reach.

Trade with Other Countries.

The following synopsis of the report of Oscar F. Williams, the American Consul at Manila, on the trade relations of the United States and the Philippine Islands, will be interesting in this connection. He says that twenty-two consulates, representing the leading commercial countries of the world, are established at Manila. He adds this surprising statement: "The volume of the export trade coming under my official supervision equals that of my twenty-one consular colleagues combined."

He then shows in detail how the trade of the Philippines with the United States exceeds that of all other countries combined, and is growing at a rapid rate. As indicating

the extent of this trade, he says: "To-day I have authenticated invoices for exports to the United States amounting to $188,606." He says the exports to this country average $1,000,000 a month. The report states that 216,000 bales of hemp were exported during the preceding three months. Of these, 138,782 went to the United States, and 77,218 to Great Britain and other countries. Mr. Williams shows from this that the United States had 64 per cent. of the trade from the Philippines as against 36 per cent. of Great Britain and other countries. He says that in 1897 the increase of shipments to the United States was 133,000 bales and the decrease of shipments to Great Britain 22,000 bales.

He adds: "Of the increase of shipments from the Philippines, those to the United States were 54 per cent. greater than to all other countries combined."

He also gives details of the large shipments of sugar, tobacco, hides, shells, indigo and coffee. In the item of sugar, which is second in importance, the shipments to the United States were 55 per cent. of the total to all points. Under a proper government the vast resources of the Philippines could be developed, and these tropical islands would become of great value and importance from a commercial point of view. What is needed is a stable and liberal government, a good system of education, and abundant capital for supporting industries.

The Hawaiian Islands.

A study of this new territory reveals some interesting facts. The islands were discovered in 1720 by Captain Cook, an English navigator. For some abstruse reason, probably because they were too far away to be of any service to any of her colonies, England never took possession of the islands. In fact, her course toward them has been one equivalent to the relinquishment of whatever rights she had to the islands.

Since the islands were discovered attempts have been made to establish a government on them, once by an English body of colonists, and once by French colonists. Both, however, were abandoned in due course of time, neither the English nor French Government thinking it wise or worth while to give official sanction to the same. After awhile a monarchy arose, but a revolution, in which the good offices of the United States troops were found necessary, put an end to it. It was this revolution which made Queen Lil abdicate the throne. Later on, the government became a republic, and it comes into the United States as such.

Number of Square Miles.

The Hawaiian Islands are 15 in number, are a little over 2,500 miles from San Francisco, and have a coast over 800 miles long. Altogether they comprise about 6,640 square miles. The shortest distance between any of the islands is five miles, while some of the islands are at least 25 miles apart. Five of the islands do not possess a single inhabitant. The chief island is Oahu, which contains 600 square miles, and has a population of 40,205. Upon this island is situated Honolulu, which is the seat of Government, or, in other words, the capital of the islands. The island is almost entirely given up to sugar plantations, in which at least 30,000 of its people are engaged.

The Island of Neehau contains 97 square miles, and has a population of only 14 families. Ownership of it is claimed by an Englishman, who asserts that he bought it from the former king of the islands. It is given entirely to grazing, and from 30,000 to 40,000 sheep are raised on it annually. The Island of Keani contains 590 square miles, and has a population of 15,362. There is a party of

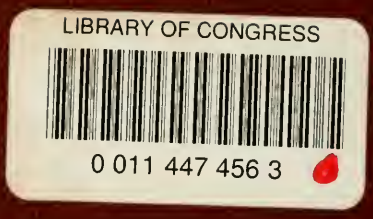
German colonists, who claim that they own the island, which is entirely given up to sugar plantations.

The island that is probably best known throughout the world is Molokai. It comprises 270 square miles, and has a population of 2,307. It is a leper settlement, and over 1,200 of the residents are sufferers from leprosy. The island came into great notoriety several years ago through the death of the celebrated Father Damien, who, it will be remembered, contracted the dread disease while ministering to the spiritual and temporal needs of those who are afflicted with it. At the island of Maui, which contains 760 square miles, and which has a population of 17,726, are the immense sugar plantations of Claus Spreckles, the California sugar king. The island of Lauai contains 105 people, who maintain themselves by grazing. Another large island is Hawaii, which consists of 4,210 square miles, and which has a population of 32,285.

The chief product of the islands is sugar. Sugar forms 99 per cent. of the exports of the islands. In 1897 the sugar sent out from the islands amounted to the enormous total of 502,000,000 pounds. The population of the islands, according to the most accurate statistics, is about 109,000

The Island of Guam.

The Marianne or Ladrone Islands lie to the north of the western end of the Carolina band. They are physically associated with the Japanese Islands. This group has fifteen islands large enough to note. They aggregate about 440 square miles and have about 10,000 inhabitants. The largest is Guam, with 200 square miles and 7,000 inhabitants. This island was captured and the United States flag was hoisted over it by officers and marines from the United States cruiser "Charleston" on June 21st, 1898. The "Charleston" was on its way to join Admiral Dewey's squadron at Manila.


LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 011 447 456 3